THOMAS PRINTWORKS

Notice to Plan Purchasers and Plan Rooms

The list of Plan Purchasers and all addenda will be posted to our bid site for your use.

www.thomasprintworks.com/bids

Please check this site regularly to keep up-to-date on the latest revisions.

Although we endeavor to notify all plan purchasers via email as updates are issued, it is your responsibility to verify that you have the most up-to-date bid information for this project. For all intents and purposes, you will be considered notified when any new files are posted to this site.

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES

Project Manual

VOLUME 1 OF 2

CSP 207774

ORG 237 – John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

A/E FIRM
CACO ARCHITECTURE, LLC.

Structural: JQ Infrastructure
MEP: Purdy McGuire
Civil: JQ Infrastructure

Roofing: Drytec
Landscape: CCA Landscape Architects
IT/AV: Cedrick Frank and Associates

12/07/2025

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES

Project Manual

VOLUME 1 OF 2

CSP 207774

ORG 237 – John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

A/E FIRM
CACO ARCHITECTURE, LLC.

12/07/2025

ARCHITECT AND CONSULTANTS SEALS PAGE

ARCHITECT:

CaCo Architecture LLC

Roberto Diaz, AIA
5301 Alpha Road
Suite 66-116
Dallas, TX 75240-4467
Tel. 972.865.1329

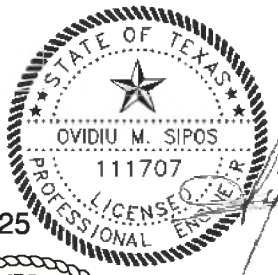


12/07/2025

CIVIL ENGINEER:

JQ Infrastructure

Ovi Sipos, PE
100 Glass Street
Suite 202
Dallas, TX 75207
Tel. 214.623.5872



12/07/2025

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT:

CCA Landscape Architects

Jaclyn Clark Szafranic
1701 Whispering Pines Lane
Gunter, TX, 75058
Tel. 214.739.9105



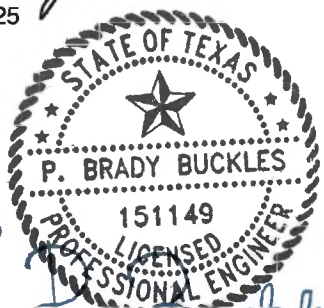
12/07/2025

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:

JQ Infrastructure

Brady Buckles, PE
3017 West 7th Street
Suite 400
Fort Worth, TX 76107
Tel. 817.546.7200

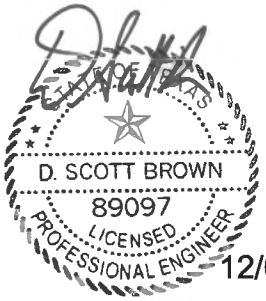
12/07/2025



MEP ENGINEER:

Purdy McGuire

Donald Scott Brown, PE
17300 Dallas Parkway
Suite 3000
Dallas. TX 75248
Tel. 972.239.5357

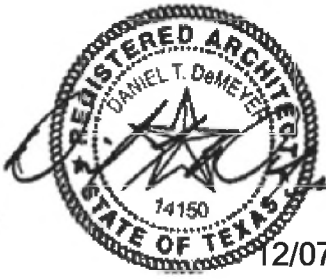


12/07/2025

Roofing Consultant:

Drytec

Daniel DeMeyer
8750 N. Central Expwy
Suite 725
Dallas. TX 75231
Tel. 214.363.2192



12/07/2025

SECTION 00 01 07 – SEALS PAGE

Telecommunications:

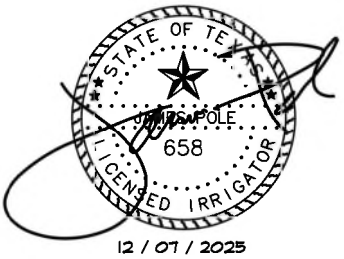
Cedrick Frank and Associates

Cedrick Frank
434 Coombs Creek Dr.
Dallas. TX 75211
Tel. 817.874.7116

Irrigation Designer:

James Pole Irrigation Consultants, Inc.

James Pole
PO Box 1845
Denton, TX, 76202
Tel. 940.243.2364



SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

Division 0

00 01 00 Project Manual Cover
00 01 01 Project Title Page
00 01 07 Seals Page
00 01 10 Table of Contents
00 01 15 List of Drawing Sheets
00 11 13 Advertisement for CSP

Proposal Requirements
00 11 17 Intention to Propose Form
00 21 13 Instructions to Proposers

Project Information
00 31 00 Available Project Information
00 31 18 School Operation Parameters Statement

Proposal Documents
00 41 10 Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist
00 41 11 (a) Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form
00 41 11 Proposal Form – Base Bid (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 41 12 Proposal Form – Alternates and Unit Pricing (Part 1-C of the CSP)
00 41 13 Technical Proposal (Part 1-B of the CSP)
00 43 13 Proposal Guarantee Bond (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 00 DISD Required forms combined (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 20 Certificate of Non-Discrimination (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 22 Notification of Hazardous Materials Affidavit (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 23 Family Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 39 SBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms (Part 2 of the CSP)

Contract Forms
00 43 43 Prevailing Wage Rates Schedule
00 52 10 Standard form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor
00 52 11 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
00 55 00 Notice to Proceed Forms
00 61 13 Performance Bond Form
00 61 16 Payment Bond Form
00 73 19 Dallas Independent School District Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual

Division 1

General Requirements
01 10 00 Summary of Work
01 21 00 Allowances
01 22 00 Unit Prices
01 23 00 Alternates
01 25 00 Substitution Procedures
01 29 00 Payment Procedures
01 29 73 Schedule of Values
01 31 00 Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00 Construction Progress Documentation
01 32 16 Construction Progress Schedule
01 32 33 Photographic Documentation
01 33 00 Submittal Procedures
01 35 43 EPA Lead-Based Paint Renovation, Repair, and Painting Program
01 40 00 Quality Requirements
01 42 00 References
01 45 23 Testing Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC – (updated 1-28-2020 Final)
01 50 00 Temporary Facilities and Controls

01 52 14 Temporary Facilities for Students
01 56 39 Tree Protection, Removal and Pruning
01 60 00 Product Requirements
01 73 00 Execution
01 77 00 Closeout Procedures & Checklist
01 78 23 Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39 Project As-Builts & Record Documents
01 79 00 Demonstration and Training
01 91 00 General Cx Requirements (1-28-20 Final)
01 92 00 Hazmat Report
01 93 00 Geotechnical Report

DIVISION 2

Existing Conditions
02 2623 Environmental assessment Information
02 3200 Geotechnical Data
02 4100 Demolition

DIVISION 3

Concrete
03 3000 Cast-in-Place Concrete
03 3511 Concrete Floor Finishes

DIVISION 4

Masonry
04 0100 Masonry Restoration and Cleaning
04 0513 Masonry Mortar and Grout
04 2001 Brick Veneer Masonry

DIVISION 5

Metals
05 1200 Structural Steel Framing
05 3100 Steel Decking
05 4000 Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 5000 Metal Fabrications
05 5133 Steel Ladders`
05 5213 Pipe and Tube Railings

DIVISION 6

Wood, Plastics, And Composites
06 6100 Rough Carpentry
06 2000 Finish Carpentry
06 4100 Architectural Wood Casework

DIVISION 7

Thermal And Moisture Protection
07 1113 Bituminous Dampproofing
07 2100 Thermal Insulation
07 2500 Weather Barriers
07 4213 Metal Wall Panels
07 5200 Sbs Modified Bitumen Membrane Roofing
07 5650 Minor Roof Renovation Work
07 5700 Coated Foam Roofing
07 6000 Sheet Metal Work
07 7100 Roof Specialties
07 7200 Roof Accessories
07 8400 Firestopping
07 9000 Joint Sealers
07 9513 Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies

DIVISION 8

Openings
08 1113 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
08 1416 Flush Wood Doors
08 3100 Access Doors and Panels
08 4113 Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
08 4413 Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
08 7100 Door Hardware
08 8000 Glazing

DIVISION 9

Finishes
09 2116 Gypsum Board Assemblies
09 3000 Tiling
09 5100 Acoustical Ceilings
09 6500 Resilient Flooring
09 6623 Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring
09 6813 Carpet Tile
09 9000 Painting and Coating

DIVISION 10

Specialties
10 1101 Visual Display Boards
10 1400 Signage
10 2601 Wall and Corner Guards
10 2800 Toilet Accessories
10 4000 Safety Specialties

DIVISION 11 (Not Used)

DIVISION 12

Furnishings
12 2113 Horizontal Louver Blinds
12 3600 Countertops
12 4813 Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

DIVISION 13 - 20 (Not Used)

DIVISION 21

Fire Suppression

21 0548 Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment
21 1000 Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems
21 5000 Common Work Results for Fire Suppression

DIVISION 22

Plumbing

22 0500 Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 0513 Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment
22 0516 Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping
22 0519 Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
22 0523 General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 0529 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0548 Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0553 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0700 Plumbing Insulation
22 1116 Domestic Water Piping
22 1119 Domestic Water Piping Specialties
22 1122 Natural Gas Piping
22 1123 Domestic Water Pumps
22 1316 Sanitary Waste, Storm Drainage and Vent Piping
22 1319 Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
22 1429 Sump Pumps
22 3300 Electric Domestic Water Heaters

DIVISION 23

Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC)

23 0500 Common Work Results for HVAC
23 0513 Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
23 0516 Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping
23 0519 Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
23 0523 General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
23 0529 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 0533 Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping
23 0548 Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 0553 Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 0593 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC
23 0700 HVAC Insulation
23 0900 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC
23 2113 Hydronic Piping
23 2123 Hydronic Pumps
23 2300 Refrigerant Piping
23 3113 Metal Ducts
23 3300 Air Duct Accessories
23 3423 HVAC Power Ventilators
23 3600 Air Terminal Units
23 3713 Diffusers, Registers and Grilles
23 6500 Cooling Towers
23 7314 Custom Air-Handling Units

23 7413 Packaged Dx Rooftop Units
23 8126 Split-System Air-Conditioners
23 8239 Unit Heaters

DIVISION 26

Electrical
26 0500 Common Work Results for Electrical
26 0519 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
26 0526 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 0529 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 0533 Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
26 0553 Identification for Electrical Systems
26 0573 Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study
26 0923 Lighting Control Devices
26 0936 Modular Dimming Controls
26 0943 Network Lighting Controls
26 2416 Panelboards
26 2713 Electrical Metering
26 2726 Wiring Devices
26 2813 Fuses
26 2816 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
26 4113 Lightning Protection for Structures
26 5100 Interior Lighting
26 5600 Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 27

Communications
27 1501 Premise Wiring Guide
27 4500 Electronic Communications

DIVISION 28

Electronic Safety And Security
28 0500 Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
28 1300 Video Intercom and Access Control System
28 2000 Electronic Surveillance
28 3100 Intrusion Detection
28 4600 Fire Detection and Alarm

DIVISION 31

Earthwork
31 1000 Site Preparation and Demolition
31 2200 Earthwork
31 2500 Erosion Control
31 3116 Termite Control
31 6329 Drilled Piers

DIVISION 32

Site Improvements
32 1313 Concrete Paving
32 8400 Landscape Irrigation System
32 9200 Turf and Grasses
32 9300 Landscaping

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 00 01 15 – LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

The list below is a description of the documents provided to the contractor as part of this Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal – 207774

1.01 Drawing List with Revision Number and Date: 10/22/2025

1.01.A Project Manual List with Revision Number and Date: 12/07/2025

ORG 237 - John W. Runyon Elementary School – Renovation

Drawings:

Civil:

C00.01	GENERAL NOTES
C01.00	EXISTING CONDITIONS
C02.00	DEMO PLAN
C03.00	ENGINEERING SITE PLAN
C04.00	GRADING PLAN
C05.00	EROSION CONTROL PLAN
C05.01	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS
C06.00	CIVIL DETAILS
C06.01	CIVIL DETAILS

Structural:

S1.01	STRUCTURAL NOTES
S1.02	STRUCTURAL NOTES
S1.03	SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
SD2.03	ROOF DEMO PLAN - ENTRY
S2.01	FOUNDATION PLAN
S2.02	ROOF FRAMING PLAN - OVERALL
S2.03	ROOF FRAMING PLAN - ADDITION
S2.10	WALL ELEVATIONS
S3.01	TYPICAL CONCRETE DETAILS
S3.02	TYPICAL CONCRETE DETAILS
S3.03	CONCRETE DETAILS
S5.01	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS
S5.02	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS
S5.03	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS
S5.04	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS

Architectural:

A0.01	COVER SHEET
A0.02	SHEET INDEX / GENERAL NOTES
A0.05	CODE & EGRESS
A0.06	TAS STANDARDS
A0.10	FRAMING DTLS
A0.11	WALL, DR, WNDW
A0.30	SF DETAILS
A0.31	CW DETAILS
A0.40	FINISHES
D2.00	DEMO L1
D2.01	DEMO ADMIN
A1.00	SITE PLAN
A1.01	SITE DETAILS
A1.02	PHOTOMETRICS
A1.03	SEQUENCE PLAN

A2.00	OVERALL PLAN
A2.01	FLOOR PLAN A
A2.02	FLOOR PLAN B
A2.03	FLOOR PLAN C
A2.04	FLOOR PLAN D
A2.10	FLOOR PLAN ADMIN
A2.11	DIMENSION PLAN
A2.20	FINISHES ADMIN
A3.00	RCP L1
A3.10	RCP ADMIN
A3.11	RCP SECTIONS
A4.00	ROOF PLAN
A5.00	EXTERIOR ELEV
A5.01	EXTERIOR ELEV
A5.03	EXTERIOR ELEV
A6.00	BLDG SECTIONS
A7.00	WALL SECTIONS
A7.01	SECTION DTLS
A7.02	PLAN DTLS
A8.00	INTERIOR ELEV
A9.00	3D VIEWS
A9.01	3D VIEWS
A10.01	MILLWORK
A11.00	FF&E PLAN

Mechanical:

DM2.01	MECHANICAL DEMOLITION PLAN - OVERALL
DM2.02	ROOF LEVEL - MECHANICAL DEMOLITION PLAN
M0.01	MECHANICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
M0.02	MECHANICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
M0.03	MECHANICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
M2.00	MECHANICAL PLAN - CRAWLSPACE - OVERALL
M2.01	MECHANICAL PLAN - OVERALL
M2.02	MECHANICAL PLAN - ENLARGED PLAN
M2.03	ROOF LEVEL - MECHANICAL PLAN
M2.11	MECHANICAL RETURN AIR PLAN -ENLARGED PLAN
M3.01	MECHANICAL SECTION VIEWS
M4.01	MECHANICAL AIR RISER
M4.02	MECHANICAL PIPING RISERS
M5.01	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M5.02	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M5.03	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M6.01	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M6.02	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
MEP2.01	ROOF LEVEL - MEP PIPING PLAN
MEP7.01	MEP CONTROLS - GENERAL
MEP7.02	MEP CONTROLS - CONDENSER WATER
MEP7.03	MEP CONTROLS - CONDENSER WATER
MEP7.04	MEP CONTROLS - CHW RTU MULTI-ZONE
MEP7.05	MEP CONTROLS - CHW RTU SINGLE-ZONE
MEP7.06	MEP CONTROLS - DX RTU SINGLE ZONE
MEP7.07	MEP CONTROLS - FANS
MEP7.08	MEP CONTROLS - MISC
MEP7.09	MEP CONTROLS - VFD'S AND IDF/MDF ROOMS
MEP7.10	MEP CONTROLS – VAV

Electrical:

E0.01	ELECTRICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
E0.02	ELECTRICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
E1.01	ELECTRICAL SITE PLAN
E2.01	ELECTRICAL PLAN - OVERALL
E2.02	ELECTRICAL PLAN - ROOF LEVEL
E3.01	LIGHTING PLAN - OVERALL
E4.01	ELECTRICAL ENLARGED PLAN
E4.02	ELECTRICAL ENLARGED PLAN
E6.01	ELECTRICAL DETAILS - GENERAL
E6.02	ELECTRICAL DETAILS - GENERAL
E7.01	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES
E8.01	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES

Plumbing:

P0.01	PLUMBING NOTES & SYMBOLS
P0.02	PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE
P2.01	PLUMBING PLAN - OVERALL
P3.01	PLUMBING ENLARGED PLAN
P4.01	PLUMBING RISERS
P5.01	PLUMBING DETAILS
P5.02	PLUMBING DETAILS
P6.01	PLUMBING SCHEDULES

Technology:

EC0.01	ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS NOTES, LEGEND AND DETAILS
EC1.00	SITE PLAN
EC2.02	FLOOR PLAN - AREA A
EC2.03	FLOOR PLAN - AREA B
EC2.04	FLOOR PLAN - AREA C
EC2.05	FLOOR PLAN - AREA D
EC7.01	ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS DETAILS
EC7.02	ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS DIAGRAM
T0.01	TECHNOLOGY NOTES & RESPONSIBILITY CHART
T0.02	TECHNOLOGY LEGEND & DETAILS
T1.00	SITE PLAN
T2.02	FLOOR PLAN - AREA A
T2.03	FLOOR PLAN - AREA B
T2.04	FLOOR PLAN - AREA C
T2.05	FLOOR PLAN - AREA D
T7.01	TECHNOLOGY DETAILS
T7.02	TECHNOLOGY DETAILS
T7.03	TECHNOLOGY DETAILS

Roofing:

R1.01	OVERALL CONSTRUCTION PLAN
R2.00	ROOF DETAILS
R2.01	ROOF DETAILS
R2.02	DETAILS
R2.03	DETAILS
RD1.01	OVERALL DEMOLITION PLAN

Procurement Services **December 07, 2025**

The Dallas Independent School District ("District") is soliciting Competitive Sealed Proposals ("CSP") from qualified sources relative to the provision of the following request For Competitive Sealed Proposals ("CSP"). This procurement will be managed under the Dallas ISD Construction Services department.

For information on how to obtain the CSP documents, go to the District's **Construction Services** website **http://www.dallasisd.org. Click on "Departments;" click on "Construction Services/Bond Office;" click on "Bond Vendor Opportunities;"** then click on the bid package number. Follow the Document Distribution instructions to obtain the CSP documents. The CSP documents contain the necessary information to submit a CSP to the District, including construction documents, selection criteria, estimated budget, project scope, schedule, and other information that contractors may require to respond to the request.

Please return the "Intention to Propose" form (Specification Section 00 11 17) to the Construction Services Procurement Director listed on the form.

CSP #	Description	Closing Date	Buyers Initials
207774	**John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation**	**01/21/2026**	**DBE**

A pre-proposal meeting will be held for John W. Runyon Elementary School on Monday, December 15, 2025 via MS Teams at 10:00 AM for all interested parties. This meeting is not mandatory, but information discussed will be extremely helpful in preparation of the proposal.

MICROSOFT TEAMS INFORMATION

Meeting ID: 299 323 892 525 2
Passcode: TG9fv7GB

All general contractors and sub-contractors are encouraged to attend this meeting. Contractors will meet A/E(s) and PM at the school to start site tours. The first site tour will take place immediately following the pre-proposal. The following is the schedule for each site tour:

School Org#	School Name	Date	Time	School Address, Location of Meeting
237	**John W. Runyon Elementary School**	**12/15/2025**	**4:00 PM**	**10750 Cradlerock Drive Dallas, TX 75217 Auditorium**

All Construction Services procurements must be physically delivered to the Construction Services office, at the Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building 9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800 Dallas, TX 75231. (Call 972.925.7200 for directions). Delivery to other locations will result in rejection of a CSP.

Completed CSP Package **Part 1-A, 1-B and 1-C are due on Tuesday, 01/21/2026 at 2:00 PM** (local time).

Completed CSP Package **Part 2 is due on Wednesday, 01/22/2026 at 3:00 PM (**local time).

Any materials received after the respective closing dates / times will not be considered.

The District will open and read the names of the proposers and prices submitted in responsive CSPs beginning at 3:30 PM local time upon submittal of Part 2 of the Package, via Microsoft Teams at Dallas ISD Construction Services, Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building 9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800 Dallas, TX 75231.

MICROSOFT TEAMS INFORMATION

Meeting ID: 221 434 158 630 91
Passcode: Lj7mi6T3

No further information will be officially released until after the date the Agenda is publicized for the Board of Trustees briefing.

The right is reserved to reject any or all bids, proposals, CSPs, or statements of qualification and to waive technicalities.

The Dallas Independent School District is committed to the ideals of equal opportunity in all its business endeavors.

The Dallas Independent School District's Construction Services projects have a 30% Small Business Enterprise (SBE) aspirational goal in construction.

RUN TWO TIMES ONLY AS FOLLOWS:
12/07/2025 and 12/14/2025

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

PROCUREMENT SERVICES – CONSTRUCTION SERVICES

DOCUMENT DISTRIBUTION

CONSTRUCTION SERVICES

CSP 207774
Org 237 - John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation
J237_P0391_1

SOLICITATION TIMELINE:

Issue Date:	**12/07/2025**
First Advertisement Date	**12/07/2025**
Second Advertisement Date	**12/14/2025**
Preproposal Meeting	**12/15/2025**
Question Deadline	**12/20/2025**
Question Responses from the District	**01/08/2026**
CSP Response Due Dates Pt 1-A, Pt 1-B, and Pt 1-C	**01/21/2026**
CSP Response Due Date Pt 2	**01/22/2026**
CSP Evaluation	**01/28/2026**
Anticipated Board Approval	**03/26/2026**

1. DOCUMENT DISTRIBUTION:

   The attached "Document Distribution" page details how documents and addenda will be distributed.

2. ESTIMATED CONSTRUCTION BUDGET INCLUDING ALLOWANCES:

   Total Estimated Construction Budget (CCL + IC+ Allowances) for CSP 207774 $6,119,674.47

3. Scope of Work. The Work consists of:

   ORG 237 – John W. Runyon Elementary School - Project consists of the following: Addition of 1,105 SF and remodel of 2,326 SF of administration area to provide new secured vestibule and updated administrative spaces to comply with current DISD standards along with miscellaneous improvements/repairs around the school campus inclusive of but not limited to:

   1. Painting previously painted surfaces
   2. Replacement of exterior sealants and expansion joints
   3. Cleaning of existing masonry
   4. Security system upgrades
   5. New RTUs over administration area and replacement of existing chilled water RTUs throughout school
   6. New condensate piping on several 24/7 conditioned areas

4. Contact Information:

Technical questions and all other questions related to this solicitation are to be referred to:

Attention:	**Dallas ISD Procurement Services**
Email:	**ProcurementCS@dallasisd.org**

Please notate the solicitation number 207774 in the subject line of your email.

DOCUMENT DISTRIBUTION
CSP PACKAGE 207774

Documents will be distributed as follows:

Hard copy and file distribution are provided, beginning Monday, December 08, 2025

Printing Company Name:	**Thomas Printworks**
Attention:	**Jon Sauve**
Address:	**3610 Oak Lawn Avenue**
City, State and Zip	**Dallas, Texas 75219**
Phone:	**469-320-4940**
Email:	**jon.sauve@thomasprintworks.com**

Any addendum issued will be listed or posted at the **Dallas ISD Construction Services** website http://www.dallasisd.org/ **Click on "Departments"; click on "Construction Services/Bond Office"; click on "Bond Vendor Opportunities"**; then click on the bid package number. Any and all addenda that are too large in size for the website will not be posted on the District website. However, all such addenda will be listed on the website with the date of issuance of each addendum, and instructions to proposers for procuring such addenda from **Thomas Printworks.**

Documents are available as follows:

- **Full size sets of plans and specifications and USB drives of the same information and details are available for purchase at the Printing Company noted above. Purchase price must be obtained directly from the Printing Company.**

- **The purchases of additional USB drives of proposal documents in PDF format are available only to purchasers of at least one (1) full size plans and specifications. Purchase price must be obtained directly from the Printing Company.**

- **Addenda will be available from the Printing Company for purchase. Purchase price must be obtained directly from the Printing Company.**

Delivery pricing can be obtained from **Thomas Printworks.**

The bidder or proposer is responsible for obtaining all Addenda prior to submitting a bid or proposal to the District.

A list of Plan Rooms and other entities that have documents available for viewing are as follows:

DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS ARE AVAILABLE AT THE FOLLOWING:

Dallas/Fort Worth Minority Supplier Development Council
Sha'Ron Richardson
construction@dfwmsdc.com
214-630-0747
8828 N. Stemmons Freeway, Ste. 550
Dallas, TX 75247

Regional Hispanic Contractors Association
John H. Martinez
john@regionalhca.org
972-786-0909
3918 North Hampton Rd.
Dallas, TX 75212

Regional Black Contractors Association of North Texas, Inc.
John Proctor
info@blackcontractors.org
214-565-8946
2627 Martin Luther King Jr. Blvd,
Dallas, TX 75215

Fort Worth Hispanic Chamber of Commerce
Gilbert Juarez
gilbert@pic-printing.com
https://www.fwhccplanroom.com/
817-625-5411
1327 N. Main Street
Fort Worth, TX 76164

Greater Dallas Hispanic Chamber of Commerce
Gabriela Carvallo
gabriela@gdhcc.com
214-521-6007
1402 N. Corinth St., Ste 225
Dallas, TX 75215

Construction Connect
Michael Stubbs
Content@ConstructConnect.com
800-364-2059
30 Technology Parkway South, Ste 100
Norcross, GA 30092

Dodge Data & Analytics formerly McGraw-Hill Construction Dodge
support@construction.com
877-784-9556
4300 Beltway Place, Ste. 180
Arlington, TX 76018

Dallas Black Chamber of Commerce
Tigist Solomon
tsolomon@dbcc.org
214-702-6652
2922 Martin Luther King Jr. Blvd., Building A, Ste. 104
Dallas, TX 75215

Fort Worth Metropolitan Black Chamber of Commerce
Jeremiah Anderson
janderson@fwmbcc.org
817-871-6558
1150 South Fwy, Ste. 211
Fort Worth, TX 76104

Virtual Builders Exchange, LLC
Heidi Shaffer
heidi@virtualbx.com
210-564-6900
4047 Naco Perrin, Ste.100
San Antonio, TX 78217

SECTION 00 11 17 – INTENTION TO PROPOSE FORM

Please return this Intention to Propose Form within **Five (5) Days** of receipt of this Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal Package. Doing so will enable us to keep a record of interest in this project. It is your responsibility to continue to monitor the District Website for any modifications or addenda issued prior to the submittal deadline. Email this form to:

ATTN: **Dallas ISD Procurement Services c/o Bond/Construction Services**
Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building
9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, TX 75231
E-mail: ProcurementCS@dallasisd.org

Subject: Dallas ISD Construction Services
CSP 207774

Dear **Procurement Services:**

We hereby acknowledge receipt of the proposal documents for the above referenced COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (CSP) Package, and confirm that:

(Check appropriate box)

☐ We do intend to submit a proposal for this work. We understand that this proposal will be prepared by us at no cost or obligation to: CaCo Architecture, LLC. or Dallas ISD.

☐ We do not intend to submit a proposal on this work. The reason(s) we decline to offer a proposal is as follows:

_____

_____

_____

Yours sincerely,

_____ _____
Name Signature

_____ _____
Firm Title

_____ _____
Phone Date

_____
Fax

_____
Email Address

SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

1.01 GENERAL INFORMATION

1.01.1. Scope

In accordance with the Texas Government Code Chapter 2269 the Dallas ISD is requesting Competitive Sealed Proposals (CSP) from general construction contractors. The following instructions by the Dallas Independent School District are intended to afford proposers an equal opportunity to participate in the proposal process.

1.01.2. Discrepancies and Interpretations

Proposer must notify the Architect/Engineer during procurement, at least ten (10) business days prior to the scheduled Proposal opening date, with any questions arising out of the drawings or specifications or if discrepancies, ambiguities or omissions are found in the Proposal documents, or if further information or interpretation is desired.

Answers to inquiries will be provided in writing to all proposers in addenda form. All provisions and requirements of such addenda will supersede or modify affected portions of the Proposal documents. All addenda will be incorporated into and bound with the Contract Documents. No other explanation or interpretation will be considered binding.

1.01.3. Submittal Procedures

Submit the Proposal in sealed packages of sufficient size to hold all of the copies of the Proposal documents. These should be packaged following the instructions in Specification Section 00 41 10 – Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist.

Provide a properly formatted label, using page one of the advertisement, on the exterior of the Proposal envelope or package providing the proposer's identification including due date and time.

If the Proposal is submitted by mail, place the sealed Proposal package in a mailing envelope addressed as required in this section. Delivery of the Proposal prior to the advertised time set for the Proposal opening is the responsibility of the proposer. Dallas ISD is not responsible for mail delivered from the post office.

1.01.4. Preparation of Competitive Sealed Proposals

The Proposal must be based on conditions at the project site, the project Drawings, the project manual and any addenda issued.

All original Proposal Forms must be authoritatively executed and submitted on the Proposal forms furnished by Dallas ISD.

If the **Technical Proposal** form does not provide sufficient space to adequately respond to a question, the proposer should attach additional 8 1/2" X 11" white paper sheets as required, referencing the page and question numbers to which the response pertains.

A Proposal with omissions, alterations, conditions, or carrying riders or other qualifiers which modify the Proposal form may result in the proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

If the proposer chooses to issue a "No Response" (N/R) to a question on the Proposal, an explanation of this action is required. Failure to do so may be viewed by Dallas ISD as incomplete and may subject the entire Proposal to rejection.

Only one proposal shall be submitted by each proposer. If two or more Proposals are submitted, either in one envelope or in separate envelopes, such multiple Proposals will be deemed as non-responsive. The blank Proposal form bound in the Specification is for the proposer's information reference only.

Facsimile or emailed proposals will not be accepted and modifications are not allowed. Any modifications not inside the proposal envelopes/packages will not be considered part of the Contractor's proposal.

The proposer will receive no compensation or reimbursement of expenses incurred in the preparation of this Proposal.

Dallas ISD reserves the right to reject any or all Proposals. Dallas ISD also reserves the right to waive errors and omissions in any proposal if it deems it in the best interest of Dallas ISD to do so.

1.01.5. Public Information and Notice of Confidentiality

Dallas ISD considers all Proposal information, documentation and supporting materials submitted in response to this Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal to be non-confidential and / or non-proprietary in nature, and therefore, shall be subject to the public disclosure under the Texas Public Information Act (*Texas Government Code*, Sec. 552.001, et seq.) after the award of the contract. Exceptions to this are listed in this Project Manual.

The Proposer must identify and designate those portions of their technical Proposal which contain trade secrets or other proprietary data. If the Proposal includes such data, the proposer shall:

Mark the cover sheet of the Technical Proposal with the following phrase: "This Proposal includes data that shall not be disclosed outside Dallas ISD, and the A/E design team and shall not be duplicated, used or disclosed in whole or in part for any purpose other than to evaluate this Proposal."

Mark each sheet and the specific data on that sheet that the proposer wishes to restrict with the following phrase: "Use or disclosure of this specifically marked data is subject to the restrictions regarding confidentiality cited on the cover sheet of this Proposal."

1.01.6. Proposal Guaranty Bond

A Proposal bond on Dallas ISD Proposal Guarantee Bond Form, from a Surety authorized to transact business in the State of Texas, in the amount of not less than ten percent (10%) of the greatest total amount of the proposed contract amount (Base Price plus all Allowances), payable without recourse to the order of the Dallas ISD Board of Trustees, must accompany the Proposal as a guarantee that, if awarded the Contract, the proposer will promptly enter into and execute the Contract and Performance and Payment Bonds on the forms provided.

The Proposal Guarantee Bond must be accompanied by a properly dated and executed Power of Attorney with a raised Surety seal on each document. Failure to do so will constitute an irregular Proposal which may be deemed as non-responsive. Use of a Surety company's bond form is not acceptable and may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

Should the successful proposer fail to execute and return to Dallas ISD, the Contract and Bonds within ten (10) calendar days after the date of transmittal of the Contract Documents for execution, the Proposal Guaranty becomes the property of Dallas ISD.

No cashier's checks, official checks, or other items will be accepted. Only a Proposal Guaranty Bond as described in this paragraph for proposal security.

Deadline for Signing Contract and DALLAS ISD's Rights if Delay

The completion of this Project is crucial and must remain on a timely schedule. In order to keep the Project on a judicious schedule, the selected proposer must:

a. Sign the Contract no later than ten (10) calendar days after the date of Board approval when the selected proposer has been notified that it is the successful proposer, and

b. Provide the safety plan for the Project and all required bonds and insurance no later than five (5) business days after the successful proposer has signed the contract.

If the selected proposer fails to meet the district's specified deadline of ten (10) calendar days, the Dallas ISD has the right to:

a. Award the contract to the next successive responsive proposer subject to the district's ranking and evaluation.

1.01.7. Insurance

Original Certificates of Insurance, as well as copies of the original insurance policies and endorsements as required by the contract documents are due not later than 5 business days after execution of contract by the owner.

1.01.8. Ownership of the Competitive Sealed Proposal and Contractor's Proprietary Information

Submitted Proposals, documentation and supporting materials shall become the property of Dallas ISD.

1.01.9. Site Investigation

It is the responsibility of each proposer to examine the project site, existing improvements, and adjacent property and be familiar with existing conditions, and the full scope of the work before submission of a Proposal. By submitting a proposal, the Proposer certifies his acceptance of this requirement.

After investigating the project site and comparing the Drawings and Project Manual with the existing conditions, the proposer should immediately notify the A/E of any conditions for which requirements are not clear; or about which there is any question regarding the extent of the Work involved.

Should the successful proposer fail to make the required investigations and should a question arise after award of contract as to the extent of the Work arising from existing conditions, the A/E will review the issues and make a recommendation to the Project Manager.

Requests for site visits by individual proposers after the formal Pre-Proposal Meeting for the purpose of evaluating and preparing a proposal, will not be accommodated. State law requires proper background checks and badging or accompaniment by District personnel for site visits. It is not practical for the District to provide such accompaniment for individual proposers outside the prescribed Pre-Proposal and Site Visit parameters. Therefore the only viable and appropriate opportunity for viewing the site prior to the proposal date is to attend the Pre-Proposal Meeting and Site Visits.

1.01.10. Evaluation and Contract Award Process

Proposals will be opened publicly to identify the names of the proposer and their respective proposed contract amount (Base Price which includes all Allowances) beginning at 3:00pm Central time upon submittal of Part 2. Other contents of the Proposals will be afforded security sufficient to preclude disclosure of the contents prior to award.

The Proposal Evaluation Committee will evaluate the Proposals. The criteria for evaluation and selection of the successful proposer for this award will be based upon the factors listed in the Evaluation Criteria herein and in the Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal documents.

The Proposal Evaluation Committee consists of the following:

- Construction Services Staff ("CSS")

- SBE (“SBE”)
  DALLAS ISD SBE Program Manager

- Construction Proposal Evaluators (“CPE”)
  Five (5) Owner Representatives and or other in-house staff (as assigned)

- Safety Manager Consultant (“SM”)

After opening the Proposals, the Proposal Evaluation Committee will evaluate and rank each Proposal with respect to the published selection criteria. This ranking will be used to make an advisory recommendation to the Dallas ISD Board of Trustees and is subject to their approval. Per Texas Government Code Ch. 2269, Dallas ISD may negotiate a contract with the selected proposer offers for cost adjustment and other elements of the Proposal. Other than the data read at the Proposal opening, Dallas ISD will endeavor not to disclose any information derived from the Proposals submitted by competing firms in conducting such discussions. The selected Contractor will be required to sign the Dallas ISD Contract form once the district’s Board of Trustees grant the formal recommendation for award at the particular monthly publicly held Board meeting.

If Dallas ISD determines that it is unable to reach a satisfactory agreement with the first ranked proposer, Dallas ISD will formally and in writing, terminate discussions with that proposer. Dallas ISD will then proceed with negotiations with each successive proposer as they appear in the order of ranking until an agreement is reached, or until Dallas ISD has rejected all Proposals. After termination of discussions with any proposer, Owner will not resume discussions with that proposer.

Following execution of a contract agreement between Dallas ISD and the successful contractor(s), the proposers will be notified about the outcome of the selection process.

The award or rejection action regarding this Proposal is at the sole discretion of Dallas ISD. Dallas ISD makes no warranty regarding that a contract will be awarded to any proposer.

If a Contract is awarded, it will be awarded to the proposer offering the best value to Dallas ISD. Dallas ISD is not bound to accept the lowest priced Proposal, if that Proposal is judged and or determined not to be the best value for Dallas ISD.

1.02.1 RECEIPT OF PROPOSALS

See Specification Section 00 41 10 Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist - for packaging instructions and Section 00 11 13 Advertisement for CSP for proposal receipt instructions and details

1.03.1 ADDENDA, ALLOWANCES, ALTERNATES AND UNIT PRICES

Addenda. Contractors are required to acknowledge receipt of all addenda issued prior to the Proposal due date. Failure to acknowledge all addenda in the Proposal Form will result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

Allowances. Contractors are required to include the Allowances described in Section 01 21 00 in the Base Proposal. Refer to the General, Supplementary and Other Conditions of the Contract for Construction for other related details on allowances.

Contingency Allowance. All construction contracts shall contain an Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance (OCCA). The contingency allowance is to be used only for expenditures which do not require a change order. The contingency allowance may be used to pay for changes in the work including but not limited to those resulting from hidden or unforeseen conditions.
The contingency allowance may be used to pay claims. Use of the contingency allowance must be authorized in advance by the Owner’s Project Manager. Refer to Specification Section 00 41 11, for the contingency allowance. The contractor shall not be entitled to markups or profit related to use of the Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance.

Alternates. Contractors are required to submit prices for the Alternates described in Section 01 23 00 to add work or to deduct work from the Base Proposal. Contractor shall be responsible for any changes in the Work affected by acceptance of Alternates. Refer to Drawings and Technical Specifications Sections for items of work affected by Alternates. Election of Alternates will be exercised at the option of the Owner. Contractor will include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects and similar items incidental to, or required for, a complete installation. The amount shown in Specification Section 00 41 12 for each alternate shall include all plant, labor, material, equipment, overhead, profit, insurance and other costs incidental to the performance under the alternate. Failure to provide this information as an alternate is unacceptable and may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

Unit Prices. Contractors are required to submit unit prices for any items that are listed in Spec. Section 01 22 00. The amount shown in Specification Section 00 41 12 for each unit price listed task/item shall include all overhead, profit, insurance and other costs incidental to the performance of the listed task/item. Failure to provide the requested unit pricing may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

1.04.1 EVALUATION CRITERIA

Evaluation for ranking of firms submitting proposals will be based on the criteria shown in the following table (the weighting of each item by the points shown indicate the relative importance of each item and shall be utilized in the ranking of Proposal). Carefully review the submittal requirements, as failure to submit a Proposal in the proper format and in proper number may cause that Proposal to be rejected. The selection shall follow the Texas Government Code Chapter 2269, Contracting and Delivery Procedures for Construction Projects. The firm that offers the best value to the district based on published selection criteria and on its ranking evaluation will be selected. The District shall first attempt to negotiate a contract with the selected firm. Should negotiations be unsuccessful, the firm will be notified in writing of the decision to end negotiations, and the District will proceed to the next firm in the order of selection ranking until a contract is reached or all proposals are rejected. Based upon the proposal material submitted, the following criteria will be used to evaluate firms.

Criteria Number	Criteria Description	Category Value
1	**Purchase Price**	
1a	¹ Proposal Price - This section will be scored according to published formula by Construction Services Procurement personnel and provided for all evaluators:	40 points
	Category Total:	**40 points**
2	**Reputation of Vendors and of the Vendor's Goods or Services**	
2a	References – Designated evaluators will check references to score this section:	5 points
	Category Total:	**5 Points**
3	**The Quality of the Vendor's Goods or Service**	
3a	Safety Plan, and Insurance Rate Modifier (IRM):	5 points
3b	Proposed Project Team(s) and Management approach to proposed projects:	7 Points
	Category Total:	**12 Points**
4	**The Extent to which the Goods or Services Meet the District's Needs**	
4a	General Contractor's current/past K-12 new or renovation construction experience:	10 points
4b	Proposed Construction schedule and phasing plan:	5 points
	Category Total:	**15 points**
5	**The Vendor's Past Relationship with the District**	
5a	Rated based on Past Project Performance, Quality, Compliance with Terms & Regulations.	5 points
	Category Total:	**5 points**
6	**The impact on the Ability of the District to Comply with Laws and Rules Relating to Historically Underutilized Businesses (SBE)**	
6a	Proposer demonstrated a commitment to the district's SBE program by providing enhancements to the administration of the proposer's contracting process for the work to be done by SBE firms. Examples of this commitment may include any of the following: expedited payments, Mentor Protege Programs, early release of retainage, expanding the pool of diverse subcontractors to firms that have not done business with the district, etc.	3 Points
6b	Proposer submitted a list of two (2) SBE subcontractor references.	2 Points
6c	Proposer is a certified SBE OR Proposer submitted a Joint Venture Agreement with a certified SBE OR Proposer submitted a Prime Subcontractor Teaming Agreement with a certified SBE.	5 Points
6d	Proposer submitted a diverse list of certified SBE subcontractors, sub-consultants or suppliers that meets or exceeds the district's SBE aspirational goal in meaningful and significant roles OR Proposer demonstrated outreach designed to meet the SBE project goals with a diverse SBE team of subcontractors, suppliers and subconsultants.	5 Points
6e	Proposer demonstrated a comprehensive framework and understanding of the district's SBE program by: providing a written and detailed SBE compliance plan, designating a high ranking individual who will be responsible for M/WBE contract compliance, monitoring and reporting, ensuring no unauthorized changes to SBE subcontractors, adhering to the SBE commitment and subcontractor payment terms, executing the SBE subcontracting schedule, complying with the district's SBE Program.	5 Points
	Category Total:	**20 Points**
7	**The Total Long-Term Cost to the District to Acquire the Vendor's Goods and Services**	
7a	Financial status of the vendor (as rated by Dun & Bradstreet):	3 Points
	Category Total:	**3 Points**
8	**Any other Relevant Factor Specifically Listed in the Procurement Document**	
8a	N/A	0 points
	Category Total:	**0 points**
	Total	**100 Points Maximum**

[1] Proposed Pricing Formula:

Maximum Score = Forty (40) Minimum Score = Zero (0)

Notes: Low Bidder can only receive the full 40 points if at or under the advertised Construction Budget Estimate (A7)

Notes: Bids that are under budget will only lose 1 point per % from Low Bidder (Column G)

Notes: Bids that are over budget will be penalized 1 point per % from Low Bidder to the Budget & 2 points per % from the Budget

Notes: The low bidder is awarded points up to 20% over budget. If Low bid is 20% or more over Construction Budget Estimate (A7), no bidder shall receive any points for price.

NOTE: If all bidders are 20% or more over budget resulting no points being awarded, Dallas ISD shall use an alternative price evaluation formula to award points for the bids received. Low bidder will be awarded 5 points and each bidder will lose 1 point per percent from the low bid.

Formula = P10-G10*100 P= Max Points Allowed (40) G= % from Low Bid

Step 1- Determine Low Bidder (Column C)

Formula = =IF(Bid=$E$6,"Low Bidder","-")

E6 = Low Bid

Step 2- Calculate Bid Delta ($) from Budget (Column D)

Formula = =Bid-$A$7)

A7 = Construction Budget Estimate

Step 3- Calculate Bid Delta (%) from Budget (Column E)

Formula = =ROUND((Bid-$A$7)/$A$7,2))

A7 = Construction Budget Estimate

Step 4- Determine if Bid is Over or Under Budget (Column F)

Formula = =IF(Bid<=$A$7,"Under Budget","Over Budget"))

A7 = Construction Budget Estimate

Step 5- Calculate Bid Delta (%) from Low Bid (Column G)

Formula = =IF(C10="low bidder",0,ROUND(E10-MIN($E$10:$E$40),2)))

C10 = Low Bidder vs Not Low Bidder

Step 6- Calculate Points Lost for Bids Under Budget. (Column H)

Bid Proposals that are UNDER the Construction Budget Estimate provied will be scored with an escalator of 1. 1 Point Per Percent from low bid will be deducted from max points of 40.

Pricing Formula = =IF(C10="low bidder",0,IF(F10="under budget",ROUND((G10*100)-K10,0),IF(MIN($E$10:$E$40)>0%,0,ROUND(-MIN($E$10:$E$40)*100,0)))))

Under Budget

Step 7- Calculate Points Lost for Bids Over Budget. (Column K)

Bid Proposals that are OVER the Construction Budget Estimate provided will be scored with an escalator of 1 from the Low Bid to the Budget and an Escalator of 2 from the Budget to their bid. 1 Point Per Percent from the low bid will be deducted from low bid to budget & 2 points per percent from budget to their amount from max points of 40.

Pricing Formula = =IF(F10="under budget",0,IF(F10="OVER BUDGET",IF(C10="low bidder",ROUND((E10*100),0),ROUND((E10*100),0)))))

Step 8- Add Multiplier to Points Lost for Bids Over Budget (Column M)

Bid Proposals that are OVER the Construction Budget Estimate provied will be scored with an escalator of 1 from the Low Bid to the Budget & an Escalator or 2 from the Budget to their bid. 1 Point Per Percent from low bid will be deducted from low bid to budget & 2 points per percent from budget to their amount from max points of 40.

Pricing Formula = =IF(C10="low bidder",K10*2,IF(F10="under Budget",0,(E10*100)*2)))

Step 9- Calculate Total Points Lost (Column N)

Add Points Lost from Step 7 (Column J) + Points Lost from Step 8 (Column M)

Pricing Formula = =J10+M10)

Step 10- Calculate Total Points Awarded (Column Q)

Subtract Points Lost from Max Points of 40

Pricing Formula = =IF(C10="low bidder",K10*2,IF(F10="under Budget",0,(E10*100)*2)))

C10 = Low Bidder vs Not Low Bidder

SECTION 00 31 00 - AVAILABLE PROJECT INFORMATION

121.01 PROJECT NAME/ADDRESS

CSP 207774, consisting of improvements to:

Org #	PROJECT NAME	PROJECT TYPE	ADDRESS
237	**John W. Runyon Elementary School**	**Renovation**	**10750 Cradlerock Drive Dallas, TX 75217**

1.02 OWNER

Dallas Independent School District
Construction Services
Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building
9400 N. Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, TX 75231

State Notification

- A copy of the 10-day Abatement and/or Demolition notification submitted to the State, must be forwarded to the following departments within reasonable time frame:
- Dallas ISD Environmental-DDANIELS@dallasisd.org
- Bond Safety Department- C105785@dallasisd.org

Guidelines for Facility Owner Section

- 10-day Abatement and Demolition State Notification, the below information must be included on **the facility owner section:**
- Name: Dallas Independent School District- Construction Services
- Attention: Contract Manager
- Address: 9400 N US 75-Central EXPY, STE 800 Dallas, TX 75231

1.03 OWNER'S PROJECT MANAGER (PM)

Reid Mitchell will be the Owner's Project Manager (PM) for the management of planning, design, permitting, construction, and post-construction for this CSP. All correspondence and communication during the contract finalization, construction and post-construction processes shall be directed to the Architect/Engineer firm (A/E) with copy to **Reid Mitchell.** During construction, the PM shall have authority to act on behalf of Dallas ISD for Owner related direction.

Reid Mitchell, Associate Project Manager
Dallas Independent School District
Construction Services
Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building
9400 N. Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, TX 75231
Phone: 512-538-5440
E-mail: C0122579@dallasisd.org

1.04 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER FIRM (A/E)

CaCo Architecture, LLC. has been retained by Dallas ISD as the primary Architect/Engineer (A/E) for this bid package. All Drawings and Specifications have been prepared by the Architect/Engineer (A/E), including those dated 10/22/2025. All correspondence and communication regarding these documents shall be directed to the Architect/Engineer (A/E) with a copy to Project Manager.

CaCo Architecture, LLC.
1412 Main Street, Suite 1600, Dallas, TX 75202
Main Contact: Roberto Diaz
Phone: 972-865-1339
Email: rdiaz@cacollc.com

1.05 Summary of Work. See related Section 01 10 00 Summary of Work

1.06 Project Schedule. The Contractor shall diligently prosecute and achieve Substantial Completion of the Work no later than as shown below.

Org # - SCHOOL NAME and PROJECT TYPE	SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION	FINAL COMPLETION
237 – John W. Runyon Elementary School – Renovation	07/25/2027	60 days after Substantial

A Notice to Proceed (NTP) will be required before any work may commence. The NTP will be issued to the contractor when signed contracts, and any other required forms required, are returned to the Owner with valid bonds and insurance.

A separate contract will be issued by Dallas ISD for each school. The Contractor will be required to provide Payment and Performance Bonds for each contract. Contractor shall be responsible for all permit costs including plan review fees.

1.07 Estimated Construction Budget (including allowances). The estimated construction budget for each school and total for the package is shown in the table below. The Owner reserves the right to reject any and all proposals if they exceed the estimated construction budget amount. The total base proposal amount for the package, which includes the listed allowances, will be considered in the evaluation of the Contractor's proposal.

For accounting purposes each school construction budget stands alone. In Section 00 41 11 Proposal Form Base – Base Bid (Part 1-A of the CSP), Proposers are required to enter a cost per school breakdown of their proposed Base Bid amount including allowances so that the cost per school can be verified against the per school budget during negotiations. These breakdowns are not for evaluation purposes and will not be read at the proposal opening.

School Org #	School Name and Project Type	Construction Cost Limitation (CCL)	In Contract Owner Controlled Contingency (IC) 5% for Renovation 2.5% for New	Total Other Owner Allowances	Estimated Construction Budget (CCL + IC + Allowances)
237	John W. Runyon Elementary School – Renovation	$5,828,261.40	$291,413.07		$6,119,674.47

1.01 **Student Safety is Priority-One**. The General Contractor ("the Contractor") has the duty of care to perform the Work safely. The Dallas ISD Safety Program and School Operational Parameters are incorporated into the Project Contract Documents. **Under the AIA 101 and 201, the Contractor's Superintendent is the person responsible for the daily safe execution of the Work.** The Contractor recognizes the critical need for the safety of all persons involved with the construction project, and most specifically the safety of students and the campus staff, and the need to conduct any and all construction operations in such a way as to NOT endanger the students and to NOT DISRUPT THE SCHOOL OPERATIONS.

The Contractor's Superintendent will plan his work with the students' safety as priority one. **On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work (in coordination with the campus Principal, but under DISD Construction Services direction) with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the schools' operations. To this end, for each active project, the Contractor's safety manager and the Contractor's job site specific safety person MUST attend each DISD monthly Safety Committee Meeting. The PMF PM will also attend.**

Daily Contractor Operations:

- Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided by the Contractors' subs and reviewed by the Contractor.

- Prior to the end of each work shift, the Contractor's Superintendent will walk the site, and take the requisite action, to physically field verify that the campus has been made safe for student occupancy (the following morning), to protect the Work, materials and equipment from vandalism and theft. All gates and doors must be secured, and all warning signs must be posted.

- And at the end of the workday, the Contractor WILL audit the campus life safety systems and then call Central Control at 214.932.5627, to confirm to Central Control that the fire alarm system and security systems are back on normal operations.

- **The Contractor will not rely on DISD ("the Owner") staff, school personnel, or PMF PM to perform his end of shift duties of making the campus safe for occupancy and auditing the life safety systems.**

The Superintendent must have OSHA 30-Hour Training and must be proficient in enforcing the Dallas ISD Safety Program and School Operations Parameters. Each Foreman, that will be working on site, must have the OSHA 10-Hour Training.

2.01 **School Operating Hours.** For Contractor construction purposes, access to school facilities shall be limited during the school's normal working hours. During school operating hours, student occupancy and use is priority one. **And during normal hours, on a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work (in coordination with the campus Principal, but under DISD Construction Services direction) with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the schools' operations.** To this end, during school operating hours, the Contractor will incorporate student safety as priority one in his daily task specific Job Hazard Analysis ("JHAs") and there will be no digging during normal school operating hours.

3.01 **Normal hours** are defined as the time and days when DISD provides for custodial staff to be on site. The cost for DISD custodial staff, during normal working hours on normal working days, shall NOT be included in the Contractor's proposal. During procurement, the Contractor is free to call the campus to inquire as to the campus normal hours of operation. The DISD School calendar is readily available on the Dallas ISD website with a listing of the campus working days.

4.01 **After Hours Access.** The campus custodian must be on site when the Contractor is working after hours. **The Contractor is responsible for all after-hours custodial costs.** This cost shall be included in the Contractors proposal price. After hours are defined as the time when DISD does not have custodial staff on site. The Contractor will incur custodial overtime costs, at the rate of $30 per hour, for DISD custodial staff presence at the school site. The Contractor will not rely on DISD

("the Owner") staff or school to perform the Contractor's housekeeping duties. Custodial staff will be on site only to allow the Contractor access to the campus. Custodial staff will not perform cleanup work for the Contractor.

The Contractor is responsible for all after-hours custodian costs on days and times including but not limited to nights, weekends, DISD non-working days, and holidays. Any request by the Contractor to enter areas of the school, after normal operating hours, shall be coordinated and approved in advance per the (5) step process outlined on the DISD **'After Hours Access Request Form'**.

The contractor shall utilize the After-Hours Access Request form and submit said form to DISD at least two (2) working days prior to the needed access date. Contractor shall submit copies of each fully executed form(s) to the Project Manager ("PMF") via email each day and during each weekly progress meetings so that they may be attached to the meeting minutes. Upon request, the PMF PM will provide the After-Hours Access Request form to the Contractor in electronic format. **After execution of the Work, the Contractor must email all custodial forms to the PMF prior to leaving the site. Noncompliance will require the Contractor to daily hand deliver (the following morning) the end of the day executed OT form to the bond office.**

5.01 **Holidays, Spring, Summer, Fall, and Winter Break Operations.** The Contractor will explicitly show each holiday, spring, summer, fall, and winter break and each SPA on his schedule. The Contractor will plan the project's construction operations to perform major portions of the Work after hours, during holidays, and at times when the campus is NOT occupied. The heating scope should be performed during the summer and the cooling scope should be performed during the heating season.

The DISD School Calendar is available on the Dallas ISD website with a listing of all the holidays and breaks. Any requirement by the Contractor to enter areas of the school during the evenings, non-working days, and holidays shall follow the (5) step process outlined on the DISD 'After Hours Custodial Request Form' and the area will be made safe for student occupancy (the following morning).

6.01 **Summer School Status**. The Contractor will plan the construction Work to perform major portions of the Work during the summer, after hours, during holidays, and at times when the campus is NOT occupied. The heating scope should be performed during the summer and the cooling scope should be performed during the heating season. The Dallas ISD School Calendar is available on the Dallas ISD website with a listing of all the holidays and breaks.

To the extent feasible, the Owner will plan NOT to have summer school at school sites affected by construction. Select campuses may have summer programs and or early school start dates. **Upon mobilization to the campus, it is the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate with the campus Principal to phase the Work in such a way as to incorporate summer programs and or early campus start dates into the project Work schedule.**

WHEN WORKERS AND DISD TEACHERS/STAFF ARE BOTH WORKING IN THE SAME AREA, THE CONTRACTOR'S SUPERINTENDENT (OR SAFETY MANAGER) WILL HAVE THE STAFF & STUDENTS SAFETY AS PRIORITY ONE. SPECIFICALLY, (2) WEEKS BEFORE THE STUDENTS RETURN FROM SUMMER BREAK, THE CONTRACTOR WILL TRANSITION FROM DAY TO NIGHT WORK. DURING THIS TWO-WEEK PERIOD, IF FOR ANY REASON THE CONTRACTOR HAS TO WORK DURING THE DAY THEN THE CONTRACTOR'S SUPERINTENDENT (OR SAFETY MANAGER) WILL WALK, MONITOR, AND COMMAND AND CONTROL HIS WORKFORCE UNDER THE EXPLICIT SCOPE OF MONITORING TO KEEPING THE STAFF/STUDENTS SAFE.

7.01 **State Testing Dates**. The Contractor will NOT be allowed to perform construction activities during critical achievement test periods. After hours work will NOT be allowed on testing days. During state testing periods, the Contractor's Superintendent will be required be on site prevent his workers from being on site during testing periods. The campus State testing dates are campus specific. **Upon mobilization to the campus, it is the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate**

with the campus Principal to inform himself of the requisite state testing days and to explicitly include said campus testing dates into the project Work schedule.

For each calendar year, Contractor shall allow for a minimum of 11 testing days for Elementary Schools, 18 testing days for Middle Schools and 23 testing days for High Schools. Actual testing days and dates may vary for each school and must be confirmed with the respective school Principal.

The System-wide Testing Schedule may be available under the School Calendar on the Dallas ISD website. The Contractor should consult this calendar to determine the number of testing days that will take place during the duration of the Project and the Contractor shall include those days in his proposal.

8.01 **The Contractor Will Not Disrupt the Campus Utilities, Critical Systems, or Critical Areas of Operation**. The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work safely and in a manner to NOT impact the campus Critical systems and to not disrupt school operations. The campus critical systems and areas of operation are areas/systems that are required for campus occupancy. **The campus critical systems include but are not limited to the campus air conditioning systems, the campus utilities (water, sewer, electrical, etc.), the campus life safety systems, the internet, the MDF/IDF rooms, and critical areas such as the kitchen and the campus admin areas.** Any renovation work that would require a shutdown of a critical system or impact an area of operation MUST be accomplished during after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays, and other times when the school is not in operation. All critical system and areas of operation shutdown SPAs must be shown on the project schedule and planned for in advance so that the campus is ready for student occupancy. To this end, the Contractor must provide DISD with a written Critical System Safe Plan of Action ("Critical System SPA") notification no less than 10 calendar days in advance.

A shutdown of a critical system requires written Owner approval. **The Contractor will not impact a critical system or a critical area of operation without explicit written approval from the Owner.** To this end, the Contractor MUST provide a written Critical Systems and Areas of Operation Safe Plan of Action ("Critical System SPA") and MUST decide for temporary systems or services that are acceptable to the Owner. The Contractor must provide temporary power for the campus life safety systems. During an electrical power shutdown, the life safety and campus security systems must remain operational under temporary power. And during power shutdowns the campus food must be refrigerated under temporary power to prevent spoilage.

9.01 **10-Day Notice of Power Shutdown**. The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work safely and in a manner to NOT damage the Owner's equipment. **To this end, the Contractor must provide the Owner with a written proposed Power Shutdown Safe Plan of Action ("Power Shutdown SPA") no less than 10 calendar days in advance of the shutdown.** The COMPLETE proposed SPA will be transmitted via email to both the Project Management Firm PM (PMF) and the DISD Safety Manager. After review by the Owner's Safety Manager (with 10 calendar days in advance notice), the PMF PM will transmit said Power Shutdown SPA to DISD's Contract Manager, DISD Central Maintenance Office, the A/E team, and the campus custodial staff. All utilities shutdowns must be shown on the project schedule.

During electrical power shutdowns, the life safety and campus security systems must remain operational. The Contractor must provide temporary power for the campus life safety systems. And during power shutdowns the campus food must be refrigerated under temporary power to prevent spoilage.

10.01 **Worker Identity Badges**. The Contractor must provide each construction workers with a DISD approved third party issued identification badge, that shall be worn, visibly at all times while the worker is present on the campus construction site. **All workers must undergo a background check via Dallas ISD's approved third party vendor. After badging, prior to being allowed on site, each worker must attend a 2-hour DISD Safety Orientation. The Contractor is responsible for all badging and safety orientation costs.**

11.01 **Construction Fencing, Parking and Staging Areas**. Because the Work is a Phased project, the Contractor SHALL include the cost of all hard barriers and signage in his bid. The Contractor SHALL include the cost of covered walkways in his bid. The Contractor SHALL provide hard barriers and signage at his own cost. No CAEAs or additional funds will be provided to the Contractor for fencing, signage, parking, relocation of the jobsite trailer and or relocation of the staging areas.

Six-foot fencing and privacy cloth SHALL be provided to enclose the Contractor's laydown areas and job site trailer. Contractor site activities, storage offices, and fabrication shall be limited to the areas enclosed by construction fences. Contractor parking SHALL be limited to the area enclosed by the construction fence or other Owner approved areas adjacent to school property. The Contractor SHALL include the cost of offsite parking for his workers in his bid.

Because the Work is a Phased project, the Contractor shall include the cost of all required hard barriers and signage in his bid. The Contractor will incorporate all costs associated with deenergizing and or relocating hard barriers, electrical exit signs, etc. for each phase of the phased Work. The Contractor must coordinate all temporary barriers with the Fire Marshall. As the Contractor shuts down a part of the school, the Contractor SHALL erect, at his own cost, a floor to ceiling barricade to completely separate his work area from the campus occupants. The barrier shall be made of 3/4" plywood, it shall extend from floor to ceiling, wall to wall, shall have a door that can be locked, and shall be painted on the Owner's side. This barrier shall remain in place until the Work is completely finished. Safety warning signage shall be displayed near the temporary barrier. Temporary construction barriers and safety signage must be provided at tie-ins from Additions to existing structures.

12.01 **Fire Alarm System Maintenance, Operation, Removal and Certification**. Life Safety Systems are critical systems for occupancy and may only be disabled under a SPA and WRITTEN Owner approval. The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs and coordination of any disconnection, removal, shunting, reconnection, testing, and re-certification of the fire alarm and security systems as required to accomplish the Work. The Contractor is responsible for maintaining the existing fire alarm system, security system, and life safety systems operational throughout construction duration. If the Contractor requires the temporary or permanent relocation of fire alarm devices in order to complete the Work, then Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the PMF Project Manager and utilizing DISD's Vendor (if the system is under warranty) to disconnect, remove, secure, protect, reinstall, re-test and re-certify said equipment or system. If no vendor is indicated (or it is not under warranty), then the Contractor may select a qualified fire alarm vendor of his choosing. The Contractor is responsible for all costs and coordination of any disconnection, removal, shunting, reconnection, testing, and re-certification of the fire alarm system required to accomplish the Work and to receive the requisite green tag or certificates from the applicable Fire Department.

Anytime an existing fire alarm system or security system is disabled, prior to leaving the site for the day, the Contractor must contact Dallas ISD's Safety and Security Central Control at 214.932.5627. The Contractor will be required to provide his name, company, cell phone number, the reason for placing the system in trouble and how long the system will be disabled. The fire alarm and or the security system will not be left disabled overnight. **At the end of the workday, the Contractor must audit the campus life safety systems and call Central Control at 214.932.5627, to confirm that he has place the fire alarm system and security systems back on normal operations.** The Contractor will not rely on DISD ("the Owner") staff or school security personnel to perform this duty.

Contractor shall comply with the following time restrictions, when scheduling Fire Alarm inspections, and placing the life safety systems on TEST, **that require contact with DISD Central Control**. The Contractor will be responsible for any and all costs associated with said inspections (including but not limited to scheduling the Fire Marshal, City or any other personnel needed for this inspection).

- 7:00 AM - 9:00 AM (Arrival): Fire Inspections can occur before 7:00 AM or after 9:00 AM
- 2:30 PM - 4:00 PM (Dismissal): Fire Inspections can occur before 2:30 PM or after 4:00 PM

13.01 **Technology/Communications**. The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work in a manner to NOT damage the Owner's equipment. To this end, the Contractor must provide DISD with a written Power Shutdown Safe Plan of Action ("Power Shutdown SPA") notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than 10 calendar days in advance of the shutdown.

Contractor is responsible for any damages or changes to the existing technology/communication system throughout the duration of the construction and must make any appropriate repairs. If the Contractor requires the temporary or permanent relocation of technology in order to complete his work, then the Contractor is responsible for notifying Dallas ISD and completing all disconnections, removals, temporary facilities, security, protection, re-installation, re-testing and re-certification, etc. to maintain the system. The original warranty will need to be maintained / restored. Contractor is responsible for all costs and coordination.

14.01 **Water and Electrical Utilities.** On new construction projects, the Contractor shall provide and pay for all temporary and permanent utility services necessary for the execution and completion of the Work. On new construction projects, where new utility services are being installed, the Contractor shall establish temporary utility accounts and pay for said temporary utility costs for the duration of the project (until Substantial Completion). Utility costs paid by the Contractor after Substantial Completion shall be reimbursed by the District.

On renovation projects, the contractor is allowed to use temporary power and water from the existing school for the Work inside the building.

15.01 **Off-Limit School Areas**. The Contractor shall provide for hard barriers between his work and the campus occupants. When working in the existing building, the Contractor shall not use the school's cafeteria, telephones, restrooms, vending machines, staff parking lots or any other school facility. The Contractor shall include in his bid, the cost for temporary worker restrooms and the costs for offsite parking.

16.01 **No Overhead Lifting and No Trenching During Normal School Hours**. The Contractor shall NOT perform overhead lifting activities over areas occupied by students, school personnel, or visitors. The Contractor recognizes the critical need for the safety of all persons involved with the construction project, most specifically the students and the campus staff, and the need to conduct any and all construction operations in such a way as to NOT endanger the students and to NOT DISRUPT THE SCHOOL OPERATIONS. **Any Work that would require lifting over an occupied area or excavating MUST be accomplished during after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays, and other times when the school is NOT in operation.** Roofing kettle operations will not be allowed to commence while the campus is occupied.

The Contractor shall NOT perform any trenching or excavating activities during regular school hours. Prior to digging, the Contractor shall perform a GPR and overlay the utilities finding over the Work areas. One week prior to any planned excavation or trenching, the Contractor shall conduct a Pre-Dig meeting (on site) with all the subs involved. Agenda will include a discussion about the GPR findings, the scope and review of the existing underground utilities as it relates to the planned trenching / excavation. At the pre-dig meeting, Contractor shall present a contingency plan if any utility is struck during execution of such work. The GPR findings overlay will be shared with all subcontractors and will be posted for worker ready reference at the jobsite trailer.

All utilities must first be hand dug, to field verify the depth and location of said line. Only after field verifying the depth and location, may the Contractor use mechanical equipment to excavate.

17.01 **Delivery of Materials and Equipment.** The Contractor shall issue a directive to all of his subcontractors that deliveries for this project shall be made to the Contractor and not to the campus office or to DISD personnel. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to replace, at his own cost, equipment or deliveries that are lost because of noncompliance with said delivery requirements.

The Contractor will also direct his subcontractors to NOT make deliveries during student arrival, student departure and on student testing days.

18.01 **Owner's Right to Salvaged Items**. Dallas ISD reserves the right to salvage any and all materials. The Contractor shall notify the Owner at least 4 weeks prior to the start of demolition (in each area where demolition will be performed). During said 4 weeks, the Owner may furnish a list of items to be salvaged, labeled, logged, and delivered to a place of DISD's choosing. Upon request, the Contractor will provide a receptacle acceptable to DISD for said salvageable items.

19.01 **Equipment Access**. During installation of new chilled water, hot water lines, new VAVs, AHUs, RTUs, Boilers, etc. the Contractor will install the new work in a way where he provides the requisite equipment access at each service side panel in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. The Contractor will account for insulation thickness, all existing and new above ceiling MEP and will coordinate his work prior to installation of new equipment. Please refer to the Contract Documents for specific details and preinstall meetings.

20.01 **Removal of Fixed Furnishings, Fixtures or Equipment.** The Contractor is responsible for the cost of removal, cataloguing, protection and the re-installation of fixed furnishings, fixtures or equipment required by the Contractor for the execution of his Work. The Contractor will include in his base bid, the costs to relocate and protect from damage said furniture, equipment, and property within any given room.

21.01 **Moveable Furnishings or Equipment.** This is a phased project. The Contractor will be responsible for any relocation of furniture or school property within any given room as necessary to perform the Work. The Contractor will include in his base bid, the costs to relocate and protect from damage said furniture, equipment, and property within any given room. The Contractor must obtain written approval to relocate furnishings or equipment within the room from the Owner via the PMF PM.

22.01 **I.T. Equipment and Safety/Security Equipment**. The Contractor SHALL coordinate a preinstallation meeting between DISD IT, the Contractor and the PMF PM. The Owner will be responsible for moving I.T. equipment and chemicals from science labs, when necessary. A pre-move meeting will be held at least five (5) days prior to any move requiring the Owner's involvement. If required, to accommodate significant demolition and construction activities, DISD will provide and the PMF will manage a moving services vendor to relocate movable furnishings and equipment out of each phased classroom area and into temporary facilities. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the phasing of the Work with the Owner's moving vendor. Contractor will be responsible for the protection of any furnishing or equipment remaining in the Work areas.

23.01 **Tobacco and Alcohol Products Prohibited.** Use of all tobacco, alcohol and illegal uncontrolled substances is prohibited on Dallas ISD property. The Contractor will take daily action to enforce compliance.

24.01 **The Contractor Will Not Interact with Students/Campus Staff.** This is a phased project. The Contractor will install hard barriers between his Work and the campus occupants. As the Work progresses, the Contractor will move or relocate the hard barriers are required to prevent worker/student/staff interaction. The Contractor shall issue daily instructions to all of his subcontractors to refrain from interactions with students and campus staff.

25.01 **The Contractor Will Not Use Existing School Facilities.** Construction crews MUST stay away from all areas existing school facilities that are not within the limit of the designated work area. When working in the existing building, the Contractor shall not use the school's cafeteria, telephones, restrooms, vending machines, staff parking lots or any other school facility. The Contractor shall include in his bid, the cost for temporary worker restrooms and the costs for offsite parking. The Contractor shall issue instructions to all of his subcontractors to avoid interactions with students and campus staff. The Contractor will not rely on DISD ("the Owner") staff or school security personnel to perform his duties.

26.01 **Pressurized Testing.** Repressurizing of an existing system will be accomplished gradually and methodically and in a way that it does not damage the existing infrastructure. The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work safely and in a manner to NOT impact the campus Critical systems. Pressurized testing, on MEP systems, shall be done after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays, and other times when the school is not in operation by Dallas ISD that occupied areas are not impacted, directly or indirectly, due to the testing.

27.01 **No Roofing Work Activities Allowed Over Occupied Areas.** On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. Activities that may cause a hazard to the below occupants is restricted. To this end, prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will incorporate this requirement. NO roofing work or hot work is allowed, regardless of the extent, when the campus is occupied. Specifically, roof work not allowed while the campus is occupied includes, but is not limited to roof coring, roof drilling, installation of roofing electrical and plumbing pipes, no installation of roof blocking, no installation of gas lines or equipment curbs, no installation of flashing, no roof demolition activities, no placing materials on the roof, and no maintenance or warranty work that would require changing of a piece of equipment.

Minimal inspections and maintenance activity are allowed. For example, activities that would require a workman to access the roof and make minor adjustments or to change a small blower. Said activity must be coordinate in advance.

28.01 **Demolition Activities Will Be Conducted With Student Safety As Priority One.** On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his demolition work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided, and the Asbestos report will be reviewed so as to prevent an asbestos release. And during abatement demolition and containment, the MEP chilled water lines, electrical lines, low voltage, fire suppression lines, etc. will be temporarily supported by the abatement contractor. This cost will be part of the contractor's base scope and will be included in his bid.

29.01 **Phased Project With Student Safety As Priority One.** On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided.

Since the school buildings will be in use during construction, the Work shall be conducted in phases as proposed in the Contract Documents phasing drawings. **Phasing proposed by the Contractor during procurement will be deemed proposed and not as accepted.** After the Notice to Proceed ("NTP') is issued to the Contractor, the Contractor's proposed phasing will be reviewed by the PMF Project Manager. The PMF PM will make a recommendation for DISD Contract Manager acceptance or rejection. **If proposed phasing plan is rejected by the PMF PM or DISD Contract Manager, then the phasing plan in the Contract Documents stands**.

Because the Work is a Phased project, the Contractor will include the cost of all required hard barriers and signage in his bid. The Contractor will incorporate all costs associated with demoing and or relocating hard barriers, electrical exit signs, etc. for the phased Work. The Contractor must coordinate all temporary barriers with the Fire Marshall. As the Contractor closes down a part of the school, the Contractor SHALL erect (at his own cost) a floor to ceiling barricade to completely separate his work areas from the campus occupants. Said barrier shall be made of 3/4" plywood, shall extend from floor to ceiling, shall be installed from wall to wall, shall have a door that can be locked, and shall be painted on the Owner's side. Hard barrier will remain in place and be relocated as work progresses until the Work is completely finished. The door will be kept secured to prevent students from entering construction areas.

30.01 **Project Schedule.** The Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. The Contractor will explicitly show each holiday, spring, summer, fall, winter break and each SPA on his schedule. The Contractor will plan

the construction Work to perform major work activities after hours, during holidays, and at times when the campus is NOT occupied.

Even though DISD does not operate its HVAC systems as true 4 pipe system, most DISD campuses have a 4-pipe system. Hence, the cooling scope should be performed during the heating season and the heating scope should be performed during the summer. These activities must be planned in advance and shown on the project schedule. The cooling portion of the work that is performed during the summer break must be fully operational by the time the teachers return from their summer break. The heating work that is performed during the winter holidays must be fully operational by the time the students return.

The Project Schedule must show that during the summer break, 2 weeks prior to students' arrival, the contractor will shift to working nights, weekends, DISD non-working days, and holidays. 2 weeks prior to students arrival, the teachers will occupy the campus during the day to prepare their classrooms for student use.

The Contractor must plan in advance and show on the project schedule all Dallas ISD Safety Manual high risk SPAs including but not limited to Pre Crane, Pre-Dig, Pre-Crawlspace, Pre-Dig, and Pre-Utility SPAs.

31.01 **Weekly Owner, Architect, Contractor ("OAC Meetings").** The Contractor's Project Manager and Superintendent MUST attend all weekly OACs. Missing more than 2 OACs will be grounds for replacing the Contractor's Project Manager and or Superintendent.

On a weekly basis the Contractor will organize and host an Owner, Architect, and Contractor ("OAC") progress meeting. At said meeting the Contractor will provide all attendees a hard copy of the project schedule, a copy of the 3 week look ahead, the RFI Log, the ASI Log, the PCO Log, the Submittals Log, and a hard copy of the Equipment Long Lead Items List. After the OAC meeting, the Owner, Architect, and the Contractor will walk the site to review installed work.

32.01 **DISD Monthly Safety Meeting.** For each active project (that has not reached Substantial Completion), the Contractor's Safety Manager and the Contractor's job site Superintendent MUST attend each DISD monthly Safety Committee Meeting. Noncompliance with said requirement will be grounds for replacing the Contractor's Safety Manager and or Contractor's Site Safety Person.

33.01 **Inclement Weather SPAs.** The Contractor will comply with DISD Inclement Weather SPA reporting requirements. The Contractor's Project Manager and Superintendent on a daily basis will monitor the weather to mitigate the damage to DISD property. The Contractor will take proactive action to prevent water intrusion. When HVAC or roofing work is in progress, the Contractor will temp in his Work to prevent water intrusion.

34.01 **Jobsite Trailer Postings.** On a weekly basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety and to provide his subcontractors the most up to date project information available. To this end, the below items will be posted immediately adjacent to the job trailer entrance:

- The Project Team's Contact List w/Phone Numbers and Email.
- A Complete Copy of the Operations Parameters.
- A Colored Copy of The Most Recent GPR Report.
- A Site Map Showing the Location of each Utility Shutdown Valve.
- A Copy of the Project Baseline Schedule
- A Copy of the 3 Week Lookahead Schedule.
- A Copy of the Project's Phasing Plan.
- A hard copy of the last OAC Hand Outs.

On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work (in coordination with the campus Principal, but under DISD Construction Services direction) with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations.

Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided. And, prior to the end of each work shift, the Contractor's Superintendent will walk the site, and take the requisite action, to make the campus safe for student occupancy (the following day), to protect the Work, materials and equipment from vandalism and theft. And at the end of the workday, the Contractor's Superintend will check all the life safety systems and then call Central Control at 214.932.5627, to confirm that the fire alarm and security systems are operational. The Contractor will not rely on DISD ("the Owner") staff or school security personnel to perform his duties.

35.01 **Lessons Learned.** For each active project, the Contractor must incorporate the below lessons learned into the planning and execution of the Work.

1) This is a phased project. The roof, windows, floors, and ceiling demolition and abatement scope will be phased by wing. Demo of the entire campus roof, windows, floors, and ceiling demolition and abatement scope will NOT be allowed at once.

2) The Contractor's Superintendent will plan his work with the students' safety as priority one. If the work endangers campus operations, it must be performed after hours, on weekends, holidays or times when the campus is not occupied.

3) **During the Summer Break, the Contractor PM and Superintendent are not allowed to take vacation. Noncompliance with said requirement will be grounds for replacing the PM and or Superintendent.**

4) All long lead item submittals must be driven to conclusion within 90 days of the Notice to Proceed. The project submittals must be driven to conclusion within 120 days of the notice to proceed.

5) Immediately after mobilizing, the Contractor will audit all of the school's life safety systems (Fire Alarm and Security Panels) and the Contractor will provide DISD will a video of any deficiencies. It will be assumed that all the systems are in perfect condition if the Contractor does not provide said video within 30 days from mobilization. At this point the Contractor will be responsible for any and all costs to repair the life safety systems.

6) For new building additions and or new building construction work any utilities work that would require a shutdown of a critical system or impact an area of operation MUST be accomplished after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays and other times when the school is not in operation. All utilities must first be hand dug, to field verify the depth and location of said line. Only after field verifying the depth and location, may the Contractor use mechanical equipment to excavate.

7) Jurisdictional inspections shall be coordinated with the campus to not impact campus operations. The Contractor is required to include the costs of all inspection whether during normal of after-hours in his bid.

REIMBURSABLE **Fund Code:** ____

Dallas Independent School District
Construction Services
After Hours-Work, Holidays and/or Holidays Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)

SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION

Contract P.O.#: _____ TEA/ORG. #:_____ School Name:_____

Contractor Name: _____ Contractor Person In-Charge: _____

Scope: _____

Name of Dallas ISD Operations Employee: _____ Biometric Code:_____
Cellular Number for Dallas ISD Operations Employee_____

SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:

Date of **Scheduled** Work: _____Hours of **Scheduled** Work: _____

Time **Scheduled** From _____ To _____

Contractor Person-In-Charge Signature: _____ **Date:** _____

Dallas ISD Program Administrator Approval : _____ **Date:** _____

SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:

Date of **Actual** Work _____

Time **Actually** worked From _____ To _____ Biometric Clock Used – Check 'X' if Yes
If Not Used – See Step 3 below

Hours of **Actual** Work _____

Contractor Person-In-Charge Signature: _____ **Date:** _____

Dallas ISD Operations Employee Signature: _____ **Date:** _____

PROCESS FOR PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION AND POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:

Step 1. At least two (2) working days prior to scheduled access, Contractor shall fill out Sections A & B, sign Section B, and email the form to Program Management Firm who will obtain Dallas ISD Program Administrator Approval. Contractor will be provided name of the Operations employee by the Program Management Firm.

Step 2. Contractor and Operations employee from Dallas ISD will meet at main entry of building at the scheduled start time.
- Contractor must notify Program Management Firm within 24 hours or pre-arranged date if contractor is unable to work.
- In case of work being cancelled for some reason, Contractor shall fill out the actual hours in Section C as "0" and email the form to the Program Management Firm.

Step 3. Upon completion of the scheduled day(s)'s work, Contractor shall complete Section C on the same form; Contractor and the Operations employee shall sign Section C; and Contractor shall send the completed form, no later than one (1) business day after execution of work, (all sections completed and signed off) to Program Management Firm. Please use a cover sheet for this step, which shows your name and contact number.
- Section C – Contractor to verify with Operations employee if Biometric Clock was used. If not used, Operations employee must complete and provide District's Non-Exempt Attendance Report with an explanation why Biometric Clock was not used.

Step 4. Contractor shall submit copies of completed and fully executed form(s) for a given month, with the respective application for payment on a monthly basis.

Step 5. **Dallas ISD shall make payment to the Operations employee(s)** based on the standard compensation procedures for Dallas ISD in accordance with the "Fair Labor Standards" Act. **Final Payment to the Contractor will be reduced by the reimbursement amount.**

Failure to follow all these steps listed above will result in:

- **Pre-Work Notification**: If the Contractor does not obtain the Dallas ISD Program Administrator approval at least two (2) working days prior to the requested scheduled access, overtime will not be worked for the day or days expected.
- **Post-Work Notification:** After the work has been completed the signed off form must be submitted the next day. If the completed form is not submitted timely the District may consider the removal of the Contractor's Person-In-Charge from the project.
- Failure to comply with the District's requirements may have a negative impact on the Contractor's ability to be assigned future work for the District.

Dallas Independent School District
Bond Program
Scheduled Utility Shutdown Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)

SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION: ☐ ***Permanent** ☐ **Temporary**

School Name and Org. #: _____

Bond Program Manager (PM) Name: _____

General Contractor (GC) Person In-Charge: _____ _____

Sub-Contractor (SUB) Person In-Charge: (Name) _____ (Contact No.) _____

SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:

Utility System(s) to Be Shut down: _____

Utility Meter number _____

Description of Work Performed: _____

Describe Procedure for Shutdown: _____

Safety Measures/ Precautions for Shutdown: _____

Date/ Time **Requested** for Shutdown:

Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date	Restart Time

It is requested that the noted** building system(s) be allowed for "shutdown" **by the General Contractor to allow for our tie-in of services for the Project as enumerated below. We note that** five (5) days advance notice **is required as a minimum. I hereby certify that the required work has been coordinated and scheduled to achieve completion within the requested time-period.

SUB Person-In-Charge:	**(Sign)**	**(Date)**
GC Person-In-Charge:	(Sign)	(Date)
Bond Program Manager (PM) Approval:	(Sign)	(Date)
DISD Project Manager Approval:	(Sign)	(Date)

SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:

Actual Date/ Time for Shutdown:

Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date	Restart Time

GC Person-In-Charge Certification:	(Sign)	(Date)
Bond Program Manager (PM) Certification:	(Sign)	(Date)
DISD Project Manager Certification:	(Sign)	(Date)
DISD Sustainability Certification:	(Sign)	

SECTION D. PROCESS FOR SCHEDULED UTILITY SHUTDOWN AUTHORIZATION

A. The General Contractor is to complete the *Utility Shutdown Request Form*, at least **5 working days** prior to the scheduled utility shutdown, and submit it to the respective Bond Program Manager for approval.

B. The Bond Program Manager (PM) will review and approve submitted *Utility Shutdown Request Form* and forward to the respective Dallas ISD Project Manager for approval.

C. The Dallas ISD Project Manager will review and approve form and return to the PM.

D. PM forwards approved form to Director/Maintenance Solutions and notifies Deputy Chief Director, Emergency Operations and Bond Program Safety Manager.

Note: All scheduled shutdown requests will require a jobsite meeting with the Program Manager and the School staff 48 hours in advance to discuss the outage procedures and status of all District departments involved on the shutdown request.

Note: For electrical shutdowns (Scheduled/ involuntary), when required for building operations, the General contractor must supply a power generator to keep the telephones, data and alarms working at all times.

***Permanent shutdowns are facilities or specific meters that will not require power/ utility to be restored.**

SECTION 00 41 10 – OVERALL PROPOSAL PACKAGING CHECKLIST

1.01 Proposers are to package all submittal information as follows. Documents should be bound in 3 ring binders with tabs for each section of the proposal form. Do not spiral or GBC bind the documents.

2.01 Both Parts of the Proposal response shall be labeled as follows:

Proposal for CSP 207774
Org 237 - John W. Runyon Elementary School

Due 01/21/2026
Time Due: 2:00pm
Part 1-A, 1-B, 1-C
<<Name of Proposer>>

Please Note: Part 1-C Proposal Form- Alternates & Unit Pricing (Section Div 00 41 12) - Should the solicitation contain an opportunity for alternate pricing, please ensure that the Section Part 1-C Proposal Form – Alternates & Unit Pricing Section 00 41 12 is submitted in an individually sealed envelope labeled accordingly with the specified CSP number, CSP title and Part 1-C Proposal Form – Alternates & Unit Pricing. ***Alternates Pricing will not be opened by the District unless the District engages in negotiations with the vendor submitting the alternate pricing package.***

Due 01/22/2026
Time Due: 3:00pm
Part 2
<<Name of Proposer>>

Proposals will be read at 3:00pm following the receipt of Part 2

3.01 Part 1-A of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Sections
00 41 11 Proposal Form – Base Bid (with all addenda acknowledged)
00 43 13 Proposal Guarantee Bond Form
00 45 00 Dallas Independent School District Required Forms Package
00 45 20 Certificate of Non-Discrimination
00 45 22 Notification of Hazardous Materials Affidavit Form
00 45 23 Family Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (CIQ)
Submit one (1) original of each Section for Part 1-A.

4.01 Part 1-B of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Section
00 41 13 Technical Proposal Form
Submit one (1) original, and one (1) copy of each Section for Part 1-B and one (1) soft copy (electronic) via flash drive or USB of each Section for Part 1-B, Section 00 41 13 Technical Proposal Form section.

5.01 Part 1-C of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Sections
00 41 12 Proposal Form – Alternates and Unit Pricing
Submit one (1) original of each Section for Part 1-C in a separate, sealed envelope marked according to the specifics noted in Section 2.01 on this page.

6.01 Part 2 of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Sections
00 45 39 SBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms
Submit one (1) original, one (1) copy, and one (1) soft copy (electronic) in either CD Rom or flash drive of each Section for Part 2.

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

The intent of this document is to establish guidelines to reasonably reconcile ONLY the Project's materials cost escalation. No overhead, profit, or insurance costs are to be included. The Contractor has a duty to mitigate Materials Cost Escalation. Therefore, as a condition precedent to any cost adjustments, the Contractor must comply with establishing the Project Baseline Schedule as required under Division 1 of the Project's Contract Documents. All terms shall have the same meaning as defined in the executed AIA Agreement for this project.

1. **DELIVERY METHODS:**
   - Competitively Sealed Proposal (CSP)
   - Construction Manager at Risk (CMAR, CMaR, CM@Risk)

2. **PARTIES**
   - DISD (Owner)
   - Program Management Firm (PMF, Program Manager, PM)
   - Architect or Engineer of Record (A/E)
   - Contractor (GC)

3. **PROJECT**
   a. ORG# _____ PROJECT NAME: _____
   b. Notice to Proceed (NTP) Date: _____
   c. Date City Permits Ready for GC Pick Up: _____
   d. Date of Escalation of Materials Document Submission to Owner: _____

4. **PRICE IMPACTED MATERIALS:** It is understood that vendors providing materials to the Owner's Project may be experiencing industry-wide economic fluctuations that affect the price, availability, delivery, and execution of the Project. The intent of this document is to reasonably reconcile ONLY the Project's materials cost escalation. This form will be used by the Owner to provide a good-faith adjustment of market price-impacted materials.

5. **PROJECT BASELINE:** Compliance with establishing the project baseline will be a condition precedent to requesting Owner approval of a materials cost escalation. The Contract Documents (Drawings, Specs, and Contract) establish the elements required to establish the project baseline. The Contractor has a duty to mitigate Materials Cost Escalation.

6. **PRICE INCREASE:** In the event of a Materials' Price INCREASE, the Contract Price shall be reasonably adjusted to reconcile the Materials' Price INCREASE.

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

7. **PRICE DECREASE:** In the event of a Materials Price DECREASE, the Contract Price shall be reasonably adjusted to reconcile the Materials' Price DECREASE.

8. **LIMITATION ON CONTRACT PRICE ADJUSTMENT:** Regardless of Proposed Materials' Price Increases or Decreases, the Contract Price shall not be adjusted by more than 15% of the original Contract Price or any other restrictions on cost increases found in State law or the terms of the contract between Owner and Contractor.

9. **NO ADJUSTMENT FOR MATERIALS QUANTITIES:** No adjustments will be made for changes in materials quantities. The intent of this document is to reconcile ONLY materials costs.

10. **SCHEDULE OF VALUES & PAYMENT:** Payment for adjustments will be in accordance with the executed AIA Agreement, change orders, or CAEAs for this project. Similar to other Owner Cost/Credits, in accordance with Division 1 of the Specifications, the cost or the credit for materials reconciliation will be shown as a line item in the Project's Pay Application's Schedule of Values.

_____

OWNER (DISD)

_____

CONTRACTOR (GC)

_____

ARCHITECT (A/E)

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

EXHIBIT "MATERIALS ESCALATION" – BASELINE PRICE Matrix

The intent of this document is to establish a Baseline so that the materials escalation costs may be subsequently reconciled. To establish an objective cost baseline, the Contractor must provide the Owner a date stamped copy of the actual materials costs proposal from the materials vendor/manufacturer.

1. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Date of Price: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide a Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

2. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

3. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

4. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

5. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

6. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

7. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

8. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

9. Price Impacted Material: _____

   Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

   Pricing Method: _____

   Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

10. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

11. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

12. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

13. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

14. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

15. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

16. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

17. Price Impacted Material: _____

    Baseline Price: _____ (Unit)

    Pricing Method: _____

    Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL

Name of Contractor	

COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (Part 1A)
to
DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
FOR THE FOLLOWING WORK:

PART 1. General Information

Competitive Sealed Proposal (CSP) 207774, consisting of improvements to:

ORG #	PROJECT NAME	PROJECT TYPE	ADDRESS
237	John W. Runyon Elementary School	Renovation	10750 Cradlerock Drive Dallas, TX 75217

PART 2. Proposal Form

2.01 Agreement of Proposal Submittal

The undersigned, as a designated representative of the proposer, declares such firm is the only entity, as principal, with any interest in this Proposal, and the Proposal is made without collusion with any other entity.

The proposer affirms that the form of Contract, Instructions for Competitive Sealed Proposals, Supplemental Instructions for Competitive Sealed Proposal, Addenda, selection criteria, weighting/scoring system, estimated budget, Specifications, and the Drawings pertaining to this Proposal have been examined and the firm has also examined the locations, conditions, and classes of materials for the proposed Work and agrees to provide all necessary labor, materials, plant and equipment, machinery, tools, apparatus and construction means to accomplish the Work described in the Contract Documents in the manner prescribed.

The proposer agrees the quantities of Work to be performed and materials to be furnished may be increased or decreased as may be considered necessary, in the sole opinion of Dallas ISD's designated representative, to complete the Work as planned and contemplated. Adjustment for changes in Work will be in accordance with the General Conditions.

Proposal amounts must be shown in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy, the amount shown in words will govern.

2.02 Addenda

The proposer acknowledges receipt and incorporation of the following addenda into this Proposal. Proposer is to fill in the Addenda # and date and initial in the box to show receipt.

CSP 207774

Addendum No.	Addendum No.	Addendum No.	Addendum No.

Name of Contractor	

2.03 Withdrawal of Proposals

A Proposal may be withdrawn only upon written request by the proposer or his duly authorized representative, provided such request is received by the Owner at the place designated for receipt of Proposals and prior to the time fixed for the opening of Proposals.

No Proposal may be withdrawn after the time fixed for the opening of Proposals for a period of 90 days.

2.04 Award of Contract

The proposer to whom the award of a Contract is made will be promptly notified following Board action. If a proposer, (a) withdraws his Proposal within 90 days after the date and time fixed for the opening of Proposals in the Advertisement for Proposals, or, (b) fails or refuses to execute the Agreement, or other required forms within ten (10) days after the same are presented to him for signature, or (c) fails or refuses to furnish properly executed Performance and Payment Bonds, and certification of required insurance upon the execution of the Agreement, the Owner may award the Work to another proposer or may re-solicit the contract. The Proposal Bond is forfeited if Proposal is withdrawn after the Proposal opening, or Contract Documents are not executed in accordance with the above requirements.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Proposals and to waive any irregularities in any Proposal received. The Owner further reserves the right to limit the number of contracts awarded and/or to be performed concurrently to any one Contractor if such appears to be in the best interest of the District. Awards will be per published criteria and weights. Price is only 40% of the evaluation criteria, and awards may be made to other than the low dollar proposer.

2.05 Notice To Proceed (NTP) and Notice of Intent to Award (NIA)

The Contractor shall not commence the Work under this Contract until execution of the Notice to Proceed (NTP) duly signed by Dallas ISD's designated representative.

The Contractor shall acknowledge that a Notice of Intent to Award (NIA) may be issued at the Owner's discretion. The purpose of the NIA is to expedite pre-construction activities. Upon receipt of the duly signed NIA, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the activities listed and authorized by the NIA.

2.06 Collusion, Litigation, Default, Competency

By completing and submitting a Proposal, the proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of the following paragraph. A proposer who subsequently does not agree to comply with these requirements may be disqualified. The responses to the items of the Contractor's Qualification Statement will be used in evaluation of the Proposals on the project.

Proposers may be disqualified, and their proposals not considered for any of the following specific reasons:

1. Reason for believing collusion exists among proposers.
2. Reasonable grounds for believing that any proposer is interested in more than one proposal for the work contemplated.
3. The proposer is involved in any litigation against the Board.
4. The proposer is in arrears on any existing contract with Dallas ISD or has defaulted on a previous contract with Dallas ISD.
5. Lack of competency as revealed by the financial statement, experience and equipment questionnaires, or omission of required proposal submittals.

Name of Contractor	

6. Uncompleted work which, in the judgment of the Board, will prevent or hinder the prompt completion of this Work, if awarded.
7. Inaccurate information or circumstances that establish reasonable grounds for belief that the proposer is not a "responsible proposer" include, but are not limited to the below examples:
    a. Incomplete Bid Submittal – e.g., Missing Base Bid proposal number.
    b. Incorrectly Calculated Total Base Bid - Proposal plus Owner's Controlled Contingency MUST add up to Total Base Bid. Please double check to confirm compliance.

By entering into a contract with Dallas ISD, the proposer agrees that (1) Work on the project will begin upon receipt of the Notice to Proceed, (2) Contractor will participate as a team member in cooperation with the Architect/Engineer (A/E) and Owner, (3) The Work will not interfere with normal instructional and learning programs of the school, (4) The Contractor will assign a full time competent superintendent for each school in the CSP and that same superintendent(s) shall remain for the duration of the contract, contingent upon that person's continued employment with the Contractor, (5)The Contractor will furnish and pay for the Bid, Performance, and Payment Bonds.

- Projects of $25,000 and under: Bid bond is required
- Projects over $25,000 and up to and including $100,000: Bid and Payment Bond is required
- Projects over $100,000: Bid, Performance and Payment Bonds are required

2.07 Ultimate Corporate Ownership

Is proposer a corporation? Check One, Yes ____ No____

Proposer's legal name and address of principal place of business:

_____

_____

Ultimate parent company or majority owner's name and address of principal place of business:

_____

_____

Name of Contractor	

2.08 Contractor's Price (40 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)

The Proposer's Price is defined as the total amount, including Cost of the Work and allowances, for the performing or causing to be performed all Work including labor and materials, necessary to build, construct, erect and equip in accordance with the Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications.

Contractor agrees to base its price on the proposed completion schedule and the phasing plan presented in the contract documents. The Contractor may, at their option, propose a project duration that is of less duration and indicate this duration in the box below (See **Proposer's Proposed Substantial Completion Date** box below). However, the duration proposed by the Contractor must be based upon the number of phases identified in the contract documents and must not be predicated upon the use of additional temporary swing space other than the swing space identified in the contract documents. Contract documents identify the number of existing classrooms or temporary portable buildings available to the contractor for swing space.

Base proposal is defined as the Cost of the Work not including allowances or alternates.

(Amount shall be shown in both words and numbers; in the event of discrepancies, the words will govern.)

A	**Proposer's Price for all schools in CSP 207774, which includes the Allowances as per item 2.09 below:** _____ **Dollars**	**$**_____

Proposer's Price Breakdown (to be completed by proposer):

Base Proposal minus Allowances:	**$**
2.09 B: Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance (5%/2.5% of Base Price minus Allowances):	**$291,413.07**
2.09 C: Other Owner Allowances (provided by Owner, see 2.09 C below):	**$**
2.09 D: Proposer's Abatement Cost included in 2.08 A (Abatement is to be included in GC Base scope price. The intent of this section is to show the breakout of the abatement cost.)	
2.08 A: Proposer's Base Price plus (+) Allowances (should equal amount in Section 2.08 A above):	**$**

Name of Contractor	

2.09 Allowance Items

The following allowances are further described in Specification Section 01 21 00.

B	Allowance Description: In Contract Owner Controlled Contingency (IC)	Dollar Amount ($) *Proposer to Fill In
237	John W. Runyon Elementary School	$291,413.07

C	Allowance Description: In Contract Owner Controlled Allowances	
	Include in the Contract Amount the quantity of Four Thousand (4,000) s.f. by 2-inch-deep removal and replacement of lightweight insulating concrete fill. Variations in quantities between the above allowance and that amount actually replaced will be adjusted by Change Order on Unit Price basis.	

2.10 Alternates

This information is to be submitted with section 00 41 12 (Part 1-C of the CSP Package.)

2.11 Unit Pricing

This information is to be submitted with section 00 41 12 (Part 1-C of the CSP Package.)

2.12 Breakout or Separate Pricing

The successful Proposer shall provide a proposed preliminary schedule of values for each school within the CSP 3 days after Board award. In the chart below, the Proposer must provide the cost breakdown per school of the base price provided by the Proposer in paragraph 2.08A of this section

The following information is requested for information and budget verification only and it is not the basis for the quantitative evaluation of this proposal.

School Org #	School Name and Project Type	Estimated Construction Budget	Proposer's Base Bid Proposal Breakdown per School
237	John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation	$6,119,674.47	
NOTE: If a project has more than one school, then the proposal MUST be itemized by campus. An Addition/Renovation project MUST have 2 lines (one line for the addition and one line for the renovation scope). The Total Project bid must add up to the sum of all the itemized components.			

Name of Contractor	

Org #	School Name	Owner's Expected Substantial Completion Date	Proposer's Proposed Substantial Completion Date
237	**John W. Runyon Elementary School**	**07/25/2027**	

2.13 Liquidated Damages

Time is of the essence in all Phases of the Work. It is specifically understood and agreed by and between Dallas ISD and Contractor that time is of the essence in the substantial completion of the Project.

The Contractor acknowledges and recognizes that Dallas ISD is entitled to full and beneficial occupancy and use of the completed work immediately following expiration of the Contract time. The Contractor further acknowledges and agrees that, if the Contractor fails to substantially, or cause the Substantial Completion of any portion of the Work within the Contract Time, the Owner will sustain actual damages as a result of such failure. The exact amount of such damages will be difficult to ascertain. Therefore, Dallas ISD and Contractor agree that, if the Contractor shall neglect, fail, or refuse to achieve substantial completion of the Work by the Substantial Completion date, subject to any proper extension granted by Dallas ISD, then Contractor agrees to pay to Dallas ISD the following sum(s) for each day in which such Work is not substantially completed, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages, for the damages ("Liquidated Damages") that would be suffered by Dallas ISD as a result of delay for each and every calendar day that the Contractor shall have failed to have substantially completed the Work as required herein.

	Liquidated Damages	* Dollars Per Calendar Day		
		Addition	**Renovation**	**New**
237	**John W. Runyon Elementary School**	0.025% of Construction Budget	0.025% of Construction Budget	0.025% of Construction Budget

*** The Dallas ISD's liquidated damages cost formula is 0.025% of the construction budget for the project, up to a maximum of $1,500.00 per calendar day.**

Name of Contractor	

PART 3. Execution

3.01 Proposal Form Execution

Contractor's Firm Name (legal name)	
Federal Tax I. D. Number	
Contractor's Street Address	
Contractor's Phone Number	
Contractor's Fax Number	
Contractor's Email Address	

SUBMITTED BY:

(Corporation, Partnership, Individual, etc.)

Name of President of Corporation *or*
Name of Principal Owner

Name of Secretary of Corporation
(if applicable)

(Corporation, Partnership, etc.,) is organized under the laws of the State of _____.

Firm: _____

By: _____
Printed Name

Title: _____

Signature: _____

Legal Address: _____

_____

Date: _____
Affix Corporation Seal here (if applicable)

SECTION 00 41 12 – PROPOSAL FORM – ALTERNATES AND UNIT PRICING

Name of Contractor	

COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (Part 1C)
to
DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
FOR THE FOLLOWING WORK:

PART 1. General Information

CSP PACKAGE 207774, consisting of improvements to:

Org #	PROJECT NAME	PROJECT TYPE	ADDRESS
237	John W. Runyon Elementary School	Renovation	10750 Cradlerock Drive Dallas, TX 75217

PART 2. Proposal Form

2.01 through 2.09

Refer to Specification Section 00 41 11.

2.10 Alternate Price Items

The Contractor proposes the following sums as **additions to** or **deductions from** the Base Price amount for alternates. Failure to quote every item may cause the entire Proposal to be considered non-responsive. If there is no cost change in the alternate(s) pricing, the Contractor should enter "$0.00" as the price for the alternate. Do not make an entry of N/A.
All Alternates must be priced. Alternates are not listed in the order of preference.

237 John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

No.	Alternate Description	Proposer's Add Price	Proposer's Deduct Price

2.11 Unit Prices

The Contractor proposes the following all-inclusive unit prices for the items/tasks. Failure to provide unit pricing for each item may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive. Do not make an entry of N/A. All unit prices must be priced. Unit prices are not listed in order of preference.

237 John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

No.	Unit Price Item	Unit of measure	Proposer's Unit Price
	For change in depth of an 18" diameter pier greater than or less than identified depths, ADD or DEDUCT	LF	$
	Price for 2 inch deep removal and replacement of lightweight insulating concrete fill.	SF	$

2.11 through 2.14

Refer to Specification Section 00 41 11.

Name of Contractor	

PART 3. Execution

3.01 Proposal Form Execution (Part 1A)

Contractor's Firm Name (legal name)	
Federal Tax I. D. Number	
Contractor's Street Address	
Contractor's Phone Number	
Contractor's Fax Number	
Contractor's Email Address	

SUBMITTED BY:

(Corporation, Partnership, Individual, etc.)

Name of President of Corporation *or*
Name of Principal Owner

Name of Secretary of Corporation
(if applicable)

(Corporation, Partnership, etc.,) is organized under the laws of the State of _____.

Firm: _____

By: _____

Title: _____

Legal Address: _____

_____

Date: _____
Affix Corporation Seal here (if applicable)

SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM

Name of Contractor	

COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (Part 1-B)
to
DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

PART 1. GENERAL

1.01 Contractor Firm Information

Contractor's Firm Name (Legal Name)	
Contractor's Point of Contact with Signature Authority	
Street Address	
Phone Number	
Point of Contact Email Address	
Type of Business: _____ Corporation, _____ Partnership, _____ Sole proprietorship, _____ Joint Venture	
State of Incorporation	
In continuous business since (Date of Incorporation/ Years in Business):	
List other fully staffed offices or fully staffed branch offices of your organization: Name Branch Manager Telephone Number	
Corporate Officers, Partners, or Owners of Organization: Name Title Construction Experience (Years)	
Check box(es) corresponding to the nature of your business: ___Large Business (100 or more employees) ____Small Business (fewer than 100 employees) ___Minority Owned Business; Certified with _____ ___Women Owned Business; Certified with _____ ___Other (Define) _____	
Has your organization ever defaulted or failed to complete any work awarded? _____Yes _____ No If yes, stipulate where and why:	
Has your organization ever paid liquidated damages or a penalty for failure to complete a contract on time? ___Yes ___No If yes, stipulate where and why:	

Name of Contractor	

PART 2. TECHNICAL PROPOSAL

The Contractor is requested to submit a complete response to each of the items listed in this technical proposal form. If the question is not applicable, please provide a response after each question or section with the words: NOT APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT. Responses requiring additional space should be brief and submitted as an attachment to this section.

2. Reputation of Vendors and of the Vendor's Goods or Services (5 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)

2 a. References (5 Points of the 5 points Possible under Reputation of Vendors and of the Vendor's Goods or Services)

Provide five projects, from five separate organizations, with appropriate references using the attached form. Answer the questions for each relevant project, with emphasis on school, educational, and/or renovation experience, that your organization has in-progress or completed in the last four years, using the format below:

A member of the Evaluation Committee will verify the information with the references provided and may ask additional questions of the references. Contractor should ensure availability of the references after bid opening.

SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM

Name of Contractor	

Project No. _____:

Owner / Name and Location of Project:	
Type of Project: (Renovation, Remodeling, Addition, New Construction?)	
Procurement Method: (Competitive Bidding, CSP, CM at Risk, Other)	
Type of Contract: (Lump Sum, Cost Plus, T&M, other)	
Contract Amount: (at time of award)	
Final Contract Amount: (If in progress, contract amount to date)	
Contract Time: (at time of award)	
Percent Complete:	
Projected/Actual Completion Date:	
If completed, was the project completed on time? If in progress, is the project on schedule?	
What kind of delays occurred?	
Did Contractor operate in a safe manner? Was safety a priority to the Contractor?	
Reporting Tools used: (Daily reports, weekly reports, monthly reports)	
Superintendent's Name: Project Manager's Name:	
Owner* or Appropriate Owner's Representative** Reference Contact Name/Telephone/Email/Address: *If reference iPros no longer employed by the Owner indicate current Employer and Title. **Program Managers cannot be used as a reference from a past projects on one of their own current projects.	

Name of Contractor	

Proposer should copy this form for use on 5 past projects.

3. The Quality of the Vendor's Goods or Service (17 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)

3 a. Safety Plan and Insurance Rate Modifier (IRM): (5 Points of the 12 points Possible under Criteria 3)

A. List your organization's Insurance Rate Modifier (IRM) for the current year as obtained from your insurance agent. Copy of IRM from insurance agent to be attached as confirmation.

_____current year IRM

B. Complete the matrix for the five past years, as obtained from OSHA No. 300 Log:

	Year _____	Year _____	Year _____	Year _____	Current Year _____
Number of injuries and illnesses					
Number of lost time accidents					
Number of recordable cases					
Number of fatalities					
Number of employee direct hire fixed hours worked (round to 1,000's)					

C. Are regular project safety meetings held by Field Supervisor(s)? _____Yes _____No

If yes, frequency: ___Weekly ___Bi-Weekly ___Monthly ___As Needed

D. Are project safety inspections conducted? _____Yes _____ No

If yes, who performs inspection? _____

How often? ___Weekly ___Bi-Weekly ___ Monthly ___As Needed

E. Does your organization have a written safety program? _____Yes _____No

If yes, two copies of the full safety manual must be provided. Two CD-ROMs, each containing the safety manual in PDF format clearly marked as “Safety Manual” is preferred.

If no, then the contractor may adopt the Dallas ISD Safety manual. Will your organization adopt the DALLAS ISD Safety Manual? _____Yes _____No

Name of Contractor	

F a. Does your organization have a safety orientation program for new employees?

____Yes ____No

For employees promoted to Field Supervisor. ____Yes ____No

If yes, does your Supervisor Safety Program include instructions on the following topics?

	Yes	No
Safety work practices		
Toolbox safety meetings		
First aid procedures		
Accident investigation		
Fire protection		
HazCom Program		
Record keeping		
Emergency response procedures		
New worker orientation		

F b. Provide a resume of the Safety Manager.

G. Does your organization have a written Drug and Alcohol policy in place? ____Yes _____No

If yes, provide a copy of the policy as an attachment.

If no, please note when adopting the Dallas ISD safety manual, the contractor is also adopting the “Drug and Alcohol Policy” included within.

3 b. Proposed Project Team(s) and Management approach to proposed projects and Contractor’s Pending Claims and or Litigation: (7 Points of the 12 points Possible under Criteria 3)

Please note that Dallas ISD requires a full-time superintendent to be assigned to each individual job site while Work is in progress, contingent upon the continued employment of those personnel by the Contractor. Contractor’s staffing approach and organization must reflect this requirement. Contractor may not make any changes to these personnel assignments without the prior approval of the Program Manager and the Owner.

A. Provide a Staff Organization Chart depicting your staff roles, relationships, and responsibilities.

B. Identify the proposed key staff: Project Manager, Superintendent, Assistant Superintendent(s), Cost Estimator, Scheduler, Safety Manager, etc. by name and title and provide the following information for each. Include additional key staff, as necessary. Indicate which staff are assigned either on a full time or part time basis. For part time personnel, identify the percent of full-time participation. For example, Project Manager 50% of Full-time, Safety Manager 75% of Full-Time, Scheduler 25% of Full-Time, etc.

Name of Contractor	

Staff: Project Manager

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Full Time or Part Time (For part time personnel, identify the percent of full-time participation. For example, Project Manager 50% of Full-time, etc.)	
Relevant experience with similar projects: (educational and/or renovations and/or additions as applicable)	
Years with the Organization:	

Staff: Superintendent 1 – School Name: _____

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

Staff: Superintendent 2 – School Name: _____

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

Name of Contractor	

Staff: Superintendent 3 – School Name:_____

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

Staff: Superintendent 4 – School Name:_____

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

Staff: Superintendent 5 – School Name:_____

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

Proposer should copy this form as needed to present information for all proposed staff.

C. CONTRACTOR'S PENDING CLAIMS AND/OR LITIGATION

Attach a list of pending claims and/or litigation at time of submitting Proposal. (Show project name, owner, and summary explanation.)

Name of Contractor	

4 The Extent to which the Goods or Services Meet the District's needs (15 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)

4 a. General Contractor's current/past K-12 new or renovation construction experience: (10 Points of the 15 points Possible under Criteria 4)

Provide below the School District, School Name, Project Type, **Completion Date** and **Final Construction Value** for a **minimum of 5**** K-12 Projects completed by your company **as a prime contractor**.

School District	School Name	Renovation, Addition, or New Const.	Completion Date	Final Construction Contract Value

***A separate sheet may be attached with additional projects.*

4 b. Proposed Construction schedule and phasing plan: (5 Points of the 15 points Possible under Criteria 4)

The Contractor understands that Dallas ISD desires that the Project be completed on or before the duration of the contract. The Contractor shall prepare and submit a proposed construction schedule for each of the schools in the CSP and present this schedule with Section 00 41 13. **Additions and Renovations work within a school must be broken out into two separate items**. This schedule may be as detailed as the Proposer would like but must have a minimum of schedule information (major construction phases, activities, and milestones) as is necessary to facilitate negotiations.

Provide, as an attachment to the Technical Proposal form, a GANTT chart depicting how you anticipate delivering the project in the time frame outlined in this proposal. Describe the scope of work to be completed in each phase of each school.

Note: Contractors may, as a Cost Saving Recommendation, offer for Dallas ISD's consideration, an alternative plan, which may alter the duration in the contract documents. However, any such proposal must be presented as a Cost Saving Recommendation in the Technical Proposal – Part B (Section 00 41 13). The contractor must clearly identify the alternative work schedule, alternative duration, and alternative base price. The evaluation committee will evaluate alternative plans and schedule and determine if the plans may benefit Dallas ISD.

Name of Contractor	

The Contractor's proposed schedule is a vital part of the evaluation process and sufficient information should be provided for Dallas ISD to assess the Contractor's time frame, work plan and approach.

A. Describe the type of software utilized to prepare the construction schedules. **(Attach proposed project schedule)**

Name of Contractor	

5. The Vendor's Past Performance with the District (5 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)

5 a. Past Project Performance, Quality, and Compliance with Terms and Regulations (5 Points of the 100 points Possible under Criteria 5).

The District will evaluate the quality of construction and materials used. Check for transparency in reporting and communication. Check for excessive claims or disputes with clients. Contractor's ability to adhere to district directives, procedures, and requirements. Assess adherence to project timelines and budgets. Ensure good business practices (i.e. receivables, payments, deliverables).

Name of Contractor	

6. The contractor is to complete all Small Business Office Compliance forms in Section 00 45 39 for selection criteria 6. (Category Total: 20 Points of the 20 Points possible under Criteria 6.)

6a. Proposer demonstrated a commitment to the district's Small Business Office (SBE) program by providing enhancements to the administration of the proposer's contracting process for the work to be done be SBE firms. Examples of this commitment may include any of the following: expedited payments, Mentor Protégé Programs, early release of retainage, expanding the pool of diverse subcontractors to firms that have not done business with the district, etc. (3 points)

6b. Proposer submitted a list of two (2) Small Business Office subcontractor references. (2 points)

6c. Proposer is a certified SBE, or Proposer submitted a Joint Venture Agreement with a certified SBE OR Proposer submitted a Prime Subcontractor Teaming Agreement with a certified SBE. (5 points)

6d. Proposer submitted a diverse list of certified SBE subcontractors, subconsultants or suppliers that meets or exceeds the district's SBE aspirational goal in meaningful and significant roles OR Proposer demonstrated outreach designed to meet the SBE project goals with a diverse SBE team of subcontractors, suppliers and subconsultants. (5 points)

6e. Proposer demonstrated a comprehensive framework and understanding of the district's SBE program by: providing a written and detailed SBE compliance plan, designating a high ranking individual who will be responsible for SBE contract compliance, monitoring and reporting, ensuring no unauthorized changes to SBE subcontractors, adhering to the SBE commitment and subcontractor payment terms, executing the SBE subcontracting schedule, complying with the district's SBE Program guidelines, etc. (5 points)

Name of Contractor	

7. The Total Long-Term Cost to the District to Acquire the Vendor's Goods and Services (3 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)

7 a. Financial status of the vendor (as rated by Dun & Bradstreet):
Category Total: (3 Points of the 3 points Possible under Criteria 7)

A. Provide the complete corporate or company name of your firm and the D-U-N-S Number as it is recorded with Dun & Bradstreet. This information will allow the owner to confirm that the correct reports are being used for the evaluation.

D-U-N-S Number: _____

Name of Contractor	

C8. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:
The following information must be provided to complete the evaluation of the Contractor's technical proposal.

A. DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTIES

1. Disclosure of Interested Parties – In 2015, the Texas Legislature adopted House Bill 1295, which added section 2252.908 of the Government Code. The law states that a governmental entity or state agency may not enter into certain contracts with a business entity unless the business entity submits a disclosure of interested parties to the governmental entity or state agency at the time the business entity submits the signed contract to the governmental entity or state agency. The disclosure requirement applies to a contract entered into on or after January 1, 2016.

After Board of Trustee authorization, the successful Vendor will be required to complete an electronic Form 1295 on the Texas Ethics Commission website (https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm) prior to entering into a contract with the District in accordance with this statute. Additional information is available on the Texas Ethics Commission website at www.ethics.state.tx.us.

Submission of a response to this CSP indicates Respondent's acceptance and intended compliance with this requirement.

Name of Contractor	

PART 3. TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM EXECUTION

3.01 Proposal Form Execution

Contractor's Firm Name (legal name)	
Federal Tax I. D. Number	
Contractor's Street Address	
Contractor's Phone Number	
Contractor's Email Address	

SUBMITTED BY:

(Corporation, Partnership, Individual, etc.)

Name of President of Corporation *or*
Name of Principal Owner

Name of Secretary of Corporation
(if applicable)

(Corporation, Partnership, etc.,) is organized under the laws of the State of _____.

Firm: _____

By: _____

Title: _____

Legal Address: _____

_____

Date: _____
Affix Corporation Seal here (if applicable)

SECTION 00 43 13 – PROPOSAL GUARANTEE BOND

Name of Contractor	

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, THAT we _____ as Principal, and _____ as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the Board of Trustees, Dallas Independent School District, Dallas, Dallas County, Texas, hereinafter called the Obligee, in the penal sum of _____ Dollars ($_____), lawful money of the United States, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that whereas the Principal has submitted the accompanying Competitive Sealed Proposal, dated _____, 20_____, being for the construction of _____ with appurtenances thereto, at Dallas, Dallas County, Texas, the kind and extent of work involved being set forth in detail in the proposed Contract Documents;

NOW, THEREFORE, if the Obligee shall accept the proposal of the Principal and the Principal shall enter into a Contract with the Obligee in accordance with the terms of such proposal, and give such bond or bonds as may be specified in the proposal or Contract Documents with good and sufficient surety for the faithful performance of such Contract and for the prompt payment of labor and material furnished in the prosecution thereof, or in the event of the failure of the Principal to enter such Contract and give such bond or bonds, if the Principal shall pay to the Obligee the difference not to exceed the penalty hereof between the amount specified in said proposal and such larger amount for which the Obligee may in good faith contract with another party to perform the Work covered by said proposal, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

This Proposal Guarantee Bond applies to all contracts in excess of $100,000 involving a contract for construction, alteration or repair of any public building or the completion or prosecution of any public work.

This Proposal Guarantee Bond must be payable to the awarding authority, Dallas Independent School District, as the named Obligee, and it must be approved as to form by such awarding authority.

Surety must be corporate surety duly authorized to do business in Texas.

This Proposal Guarantee Bond must be equal to 10% of the full amount of the contract which it secures.

Power of Attorney from Corporate Surety should be attached to this Proposal Guarantee Bond.

Name of Contractor	

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above bounded parties have executed this instrument under their several seals this _____ day of _____, 20_____, the name and Corporate Seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

(Business Address)	(Individual Principal)
(Business Address)	(Corporate Principal)
ATTEST:	
Secretary	President
Business Address	Corporate Surety
ATTEST: _____	BY: _____

PART 1 GENERAL

Schedule "A"*
Building Construction Prevailing Wage Rates 2012
City of Dallas

Building Construction Projects (does not include single family homes and apartments).

**Use Schedule B - Current Engineering (Highway/Heavy) Construction Wage Determination For Paving and Utilities Incidental to Building Construction.*

Schedule "A"

CLASSIFICATION	PREVAILING RATE	FRINGES
Acoustical Installer	$12.16	---
Backhoe Operator	$10.64	$1.41
Bricklayer	$21.06	$7.18
Brick, Tender	$8.60	$1.30
Carpenter	$23.15	$8.20
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher	$11.38	---
Drywall Hanger	$11.71	---
Electrician	$24.50	12.25% + 4.70
Electrician, Cable Splicer	$26.41	4.50 + 12.5%
Floor Layer, Carpet	$13.13	---
Front End Loader Operator	$8.77	---
Glazier	$12.26	$1.10
Mechanical Insulator	$10.55	$1.00
Laborer, Unskilled (Excluding Landscape Laborers)	$7.58	$1.30
Painter Brush & Spray	$10.76	$2.20
Painter doing drywall finishing only	$10.42	---
Paperhanger	$11.30	$2.20
Lather	$17.38	$1.04
Hydraulic Crane (35 tons & under)	$23.70	$9.35
Hydraulic over 35 tons, Derricks, Overhead Gentry, Stiffleg, Tower, etc., and Cranes with Pile driving or Caisson Attachments	$24.70	$9.35
Plasterer	$15.06	$2.94
Plasterer tender	$9.00	---
Plumber	$12.80	$1.63
Roofer	$9.45	$1.04
Sheet Metal Worker (Including HVAC Duct Work)	$12.80	$2.05
Sprinkler Fitter (Fire Sprinkler)	$25.84	$16.47
Iron Worker, Structural	$21.60	$4.40
Iron Worker, Reinforcing	$10.33	$2.94
Tile Setter	$13.75	--- --

Schedule "B"

CLASSIFICATION	PREVAILING RATE
Asphalt Distributor Operator	$15.32
Asphalt Paving Machine Operator	$13.99
Asphalt Raker	$12.69
Broom or Sweeper Operator	$11.74
Concrete Finisher -Paving and Structures	$14.12
Concrete Paving Finishing Machine	$16.05
Concrete Paving Saw Operator	$14.48
Crane Operator, Lattice Boom 80 Tons or Less	$17.27
Crane Operator, Lattice Boom over 80 Tons	$20.52
Crane, Hydraulic 80 Tons or Less	$18.12
Crawler Tractor	$14.07
Electrician	$19.80
Excavator, 50,000 Pounds or Less	$17.19
Excavator, over 50,000 Pounds	$16.99
Flagger	$10.06
Form Builder/Setter, Structures	$13.84
Form Setter -Paving & Curb	$13.16
Foundation Drill Operator, Crawler Mount	$17.99
Foundation Drill Operator, Truck Mount	$21.07
Front End Loader 3 CY or Less	$13.69
Front End Loader, over 3 CY	$14.72
Laborer -Common	$10.72
Laborer -Utility	$12.32
Loader / Backhoe	$15.18
Mechanic	$17.68
Milling Machine	$14.32
Motor Grader, Fine Grade	$17.19
Motor Grader, Rough	$16.02
Pavement Marking Machine	$13.63
Pipe Layer	$13.24
Reclaimer / Pulverizer	$11.01
Roller, Asphalt	$13.08
Roller, Other	$11.51
Scraper	$12.96
Servicer	$14.58
Small Slipform Machine	$15.96
Spreader Box	$14.73
Steel Worker (Reinforcing)	$16.18
Truck Driver -Lowboy -Float	$16.24
Truck Driver -Off Road Hauler	$12.25
Truck Driver -Single Axle	$12.31
Truck Driver -Single or Tandem Axle Dump Truck	$12.62
Truck Driver -Tandem Axle Tractor with Semi Trailer	$12.86
Truck Driver -Transit Mix	$14.14
Tunnel Boring Machine Operator (greater than 48")	$13.61
Tunneling Machine Operator (48" or less)	$9.16

Welder	$14.84
Work Zone Barricade Servicer	$11.68

If the construction project involves the expenditure of federal funds of $2,000 or more, the minimum wages to be paid various classes of laborers and mechanics will be based upon the wages that will be determined by the Secretary of labor to be prevailing for the corresponding classes of laborers and mechanics employed on the project of a character similar to the contract work in the City of Dallas.

Except for work on legal holidays, the "General Prevailing Rate of Per Diem Wage" for the various crafts or type of workers or mechanics is the product of (A) the number of hours worked per day, except for overtime hours, times (B) the above respective rate per hour.

For legal holidays, the "General Prevailing Rate of Per Diem Wage" for the various crafts or type of workers or mechanics is the product of (A) one and one-half times the above respective rate per hour times (B) the number of hours worked on the legal holiday.

The "General Prevailing Rate for Overtime Work" for the crafts or type of workers or mechanics is one and one-half times the above respective rate per hour.

Under the provisions of Chapter 2258 of the Government Code, the contractor shall forfeit as a penalty to the entity on whose behalf the contract is made or awarded, sixty dollars ($60.00) for each laborer, worker or mechanic employed, for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such laborer, worker or mechanic is paid less than the said stipulated rates for any work under the contract, by him, or by any subcontractor under him.

Solicitation Number: CSP 207774
Solicitation Title: ORG 237 - John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

REPRESENTATION AND CERTIFICATION

By submitting this Offer, the Offeror certifies that he/she is a responsible authorized officer of the company and certifies the accuracy of the following statements:

1. Represents that to the best of its knowledge it is not indebted to the District. **Indebtedness** to the District shall be basis for non-award and/or cancellation and/or termination of any award.
2. By signing this bid/proposal, vendor makes the assurance that vendor has not been debarred or suspended from conducting business with the US Government according to Executive Order 12549 entitled "**Debarment and Suspension**."
3. Pursuant to the Texas Education Code, Subchapter B, Section 44.034, "**Notification of Criminal History**", a person or business entity that enters into a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person and/or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. Subsection (b) states "a school district may terminate a contract with a person or business entity if the district determines that the person or business entity failed to give notice as required by Subsection (a) or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. The district must compensate the person or business entity for services performed before the termination of the contract." Subsection (c) this notice is not required of a publicly held corporation.
   1.___My firm is a publicly held corporation, therefore, this reporting requirement is not applicable.
   2.___My firm is not owned nor operated by anyone who has been convicted of a felony.
   3.___My firm is owned or operated by the following individual(s) who has/have been convicted of a felony.
   Name of Felon(s):_____
   Details of Conviction(s):_____

4. "**Non-Collusion Statement**" and "**Anti-Lobbying Certification**": "The undersigned affirms that they are duly authorized to execute this Representation and Certification, Offer, and/or Contract and that this company, corporation, firm, partnership, etc., or individual has not prepared this bid in collusion (*An agreement between two or more persons to deceive the school district or defraud the school district of its rights*) with any other bidder, school board member, or school district employee, and that the contents of this bid as to prices, quality of product, terms and/or conditions, etc., have not been communicated by the undersigned nor by any other employee, agent and/or representative of the company, corporation, firm, partnership, etc., or individual to any other person engaged in this type of business prior to the official opening of this bid for the intent or purpose of collusion." In accordance with Title 31, USC Section 1352, no attempt has been or will be made by this company's officers, employees, or agents to lobby, directly or indirectly, with the District's Board of Trustees between bid/proposal submission date and award by the Board.

5. The District promotes, to the maximum extent allowed by law, participation by **economically disadvantaged business enterprises** in all District competitive procurement. Are you a qualified economically disadvantaged business enterprise, historically underutilized business, or minority/women owned business enterprise?
   (check one) _____ **Yes** _____ **No**
   Type of Certification: _____
   Issued by: _____ **Date of Issue:** _____
   Please attach proof of certification to this submittal. **Certified by:** _____

6. "**Conflict of Interest**": No officer, agent, or stockholder of the Offeror is a member of the staff, or related to any employee of the District except as noted herein: _____.
   Texas Statute enacts disclosure requirements if certain school officials or family members receive a gift (other than gifts of food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest) that had an aggregate value of $250 or more over a twelve-month period that the district is considering or has awarded a contract for the sale or purchase of property, goods, or services. Has your firm, parent firm, subsidiary, and/or affiliate provided a gift (other than gifts of food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest) that had an aggregate value of $250 or more over a twelve-month period to any District official, administrator, and/or Board member? [ ] Yes [ ] No
   If yes, explain (the gift, name of individual receiving gift, date gift was provided, etc.)._____
   _____ **(COMPLETE THE ATTACHED QUESTIONNAIRE FORM)**

7. Offeror agrees to the attached "**General Terms and Conditions**" and any "**Special Terms and Conditions**" (if applicable) of this solicitation and in case of conflict with other documents provided by Offeror, these General and/or Special Terms and Conditions take precedence and prevail unless specifically identified and changes are signed by both parties.

8. "**Insurance, Bonds**": Insurance and/or bond requirements are enumerated elsewhere in Contract documents. Submission of a certificate of insurance/bond by the undersigned (or an agent/broker on behalf of the undersigned) represents that the coverages and perils covered by the insurance/bond meet or exceed the requirements of the solicitation document and/or subsequent contract. The District may make reasonable reliance on the submitted certificate of insurance/bond. The certificate of insurance/bond must accurately reflect the policy coverages and will become a part of the Contract Documents and incorporated by reference, but the Contract terms/conditions and statement of work take precedence over any and all contents of the certificate of insurance/bond including, but not limited to, disclaimers, qualifications, etc. Failure to provide insurance/bond in accordance with Contract may be cause for termination for default and other remedies allowed by law and/or equity. Offeror must notify the District entity, in writing, by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten days after the vendor knew or should have known of any changes that materially affects the insurance/bond coverage.

9. "**Workers Compensation**": Offeror acknowledges that the District will NOT provide Workers Compensation coverage to the Offeror and Offeror represents to the District that all employees, subcontractors, agents, representatives, etc. of the Offeror who will provide products, goods, or services to the District will be covered by worker's compensation coverage for the duration of the Contract, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the commission's Division of Self-Insurance regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

10. "**Criminal Background Checks/Searches**": Offeror represents that criminal background checks/searches have been conducted (or will be conducted prior to start of Work if required) in accordance with the General Terms and Conditions (Criminal Background Check) and "Instructions to School District Contractors Regarding Criminal History Background Searches Under Texas Education Code (TEC) 22.0834" (attached).

11. **"No Boycott of Israel".** Offeror certifies that it (and any of its affiliates or parent company), does not, and will not, boycott Israel during the term of any contractual arrangement with DALLAS ISD. For purposes of any contractual arrangement with DALLAS ISD, "boycott Israel" means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes.

12. **"Prohibition of Contracts Engaged in Business with Iran, Sudan, or Foreign Terrorist Organizations"**. Offeror certifies that it is not a company identified by the Texas Comptroller as a company known to have contracts with or provide supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization.

13. **"Transactions with an Abortion Provider or Affiliate".** Offeror certifies that it is not an abortion provider nor an affiliate of such a provider as noted in Texas SB 22, codified in Texas Government Code Chapter 2273, and effective September 1, 2019. If this provision is violated by Offeror, Agreement and/or taxpayer resource transaction is voidable by Dallas ISD and Offeror agrees to defend and indemnify Dallas ISD against any action brought by the Office of the Attorney General for a violation of Section 2273.003.

I, the undersigned officer or authorized agent for the firm named below, certify that the information provided herein has been reviewed by me and is true to the best of my knowledge.

Company Name: _____ **Submitter's Name/Title:** _____

Email Address: _____

Submitter's Signature: _____ **Telephone No.** _____

Address: _____ **City, State and Zip Code:** _____

Fax No. _____ **Date:** _____

THIS SHEET MUST BE COMPLETED, SIGNED, AND RETURNED WITH FIRM'S OFFER.

Notice to Offerors
Conflict of Interest Disclosure Statements
Texas Local Government Code, Chapter 176

Offerors are required to file a Conflict of Interest Questionnaire with the District if a relationship exists between the Offeror's company and an officer of the District. Offerors are encouraged to review and become familiar with all disclosure requirements of Texas Local Government Code, Chapter 176. Conflicts of interest exist if:

1. the person has employment or other business relationship with the local government officer or a family member resulting in the officer or family member receiving taxable income; or
2. the person has given the local government officer or family member one or more gifts (excluding food, lodging, transportation, and entertainment) that have an aggregate value of more than $250 in the twelve- month period preceding
   the date the officer becomes aware of an executed contract or consideration of the person for a contract to do business with the District.

Disclosure is required from Offerors regarding each affiliation or business relationship between the Offeror and:

1. an officer of the District;
2. an officer of the District that results in the officer or family member receiving taxable income;
3. an officer of the District that results in the Offeror receiving taxable income that does not come from the District;
4. a corporation or other business entity in which an officer of the District serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership interest of 10% or more;
5. an employee or Offeror of the District who makes recommendations to an officer of the District regarding the expenditure of money;
6. an officer of the District who appoints or employs an officer of the District that is the subject of the questionnaire; and
7. any person or entity that might cause a conflict of interest with the District.

If a conflict exists, forms must be filed:

1. No later than the seventh business day after the date that the person begins contract discussions or negotiations with the government entity, or submits to the entity an application, response to a request for qualification or bid, correspondence, or other writing related to a potential agreement with the entity.

2. The Offeror also shall file an updated questionnaire:
   a. not later than September 1 of each year in which a covered transaction is pending, and
   b. the seventh business day after the date of an event that would make a statement in the questionnaire incomplete or inaccurate.

3. A Offeror is not required to file an updated questionnaire if the person had filed an updated statement on or after June 1, but before September 1 of the year.

Officers of the Dallas Independent School District are:

Lance Currie (District 1)
Sarah Weinberg (District 2)
Dan Micciche (District 3)
Prisma Y. Garcia (District 4)
Byron Sanders (District 5)
Joyce Foreman (District 6)
Ben Mackey (District 7)
Joe Carreon (District 8)
Ed Turner (District 9)
Stephanie Elizalde, Ed.D. Superintendent of Schools

If no conflict of interest exists, you must fill out Box 1 and type N/A on Box 3 of the CIQ form, sign and date it.

If you are required to file, send the completed form to Dallas Independent School District, Procurement Services Department, 9400 North Central Expressway Suite 1510, Dallas, Texas 75231

July 2022

CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

FORM CIQ

For vendor doing business with local governmental entity

This questionnaire reflects changes made to the law by H.B. 23, 84th Leg., Regular Session.

This questionnaire is being filed in accordance with Chapter 176, Local Government Code, by a vendor who has a business relationship as defined by Section 176.001(1-a) with a local governmental entity and the vendor meets requirements under Section 176.006(a).

By law this questionnaire must be filed with the records administrator of the local governmental entity not later than the 7th business day after the date the vendor becomes aware of facts that require the statement to be filed. *See* Section 176.006(a-1), Local Government Code.

A vendor commits an offense if the vendor knowingly violates Section 176.006, Local Government Code. An offense under this section is a misdemeanor.

OFFICE USE ONLY

Date Received

1 **Name of vendor who has a business relationship with local governmental entity.**

2 ☐ **Check this box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire.** (The law requires that you file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate filing authority not later than the 7th business day after the date on which you became aware that the originally filed questionnaire was incomplete or inaccurate.)

3 **Name of local government officer about whom the information is being disclosed.**

_____
Name of Officer

4 **Describe each employment or other business relationship with the local government officer, or a family member of the officer, as described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A). Also describe any family relationship with the local government officer. Complete subparts A and B for each employment or business relationship described. Attach additional pages to this Form CIQ as necessary.**

A. Is the local government officer or a family member of the officer receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from the vendor?

☐ Yes ☐ No

B. Is the vendor receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from or at the direction of the local government officer or a family member of the officer AND the taxable income is not received from the local governmental entity?

☐ Yes ☐ No

5 **Describe each employment or business relationship that the vendor named in Section 1 maintains with a corporation or other business entity with respect to which the local government officer serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership interest of one percent or more.**

6 ☐ Check this box if the vendor has given the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts as described in Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding gifts described in Section 176.003(a-1).

7

_____ _____
Signature of vendor doing business with the governmental entity Date

Form provided by Texas Ethics Commission www.ethics.state.tx.us Revised 11/30/2015

CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE
For vendor doing business with local governmental entity

A complete copy of Chapter 176 of the Local Government Code may be found at http://www.statutes.legis.state.tx.us/Docs/LG/htm/LG.176.htm. For easy reference, below are some of the sections cited on this form.

Local Government Code § 176.001(1-a): "Business relationship" means a connection between two or more parties based on commercial activity of one of the parties. The term does not include a connection based on:

(A) a transaction that is subject to rate or fee regulation by a federal, state, or local governmental entity or an agency of a federal, state, or local governmental entity;

(B) a transaction conducted at a price and subject to terms available to the public; or

(C) a purchase or lease of goods or services from a person that is chartered by a state or federal agency and that is subject to regular examination by, and reporting to, that agency.

Local Government Code § 176.003(a)(2)(A) and (B):

(a) A local government officer shall file a conflicts disclosure statement with respect to a vendor if:

***

(2) the vendor:

(A) has an employment or other business relationship with the local government officer or a family member of the officer that results in the officer or family member receiving taxable income, other than investment income, that exceeds $2,500 during the 12-month period preceding the date that the officer becomes aware that

(i) a contract between the local governmental entity and vendor has been executed; or

(ii) the local governmental entity is considering entering into a contract with the vendor;

(B) has given to the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts that have an aggregate value of more than $100 in the 12-month period preceding the date the officer becomes aware that:

(i) a contract between the local governmental entity and vendor has been executed; or

(ii) the local governmental entity is considering entering into a contract with the vendor.

Local Government Code § 176.006(a) and (a-1)

(a) A vendor shall file a completed conflict of interest questionnaire if the vendor has a business relationship with a local governmental entity and:

(1) has an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer of that local governmental entity, or a family member of the officer, described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A);

(2) has given a local government officer of that local governmental entity, or a family member of the officer, one or more gifts with the aggregate value specified by Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding any gift described by Section 176.003(a-1); or

(3) has a family relationship with a local government officer of that local governmental entity.

(a-1) The completed conflict of interest questionnaire must be filed with the appropriate records administrator not later than the seventh business day after the later of:

(1) the date that the vendor:

(A) begins discussions or negotiations to enter into a contract with the local governmental entity; or

(B) submits to the local governmental entity an application, response to a request for proposals or bids, correspondence, or another writing related to a potential contract with the local governmental entity; or

(2) the date the vendor becomes aware:

(A) of an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer, or a family member of the officer, described by Subsection (a);

(B) that the vendor has given one or more gifts described by Subsection (a); or

(C) of a family relationship with a local government officer.

Form provided by Texas Ethics Commission www.ethics.state.tx.us Revised 11/30/2015

Solicitation Number: CSP 207774
Solicitation Title: ORG 237 - John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

Dallas ISD, 9400 North Central Expressway, Dallas, TX 75231

FELONY CONVICTION NOTICE

Statutory citation covering notification of criminal history of contractor is found in the Texas Education Code #44.034. Following is an example of a felony conviction notice:

FELONY CONVICTION NOTIFICATION

State of Texas Legislative Senate Bill No. 1, Section 44.034, Notification of Criminal History, Subsection (a), states "a person or business entity that enters into a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony."

Subsection (b) states "a school district may terminate a contract with a person or business entity if the district determines that the person or business entity failed to give notice as required by Subsection (a) or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. The district must compensate the person or business entity for services performed before the termination of the contract."

THIS NOTICE IS NOT REQUIRED OF A PUBLICLY-HELD CORPORATION

I, the undersigned agent for the firm named below, certify that the information concerning notification of felony convictions has been reviewed by me and the following information furnished is true to the best of my knowledge.

A. [ ] My firm is a publicly-held corporation, therefore, this reporting requirement is not applicable.

B. [ ] My firm is not owned nor operated by anyone who has been convicted of a felony:

C. [ ] My firm is owned or operated by the following individual(s) who has/have been convicted of a felony:

Name of Felon(s): _____

Details of Conviction(s): _____

_____

Company Name:_____ Submitter's Name/Title:_____

Address:_____City, State and Zip Code:_____

Email Address: _____

Submitter's Signature:_____Telephone No._____

Fax No._____800 # (if available)_____

Date:_____

Solicitation Number: CSP 207774
Solicitation Title: ORG 237 - John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

IDENTIFICATION BADGE(S)

1. Identification Badge: Offeror's employees, agents, and consultants and subcontractors, subject to the criminal history record review requirement shall be identified by a photographic identification badge.

2. If the Offeror is the person or owner or operator of the business entity, that individual may not self-certify regarding the criminal history record information and its review and must submit original evidence acceptable to the District with this Agreement showing compliance.

3. Pursuant to Dallas ISD's Board Policy CJA (LOCAL) Purchasing and Acquisition:

   All contracts must comply with the requirements for criminal background checks. All vendors must give advance notice to the District if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. The District may terminate any resulting agreement if the District determines that the person or business entity failed to provide notice as required by this paragraph or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction.

4. The above requirement is required for all suppliers who will provide a service to Dallas ISD and will be on District property. The background checks and badges must be done through the supplier's company or the District's third-party provider, Field Control Analytics at www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup using project code: VENDISD15 or be issued by the supplier's company.

Company Name:_____ Submitter's Name/Title:_____

Address:_____City, State and Zip Code:_____

Email Address: _____

Submitter's Signature:_____Telephone No._____

Fax No._____800 # (if available)_____

Date:_____

Instructions to School District Contractors
Regarding Criminal History Background Searches
Under TEC 22.0835

TEC 22.0834 directs school district contractors (i.e., Company) to obtain state and national criminal history background searches on their employees who will have direct contact with students, and to receive those results through the DPS criminal history clearinghouse (Fingerprint-based Applicant Clearinghouse of Texas –FACT). In order for contractors to receive the information through FACT, they must first establish an account with the DPS for FACT clearinghouse access. The Company owner must sign a user agreement with the DPS. To obtain the user agreement and more information, Company must contact:

Access and Dissemination Bureau
Texas Department of Public Safety
Crime Records Service
P. O. Box 149322
Austin, Texas 78714-9322

Email: FACT@txdps.state.tx.us
Phone: (512) 424-2365

For fastest service, please email or call. State in the message that Company is a school district contractor and needs to have an account established for DPS FACT clearinghouse access. Please include:

Company Name
Company Address
Company Phone
Name of Company point of contact
Phone of Company point of contact
Company email to be used for notification of FACT records and messages

The information in the DPS FACT Clearinghouse is confidential, and access must be restricted to the least number of persons needed to review the records. The account must include at least one designated supervisor to make necessary changes and to monitor the site's security and the access to the criminal history data retrieved. Additional users must be limited to those who need to request, retrieve, or evaluate data regarding the individual applicants.

PLEASE NOTE: After the Company signs the DPS User Agreement for FACT, DPS will provide the Company with a revised ***FAST Fingerprint Pass*** that Company will have to provide to its employees and applicants. Company's employees and applicants will use that ***FAST Fingerprint Pass*** when scheduling their FAST fingerprinting.

Company Name:_____ Submitter's Name/Title:_____

Address:_____City, State and Zip Code:_____

Email Address: _____

Submitter's Signature:_____Telephone No._____

Fax No._____800 # (if available)_____

Date:_____

Name of Contractor	

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
CERTIFICATE OF NON-DISCRIMINATION

In connection with the execution of this Contract, the Contractor shall fully comply with the District non-discrimination requirement cited below.

"The Dallas Independent School District does not discriminate on the basis of sex, disability, race, religion, color, age, gender, sexual orientation, and/or national origin in the educational programs or activities which it operates, and it is required by Title IX, Section 504, Title VII, and the Americans With Disabilities Act not to discriminate in such a manner. This policy not to discriminate extends to employment in and admission to such programs and activities."

Submittal to District of reasonable evidence of discrimination will be grounds for Termination of the Agreement. This policy does not require the employment of unqualified persons.

By the signing of this Certificate, the Contractor signifies that it does not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it does not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. It certifies further that it will not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it will not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The undersigned agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause in this proposed Contract. As used in this certification, the term 'segregated facilities' means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated on the basis of race, creed, color, or national origin, because of habit, local custom, or otherwise. It further agrees that (except where it obtained identical certifications from proposed consultants for specific time period) it will obtain identical certification from proposed Subcontractors prior to the award of a Contract exceeding $10,000.00 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause; that it will retain such certifications in its files; and that it will forward the following notice to such proposed Subcontractors (except where the proposed Subcontractors have submitted identical certifications for specific time periods): **Notice to Prospective Subcontractors of requirement for certification of non-segregated facilities.** A certification of non-segregated facilities, as required by the May 19, 1967 Order (32 FR. 7439, May 19, 1967) on elimination of segregated facilities, by the Secretary of Labor, must be submitted prior to the award of a Contract exceeding $10,000.00 which is not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause. The certification may be submitted either for each subcontract or for all subcontracts during a period (i.e., quarterly, semiannually, or annually).

Note: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.11."

By: Signature:

_____ _____

(PRINT NAME OF PERSON SIGNING FOR CONTRACTOR) (CONTRACTOR REPRESENTATIVE SIGNATURE)

Date: Contractor:

_____ _____

SECTION 00 45 22 – NOTIFICATION OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

Name of Contractor	

STATE OF TEXAS

COUNTY OF DALLAS

Before me, the undersigned authority on this day personally appeared _____, known to me to be the person whose name is subscribed below, who, on oath stated:

"As the appropriate official of the company, contractor, or subcontractor submitting this affidavit in conjunction with a bid submitted to the Dallas Independent School District, I acknowledge that this company, contractor, or subcontractor has been notified that copies of the Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) for the school(s) where such company, contractor or subcontractor has contracted to perform work are available at the individual school library and at the Professional Library at the Dallas Independent School District, 9400 N. Central Expressway, Dallas, Texas 75231. I understand that it is our responsibility to familiarize ourselves with such plans and that it is our responsibility to inform every worker that we use on this project as to the availability of these plans.

We also acknowledge that we will be required to obtain written clearance from the Dallas Independent School District, Bureau of Hazardous Materials Management, prior to executing any work on this project."

_____

Name of Company

Signature _____

Name _____

Title _____

STATE OF TEXAS

COUNTY OF DALLAS

Sworn to and subscribed before me at Dallas, Texas this the _____ day of _____, 20 _____, A.D.

_____

Notary Public in and for Dallas County, Texas

FAMILY CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

This Questionnaire must be completed by every individual or entity that contracts or seeks to contract with the District for the sale or purchase of property, goods, or services.

The questionnaire(s) required by this policy shall be filed with the Director of Procurement Services not later than the seventh (7TH) business day after the date that the individual or entity begins contracts discussions or negotiations with the District or submits to the District an application, response to a request for proposals or bids, correspondence, or other writing related to a potential agreement with the District. If the individual or entity becomes aware of new facts or change of facts that would make the completed questionnaire(s) inaccurate, the individual or entity shall file an amended questionnaire(s) within seven (7) days of the date the individual or entity first learned of the new facts or changes in facts.

Family or family relationship means a member of an individual's immediate family, including spouse, parents, children (whether natural or adopted), aunts, uncles, and siblings.

For individuals who contract or seek to contract with the District for the sale or purchase of any property, goods, or services:

> Identify each and every family relationship between yourself (and any member of your family) and any full-time District Employee (and any member of such employee's family) (please include name and sufficient information that will allow proper identification of any named individual):
>
> _____

For entities that contract or seek to contract with the District for the sale or purchase of property, goods, or services:

> Identify each and every full-time District employee (and any member of the employee's family) who serves as an officer or director of the entity, or holds an ownership interest of 10 per cent or more in the entity (please include name and sufficient information that will allow proper identification of any named individual):
>
> _____

If more space is required please attach a second page. If the answer to any question is none, or not applicable, please write "None" or "Not Applicable" in the space reserved for that answer.

"I certify that the answers contained in this questionnaire are true and correct."

Individual: _____ Date: _____

Entity: _____

By: _____ Date: _____
Signature

Title: _____

Certified this _____ day of _____ , 20_____, by _____
Notary Public

_____
Notary Seal

SBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms

Date Issued:
August 27, 2025

Contact Info:
Small Business Office
9400 N. Central Expressway
Dallas, TX 75231
972-925-7290
Email: sbo-construction@dallasisd.org
Website: www.dallasisd.org
Contact: Wilton Munnings
972-925-7222

Read Carefully: The SBE Program requirements are applicable to any bidder/proposer. These forms should be attached to any bid/proposal totaling $50,000 or more and are due at the time of bid/proposal opening.

JOINT VENTURE AGREEMENT

BY AND BETWEEN

_____

AND

_____

AS

_____, a Joint Venture JV

FOR

Dallas Independent School District

_____

JOINT VENTURE AGREEMENT

THIS AGREEMENT is made and entered into this _____ day of _____, 20___ (the "Effective Date"), by and between _____Inc. ("NAME"), a _____ ("STATE") corporation, whose business address is _____ ,_____ ("CITY") , _____ ("STATE") _____ ("ZIP"); and _____, Inc. ("NAME"), a _____ ("STATE") corporation, whose business address is_____, _____ ("CITY") , _____ ("STATE") _____ ("ZIP"), hereinafter referred to individually as a "Party" or collectively as the "Parties". The name of the Joint Venture shall be called _____. All business of the Joint Venture shall be conducted under this name.

Recitals

A. The Parties have agreed to enter into a joint venture for the purpose of submitting a proposal, bid, solicitation or otherwise (the "Proposal") to provide owners representative services or work to the Dallas Independent School District in response to Bid/RFP/RFQ No. _____ entitled _____ (the "Solicitation"), which to the extent the Proposal is successful, will result in a contract with the Owner.

B. The Parties desire to enter into this Agreement to fix and define between themselves their respective interests and responsibilities for the purposes of providing the requisite Services, Work, or both.

C. The Parties affirm and agree that they shall participate in the preparation of the Proposal and pursue the Contract with each other, that no Party shall submit a competitive proposal or otherwise seek the award of the Contract contemplated herein either alone or with others without notice to the Parties to this Agreement and entering into a Non-Disclosure Agreement, and in reliance thereon have entered into this Agreement.

D. The Parties agree and affirm to register the Joint Venture with the State and forward the Certificate of Filing and Tax Identification Number to the Dallas Independent School District, if the Joint Venture is awarded a Project with the Owner.

E. The Parties affirm and agree the joint venture participation split represented in this Agreement and no employee or former employee [of less than one year], relative, affiliate or subsidiary company is listed or included as a joint venture partner.

F. In the event the Parties agree to pursue other DISD projects as a joint venture, they will enter into an addendum to this Agreement, subject to District approval, identifying that project and any modified terms of this Agreement, if any, in connection with the pursuit or award of same.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual covenants contained herein, it is agreed as follows:

Agreement

Article 1: Definitions and Interpretation

1.1 Capitalized terms used in this Agreement shall have the meaning set forth below or as defined elsewhere in this Agreement.

1.1.1 "Agreement" means this document.

1.2

1.2.1 "Managing Business Party" the Joint venture partner designated to provide the accounting and financial services, on behalf of the Joint Venture required to reflect the conduct of the Joint Venture's affairs

1.2.2 "Owner" means Dallas Independent School District.

1.2.3 "Contract" means any contract (together with any amendments, supplements or modifications thereto) awarded to the Joint Venture by the Owner for the performance of the Services, Work, or both, for the Project

1.2.4 "Deputy Project Manager" means the individual specifically designated pursuant to Article 3 of and charged with assisting the Project manager and Senior Project manager in the overall responsibility to direct the Joint Venture's performance under the Contract.

1.2.5 "IRC" means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 as amended as of the date of this contract.

1.2.6 "Joint Venture" means an association between _____, Inc., and _____, Inc. engaged in a solitary business enterprise for profit.

1.2.7 "Management Committee" means the group formed pursuant to Article 4 as the final authority of the Joint Venture and having the powers and duties as provided herein.

1.2.8 "Project" means the "DALLAS ISD" Construction" project the subject of the solicitation.

1.2.9 "Project Manager" or "Senior Project Manager" means the individual specifically designated pursuant to Article 3 of and charged with overall responsibility to direct the Joint Venture's performance under the Contract.

1.2.10 "Proposal" means the proposal(s) submitted by the Joint Venture to the Owner to secure the award of the Contract for the Project. The Proposal shall include, but not limited to, all pursuit efforts, including any presentation or other interview. The term "Proposal" does not include task order specific proposals.

1.2.11 "Services" or "Work" means services or work under the Contract to be performed by the Joint Venture in furtherance of the Project.

1.2.12 "Task Order Contract" means a contract for services that does not procure or specify a firm quantity of services (other than a minimum or maximum quantity) and that provides for the issuance of orders for the performance of tasks during the period of the contract. 1.2. Terms importing the singular include the plural and vice versa where the context requires.

1.3. The headings used in this Agreement are included for ease of reference only and shall not affect the construction or interpretation hereof.

Article 2: Association of the Parties

2.1 Formation. The Parties hereby agree to form the Joint Venture pursuant to the provisions hereof for the limited purpose and scope set forth in this Agreement. The Parties hereby further agree to perform the Joint Venture's responsibilities and obligations as an integrated team, providing staffing (including key

personnel) and resources generally in proportion to their respective interests in the Joint Venture as set forth in Article 5.

2.2 Purpose. This Joint Venture is entered into solely for the purpose of submitting the Proposal and, if the Contract is awarded to the Joint Venture, the performance of the Services, Work, or both, as identified in the Solicitation. The Parties agree that the Joint Venture is a temporary association and that it will not place any limitation or liability on the Parties beyond the specific undertakings contained in this Agreement.

2.3 Name. The Joint Venture shall operate under the name _____, a Joint Venture.

2.4 Duration. The Joint Venture will continue until dissolved in accordance with this Agreement. Subject to the foregoing, the Joint Venture shall:

2.4.1 dissolve automatically (i) should the Parties fail to agree as to the form, terms or conditions of the Proposal, (ii) if the Project is cancelled prior to award, or (iii) if the Contract is not awarded to the Joint Venture, but only after any challenge to the award of the Contract, by administrative protest or litigation (or appeal of a decision on such protest or litigation), is fully concluded without an award of the Contract to the Joint Venture, or

2.4.2 if awarded the Contract, be dissolved upon completion of all Services, Work, or both, required to be performed under the Contract, receipt of full payment of all sums for which the Joint Venture is entitled under the Contract, the settlement of all disputes and final accounting, and the expiration of all warranties and all other obligations arising in connection with the Contract.

2.43 if awarded the Contract, the Joint Venture shall not be dissolved, without thirty (30) days written notice and the prior written consent of the Dallas Independent School District

2.5 In the event the Contract is terminated, the Joint Venture shall conclude its affairs in an orderly manner at the earliest practicable date, subject to the requirements of Section 2.4 above. However, should the Services, Work, or both, be only suspended, the Joint Venture shall remain in effect during the period of such suspension.

2.6 The Parties agree that they shall cause the Joint Venture to sign the Contract promptly upon its being tendered for signature in a form mutually agreed upon by the Parties and the Owner.

2.7 Scope of Services or Work. The Services, Work, or both, to be performed by the Joint Venture shall generally be of the type and nature described in Exhibit A.

Article 3: Operation of the Joint Venture

3.1 If required by applicable law or regulation, the Joint Venture shall be registered and licensed as a business in the jurisdiction where the Joint Venture's principal office is located.

3.2 The principal business address of the Joint Venture shall be _____. Services may be performed in the Owner's offices, in the Joint Venture office, in the respective offices of the Parties or DALLAS ISD as authorized, at the project site or at such locations as the Parties may mutually agree upon.

3.3 All correspondence from the Owner regarding the Contract shall be sent to the Project Manager and/or _____ at the principal business address of the Joint Venture, with a copy provided to each of the Joint Venture members.

3.4 Initial Proposal Effort. Each Party will participate in preparing the Proposal required for the Contract under the direction of the Project Manager. Each Party will bear its own labor and travel costs associated

with this effort. Third party direct costs for expenses and other services such as video imaging, photography, document development, technical writing and editing, graphics, printing, and reproduction, as well as any specialty sub-consultant services, shall be shared between the Parties in proportion to each Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation as specified in Article 5; provided, however, that all Parties must pre-authorize any such expenditure.

3.5 Integrated Services. During the construction and pre-construction phase of the project, the Parties intend to perform the Services as an integrated organization with each Party providing competent personnel to the Joint Venture consistent with the staffing resource plan set forth in Exhibit B and as necessary to enable the Joint Venture to successfully perform the Services, Work, or both, in accordance with the terms of the Contract. In addition, and at the direction of the Management Committee, Services may be performed, in whole or in part, by consultants retained by the Joint Venture, one or more of the Parties, or both, and Work may be performed, in whole or in part, by subcontractors retained by the Joint Venture, one or more of the Parties, or both. Notwithstanding the foregoing, personnel assigned to the Joint Venture shall remain on the payroll of the assigning Party. The staffing resource plan may be amended from time to time as may be deemed necessary by the Management Committee. A Party may not remove from the Project or reassign to another project any "key personnel" listed on Exhibit B without the prior consent of the Management Committee and notice to the Director of the MWBE Department or his/her designee within five (5) business days from the date of removal or reassignment.

3.6 Subject to the limitation noted above with respect to key personnel, in the event that an individual assigned to the Project is unable or unwilling to perform the Services, the Work, or both, in a professional and timely manner, or if the Owner directs the Joint Venture to remove a particular individual from the Project, or if the Project Manager, in the good faith exercise of his/her discretion, determines that an individual should be removed from the Project, then the assigning Party shall replace such individual with a qualified employee reasonably acceptable to the Management Committee and, if applicable, the Owner. If the assigning Party cannot furnish a qualified substitute candidate within a reasonable period of time after the vacancy arises, then the vacancy shall be filled by an individual employed by the other Party.

3.7 Project Manager. Subject to the authority of the Management Committee and any limitations set forth herein, the Project Manager is the individual charged with responsibility to direct the Joint Venture's performance under the Contract. Subject to Owner approval (if required), _____ shall serve as the Project Manager during the term of the Contract, subject to the continuing approval of the Management Committee. If this individual, as determined by the Owner or the unanimous consent of the Management Committee, is unable to satisfactorily perform his duties as Project Manager, the Management Committee will nominate an employee of _____- to serve as the successor Project Manager. In performing his duties, the Project Manager shall treat both Parties fairly and shall not discriminate in favor of either Party.

3.8 In addition to the other duties set forth herein, the Project Manager is to:

3.8.1 Serve as the primary interface between the Joint Venture and the Owner;

3.8.2 Ensure compliance with the DALLAS ISD MWBE Program requirements

3.8.3 Submit Change Orders to the Owner;

3.8.4 Report monthly, or as requested, to the Management Committee;

3.8.5 Oversee the Services, Work, or both, of the Joint Venture;

3.8.6 Prepare and maintain Project schedules;

3.8.7 Consult and confer with the Deputy Project Manager; and

3.8.8 Perform such additional duties as directed by the Management Committee.

3.9 Deputy Project Manager. The Deputy Project Manager shall be designated by the MWBE partner and will support and assist the Project Manager in the performance of his/her duties as set forth above. Subject to Owner approval (if required), _____ shall serve as the Deputy Project Manager during the term of the Contract, subject to the continuing approval of the Management Committee. If this individual, as determined by the Owner or the unanimous consent of the Management Committee, is unable to satisfactorily perform his duties as Deputy Project
3.10 Manager, the Management Committee will nominate an employee of _____ MWBE Joint Venture Partner to serve as the successor Deputy Project Manager.

Article 4: Joint Venture Organization

4.1 _____ shall be responsible for the fiscal and administrative tasks of managing the business operations of the Joint Venture (the "Managing Business Party") and shall appoint an individual responsible for these tasks. As the Managing Business Party, _____will appoint one of its Management Committee Members to act in the role of Chairperson of the Management Committee commencing on the effective date of this Agreement.

4.2 The Project Management Committee ("Management Committee") will be comprised of two or three (___) representative from _____, and one (_) representative from _____. The Parties individual representatives designated to comprise the Management Committee are referred to herein as the primary representative(s). The Managing Business Party shall designate an individual on the Committee as the Chairperson to manage the administrative and management functions of the Committee. In addition to its primary representatives or representative, each Party shall also name an alternative representative for its primary representatives or representative. A Party's alternative representative shall act in the capacity of its primary representative should its primary representative be unable to fulfill his or her duties as described herein. If not identified below, representatives shall be designated within thirty (30) days of the date of this Agreement by written notice to the other Party. A Party may change its designated representative(s) or alternate representative upon ten (10) days written notice to the other Party. No proxies shall be permitted. Each Party's designated primary and alternate representative(s) shall have full power and authority to act for and on behalf of the Party so appointing them with respects to all matters coming before the Management Committee.

4.3 Meetings of the Management Committee shall not be held unless each Party is represented. If the Parties representatives are not all available, the meeting shall stand adjourned and will be re-scheduled to the next earliest date acceptable to all Parties. While the Management Committee will always attempt to meet in person, telephonic or online meetings shall be allowed. The Parties shall endeavor to provide five (5) days written notice to each Party of scheduled meetings (in person, online or by telephone), except in the event of an emergency or immediate need. A Party's refusal or repeated failure to attend any scheduled Management Committee meeting shall at the other Party's sole discretion, constitute of default under this Agreement subject to the review and approval of the MWBE Director or his/her designee.

4.4 _____ representative(s) shall each have one (1) vote on matters coming before the Management Committee. The primary representative(s) from _____shall each have one (1) vote each on matters coming before the Management Committee. A vote shall not be taken until each representative of a Party has communicated its position and expressed its questions, concerns, approval or disapproval of a matter. Each party agrees to work collaboratively to make decisions and solve problems in the best interest of the Joint Venture. In the event the Management Committee members cannot reach a unanimous decision on the business and operational matter(s) at hand requiring a Management Committee vote or resolution, the Chairperson will make the decision as majority partner, taking into account the risks and financial impacts to all parties and the Joint Venture. The final decision is applicable for all matters except for scope changes made by the Owner or settlement of claims and disputes. In these cases, if the Management Committee cannot develop a mutually agreeable solution, they shall submit any dispute to the Chief Executive Officer of the Joint Venture partners as provided for in Article 16. If, in the Project Manager's good faith judgment, immediate action is required in order to meet the Joint Venture's obligations under the Contract, the Project Manager may act without waiting for the resolution of the dispute,

subject to written notice and each Party's reservation of their respective right to seek recovery for the financial consequences arising from such action pending final resolution of the dispute. If any Party is in default (as defined in Article 12) under this Agreement, during the time of such default, its representative(s) shall not vote upon any issue, and such representative(s) shall not be included in the computation of eligible votes. Within one week of the Management Committee meeting, written meeting minutes regarding items discussed and actions taken at the meeting shall be prepared and distributed by the Chairperson of the Management Committee.

4.5 The Project Management Committee shall meet with the Project Manager or Senior Project Manager) and the Deputy Project Manager or Assistant Project Manager (and other project staff as mutually agreed upon by the Management Committee) quarterly or more frequently if deemed necessary.

4.6 The Project Manager shall have authority to conduct the business of the Joint Venture in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, but shall not have authority to, and shall not directly or indirectly without the unanimous consent and prior written approval of the Management Committee:

4.6.1. Enter into on behalf of the Joint Venture any third-party contractual arrangements or cause the Joint Venture to assume, incur, or become liable for any other obligations;

4.6.2. Make any investment in any other person or entity; make loans or guarantees, or otherwise extend or pledge credit to others;

4.6.3. Confess any judgment against the Joint Venture or compromise any debt due the Joint Venture except upon receipt of full payment;

4.6.4. Make any election for the Joint Venture under the then-current Internal Revenue Code, as amended, or any other applicable income tax legislation from time to time in force;

4.6.5 Commence any claim against the Owner with respect to amounts due under the Contract;

4.6.6 Commence any litigation; defend any action or claim against the Joint Venture by a third party; appeal any judgment or decision; or settle any litigation, action or claim to which the Joint Venture is a party;

4.6.7 Cause to be organized or acquired in whole or in part by the Joint Venture any corporation to carry out any activities of the Joint Venture; or

4.6.8 Exercise any of the authority vested in the Management Committee pursuant to Section 4.9 below.

4.7 In case it is necessary to settle a matter prior to the next scheduled or specially called meeting, the representatives may agree on a decision by notice to each other in accordance with the provisions of Article 23. Such decision will be included in the minutes of the next meeting of the Management Committee.

4.8 The representatives shall be deemed to be acting on behalf of his or her respective Party and no representative shall be liable to the Parties by reason of his or her actions as a member of the Management Committee, except where such representative's action constitutes gross negligence or actual fraudulent or dishonest conduct.

4.9 The Management Committee may delegate, in writing, such of its responsibilities and duties as it deems appropriate to the Project Manager, Senior Project Manager or the Managing Business Party, except that the Management Committee must act, *inter alia*, on the following matters of major consequence:

4.9.1 Timing and amount of distribution of Joint Venture profits and the Management Committee's right to demand additional cash reserves to cover potential losses;

4.9.2 Amount of revenue reserves, cash reserves, and contingent cost reserves to be retained by the Joint Venture;

4.9.3 Voluntary liquidation of the Joint Venture;

4.9.4 Third Party contractual arrangements or the incurring of other obligations in excess of $10,000 by or on behalf of the Joint Venture;

4.9.5 Designation of a successor Project Manager or Deputy Project Manager;

4.9.6 Resolution of a dispute first referred to the Management Committee pursuant to the provisions of Article 16;

4.9.7 Review and approve all contractual transactions between the Parties (and their affiliates) and the Joint Venture; and

4.9.8 Take such other action and exercise such other authority as the Management Committee deems necessary to cause the Joint Venture to achieve its purposes consistent with good business practices and in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations.

4.10 The Joint Venture shall not have employees. The Parties shall provide all necessary personnel. A Party, at its own cost and expense, may retain necessary staff on an independent consultant basis to meet its personnel needs.

Article 5: Interests of the Parties

5.1 Except to the extent that this Agreement expressly provides to the contrary, the interests of the Parties in (i) any and all gains, losses, and liabilities that may result from the performance of the Contract or the Agreement, or both, (ii) any and all property, equipment, and other assets acquired by the Joint Venture, and (iii) any and all monies received in connection with the Contract, shall be determined proportionately in accordance with the Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation as set forth below.

Agreed Percentage of Participation

_____ ____ _%

_____ _____ %

_____ _____ %

5.2 The Parties acknowledge and agree that all liabilities and risks associated with the Project shall be shared pro rata according to the Agreed Percentage of Participation unless otherwise provided for herein. The MWBE Joint Venture partners proportionate share in the ownership shall be commensurate with their capital contribution, control, management, risks and ownership interest. For the avoidance of doubt, a Party's profits and losses arising out of the performance of self-performed subcontracting services, work, or both, for which it is responsible under this Agreement shall not be considered profits and losses of the Joint Venture.

5.3 The Parties shall appoint a Project Manager or Senior Project Manager to maintain and oversee the day to day work under the Contract. The Parties shall jointly select any necessary additional Project Managers, the Assistant Project Manager (the "APM") and/or Superintendents. The selected Project Managers and Superintendents shall be available at the Project site daily to supervise the work under the Contract. The MWBE Joint Venture Partner shall be assigned staff under the Contract in proportionate share of their respective ownership interest in the Joint venture. The Project manager shall submit the final staffing matrix confirming compliance with this section including all Project managers, Assistant Project managers and Superintendents to DALLAS ISD's MWBE office within 30 days of the Notice to Proceed.

5.4 The clear and distinct portion of the Scope of Work to be performed by _____, the MWBE Joint Venture partner and the estimated value of those services commensurate with the percentage ownership interest is as follows:

A detailed delineation of the Joint Ventures duties is outlined in Exhibit "A".

[Please note that if the MWBE's scope of work is described as "participate in", "advise about", "assist in" or "consult", the work shall not be considered distinct or clearly defined for the purpose of analyzing the joint venture participation]

Article 6: Execution of Bonding and/or Guarantees

6.1 Each of the Parties agrees to execute all applications and indemnity agreements required by its sureties upon any bond or bonds required in connection with the Proposal and/or the Contract. Failure of a Party to execute any documentation necessary to effectuate the intent of this Article 6 shall constitute a default in accordance with Article 12 and entitle the non-Defaulting Party(ies) to appropriate relief as provided therein.

6.2 The Joint Venture partner(s) may provide co-surety bond or bonds in proportionate percentage to their ownership in the Joint Venture and to other Parties are applicable in a form acceptable to the Owner. The Joint Venture may also provide in a form acceptable to the Owner any bond or bonds in the name of the Joint Venture in lieu of the co-surety arrangement; provide an Up Front Joint Agreement (SAA Form #1), and an executed copy of the indemnity agreement signed by all of the Parties associated with the SAA Form #1.

Article 7: Working Capital

7.1 All necessary working capital, when and as required for the performance and prosecution of the Contract or operation of the Joint Venture as determined by the Project Manager and approved by the Management Committee, shall be furnished by the Parties in a timely manner and proportionately in accordance with their respective interests as set forth in Article 5. Each of the Parties recognizes that the failure of any Party to contribute its full proportionate share of working capital will have serious adverse consequences for the Joint Venture and imposes an unfair burden upon the other Party(ies). As to such working capital contribution, each of the Parties waives any rights of set-off it might otherwise possess and agrees to make the working capital contributions without set-off or deduction of any type. If any Party borrows funds to meet its obligation hereunder, such borrowing shall be the sole and separate obligation of the Party and shall not be the debt or obligation of the Joint Venture. No Party or its representatives shall have the power to pledge the credit of any other Party.

7.2 Any capital contributions requested by the Project Manager from the Parties shall be subject to the approval of the Management Committee. If such request is approved, the Management Committee shall give written approval thereof, with the manner of computation, to each Party. If, within thirty (30) days of receipt of such notice, either Party fails or is unable to provide its proportionate share of the funds required by the Joint Venture, such non-contributing Party shall be in default of this Agreement. In the event the non-contributing Party fails to cure its default within seven (7) days of the date of receipt of notice, the contributing Party shall be reimbursed from any profit due the non-contributing Party for the total amount of the funds contributed, but the ownership interest of the Joint Venture shall not be adjusted or changed unless the non-contributing Party is determined to be in default and fails to cure. The Management Committee has the discretion to waive a default under this Section.

Article 8: Books and Records, Accounting and Bank Accounts

8.1 Books and Records. The Parties acknowledge and agree that _____ will be the Managing Business Party and will provide at no additional costs the accounting and financial services required of the Joint Venture as approved and determined by the Management Committee. The Managing

Business Party, on behalf of the Joint Venture, shall keep proper books, records and accounts in which full, true and correct entries will be made of its transactions, on an accrual basis, in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, showing all costs, expenditures, sales, receipts, assets and liabilities, and profits and losses of the Joint Venture, and all other records required appropriately to reflect the conduct of the Joint Venture's affairs and the distributions provided for in Article 5. Each of the Parties shall be entitled to have its representatives examine and make copies (at its own expense) of any of the books or records of the Joint Venture at any reasonable time and without notice. The Joint Venture shall permit the use of electronic copies of its books and records. The books and records of the Joint Venture are to be retained after dissolution of the Joint Venture for such period or periods as may be required by law or the Contract, whichever is greater. The costs associated with accounting and record keeping for the Joint Venture (including federal reporting under Section 9.2 and tax matters under Section 17.6) shall be a Joint Venture cost.

8.2 Fiscal Year. The fiscal year of the Joint Venture shall commence on _____ and end on _____.

8.3 Audit. If required by the Management Committee or the Owner, the Managing Business Party shall employ, at the expense of the Joint Venture, an independent auditor acceptable to the Management Committee to conduct an audit of the financial statements, including the balance sheet and statements of income and cash flows and disclosures required under generally accepted accounting principles, of the Joint Venture each year and report to the Parties within ninety (90) days after the expiration of the fiscal year its opinion on such financial statements. Further, each Party may at its option and sole expense perform an annual audit of the Joint Venture books and records.

8.4 Reports. The Managing Business Party shall deliver to each Party:

8.4.1 Within thirty (30) days after each month period, a balance sheet and statement of income of the Joint Venture for the month;

8.4.2 Within thirty (30) days after the end of each fiscal quarter, a statement of cash flow for the Joint Venture;

8.4.3 At least two (2) weeks prior to each quarterly Management Committee meeting, a summary of the monthly financial information for the most recent completed months, and projections for the next three (3) quarters; and

8.4.4 With reasonable promptness, all such other information, reports, and projections as from time to time may reasonably be requested by either Party.

8.5 Bank Accounts. A separate bank account in the name of the Joint Venture will be established by the Joint Venture. The bank account will require the signature of an authorized representative of each Party or his or her designee for withdrawal by check or documented approval of an authorized representative of each Party or his or her designee for withdrawal by electronic means. All payments due the Joint Venture for performance of the Contract will be deposited in the account and all expenses incurred under the Contract will be paid from the account. All capital contributions made in cash and all of the Parties' other cash receipts shall be deposited in such account under such terms as directed by the Management Committee. No petty cash accounts for the Joint Venture are authorized. The Managing Business Party shall reconcile the bank account monthly and deliver a report to the Management Committee.

8.6 Disbursements from Bank Accounts. All withdrawals from the Joint Venture account will require written invoices, receipts, vouchers, or other acceptable documentation. All checks, drafts, or other orders of the payment of money, and all notes or other evidence of indebtedness issued in the name of the Joint Venture shall be signed by two (2) persons, each representing one of the Parties. Each Party shall designate an individual or individuals authorized on its behalf to provide such signatures.

8.7 Closing of Bank Account in Event of Default. In case of a material default by one of the Parties

under Article 12 of this Agreement, the then-existing Joint Venture account may be closed by the non-Defaulting Party(ies) and a new account opened in the name of the Joint Venture, but under the sole direction and control of the non-Defaulting Party(ies). Funds from the closed account shall be transferred to the new account and the then-existing account shall be closed. In such an event, the defaulting Party(ies) will no longer have any rights to the operation of the new bank account, unless and until it cures its default to the satisfaction of the non-Defaulting Party(ies).

8.8 Loans. Without the prior written consent of all Parties, the Joint Venture, the Management Committee, or any Party shall not:

8.8.1 directly or indirectly, borrow money or become otherwise obligated upon, or liable for, any monies borrowed in the name of the Joint Venture or the other Party(ies);

8.8.2 guarantee or act as surety for any obligation or liability (whether for borrowed money or otherwise), for any other person, firm or corporation.

8.9 Accounting Decisions. Subject to Section 8.1 above, all decisions for the Joint Venture as to accounting principles shall be made by the Management Committee consistent with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles ("GAAP") with the concurrence of accounting or tax experts from each Party.

8.10 Final Accounting. Upon completion of the Project, payment of all sums due under any contract pertaining to the Project, and settlement of all outstanding obligations and liabilities on the part of the Joint Venture and their respective affiliated subcontractors, the Management Committee shall arrange for a final account to be prepared showing the total net profit earned, or loss incurred, by the Joint Venture. Unless otherwise agreed by the Parties, such final account shall be audited by a firm of accountants and agreed to by the Management Committee.

Article 9: Additional Obligations of the Parties

9.1 The Joint Venture shall, in good faith, commit to achieve the minority and women owned business subcontracting goals as set forth within the Contract. The Joint Venture also agrees to comply with the MWBE Program guidance, rules and regulations.

9.2 Each Party shall use good faith efforts to provide and make available its expertise, technical resources, and information to the Joint Venture to effectuate the intent herein and in furtherance of satisfying the Joint Venture's obligations to the Owner.

9.3 Contracting and Procurement. The Management Committee or its designee shall administer and manage all contracting, procurement, and financial activities for the Joint Venture and periodically update the Parties on the status of such activities. For the avoidance of doubt, the foregoing activities relate solely to the contracting, procurement, and financial activities of the Joint Venture and not such activities as undertaken by the Parties in furtherance of the Services, Work, or both, for which they are responsible under a Task Order Agreement.

9.4 Ownership Interest. Subject to the prior written approval of the District's M/WBE Department, each Party's Ownership interest may be adjusted from time to time as provided in this Agreement. For purposes of this Agreement, the term "Pro Rata" means the ratio determined by dividing the Ownership interest of a Party to whom a particular provision of this Agreement is stated to apply by the aggregate Ownership interest of all the Parties.

9.5 Reporting Requirements. The Management Committee or its designee shall administer and manage all required state, local, and federal reporting activities for the Joint Venture, including MWBE goals, all in accordance with applicable DALLAS ISD regulations and guidelines. Each Party will be responsible for providing any required reporting information to the Managing Business Party in a timely manner to allow the timely submission of the combined data from each Party to the appropriate federal agency and/or electronic reporting system.

9.6 The Parties agree that, during the term of this Contract and for a period of one year thereafter, no Party to this Contract shall in any way intentionally induce or persuade an employee of another Party to this Contract to become an employee or agent of such Party.

Article 10: Provision of Materials, Equipment, Supplies and Services

10.1 The Parties intend that all materials, equipment, supplies, and services required in connection with the Contract will be provided by the Parties and that the Joint Venture will not acquire any materials, equipment, supplies, or services directly. In the event the Joint Venture shall procure any such materials, equipment, supplies, or services, such procurement shall be in accordance with any procurement guidelines, directives, and procedures issued or approved by the Management Committee. In addition, and to the extent applicable, any procurement activities by the Parties, Joint Venture, or both shall be conducted in accordance with applicable laws and regulations, as implemented through the Contract.

10.2 If any Party provides equipment or temporary facilities to the Joint Venture, the Party shall insure or self-insure such equipment or temporary facilities and the cost of such insurance or self-insurance shall be included in the equipment or facilities rate quoted to the Joint Venture. The Joint Venture and the other Parties will be identified as an additional insured on any such insurance when appropriate, as determined by the Management Committee.

Article 11: Compensation

11.1 In accordance with the billing period provided in the Contract, unless otherwise approved by the Management Committee, each Party shall prepare and submit by the tenth (10th) of each month, for Work performed during the prior month, invoices to the Joint Venture.

11.2 Each Party shall submit invoices in the manner required under the Contract. Each invoice shall be subject to the terms of the Contract.

11.3 The Project Manager, on behalf of the Joint Venture, will in turn prepare and submit invoices to the Owner in accordance with the provisions of the Contract and any applicable task order. Unless expressly agreed to by the Parties and permitted pursuant to the terms of the Contract, the Joint Venture shall not add any profit, fee, or other amounts to the invoices submitted by the Parties. The Parties may invoice the monthly staff costs for personnel incurred directly in the management and administration of the project subject to any restrictions in the terms of the Contract.

11.4 Subject to the provisions of Section 4.6, the Joint Venture will, upon receipt of payment from the Owner, deposit same in the Joint Venture bank account and within five (5) business days issue payments against such account to each Party for the amount(s) invoiced by each Party to the Joint Venture and allowed by the Owner, less any withholdings authorized by this Agreement and directed by the Management Committee. In the event the Owner pays less than the full amount due with respect to any invoice, such shortfall shall be allocated to the Party responsible for performing the specific Services, Work, or both, for which payment was withheld or, in the absence of information reasonably sufficient to determine the basis for such short payment, any shortfall shall be allocated between the Parties in proportion to their respective shares of the applicable invoice. No Party will unreasonably restrain or refuse to authorize withdrawal of funds for payment of proper invoices relating to performance of the Services, Work, or both.

11.6 Expenses incurred by the Parties in self performing Work under a Subcontract or Task Order Agreement shall not be considered Joint Venture expenses and, to the extent allowed under the Contract, may be included by the Parties in their respective invoices to the Joint Venture for Services provided, Work performed, or both. Unless stated otherwise in this Agreement or authorized in writing by the Management Committee, personnel expenses not directly related to the performance of the Project including but not limited to back office functions such as human resources, legal counseling and tax compliance of the Parties shall not be considered a Joint Venture expense.

11.7 Each Party shall have full and sole responsibility for the payment of any taxes, duties, fees, or assessments of any nature whatsoever levied upon it individually in connection with its Services, Work, or both, under a Task Order Agreement, including any personal income taxes levied or imposed on any of its employees or personnel or any of its subcontractor's employees or personnel.

11.8 All personnel involved in the performance of the Services, Work, or both, shall be employed by the Parties and shall remain in the employ of the respective Party. Each Party shall advance and pay all payroll costs and expenses incurred by reason of their respective personnel working in connection with the performance of the Services, Work, or both, and each Party agrees to indemnify and hold the Joint Venture and each other Party harmless from any claims and liabilities arising out of the responsibilities of that Party toward its employees, any of its related companies, and any of their personnel under all applicable laws, including labor and tax laws.

11.9 If a Party, with the prior written approval of the Management Committee, maintains a Joint Venture office dedicated exclusively for the management and administration of the DISD project independent of the Parties primary business office(s) and any of the other Party's(ies) personnel are located at the office during the duration of the project, the host Party may issue a quarterly invoice directly to the visiting Party(ies) for the pro rata cost of office space and furnishings utilized by visiting Party's(ies) personnel during the time they are engaged in the performance of Services, Work, or both, for this Joint Venture at such Joint Venture office.

11.10 The basis for the calculations of such invoices under Section 11.9 above shall be determined by the Management Committee. Such invoices shall not constitute a billing to, or on behalf of, the Joint Venture, but rather a billing directly between the Parties. The visiting Party shall pay such invoices within thirty (30) days of receipt of such invoice.

11.11 When Joint Venture funds are in excess of the needs of working capital required for the operation of the Joint Venture (as determined by the Management Committee), such excess funds, if any, shall be first applied to the return of funds advanced until such advances shall have been entirely repaid, and the balance of such excess shall be distributed as provided in Section 11.13 below, to each Party in accordance with such Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation as reflected in Article 5.

11.12 The Management Committee shall quarterly review the progress of the Services, Work, or both, and the Joint Venture's financial condition to determine whether Joint Venture profits, if any, should be distributed. If the Management Committee determines that earned profits and reserves for contingencies, including cash contributions, are adequate to meet the Joint Venture's needs, it may direct the Managing Business Party to distribute earned Joint Venture profit to the Parties based upon their respective Agreed Percentage of Participation. For the avoidance of doubt, payments to a Party for self-performed services related to the construction project, Work performed, or both, pursuant to a Task Order Agreement shall not be considered distributions of Joint Venture capital or profits.

11.13 The Management Committee shall establish cash reserves and revenue reserve funds to be retained by the Joint Venture from time to time in order to assure adequate funding for all Joint Venture obligations as they relate to future profits, losses, liabilities, and contract performance. At the direction of the Management Committee, the Project Manager shall invoice each of the Parties for approved reserves and capital contributions.

Article 12: Default and Insolvency

12.1 If a Party shall be in default hereunder (as specified in Sections 4.3 (Management Committee meetings), 7.2 (capital contributions), 9.4 (Owner-issued notice of default), 25.8 (breach of covenants), or 25.9 (anti-bribery laws), or Article 15 (assignment and change of control)), and fail to promptly (but in no event more than seven (7) days thereafter) cure such default after written notice or demand; cease or otherwise fail to timely pay for goods or services (including labor), and fail to promptly (but in no event more than seven (7) days thereafter) cure such default after written notice or demand; cease to operate or terminate its business affairs; institute an insolvency proceeding under applicable law; permit the entry of

any order for relief under Chapter 7 of the Bankruptcy Code; or fail to cure a default hereunder after entry of an order for relief under Chapter 11 of the Bankruptcy Code, (such Party being hereinafter referred to as "Defaulting or Insolvent Party"), then from and after such date:

12.1.1 All acts, consents and decisions with respect to the performance of the Contract or the management of the Joint Venture shall thereafter be taken solely by the remaining Party without considering the Defaulting or Insolvent Party.

12.1.2 The participation of the Defaulting or Insolvent Party in the profits of the Joint Venture shall be limited to that proportion which the Defaulting or Insolvent Party's contributions to the working fund of the Joint Venture bear to the total of such contributions as same may be modified by and subject to the provisions of Section 7.2, but the Defaulting or Insolvent Party shall be charged with, and shall be liable for, any and all losses that may be suffered by the Joint Venture under the Contract, or any additions or supplements thereto or modifications thereof, to the full extent of the Defaulting or Insolvent Party's Percentage of Participation, set forth in Article 5.

12.1.3 The non-Defaulting Parties shall have the right to take over and complete the Services, Work, or both. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the non-Defaulting Parties may, for the purpose of completing the Work, enter upon the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, scaffolds, tools, appliances and other items thereon, which have been purchased or provided for the performance of the Work, all of which the Defaulting or Insolvent Party hereby transfers, assigns and sets over to the non-Defaulting Parties for such purpose, and to employ any person or persons to complete the Work and provide all of the required labor, services, materials, equipment and other items. The non-Defaulting Parties may complete the Services in whatever fashion it deems most efficient and shall have the right to use the existing work product for purposes of completing the Project. In such event, the non-Defaulting Parties shall receive any and all payments, including fees, which would otherwise be due for such Services, Work, or both, and apply the proceeds thereof (i) to cover all expenses incurred by the non-Defaulting Parties in taking over and completing (by use of its own forces, subcontracting or otherwise) such Services, Work, or both and (ii) to establish a contingency fund to cover any and all outstanding warranties or other obligations of the non-Defaulting Parties with respect to such Services, Work, or both, or any other uncured defect or deficiency for which the non-Defaulting Parties are responsible.

12.1.4 The non-Defaulting Party shall have the right to establish a new Joint Venture bank account in accordance with Section 8.7 of this Agreement.

12.2 If a Party is in material default of the requirements of the Contract, including (i) failure to perform or progress the Services within the timeframe specified in the Contract; (ii) serious or repeated breaches of the safety requirements; or (iii) is in breach of the requirements of the Services to be provided, the Work to be performed, or both, by that Party and fails to cure such breach within seven (7) days after written notice or demand, then from and after such date, the non-breaching Party shall have the rights afforded it under Subsections 12.1.1 through 12.1.3 above. Nothing in this Agreement shall be interpreted or construed to relieve the defaulting Party from their obligations under this Agreement or their obligations under the Contract with the Owner.

12.3 In the event of a default of this Agreement, the non-Defaulting Parties shall additionally be entitled to exercise all applicable remedies available to it, whether at law, in equity or otherwise, including an action to recover the losses sustained in excess of its proportionate share hereunder, specific performance, and the right to declare the Joint Venture dissolved and terminated without the necessity for judicial determination. Upon such dissolution, the non-Defaulting Parties shall immediately commence to wind up the Joint Venture's affairs, including completion of the aforesaid Contract, and shall liquidate the assets of the Joint Venture as promptly as reasonably possible.

Article 13: Liabilities

13.1 The liability of the Parties under this Agreement shall be joint and several. Notwithstanding the foregoing, as between the Parties, any liability (whether to the Owner or any third party) that the Joint Venture or any Party (including its parental guarantor, if any) may incur arising from or relating to the Contract or the performance of Services, Work, or both, under the Contract or this Agreement shall be allocated as between the Parties in proportion to the Agreed Percentage of Participation of each Party, except as set forth below:

13.1.1 Liability or related losses caused by the negligence, gross negligence, willful misconduct, fraud, or violation of legislation, laws, ordinances, codes or regulations of a Party (including its officers, employees, agents, representatives, and subconsultants and subcontractors at any tier), shall be assumed by such Party;

13.1.2 In the event of a default by a Party, liability or losses sustained by the Joint Venture or the non-Defaulting Parties shall be assumed solely by the defaulting Party;

13.1.3 Liability or related losses resulting from claims made by an employee of a Party against the Joint Venture or each other Party based on the employee-employer relationship, including the payment of unemployment taxes, withholding taxes, and employment benefits, will be solely assumed by the Party by whom such person is employed;

13.1.4 Liability or related losses traceable directly to and caused by a Party (including its officers, employees, agents, representatives, and subconsultants and subcontractors at any tier) shall be assumed by that Party;

13.1.5 In the event of a breach by a Party in the performance of its obligations under this Agreement, liability or losses sustained by the Joint Venture, the non-breaching Party, or both, as a result of such breach shall be assumed solely by the breaching Party; and

13.1.6 Liabilities or related losses relating to third-party claims resulting from Services provided, Work performed, or both, jointly by the Parties (including their respective officers, employees, agents, representatives, and subconsultants and subcontractors at any tier) shall be allocated to each Party in accordance with each Party's respective, relative degree of fault or responsibility, as determined by an allocation of fault pursuant to either an agreement between the Parties or a finding made by the trier-of-fact in a judicial proceeding.

13.2 With respect to the liabilities allocated in Subsections 13.1.1 through 13.1.5 above, the Party to whom such liability is allocated shall defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Joint Venture and each other Party from any and all such claims, losses, or liabilities set forth in such subsections (including reasonable attorneys' fees). With respect to the liabilities allocated in Subsection 13.1.6 above, each Party agrees to defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Joint Venture and each other Party from any and all such claims, losses, and liabilities (including reasonable attorneys' fees) that are in excess of such other Party's relative degree of fault or responsibility, as determined by an allocation of fault pursuant to either an agreement between the Parties or a finding made by the trier-of-fact in a judicial proceeding.

13.3 With respect to any claims, losses, and liabilities not covered by Sections 13.1.1 through 13.1.6 above, each Party agrees to defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Joint Venture and each other Party from any and all such claims, losses, and liabilities (including reasonable attorneys' fees) arising from or related to the Contract or the performance of the Work, Services, or both, under the Contract, or this Agreement that are in excess of such other Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation, irrespective of the contributory fault, negligence, or strict liability of the indemnified Party(ies).

13.4 If a dispute arises between the Parties as to the allocation of liability and/or related losses each Party should bear, each Party shall provisionally assume a share of such liability in proportion to its Agreed

Percentage of Participation until the dispute is resolved.

13.5 For any such claims, losses, and liabilities, the indemnifying Party's obligations regarding any defense thereof include only the reimbursement of the indemnified Party's(ies) reasonable defense costs incurred to the extent of the indemnifying Party's actual indemnity obligations hereunder.

Article 14: Insurance

14.1 The Parties agree that they will acquire all necessary insurance in connection with the award and performance of a Dallas ISD Contract, including but not limited to general liability or professional liability, builder's risk, worker's compensation or any other insurance required under the Contract. [Optional provisions in the alternative, the Parties agree to provide the specific operational insurance coverage as follows:

14.1.1 Workers' Compensation for statutory limits in compliance with the applicable state and federal laws;

14.1.2 Employer's Liability with a limit of $_____;

14.1.3 Commercial General Liability, including Products and Completed Operations, Contractual Liability, and Broad Form Property and Personal Injury Liability, with a combined single limit of $_____ per occurrence and in the aggregate;

14.1.4 Automobile Liability Insurance with a combined single limit of _____ for bodily injury and property damage with respect to vehicles either owned, non-owned, and leased by a Party in the performance of Services under the Contract or this Agreement;

14.1.5 Commercial General Liability Insurance in the amount of _____ per claim and in the aggregate_____.;

14.1.6 Umbrella Liability in excess of (.2), (.3) and (.4) above, with an aggregate limit of _____ if required by the Contract. (Note: limit requirements can be satisfied by any combination of Primary and Excess coverage); and

14.17 Any insurance written on a "claims made" basis shall (a) have a retroactive date of no later than the earlier of the date of this Agreement or the earliest commencement of the Party's Services or Work in relation to the Project and (b) be maintained for at least 3 years after the latest completion of the Services or Work, or termination of the Contract, whichever is later.

14.1.8 Each Party shall endorse its Commercial General Liability, Automobile Liability, Contractor's Pollution Liability and, if applicable, Umbrella insurance policies to provide that the Joint Venture is an additional insured under its policies for that Party's interest in the Joint Venture. The other Party and, if required by the Contract, the Owner, shall also be included as an additional insured. Each Party's Professional Liability insurance policy shall, if necessary, be endorsed to include the liability of the insured arising out of the insured's interest in the Joint Venture.]

14.2 The policies and limits specified by Dallas ISD in the Contract represent the minimum coverage to be carried by each of the Parties hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Contract requires the Joint Venture and/or the Parties to maintain additional coverage and/or increased limits, the Parties shall be required to procure such additional insurance in accordance with the terms of the Contract.

14.3 Each Party hereby waives and shall obtain from all of its Commercial General Liability, Automobile Liability, Contractor's Pollution Liability and, if applicable, Umbrella insurance carriers a waiver of any rights of subrogation against each other Party and their directors, agents, employees, and assignees, with respect

to risks associated with the Services provided, Work performed, or both, pursuant to the Contract.

14.4 Unless noted otherwise or with the written approval of the Management Committee, the cost of any insurance required herein (including any deductibles and self-insured-retention amounts) shall be the responsibility of the Party procuring such coverage.

14.5 The Management Committee, in its discretion, shall be responsible for obtaining insurance for the Joint Venture for management risks such as Directors & Officers Liability, Fiduciary Liability, and any other insurance coverage deemed appropriate by the Management Committee, the cost of which shall be an expense of the Joint Venture.

14.6 Absent written approval from the Management Committee, all lower-tier subcontractors, whether retained directly by the Joint Venture or by a Party to the Joint Venture, shall be required to comply with the provisions of this Article 14.

Article 15: Assignment or Change in Control

15.1 Each Party is entering into this Agreement in reliance upon each other Party being and remaining a party to this Agreement. No Party to this Agreement shall, directly or indirectly, sell, assign, transfer, dispose of, pledge or hypothecate its rights, interest or obligations hereunder, or any part thereof, whether directly or by merger with or acquisition by another entity, in this Agreement, the Joint Venture, the Contract, or in any property or monies of the Joint Venture, except with the prior written consent of each other Party, and, if required by the Contract, with the prior written consent of the Owner. A "Change in Control" shall mean the sale of all or substantially all the assets of a Party; any merger, consolidation or acquisition of a Party with, by or into another corporation, entity or person; or any change in the ownership of more than fifty percent (50%) of the voting capital stock of a Party.

15.2 No Party shall, without the written consent of each other Party, assign, transfer or sublet any claims, causes of action or rights against each other Party arising from or under this Agreement; or any proceeds from claims arising from or under this Agreement or the Contract as security, collateral or the source of payment for any notes or liabilities to any third party; or any control of any claims or causes of action arising from or under this Agreement or the Contract without the written consent of each other Party.

15.3 Any such attempted sell, assignment, transfer, disposal, pledge, hypothecation, or sublet without the written consent of each other Party shall be void and confer no rights upon any third person and shall constitute a default hereunder. The provisions of this Article shall survive the completion or termination of this Agreement for any reason and shall remain enforceable between the Parties.

Article 16: Disputes

16.1 The Parties shall attempt in an amicable manner to adjust and settle any disagreement that may arise between them under or in connection with this Agreement. Any controversy or claim arising out of or relating to this Agreement will first be referred in writing to the Management Committee for its decision.

16.2 In the event any dispute between the Parties is not resolved by the Management Committee, either Party may submit such dispute to the Chief Executive Officer of each Party. Submittal of the dispute shall be in writing and summarize in detail the dispute or contested issues. Upon receipt of the dispute, the receiving Party shall designate within ten (10) days a responsible executive with authority to negotiate a settlement or resolution of any dispute. The Parties designated responsible executives for all Parties shall convene within thirty (30) days of the submittal at such location as the Parties may agree. The responsible executives shall hear such dispute at a time, place, and under such procedural rules as they may specify, and shall act only by unanimous consent. It is the intention of the Parties that the responsible parties shall mutually resolve disputes without litigation. However, nothing herein shall be deemed to require any Party to exhaust this procedure prior to exercising whatever rights it might have at law or equity and any litigation shall be stayed pending exhaustion of this dispute resolution procedure. The Parties recognize the possibility of deadlock from elevating the dispute or controversy to the Chief Executive Officer but intend

that through this mechanism, disputes may be discussed and resolved without the need of litigation.

16.3 If the dispute is not resolved in accordance with Section 16.2 above, the Parties shall submit their disputes to mediation within seven (7) days thereafter or as soon thereafter as may be arranged with the mediator. The Parties shall mutually agree to one mediator. In the event they cannot mutually agree to such a mediator, the mediator shall be selected under the Construction Industry Rules of the American Arbitration Association, unless otherwise agreed between the Parties.

16.4 If mediation is unsuccessful in resolving all disputes between the Parties or the dispute cannot be settled by mediation within sixty (60) days, then the Parties agree to consider the use of binding arbitration to resolve their dispute in the following manner or either Party may file a claim in a court of competent jurisdiction with venue in Dallas County. In the event the Parties agree to resolve their dispute by means of binding arbitration, the Parties shall mutually agree to one arbitrator. In the event they cannot mutually agree to such an arbitrator, one arbitrator shall be selected in accordance with the Construction Industry Rules of the American Arbitration Association, unless otherwise agreed between the Parties. The arbitrator thus selected shall thereafter proceed to ascertain the facts relating to such dispute and to make a determination thereof; the determination of the arbitrator shall be final, binding and conclusive upon the Parties and enforceable at law in a court having jurisdiction over the Party against whom enforcement of the arbitrator's decision is sought to be enforced. The then-current Construction Industry Rules of the American Arbitration Association will be applied.

16.5 Notwithstanding the foregoing, if and to the extent that a dispute between the Parties relates to a claim, controversy or dispute involving the Owner and/or the Contract (such that in the interest of judicial economy and to avoid the possibility of inconsistent judgments, a single dispute resolution proceeding is warranted), then the Parties agree that the dispute resolution provisions in the Contract, if any, shall apply and take precedence over the provisions of this Article 16.

16.6 The Parties shall not allow any dispute to affect or threaten the progress and completion of the Services, Work, or both. Each Party shall remain responsible for the performance of its obligations under this Agreement and the Contract and shall continue to perform and prosecute the Services, Work, or both, as directed by the Project Manager during any dispute resolution process notwithstanding any such dispute.

Article 17: Distributions and Tax Allocations

17.1 Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, including Articles 11 and 12, distributions may be made to the Parties during the term of this Agreement at such times, in such amounts, and subject to such conditions as the Management Committee may from time to time determine.

17.2 Should the Joint Venture make any advances or loans to either Party, then distributions to be made pursuant to Section 17.1 above shall be applied in repayment of such advances or loans, together with interest, until repaid in full, notwithstanding the fact that such advances or loans may not then be due and payable according to the terms of any instrument evidencing such advance or loan.

17.3 No distribution shall be made pursuant to this Agreement if the making of such distribution would create an event of default under any loan agreement, any mortgage, or other security instrument to which the Joint Venture is subject, or otherwise materially adversely affect the ability of the Joint Venture to perform its obligations under any other agreement to which the Joint Venture is subject. Any distribution pursuant to this Article, to the extent not permitted by the previous sentence, shall be deferred until such time as it will not create an event of default or materially adversely affect the ability of the Joint Venture to perform its obligations. If any such distribution can at any time only be made in part, it shall be made to the Parties in proportion to the amounts that would have been paid to them but for this Article 17.

17.4 Except as provided in Section 17.1 above, and except for distributions upon termination or withdrawal as provided herein, the Joint Venture shall make no further distributions.

17.5 Tax Allocations. All gross income, gains, losses, deductions, and credits of the Joint Venture, as

determined for US federal income tax purposes, shall be allocated for such purposes among the Parties in the same proportions as the corresponding items of revenue, gains, losses, and expenses are allocated pursuant to Article 5 above.

17.6 Designation of Tax Matters Partner/Partnership Representative

17.6.1. Designation. The Management Committee shall designated an individual as the Tax Matters Partner within the meaning of IRC §6231(a)(7) as in effect for taxable years beginning on or before December 31, 2017 and the Partnership Representative within the meaning of IRC §6223(a) as in effect for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017 and shall act in any similar capacity under applicable state, local, or foreign law (in such capacity and hereinafter, the "Tax Matters Partner").

17.6.2. Elections. Except as otherwise expressly provided to the contrary in this Agreement, all tax elections, including federal, state, local, and foreign tax elections, shall be made by the Tax Matters Partner in its sole discretion. To the extent applicable, the Tax Matters Partner will make the small partnership election as described in IRC §6221(b) as in effect for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017.

17.6.3. Expenses of Tax Matters Partner; Indemnification. The Tax Matters Partner shall be reimbursed for all reasonable expenses, including legal and accounting fees, claims, liabilities, losses, and damages, incurred in connection with any administrative or judicial proceeding with respect to the tax liability of the Parties attributable to this Agreement. The payment of any and all such then-existing expenses shall be made before any distributions are made to each Party. Neither the Tax Matters Partner nor any Party shall have any obligation to provide funds for such purpose.

17.7 Requirement to Prepare and File Tax Return. The Tax Matters Partner shall cause the preparation and timely filing of all tax and information returns required to be filed pursuant to the Internal Revenue Code and all other tax returns deemed necessary and required in each jurisdiction in which the Joint Venture does business. Copies of the returns, or pertinent information from the returns, shall be furnished to the Parties no later than two months before the extended due date of the Joint Venture's federal income tax return. The Tax Matters Partner will direct that any tax imposed upon the partnership be paid by the partnership to federal, state, city or other municipalities as required by law.

17.8 Capital Structure of Joint Venture

Names of Party	Percentage Interests	Capital Contribution
_____	___ %	$_____
_____	___%	$_____
_____	___%	$_____

17.9 Amounts Withheld. All amounts withheld pursuant to the Internal Revenue Code or any provision of any state, local, or foreign tax law with respect to any payment, distribution, or allocation to the Parties shall be treated as amounts paid or distributed, as the case may be, to the Parties. The Joint Venture is authorized to withhold from payments and distributions, or with respect to allocations to the Parties, and to pay over to any federal, state, local, or foreign government, any amounts required to be so withheld

pursuant to the Internal Revenue Code or any provisions of any other federal, state, local, or foreign law, and shall allocate any such amounts to the Parties with respect to which such amount was withheld and shall offset amounts otherwise distributable to such Party.

Article 18: Completion of Project, Division of Profit

Upon completion of the Project, after providing for and paying all costs disbursed or incurred for its performance, and all other costs and charges required by the Contract and ordinarily and usually charged as costs in performance of such a Contract, including payment of all claims not secured by insurance, or by providing proper reserves for any such claims, which shall have either been brought against the Parties or may be reasonably anticipated, and after providing adequate reserves for any other contingency, if any, that shall be determined by the Management Committee to be reasonably necessary; and after repaying all sums advanced by the Parties for working capital, any undistributed profits thereafter remaining, resulting from the performance of the Contract, shall be distributed and divided between the Parties in accordance with their ratable proportion as determined under Articles 5, 7, and 12. Any reserves, when no longer required, or so much thereof as shall remain, shall be similarly distributed.

Article 19: Successors and Assigns

Subject to the foregoing provisions herein contained, this Agreement shall inure to the benefit of, and be binding upon the Parties, their successors, trustees, permitted assigns, receivers, and legal representatives, but shall not inure to the benefit of any other person, firm or corporation.

Article 20: Entire Agreement

20.1 This Agreement constitutes the entire understanding and Agreement between the Parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous representations, understandings or agreements of any kind, whether verbal or written.

20.2 This Agreement shall not be modified except by written amendment duly executed by authorized representatives of the Parties. Any such written amendments shall be forwarded to the district for review and approval. Each Party has had the opportunity to avail itself of legal advice and counsel. No Party shall be deemed to be the drafter or author of this Agreement. In the event this Agreement is subject to interpretation or construction by a court of law or panel of arbitration, such court or panel shall not construe this Agreement or any portion hereof against either Party as the drafter of this Agreement.

20.3 Failure of a Party to insist upon strict and punctual performance of any terms or conditions of this Agreement shall not be construed to constitute a waiver of, or estoppel against, any other Party later asserting the right to require such performance. Neither shall a waiver or estoppel in one instance constitute a waiver or estoppel with respect to a later default, whether similar or dissimilar in nature.

20.4 If any provision of this Agreement is held invalid or unenforceable by any court of competent jurisdiction, the other provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

Article 21: Confidential Information

21.1 Subject to any applicable requirements of the Contract, 1) information relating to this Agreement or the Contract which is gathered, exchanged, or otherwise obtained by the Parties during the term of this Agreement shall be maintained in confidence and shall not be utilized except for purposes in furtherance of this Agreement and the exercise of rights, obligations, duties, and privileges set forth herein; and 2) such information will not be disclosed to any third parties or to a Party's own personnel except where there is good faith need to know; provided however, that no Party shall be liable for any utilization or disclosure if the information falls into any of the following categories:

21.1.1. Information which at the time of disclosure is or thereafter becomes within the public

domain other than by reason of the disclosing Party's breach of this Agreement.

21.1.2. Information that prior to disclosure hereunder was already in the recipient's possession and was not the subject of any confidentiality obligation of the disclosing Party.

21.1.3. Information which, subsequent to disclosure hereunder, is obtained by the disclosing Party from a third party lawfully in possession of such information and which information is not subject to a confidentiality obligation.

21.2 For the purposes of this Agreement, specific information disclosed shall not be deemed to be in the public domain or in the prior possession of the disclosing Party merely because it is embraced by more general information in the public domain or by more general information in the prior possession of the Party.

21.3 Nothing herein shall be construed as giving a Party any right, title, interest in, or ownership of information, or any portion thereof, that is now or is hereafter covered by any patent or license. The Parties' rights in respect thereof shall be subject to all rights of the patent owner and/or licensor.

21.4 A Party shall not be restricted in releasing information in response to a subpoena, court order, or similar legal process, but shall, if not restricted under a subpoena, court order, or similar legal process, promptly notify each other Party of the request or order for information before responding to same and provide each other Party with a copy thereof so that each other Party may take such action as it deems appropriate to protect its information.

21.5 Except as otherwise provided herein or in the Contract, engineering documents, drawings, and specifications prepared by a Party as part of the Services, Work, or both, shall be the property of the Party preparing same. A Party shall retain all right, title, and interest in its standard drawings and details, designs, specifications, databases, computer software and any other proprietary property ("Party Data"). To the extent the work product contains or requires the use of Party Data by any other Party, the owning Party hereby grants to the other Party(ies) a non-exclusive, non-transferrable and royalty free license to use such Party Data solely for the purposes for which the work product was developed under the Contract.

21.6 The confidentiality obligations provided in this Article 21 shall survive the termination or expiration of this Agreement and remain binding upon the Parties for two (2) years following the termination of this Agreement or completion of the Contract, whichever is later.

21.7 No news release, including photographs and films, public announcement, denial, or confirmation shall be made by a Party concerning the subject matter of this Agreement without first obtaining the consent of each other Party and, if applicable, the Owner.

Article 22: Applicable Law

This Agreement shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its conflict of laws principles.

Article 23: Miscellaneous

23.1 Records; Generally. Each Party agrees to keep accurate and complete cost, correspondence, and other records related to this Agreement. Each Party further agrees to make such records available to each other Party upon ten (10) calendar days' written notice. The joint venture parties agree to maintain records showing the subcontractor/supplier awards, subcontractor payment history, efforts to identify and award contracts to M/WBEs, and copies of executed contracts with M/WBEs. The joint venture parties agree to provide access to books, records and accounts to authorized district, state and federal officials for the purpose of verifying M/WBE participation and good faith efforts.

23.2 Financial Records.

23.2.1 All financial records and proprietary or confidential information of each Party to which the Joint Venture or the other Party(ies) has/have access shall be held and retained by the Joint Venture and such other Party(ies) in strict confidence and not be disclosed without the prior written consent of the Party to whom such records or information belong.

23.3 Other Business Activities. During the term of this Joint Venture, each of the Parties may, and shall be free to, participate and engage in any other business activities, subject to any applicable organizational and personal conflict of interest rules or regulations. Nothing in this Agreement shall restrict, or be construed as a limitation of the powers or rights of any Party hereto to pursue other unrelated opportunities or Projects at the District or enter into other joint venture arrangements for its sole benefit independent of the solicitation the subject of this Agreement.

23.4 Notice. Any notice required or permitted to be given under this Agreement shall be deemed served if sent by registered mail, personal delivery, or other means whereby receipt is acknowledged to the following addresses or such other addresses as the Parties may designate:

For _____ _____
_____
Attention: _____
Telephone: _____

For _____: _____
_____
Attention: _____
Telephone: _____

For _____: _____
_____
Attention: _____
Telephone: _____

23.5 Waiver of Consequential Damages. No Party shall be liable to the other Parties for any special, indirect, punitive, exemplary, incidental, or consequential damages of any nature, including loss of actual or anticipated profits or revenues, loss of opportunity, loss by reason of shutdown, non-operation, increased expense of manufacturing or operation, loss of use, cost of capital, damage to or loss of property or equipment, or claims of customers, regardless of whether due to or based upon contract, tort, negligence, or strict liability. The foregoing limitation of liability shall not apply to third party claims for which a Party is otherwise entitled to indemnity under this Agreement.

23.6 Nothing in this Agreement shall be deemed to create any right in anyone not a party and this Agreement shall not be construed in any respect to be a contract in whole or in part for the benefit of anyone not a party.

23.7 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which will be deemed to be an original copy of this Agreement and all of which, when taken together, will be deemed to constitute one and the same agreement.

23.8. Recruitment of Employees. The Parties acknowledge the value of team performance and trust, both of which could be adversely impacted by movement of employees from one Party to another Party. Accordingly, the Parties agree that they will not initiate efforts aimed at hiring the other Parties personnel that are actively engaged in activities covered by this Agreement without prior consent of the other Party. Should an employee of one Party become an employee of another Party, that individual shall be barred from working on activities covered by the Agreement for a period of not less than twenty-four (24) months. The Management Committee may waive the 24-month period at its discretion. This section shall not restrict

the right of a Party to solicit generally in the media or other sources for required personnel nor prevent the hiring of an employee of one Party who independently seeks employment with another Party without personal solicitation by the other Party.

23.9 Representations, Warranties, and Covenants. Each Party represents, warrants, and covenants to each other Party, as of the Effective Date, as follows:

23.9.1 It is a duly organized and validly existing corporation in good standing under the laws of the state in which it is incorporated or formed; it is duly qualified to do business in each jurisdiction in which the nature of the business transacted by it requires such qualifications; it has all corporate powers as may be required to conduct its business and carry out the transactions contemplated hereby;

23.9.2 The execution and delivery of this Agreement and the performance by it of the transactions contemplated hereby have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action and this Agreement constitutes a legal, valid, and binding obligation enforceable in accordance with its terms;

23.9.3 It has, and at all times during the term hereof shall maintain, all governmental authorizations necessary to perform its obligations under this Agreement and the Contract; and

23.9.4 There is no action, suit, proceeding, claim, or dispute pending or, to its knowledge, threatened against or affecting it or its assets before any governmental body that is reasonably expected to have a material adverse effect on it or its ability to perform its obligations under this Agreement or the Contract.

23.10 Marketing Efforts. The Parties acknowledge that marketing efforts related to the Contract need to be coordinated by and between the Parties. The Project Manager will be responsible for coordinating any such efforts. All marketing efforts directly associated with the Contract or this Agreement shall be coordinated through the Project Manager, who will decide whether a proposed Owner visit, or other marketing effort is necessary or appropriate.

23.11 Survival. The provisions of this Agreement which by their nature are intended to survive the termination or dissolution of the Joint Venture, including indemnities and any expressed limitations of or releases from liability, shall continue as valid and enforceable obligations of the Parties notwithstanding any such termination or dissolution.

Article 24: Compliance

24.1 Management Systems. Each Party shall use its own management systems to conduct and record its business for the Joint Venture. Such systems shall, at a minimum, include the following components: financial management, accounting, MWBE subcontractor payment tracking, procurement, property control, estimating, and contract administration. All management systems must comply with any applicable Contract requirements.

Article 25: Anti-Bribery and Anti-Corruption Laws

25.1 No Party shall, directly or indirectly, undertake nor cause nor permit to be undertaken any activity that:

25.1.1 is illegal under applicable law or regulation; or

25.1.2 would have the effect of causing the Joint Venture or the Parties or their respective subsidiaries or affiliates to be in violation of the applicable laws or regulations, including the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act or the UK Bribery Act, as applicable.

25.2 In connection with this Agreement, no Party shall give, offer, promise, or authorize, directly or indirectly, anything of value to:

25.2.1 an official, officer, employee or any other person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any government (including any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof), state-owned enterprise, international organization, or any subdivisions, agents or advisors thereto, whether paid or unpaid (any such person referred to collectively as "Official"), including the government(s) of the territories in which work will be performed hereunder;

25.2.2 any person(s) or party(s) while knowing or having reason to know that such thing of value is to be given, offered, or promised to an Official in order to:

25.2.2.1 influence any official act or decision, or;

25.2.2.2 induce an Official to do or omit to do any act in violation of his or her lawful duty, or;

25.2.2.3 induce an Official to use his or her influence to affect or influence a decision or act of any government, instrumentality, or international organization, or;

25.2.2.4 assist the joint venture or the Parties hereto or any other person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or in directing business to the Parties or any other person, or;

25.2.2.5 obtain or secure an unfair or improper advantage for the joint venture or the Parties in any respect.

25.3 In connection with this Agreement, no Party shall make a contribution or give, offer, promise or authorize, directly or indirectly, anything of value to any political party, official of a political party or candidate for office on behalf of or associated with the joint venture or the Parties or in connection with the purpose of this Agreement or the contract with the Owner.

25.4 In connection with this Agreement, no Party shall engage in any acts of bribery, kickback or other improper inducement, including bribery of a person in the private sector. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, no Party shall give, offer, promise or authorize, either directly or indirectly, a financial or other advantage to any person to induce a person to perform improperly a relevant function or activity or to reward such improper performance or where the Party knows or believes that the acceptance of the advantage in itself constitutes the improper performance of a relevant function or activity.

25.5 No Party shall subcontract any part of the Services nor retain or engage a consultant to carry out sales or marketing obligations in connection with the scope of this Agreement without obtaining the JV Management Committee's prior written consent. The Joint Venture Management Committee shall have the right, in accordance with this Agreement, to reject a request to engage or retain any such consultant.

25.6 The Parties hereby covenant that neither they nor any of their respective officers, directors, agents or representatives or employees assigned to the Project an employee of the Owner or any governing body having jurisdiction over the Project. The Parties further covenant that no Official, political party official, or candidate for political office is deriving any benefit, directly or indirectly, from this JV Agreement. The Parties agrees to notify the Joint Venture Management Committee immediately of any changes to this covenant.

25.7 In no case shall any Party be obligated to take any action or make any payment to any other Party or anyone else that would cause the Joint Venture or the Parties to suffer a penalty or contravene applicable laws or regulations, including the laws of the territories in which work will be performed and those of the United States.

25.8 Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Agreement, if any Party breaches any of the covenants contained in this section, the other Parties shall have the right to immediately terminate this Agreement without penalty. In such instance, the breaching Party shall indemnify the other Parties and the Joint Venture for any penalties, losses, and expenses resulting from such breach of the provisions of this section.

25.9 Each Party agrees to promptly notify the Management Committee and the other Parties in the event it becomes aware of or discloses any potential violation of Anti-Bribery Laws in connection with this Agreement. In addition, a Party shall be in default of this Agreement if such Party is (i) found to have violated Anti-Bribery Laws by a governmental body empowered to make such a finding, or (ii) the subject of a governmental investigation involving violations of Anti-Bribery Laws in connection with this Agreement and the other Parties (that are not a target of such investigation), in their reasonable discretion, believe that the on-going investigation materially impairs the ability of the Joint Venture to provide the Services, perform the Work, or both, and/or complete the Contract.

[SIGNATURES ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE]

NOTARY REQUIRED

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Parties have caused this Agreement to be signed by their duly authorized representatives, in duplicate counterparts, each having the same effect, as of the date and year first above written.

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

EXHIBIT A

Scope of Services

Identify the distinct, clearly defined portion of the work provided by each M/WBE joint venture partner. The work must be separate, clear and distinguishable. Specify the nature of the work and what it will entail. Describe the portion of the work or elements controlled by the M/WBE joint venture partner. Provide the estimated value of those services commensurate with the percentage ownership interest.

(1) General Description of Work to be Performed by the Joint Venture:

(2) Division of Work and Allocation of Responsibilities:

EXHIBIT B

Project Management Staffing Plan

Provide a staffing plan to be determined per the established participation percentages. Provide information relating to the approximate number of employees that will be required to perform the scope of work. Specify the number of employees to be provided by the M/WBE joint venture partner(s), titles, resumes and job responsibilities.

EXHIBIT C

Letter from Financial Institution or Bonding Surety Company

6.3 Provide documentation to substantiate the financial strength or bonding capacity of each M/WBE joint venture partner(s). This document should be commensurate of each M/WBE joint venture partner(s) percentage split. *Or* Provide an Up-Front Joint Agreement (SAA Form #1), and an executed copy of the indemnity agreement signed by all Parties associated with the SAA Form #1.

Small Business Enterprise Program

It is the district's goal to foster the participation of small business enterprises in all facets of the district's contracting and purchasing activities. The district's aspirational small business enterprise (SBE) goal is 30% of the total dollar value of all district contracts for goods, services, and construction. For bond-funded contracts, the district's aspirational SBE goal for construction is 30% and 35% for professional services.

Pursuant to Section 3 of the Small Business Act and Small Business Administration Regulations (13 CFR Part 121), a small business enterprise is defined as a for-profit business that is independently owned and operated and meets the size standards set by the U.S. Small Business Administration (SBA).

For more details, including SBA size standards, please visit the Small Business Office website: www.dallasisd.org/sbo.

SECTION 1. | SMALL BUSINESS CERTIFICATION INFORMATION

Is your company certified as a ☐ 8(a) Certification ☐ Service-Disabled Veteran-Owned Small Business (SDVOSB) ☐ Small Business Enterprise (SBE) ☐ Veteran-Owned Small Business (VOSB) ☐ Woman-Owned Small Business (WOSB) by one of the Dallas ISD approved certification agencies listed below?

☐ No

☐ Yes, *if yes, please provide the information below and attach a copy of your certificate.*

Certification Agency	
Certification Number	
Certification Expiration Date	
Did You Attach Your Certificate?	☐ Yes ☐ No

Approved Certifications:

- 8(a) Certification
- Service-Disabled Veteran-Owned Small Business (SDVOSB)
- Small Business Enterprise (SBE)
- Veteran-Owned Small Business (VOSB)
- Woman-Owned Small Business (WOSB)

Approved Certification Agencies:

- Cherokee Tribal Employment Rights Office
- Chickasaw Nation
- Choctaw Nation of Oklahoma
- City of Austin
- City of Houston
- Corpus Christi Regional Transportation Authority
- Dallas/Fort Worth Business Council
- Muscogee Nation
- National Supplier Development Council
- North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency
- Small Business Administration
- South Central Texas Regional Certification Agency
- Texas Department of Transportation
- Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts
- Women's Business Council Southwest
- Women's Business Enterprise National Council

SECTION 2. | SMALL BUSINESS OFFICE SCORING CRITERIA

The scoring criteria provides guidance on how your submission will be evaluated by the Small Business Office (SBO). Scores are based on the information provided in the compliance guidelines and forms. All master agreements must be signed by all parties and notarized.

A.	**SBE Enhancements and Capacity Building**	**Up to 3 Points**

The proposer demonstrates commitment to the district's Small Business Enterprise (SBE) Program by implementing processes and initiatives that support and build SBE capacity. Responses should describe current strategies and activities that promote SBE growth, development, and long-term participation in district contracts, with supporting documentation provided. Examples may include, but are not limited to:

- Expedited payments to SBEs to support cash flow
- Business development programs, such as coaching, mentoring, or mentor-protégé partnerships
- Early release of retainage to assist SBEs with project sustainability
- Expanding opportunities for certified subcontractors, particularly firms that have not conducted business with the district within the past five (5) years
- Outreach activities designed to strengthen SBE engagement, such as workshops, trainings, networking sessions, or one-on-one consultations

B.	**SBE References**	**Up to 2 Points**

The proposer has provided a list of two (2) SBE subcontractor references (*not required to be certified*) that have previously performed work for them. Please provide the most current information. Only two (2) attempts will be made to contact each reference. Section 5, Page 4

C.	**Certified SBE | Joint Venture /Prime Subcontractor Teaming Agreement**	**Up to 5 Points**

- The proposer is a certified SBE (Section 1, Page 2); **or**
- The proposer has submitted a signed, dated & notarized Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement **or** Dallas ISD Master Prime Subcontractor Teaming Agreement with a certified SBE

D.	**SBE Subcontractor Utilization**	**Up to 5 Points**

- Proposer has provided a list of certified SBE subcontractors, subconsultants, or suppliers that will be utilized to meet or exceed the district's aspirational SBE goal of 30% for goods, services and construction. Section 7, Page 5 **or**
- Good Faith Effort. Proposer has demonstrated a bona fide good faith effort to engage certified SBEs toward the 30% aspirational goal. Section 10, Page 7

Note: A Change of Subcontractor Form may be found at www.dallasisd.org/sboforms

E.	**SBE Participation Plan**	**Up to 5 Points**

Proposers intending to utilize SBE-certified subcontractors to meet the district's Small Business Enterprise participation goals may submit a detailed SBE Participation Plan. This plan should demonstrate your company's commitment to meaningful utilization of SBEs and provide clear procedures for oversight, compliance, and accountability.

The plan should address how you will implement the following:

- Engage and collaborate with your proposed SBE-certified subcontractors
- Identify the individual responsible for SBE compliance and oversight
- Ensure that all proposed subcontractors are utilized as committed
- Meet or exceed your proposed SBE commitment
- Obtain approval from the Small Business Office prior to making any changes.
- Submit proof of certified SBE subcontractor payments monthly in B2G Compliance Audit Summary

Note: A Change of Subcontractor Form may be found at www.dallasisd.org/sboforms

Total Possible Points	**Up to 20 Points**

SECTION 3. | JOINT VENTURE

Are you bidding as a Joint Venture (JV)?

☐ Yes [Visit www.dallasisd.org/sboforms for instructions on how to bid as a Joint Venture for CSP].
The Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement must be signed, dated, notarized, and attached with your response.

☐ No

SECTION 4. | PRIME-SUBCONTRACTOR TEAM

Are you bidding as a Prime-Subcontractor Team?

☐ Yes [Visit www.dallasisd.org/sboforms for instructions on how to bid as a Prime-Subcontractor Team for CSP].
The Dallas ISD Master Prime-Subcontractor Teaming Agreement must be signed, dated, notarized, and attached with your response.

☐ No

SECTION 5. | SBE REFERENCES

List two (2) small business enterprise subcontractors *(not required to be certified)* that have performed work for your company. *Provide the most current information. Only two (2) attempts will be made to contact your references.*

Company Name	
Contact Person	
Email	
Phone Number	
Project Name	

Company Name	
Contact Person	
Email	
Phone Number	
Project Name	

SECTION 6. | MENTOR PROTEGE

Does your company participate in a Mentor Protégé Program as a mentor to an SBE company?

☐ Yes [If yes, attach a signed, dated, notarized copy of the Mentor Protégé Agreement, notarized minutes, and any supporting documents. It is the responsibility of the mentor to create and provide the agreement.
The Mentor Protégé Agreement must be attached with your response.]

☐ No

SECTION 7. | SUBCONTRACTOR UTILIZATION

Will you utilize any subcontractors, subconsultants or suppliers as part of this bid/proposal?

☐ Yes [Complete Sections 8 and 9]

☐ No

SECTION 8. | SUBCONTRACTOR COMPLIANCE REPORTING

The Small Business Office utilizes B2G Now, a Contract Compliance System, to monitor monthly compliance reporting. Please identify the individual responsible for entering and maintaining subcontractor payment information in the B2G Now system and who is knowledgeable about Small Business Enterprise (SBE) utilization for this project.

Contact Person:	
Title:	
Email:	
Phone:	

SECTION 9. | SUBCONTRACTOR LISTING

List all subcontractors, suppliers, subconsultants, or sole proprietors that will be utilized in this bid/proposal. Attach a copy of the current certification for each certified subcontractor.

Only certified small business enterprises (SBE) subcontractors, suppliers, subconsultants, or sole proprietors will be counted towards the small business enterprise goals.

Need to include more subcontractors? You may make copies of Page 6 or complete a Subcontractor Utilization Listing Form, available at www.dallasisd.org/sboforms

Subcontractor/Supplier Information | Complete All Fields Below							
Company's Name							
Address							
City				State		Zip	
Contact's Name	First Name		Last Name				
Phone		Email					
SBE	☐ 8(a) ☐ SDVOSB ☐ SBE ☐ OSB ☐ WOSB			Certified SBE	☐ Yes ☐ No		
Certification Agency				Certification #			
Scope of Work							
Contract Amount	$				SBE %	%	

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Company Name: _____ **Bid/CSP No.:** _____

Subcontractor/Supplier Information | Complete All Fields Below							
Company's Name							
Address							
City			State		Zip		
Contact's Name	First Name		Last Name				
Phone		Email					
SBE	☐ 8(a) ☐ SDVOSB ☐ SBE ☐ VOSB ☐ WOSB			Certified SBE	☐ Yes ☐ No		
Certification Agency				Certification #			
Scope of Work							
Contract Amount	$					SBE %	%

Subcontractor/Supplier Information | Complete All Fields Below							
Company's Name							
Address							
City			State		Zip		
Contact's Name	First Name		Last Name				
Phone		Email					
SBE	☐ 8(a) ☐ SDVOSB ☐ SBE ☐ VOSB ☐ WOSB			Certified SBE	☐ Yes ☐ No		
Certification Agency				Certification #			
Scope of Work							
Contract Amount	$					SBE %	%

Subcontractor/Supplier Information | Complete All Fields Below							
Company's Name							
Address							
City			State		Zip		
Contact's Name	First Name		Last Name				
Phone		Email					
SBE	☐ 8(a) ☐ SDVOSB ☐ SBE ☐ VOSB ☐ WOSB			Certified SBE	☐ Yes ☐ No		
Certification Agency				Certification #			
Scope of Work							
Contract Amount	$					SBE %	%

SECTION 10. | GOOD FAITH EFFORT

Vendors are not required to submit Good Faith Effort documentation if certified SBE subcontractors are listed in Section 9, Pages 5–6 of these forms.

The Good Faith Effort (GFE) Program provides an opportunity for prime vendors who plan to use only non-certified SBE subcontractors to demonstrate their collaborative efforts to engage and include Small Business Enterprises (SBEs) in the project.

To qualify, the vendor must show that a reasonable and comprehensive effort was made to identify, solicit, and engage qualified SBE subcontractors. The submission should include sufficient documentation supporting these efforts, such as outreach records, communications, or other engagement activities.

The GFE criteria allows Dallas ISD to determine whether a prime vendor has made a bona fide good faith effort to meet SBE aspirational goals. Vendors who do not demonstrate a good faith effort may forfeit up to 5 points, as outlined in Scoring Criteria Section D, Page 3 of the SBE forms.

For additional explanation view the Good Faith Elements and Required Documentation form by visiting www.dallasisd.org/sboforms.

The good faith elements and point assignments are:

Good Faith Element	**Points**
Advertising and marketing opportunities to SBEs	5 Points
Providing outreach opportunity to identify qualified SBEs	15 Points
Participating in the pre-bid meeting to engage potential SBE subcontractors	5 Points
Providing timely written notice to qualified SBEs at least two weeks before bid opening	30 Points
Providing sufficient time for SBEs to prepare and submit competitive bids	10 Points
Soliciting work scopes that are feasible for SBEs to perform	10 Points
Negotiating in good faith with qualified SBEs	15 Points
Offering help with financing, bonding, insurance, certification, or mentoring to SBEs	10 Points
Total	**100 Points**

SECTION 11. | ONLINE RESOURCES

The following forms and information can be found by visiting www.dallasisd.org/sboforms

- Certified SBE Listing Request Form
- Change of Subcontractor Form
- Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement
- Dallas ISD Master Prime-Subcontractor Teaming Agreement
- Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)
- Good Faith Effort Explanation and Required Documentation
- Instructions on Completing the SBE Forms
- Letter of Intent to Subcontract Form *(to be submitted after contract is awarded)*
- Pay Activity Report (PAR) *(to be submitted after contract is awarded)*
- SBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms for Goods and Services - Fillable
- Subcontractor Utilization Listing Form (Section 8)

STANDARD FORM OF AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR

A101

DRAFT

AIA® Document A101™ – 2017

Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor

where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum

AGREEMENT made as of the XX day of XXXXX in the year 20XX
(In words, indicate day, month and year)

BETWEEN the Owner:
(Name, , address and other information)

The Dallas Independent School District, a political subdivision of the State of Texas
Dallas, Texas
9400 North Central Expressway
Dallas, Texas 75231

and the Contractor:
(Name, , address and other information)

<<GC Company Name>>
<<GC Address>>
<<GC City/State/Zip>>
(###) ###-#### Phone

The Work, unless otherwise expressly stated, shall be considered as a single project (whether one or more campuses or facilities) and is generally described as follows:(Name and location)

<<BP# XXX:>>
<<ORG #XXX XX Elementary School>>
<<ORG Address>>
<<Dallas, Texas 75XXX>>

The Architect is:
(Name, address and other information)

<<A/E Company Name>>
<<A/E Address>>
<<A/E City/State/Zip>>
(###) ###-#### Phone

The Program Manager is:
(Name, address and other information)
<<Insert PMF Company Name>>
3801 Herschel Avenue
Dallas, TX 75219

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

Version 3/25/2022 FINAL

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS: The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

The parties should complete A101™–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

TABLE OF ARTICLES

1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

4 CONTRACT SUM

5 PAYMENTS

6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

10 INSURANCE AND BONDS

ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 1.1 The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement between Owner and Contractor, A101-2017, as amended (hereinafter the "Agreement"); Conditions of the Contract, as amended (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions, including but not limited to A201-2017, as amended); Contractor's proof of Payment and Performance Bonds and proof of insurance; all sections of the Project Manual and Construction Documents, Drawings, Specifications, Geotechnical Reports, Addenda issued prior to receipt of bids or proposals; other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement. The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction (the "Contract"), and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated written agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other thanModifications, appears in Article 9. Any reference to Contract Documents or any documents included in the Contract Documents and/or supplemented for this Project, shall refer to the Contract Documents as amended for this Project. This Agreement may not be amended or revised except by written agreement signed by the Owner and Contractor.

"Construction Documents" means: all Drawings, specifications, submittals, transmittals, deliverables, instructions to Contractors, and other documents, including those in electronic form, prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants and which set forth in detail the requirements for construction of the Project.

§ 1.2 This Agreement represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and the Contractor and supersedes all prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. Any revision, amendment, or modification to the Standard Form of this Agreement shall be valid, binding, and enforceable only if said revision, amendment or modification is made conspicuous by being underlined, lined-through, or highlighted in this Agreement signed by Contractor and the authorized representative of Owner's Board of Trustees. In the event of conflict, terms and conditions contained in the Agreement shall take precedence over terms and conditions contained in the General Conditions and the terms and conditions in the General Conditions shall take precedence over all other terms and conditions contained in the other Contract Documents. If the Request for Proposals and the Proposal are included in the Contract Documents, then the Request for Proposals shall take precedence over the Proposal, unless specifically agreed otherwise herein.

§ 1.3 The Board of Trustees, by majority vote, is the only representative of the Owner, an independent school district, having the power to enter into or amend a contract, to approve changes in the scope of the Work, to approve and execute a Change Order or Construction Change Directive modifying the Contract Sum, or to agree to an extension to the date of Substantial or Final Completion or to terminate a contract. The Owner designates the following as the individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of the Board of Trustees, following appropriate Board action: *(insert name and title of designee)* _____, or other Board designee.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

§ 1.4 The Board designates the authorized representatives identified in Paragraph 8.3 to act on its behalf in other respects.

ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

Unless otherwise provided in these Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be responsible for performing or causing to be performed all Work including labor and materials, necessary to build, construct, erect and equip in accordance with the Contract Documents except to the extent specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 3.1 The date of commencement of the Work shall be:
(Check one of the following boxes.)

[« »] The date of this Agreement.

[« X »] A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.

The Agreement, including Conditions of the Contract, as well as all other Contract Documents that require signature of the Parties, including the A201-2017, as amended, must be signed first by the Contractor's representative. The Contractor shall have five days from receipt of the documents requiring signature from the Owner to sign the Agreement and all other Contracts requiring signature to return to the Owner the signed documents along with proof of insurance and the Payment and Performance bonds. Once Owner has approved of the Contracts and the proof of insurance and the Payment and Performance bonds, Owner shall sign the Agreement and all other Contract Documents requiring signature of the parties. When Owner has signed and approved all required documents, District shall issue a Notice to Proceed to Contractor.

[« »] Established as follows:
(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)

»

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

§ 3.3 Substantial Completion

§ 3.3.1 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall diligently prosecute and achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Worknot later than the Substantial Completion Date. The period for reaching the Substantial Completion Date shall begin to run from the Commencement Date and shall not include the Commencement Date. For additions and renovations the Substantial Calculation Date shall be established with the number of calendar days required to substantially complete the work, unless otherwise provided. For new schools the Substantial Completion Date shall be a specific date, unless otherwise provided.

§ 3.3.2 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents,

Portion of Work	Substantial Completion Date
Full	<<NTP + X CALENDAR DAYS>>

§ 3.3.3 If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion as provided in this Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM

§ 4.1 Subject to additions and deletions and other provisions in the Contract Documents, the Owner agrees to pay the Contractor for the Contractor's performance of the contract the following amount for construction and completion of the Work: **XXXXX DOLLARS AND XX CENTS** ($ 0.00).

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

§ 4.2 Alternates

§ 4.2.1 Alternates, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

Item	Price
See Exhibit "A" attached	

§ 4.2.2 [Paragraph Deleted].

§ 4.3 Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum:
(Identify each allowance.)

Item	Price
See Exhibit "C" attached	

§ 4.3.1 Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance:
All construction contracts shall contain a contingency allowance. The Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance is to be used only for expenditures which do not require a Change Order. The Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance may be used to pay for changes in the Work, including but not limited to those resulting from hidden or unforeseen conditions. The Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance may be used to pay claims. Use of the Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance must be authorized in advance by the Superintendent of Schools or designee.
XXXXX DOLLARS AND XX CENTS ($ 0.00).

§ 4.4 Unit prices, if any:
(Identify the item and state the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)

Item	Units and Limitations	Price per Unit ($0.00)
See Exhibit "B" attached		

§ 4.5 Liquidated damages, if any:
(Insert terms and conditions for liquidated damages, if any.)« **§ 4.5.1 Substantial Completion.** Time is of the essence in all phases of the Work. It is specifically understood and agreed by and between Owner and Contractor that time is of the essence in the Substantial Completion of the Project and Owner shall sustain damages as a result of Contractor's failure, neglect or refusal to achieve said deadlines. Such damages are, and will continue to be, impracticable and extremely difficult to determine. Execution of this Agreement under these specifications shall constitute agreement by Owner and Contractor that the amounts stated below are the minimum value of the costs and damages caused by failure of Contractor to complete the Work within the allotted or agreed extended times of Substantial Completion, that such sums are liquidated damages and shall not be construed as a penalty, and that such sums may be deducted from payments due Contractor if such delay occurs. It is expressly understood that the said sum per day is agreed upon as a fair estimate of the pecuniary damages which will be sustained by the Owner in the event that the Work is not completed within the agreed time, or within the agreed extended time, if any, otherwise provided for herein. Said sum shall be considered as liquidated damages only and in no sense shall be considered a penalty, said damages being caused by, but not limited to, additional compensation for personnel, attorneys fees, architectural fees, engineering fees, program management fees, inspection fees, storage costs, food service costs, transportation costs, utilities costs, costs of temporary facilities, loss of interest on money, and other increased costs, all of which are difficult to exactly ascertain. Failure to complete the Work within the designated or agreed extended dates of Substantial Completion, shall be construed as a breach of this Agreement. It is expressly agreed as a part of the consideration inducing the Owner to execute this Agreement that the Owner may deduct from any Payment made to the Contractor a sum equal to

XXXXX DOLLARS AND XX CENTS ($ 0.00) **/ Day)**

per day for each and every additional calendar day beyond the agreed date of Substantial Completion.

§ 4.5.2. Final Completion. Timely final completion is an essential condition of this contract. Contractor agrees to achieve final completion of the Work within 60 days of the designated or extended substantial completion date. Final completion means actual completion of the Work, including any extras or Change Orders reasonably required

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

or contemplated under the Contract Documents other than warranty work as further defined in the Form of Contractor's Final Completion Notice attached hereto and incorporated herein as **Exhibit "D"**.

»

§ 4.6 Other Allowances, if any, are as follows:
(Insert provisions for bonus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)

See Exhibit "C" attached

ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS

§ 5.1 Progress Payments

§ 5.1.1 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 5.1.2 The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month.

« »

§ 5.1.3 The Contractor shall concurrently submit monthly Applications for Payment to the Architect and Program Manager on AIA Form G702 for approval. Continuation sheets shall be submitted on AIA Form G703. If the Architect and Program Manager approve the application, then Architect shall submit a Certificate for Payment to the Owner. The Architect and Program Manager may require any additional information deemed necessary and appropriate to substantiate the Application for Payment. Materials that are verified to be on the jobsite or other approved location for use in the Project may also be incorporated into the Application for Payment. The Architect shall have seven (7) days from date of receipt from the Contractor of an Application for Payment to approve or reject all or any part of the Application for Payment. The Owner shall pay the undisputed amounts certified by the Architect and approved by the Program Manager and Owner to the Contractor within _____ (_30__) days of receipt of the Certificate for Payment from the Architect unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents. Undisputed amounts unpaid after the date on which payment is due shall bear interest pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.025.

§ 5.1.4 Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum, less any unused Owner's contingency, among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect and Program Manager may require. This schedule of values, unless objected to by the Architect and Program Manager,shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

§ 5.1.5 Applications for Payment shall indicate the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

§ 5.1.6 In accordance with AIA Document A201™–2017, as amended, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:

§ 5.1.6.1 The amount of each progress payment shall first include:

.1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work as determined by multiplying the percentage completion of each portion of the Work by the share of the Contract Sum allocated to that portion of the Work in the schedule of values; and

.2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing.

.3

§ 5.1.6.2 The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

.1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

.2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect and Program Manager has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended;

.3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;

.4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended, or amounts certified by the Architect and disputed by the Owner; and

.5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

§ 5.1.7 Retainage

§ 5.1.7.1 For each progress payment made prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner shall withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:

(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)

«_Five Percent (__5__%) »

If Owner is entitled to deduct liquidated damages, or any other damages or amounts provided in the Contract Documents, including clean-up fees, then Owner shall be entitled to deduct such liquidated damages, amounts and fees at any time. If Contractor fails or refuses to complete the Work, or has unsettled claims with Owner, any payment to Contractor shall be subject to deduction for such amounts as the Architect, if applicable, shall determine as the cost for completing incomplete Work and the value of unsettled claims.

§ 5.1.7.1.1 [Paragraph Deleted.]

§ 5.1.7.2 Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:

(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, including modifications for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.3.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)

«NONE. »

§ 5.1.7.3 Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon Final Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7.

§ 5.1.8 [Paragraph Deleted.]

§ 5.1.9 Except with the Owner's prior written approval, ~~or as otherwise provided in Section 9.3.2 of the AIA Document A201-2017,~~ the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

§ 5.1.10 If Contractor fails or refuses to complete the Work, or has unsettled claims with Owner, any payment to Contractor shall be subject to deduction for such amounts as the Architect if applicable, shall determine as the cost for completing incomplete Work and the value of unsettled claims.

§ 5.2 Final Payment

§ 5.2.1 Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, minus disputed sums, authorized deductions and liquidated damages, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor after

.1 the Contractor has fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct nonconforming Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201–2017 as amended, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment;

.2

.3 a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect and approved by the Program Manager; and

4. Dallas ISD Board of Trustees has voted to accept the Work and approve the Final Payment.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

§ 5.2.2 The Owner's final payment of undisputed sums to the Contractor shall be made no later than 30 days after Dallas ISD Board of Trustees' vote approving Final Payment.

§ 5.3 Interest
Payments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.025.

ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION
§ 6.1
All disputes relating to this Agreement shall be resolved pursuant to the terms of Article 15 of the AIA Document A201~~2017~~, as amended.

§ 6.2 [Paragraph Deleted]

ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION
§ 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA DocumentA201-2017 as amended.

§ 7.1.1 [Paragraph Deleted]

§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201- 2017 as amended.

ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
§ 8.1 Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201-2017 as amended or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

§ 8.2 The Owner's representative is the Superintendent of Schools or the Superintendent's designee:
(Name, address, and other information)

<<Insert DPM Name>>
Dallas Independent School District
3801 Herschel Avenue
Dallas, Texas 75219
(###) ###-#### (Phone)
<<Email: XXXXXXX @dallasisd.org>>

§ 8.3 The Contractor's representative:
(Name, address, email address, and other information)

<<GC Representative Name>>
<<GC Representative Title>>
<<GC Company Name>>
<<GC Address>>
<<GC City/State/Zip>>
(###) ###-#### (Phone)
<<Email: XXXX@XXX>>

§ 8.4 The Contractor's representative may not be changed without written consent of the District, which shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 8.5 Insurance and Bonds
§ 8.5.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in Article 11 of AIA Document A201™–2017 as amended, ~~Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds,~~ and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

§ 8.5.2 The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in AIA Document ~~A101™–2017 Exhibit A~~ A201™–2017 as amended, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.6 [Paragraph Deleted]

« »

§ 8.7 Other provisions:

«**§ 8.7.1** This Agreement, in its entirety, is deemed performable in Dallas County, Texas. Any litigation to construe or enforce any term or condition of the Contract Documents shall be brought in the State Courts of Dallas County, Texas. In the event of such litigation, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover reasonable attorney fees and cost of court.

§ 8.7.2 As a material consideration of the making of this Agreement, the modifications to this Agreement shall not be construed against the maker of said modifications.

§ 8.7.3 Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, or in any document forming a part hereof, there shall be no mandatory arbitration for any dispute arising hereunder

§ 8.7.4 Articles 1.5 and 1.6 of AIA Document A201-2017 as amended shall govern Contractor's use of the Construction Documents

§ 8.7.5 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors. As part of that responsibility, Contractor shall enforce the Owner's alcohol-free, drug-free, tobacco-free, harassment-free and weapon-free policies and zones, which will require compliance with those policies and zones by Contractor's employees, subcontractors, and all other persons carrying out the Contract

§ 8.7.6 Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, to wear identification badges on the front of their persons during all times that they are on Owner's property. Such identification badges shall contain a current photograph and the worker's full name in a typeface large enough to be seen from a reasonable distance

§ 8.7.7 Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, to park their personal motor vehicles on Owner's property only in the parking places designated by the Owner. Any vehicles not parked in the appropriate locations shall be towed at the vehicle owner's sole expense.

§ 8.7.8 Contractor shall follow, and shall require all employees, agents or subcontractors to follow, applicable ordinances of the municipality in which the Project is located. In addition, if not covered by the municipality's tree ordinance, Contractor shall barricade and protect all trees on the Project

§ 8.7.9 Contractor shall institute a theft deterrence program designed to restrict construction worker access to properties of Owner that are currently in use, to maintain supervision of Contractor's and Contractor's subcontractor's forces, and to reimburse the Owner or those persons suffering a theft loss which results from Contractor's forces or Contractor's subcontractor's forces' actions, omissions, or failure to secure the Work or connecting or adjacent property of Owner.

§ 8.7.10 The Contractor may not assign its responsibilities, duties, obligations and rights under this Agreement, without the express written consent of the Owner. This does not prevent Contractor from engaging subcontractors to perform various phases of the Project, but Contractor shall be fully responsible to Owner for the work, actions and omissions of all such subcontractors

§ 8.7.11 This Agreement, in its entirety, shall be binding upon all the parties hereto, their respective successors, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

§ 8.7.12 Execution of this Agreement shall constitute approval and acceptance of all terms, covenants and conditions as modified and contained in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.7.13 This Agreement is subject to all applicable federal and state laws, rules, and regulations. Invalidity of any portion of this Agreement under the laws of the State of Texas or of the United States shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this Agreement.

§ 8.7.14 By signing this Agreement, the undersigned certifies as follows: "Under Section 231.006, Texas Family Code, the vendor or applicant certifies that the individual or business entity named in the contract, bid, or application is not ineligible to receive the specified grant, loan, or payment and acknowledges that this contract may be terminated, and payment may be withheld if this certification is inaccurate."

§ 8.7.15 Unless otherwise noted, terms in this Agreement shall have the same meaning as those in the edition of AIA Document A201-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, as amended for the Project.

§ 8.7.16 To the extent that any portion of the Work requires a trench excavation exceeding five (5) feet in depth, in accordance with Texas Health and Safety Code Section 756.023(a), the Contractor shall fully comply, and shall require any applicable subcontractor to comply, with:

.1 The Occupational Safety and Health Administration standards for trench safety in effect for the construction of the Work;

.2 The special shoring requirements, if any, of the Owner; and

.3 Any geotechnical information obtained by Owner for use by the Contractor in the design of the trench safety system.

.4 Trench excavation safety protection shall be a separate pay item, and shall be based on linear feet of trench excavated. Special shoring requirements shall also be a separate pay item, and shall be based on the square feet of shoring used. Said cost shall be included within the Contract Sum.

§ 8.7.17 No delay or omission by Owner in exercising any right or power accruing upon the noncompliance or failure of performance by Contractor of any of the provisions of this Agreement shall impair any such right or power or be construed to be a waiver thereof. A waiver by Owner of any of the covenants, conditions or agreements hereof to be performed by Contractor shall not be construed to be a waiver of any subsequent breach thereof or of any other covenant, condition or agreement herein contained.

§8.7.18 Contractor stipulates that Owner is a political subdivision of the State of the Texas, and, as such, enjoys immunities from suit and liability as provided by the constitution and laws of the State of Texas. By entering into this Agreement, Owner does not waive any of its immunities from suit and/or liability, except as otherwise specifically provided herein, and as specifically authorized by law.

§ 8.7.19 By executing this Agreement, Contractor verifies that it does not boycott Israel, and it will not boycott Israel during the terms of this Contract.

§ 8.7.20 Contractor verifies and affirms that it is not a foreign terrorist organization as identified on the list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. If Contractor has misrepresented its inclusion on the Comptroller's list, such omission or misrepresentation will void this Contract »

§ 8.7.21 All sums due hereunder are payable in Dallas, Dallas County, Texas.

§ 8.7.22 This Agreement, in its entirety, shall be binding on all the parties hereto, their respective successors, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns.

§ 8.7.23 Execution of this Agreement shall constitute approval and acceptance of all terms, covenants and conditions as modified and contained in the Contract Documents.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 9.1 This Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

.1 ~~AIA Document A101™–2017,~~ This executed 2017 edition of the Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, AIA Document A101™–2017, as amended.

.2 ~~AIA Document A101™–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds~~

.3 ~~AIA Document A201™–2017,~~ The General and Supplementary Conditions are the 2017 edition of the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, AIA Document A201™–2017, as amended and attached to this Agreement.

« »

.5 Drawings are as follows and are dated MMMM DD, 20YY unless a different date is shown below:

See Exhibit "F" attached

~~Number~~	~~Title~~	~~Date~~

.6 Specifications are those contained in the Project Manual dated as in subparagraph 9.1.8, and are as follows:

See Exhibit "E" attached

~~Section~~	~~Title~~	~~Date~~	~~Pages~~

.7 Addenda, if any:

Number	Date	Pages
Addendum #1 with associated attachments	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX
Addendum #2 with associated attachments	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX
Addendum #3 with associated attachments	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX

Portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements are not part of the Contract Documents unless the bidding or proposal requirements are also enumerated in this Article 9.

.8 Other Exhibits:
(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)

[« »] AIA Document E204™–2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:
(Insert the date of the E204-2017 incorporated into this Agreement.)

« »

[« »] The Sustainability Plan:

Title	Date	Pages

[« »] Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract are those contained in the Project Manual dated:

Document	Title	Date	Pages
Project Manual	Volumes X & X of X	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX

.9 Other documents, if any, listed below:

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Contract Documents. AIA Document ~~A201™–2017~~ A201™–2017 as amended provides that the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, the Contractor's bid or proposal, portions of the Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements, and other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, are not part of the Contract Documents unless enumerated in this Agreement. Any such documents should be listed here only if intended to be part of the Contract Documents.)

See Exhibit "G" attached

ARTICLE 10 INSURANCE AND BONDS

The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance and provide bonds as set forth in Article 11 of AIA Document A201™–2017 as amended.

This Agreement is entered into as of the day and year first written ~~above.~~ above and shall be executed by the parties in one original document. The original document shall be retained by the Owner. One copy of the original shall be provided to the Contractor and one copy shall be provided to the Program Manager.

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

OWNER *(Signature)*

<<Insert DISD Signer Name & Title>>

(Printed name and title)

<INSERT CONTRACTOR LEGAL NAME>

CONTRACTOR *(Signature)*

<<Insert GC's Signer Name & Title>>

(Printed name and title)

Approved As To Form:

_____

DALLAS ISD LEGAL COUNSEL*(Signature)*_____Date____

AIA Document A101™ – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 12:06:53 on 11/17/2017 under Order No.0175484999 which expires on 01/11/2018, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1263290179)

DRAFT

AIA® Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A

Insurance and Bonds

This Insurance and Bonds Exhibit is part of the Agreement, between the Owner and the Contractor, dated the « » day of « » in the year « 2022 »
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

for the following **PROJECT**:
(Name and location or address)

« »
« »

THE OWNER:
(Name, legal status and address)

«Dallas Independent School District, a political subdivision of the State of Texas »
«9400 North Central Expressway »
«Dallas, Texas 75231 »

THE CONTRACTOR:
(Name, legal status and address)

« »
« »
« »

The Architect:
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

« »
« »
« »
« »
« »

TABLE OF ARTICLES

A.1 GENERAL

A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE

A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS

A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Version 10/27/2022

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS: The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be used in conjunction with AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction. Article 11 of A201™–2017 contains additional insurance provisions.

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

ARTICLE A.1 GENERAL

The Owner and Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance, and provide bonds, as set forth in this Exhibit. As used in this Exhibit, the term General Conditions refers to AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

ARTICLE A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE

§ A.2.1 General

Prior to commencement of the Work, the Owner shall secure the insurance, and provide evidence of the coverage, required under this Article A.2. The copy of the policy or policies provided shall contain all applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions, and endorsements.

§ A.2.2 Liability Insurance

The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual general liability insurance.

§ A.2.3 Required Property Insurance

§ A.2.3.1 Contractor shall provide builder's risk insurance as required in A.3.3.2.1.

§ A.2.3.1.1 -

*(**NOT USED** Indicate below the cause of loss and any applicable sub-limit.)*

Causes of Loss	Sub-Limit
«N/A »	

§ A.2.3.1.2

*(**NOT USED** Indicate below type of coverage and any applicable sub-limit for specific required coverages.)*

Coverage	Sub-Limit
«N/A »	

§ A.2.3.1.3

§ A.2.3.1.4

§ A.2.3.2 Occupancy or Use Prior to Substantial Completion. The Owner's occupancy or use of any completed or partially completed portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing the insurance under Section A.3.3.2.1 have consented in writing to continuance or replacement of coverage. The Owner and the Contractor shall take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of insurance, unless they agree otherwise in writing.

§ A.2.3.3 Insurance for Existing Structures

If the Work involves remodeling an existing structure or constructing an addition to an existing structure, the Owner may purchase and maintain, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, property insurance, on a replacement cost basis, protecting the existing structure against direct physical loss or damage from the causes of loss identified in Section A.3.3.2, notwithstanding the undertaking of the Work. The Owner shall be responsible for all co-insurance penalties.

§ A.2.4

*(**NOT USED** Select the types of insurance the Owner is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance. For each type of insurance selected, indicate applicable limits of coverage or other conditions in the fill point below the selected item.)*

[« »] **§ A.2.4.1**

« »

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

[« »] **§ A.2.4.2**

« »

[« »] **§ A.2.4.3**

« »

[« »] **§ A.2.4.4**

« »

[« »] **§ A.2.4.5**

« »

[« »] **§ A.2.4.6**

« »

[« »] **§ A.2.4.7**

« »

§ A.2.5 Other Optional Insurance.

The Owner may purchase and maintain the insurance selected below.

(Select the types of insurance the Owner is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance.)

[« »] **§ A.2.5.1 Cyber Security Insurance** for loss to the Owner due to data security and privacy breach, including costs of investigating a potential or actual breach of confidential or private information. *(Indicate applicable limits of coverage or other conditions in the fill point below.)*

« »

[« »] **§ A.2.5.2 Other Insurance**

(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Owner and any applicable limits.)

Coverage	Limits
« »	

ARTICLE A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS

§ A.3.1 General

§ A.3.1.1 Certificates of Insurance. The Contractor shall provide certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner evidencing compliance with the requirements in this Article A.3 at the following times: (1) at least five business days after execution of the Contract documents and prior to commencement of the Work; (2) upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance; and (3) upon the Owner's written request. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of commercial liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the periods required by Section A.3.2.1 and Section A.3.3.1. The certificates will show the Owner as an additional insured on all of Contractor's insurance policies, except Contractor's workers compensation insurance. These certificates and the insurance policies required by this Article shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled, reduced, or restricted for any reason, other than nonpayment of premium, until at least 30 days' prior written notice of such cancellation, reduction, or restriction has been given to the Owner and Contractor. An additional certificate, policy, and endorsement evidencing continuation of liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment as required by Section 9.10.2 of the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions as amended for the Project, and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage. Information concerning reduction or restriction of

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

coverage on account of revised limits or claims paid under the General Aggregate, or cancellation or expiration of the insurance shall be furnished by written notice to the Owner from the Contractor within three business days of the date Contractor knew or should have known of the cancellation, reduction, or restriction. At least 30 calendar days prior to the date of expiration of any required insurance policy. Contractor shall provide Owner written notice of the impending expiration. In addition, Contractor shall also provide copies of all policies, declarations, and endorsements for such insurance to Owner as required by Section 11.0.2 of the 2017 AIA A201 General Conditions as amended for this Project.

§ A.3.1.2 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions. The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner any deductible or self-insured retentions applicable to any insurance required to be provided by the Contractor. If the insurance required by this Section A.3.1 is subject to deductibles or self-insured retentions, the Contractor shall be responsible for all loss not covered because of such deductibles or retentions. For any claim made against the Contractor's policies of insurance, the deducible shall not exceed $2,500 for Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project) of less than $4 million. For a Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), of $4 million or more, the deductible shall not exceed $5,000.

§ A.3.1.3 Additional Insured Obligations. To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall cause the commercial general liability coverage and any other insurance required by the Agreement, with the exception of Workers' Compensation insurance, to be endorsed to include (1) the Owner, the Architect, and the Architect's consultants as additional insureds for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's operations; and (2) the Owner as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions for which loss occurs during completed operations. The additional insured coverage shall be primary and non-contributory to any of the Owner's general liability insurance policies and shall apply to both ongoing and completed operations. To the extent commercially available, the additional insured coverage shall be no less than that provided by Insurance Services Office, Inc. (ISO) forms CG 20 10 07 04, CG 20 37 07 04, and, with respect to the Architect and the Architect's consultants, CG 20 32 07 04.

§ A.3.2 Contractor's Required Insurance Coverage

§ A.3.2.1 The Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors shall purchase and maintain such insurance as will protect them and the Owner from claims which may arise out of, or result from, the Contractor's operations under the Contract whether such operations be by Contractor or by any Subcontractor, or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them maybe liable, in the following types and limits of insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. *(See also the insurance requirements included in Article 11 of the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions as amended for this Project).* The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions.

*(**DO NOT USE** If the Contractor is required to maintain insurance for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)*

The insurance required by this Section shall be written for not less than the limits of liability specified in the Contract Documents or required by law, whichever coverage is greater. Coverages, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from the date of commencement of the Work until the date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment, and, with respect to the Contractor's completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work or for such other period for maintenance of completed operations coverage as specified in the Contract Documents. The limits of liability for such insurance shall be in at least the following amounts as specified below.

*(NOTE: Amounts of insurance coverage have been left blank so that Districts can enter the appropriate amounts for their Projects. **DO NOT LEAVE ANY BLANK UNFILLED IF THAT COVERAGE IS REQUIRED OR CHOSEN FOR THE PROJECT**. If a particular coverage will not be used for the Project, delete the unused section. If the District has questions on the appropriate amounts or types of coverage, it is strongly suggested that the District contact its legal counsel and insurance agent.)*

« »

§ A.3.2.2 Commercial General Liability

§ A.3.2.2.1 Commercial General Liability insurance for the Project written on an occurrence form with policy limits of not less than « One Million Dollars and no/100» ($ « 1,000,000 ») each occurrence, « Two Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 2,000,000 ») general aggregate, and « Two Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 2,000,000 ») aggregate for products-completed operations hazard, providing coverage for claims including

.1 damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, including occupational sickness or disease, and death of any person, with a sublimit not less than $5,000 for medical expenses per person for bodily injury, included within the limits noted above;

.2 personal injury and advertising injury with a limit not less than $1,000,000, $2,000,000 aggregate;

.3 damages because of physical damage to or destruction of tangible property, including the loss of use of such property;

.4 bodily injury or property damage arising out of the Work and out of completed operations, said coverage to be maintained for five years after Final Completion (to be maintained for a period of five years after Final Payment; Contractor shall continue to provide evidence of such coverage to Owner on an annual basis during this period and Owner shall be named by endorsement as an Additional Insured for such coverage) and must include Completed Operations coverage for Contractor, its sub-contractors, and Owner;

.5 the Contractor's contractual liability, including but not limited to, indemnity obligations under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions; and

.6 General Aggregate per Project endorsement.

§ A.3.2.2.2 The Contractor's Commercial General Liability policy under this Section A.3.2.2 shall not contain an exclusion or restriction of coverage for the following:

.1 Claims by one insured against another insured, if the exclusion or restriction is based solely on the fact that the claimant is an insured, and there would otherwise be coverage for the claim.

.2 Claims for property damage to the Contractor's Work arising out of the products-completed operations hazard where the damaged Work or the Work out of which the damage arises was performed by a Subcontractor.

.3 Claims for bodily injury other than to employees of the insured.

.4 Claims for indemnity under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions arising out of injury to employees of the insured.

.5 Claims or loss excluded under a prior work endorsement or other similar exclusionary language.

.6 Claims or loss due to physical damage under a prior injury endorsement or similar exclusionary language.

.7 Claims related to residential, multi-family, or other habitational projects, if the Work is to be performed on such a project.

.8 Claims related to roofing, if the Work involves roofing.

.9 Claims related to exterior insulation finish systems (EIFS), synthetic stucco or similar exterior coatings or surfaces, if the Work involves such coatings or surfaces.

.10 Claims related to earth subsidence or movement, where the Work involves such hazards.

.11 Claims related to explosion, collapse and underground hazards, where the Work involves such hazards.

A.3.2.2.3 Coverage will include:

Independent Contractors
Premise operations
Defense costs in addition to the limits
X, C, and U coverage
Broad form property damage including products/completed operations.

Contractual Liability sufficient to cover indemnity requirements in Section 3.18.1, subject to, policy terms and conditions

Contractor's Professional Liability endorsement CG 22 79 or equivalent (policy shall not contain a professional liability exclusion for "means and methods")

Additional insured, primary and non-contributing

If the additional insured endorsement maintained by the Contractor does not include completed operations coverage then the Contractor must purchase this coverage using form CG-20-37 (latest edition) or an equivalent form providing additional insureds with coverage for "completed operations".

Waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

A standard ISO CGL 2001 occurrence coverage form or equivalent
No modification or restriction of the standard ISO CGL coverage form Paragraph I – "damage to your work" exclusion. The "subcontractor exception" will not be removed via CG 22 94.
If there is work within fifty (50) feet of a railroad, endorse with CG 2417.

§ A.3.2.3 Automobile Liability covering vehicles owned, and non-owned, hired, or any other vehicles used, by the Contractor, with policy limits of not less than « » ($ « ») than those stated below per accident, for bodily injury, death of any person, and property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance and use of those motor vehicles along with any other statutorily required automobile coverage. (*Note: Texas statutory minimum for school districts is $100,000 per person, $300,000 per occurrence, and $100,000 property damage.)* Such minimum limits shall be stated as follows, or in a combined single limit policy in the amount of at least $1,000,000.

.1	Bodily Injury (per person)	$300,000
.2	Bodily Injury (per accident)	$300,000
.3	Property Damage	$300,000

Business Automobile Liability (including owned, non-owned, hired, or borrowed vehicles);

Combined single limit $300,000

Coverage will include:
Contractual Liability
Additional insured, primary and non-contributing
Waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program manager, and Architect
Pollution liability which includes upset, overturn, and collision
Motor Carrier Act Endorsement (MCS 90), if applicable.

§ A.3.2.4 The Contractor may not achieve the required limits and coverage for Commercial General Liability and Automobile Liability through a combination of primary and excess or umbrella liability insurance In no event shall any excess or umbrella liability insurance provide narrower coverage than the primary policy. The excess policy shall not require the exhaustion of the underlying limits only through the actual payment by the underlying insurers.

A.3.2.4.1 Umbrella Excess Liability coverages shall be in at least the following amounts:

.1	$	each occurrence
.2	$	aggregate
.3	Aggregate Per Project Endorsement	

Limits as follows:

If Contract Sum is $1,000,000 or less
$1,000,000 each occurrence and $2,000,000 annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than $1,000,000 up to $5,000,000
$5,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than $5,000,000 up to $10,000,000
$10,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than $10,000,000 to $25,000,000
$25,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than $25,000,000
$50,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

Coverage will include:
Occurrence based form

DRAFT

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

Follow form of the primary coverage (commercial general liability, employer's liability, auto liability) except for per project aggregate
Pay on behalf wording
Completed Operations
Waiver of subrogation to follow form of the primary
Additional insured to follow form of the primary
Annual aggregate limit
A drop down feature

§ A.3.2.5 Workers' Compensation .

.1	State:	Statutory Benefits
.2	Employer's Liability	$500,000 per accident $500,000 disease, policy limit $ 500,000 disease, each employee

Coverage will include:

Waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect
Alternate Employers Endorsement, if applicable
Voluntary Compensation endorsement
All States coverage on an "if any" basis

A.3.2.5.1 Texas Workers' Compensation Insurance. A copy of a certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the Texas Department of Insurance (TDI), or a coverage agreement (DWC-81, DWC-82, DWC-83, or DWC-84), showing statutory worker's compensation insurance coverage for the Contractor's employees providing services on a Project is required for the duration of the Project.

A.3.2.5.1.1 Duration of the Project include the time from the beginning of the Work on the project until the Contractor's Work on the Project has been completed and accepted by the Owner.

A.3.2.5.1.2 Persons providing services on the Project ("subcontractor" in Texas Labor Code Section 406.096) include all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the Contractor has undertaken to perform on the Project, regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operations, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnishes persons to provide services on the Project.

A.3.2.5.1.3 Services include, without limitation, providing, hauling or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other services related to the Project. Services do not include activities unrelated to the Project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

A.3.2.5.1.4 The Contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code 401.011(44) for all employees of the Contractor providing services on the Project for the duration of the Project.

A.3.2.5.1.5 The Contractor must provide a certificate of coverage to the Owner prior to being awarded the Contract.

A.3.2.5.1.6 If the coverage period shown on the Contractor's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project, the Contractor must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with the Owner showing that coverage has been extended.

A.3.2.5.1.7 The Contractor shall obtain from each person providing services on the Project, and provide to the Owner:

.1 A certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning work on the Project, so the Owner will have, on file, certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the Project; and

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

.2 No later than seven days after receipt by the Contractor, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project.

A.3.2.5.1.8 The Contractor shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the Project and for five year thereafter.

A.3.2.5.1.9 The Contractor shall notify the Owner, in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after Contractor knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project.

A.3.2.5.1.10 The Contractor shall post on each Project site a notice, in the text form and manner prescribed by the TDI, informing all persons providing services on the Project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

A.3.2.5.1.11 The Contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on the Project to:

.1 Provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the stator requirements of Texas Labor Code 401.011(44) for all of its employees providing services on the Project for the duration of the Project:

.2 Provide to the Contractor, prior to that person beginning work on the Project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the project for the duration of the Project;

.3 Provide the Contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;

.4 Obtain from each other person with who it contracts, and provide to the Contractor:

.1 A certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning work on the Project; and
.2 A new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project.

.5 Retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the Project and for five years thereafter;

.6 Notify the Owner in writing by certified mail or persona delivery, within ten (10) days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project; and

.7 Contractually require each person with whom it contracts to perform as required by items 1 - 6, with the certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

A.3.2.5.1.12 By signing this Contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the Contractor is representing to the Owner that all employees of the Contractor who will provide services on the Project will be covered by worker's compensation coverage for the duration of the Project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier, or, in the case of a self-insured, with the TDI's Division of Self-Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the Contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

A.3.2.5.1.13 The Contractor's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of contract by the Contractor that entitles the Owner to declare the Contract void if the Contractor does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from the Owner.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

A.3.2.5.1.14 The coverage requirement recited above does not apply to sole proprietors, partners, and corporate officers who are excluded from coverage in an insurance policy or certificate of authority to self-insure that is delivered, issued or delivery, or renewed on or after January 1, 1996.

28 TAC § 110.110(i).

§ A.3.2.6 Employers' Liability with policy limits not less than « Five Hundred Thousand Dollars and no/100» ($ « 500,000 ») each accident, « Five Hundred Thousand Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 500,000 ») each employee, and « Five Hundred Thousand Dollars and no/100» ($ « 500,000») policy limit.

§ A.3.2.7

§ A.3.2.8 If the Contractor is required to furnish professional services as part of the Work, the Contractor shall procure Professional Liability insurance covering performance of the professional services, with policy limits of not less than « One Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 1,000,000 ») per claim and « One MIllion Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 1,000,000 ») in the aggregate. Contractor's Professional Liability, if applicable:

If the Work performed by the Contractor or its subcontractors will include some responsibility for design, the Contractor will purchase or cause to be purchased and maintained a professional liability policy. The limits of coverage will not be less than:

Coverage will include:

A waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect
A retroactive date that is the earlier of the start of design or the Work
Coverage for negligent acts, errors or omissions arising out of design or engineering services
An extended reporting period of 5 years after final completion

§ A.3.2.9 If the Work involves the transport, dissemination, use, or release of pollutants, the Contractor shall procure Pollution Liability insurance, with policy limits of not less than « Three Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 3,000,000 ») per claim and « Three Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 3,000,000 ») in the aggregate

Contractors Pollution Liability, if applicable Contractor will purchase a policy covering third-party bodily injury, property damage, and loss of use claims, including clean-up costs, as a result of pollution conditions arising from contractor's operations and completed operations. Completed operations coverage will remain in effect through annual renewal for no less than 5 years after final completion of the Work. The limits of coverage will be not less than:

Coverage will include:

Mold and other fungi and bacteria
No exclusion for EIFS, if applicable
Additional insured, primary and non-contributing
A waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect
A retroactive date no later than the start of the Work, if applicable.
Occurrence form, if available.

§ A.3.2.10 Coverage under Sections A.3.2.8 and A.3.2.9 may be procured through a Combined Professional Liability and Pollution Liability insurance policy, with combined policy limits of not less than « Four Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 4,000,000 ») per claim and « Four Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 4,000,000 ») in the aggregate.

§ A.3.2.11 « » ($ « ») « » ($ « »)

§ A.3.2.12 Insurance for the use or operation of manned or unmanned aircraft, if the Work requires such activities, with policy limits of not less than « Ten Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 10,000,000 ») per claim and « Ten Million Dollars and no/100 » ($ « 10,000,000 ») in the aggregate.

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

§ A.3.3 Contractor's Other Insurance Coverage

§ A.3.3.1 Insurance selected and described in this Section A.3.3 shall be purchased from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the limits of the insurer's liability. The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below:

(If the Contractor is required to maintain any of the types of insurance selected below for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)

« »

§ A.3.3.2 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the following types and limits of insurance in accordance with Section A.3.3.1.

(Select the types of insurance the Contractor is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance. Where policy limits are provided, include the policy limit in the appropriate fill point.)

[« X »] **§ A.3.3.2.1** Builder's Risk Property insurance in the amount of the Contract Sum which, if selected in this section A.3.3.2.1, relieves the Owner of the responsibility to purchase and maintain such insurance except insurance required by Section A.2.3.1.3 and Section A.2.3.3. The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner the amount of any deductible, and the Contractor shall be responsible for losses within the deductible. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with a copy of the property insurance policy or policies required. The Owner shall adjust and settle the loss with the insurer and be the trustee of the proceeds of the property insurance in accordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions unless otherwise set forth below:

*(**DO NOT USE**) Where the Contractor's obligation to provide property insurance differs from the Owner's obligations as described under Section A.2.3, indicate such differences in the space below. Additionally, if a party other than the Owner will be responsible for adjusting and settling a loss with the insurer and acting as the trustee of the proceeds of property insurance in accordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions, indicate the responsible party below.)*

.1 **Builder's Risk.** Unless otherwise provided, Contractor shall purchase and maintain, from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the state of Texas, a property insurance written on builder's risk "all-risks" completed value or equivalent policy form and sufficient to cover the total value of the entire Project on a replacement cost basis, including boiler and machinery insurance, Coverage, if not included in the base coverage, shall include coverage against the perils of fire, (with extended coverage) and physical loss or damage including, without limitation or duplication of coverage, lightning, collapse, earthquake, flood, wind storm, hurricane, hail, explosion, riot, civil commotion, smoke, aircraft, land vehicles, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, falsework, testing and start-up, temporary buildings, debris removal including demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and all other perils, and shall include materials stored on-site, off-site, and in transit. The Contractor's property insurance coverage shall be no less than the amount of the initial Contract Sum, plus the value of subsequent Modifications and labor performed and materials or equipment supplied by others. The property insurance shall be maintained until Final Completion, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or otherwise agreed in writing by the parties to this Agreement. This insurance shall include the interests of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors in the Project as insureds. This insurance shall include the interests of mortgagees as loss payees. Such coverage shall be primary coverage.

.2 **Causes of Loss.** The insurance required by this Section A.3.3.2.1 shall provide coverage for direct physical loss or damage, and shall not exclude the risks of fire, explosion, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, collapse, earthquake, flood, or windstorm. The insurance shall also provide coverage for ensuing loss or resulting damage from error, omission, or deficiency in construction methods, design, specifications, workmanship, or materials. Sub-limits, if any, are as follows:

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

(*Indicate below the cause of loss and any applicable sub-limit.*)

.3 Causes of Loss Sub-Limit. Specific Required Coverages. The insurance required by this Section A.3.3.2.1 shall provide coverage for loss or damage to falsework and other temporary structures, and to building systems from testing and startup. The insurance shall also cover debris removal, including demolition, occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and reasonable compensation for the Architect's and Contractor's services and expenses required as a result of such insured loss, including claim preparation expenses. Sub-limits, if any, are as follows: (*Indicate below type of coverage and any applicable sub-limit for specific required coverages.*)

.4 Adjustment of Loss. The Owner, as a fiduciary, shall have power to adjust and settle any loss arising out of the Work, with insured, regardless of the purchaser of the insurance policy. The Contractor, upon receipt of proceeds, shall as fiduciary, pay all subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and, by appropriate agreements, shall require subcontractors to make payment to their sub-subcontractors in similar manner. The Owner shall deposit, in a separate account, proceeds so received, which the Owner shall distribute in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach. If after such loss no other special agreement is made and unless the Owner terminates the Contract for convenience, then replacement of damaged property shall be performed by the Contractor with the insurance proceeds upon issuance of a Notice to Proceeds from the Owner.

.5 Occupancy or Use Prior to Substantial Completion. The Owner's occupancy or use of any completed or partially completed portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing the insurance under Section A.3.3.2.1 have consented, in writing, to the continuance of coverage. The Owner and the Contractor shall take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of insurance, unless they agree otherwise in writing.

.6 Employee Theft or Dishonesty. If this Builder's Risk policy excludes Employee Theft or Dishonesty coverage, including Third Parties, Contractor shall obtain separate coverage sufficient to protect Owner's interest and in an amount agreeable to Owner.

.7 Cancellation. The insurance policies required by this Section A.3.3.2 shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled for any reason, other than nonpayment of premium, or reduced or restricted due to a material change in coverage until at least 30 days prior written notice of such cancellation or material change has been given to the Owner. Contractor shall provide Owner 30 days prior written notice of the expiration of any policy required by Section A.3.1.1.

.8 Construction Manager at Risk. If Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk. Then, as specified in each AIA A133 Exhibit A Amendment, the amount of Builder's Risk insurance coverage shall be an amount equal to the Guaranteed Maximum Price; otherwise, in the total amount of the Contract Sum.

.9 Deductibles. For any claim made against the builder's risk insurance, the deductible shall not exceed $2,500 for a Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), of less than $4 million. For a Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), of $4 million or more, the deductible shall not exceed $5,000. Contractor shall be responsible for losses within such deductible amounts.

« »

[« »] **§ A.3.3.2.2** « » ($ « ») « » ($ « »)

[« »] **§ A.3.3.2.3** « » ($ « ») « » ($ « »)

[« »] **§ A.3.3.2.4** Insurance for physical damage to property while it is in storage and in transit to the

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

construction site on an "all-risks" completed value form.

[« »] **§ A.3.3.2.5**

[« »] **§ A.3.3.2.6 Other Insurance**
(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Contractor and any applicable limits.)

Coverage	**Limits**
« »	

§ A.3.4 Performance Bond and Payment Bond
The Contractor shall provide surety bonds, from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located, subject to the requirements of A201-2017, Article 11.1.2.1, as follows:
(Specify type and penal sum of bonds.)

Type	Penal Sum ($0.00)
Payment Bond	«$ or 100% of the Contract Sum as amended
Performance Bond	$ or 100% of the Contract Sum as amended»

The form of Payment and Performance Bonds shall be subject to the requirements of Texas law, current as of the date of this Agreement.

ARTICLE A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS
Special terms and conditions that modify this Insurance and Bonds Exhibit, if any, are as follows:

« See A201-2017, Article 11 »

This Agreement entered into as of the day and year first written above.

_____	_____
OWNER	CONTRACTOR
Dallas Independent School District	

AIA Document A101™ – 2017 Exhibit A. Copyright © 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 10:13:25 CT on 01/24/2019 under Order No. 2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: (3B9ADA37)

GENERAL AND SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION

A201

DRAFT

AIA® Document A201™ – 2017

General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:
(Name and location or address)

BP# XXX: ORG #XXX XX Elementary School
School Address
Dallas, Texas 75XXX

THE OWNER:
(Name, legal status and address)

The Dallas Independent School District, a political subdivision of the State of Texas
9400 North Central Expressway
Dallas, Texas 75231

THE PROGRAM MANAGER:
(Name, legal status and address)

PMF Name
PMF Address
PMF City/State/Zip

THE ARCHITECT:
(Name, legal status and address)

A/E Name
A/E Address
A/E City/State/Zip

TABLE OF ARTICLES

1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

2 OWNER

3 CONTRACTOR

4 ARCHITECT ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT

5 SUBCONTRACTORS

6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

8 TIME

9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS: The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

Version 10/27/2022

DRAFT

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

INDEX
(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

Acceptance of Nonconforming Work
9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**
Acceptance of Work
9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3
Access to Work
3.16, 6.2.1, 12.1
Accident Prevention
10
Acts and Omissions
3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2
Addenda
1.1.1
Additional Costs, Claims for
3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5
Additional Inspections and Testing
9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**
Additional Time, Claims for
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**
Administration of the Contract
3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5
Advertisement or Invitation to Bid
1.1.1
Aesthetic Effect
4.2.13
Allowances
3.8
Applications for Payment
4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10
Approvals
2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9, 3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1
Arbitration
8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**
ARCHITECT
4
Architect, Definition of
4.1.1
Architect, Extent of Authority
2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1
Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility
2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2
Architect's Additional Services and Expenses
2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4
Architect's Administration of the Contract
3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5
Architect's Approvals
2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7
Architect's Authority to Reject Work
3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1
Architect's Copyright
1.1.7, 1.5
Architect's Decisions
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 15.2
Architect's Inspections
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Architect's Instructions
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2
Architect's Interpretations
4.2.11, 4.2.12
Architect's Project Representative
4.2.10
Architect's Relationship with Contractor
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2
Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors
1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3
Architect's Representations
9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1
Architect's Site Visits
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Asbestos
10.3.1
Attorneys' Fees
3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3
Award of Separate Contracts
6.1.1, 6.1.2
Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work
5.2
Basic Definitions
1.1
Bidding Requirements
1.1.1
Binding Dispute Resolution
8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1
Bonds, Lien
7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Bonds, Performance, and Payment
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**
Building Information Models Use and Reliance
1.8
Building Permit
3.7.1
Capitalization
1.3
Certificate of Substantial Completion
9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5
Certificates for Payment
4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval
13.4.4
Certificates of Insurance
9.10.2
Change Orders
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2
Change Orders, Definition of
7.2.1
CHANGES IN THE WORK
2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, **7**, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5
Claims, Definition of
15.1.1
Claims, Notice of
1.6.2, 15.1.3
CLAIMS AND DISPUTES
3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4
Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims
15.4.1
Claims for Additional Cost
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**
Claims for Additional Time
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**
Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for
3.7.4
Claims for Damages
3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7
Claims Subject to Arbitration
15.4.1
Cleaning Up
3.15, 6.3
Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**
Commencement of the Work, Definition of
8.1.2
Communications
3.9.1, **4.2.4**
Completion, Conditions Relating to
3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2
COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND
9
Completion, Substantial
3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2
Compliance with Laws
2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3
Concealed or Unknown Conditions
3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3
Conditions of the Contract
1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4
Consent, Written
3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2
Consolidation or Joinder
15.4.4
CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY
SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
1.1.4, **6**
Construction Change Directive, Definition of
7.3.1
Construction Change Directives
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1
Construction Schedules, Contractor's
3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2
Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts
5.4, 14.2.2.2
Continuing Contract Performance
15.1.4
Contract, Definition of
1.1.2
CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR
SUSPENSION OF THE
5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, **14**
Contract Administration
3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5
Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to
3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1
Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3
Contract Documents, Definition of
1.1.1
Contract Sum
2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5, 15.2.5**
Contract Sum, Definition of
9.1
Contract Time
1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5
Contract Time, Definition of
8.1.1
CONTRACTOR
3
Contractor, Definition of
3.1, 6.1.2
Contractor's Construction and Submittal
Schedules
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2
Contractor's Employees
2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
Contractor's Liability Insurance
11.1

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner's Forces
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4
Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors
1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4
Contractor's Relationship with the Architect
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1
Contractor's Representations
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2
Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8
Contractor's Review of Contract Documents
3.2
Contractor's Right to Stop the Work
2.2.2, 9.7
Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract
14.1
Contractor's Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Contractor's Superintendent
3.9, 10.2.6
Contractor's Supervision and Construction Procedures
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4
Coordination and Correlation
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1
Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications
1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11
Copyrights
1.5, **3.17**
Correction of Work
2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**, 12.3, 15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1
Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents
1.2
Cost, Definition of
7.3.4
Costs
2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14
Cutting and Patching
3.14, 6.2.5
Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4
Damage to the Work
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4
Damages, Claims for
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2, 11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7
Damages for Delay
6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2
Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of
8.1.2
Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of
8.1.3
Day, Definition of
8.1.4
Decisions of the Architect
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2
Decisions to Withhold Certification
9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3
Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of
2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1
Definitions
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1
Delays and Extensions of Time
3.2, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**, 10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5
Digital Data Use and Transmission
1.7
Disputes
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2
Documents and Samples at the Site
3.11
Drawings, Definition of
1.1.5
Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of
3.11
Effective Date of Insurance
8.2.2
Emergencies
10.4, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5**
Employees, Contractor's
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
Equipment, Labor, or Materials
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Execution and Progress of the Work
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4
Extensions of Time
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**
Failure of Payment
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
Faulty Work
(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)
Final Completion and Final Payment
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Financial Arrangements, Owner's
2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4
GENERAL PROVISIONS
1
Governing Law
13.1
Guarantees (See Warranty)
Hazardous Materials and Substances
10.2.4, **10.3**
Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers
5.2.1
Indemnification
3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3
Information and Services Required of the Owner
2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
Initial Decision
15.2
Initial Decision Maker, Definition of
1.1.8
Initial Decision Maker, Decisions
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5
Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5
Injury or Damage to Person or Property
10.2.8, 10.4
Inspections
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4
Instructions to Bidders
1.1.1
Instructions to the Contractor
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2
Instruments of Service, Definition of
1.1.7
Insurance
6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, **11**
Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration
11.1.4, 11.2.3
Insurance, Contractor's Liability
11.1
Insurance, Effective Date of
8.2.2, 14.4.2
Insurance, Owner's Liability
11.2
Insurance, Property
10.2.5, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5
Insurance, Stored Materials
9.3.2
INSURANCE AND BONDS
11
Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy
9.9.1
Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of
11.5
Intent of the Contract Documents
1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13
Interest
13.5
Interpretation
1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1
Interpretations, Written
4.2.11, 4.2.12
Judgment on Final Award
15.4.2
Labor and Materials, Equipment
1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Labor Disputes
8.3.1
Laws and Regulations
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4
Liens
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8
Limitations, Statutes of
12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1
Limitations of Liability
3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1
Limitations of Time
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5
Materials, Hazardous
10.2.4, **10.3**
Materials, Labor, Equipment and
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and Procedures of Construction
3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2
Mechanic's Lien
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8
Mediation
8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1, 15.4.1.1
Minor Changes in the Work
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
13
Modifications, Definition of
1.1.1
Modifications to the Contract
1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2
Mutual Responsibility
6.2

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of
9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**
Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2
Notice
1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1
Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance
11.1.4, 11.2.3
Notice of Claims
1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1
Notice of Testing and Inspections
13.4.1, 13.4.2
Observations, Contractor's
3.2, 3.7.4
Occupancy
2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8
Orders, Written
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1
OWNER
2
Owner, Definition of
2.1.1
Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements
2.2, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4
Owner, Information and Services Required of the
2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
Owner's Authority
1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7
Owner's Insurance
11.2
Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors
1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2
Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work
2.5, 14.2.2
Owner's Right to Clean Up
6.3
Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts
6.1
Owner's Right to Stop the Work
2.4
Owner's Right to Suspend the Work
14.3
Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract
14.2, 14.4
Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3
Partial Occupancy or Use
9.6.6, **9.9**
Patching, Cutting and
3.14, 6.2.5
Patents
3.17
Payment, Applications for
4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
Payment, Certificates for
4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4
Payment, Failure of
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
Payment, Final
4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
Payment Bond, Performance Bond and
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**
Payments, Progress
9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4
PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
9
Payments to Subcontractors
5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2
PCB
10.3.1
Performance Bond and Payment Bond
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**
Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws
2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2
PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF
10
Polychlorinated Biphenyl
10.3.1
Product Data, Definition of
3.12.2
Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7
Progress and Completion
4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
Progress Payments
9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4
Project, Definition of
1.1.4
Project Representatives
4.2.10
Property Insurance
10.2.5, **11.2**
Proposal Requirements
1.1.1
PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
10

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Regulations and Laws
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4
Rejection of Work
4.2.6, 12.2.1
Releases and Waivers of Liens
9.3.1, 9.10.2
Representations
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1
Representatives
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10
Retainage
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor
3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and Architect
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples by Contractor
3.12
Rights and Remedies
1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1, 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, **13.3**, 14, 15.4
Royalties, Patents and Copyrights
3.17
Rules and Notices for Arbitration
15.4.1
Safety of Persons and Property
10.2, 10.4
Safety Precautions and Programs
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, **10.1**, 10.2, 10.4
Samples, Definition of
3.12.3
Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7
Samples at the Site, Documents and
3.11
Schedule of Values
9.2, 9.3.1
Schedules, Construction
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2
Separate Contracts and Contractors
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2
Separate Contractors, Definition of
6.1.1
Shop Drawings, Definition of
3.12.1
Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7
Site, Use of
3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Site Inspections
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Site Visits, Architect's
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Special Inspections and Testing
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4
Specifications, Definition of
1.1.6
Specifications
1.1.1, **1.1.6**, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14
Statute of Limitations
15.1.2, 15.4.1.1
Stopping the Work
2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1
Stored Materials
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4
Subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.1
SUBCONTRACTORS
5
Subcontractors, Work by
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6.7
Subcontractual Relations
5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1
Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Submittal Schedule
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7
Subrogation, Waivers of
6.1.1, **11.3**
Substances, Hazardous
10.3
Substantial Completion
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2
Substantial Completion, Definition of
9.8.1
Substitution of Subcontractors
5.2.3, 5.2.4
Substitution of Architect
2.3.3
Substitutions of Materials
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8
Sub-subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.2
Subsurface Conditions
3.7.4
Successors and Assigns
13.2
Superintendent
3.9, 10.2.6
Supervision and Construction Procedures
1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Suppliers
1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6, 9.10.5, 14.2.1
Surety
5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2, 15.2.7
Surety, Consent of
9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Surveys
1.1.7, 2.3.4
Suspension by the Owner for Convenience
14.3
Suspension of the Work
3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3
Suspension or Termination of the Contract
5.4.1.1, 14
Taxes
3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4
Termination by the Contractor
14.1, 15.1.7
Termination by the Owner for Cause
5.4.1.1, **14.2,** 15.1.7
Termination by the Owner for Convenience
14.4
Termination of the Architect
2.3.3
Termination of the Contractor Employment
14.2.2

TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
14
Tests and Inspections
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, **13.4**
TIME
8
Time, Delays and Extensions of
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5
Time Limits
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4
Time Limits on Claims
3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3
Title to Work
9.3.2, 9.3.3
UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
12
Uncovering of Work
12.1
Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown
3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3
Unit Prices
7.3.3.2, 9.1.2
Use of Documents
1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3
Use of Site
3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Values, Schedule of
9.2, 9.3.1
Waiver of Claims by the Architect
13.3.2
Waiver of Claims by the Contractor
9.10.5, 13.3.2, **15.1.7**
Waiver of Claims by the Owner
9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7**
Waiver of Consequential Damages
14.2.4, 15.1.7
Waiver of Liens
9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4
Waivers of Subrogation
6.1.1, **11.3**
Warranty
3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 15.1.2
Weather Delays
8.3, 15.1.6.2
Work, Definition of
1.1.3
Written Consent
1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2
Written Interpretations
4.2.11, 4.2.12
Written Orders
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 Basic Definitions

§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents consist of the Contract between Owner and Contractor, A101- 2017, as amended, OR the Contract between the Owner and Construction Manager at Risk A133-2019, as amended, and the A133-2019 Exhibit A (hereinafter the ~~Agreement~~Contract); Conditions of the Contract as amended (General, Supplementary and other Conditions, including but not limited to A201-2017, as amended); Contractor's proof of Payment and Performance Bonds and proof of insurance, ~~are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), all sections of the Project Manual and Construction Documents (as defined in Section 1.1.3 below) including~~ Drawings, Specifications, and Addenda issued prior to receipt of bids or proposals, ~~to execution of the Contract,~~ other documents listed in the ~~Agreement~~Contract, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the ~~Agreement~~Contract, the Contract Documents do not include other documents such as bidding requirements (advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, Contractor's bid or portions of Addenda relating to bidding requirements). All sections of the Project Manual shall be a part of the ~~Agreement~~Contract. In the event of conflict, terms and conditions contained in the ~~Agreement~~Contract, as amended, shall take precedence over terms and conditions contained in the General Conditions, as amended. The terms and conditions in the General Conditions, as amended, shall take precedence over all other terms and conditions contained in the other Contract Documents. ~~Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.~~

1.1.1.1 The Contract, represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and the Contractor and supersedes all prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. Any revision, amendment, or modification to the Standard Form of the Contract shall be valid, binding, and enforceable only if said revision, amendment, or modification is made conspicuous by being underlined, lined-through, or highlighted in this Contract signed by Contractor and the authorized representative of Owner's Board of Trustees.

§ 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for ~~Construction~~Construction (the "Contract"). The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a written Modification signed by the Contractor, approved by Owner's Board of Trustees, and signed by the representative of the Owner's Board of Trustees who is authorized to sign contracts. As a material consideration for the making of the Contract, modifications to the Contract shall not be constructed against the maker of said modifications. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor of the Contractor;~~,~~ (3) between the Program Manager and the Contractor~~between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants~~, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. ~~The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.~~

The Program Manager and/or Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations of the Contractor under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the duties of the Architect and/or the Program Manager.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

1.1.2.1 To be effective, all Contract Documents including the A201-2017, as amended requiring signatures must be signed first by the Contractor representative and then by the Owner's authorized representative, after approval by Owner's Board of Trustees. If an approved Contact Document requiring Contractor's signature has not been signed, then the missing signature shall be provided within a reasonable period of time. Failure of Contractor to sign an approved Contract Document after notice and a reasonable opportunity to sign, shall be considered a material breach of the Contract by Contractor.

§ 1.1.3 The Work; Construction Documents

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project. The Work includes all labor, parts, supplies, skill, supervision, transportation, services, and other facilities and things necessary, proper or incidental to the carrying out and completion of the terms of the Contract Documents and all other items of cost or value needed to produce, construct and fully complete the public Work identified by the Contract Documents.

"Construction Documents" means: all Drawings, Specifications, geotechnical reports, Addenda, submittals, transmittals, deliverables, instructions to Contractors, and other documents, including those in electronic form, prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants and which set forth in detail the requirements for construction of the Project. The Construction Documents shall include Drawings and Specifications that establish, in detail, the quality levels of materials and systems required for the Project. The Construction Documents shall reflect all agreements between Owner and Architect concerning Owner's budgetary constraints, programmatic needs and expectations as to quality, functionality of systems, maintenance costs, and usable life of equipment and facilities. Said Construction Documents shall reflect the Owner's educational program and educational specifications, the State educational adequacy standards in 19 TAC § 61.104036, and the standards set forth in the Owner's architect agreement Section 3.1.4 of AIA document B101-2017. The Architect shall provide Construction Documents which are sufficient for Owner to complete construction of the Project, are free from material defects or omissions, and which shall comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations, as of the date of issuance of Construction Documents.

§ 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and or by Separate Contractors.

§ 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

§ 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

§ 1.1.7 Instruments PROJECT MANUAL of Service

Construction InstruDocuments of Service are include representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Construction InstruDocuments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials. The Project Manual is a volume assembled for the Work which may include the bidding requirements, sample forms, Conditions of the Contract and Specifications.

§ 1.1.8 PROGRAM MANAGERSInitial Decision Maker

The Owner may use Program Managers to carry out some of the functions of administration of the Owner's construction program. The Contractor, Architect, and Program Manager (when applicable) shall cooperate with each other in the performance of their respective functions. The management and reporting systems used by the Owner and/or Program Manager, including the assignment of the Program Manager, may be changed by Owner during the Project.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

~~The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.~~

1.1.9 Addenda

Addenda are written or graphic instrument issued by the Owner ~~prior to the execution of the Contract~~, which modify or interpret the bidding or proposal documents, including Drawings and Specifications, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections. Addenda will become part of the Contract Documents and Construction Documents when the Contract is executed. The Contractor and subcontractors shall include all addenda items on their copies of the Drawings and Specifications.

1.1.10 All references to "Contractor" shall include "Construction Manager at Risk" as appropriate.

1.1.11 ~~The Owner may retain Program Manager(s) to carry out some of the functions of the administration of the Owner's construction program. The Contractor, Architect, and Program Manager(s) (when applicable) shall cooperate with each other in the performance of their respective functions. The management and reporting systems used by the Owner and/or Program Manager(s) including the assignment of the Program Manager, may be changed by Owner during the Project.~~[Omitted]

1.1.11 Approved, Approved Equal, Approved Equivalents, Or Equal

The terms "Approved" and "Approved Equal" relate to the substitution of materials, equipment, or procedure in writing by the Architect prior to receipt of bids.

1.1.12 Abbreviations

AIA:	American Institute of Architects. (All references to AIA documents refer to AIA's trademarked documents. Each reference to a specific document shall refer to the documents as amended for this Project.)
AIEE:	American Institute of Electrical Engineers
ACI:	American Concrete Institute
AHERA:	Asbestos Hazardous Emergency Response Act
AISI:	American Iron and Steel Institute
AISC:	American Institute of Steel Construction
ANSI:	American National Standards Institute
ASA:	American Standards Association
ASTM:	American Society of Testing Materials
AWSC:	American Welding Society Code
CERCLA:	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act
EPA:	Environmental Protection Agency
FS:	Federal Specification
NEC:	National Electrical Code
OSHA:	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
SPR:	Simplified Practice Recommendation
TAS:	Texas Accessibility Standards
UL:	Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

1.1.13 Bids or Bidding The term "Bids" or "Bidding" shall include any kind of competitive purchasing under Texas Government Code Chapter 2269.

1.1.14 Miscellaneous Other Words

1.1.14.1 Business Day

The term "business day" is a day that Owner's Administration Building is scheduled to be open for normal business purposes, unless closed by the Owner's Superintendent of Schools for inclement weather or other reason. Days on which the Administration Building is normally closed are: Thanksgiving Break, Winter Break, Spring Break, and Summer Break, as well as other federal, state, or local days specified in the calendar approved by the Owner's Board of Trustees on an annual basis. A business day does not include a day on which the Owner's Administration Building is open only for the purposes of conducting candidate filing, early voting, elections, or other special events.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

1.1.14.2 Calendar Day
A calendar day is a day on the Gregorian Calendar. The Contract Time is established in calendar days. Extensions of time granted, if any, will be converted to calendar days.

1.1.14.3 Holidays
Owner-approved holidays for Contractor's Work are limited to: New Year's Day, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

1.1.14.4 Work Day
Work days are all calendar days except Holidays.

1.1.14.5 Anticipated Weather Days
An allowance of regular Work Days, established as anticipated Work Days lost due to weather delays; said allowance shall be included in Contractor's proposed completion time. Only lost weather days in excess of Anticipated Weather Days shall be considered by Owner for time extensions based upon weather. ~~Section 15.1.5.3 lists required Anticipated Weather Days.~~

1.1.15 Contract Sum
"Contract Sum" shall have the same meaning as in Section 5.1 of the Contract (A133-20~~09~~), for the Project when the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk Project OR the same meaning as in Article 4 of the Contract (A101-2017) for the Project.

§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

§ 1.2.1.1 ~~The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.~~ The most recently issued contract document takes precedence over previously issued forms of the same document. Figures given on Drawings govern scale management, and large-scale details govern smaller scale Drawings. If an item is shown one place in the Drawings, but not another, or called for in a schedule or the specifications but not shown on the Drawings or shown on the Drawings but not in a schedule, it is to be included. Existing conditions take precedence over Drawings and Specifications for dimensions.

1.2.1.2 During the course of the Work, should any conflict be found in or between the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be deemed to have estimated the Work on the basis of the greater quantity or better quality, or the most stringent requirement, unless he shall have obtained an interpretation in writing from the Architect as to what shall govern before the submission of his Proposal. The Architect, in case of such conflict, may interpret or construe the documents so as to obtain the most substantial and complete performance of the Work consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable therefrom, in the best interest of Owner, and the Architect's interpretation shall be final. The terms and conditions of this clause shall not relieve any part of any other obligation under the Contract Documents.

§ 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

§ 1.2.3 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

1.2.4 Relation of Specifications And Drawings

General Requirements in the Specifications govern the execution of all Specifications. Summary paragraphs present a brief indication of the Work, but do not limit the Work as later detailed. The Drawings and Specifications are correlative and have equal authority and priority. Should the Drawings and Specifications have internal inconsistencies, then the Contractor shall base the bids and construction on the more expensive combination of quality and quantity of work indicated. For purposes of construction, the Architect shall determine the appropriate Work, after the Contractor brings the inconsistency to the Architect's attention. Failure to report an inconsistency shall be evidence that Contractor has elected to proceed in the more expensive manner.

1.2.5 ~~Optional Materials, Equipment and Processes~~Materials, Equipment, and Processes

Exact location and arrangement of the various pieces of equipment specified shall be determined with the approval of the Architect after equipment has been selected and/or as the Work progresses. All equipment shall, insofar as possible, be installed in such a manner as will not interfere with architectural or structural portions of the building. Should changes become necessary because of a failure of the Contractor to comply with the Contract Documents which results in equipment requiring more area than shown on the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be fully responsible for completing any required modifications or eliminating any interferences. Where in the Drawings and Specifications, certain products, manufacturer's trade names, or catalog numbers are specified, it is done for the express purpose of establishing a standard of function, dimension, appearance, and quality of design in harmony with the Work, and is not intended for the purpose of limiting competition. Materials or equipment shall not be substituted unless the Architect has specifically accepted such substitution for use on this Project. When more than one material, process, or brand is specified for a particular item of Work, the choice shall be the Contractor's. The final selection of color and pattern will be made by the Owner from the range available within the option selected by the Contractor, unless the item is specified to match a specific color or sample furnished. Where particular items are specified, products of those named manufacturers are required unless Contractor submits for consideration proposed substitutions of materials equipment, or processes from those set out in the Contract Documents. Submittals of proposed substitutions should contain sufficient information to allow the Architect and Owner to determine if the proposed substitution is in fact equal to or better than the requirements in the Contract Documents. The Architect shall review and respond to proposed substitutions within fifteen (15) days of receipt. Contractor shall bear all risk caused by submitting substitutions, including all costs. The Owner may approve substitutions only when the substitution is clearly provided by the Contract to be equal in performance characteristics to the requirements of the Contract Documents, equally compatible with the existing installations and complementary to the architectural design for the Work. Contractor shall bear all related costs associated with the substitution. Certain special construction and equipment details may not be regularly included as part of the named manufacturer's standard catalog equipment, but shall be obtained by the Contractor from the manufacturer as required for the proper evaluation and/or function of the equipment. Reasonable minor variations in equipment are expected and will be acceptable, if approved by the Architect and Owner, however, indicated and specified performance and material requirements are the minimum. The Owner and the Architect reserve the right to determine the quality of equipment and materials that deviate from any of the indicated and specified requirements.

~~1.2.5.1Product and Reference Standards~~

~~When specific products, systems or items of equipment are referred to in the Contract Documents, any ancillary devices which the Contractor knows, or in accordance with the standard of care for a General Contractor should have known, is necessary for proper functioning shall also be provided. When standards, codes, manufacturer's instructions and guarantees are required and no edition is specified by the Contract Documents, the current edition at the time of Contract execution shall apply whether or not the proper edition was set out in the Contract Documents. References to standards, codes, manufacturer's instructions and guarantees shall apply in full, except:~~

~~.1 They do not supersede more stringent standards set out in the Contract Documents, and~~
~~.2 Any exclusions or waivers that are inconsistent with the Contract Documents do not apply.~~

1.2.6 Standards And Requirements

When the Contract Documents refer to standards, building codes, manufacturers' instructions, or other documents, unless otherwise specified, then the current edition as of the date of execution of the Contract by the last party to execute said Contract shall apply. It shall be the responsibility of the Architect to address revisions or amendments to applicable codes or standards which arise after the date of execution of the Contract and until Final Completion, pursuant to the terms of the Contract between Owner and Architect. Requirements of public authorities apply as minimum requirements only and do not supersede more stringent specified requirements.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

General Requirements in the Specifications govern the execution of all Work. Summary paragraphs present a brief indication of the Work, but do not limit the Work as later detailed. Should the Drawings and Specifications have internal inconsistencies, then the Contractor shall base the bids and construction on the most expensive combination of quality and quantity of work indicated. For purposes of construction, the Architect shall determine the appropriate Work, after the Contractor brings the inconsistency to the Architect's attention. Failure to report an inconsistency shall be evidence that Contractor has elected to proceed in the more expensive manner.

§ 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles and identified references to Paragraphs, Subparagraphs, and Clauses in the documents., or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

§ 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

§ 1.5.1 All ownership rights, whether common law, statutory, or other reserved rights, including copyright ownership of the Construction Documents, are controlled by the Contract between the Owner and ~~T~~the Architect ~~and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights~~. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the ~~Instruments of Service~~Construction Documents. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of any~~the Architect's or Architect's consultants'~~ reserved rights.

§ 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are granted a limited license~~authorized~~ to use and reproduce the Construction Documents~~Instruments of Service~~ provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Section~~s~~ 1.7 ~~and 1.8~~, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Construction Documents~~Instruments of Service~~. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the ~~Instruments of Service~~Construction Documents on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants. All copies of the Construction Documents, except the Contractor's record set, shall be returned or suitably accounted for to the copyright holder upon completion of the Work.

1.5.3 The Drawings, Specifications and other Documents, including those in electronic form, prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants are Instruments of Service through which the Work to be executed by the Contractor is described. The Contractor may retain one record set. Neither the Contractor nor any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material or equipment supplier shall own or claim copyright in the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect or Architect's consultants, and unless otherwise indicated the Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors of them and will retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights, in addition to the copyrights. All copies of Instruments of Service, except the Contractor's record set, shall be returned or suitably accounted for to the Architect, on request, upon completion of the Work. The Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants, and copies thereof furnished to the Contractor, are for use solely with respect to this Project. They are not to be used by the Contractor or any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material or equipment supplier on other projects or for additions to this Project outside the scope of the Work without the written consent of the Owner, Architect and Architect's consultants. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors and material or equipment suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce applicable portions of the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect and Architect's consultants appropriate to and for use in the execution of their Work under the Contract Documents. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the statutory copyright notice, if any, shown on the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect and Architect's consultants. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with this Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants copyrights or other reserved rights.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 1.6 Notice

§ 1.6.1 ~~Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement~~Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual, to a member of the firm or entity, or to an officer of the corporation for which it was intended; if delivered at, or sent by registered or certified mail, or by courier service providing proof of delivery to the last business address known to the party giving notice, or if sent by electronic facsimile transmission, to the last business number known to the party giving notice, with electronic confirmation of receipt; or, if sent by electronic mail, to the email address of the Owner's or Contractor's designated representative, with electronic confirmation of receipt.

§ 1.6.2 ~~Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.~~

§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

If ~~T~~the parties intend to transmit Construction Documents or any other information or documentation in digital form, they shall endeavor to establish necessary~~shall agree upon~~ protocols governing such~~the~~ transmissions, unless otherwise already provided in the Contract or the Contract Documents ~~and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data~~.

§ 1.8 EXECUTION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

1.8.1 The Contract Documents must be signed by the Owner and Contractor. The ~~Agreement~~Contract between Owner and Contractor, as amended, including Conditions of the Contract, as amended, as well as all other Contract Documents that required signature of the Parties, including the A201-2017, as amended, must be signed first by the Contractor's representative. . After signing the ~~Agreement~~Contract and all other Contract Documents requiring signature, Contractor shall return the Contract Documents along with proof of insurance and payment and performance bonds to Owner. Once Owner has approved of the Contract Documents and the proof of insurance and payment and performance bonds, Owner shall sign the ~~Agreement~~Contract and all other Contract Documents requiring signature of the parties. When Owner has signed and approved all required documents, District shall issue a Notice to Proceed to Contractor.

1.8.2 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents. Should the Contractor find discrepancies, omissions or conflicts within the Contract Documents, or be in doubt as to their meaning, the Contractor shall at once notify in writing the Architect, the Program Manager and Owner, and Architect will issue a written Architect's Supplemental Instruction to all parties that is consistent with the Owner's Scope of the Work.

~~**Building Information Models Use and Reliance**~~

~~**Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.**~~

ARTICLE 2 OWNER

§ 2.1 General

§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the independent school district ~~oe enity~~ ~~person or entity~~ identified ~~as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout~~ in the Contract Documents ~~as if singular in number~~. The Board of Trustees, by majority vote, is the only representative of the Owner, an independent school district, having the power to: enter into a contract; amend a contract, including but not limited to, AIA Document A133 Exhibit A; approve changes in the scope of the Work; approve and execute a Change Order or Construction Change Directive modifying the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price; agree to an extension to the date of Substantial or Final Completion; or terminate a contract. The Board will act as soon as reasonably possible to avoid undue delays. The Board ~~shall~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

designates authorized representatives to act on its behalf for day-to-day operations under the Contract. Unless otherwise designated in the Contract Documents, Owner's authorized ~~in writing a~~ representative ~~who~~ shall be the Superintendent of Schools, who may delegate responsibilities as appropriate. ~~have express authority to bind the Owner~~ Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Architect does not have such authority. Neither Architect nor Contractor may rely upon the direction of any employee of Owner who has not been designated in writing by the Superintendent or Board of Trustees; Owner shall not be financially responsible for actions taken by the Architect or Contractor in reliance upon direction from unauthorized persons ~~with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority~~. ~~The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.~~

§ 2.1.2 ~~The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein~~ It shall be distinctly understood that by virtue of this Contract, no mechanic, contractor, material person, artisan, or laborer, skilled or unskilled, shall ever in any manner have, claim, or acquire any lien upon the buildings or any of the improvements of whatsoever nature or kind so erected or to be erected by virtue of this Contract or upon any of the land on which said buildings of any of the improvements are so erected, built, or situated, such property belonging to a political subdivision of the State of Texas. It shall be further understood that this Contract is not written for the benefit of their parties.

2.1.3 The Owner shall require the Contractor and the Architect to meet periodically at mutually-agreed-upon intervals, for the purpose of establishing procedures to facilitate cooperation, communication, and timely responses among the participants. By participating in this arrangement, the parties do not intend to create additional contractual obligations or modify the legal relationship which may otherwise exist.

2.1.4 The Owner may require that the Contractor use and/or respond to certain Owner-furnished forms or inquiries during the course of the Project. From time to time, there may be future revisions, changes, additions, or deletions to these forms. The fact that the Owner modifies and increases reasonable reporting requirements shall not serve as the basis for a claim for additional time or compensation by the Contractor.

2.1.5 The Contractor stipulates and agrees that the Owner has no duty to discover any design errors or omissions in the Drawings, Plans, Specifications, and other Construction Documents, and has no duty to notify Contractor of same. By entering into the Contract Documents or any Contract with any Architect, Owner does not warrant the adequacy and accuracy of any Drawings, Plans, Specifications, or other Construction Documents.

§ 2.2 ~~Evidence of the~~ Owner's Financial Arrangements

§ 2.2.1 ~~Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, t~~The Owner, being a public body under the laws of the State of Texas, must have adequate funds and/or financing as provided by law prior to award and execution of ~~shall furnish to~~ the Contract~~or~~ Documents~~reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately~~.

§ 2.2.2 At any time prior to the Owner's receipt of the executed ~~Agreement~~Contract with the required bonds and insurance, the Owner may, at its sole option and without cause, reject the offer described in this ~~Agreement~~Contract by delivering to the Contractor a written notice stating so. Such notice shall be signed by the Owner's Director of Purchasing or designee and shall be effective on receipt by the Contractor. The rejection of the offer described in this ~~Agreement~~Contract shall cause no obligation or duty to the District save return of bid or proposal security, if any, if rejection is without cause. This paragraph does not pertain to rejection for cause by the Owner, or for the Contractor's failure to provide required bonds or insurance ~~Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

~~reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.~~

§ 2.2.3 ~~After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.~~

§ 2.2.4 ~~Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.~~

§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

§ 2.3.1 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

§ 2.3.2 The "Architect" is the person ~~Owner shall retain an architect~~ lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, ~~in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect~~ identified as such in the ~~Agreement~~Contract and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 2.3.3 If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor ~~to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and~~ whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect. Owner shall notify Contractor if successor architect has been employed by Owner. The term "Architect" means the Architect or the Architect's authorized representative.

§ 2.3.4 If requested to do so, in writing, by Contractor, prior to start of the Work, ~~T~~the Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. ~~The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.~~ The survey shall not relieve Contractor from its obligations to examine the site, or exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.3.5 Information or services reasonably necessary for the Work and under the Owner's control shall be furnished by the Owner with reasonable promptness where requested in writing by the Contractor. Under normal circumstances, fourteen (14) District Business days will be considered a reasonable time for Owner response. In any circumstance where information or services from the Owner, Program Manager or Architect is required, Contractor shall promptly notify in writing the Architect, with copy to the Program Manager, of the particular need. Absent such notification, any Claim based upon lack of such information or services shall be waived.~~The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services. Absent such timely notification, any Claim based upon lack of such information or services shall be waived.~~

§ 2.3.6 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Construction~~act~~ Documents, as provided for in the Project Manual, for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to fails to correct non-conforming or defective Work, fails to correct Work which is not in accordance with Contract Documents, or ~~correct defective Work, fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents or the Construction Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly~~ fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity~~, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3~~. The authorized Owner's representative having the legal right to stop the Work shall be limited to the Owner's Superintendent of Schools or designee.

§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of written notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. ~~Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and t~~The Architect ~~may~~shall, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's, Program Manager and other consultants' additional services, if any, made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, then the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, then the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

2.5.1 After the Work is complete the Owner may make emergency repairs to the Work if necessary to prevent further damage, or if the Contractor does not promptly respond to a notice of a condition requiring repairs. Contractor shall be responsible to Owner for this cost if the reason for the repairs is defects in Contractor's Work. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such costs, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

2.6 OWNER'S OCCUPANCY

Contractor agrees that the Owner may place and install as much equipment and furnishings during the progress of the building as is possible before completion of various parts of the Work, or may occupy portions of the Work before substantial completion of the entire Work, and further agrees that such placing and installing of equipment and furnishings or occupancy of portions of the Work shall not in any way evidence the substantial completion of the entire Work, or signify Owner's acceptance of the Work, nor does it affect claims for liquidated damages in case Substantial Completion is not achieved as required unless the failure to reach Substantial Completion is the result of the early move-in or occupancy. Owner will accept the responsibility for any damages to the Work caused by such occupancy.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

§ 3.1 General

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the ~~Agreement~~Contract and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. ~~The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract.~~ The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative, and includes the Construction Manager at Risk, if applicable.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect or Program Manager in the ~~Architect's~~ administration of the Contract, activities of the Owner (or Owner's Program Manager, if applicable), or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

3.1.4 The Contractor represents and warrants the following to the Owner (in addition to the other representations and warranties contained in the Contract Documents), as an inducement to the Owner to execute this Contract, which

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

representations and warranties shall survive the execution and delivery of the Contract and the Final Completion of the Work:

.1 that it is financially solvent, able to pay its debts as they mature, and possessed of sufficient working capital to complete the Work and perform its obligations under the Contract Documents;

.2 that it is able to furnish the tools, materials, supplies, equipment, and labor required to timely complete the Work and perform its obligation hereunder and has sufficient experience and competence to do so;

.3 that it is authorized to do business in the State where the Project is located and properly licensed by all necessary governmental, public, and quasi-public authorities having jurisdiction over it, the Work, or the site of the Project; and

.4 that the execution of the Contract and its performance thereof are within its duly-authorized powers.

§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

§ 3.2.1 ~~Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.~~ The Contractor represents and warrants by submission of a Proposal that he has carefully examined the Contract Documents, any soil test reports, drainage studies, geotechnical or other reports, and the site of the Work, and that, from his own investigations, he has satisfied himself as to the nature and location of the Work, the character, quality and quantity of surface and subsurface materials likely to be encountered, the character of equipment and other facilities needed for the performance of the Work, the general and local conditions and all other materials which may in any way affect the Work or its performance. Should the Contractor find discrepancies, omissions or conflicts within the Contract Documents, or be in doubt as to their meaning, the Contractor shall at once notify in writing the Architect and Owner, and Architect will issue a written addendum to all parties that is consistent with the Owner's Scope of the Work The Contractor shall not be entitled to any additional time or compensation for any additional work caused by the Contractor's fault, improper construction, or by Contractor's failure to carefully study and compare the Contract Documents to actual observable site conditions prior to execution of the Work.

§ 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Drawings and other Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are ~~not~~ for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; ~~however,~~ the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. ~~It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.~~ Contractor shall not perform any Work involving an error, inconsistency, or omission without further instructions to Contractor or revised Construction Documents from the Architect.

§ 3.2.3 Neither the Owner nor ~~T~~the Contractor is ~~not~~ required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

3.2.3.1 Any design errors or omissions noted by the Contractor during this review shall be reported promptly to the Architect, but it is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents

§ 3.2.4 If the Contractor has knowledge that any of the products or systems specified will perform in a manner that will limit the Contractor's ability to satisfactorily perform the Work or to honor his warranty, or will result in a limitation of or interference with the Owner's intended use, then the Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect and Owner in writing, providing substantiation for his position. Any necessary changes, including substitution of

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

materials, shall be accomplished by appropriate Modification. If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2, ~~or~~ 3.2.3, or 3.2.3.1, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2, ~~or~~ 3.2.3, or 3.2.3.1, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. Contractor shall take field measurements, verify field conditions, and shall carefully compare them to the Construction Documents. ~~If t~~The Contractor ~~performs those obligations, the Contractor~~ shall ~~not~~ be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities when the Contractor recognized or should have recognized such error, inconsistency, omissions or difference, and failed to report it to the Architect. Contractor shall not be entitled to additional compensation or additional Work caused by Contractor's failure to carefully study and compare the Construction Documents prior to the execution of the Work.

3.2.5 Prior to performing any Work, and only if applicable, Contractor shall locate all utility lines as shown and located on the plans and specifications, including the telephone company lines and cables, sewer lines, water pipes, gas lines, electrical lines, including, but not limited to, all buried pipelines and buried telephone cables, and shall perform any Work in such a manner so as to avoid damaging any such lines, cables, pipes, and pipelines. In addition, Contractor shall independently determine the location of same. Contractor shall be responsible for any damage done to such utility lines, cables, pipes, and pipelines during its Work, and shall be responsible for any loss, damage, or extra expense resulting from such damage. Repairs shall be made immediately to restore all service. Any delay for such break shall be attributable to Contractor. In addition, and only if applicable, Contractor shall review the appropriate AHERA and hazardous materials surveys for the particular campuses involved in the Project, and shall notify all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors of the necessity to review said surveys. Contractor shall perform any Work in such a manner as to avoid damaging, exposing, or dislodging any asbestos-containing materials that are clearly identified and located in AHERA and other hazardous material surveys. Before performing any portion of the Work, the Contractor shall fully investigate all physical aspects of the Project Site and verify all dimensions, measurements, property lines, grades and elevations, existing improvements, and general suitability of existing conditions at the Project site. If applicable, Contractor shall comply with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency rules concerning renovating, repairing, or painting work in schools built prior to 1978 involving lead-based paint.

3.2.6 The Owner shall be entitled to deduct from the Contract Sum, amounts paid to the Architect for the Architect to evaluate and respond to the Contractor's requests for information, where such information was available to the Contractor from a careful study and comparison of the Contract Documents, field conditions, Owner provided information, Contractor-prepared coordination drawings, or prior Project correspondence or documentation. If, in the reasonable opinion of the Architect, the Contractor does not make reasonable effort to comply with any of the above requirements of the Contract Documents, and this causes Architect or his Consultants to expend an unreasonable amount of time in the discharge of the duties imposed by the Contract Documents, then the Contractor shall bear the cost of compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such failure.

3.2.7 The Contractor shall arrange meetings prior to commencement of the Work of all major Subcontractors to allow the Subcontractors to demonstrate an understanding of the Construction and Contract Documents to the Architect and to allow the Subcontractors to ask for interpretations, when necessary. The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall be evaluated and satisfy themselves as to the conditions and limitations under which the Work is to be performed, including:

.1 The location, condition, layout, drainage, and nature of the Project site and surrounding areas;
.2 Generally prevailing climatic conditions;
.3 Anticipated labor supply and costs;
.4 Availability and cost of materials, tools, and equipment; and
.5 Other similar issues.

§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

§ 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely written notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects, in writing, to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

Contractor shall attend weekly, or as otherwise directed by Owner, job site progress meetings. Program Manager shall conduct such meetings; and, shall manage Architect's recording, transcribing and distributing minutes to attendees, Architect, and other appropriate parties

§ 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors. It is understood and agreed that the relationship of Contractor to Owner shall be that of an independent Contractor. Nothing contained herein or inferable here from shall be deemed or construed to (1) make Contractor the agent, servant or employee of the Owner, or (2) to create any partnership, joint venture, or other association between the Owner and Contractor. Any direction or instruction by Owner or any of its authorized representatives in respect to the Work shall relate to the results the Owner desires to obtain from the Work, and shall in no way affect Contractor's independent Contractor status described herein. As part of that responsibility, Contractor shall enforce the Owner's alcohol-free, drug-free, tobacco-free, harassment-free, and weapon-free policies and zones, which will require compliance with those policies and zones by Contractor's employees, subcontractors, and all other persons carrying out the Contract. Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, while on Owner's property to refrain from committing any criminal conduct, using tobacco products, possessing or drinking alcoholic beverages, possessing or using illegal drugs or controlled substances, carrying or possessing weapons, speaking profane and/or offensive language, or engaging in any inappropriate interactions of any nature whatsoever with students and employees, including talking, touching, staring or otherwise contributing to a hostile or offensive environment for Owner's students and employees. All areas of campus, other than the defined construction area, shall be off limits to Contractor's forces, unless their work assignment specifies otherwise. Contractor shall also require adequate and appropriate dress and identification of Contractor's employees, subcontractors, and all other persons carrying out the Work. Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, to wear identification tags on the front of their persons during all times that they are on Owner's property. Such identification tags shall contain a current photograph and the worker's full name in a typeface large enough to be seen from a reasonable distance. The Contractor shall further ensure that no on-site fraternization shall occur between personnel under the Contractor's and Subcontractor's direct or indirect supervision and Owner's students or employees and the general public. Failure of an individual to adhere to these standards of conduct shall result in the immediate removal of the offending employee from all construction on any of Owner's property. Repeated removal of Contractor's or Contractor's subcontractor's forces, or one serious infraction, shall constitute a substantial breach of the Contract justifying the immediate termination by Owner pursuant to Article 14. Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractor, to park their personal motor vehicles on Owner's property only in the parking places designated by the Owner's campus principal. Any vehicles not parked in the appropriate locations shall be towed at the vehicle owner's sole expense. Contractor shall follow, and shall require all employees, agents, or subcontractors to follow, the tree ordinance of the municipality in which the Project is located. In addition, if not covered by the municipal tree ordinance, Contractor shall barricade and protect all trees on the Project, which shall be included in the Cost of the Work. Contractor shall institute a theft deterrence program designed to restrict construction worker access to properties of Owner that are currently in use, to maintain supervision of Contractor's and Contractor's subcontractor's forces, and to reimburse the Owner or those persons suffering a theft loss which results from Contractor's forces or Contractor's subcontractor's forces' actions, omissions, or failure to secure the Work connecting or adjacent to property of Owner.

§ 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work. Contractor shall execute the Work in a good and workmanlike manner, continuously and diligently in accordance with generally accepted standards of construction practice for construction of projects similar to the Project, using qualified, careful and efficient workers and in conformity with the provisions of the Contract Documents.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.3.4 The Contractor shall properly and efficiently coordinate the timing, scheduling, and routing of all Work performed by all sub-contractors and sub-subcontractors.

3.3.5 To the extent that any portion of the Work requires a trench excavation exceeding five (5') feet in depth, in accordance with Texas Health and Safety Code § 756.023(a), Contractor shall fully comply, and shall require any applicable subcontractor to comply, with:

.1 The Occupational Safety and Health Administration standards for trench safety in effect for the Construction of the Work;
.2 The special shoring requirements, if any, of the Owner;
.3 Any geotechnical information obtained by Owner for use by the Contractor in the design of the trench safety system; and
.4 Trench excavation safety protection shall be a separate pay item, and shall be based on linear feet of trench excavated. Special shoring requirements shall also be a separate pay item, and shall be based on the square feet of shoring use.

3.3.6 The Contractor shall review Subcontractor safety programs, procedures, and precautions in connection with performance of the Work. However, the Contractor's duties shall not relieve any Subcontractor(s) or any other person or entity (e.g. a supplier), including any person or entity with whom the Contractor does not have a contractual relationship, of their responsibility or liability relative to compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations, and ordinances which shall include the litigation to provide for the safety of their employees, persons, and property and their requirements to maintain a work environment free of recognized hazards. The foregoing notwithstanding, the requirements of this Paragraph are not intended to impose upon the Contractor any additional obligations that the Contractor would not have under any applicable state or federal laws, including, but not limited to, any rules, regulations, or statutes pertaining to the Occupations Safety and Health Administration.

3.3.7 It is understood and agreed that the relationship of Contractor to Owner shall be that of an independent contractor. Nothing contained in this Contract or inferable from this Contract shall be deemed or construed to: 1) make Contractor the agent, servant or employee of the Owner; or 2) create any partnership, joint venture, or other association between Owner and Contractor. Any direction or instruction by Owner or any of its authorized representatives in respect of the Work, shall relate to the result the Owner desires to obtain from the Work, and shall in no way affect Contractor's independent contractor status. Pursuant to Texas Labor Code § 214.008, the Contractor and any subcontractor on the Project, shall properly classify, as an employee or an independent contractor, in accordance with Texas Labor Code Chapter 201, any individual the Contractor or subcontractor directly retains and compensates for services performed in connection with this Contract. Any Contractor or subcontractor who fails to properly classify such an individual, may be subject to penalties of Texas Labor Code § 214.008(c).

§ 3.4 Labor and Materials

§ 3.4.1 These Contract Documents shall not be construed to deny or diminish the right of any person to work because of the person's membership or other relationship status with respect to any organization. Texas Government Code § 2269.054. These Contract Documents shall also not prohibit, require, discourage or encourage a person, or discriminate against a person bidding on this contract from entering into or declining to enter into, or adhering to, an agreement with a collective bargaining organization relating to this Project. Texas Government Code § 2269.0541. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for qualified, careful, and efficient workers and labor, eligible to work in accordance with state and federal law. Contractor shall appropriately classify all workers in accordance with the Fair Labor Standards Act, its implementing regulations, and Texas Labor Code § 214.008. In addition, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work. Before ordering any material or doing any Work, Contractor shall verify all dimensions and check all conditions in order to assure Contractor that they are the same as those in Drawings, Specifications, and other Construction Documents. Any inconsistency shall be brought to the attention of the Architect. In the event that discrepancies occur between ordered material and actual conditions and Architect was not notified beforehand, then costs to correct such discrepancies shall be borne by Contractor.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the prior written consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and Program Manager ~~and~~ in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

3.4.2.1 After evaluation by the Architect, substitutions and alternates may be rejected by the Architect or Program Manager without explanation and will be considered only under one or more of the following conditions: (i) the proposal is required for compliance with interpretation of code requirements or insurance regulations then existing; (ii) specified products are unavailable through no fault of the Contractor; (iii) and when, in the judgment of the Architect, a substitution would be substantially in the Owner's best interests, in terms of cost, time, or other considerations.

3.4.2.2 The Contractor must submit to the Architect: (i) a full explanation of the proposed substitution and submittals of all supporting data, including technical information, catalog cuts, warranties, test results, installation instructions, operating procedures, and other like information necessary for a complete evaluation for the substitution: (ii) a written explanation of the reasons the substitution should be considered, including the benefits to the Owner and the Work in the event the substitution is acceptable; (iii) the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; (iv) the adjustment, if any, in the time of completion of the Contract and the construction schedule; and (v) an affidavit stating (a) the proposed substitution conforms to and meets all requirements of the pertinent Specifications and the requirements shown on the Drawings, and (b) the Contractor accepts the warranty and will coordinate the Work to be complete in all respects, as if originally specified by the Architect. Proposals for substitution shall be submitted in writing to the Architect in sufficient time to allow the Architect no less than fifteen (15) working days for review. No substitutions will be considered or allowed without the Contractor's submittals of complete substantiating data and information.

3.4.2.3 Whether or not the Architect accepts any proposed substitution, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for any fees charged by the Architect or other consultants for evaluating each proposed substitution.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them. THE CONTRACTOR RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS HARMLESS THE OWNER FOR CONTRACTOR'S FORCES' NON-COMPLIANCE WITH OWNER'S DRUG-FREE, ALCOHOL-FREE, WEAPON-FREE, HARASSMENT-FREE, AND TOBACCO-FREE ZONES, CONTRACTOR'S FORCES' NON-COMPLIANCE WITH CRIMINAL LAW, OR CONTRACTOR'S OR CONTRACTOR'S FORCES' NON-COMPLIANCE WITH IMMIGRATION LAW OR REGULATIONS. Any individual found by Owner to have violated these restrictions is subject to permanent removal from the Project, at the Owner's request. Contractor shall place similar language in its subcontract agreements, requiring the Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors to be responsible for their own forces, and Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner to ensure Subcontractor and Sub-subcontractor compliance.

3.4.4 Including, but not limited to, the specific requirement of Article 10, Contractor, its subcontractors and vendors shall bear responsibility for compliance with all federal, state, and local laws, regulations, guidelines, and ordinances pertaining to work safety and applicable to the Work. Contractor further recognizes that the Owner and Architect do not owe the Contractor any duty to supervise or direct his work so as to protect the Contractor from the consequences of his own conduct.

3.4.5 Pursuant to Texas Education Code § 44.034, Contractor must give advance written notice to the Owner if the Contractor or an owner or operator of the Contractor has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. The Owner may terminate this Contract if the Owner determines that the Contractor failed to give such notice or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. This paragraph requiring advance notice does not apply to a publicly-held corporation.

3.4.6 CRIMINAL HISTORY CHECKS

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.4.6.1 So that Owner can obtain the national criminal history record information required by Texas Education Code Section 22.08341 on all "covered employees" (as defined in Section 3.4.6.3) of Contractor, its subcontractors, or any subcontracting entities who will perform the Work, Contractor shall submit to Owner the name and all necessary identifying information necessary to enable Owner to obtain the national criminal history information on those covered employees before they begin the Work. Contractor's submission will include the employee's written authorization for Owner to obtain such criminal history information. Owner may, in its sole discretion, prohibit the use of any employee to perform the Work after its review of the criminal history information, but cannot disclose the criminal history information to Contractor. Contractor shall reimburse Owner for Owner's costs incurred in obtaining the criminal history information. Contractor's violation of this section shall constitute a substantial failure under Article 14.

3.4.6.2 Contractor will not assign any "covered employee" with a "disqualifying criminal history," as those terms are defined below, to work on the Project. If Contractor receives information that a covered employee has a reported disqualifying criminal history, then Contractor will immediately remove the covered employee from the Project and notify the Owner in writing within three (3) business days. If the Owner objects to the assignment of any covered employee on the basis of the covered employee's criminal history record information, then Contractor agrees to discontinue using that covered employee to provide services on Owner's Project. If Contractor has taken precautions or imposed conditions to ensure that the employees of Contractor and any subcontractor will not become covered employees, Contractor will ensure that these precautions or conditions continue throughout the time the contracted services are provided.

3.4.6.3 For the purposes of this Section, "covered employees" means employees, agents, or applicants of Contractor who has or will have continuing duties related to the services to be performed on Owner's Project and has or will have direct contact with Owner's students. The Owner will decide what constitutes direct contact with Owner's students. "Disqualifying criminal history" means: any conviction or other criminal history information designated by the Owner; any felony or misdemeanor conviction that would disqualify a person from obtaining educator certification under Texas Education Code § 21.060, and 19 Texas Administrative Code § 249.16; or one of the following offenses, if at the time of the offense, the victim was under 18 years of age or enrolled in a public school; a felony offense under Texas Penal Code Title 5 Offense Against Persons; an offense for which a defendant is required to register as a sex offender under Texas Code of Criminal Procedure Chapter 62; or an equivalent offense under federal law or the laws of another state.

3.4.7 OWNER'S ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS RELATED TO CRIMINAL HISTORIES

In addition, as provided in Section 3.4.6.1 above, Owner or Contractor will at least annually obtain criminal history record information that relates to any employee, agent, or applicant of the Contractor, if the person has or will have duties related to the Project, and the duties are or will be performed on Owner's Project, or at another location where students are likely to be present. Contractor shall assume all expenses associated with the background checks and shall immediately remove any employee, agent, or subcontractor who was convicted of a felony or a misdemeanor involving moral turpitude from Owner's property, or other location where students are likely to be present. Owner shall determine what constitutes "moral turpitude" or a "location where students are likely to be present."

3.4.7.1 If the Contractor is the person or owner or operator of the business entity, that individual may not self-certify regarding the criminal history record information and its review, and must submit original evidence acceptable to the Owner with this ~~Agreement~~Contract showing compliance

3.4.8 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

3.4.8.1 Contractor, Contractor's Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors shall pay all workers not less than the general prevailing rate of per diem wages for work of a similar character where the project is located as detailed in the "Minimum Wage Schedule" attached to this Contract. Wages listed are minimum rates only. However, no claims for additional compensation above the Contract Sum shall be considered by the Owner because of payments of wage rates in excess of the applicable rate provided herein. Texas Government Code § 2258.001 *et seq*.

3.4.8.2 Contractor shall forfeit, as a penalty to the Owner, $60 for each laborer, worker, or mechanic, employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates stipulated in the Contract Documents.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.4.8.3 Owner reserves the right to receive and review payroll records, payment records, and earning statements of employees of Contractor, and of Contractor's Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors.

3.4.8.4 In executing the Work under the Contract Documents, Contractor shall comply with all applicable state and federal laws, including but not limited to, laws concerned with labor, equal employment opportunity, safety and minimum wages.

3.4.8.5 If no schedule is attached to the Contract, Contractor shall use the wage rates contained in the Project Manual for the Project. If no wage rates are in the Project Manual, then the parties shall use the wage rate determined by the U.S. Department of Labor in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act, 40 U.S.C. § 276a, (which can be accessed on the internet at https://www.wdol.gov/or https://beta.sam.gov/) effective as of the date of this Contract.

§ 3.5 Warranty

§ 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require, ~~or permit~~ and that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents.~~permit~~. The Contractor further warrants that Contractor shall perform the Work in a good and workmanlike manner, continuously and diligently in accordance with generally accepted standards of construction practice for construction of projects similar to the Project, except to the extent the Contract Documents expressly specify a higher degree of finish or workmanship, in which case the standard shall be the higher standard. All material shall be installed in a true and straight alignment, level and plumb; patterns shall be uniform; and jointing of materials shall be flush and level, unless otherwise directed in writing by the Architect. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance (unless such maintenance is Contractor's responsibility), improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage, but such exclusions shall only apply after Owner has taken occupancy of the damaged or defective portion of the Project. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment. Notwithstanding anything in the Contract Documents to the contrary, Owner and Contractor expressly agree that the warranties stated herein shall mean the individual warranties associated with each particular Work within the Project, and each such individual warranty shall run from the applicable Work's Final Completion date (unless otherwise expressly provided in the applicable Contract Documents for that particular Work.) Contractor's express warranty is in addition to, and not in lieu of, Owner's other available remedies. All required warranties on equipment, machinery, materials, or components shall be submitted to the Architect on the manufacturer's or supplier's approved forms for delivery to the Owner. The warranties set out in this Subparagraph are not exclusive of any other warranties or guarantees set out in other places in the Contract Documents or expressed or implied under applicable law.

§ 3.5.2 ~~All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4~~Contractor shall certify that the ~~Project~~Work has been constructed in general conformance with the Architect's or Engineer's plans, specifications, and Construction Documents, as modified from time to time pursuant to the terms of the Contract Documents. Contractor shall fully complete a "Certification of Project Completion" as required by 19 Texas Administrative Code § 61.1040~~36~~.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.5.3 In the event of failure of materials, products, or workmanship, either during construction or the warranty period, the Contractor shall take appropriate measures to ensure correction of defective Work or replacement of the defective items, without cost to the Owner. Such warranty shall be maintained notwithstanding that certain systems may be activated prior to Substantial Completion as required for the satisfactory completion of the Project. Upon written notice from the Owner or Architect, the Contractor shall promptly remedy defects as covered by Contractor's warranty. If Contractor does not respond to the written notice, either by beginning corrective work or notifying Owner in writing regarding when corrective work will begin, within ten (10) days of Contractor's receipt of the written notice, then the Owner may take measures to correct the Work and Contractor will be obligated to reimburse Owner's costs. The provisions of this subparagraph shall be in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other rights and remedies available to the Owner.

3.5.3.1 All required warranties on equipment, machinery, materials, or components shall be submitted to the Architect on the manufacturer's or supplier's approved forms at the time of Substantial Completion

3.5.4 When deemed necessary by the Owner and prior to installation of any item specifically made subject to a performance standard or regulatory agency standard under any provision of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall furnish proof of conformance to the Architect. Proof of conformance shall be in the form of:

.1 an affidavit from the manufacturer certifying that the item is in conformance with the applicable standards; or

.2 an affidavit from a testing laboratory certifying that the product has been tested within the past year and is in conformance with the applicable standards; or

.3 such further reasonable proof as is required by the Architect.

3.5.5 The Contractor agrees to issue the warranty (or warranties) in the name of the Owner, or assign the warranty (or warranties) to the Owner at Final Completion of the Work, such assignment to be effective no later than Final Completion, for any and all material, equipment, fixtures, and furniture (if supplied or installed by Contractor or its subcontractor), or other special warranties, and manufacturers' warranties relating to materials and labor used in the Work. Contractor further agrees to perform the Work in such manner so as to preserve any and all manufacturer's warranties. All forms will be required to be submitted prior to Final Payment.

3.5.6 The warranties of Contractor provided in Section 3.5 shall in no way limit or abridge the warranties of the suppliers of equipment and systems which are to comprise a portion of the Work and all such warranties shall be in form and substance as required by the Contract Documents. Contractor shall take no action or fail to act in any way which results in the termination or expiration of such third party warranties or which otherwise results in prejudice to the rights of Owner under such warranties. Contractor agrees to provide all notices required for the effectiveness of such warranties and shall include provisions in the contracts with the providers and manufacturers of such systems and equipment whereby Owner shall have a direct right, but not a duty, of enforcement of such warranty obligations.

3.5.7 Contractor shall maintain a complete and accurate schedule of the date(s) of Substantial Completion, the date(s) of Final Completion, and the dates upon which the warranty under Section 12.2 herein on each phase or building will expire. Contractor shall provide a copy of such schedules to Owner and Architect. Prior to termination of the warranty period under Section 12.2 herein, Contractor shall accompany Owner and Architect on re-inspection of each Work in the Project and Contractor shall be responsible from correcting any warranty items which are observed or reported during the warranty period under Section 12.2 herein. Contractor shall prosecute such warranty work under Section 12.2 herein without interruption until accepted by Owner and Architect, even though such work shall extend beyond the warranty period under Section 12.2 herein. If Contractor fails to provide the schedules to Owner and Architect, Contractor's warranty obligation described herein shall continue until such inspection is conducted and deficiencies are corrected.

3.5.8 Prior to receipt of Final Payment, Contractor shall:

.1 Obtain duplicate original warranties, executed by all subcontractors, making the dates of beginning of the warranties the Date of Final Completion; and the warranties of suppliers and manufacturers, making the dates of beginning of the warranties no later than the Date of Final Completion;

.2 Verify that the documents are in proper form and contain full information;

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

.3 Co-sign warranties when required;

.4 Bind all warranties in commercial quality 8-1/2 X 11 inch three-ring binder, with hardback, cleanable, plastic covers;

.5 Label the cover of each binder with a typed or printed title labeled "WARRANTIES", along with the title of the Project, name, address, and telephone number of Contactor, and name of its responsible principal;

.6 Include a Table of Contents, with each item identified by the number and title of the specification section under which the product is specified;

.7 Separate each warranty with index tab sheets keyed to the Table of Contents listing; and

.8 Deliver warranties and bonds in the form described above, to the Architect who will review same prior to submission to the Owner.

3.5.8.1 Contractor and Owner acknowledge that the Project may involve construction work on more than one school building for the Owner. Each building, or approved phase of each building, shall have its own, separate, and independent date of substantial completion, dates upon which the one-year warranty on each phase or building, which is substantially complete, will expire, and dates of final completion. Contractor agrees to provide notice of the warranty expiration date to Owner and Architect at least one month prior to the expiration of the one (1) year warranty period on each building or each phase of the building that has been substantially completed. If Owner, Architect or Program Manager discovers during the warranty period, deficiencies not previously reported, Contractor shall accompany the Owner, Architect and Program Manager on an inspection of such deficiencies and Contractor shall be responsible for correcting any such deficiencies not caused by the Owner or the use of the building. For extended warranties required by various sections, i.e., roofing, compressors, mechanical equipment, Owner will notify the Contractor of deficiencies and Contractor shall start remedying these defects within fifteen (15 days of initial notification from Owner. Contractor shall prosecute the work without interruption until accepted by the Owner and the Architect, even though such prosecution should extend beyond the limit of the warranty period. If Contractor fails to provide notice of the expiration of the one (1) year warranty period at least one month prior to the expiration date, Contractor's warranty obligation described in this paragraph shall continue until such inspection is conducted and any deficiencies found in the inspection corrected Contractor shall certify that the Work has been constructed in accordance with the Contract Documents. Any work performed by the Contractor that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents is defective and a breach of this agreement unless the Owner has agreed in writing to waive the defect. The Contractor shall provide all reasonable assistance in achieving compliance with building code specifications, accessibility standards, and Texas Education Agency Commissioner's rules in the Work.

§ 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect. Owner is an exempt entity under the tax laws of the State of Texas. Texas Tax Code § 151.309; 34 TAC § 3.322. The Owner represents that this Project is eligible for exemption from the State Sales Tax on tangible personal property and material incorporated in the Project, provided that the Contractor fulfills the requirements of the Texas Tax Code § 151.309; § 151.310; § 151.311, and 34 TAC § 3.291 and § 3.287. For the purpose of establishing exemptions, it is understood and agreed that the Contractor may be required to segregate materials and labor costs at the time a Contract is awarded. Contractor will accept a Certificate of Exemption from the Owner, pursuant to Texas Tax Code § 151.054(e), § 151.155, and 34 TAC § 3.287. Contractor shall obtain Certificates of Resale from Contractor's suppliers. Texas Tax Code § 151.154; 34 TAC § 3.285. Failure of Contractor or any Sub-Contractor to obtain Certificates of Resale from their suppliers shall make the Contractor or Sub-Contractor responsible for absorbing the tax without compensation from Owner. Contractor shall pay all necessary local, county, and state taxes, income tax, compensation tax, social security, and withholding payments, as required by law. CONTRACTOR HEREBY RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES, AND HOLDS HARMLESS OWNER FROM ANY AND ALL CLAIMS AND DEMANDS MADE AS A RESULT OF THE FAILURE OF CONTRACTOR OR ANY SUBCONTRACTOR TO COMPLY WITH THE PROVISIONS OF ANY OR ALL SUCH LAWS AND REGULATIONS.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.6.2 ~~1~~ The Dallas Independent School District is an exempt organization as defined by the Limited Sales and Excise Use Tax Act of Texas. The Contractor may issue an exemption certificate in lieu of sales tax on the purchase, rental or lease of all materials, supplies, equipment used or consumed and other tangible personal property incorporated into the property being improved by virtue of this Contract, as well as all materials, supplies, equipment and other tangible personal property used or consumed by the Contractor in performing this Contract with the Dallas Independent School District. The Contractor may issue exemption certificate(s) to its suppliers in lieu of said sales tax for all of said materials and supplies. The uses of said materials and supplies for which an exemption from the said sales tax is claimed and any such exemption certificate(s), shall comply with the applicable rulings of the State Comptroller.

3.6.3 ~~2~~ The Contractor shall be held to have studied all tax laws for the State of Texas, the County of Dallas, Texas and the City of Dallas, Texas, and shall pay all taxes for which he may be liable as a consumer or user of goods, or otherwise without addition to the contract price. The Contractor shall pay all sales, consumer, use and other similar taxes required by law.

3.6.4 ~~3~~ Title to all goods or materials purchased under a~~s~~ resale certificate shall vest in the District at the time of initial possession by the Program Manager and shall be used only in performance of Services under this ~~Agreement~~Contract. Program Manager shall cause such items to promptly be marked, labeled or otherwise physically identified as the District's property. Program Manager shall cause items purchased under a resale certificate to send the receiving ticket to the District to be added to inventory before use by the Program Manager. Any tangible personal property purchased under a resale certificate as described above not fully used up in the Services shall remain with the District

§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

§ 3.7.1 ~~Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded~~After Architect has filed the plans and specifications with the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation, Architect shall notify Contractor that Contractor may make and submit the applications for the building permit. The ~~Owner~~Contractor shall pay the municipality directly for the building permit and all other development "impact" fees, if any. The Contractor shall continue to be responsible for payment of other permits, governmental fees, licenses and inspections necessary for proper execution of the Contract and which are legally required when bids or proposals are received. Such fees and expenses shall only be reimbursable to Contractor if expressly agreed to herein.

Architect shall assist Contractor in obtaining an Occupancy Permit by accompanying governing officials during inspections, including the architectural barrier inspection and correction, of the Project, if requested to do so by the Program Manager or the Owner. Architect shall assist the Contractor in obtaining the Certificate of Occupancy prior to the issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

3.7.1.1 The Owner shall pay directly to the governing authority the cost of all permanent property utility assessments and similar connection charges.

3.7.1.2 The Contractor shall pay directly all temporary utility charges, tap charges, and water meter charges, without reimbursement from Owner. After consultation with the Owner, the Contractor shall also obtain all permits and approvals, and pay all fees and expenses, if any, associated with National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) regulations administered by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and local authorities, if applicable, that require completion of documentation and/or acquisition of a "Land Disturbing Activities Permit" for the Project. Also after consultation with the Owner, the Contractor shall obtain all permits and approvals, and pay all fees and expenses, if any, associated with Storm Water Pollution Prevention and Pollution Control Plan (SWPPP) regulations administered by the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and local authorities. Contractor's obligations under this Section may or may not require it to obtain or perform engineering services during the pre-construction phase to prepare proper drainage for the construction sites. Any drainage alterations made by Contractor during the construction process, which require the issuance of a permit, shall be at Contractor's sole cost. Reimbursable expenses shall not include any fines or penalties assessed against the Contractor, Contractor's subcontractors, the Project, or the Owner.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work. In addition, Contractor shall authorize posting of any notices required of Owner pursuant to Texas Business and Commerce Code, Section 116.0001, or any notices concerning the Workers Compensation insurance carried by other parties involved in the Project, including without limitation, Architect, at the same location where Contractor posts notices regarding Workers Compensation. If applicable, the Contractor shall procure and obtain all bonds required of the Owner or the Contractor by the municipality in which the Project is located or by any other public or private body with jurisdiction over the Project. In connection with such bonds, the Contractor shall prepare all applications, supply all necessary back-up material, and furnish the surety with any required personal undertakings. The Contractor shall also obtain and pay all charges for all approvals for street closings, traffic control, parking meter removal, and other similar matters as may be necessary or appropriate from time to time for the performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work when Contractor knows~~ing~~ or reasonably should have known it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, the Contract Documents, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

§ 3.7.4 [*Intentionally deleted*] ~~Concealed or Unknown Conditions~~

~~If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than three 14(3) business days after first observance of the conditions. Contractor agrees that this is a reasonable notice requirement. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially, report findings and a recommended resolution in writing to Owner and Contractor. If Owner's Board of Trustees and Contractor cannot agree on an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time, then either party may pursue alternative dispute resolution as provided for in Article 15, within ninety (90) days of the Architect's recommendation. If such conditions will cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, the Architect will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.~~

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect in writing. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

3.7.6 The Contractor shall be responsible for timely notification to and coordination with all utility companies regarding the provision of services to the Project. The Contractor shall inform the Architect and Program ~~at~~Manager at once when the Owner's participation is required, and the Architect shall immediately notify the Owner. Connections for temporary and permanent utilities and payment for temporary utilities services required for the Work, whether the Work is new construction or renovation of an existing facility, are the responsibility of the Contractor unless otherwise agreed. If the Work is new construction, the payment for temporary and/or permanent utility services shall be the responsibility of the Contractor until Substantial Completion.

3.7.6.1 The Owner shall pay directly to the relevant jurisdiction those fees presently called "Storm Water Disposal Fees" to the water and sewage departments. Contractor shall ascertain amounts and advise Architect. Water meter charges shall be paid by the Contractor

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 3.8 Allowances

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, unless required to do so by the terms of the Construction Documents.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- **.1** allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site ~~and all required taxes~~, less applicable trade discounts;
- **.2** Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, bonds, insurance, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- **.3** whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum or the Owner's Contingency, at Owner's discretion, unless required to do so by the terms of the Construction Documents, shall be adjusted accordingly ~~by Change Order~~. The amount of the adjustment~~Change Order~~ shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

§ 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner ~~with reasonable promptness~~ , to avoid delay in the Work, provided that if a decision is needed to avoid delay, Contractor shall notify Architect and Program Manager in writing sufficiently in advance of needed date to allow reasonable time for selections to be made

3.8.4 When performing Work under allowances, Contractor shall solicit and receive not less than three (3) written proposals and shall provide the Work as directed by the Architect, upon Owner's written approval, on the basis of the best value to the District.

§ 3.9 Superintendent

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. In addition, the Contractor may employ a project manager and necessary assistants who may supervise several Project sites. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor. Important communication shall be similarly confirmed in writing. Other communications shall be similarly confirmed on written request in each case. Questions about plan interpretation or directions shall be submitted to the Architect in the form of a written request for information and the Architect shall respond to such request for information in a reasonable and timely fashion. Contractor's selection of project manager or superintendent(s) shall be approved by Owner, and Contractor shall not replace the project manager or superintendent(s) without Owner's consent or until a replacement project manager or superintendent(s) has been selected in accordance with this Section. The Owner may reject or require removal of any job superintendent, project manager, or employee of the Contractor, Subcontractor, or Sub-Subcontractor involved in the Project. Contractor shall provide an adequate staff for the proper coordination and expedition of the Work. Owner reserves the right to require Contractor to dismiss from the Work any employee or employees that Owner may deem incompetent, careless, insubordinate, or in violation of any provision in these Contract Documents. This provision is applicable to Subcontractor, Sub-Subcontractor, and their employees.

§ 3.9.2 ~~The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.~~

§ 3.9.3 ~~The~~ Contractor's superintendent shall be present full-time on the site as soon as possible after commencement of the Work, and shall remain~~ed~~ assigned to this Work and present on the site during performance of the Work, throughout the course of the Work, until items requiring completion or correction, identified at Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8, have been completed or corrected. From Substantial Completion until Final Completion, the superintendent shall be on the site as necessary to ensure that Final Completion occurs within 30 days of Substantial Completion~~not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed~~.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.9.4 Owner shall be notified not less than 24 hours before any time that superintendent will not be present at the site for any reason except periodic illness. If the reason is due to illness, then Owner shall be notified at the beginning of that day. Owner shall be notified of the identity of the acting superintendent. In the event the superintendent is absent from the site and notice has not been provided nor has an acting superintendent been assigned to the Work, then an amount equal to the superintendent's daily rate shall be deducted for the amount owed to the Contractor under general conditions for such day.

§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

§ 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall prepare for and submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project. The schedule shall not interfere with the operation of Owner's existing facilities and operations without Owner's prior written approval.

3.10.1.2 In the event that the Contractor is entitled to an extension of the Substantial Completion Date or any required interim completion date under the Contract Documents, Owner shall be entitled to direct the acceleration or re-sequencing of the Work in order to achieve the prior scheduled Substantial Completion Date or interim completion dates, and Contractor shall be reimbursed for the amount of the premium portion of overtime actually incurred in respect thereto and shall be entitled to an increase adjustment to the Contract Sum to the extent of the premium portion of overtime so incurred. Before proceeding with any such Owner-directed acceleration plan under this subparagraph, the Contractor shall have received the Owner's prior written approval of the plan and its anticipated not-to-exceed cost.

§ 3.10.2 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall prepare and submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect and Program Manager reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

§ 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in ~~general~~ accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

3.10.4 The Contractor shall hold weekly progress meetings at the Project Site, or at such other time and frequency as are acceptable to the Owner. Program Manager shall conduct such meetings; and, shall manage Architect's recording, transcribing and distributing minutes to attendees, Architect, and other appropriate parties. Progress of the Work shall be reported at said meeting with reference to Contractor's construction schedule. The Contractor shall submit to the Architect, with each monthly application for payment, a copy of the progress schedule showing all modifications required, and shall take whatever corrective action is necessary to assure that the project completion schedule is met at no additional cost to Owner, except as allowed herein. In the event that Contractor shall fall behind schedule at any time, Contractor shall develop and deliver a recovery plan to the Owner with a recovery schedule and a program describing the additional manpower, overtime, material expediting, resequencing of the Work, and other steps Contractor shall take to meet the requirements of the Contract. Contractor shall not be entitled to compensation from the Owner or any increase in the Contract Sum for the schedule recovery efforts. No approval or consent by the Owner of any plan for resequencing or acceleration of the Work submitted by Contractor shall constitute a waiver by Owner of any damages or losses which Owner may suffer by reason of such resequencing or the failure of Contractor to meet the Substantial Completion Date or the Final Completion Date.

3.10.5 The process of approving Contractor's schedules and updates to Contractor's schedule shall not constitute a warranty by the Owner that any non-Contractor milestones or activities will occur as set out on Contractor's schedule. Approval of a Contractor's schedule does not constitute a commitment by the Owner to furnish any Owner-furnished information or material any earlier than Owner would otherwise be obligated to furnish that information or material under the Contract Documents. Failure of the Work to proceed in the sequence scheduled by

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Contractor shall not alone serve as the basis for a Claim for additional compensation or time. In the event there is interference with the Work, which is beyond its control, Contractor shall attempt to reschedule the Work in a manner that will hold resulting additional time and costs to a minimum. The construction schedule shall be in a detailed format satisfactory to the Owner, the Architect and Program Manager. If not accepted, the construction schedule shall be promptly revised by the Contractor in accordance with the recommendations of the Owner, Program Manager and Architect and re-submitted for acceptance. The Contractor shall monitor the progress of the Work for conformance with the requirements of the construction schedule and shall promptly advise the Owner of any delays or potential delays. The accepted construction schedule shall be updated to reflect actual conditions (sometimes referred to in these Supplementary Conditions as progress reports) as set forth in Subparagraph 3.10.1 or if requested by either the Owner or the Architect.

3.10.6 The Owner shall have the right to reschedule the time of day for the performance of any part of the Work that may interfere with the operation of the Owner's premises or any tenants or invitees thereof. The Contractor shall, upon the Owner's request, reschedule any portion of the Work affecting operation of the premises during hours when the premises are not in operation. Any rescheduling of performance of the Work under this Subparagraph 3.10.6 may be grounds for an extension of the Contract Time, if permitted under Subparagraph 8.3.1, and an equitable adjustment in the Contract Sum, if: 1) the performance of the Work was properly scheduled by the Contractor in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, 2) such rescheduling is required for the convenience of the Owner and is not attributable to any act or omission of Contractor.

3.10.7 The Owner's need for delivery of completed work, or portions thereof, is largely controlled by the necessities of the school calendar and operations of school programs within that calendar. These needs are reflected in any scheduled completion dates and milestone dates set out in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall perform the work in such a way as to not interfere with school operations, the importance of meeting milestones and completion dates, and Contractor acknowledges and agrees that if these dates are not met, there may be a relaxation in the needed delivery dates because of the school calendar. When it appears to Owner or Contractor that a Contract milestone or completion date cannot be met for reasons not the fault of the Contractor, Contractor will develop with the Owner, Program Manager and Architect a plan and a budget under the Change Order provision of the Contract Documents to meet such a situation either (at Owner's option) by accelerating the Work to overcome the delays, or suspending or otherwise slowing the Work to efficiently take advantage of any relaxation in Owner's need for the completed Work.

§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

The Contractor shall maintain and make available, at all times, at the Project site, the Construction~~act~~ Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, field test records (including environmental inspection and test records), inspection certificates or records, manufacturers' certificates, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner at all times, and delivered to the Architect for completion of record drawings.

3.11.2 In addition to any other requirement in the Contract Documents and prior to installation, Contractor shall furnish or cause a subcontractor to furnish for the Owner's and Architect's written approval, a physical sample of each specified item, product, fixture, or device which is visible by the general public and/or attached to an architecturally-finished surface. Samples shall be suitably labeled, adequately protected, and properly stored at the site. Samples which are approved and undamaged will be considered to be suitable for incorporation into the Work.

§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples

§ 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.3 Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. The purpose of their submittal is to demonstrate for those portions of the Work for which submittals are required by the Contract Documents and ~~Their purpose is to demonstrate~~ how the Contractor proposes to conform to the ~~information given and the design concept expressed in the~~ Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

§ 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents~~, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule~~, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

§ 3.12.6 By approving and submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents ~~to the Owner and Architect~~ that the Contractor has ~~(1) reviewed and approved them, (2)~~ determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and ~~(3)~~ checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents. Specific dimensions, quantities, installation and performance of equipment and systems in compliance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents remain the Contractor's responsibility.

§ 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

§ 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

§ 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such written notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

§ 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

§ 3.12.10.1 If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. ~~The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents.~~ The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, completeness, and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals~~, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy~~. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. A registered architect must prepare

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

plans and specifications for all the Work, as governed by the Texas Occupations Code Chapter 1051; and a registered engineer must prepare plans, specifications, and estimates for all Work governed by Texas Occupations Code Chapter 1001. In the event that Contractor retains a licensed design professional under the terms of this paragraph, Contractor shall require that the licensed design professional carry commercial general liability and errors and omissions insurance coverage in the same amounts and forms as required by the Architect on this Project. In the event that the licensed design professional retained by the Contractor will be conducting on-site services or observations, the licensed design professional shall also carry worker's compensation insurance and comprehensive automobile liability in the same amounts and form as required of the Architect to this Project.

§ 3.12.10.2 If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

3.12.11 The Contractor shall submit complete drawings, data, and samples to the Architect at least fifteen (15) days prior to the date the Contractor needs the reviewed submittals and samples returned. The Contractor shall be prepared to submit color samples on any key items (such as quarry tile, vinyl wall covering, etc.) within fifteen (15) days of the award of Subcontract(s). All color samples required for the Work shall be received within sixty (60) days of the date of the approval of the Contract Sum, if the Project is an A101 project; or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is an A133 project. Once samples of all key items are received, the Architect will finalize color selections.

3.12.12 The Contractor shall submit the number of copies of product data and samples which the Contractor and subcontractors need for their use, plus two (2) additional sets for the Architect, one (1) additional set for the Owner, and one (1) additional set for each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular section of Work. Where shop drawings are involved, the Contractor shall submit one (1) high quality reproducible transparency, and one (1) opaque print of the shop drawing for the Architect, plus one (1) additional opaque print for each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular section of Work. The reproducible transparency will be marked by the Architect and/or his consultants. After final review and correction of the submittal, the Contractor shall send one corrected set to the Architect and each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular section of the Work.

3.12.13 The Architect's review of Contractor's submittals shall be limited to examination of an initial submittal and one (1) re-submittal. The Architect's review of additional submittals will be made only with the consent of the Owner after notification by the Architect. The Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor of amounts paid to the Architect for evaluation of such additional re-submittals.

3.1.2.14 The Contractor represents and warrants that all shop drawings shall be prepared by persons and entities possessing expertise and experience in the trade for which the shop drawings are prepared and, if required by the Architect or applicable law, by a licensed engineer.

§ 3.13 Use of Site

3.13.1 The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment. When the Work is to be performed at an existing school location, Contractor shall schedule and perform the Work in a manner that does not compromise the safety to school students, faculty and staff, and does not unreasonably disrupt or interfere with the continuing normal routine of the school. If a School Operations Parameters Statement is a part of the Contract Documents, Contractor will comply with its terms, at no increase in price.

3.13.2 Only materials and equipment which are to be used directly in the Work shall be brought to and stored on the Project site by the Contractor. After equipment is no longer required for the Work, it shall be properly removed from the Project site. Protection of construction material and equipment stored at the Project site from weather, theft, damage, and all other adversity is solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

3.13.3 The Contractor and its subcontractor shall not erect any sign on the Project site without the prior written consent of the Owner.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.13.4 Contractor shall ensure that the Work, at all times, is performed in a manner that affords Owner reasonable access, both vehicular and pedestrian, to the site of the Work and all adjacent areas. The Work shall be performed in such a manner that the public area adjacent to the Site of the Work shall be free from all debris, building material, and equipment likely to cause hazardous conditions. Without limitation of any other provision of the Construction Documents, Contractor shall use its best efforts to minimize any interference with the occupancy or beneficial use of any area or building adjacent to the site of the Work, or the building, in the event of partial occupancy.

3.13.5 Without prior approval of the Owner, the Contractor shall not permit any workers to use any existing facilities at the Project site, including, without limitation, lavatories, toilets, entrance and parking areas other than those designated by the Owner. The Contractor shall comply with all rules and regulations promulgated by the Owner in connection with the use and occupancy of the Project site and the Building.

§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly provided, however, that any such cutting, fitting, or patching can only be performed if the cutting, fitting, or patching results in Work that is in accordance with the Construction Documents and Contract Documents. ~~All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.~~

§ 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

3.14.3 No cutting of structural elements will be permitted unless specifically approved in writing by Architect. Fitting and patching shall only be done with new products, and shall only be performed by those skilled in performing the original Work.

§ 3.15 Cleaning Up

§ 3.15.1 The Contractor shall, on a daily basis, keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. Contractor shall provide on-site containers for the collection of waste materials, debris and rubbish, and shall periodically remove waste materials, debris and rubbish from the Work and dispose of all such materials at legal disposal areas away from the site. All cleaning operations shall be scheduled so as to ensure that contaminants resulting from the cleaning process will not fall on newly-coated or newly-painted surfaces. Immediately after unpacking materials, all packing case lumber or other packing materials, wrapping or other like flammable waste shall be collected and removed from the building and premises. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project. Care shall be taken by all workers not to mark, soil, or otherwise deface any finish. In the event that any finish becomes defaced in any way by mechanics or workers, the Contractor or any of his Subcontractors shall clean and restore such surfaces to their original condition.

§ 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the ~~Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from~~from the cost thereof shall be charged to the Contractor.

3.15.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of the Work. Prior to the Architect's inspection for Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall clean exterior and interior surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains, putty, soil, paint and foreign substances from all surfaces, including glass and painted surfaces; polish transparent and glossy surfaces; clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition; replace air filters in mechanical equipment; clean roofs, gutters, and downspouts; remove obstructions and flush debris from drainage systems; clean site; sweep paved areas, and rake clean other surfaces; remove trash and surplus materials from the site; clean and polish all floors; clean and polish all hardware; and repair all Work damaged during cleaning.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.15.4 After construction is complete, Contractor shall: (1) employ skilled workers for final cleaning; (2) remove grease, mastic adhesive, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels and other foreign materials from all sight-exposed interior and exterior surfaces; (3) wash and shine glazing and mirrors; (4) polish glossy surfaces to a clear shine; (5) vacuum clean carpet and similar soft surfaces; (6) clean (damp mop with clean mop and water) resilient and hard surface floors, repeating as necessary until no visible residue remains on floors; (7) clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition; (8) clean surfaces of all equipment and remove excess lubrication; (9) clean permanent filters and replace disposable filters in ventilating system if units are operated during construction and clean ducts, blowers, and coils; (10) clean light fixtures; (11) remove waste, foreign matter, and debris from roofs, gutters, area ways, and drainage ways; (12) remove waste, debris, and surplus materials from the site; (13) remove stains, spills, and foreign substances from paved areas; and (14) broom clean exterior concrete and paved surfaces, and rake clean the grounds.

§ 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner, Program Manager and Architect and their designated representatives with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located. The presence of the Owner, Program Manager or Architect at the Work site does not imply acceptance or approval of the Work. ~~The presence of the Owner, Architect, or their representatives does not constitute acceptance or approval of the Work.~~

§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL DEFEND SUITS OR CLAIMS FOR INFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHTS AND PATENT RIGHTS AND SHALL WAIVE AND RELEASE CLAIMS AGAINST THE OWNER, PROGRAM MANAGER AND ARCHITECT, AND SHALL INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER AND ARCHITECT ~~HARMLESS~~ FROM ~~LOSS~~ ON ACCOUNT THEREOF, PROVIDED, HOWEVER, CONTRACTOR ~~BUT~~ SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE TO ARCHITECT FOR SUCH DEFENSE OR LOSS WHEN A PARTICULAR DESIGN, PROCESS, OR PRODUCT OF A PARTICULAR MANUFACTURER OR MANUFACTURERS IS REQUIRED BY THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, OR WHERE THE COPYRIGHT VIOLATIONS ARE CONTAINED IN DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS PREPARED BY THE ~~OWNER OR~~ ARCHITECT, AND SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE TO OWNER IF OWNER REQUIRES A PARTICULAR DESIGN, PROCESS, OR PRODUCT THAT CONSTITUTES A COPYRIGHT VIOLATION. However, if the Contractor has reason to believe that the required design, process, or product is an infringement of a copyright or patent ~~is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor,~~ the Contractor shall be responsible for ~~the~~such loss unless such~~the~~ information is promptly furnished to the Owner and Architect in writing.

§ 3.18 Indemnification

§ 3.18.1 TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL WAIVE AND RELEASE CLAIMS AGAINST AND SHALL INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER, ARCHITECT, ARCHITECT'S CONSULTANTS, OWNER'S TRUSTEES, CONSULTANTS, -PROGRAM MANAGER, AND OFFICERS, AGENTS AND EMPLOYEES OF ANY OF THEM FROM AND AGAINST CLAIMS, DAMAGES, LOSSES, CAUSES OF ACTION, SUITS, JUDGMENTS AND EXPENSES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ATTORNEYS' FEES, ARISING OUT OF OR RESULTING FROM PERFORMANCE OF THE WORK, PROVIDED THAT SUCH CLAIM, DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS ATTRIBUTABLE TO BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE OR DEATH, OR TO INJURY TO OR DESTRUCTION OF TANGIBLE PROPERTY (INCLUDING THE WORK ITSELF), INCLUDING LOSS OF USE RESULTING THEREFROM, BUT ONLY TO THE EXTENT CAUSED IN WHOLE OR IN PART BY THE WILLFUL OR NEGLIGENT ACTS OR OMISSIONS OF THE CONTRACTOR, A SUBCONTRACTOR, ANYONE DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY EMPLOYED BY THEM, ANYONE THEY CONTROL OR EXERCISE CONTROL OVER OR ANYONE FOR WHOSE ACTS THEY MAY BE LIABLE, REGARDLESS OF WHETHER OR NOT SUCH CLAIM, DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS CAUSED IN PART BY A PARTY BY ANY WILLFUL OR NEGLIGENT ACTS OR OMISSIONS OF OWNER OR OWNER'S CONSULTANTS OR OTHER INDEMNIFIED PARTIES. SUCH OBLIGATION SHALL NOT BE CONSTRUED TO NEGATE, ABRIDGE, OR REDUCE OTHER RIGHTS OR OBLIGATIONS OF INDEMNITY THAT WOULD OTHERWISE EXIST AS TO A PARTY OR PERSON DESCRIBED IN THIS SECTION 3.18. ALL COSTS AND EXPENSES SO INCURRED BY ANY OF THE INDEMNIFIED PARTIES IN THAT EVENT SHALL BE REIMBURSED BY CONTRACTOR TO THE INDEMNIFIED PARTIES, AND ANY COST AND EXPENSES SO INCURRED BY INDEMNIFIED PARTIES SHALL BEAR INTEREST UNTIL REIMBURSED BY CONTRACTOR, AT THE RATE OF INTEREST PROVIDED TO BE PAID BY THE JUDGMENT UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF TEXAS.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

3.18.2 IN CLAIMS AGAINST ANY PERSON OR ENTITY INDEMNIFIED UNDER THIS SECTION 3.18 BY AN EMPLOYEE OF THE CONTRACTOR, A SUBCONTRACTOR, ANYONE DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY EMPLOYED BY THEM, OR ANYONE FOR WHOSE ACTS THEY MAY BE LIABLE, THE INDEMNIFICATION OBLIGATION UNDER SECTION 3.18.1 SHALL NOT BE LIMITED BY A LIMITATION ON AMOUNT OR TYPE OF DAMAGES, COMPENSATION, OR BENEFITS PAYABLE BY OR FOR THE CONTRACTOR OR A SUBCONTRACTOR UNDER INSURANCE POLICIES, WORKERS' COMPENSATION ACTS, DISABILITY BENEFIT ACTS, OR OTHER EMPLOYEE BENEFIT ACTS.

3.18.3 THE OBLIGATIONS OF THE CONTRACTOR UNDER THIS SECTION 3.18 SHALL NOT EXTEND TO THE LIABILITY OF THE ARCHITECT. THE ARCHITECT'S CONSULTANTS, AND AGENTS, AND EMPLOYEES OF ANY OF THEM, CAUSED BY OR RESULTING FROM: (1) DEFECTS IN PLANS, DESIGNS, OR SPECIFICATIONS PREPARED, APPROVED, OR USED BY THE ARCHITECT OR ENGINEER; OR (2) NEGLIGENCE OF THE ARCHITECT OR ENGINEER IN THE RENDITION OR CONDUCT OF PROFESSIONAL DUTIES CALLED FOR OR ARISING OUT OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT AND THE PLANS, DESIGNS, OR SPECIFICATIONS THAT ARE A PART OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT; AND (3) ARISING FROM: (A) PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH; (B) PROPERTY DAMAGE; OR (C) ANY OTHER EXPENSES THAT ARISE FROM PERSONAL INJURY, DEATH, OR PROPERTY DAMAGE OR AS OTHERWISE LIMITED BY TEXAS CIVIL PRACTICE & REMEDIES CODE SECTION 130.001 ET SEQ.

3.18.4 THE OWNER MAY CAUSE ANY OTHER CONTRACTOR WHO MAY HAVE A CONTRACT WITH THE OWNER TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION OR INSTALLATION WORK IN THE AREAS WHERE WORK WILL BE PERFORMED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, TO AGREE TO INDEMNIFY AND TO HOLD THE OWNER AND THE CONTRACTOR HARMLESS FROM ALL CLAIMS FOR BODILY INJURY AND PROPERTY DAMAGE TO THE SAME EXTENT AS IS PROVIDED IN SECTION 3.18.1 ABOVE. LIKEWISE, CONTRACTOR AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND TO HOLD THE OWNER'S OTHER CONTRACTORS HARMLESS FROM ALL CLAIMS FOR BODILY INJURY AND PROPERTY DAMAGE TO THE SAME EXTENT AS PROVIDED IN SECTION 3.18.1 ABOVE.

3.18.5 THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 3.18 IN ITS ENTIRETY SHALL SURVIVE THE COMPLETION, TERMINATION, OR EXPIRATION OF THIS CONTRACT.

3.18.6 It is agreed with respect to any legal limitations now or hereafter in effect and affecting the validity or enforceability of the indemnification obligations under Paragraph 3.18, such legal limitations are made a part of the indemnification obligation and shall operate to amend the indemnification obligation to the minimum extent necessary to bring the provision into conformity with the requirements of such limitations, and as so modified, the indemnification obligations shall continue in full force and effect.

3.18.7 It is understood and agreed that Subparagraph 3.18.1 above is subject to, and expressly limited by, the terms and conditions of Texas Civ. Prac. & Rem. Code Ann. Sec. 130.001 to 130.005, as amended.

3.18.8 THE OWNER MAY CAUSE ANY OTHER CONTRACTOR WHO MAY HAVE A CONTRACT WITH THE OWNER TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION OR INSTALLATION WORK IN THE AREAS WHERE WORK WILL BE PERFORMED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, TO AGREE TO INDEMNIFY AND TO HOLD THE OWNER AND THE CONTRACTOR HARMLESS FROM ALL CLAIMS ATTRIBUTABLE TO BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE, OR DEATH OR TO INJURY TO, OR DESTRUCTION OF TANGIBLE PROPERTY (INCLUDING THE WORK ITSELF) INCLUDING LOSS OF USE, TO THE SAME EXTENT AS PROVIDED IN SUBPARAGRAPH 3.18.1 ABOVE.

3.19 ANTITRUST VIOLATION. To permit the Owner to recover damages suffered in antitrust violations, Contractor hereby assigns to Owner any and all claims for overcharges associated with this Contract which violate the antitrust laws of the United States, 15 U.S.C.A. Section 1 *et seq*. The Contractor shall include this provision in its agreements with each subcontractor and supplier. Each subcontractor shall include such provisions in agreements with sub-subcontractors and suppliers.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

§ 4.1 General

§ 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the ~~Agreement~~Contract.

§ 4.1.2 Owner shall notify Contractor when the duties, responsibilities or limitation of authority of the Architect have been modified

4.1.3 Except as expressly provided herein, the Contractor shall not be relieved of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents by the duties, responsibilities, or activities of the Architect.

§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract

§ 4.2.1 Certain portions of the administration of the Contract will be performed by the Architect, others by the Program Manager. Both the Architect and the Program Manager will be treated as the Owner's representatives to the extent set out in the Contract Documents. Neither the Architect nor the Program Manager shall have the authority to act on behalf of ~~the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.~~ Owner unless such authority is expressly granted in the Contract Documents, nor shall such authority be implied from any act or representation of the Architect or Program Manager. ~~The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction, until the date the Architect issues the final~~ This period shall extend until payment is due, and, with the Owner's concurrence, from time to time during the one-year period for correction of Work described in Section 12.2.2~~Certificate for Payment~~. ~~The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents, or as they may be amended in the future.~~

§ 4.2.2 The Architect, as a representative of the Owner, ~~will~~shall visit the site at least twice per week (or more per week when deemed necessary by the Owner's Superintendent or when necessary to protect Owner's interests) and at any other intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, to inspect ~~or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with~~ the progress, ~~and~~ quantity and quality of the ~~portion of the~~ Work completed, to reject any observed nonconforming Work, and to determine ~~in general~~ if the Work ~~observed~~ is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when ~~fully~~ completed, will be in accordance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents and on time. Furthermore, a minimum of two job site meetings per month from commencement of construction through Final Completion will be initiated by the Architect and attended by the Contractor. Attendees will include Owner, the Contractor's project manager and/or superintendent, Architect's project representative, and Architect. The Architect, Owner and their representatives shall at all times have access to the Work. Architect, or its structural consultant will provide on-site observation prior to and during all concrete pours that contribute to the structural integrity of the building, including all pours of concrete piers, footings, grade beams, floor slabs, and concrete superstructure components, if applicable. In addition, Architect or its structural consultant will provide on-site observation prior to covering up or closing up of portions of the construction, which if covered, would conceal problems with the structural integrity of the Project. Contractor shall not close or cover said Work until said observations have occurred. Contractor or Architect will advise Owner of the need for any third party laboratory or testing services to assist the Architect and Owner. On the basis of the on-site observations by Architect, Architect shall keep Owner and Contractor informed of the progress and the quality of the Work, through Architect's field reports, and shall guard Owner against defects and deficiencies in the Work. Architect shall promptly notify Owner and Contractor, orally, regarding any defect or nonconforming Work, which shall be followed by notice in writing of defects or nonconforming Work noted and corrective action taken or recommended. ~~However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work.~~ The Architect, however, ~~will~~shall not have control over~~, charge of~~, or responsibility for the Contractor's construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, ~~or~~ procedures, or ~~for the~~ safety ~~precautions and~~ programs, but this does not relieve Architect of Architect's responsibilities under this Contract. Any services by Contractor made necessary by Contractor's construction defect or nonconforming Work, shall be performed at no additional cost to Owner ~~in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents~~.

§ 4.2.3 ~~On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work.~~ The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work. The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for compensation paid to the Architect for additional site visits made necessary by the fault, neglect, or request of the Contractor.

§ 4.2.4 Communications

~~Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or when direct communications have been specially authorized, T~~the Owner and Contractor shall ~~endeavor to communicate with each other through the Architect about matters arising out of or relating to the Contract. However, Owner reserves the right to communicate directly with Contractor and Subcontractors include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project.~~ Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. ~~The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.~~

§ 4.2.5 As further provided in the Contract Documents, ~~B~~based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect ~~has authority to~~ shall reject Work that does not conform to the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will ~~have~~recommend to Owner additional ~~authority to require~~ inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with ~~Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3~~the provision of the Contract Documents, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect or the Owner to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work. Architect and/or Contractor shall promptly notify, orally and in writing, the other party and Owner of any fault or defect in the Project or nonconformance with Construction Documents or the Contract Documents they may respectively discover, and each, upon discovery of the defect or nonconformance, shall be responsible for notifying the other party and Owner of those corrective actions they respectively take; provided, however, Contractor shall have no duty to notify Owner of discoveries made or actions taken by Architect. Testing or inspection required by this subparagraph shall be conducted subject to the requirements of Chapter 2269 of the Texas Government Code.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken ~~in accordance~~ with ~~the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with~~ reasonable promptness as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner, Contractor, or Separate Contractors, while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation ~~or performance~~ of equipment or systems, ~~all of which~~ remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by the Architect, of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component. If any submittal does not comply with the requirements of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents, then Architect shall require Contractor to come into compliance. The Architect shall promptly report, in writing, to the Contractor, Program Manager and Owner any errors, inconsistencies, and omissions discovered by the Architect in the Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect ~~will~~shall review, prepare, and make recommendations to Owner regarding all Change Orders and Construction Change Directives for the Owner's approval and execution in accordance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents, accompanied by all supporting documentation. The Architect~~, and~~ may ~~order~~authorize minor changes in the Work not involving any adjustment in Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Price, or an extension of the Contract Time which are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents. If necessary, the Architect shall prepare, reproduce, and distribute Drawings and Specifications to describe Work to be added, deleted, or modified, as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect shall accept requests by the Owner, and Owner shall review properly prepared, timely requests by the Contractor for change in the Work, including adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time. A properly prepared request for a change in the Work by the Contractor shall be accompanied by sufficient supporting data and information to permit the Architect ~~will investigate and~~to make a reasonable determination~~s~~ without extensive investigation or preparation of additional drawings or specifications. If the Architect determines that requested changes in the Work are not materially different from the requirements of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents, and do not change the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contact Time, then the Architect may issue an order for a minor change in the Work, with prior written notice to the Owner or recommend to the Owner that the requested change be denied. The Architect is not authorized to approve changes involving major system such as: Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning ("HVAC"); roof, foundation; outward appearance, color scheme, floor plans, building materials; drainage or mechanical equipment with Owner's prior written consent ~~and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4~~.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; ~~issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8;~~ will receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor ~~pursuant to Section 9.10~~; and will issue a final Certificate for Payment ~~pursuant to Section 9.10~~upon compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the ~~Project representatives~~ Architect have been ,modified.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and ~~decide matters~~make recommendations concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If no agreement is made concerning the time within which interpretations required of the Architect shall be furnished in compliance with this Paragraph 4.2, then delay shall not be recognized on account of failure by the Architect to furnish such interpretations until 15 days after written request is made for them.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations ~~and decisions~~or recommendations of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and ~~decisions~~recommendations, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor~~, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith~~.

§ 4.2.13 The ~~Architect's~~ Owner's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect ~~wi~~shall be final ~~if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents~~.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information, at no additional cost to the Owner.

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

§ 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

§ 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner, ~~and~~ Architect and Program Manager, in writing, of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect ~~ma~~or ~~ys~~Program Manager shall notify, in writing, the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Owner or Architect to provide notice ~~within the 14-day period~~promptly shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection. All subcontractors shall be procured in accordance with Texas Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, and Texas Government Code Chapter 2269, as applicable. A notice of no reasonable objection shall in no way relieve the Contractor from full responsibility for performance and completion of the Work and its obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the performance of its subcontractors, including those recommended or approved by the Owner.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner, Program Manager or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner, Program Manager ~~-~~or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. When~~If~~ the parties agree on a proposed substitute ~~but rejected~~ Subcontractor ~~was reasonably capable of performing the Work~~, then the Contract Sum and Contract Time ~~sh~~may~~ll~~ be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not change a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitute.

5.2.5 Each Contractor or Subcontractor shall be required to completely familiarize itself with the plans and specifications, to visit the Work site to completely familiarize itself with existing conditions, and to conduct any other appropriate investigations, inspections, or inquiries prior to submission of a bid or proposal. No increases in Contract Sums or Guaranteed Maximum Price shall be allowed for failure to so inspect or investigate.

The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner any ownership interest or affiliation between the Contractor and any potential subcontractor prior to entering into a subcontract and the Owner shall have the right, in its sole discretion and pursuant to 5.2.3., to reject any such affiliated subcontractor. Further, Contractor shall not subcontract the work as a whole.

The approval of Subcontractors in no way relieves the Contractor from full responsibility for performance and completion of the Work and its obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the performance of its Subcontractors, including those recommended or approved by the Owner

5.2.6 The Contractor agrees to utilize Subcontractors that are historically underutilized businesses in accordance with the Minority and Women Owned Business Enterprise (M/WBE) forms and guidelines attached hereto as Exhibit "C".

No changes to the Plan may be made unless approved in writing by the Owner. The Contractor, prior to the execution of this Contract, shall report their M/WBE participation goal as a percent of the Contract Sum. During the performance of all Work under this ~~Agreement~~Contract, the Contractor and its agents shall comply with all M/WBE policies of the Owner. The information shall be identified per firm, discipline and participation. While this ~~Agreement~~Contract is in effect and until the expiration of one year after final completion, the Owner may require information from the Contractor, and may conduct audits, to assure that the Plan is being, and was, followed,. With each Contractor's application for payment, the Contractor shall report their updated M/WBE Plan and actual M/WBE participation information.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

5.2.7 Contractor shall promptly notify the Owner, Architect and Program Manager of any material defaults by any subcontractor

§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. The terms and conditions of the Contract Documents shall be incorporated by reference into each subcontract agreement, included as provided below. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights. ~~,~~ Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors. Each subcontractor shall provide proof of insurance to Contractor consistent with the Contractor's insurance to Owner and in an amount commensurate with the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor.

5.3.2 Neither the Owner nor the Architect shall be obligated to pay or to ensure the payment of any monies to subcontractors due to any non-payment to the Contractor or non-payment of subcontractors by the Contractor.

5.3.3 The Contractor shall require any potential subcontractor to disclose to the Contractor any ownership interest or familial relationship between the Contractor, the Architect, or the Owner, and the potential subcontractor prior to entering into a subcontract. Contractor shall report to Owner all such disclosures and the Owner shall have the right, in its sole discretion, to reject any such affiliated subcontractor.

§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for any unperformed portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

.1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to ~~Section~~Article 14~~.2~~ or abandonment of the Project by the Contractor; and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor in writing; and

.2 assignment is subject to the prior rights and obligations of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract; and

.3 The Subcontractor provides bonds as required by law of prime contractors and by Owner.

~~When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.~~

§ 5.4.2 ~~Upon~~ ~~s~~Such assignment shall not constitute a waiver by Owner of its rights against Contractor, including, but not limited to, claims for defaults, delays or defects for which a subcontractor or material vendor may also be liable~~, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension~~.

§ 5.4.3 ~~Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the~~ Owner shall only be ~~assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally~~ responsible for compensating subcontractors for Work performed or materials furnished from and after the date on which the Owner gives written notice of its acceptance of the subcontract agreement. Owner shall not be responsible for any Work performed or materials furnished by subcontractors prior to the date of Owner's written notice of acceptance.~~all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract~~.

5.4.4 Each subcontract shall specifically provide that the Owner shall only be responsible to the Subcontractor after written notice for undisputed amounts not previously paid to Contractor subsequent to the Owner's exercise of any rights under this conditional assignment.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

5.4.5 Contractor shall be fully responsible for the performance of its Subcontractors, including those selected or approved by the Owner

5.5 NOTICE OF SUBCONTRACTOR DEFAULT

Contractor shall promptly notify Owner and Architect of any material defaults by any Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor. Notwithstanding any provision contained in Article 5 to the contrary, it is hereby acknowledged and agreed that Owner has in no way agreed, expressly or implicitly, nor will Owner agree, to allow any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or other materialman or worker employed by Contractor the right to obtain a personal judgment or to create a mechanic's or materialman's lien against Owner for the amount due from the Owner or the Contractor.

ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

§ 6.1.1 The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation. The Owner reserves the right to perform other non-Project-related construction work, maintenance and repair work, and school program operations at the site and near the site during the time period of the Work. Owner shall have access to the building on the site at all times.

§ 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor ~~Agreement~~Contract.

§ 6.1.3 The ~~Owner~~ Contractor shall ~~provide for~~ coordinat~~ion of~~e the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor to ensure that the Work remains on schedule~~, who shall cooperate with them~~. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement between the Owner and Contractor. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

§ 6.1.4 It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to assist, review, coordinate, and schedule work performed by any of Owner's separate contractors including the hazardous materials abatement contractor. Contractor shall not be required to contract directly with the hazardous materials abatement contractor or Owner's separate contractor's however, Contractor shall coordinate all aspects of the hazardous materials abatement contractor's and Owner's separate contractor's work, including required monitoring, testing and inspections by independent firms, with the Work under this ~~Agreement~~Contract. The Contractor shall be totally responsible for coordination between its Subcontractors and the hazardous materials abatement contractor and any other Owner's separate contractors. Contractor will cooperate with the Owner to allow site access and staging areas for hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and consultants. Contractor shall review Owner's contract with the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and become familiar with the requirements and scope of services contained therein. Contractor shall continually review the work performed by the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and immediately notify the Owner and Program Manager if at any time during the performance of Contractor's work, the hazardous materials abatement contractor or any of Owner's separate contractors fail, in any way, to provide sufficient, competent manpower or timely perform its services. In addition, the Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating and providing all construction administration necessary for the Work and the work of the hazardous materials abatement contractor and any of Owner's separate contractors ~~Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.~~

§ 6.2 ~~Mutual~~Contractor's Responsibility

§ 6.2.1 It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to assist, review, and coordinate the scheduling of work performed by any of the Owner's Separate Contractors including the hazardous materials abatement contractor.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Contractor shall not be required to contract directly with the hazardous materials abatement contractor or Owner's separate contractor's however, Contractor shall coordinate all aspects of the hazardous materials abatement contractor's and Owner's separate contractor's work, including required monitoring, testing and inspections by independent firms, with the Work under this ~~Agreement~~Contract. The Contractor shall be totally responsible for coordination between its Subcontractors and the hazardous materials abatement contractor and any other Owner's separate contractors. Contractor will cooperate with the Owner to allow site access and staging areas for hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and consultants. Contractor shall review Owner's contract with the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and become familiar with the requirements and scope of services contained therein. Contractor shall continually review the work performed by the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and immediately notify the Owner and Program Manager if at any time during the performance of Contractor's work, the hazardous materials abatement contractor or any of Owner's separate contractors fail, in any way, to provide sufficient, competent manpower or timely perform its services In addition, the Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating and providing all construction administration necessary for the Work and the work of any of Owner's Separate Contractors. The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents. Contractor shall be responsible for coordination between Contractor's subcontractors and Owner's Separate Contractors. Contractor shall review Owner's contract with Owner's Separate Contractors and become familiar with the requirements and scope of services contained therein.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify, in writing, the Architect and Owner of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work, and shall promptly report, in writing, to the Architect and Owner if Owner's Separate Contractors fail in any way to timely perform their services or negatively impact Contractor's schedule or ability to perform the Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify, in writing, the Architect and Owner of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper, and is performed in a timely manner, to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for latent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor ~~that are not apparent~~.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. ~~The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.~~

6.2.3.1 If the Architect or Program Manager is required to provide additional services, as provided in the Contract between the Owner or Program Manager ~~-~~and the Architect, specifically relating to additional compensation for the Architect for evaluating an excessive number of claims submitted by the Contractor or others in connection with the Work in accordance with Owner's Contract with the Architect, then such services shall be paid for by the Contractor through the Owner, unless the additional services result from negligence of or an omission by the Architect and Program Manager.~~-~~

6.2.3.2 If the Architect provides services in connection with a legal proceeding, except when the Architect is a party thereto, and the Owner requests the Architect, in writing, to provide such services, then the cost of such services shall be paid for by the party whose act or omission was a proximate cause of the problem that led to the requirement to provide such services. Such services shall be paid for by such party through Owner, who upon receipt of same shall reimburse the Architect.

6.2.3.3 All construction costs resulting from the Contractor's negligence, lack of oversight, inattention to details, failure to investigate, or failure to follow the Construction Documents or Contract Documents, will be borne by the Contractor.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage wrongfully caused by ~~that~~ the Contractor ~~wrongfully causes~~ to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

§ 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Owner~~Architect~~ will allocate the cost among those responsible.

6.3.1 Job site cleanup will be performed on a daily basis. The Owner and/or Program Manager will periodically check the site to see that all construction areas, nearby roads, walkways and/or grounds are maintained in a clean and safe manner. The cost to clean up the site will be assessed to the Contractor each time the Owner is required to clean the area due to failure of the Contractor or his designee to satisfactorily perform or enforce this site clean-up requirements. The Owner will assess the cost. Before assessing the cost, the Contractor shall be given notice of the failure to clean the site and one business day after the date of the notice to clean up the site. If the Contractor fails to clean up the site, after notice, the Owner may assess the cost for cleanup.

ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

§ 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive, Contingency Authorization or order for a minor change in the Work~~.~~. A properly prepared written request for a change in the Work by Contractor shall be accompanied by sufficient supporting data and information to permit the Architect to make a recommendation to Owner. The Contract Sum and/or Contract Time may be increased for changes in the Work if the provisions of Article 7 have been met.

Architect shall review properly prepared, timely requests by Contractor for a proposed change in the Work, including but not limited to adjustments to the Contract Sum or Contract Time. A properly prepared request for a proposed change shall be accompanied by sufficient supporting data and information to permit Architect to make a reasonable determination without extensive investigation or preparation of additional drawings or specifications

§ 7.1.1.1 No changes in the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time will be allowed for a change in the Work unless prior to performing the changed Work the Contractor has provided the Owner in writing with a proposal for any change in price and/or change in Contract Time caused by the change in Work, and a Change Order is subsequently executed. A field directive or field order shall not be recognized as having any impact upon the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, and Contractor shall have no Claim therefore, unless it shall, prior to complying with the directive and in any event within ten (10) days of receiving the directive, submit a change proposal to the Owner, and a Change Order is subsequently executed, or Contractor satisfies the requirements of Paragraph 15

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone. A change in the work that does not require a change in Contract Sum or Contract Time may be paid from the Contingency Allowance. A Contingency Allowance Expenditure Authorization (CAEA) is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor and Program Manager directing a change in the Work. A CAEA shall not be used for minor changes in the Work. Note: If the Construction Manager Percentage Fee was not previously included in the approved GMP, the approved additions or deductions for authorized amounts for Contingency Expenditures will also include an appropriate adjustment for the Construction Manager Fee at the percentage approved in Article 5.1.1 and 5.1.2 of the modified AIA Document A133.

7.1.2.1 Contractor shall make no change in the materials used or in the specified manner of constructing and/or installing the Work or supply additional labor, services, or materials beyond that actually required by the terms of the Contract Documents, unless made pursuant to a written order from Owner authorizing Contractor to proceed with the change. No claim for an adjustment of the contract price will be valid unless so ordered.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work. Except as permitted in

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Paragraph 7.3 or 15, a change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time shall be accomplished only by Change Order. -Contractor shall not make any claim for an adjustment to time, Contract Sum, or Guaranteed Maximum Price due to: a change in the materials used; a change in the specified manner of constructing and/or installing the Work; or additional labor, services, or materials beyond that actually required by the terms of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents, unless made pursuant to a written order or directive from Owner authorizing Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work. No claim for an adjustment to time, Contract Sum, or Guaranteed Maximum Price shall be valid unless so ordered or directed.

7.1.4 The total Contractor mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee for work performed by the Contractor's own forces shall not exceed 10% of the cost of the change in the Work. The total Contractor mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee for supervision of work performed by subcontractors' forces shall not exceed 4% of the cost of the change in the Work. The total subcontractor mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee for work performed by the subcontractor's forces shall not exceed 10% of the cost of the change in the Work. In no event shall total mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee in any work which involves a subcontractor or one or more sub-subcontractors, regardless of who performs the Work, exceed 14% of the total cost of the change in the Work.

7.1.5 The Contractor, upon receipt of written notification by the Architect of a proposed item of change in the Work, shall prepare as soon as possible a Change Proposal in such form or forms as directed by the Architect.

.1 Each separate Change Proposal shall be numbered consecutively and shall include materials, costs, labor costs, fees, overhead and profit. The Proposal shall specify all cost related to the proposed Change in the Work, including any disruption or impact on performance;

.2 The Subcontractor's itemized accounting shall be included with the Change Proposal;

.3 If a Change Proposal is returned to the Contractor for additional information or if the scope of the proposed change in the Work is modified by additions, deletions or other revisions, the Contractor shall revise the Change Proposal accordingly and resubmit the revised Change Proposal to the Architect and Program Manager;

.4 A revised Change Proposal shall bear the original Change Proposal number suffixed by the letter "R" to designate a revision in the original Change Proposal. If additional revisions to a revised Change Proposal are necessary, each subsequent revision shall be identified by an appropriate numeral suffix immediately following the "R" suffix;

.5 Upon written approval of a Change Proposal by the Owner, the Architect and the Program Manager; the Architect will prepare a Change Order authorizing such change in the Work; and

.6 The Contractor shall request extensions of Contract Time due to changes in the Work only at the time of submitting its Change Proposal. Contractor's failure to do so shall represent a waiver of any right to request a time extension

7.1.5.1 The combined overhead and profit included in the total cost to the Owner of a change in the Work shall be based on the following schedule:

.1 For approved additions or deductions to the Cost of the Work (not including preconstruction or general condition costs), the Construction Manager's Fee will be increased or decreased at the same percentage approved in Section 5.1.1 and 5.1.2 in the approved A133 contract document.

.2 For approved additions or deductions to any of the Construction Manager's subcontracts for self-performed work paid in accordance with the Section 2.3.2.2 of the A133 contract document, the self-performed work fee will be the same as approved in Section 2.3.2.2 of the A133 contract document.

.3 For approved additions or deductions to approved Subcontracts, the maximum markup on changed Work performed by the Subcontractor's own forces will be ten (10%) percent of the approved allowable Change Order costs.

.4 For approved additions or deductions to approved Subcontracts, the maximum markup on changes for Work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-subcontractors will be four (4%) percent of the amount due the Sub-subcontractor.

.5 Cost to which overhead and profit is to be applied shall be determined in accordance with Subparagraph 7.3.7

.6 In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, all proposals except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials, and Subcontracts. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are Subcontracts, they shall be itemized also.

7.1.6 ~~5~~ Allowance balances may be used to fund changes in the Work. The Contractor will not be allowed an

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

overhead, profit, or fee mark-up when changes in the Work are funded by one of the Allowances. The combined overhead and profit included in the total cost to the Owner of a change in the Work shall be based on the following schedule:

.1 For the Contractor, for Work performed by the Contractor's own forces, ten (10%) percent of the cost.

.2 For the Contractor, for Work performed by the Contractor's Subcontractor's, four (4%) percent of the amount due the subcontractors.

.3 For each Subcontractor involved, for Work performed by that Subcontractor's own forces, ten (10%) percent of the cost.

.4 For each Subcontractor involved, for Work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-subcontractors, four (4%) percent of the amount due the Sub-subcontractor.

.5 Cost to which overhead and profit is to be applied shall be determined in accordance with Subparagraph 7.3.76.

.6 In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, all proposals except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials and Subcontracts. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are Subcontracts, they shall be itemized also

7.1.7 ~~6~~ If the Contract Sum is $1,000,000.00 or more, or if the Contract Sum is less than $1,000,000.00, and any Change Order, Construction Change Directives, or other Changes in the Work would increase the Contract Sum to $1,000,000.00 or more, the total of all Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, or other Changes in the Work, may not increase the Contract Sum by more than 25% of the original Contract Sum. Any Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or other Change in the Work that would exceed that limit is void and of no effect. Texas Education Code § 44.0411.

§ 7.2 Change Orders

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

.1 The change in the Work;

.2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price; and

.3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

7.2.2 Methods used in determining adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price may include those listed in Section 7.3.3.

.1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation. Sufficient substantiating data shall include a proposal itemized for the various components of work added or deleted, segregated by labor, material and equipment. Details to be submitted will include detailed line item estimates showing detailed material quality takeoffs, material prices by item, and of related labor hour pricing information and extension by line item by drawings as applicable);

.2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;

.3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually-acceptable fixed or percentage fee or the percentage fee established at 7.1.5; or;

.4 As provided in Subparagraph 7.3.7.

7.2.3 Contractor stipulates that acceptance of a Change Order by the Contractor constitutes full accord and satisfaction for any and all Claims, whether direct or indirect, arising from the subject matter of the Change Order.

7.2.4 In no event shall a single change, or the aggregate of all changes, result in the total costs, reimbursements, and fees exceeding the Contract Sum or the Guaranteed Maximum Price, unless agreed to in writing by Owner prior to the commencement of such modified or changed Work.

7.2.5 Agreement on any Change Order shall constitute a final settlement of all claims by the Contractor directly or indirectly arising out of or relating to the change in the Work which is the subject of the Change Order, including, but not limited to, all direct and indirect costs and impact costs associated with such change and any and all adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 The Construction Change Directive shall include a unilateral change in the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time reflecting the Owner's reasonable view of the appropriate change in the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time for the change in the work covered by the Construction Change Directive. Until agreement is reached by the Owner and Contractor on these issues, the change in Contract Sum and Contract Time set out in the Construction Change Directive shall be used for schedule of values, payment, and scheduling purposes.

~~If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:~~

- ~~.1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation; Sufficient substantiating data shall include a proposal itemized for the various components of work added or deleted, segregated by labor, material and equipment. Details to be submitted will include detailed line item estimates showing detailed material quality takeoffs, material prices by item and of related labor hour pricing information and extension (by line item by drawings as applicable.~~
- ~~.2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon; and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation.~~
- ~~.3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or~~
- ~~.4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.~~

§ 7.3.4 [*Not used*] ~~If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:~~

~~.1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;~~

~~.2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;~~

~~.3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;~~

~~.4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and~~

~~.5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.~~

§ 7.3.5 ~~If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.~~

§ 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.7 In the absence of agreement between Owner and Contractor on the proper change to the Contract Sum or Contract Time because of a change in the Work, Contractor may treat the matter as a Claim under Paragraph 15. In

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

such event, the Contractor shall be entitled to recover only the amount by which its direct costs have been reasonably increased over the direct cost of performing the Work without the change in the work, plus three percent (3%) on Subcontractor's Work) of direct cost to cover home office overhead, profit, and all other costs. Direct costs shall be limited to the following:
~~A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.~~

.1 Reasonable Cost of Labor, including Social Security, old age and unemployment insurance, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, and workers' compensation insurance;
.2 Materials, supplies and equipment, equipment including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
.3 Rental cost of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others at rates that are no greater than market rates in the locale of the Work at the time of the Work. Unless otherwise established in the Contract, the rental value of the Contractor's own equipment shall not be more than normal local rental rates for contractor-owned equipment;
.4 Premiums for all bonds and insurance permit fees and sales, use or similar taxes related to the Work; and
.5 Cost of Subcontractor for performing the change in the Work. The amount allowable for Subcontractors shall be calculated using the same standards set out herein for direct Work by the Contractor.
.6 Additional cost of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

Contractor and each Subcontractor involved shall furnish evidence of costs such as copies of original invoices for materials, payroll vouchers for labor, etc., upon request by the Architect, Owner, or Program Manager. Any increase in Contract Time shall be limited to the amount of time by which activities critical to overall completion of the Project are delayed by the change in the Work. If it is reasonably possible to perform the change in the Work concurrently with Work that is critical to overall completion, no time extension shall be granted by reason of a change in the Work.

§ 7.3.8 [*Not Used*] ~~The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that which results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost of the work deleted, including all profit and overhead, plus the Contractor's allocated percentage of three (3%) percent on Subcontractor's work of direct cost to cover supervision, field office and home office overhead, profit and all other costs cost When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.~~

§ 7.3.9 [Not Used] ~~Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.~~

§ 7.3.10 ~~When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.~~

§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

With prior written notice to the Owner's representative, ~~T~~the Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the ~~intent of the~~ Construction Documents or the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or an extension of the Contract Time, nor requiring any payment from the Contingency Allowance. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time, or requiring a payment from the Contingency Allowance, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time, or the Contingency Allowance, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or extension of the Contract Time or the Contingency Allowance. The Contractor shall carry out such written orders promptly. Minor changes in the Work shall not include changes that involve the outward appearance of the structure, color schemes, floor plans, building materials, landscaping, or mechanical equipment

ARTICLE 8 TIME

§ 8.1 Definitions

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for ~~Substant~~Final Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the ~~date established in the Agreement~~ first business day after Contractor's receipt of the written Notice to Proceed. The Notice to Proceed shall not be issued by Architect until the Contract (or Amendment, if Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk) has been signed by the Contractor, approved by Owner's Board of Trustees, signed by the Owner's authorized representative, and Owner and Architect have received, and approved as to form, all required payment and performance bonds and insurance, in compliance with Article 11. Issuance of the Notice to Proceed shall not relieve the Contractor of its responsibility to comply with Article 11.

8.1.2.1 If the Notice to Proceed is delayed due to delays in issuance of the building permit by municipal authorities or other unanticipated delays, *and* if building materials are expected to increase in price due to that delay, Contractor may, if Owner expressly agrees in writing, purchase such materials before receiving the Notice to Proceed from Owner. Contractor shall store and insure such building materials until use. In the event the project is cancelled, Contractor's contract is terminated, or the materials are not used (in whole or in part) on the Project, Contractor shall sell the unused materials to Owner at Contractor's actual cost, or reduce its billing to Owner in that amount, if Contractor retains the material.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8. The date of Final Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Paragraph 9.10. Unless otherwise agreed in writing by Owner, Contractor agrees that Final Completion shall occur not more than 30 days after the date of Substantial Completion.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

§ 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the ~~Agreement~~Contract, the Contractor ~~confirm~~stipulates that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

If Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work on or before the date(s) specified for Substantial Completion in this Contract and the other Contract Documents, Contractor shall pay to the Owner, as liquidated damages, the sum set out in the Contract between Owner and Contractor for each calendar day that Substantial Completion is delayed after the date(s) specified for Substantial Completion. The total liquidated damage claim is determined by multiplying daily-liquidated damage amounts stated in the Contract by the number of days late. A fraction of a day shall be counted as a full day. It is hereby agreed that the actual damages which Owner will suffer by reason of late completion would be difficult to ascertain, and the liquidated damages to which Owner is entitled hereunder are a reasonable forecast of just compensation for the harm that would be caused by Contractor's failure to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work on or before the date(s) specified for Substantial Completion, and not a penalty. Liquidated damages shall be paid as they accrue and may be adjusted from any progress payment due.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, ~~,~~ prematurely commence operations on the site or elsewhere prior to the effective date of insurance required by Article 11 to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner. The date of commencement of the Work shall not be changed by the effective date of such insurance. Unless the date of commencement is established by the Contract Documents or a Notice to Proceed given by the Owner, the Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing not less than five (5) days or other agreed period.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial and Final Completion within the Contract Time.

8.2.4 The Contractor is subject to liquidated damages, as specified in the Contract, if the Work is not completed by the date of Substantial Completion or the date of Final Completion.

§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress in performing work that is critical to overall completion of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of or Program Manager, or a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by ~~labor disputes,~~ fire, governmental actions~~unusual delay in deliveries~~, ~~unavoidable casualties,~~ or adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2~~, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control~~; (4) by delay authorized, in writing, by the Owner ~~pending mediation and binding dispute resolution~~; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Owner and Architect determine~~s~~, may justify delay, then the Contract Time ~~sh~~may~~ll~~ be extended for such reasonable time as the Owner, ~~and~~ Architect or Program Manager may determine. Adjustments in the Contract Time will be permitted for a delay only to the extent such delay is not caused or could not have reasonably been anticipated by the Contractor, and could not be limited or avoided by the Contractor's timely notice to the Owner of the delay, and only if Contractor satisfies the conditions of this Paragraph 8.3. Contractor has the burden to prove that any of the foregoing alleged causes of delay significantly impacted construction progress on the critical path, as a condition precedent to any extension of the Contract Time.

The Contractor shall anticipate and include in the construction schedule lost time due to adverse weather conditions in accordance with the number of Lost Time Workdays per month in the Dallas area in accordance with the following schedule:

January – 5
February – 4
March – 5
April – 6
May – 6
June – 4
July – 4
August – 4
September – 5
October – 4
November – 4
December – 4

A request for a time extension based on unusually adverse weather conditions will not be permitted unless the cumulative actual days of Lost Time Workdays for the period when the critical path of the project is subject to impact from Lost Time Workdays exceeds the cumulative number of expected Lost Time Workdays for the same period. The final calculation of entitlement to a time extension cannot be made until at least sixty (60) days prior to the agreed date for Substantial Completion of the Project ~~is completed~~ and the time extensions for unusually adverse weather may not be made until that time. However, Contractor will submit claimed Lost Time Workdays in accordance with the submission times provided in 8.3.2. No day on which substantial Contractor forces are able to perform the work on the Project for more than fifty percent (50%) of the usual workday will be counted as a Lost Time Workday. Lost Time Workdays will not be calculated for any period when the critical path of the project is not subject to impact from adverse weather conditions.

§ 8.3.2 ~~Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.~~ On or before the fifteenth (15th) day of each month of the Work, Contractor shall submit in writing a request for all time extensions to which it believes itself to be entitled for the preceding month, other than time extensions for changes in the Work, which are to be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Article 7. If Contractor's request for time extension for Changes in the Work is denied and Contractor wishes to pursue the matter, Contractor shall submit in writing a request for that extension by the fifteenth (15th) day of the month following the denial. Any claim for time extension not submitted under the terms of this Subparagraph shall be waived.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

8.3.2.1 Owner, after consultation with the Architect and Program Manager, shall grant time extensions to the extent it believes them to be proper. Time extensions granted by the Owner may be incorporated into schedules for completion of the Work. In the event that Contractor believes that it is entitled to additional time extensions beyond those granted by the Owner, it may make a claim for them provided it can meet the requirements of Paragraph 15.1.

§ 8.3.3 This Contract ~~Section 8.3~~ does not permit~~reclude~~ the recovery of damages, including, without limitation, extended home office overhead expenses, general conditions, or other consequential damages, by the Contractor for delay or disruption or for extensions of time due to bad weather or acts of God. Contractor agrees that the only possible compensation for any delay is an extension of time ~~by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents~~.

ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

§ 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the ~~Agreement~~Contract and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents. In the event that the Project is a Construction Management at Risk Project, the Contract Sum shall not exceed the Guaranteed Maximum Price.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices ~~shm~~ay~~ll~~ be equitably adjusted by prior written agreement.

§ 9.2 Schedule of Values

9.2.1 Before the first Application for Payment, ~~,~~ the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect and Program Manager before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum or, in the case of a Guaranteed Maximum Price, within 15 days after establishing the Guaranteed Maximum Price, to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect or Program Manager may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such a manner that each major item of work, whether done by Contractor's own forces or subcontracted, is shown as a single line item on AIA Document G702 and G703, Application and Certificate for Payment and Continuation Sheet. If the Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk, then the Contractor's fee and general conditions shall be specifically shown, and AIA Documents G702CMa and G703 shall be used.

9.2.2 ~~.~~If the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project, in order to facilitate the review of Applicants for Payment, the Schedule of Values shall be submitted on AIA Documents G702 and G703, and shall include the following:

.1 Contractor's cost for Contractor's fee (if applicable) bonds and insurance, mobilization, or general conditions, etc. shall be listed as individual line item.

.2 Contractor's costs for various construction items shall be detailed. For example, concrete work shall be subdivide into footings, grade beams, floor slabs, or paving, etc.

.3 On major subcontracts, such as mechanical, electrical, and plumbing, the schedule shall indicate line items and amounts in detail (for example: underground, major equipment, fixtures, installation fixtures, or start-up, etc.)

.4 Costs for subcontract work shall be listed without any additional mark-up of Contractor's costs for overhead, profit, or supervision.

.5 If payment for stored materials is requested prior to installation, then material and labor shall be listed as separate line items.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

.6 Contractor shall provide a report of actual versus projected reimbursable expenses (general conditions), updated monthly.

§ 9.3 Applications for Payment

§ 9.3.1 At ~~least ten days before the date established for each progress payment~~, the time specified in the Contract, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect and Program Manager an itemized Application for Payment for operations completed prepared in accordance with the schedule of values~~, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work~~. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage ~~if provided for in the Contract Documents~~.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.8, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, but not yet included in Change Orders. Contractor agrees that, for purposes of Texas Government Code Sections 2251 and 2251.042, receipt of the Application for Payment by the Architect shall not be construed as receipt of an invoice by the Owner. Contractor further agrees that Owner's receipt of the Certificate for Payment shall be construed as receipt of an invoice by the Owner, for purposes of Texas Government Code Sections 251.021 and 2251.042~~As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders~~.

§ 9.3.1.2 Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor ~~does~~has not ~~intend~~ been invoiced by~~to pay~~ a Subcontractor or supplier, unless ~~such~~Contractor has self-performed the Work ~~has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay~~.

9.3.1.3 Until Final Completion of the Work, the Owner shall withhold retainage as provided in the Contract Documents, except that Owner shall not pay amounts for which the Architect refuses to certify payment, or the Owner refuses to pay, as provided herein Section 9.4 or 9.5 as amended. The remaining retainage shall be paid with the Final Payment, unless there is a bona fide dispute between Owner and Contractor and the reason for the dispute is that labor, services, or materials provided by Contractor, or a person under Contractor's direction or control, failed to comply with the express terms of the Contract, or if the surety on any surety bond does not agree to the release of retainage. Written notice of the basis for withholding retainage under Texas Government Code Sections 2252.031 – 2252.032 must be provided to Contractor. If there is no bona fide dispute and neither party is in default, Contractor may cure any noncompliant labor, services, or materials, or offer Owner reasonable compensation for such noncompliant labor, services, or materials that cannot promptly be cured. Owner is not required to accept such offer.

§ 9.3.2 ~~Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, p~~Payments ~~shaw~~ill be made on the basis of invoices for specific ~~account of~~ materials ~~and~~or equipment ~~delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent~~ incorporated~~ion~~ in the Work, and ~~. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for~~ specific materials ~~and~~or equipment (1) suitably stored the site or (2) suitably stored at some off~~-the~~ site ~~at a~~ location, provided the following conditions are met for ~~agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored~~ off~~-the~~ site storage:

.1 The location must be agreed to, in writing, by Owner and Surety.
.2 The location must be a bonded warehouse.
.3 The Contractor's Surety must agree, in writing, to the amounts included in each Application for Payment.
.4 The Contractor must bear the cost of the Owner's and Architect's expenses related to visiting the off-site storage area and reviewing the stored contents. Contractor acknowledges that Architect's time may be an Additional Service and shall compensate Architect directly for same upon request.
.5 Payment shall not include any charges for overhead or profit on stored materials.
.6 Payments for materials or equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon submission by the Contractor of bills of sale or such other documentation satisfactory to the Owner to establish the

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Owner's title to such materials or equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, including applicable insurance (naming the Owner as insured and naming the specific materials or equipment stored and their location) and proof of delivery to the site for those materials and equipment stored off the site. Under no circumstances will the Owner reimburse the Contractor for down payment, deposits, or other advance payment for materials or equipment until the materials or equipment are delivered to Owner's site or the agreed-upon off-site storage. Failure to follow these procedures shall result in nonpayment for storage of or insurance on stored materials and equipment. Failure to follow these procedures shall also result in nonpayment of materials and equipment until said materials and equipment are incorporated into the Work.

CONTRACTOR AGREES TO INDEMNIFY OWNER FROM ANY LOSS RESULTING FROM A BREACH OF THIS SECTION. Any off-site storage shall be in a bonded warehouse, suitably marked for the individual project, in addition to the requirements above

§ 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work. Neither Contractor nor any of its materialmen, laborers, or Subcontractors shall have any lien rights against the Owner's lands, building funds, materials or other property. No materialmen, laborers or Subcontractor of the Contractor shall have any enforceable rights against the Owner of this Contract. Materialmen, laborers and Subcontractors of the Contractor may have rights under any Payment Bond provided by the Contractor, but cannot look to the Owner for any help in enforcement of those rights. CONTRACTOR SHALL WAIVE, RELEASE, INDEMNIFY, AND HOLD OWNER HARMLESS FROM ANY LIENS, CLAIMS, SECURITY INTERESTS OR ENCUMBRANCES FILED BY THE CONTRACTOR, SUBCONTRACTORS, OR ANYONE CLAIMING BY, THROUGH, OR UNDER THE CONTRACTOR OR SUBCONTRACTOR FOR ITEMS COVERED BY PAYMENTS MADE BY THE OWNER TO CONTRACTOR.

9.3.4 Contractor shall submit Applications for Payment, in quadruplicate, using AIA Documents G702 and G703 Application and Certificate of Payment (or G702CMa, if applicable) and Continuation Sheet or electronically, if acceptable to Owner. All blanks in the form must be completed and signatures of Contractor and Notary Public must be original on each form. Incomplete or inaccurate Applications for Payment shall be returned to the Contractor by the Architect for completion and/or correction. Owner shall have no responsibility for payment of same if the Application for Payment is incomplete or inaccurate.

9.3.5 By signing each Application for Payment, the Contractor stipulates and certifies to the following; that the information presented is true, correct, accurate, and complete; that the Contractor has made the necessary detailed examinations, audits, and arithmetic verifications; that the submitted Work has been completed to the extent represented in the Applications for Payment; that the materials and supplies identified in the Applications for Payment have been purchased, paid for, and received; that the subcontractors have been paid as identified in the Applications for Payment or that Contractor has been invoiced for same; that Contactor has made the necessary on-site inspections to confirm the accuracy of the Applications for Payment; that there are no known mechanics' or materialmens' liens outstanding at the date of the Applications for Payment; that all due and payable bills with respect to the Work have been paid to date or are included in the amount requested in the current Payment Application; that, except for such bills not paid but so included, there is no known basis for the filing of any mechanics' or materialmens' liens on the Work; that the Payment Application includes only Work self-performed by Contractor or for which Contractor has been invoiced; and that releases from all Subcontractors and materialmen have been obtained in such form as to constitute an effective release of lien under the laws of the State of Texas, covering all Work performed and for which payment has been made by the Owner to the Contractor. Contractor understands that documents submitted to Owner become government documents under the laws of the State of Texas. Contractor further understands that falsification of Contractor's Applications for Payment may constitute a violation of the penal laws of the State of Texas, including, but not limited to, Texas Penal Code Sections 32.46; 37.09, and 37.10, and may justify termination of Contractor's Contract with Owner. Contractor further understands and agrees that falsification of documents may entitle Owner to restitution as permitted by Texas law and these Contract Documents.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment

§ 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, carefully evaluate and review the Applications for Payment and, when appropriate, return the Applications for Payment to the Contractor as provided in Section 9.3.4. If the Applications for Payment are complete, then the Architect shall sign and either (1) certify and issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Applications for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) certify and issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect and Program Manager determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Architect's or Program Manager reasons for withholding certification and disputing in part certification as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Applications for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner in writing with a detailed statement of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole in accordance with Texas Government Code Section 2251.042(a), and as provided in Section 9.5.1. Architect's written reason for withholding certification shall be submitted in accordance with, and construed as the notice required by Texas Government Code Section 2251.042 *et. seq.* Owner may not withhold from payments more than 110% of the disputed amount.

§ 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect or Program Manager to the Owner, ~~based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment,~~ that the Architect has observed the progress of the Work and determined that, in the Architect's professional opinion, ~~to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief,~~ the Work has progressed to the point indicated, and the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents. Further, the issuance of the Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect or Program Manager to the Owner that the Architect or Program Manager has carefully evaluated and certified that the amounts requested in the Applications for Payment are valid and correct and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect or Program Manager in writing to the Owner. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect and Program Manager has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data unless requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum. Examinations, audits, and verifications, if required by the Owner, will be performed by the Owner's accountants or other representatives of the Owner acting in the sole interest of the Owner.

9.4.3 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment shall constitute a recommendation to the Owner regarding the amount to be paid. This recommendation is not binding on the Owner if Owner knows of other reasons under the Contract Documents why payment should be withheld.

§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

§ 9.5.1 The Architect or Program Manager may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's or Program Manager's opinion the representations to the Owner ~~required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made~~. If the Architect or Program Manager is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect or Program Manager will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect or Program Manager cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect or Program Manager will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect ~~t~~ or Program Manager may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's or Program Manager's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- **.1** defective Work not remedied;
- **.2** third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- **.3** failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- **.4** reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- **.5** damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

.6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; ~~or~~

.7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents; or

.8 failure to submit a written plan indicating action by the Contractor to regain the time schedule for completion of Work within the Contract time.

§ 9.5.2 When ~~either party~~the Contractor disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, ~~that party~~the Contractor may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 Architect's written reason for withholding certification shall be construed as the notice required by Texas Government Code Section 2251.042 *et seq*~~When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld~~.

§ 9.5.4 Notwithstanding any provision contained within this Article, if the Work has not attained Substantial Completion or Final Completion by the required dates, subject to extensions of time allowed under the Contract Documents, ~~If~~ then Architect or Program Manager may withhold~~s~~ any further ~~c~~Certificate~~ion~~ for ~~p~~Payment ~~under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the~~ from Contractor to the extent necessary to preserve sufficient funds to complete construction of the Project and to cover liquidated damages. ~~failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If t~~The Owner shall not be deemed in default by reason of withholding ~~makes~~ payment~~s~~ as provided in Sections 9.3.4, 9.4.3, 9.5.1, or this Section ~~by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment~~.

§ 9.6 Progress Payments

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment for undisputed amounts in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect. Owner shall notify Contractor within 21 days if Owner disputes the Architect's Certificate of Payment pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.042 *et seq*, listing the specific reason for nonpayment. Payments to the Contractor shall not be construed as releasing the Contractor or his Surety from any obligations under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than ~~seven~~ ten days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner. In compliance with Texas Government Code Section 2251.022, the Contractor shall, within ten (10) days following receipt of payment from the Owner, pay all bills for labor and materials performed and furnished by others in connection with the Work, and shall, if requested, provide the Owner with evidence of such payment. Contractor shall include a provision in each of its subcontracts imposing the same payment obligations on its Subcontractors as are applicable to the Contractor hereunder, and if the Owner so requests, shall provide to the Owner copies of such Subcontractor payments. If the Contractor has failed to make payments promptly to the Contractor's Subcontractors or for materials or labor used in the Work for which the Owner has made payment to the Contractor, then the Owner shall be entitled to withhold payment to the Contractor, in part or in whole, to the extent necessary to protect the Owner. This Section is subject to the provisions of Texas Business and Commerce Code Chapter 56.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner, Program Manager nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier~~, except as may otherwise be required by law~~. Any action taken by Owner to require the Contractor to pay a Subcontractor shall not impose any liability on Owner to the Subcontractor or supplier.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 ~~Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision~~. Payments received by the Contractor from the Owner for Work properly performed by Subcontractors, or materials properly provided by suppliers, shall be held in trust by the Contractor for the benefit of those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor. Texas Property Code § 162.001.

§ 9.6.8 ~~Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, t~~THE CONTRACTOR SHALL DEFEND AND INDEMNIFY THE OWNER FROM ALL LOSS, LIABILITY, DAMAGE OR EXPENSE, INCLUDING REASONABLE ATTORNEY'S FEES AND LITIGATION EXPENSES, ARISING OUT OF ANY LIEN CLAIM OR OTHER CLAIM FOR PAYMENT BY ANY SUBCONTRACTOR OR SUPPLIER OF ANY TIER. UPON RECEIPT OF NOTICE OF A LIEN CLAIM OR OTHER CLAIM FOR PAYMENT, THE OWNER SHALL NOTIFY THE CONTRACTOR. IF APPROVED BY THE APPLICABLE COURT, WHEN REQUIRED, THE CONTRACTOR MAY SUBSTITUTE A SURETY BOND FOR THE PROPERTY AGAINST WHICH THE LIEN OR OTHER CLAIM FOR PAYMENT HAS BEEN ASSERTED.

9.6.9 Contractor shall not withhold as retainage a greater percentage from Subcontractors or materialmen than the percentage that Owner withheld as retainage from payments to Contractor.

§ 9.7 Failure of Payment

9.7.1 ~~If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or~~ Pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.051, if the Owner does not pay the Contractor any payment certified by the Architect and Program Manager, which is undisputed, due and owing ~~within seven days~~ after the date the payment is due under the Contract Documents ~~established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution~~, then the Contractor ~~may~~, upon ~~s~~ten~~ven~~ (10) additional days' written notice to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect, that payment has not been made and the Contractor intends to suspend performance for nonpayment, may stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. ~~The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents~~If the Owner provides written notice to the Contractor that: 1) payment has been made; or 2) a bona fide dispute for payment exists, listing the specific reasons for nonpayment, then Contractor shall be liable for damages resulting from suspension of the Work. If a reason specified is that labor, services, or materials provided by the Contractor are not provided in compliance with the Contract Documents, then the Contractor shall be provided a reasonable opportunity to cure the noncompliance or to compensate Owner for any failure to cure the noncompliance. No amount shall be added to the Contract Sum as a result of a dispute between Owner and Contractor unless and until such dispute is resolved in Contractor's favor.

9.7.2 ~~If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment within seven (7) days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, then the Contractor shall provide written notice to the Owner, and the Owner shall have fourteen (14) business days after receipt of such notice to provide or obtain a Certificate for Payment. If Owner fails to provide or obtain the Certificate for Payment, then the Contractor may, upon fourteen (14) additional business days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the undisputed amount owing has been received.~~[*Intentionally deleted*]

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

9.7.3 If the Owner is entitled to reimbursement or payment from the Contractor under or pursuant to the Contract Documents, then such payment shall be made promptly upon demand by the Owner. Notwithstanding anything contained in the Contract Documents to the contrary, if the Contractor fails to promptly make any payment due to Owner, pursuant to the Contractor, or if the Owner incurs any costs and expenses to cure any default of the Contractor or to correct defective Work, then the Owner shall have an absolute right to offset such amount against the Contract Sum and, in the Owner's sole discretion and without waiving any other remedies, may elect either to:

.1 deduct an amount equal to that which the Owner is entitled from any payment then or thereafter due to Contractor form the Owner, or

.2 issue a written notice to the Contractor reducing the Contract Sum by an amount equal to that which the Owner is entitled.

§ 9.8 Substantial Completion

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use; all Project systems included in the Work or designated portion thereof have been successfully tested and are fully operational; all required governmental inspections and certifications required by the Work have been made, approved, and posted; designated initial instruction of Owner's personnel in the operation of Project systems has been completed; and all the required finishes set out in the Construction Documents are in place. The only remaining Work shall be minor in nature so that the Owner can occupy the Work or the applicable portion of the Work for all of its intended purposes on that date; and the completion of the Work by the Contractor will not materially interfere with or hamper Owner's, or Owners' tenant normal school operations, or other intended use. As a further condition of a determination of Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall certify that all remaining Work with respect thereto will be completed within the time specified by the Contract Documents for Final Completion. As provided in the Contract Documents, Owner may occupy a portion of the facility prior to Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Architect and Program Manager shall prepare ~~shall prepare~~ and a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect and Program Manager will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, then the Architect shall so notify the Contractor, Program Manager and Owner in writing, and the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion. Except with the consent of the Owner, the Architect shall perform no more than five (5) inspections to determine whether the Work or a designated portion thereof has attained Substantial Completion in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for any additional inspections.

§ 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will timely prepare, sign and issue Owner's ~~a~~ Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of ~~Substantial~~ Final Completion of the Work or designated portion ~~thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion~~.

§ 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. ~~Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

9.8.6 The Contractor shall keep all required insurance in full force, and utilities on, until the Certificate of Substantial Completion is issued, and accepted by the Owner in writing, regardless of the stated date of Substantial Completion, subject to 11.2.2. Acceptance shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when ~~such portion is designated by separate agreement with~~agreed to by the Owner and the Contractor ~~in writing, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and~~ authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the ~~Project~~Work. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided that the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work resulting from such occupancy, use or installation, and property and liability insurance, ~~and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2.~~ Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect. Contractor agrees that the Owner may place and install as much equipment and furnishings as is possible before completion or partial completion of portions of the Work.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy, ~~or~~ use, or installation, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless ~~otherwise~~ expressly agreed upon in writing, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work or installation of furnishings and equipment shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents, nor shall it constitute evidence of Substantial Completion or Final Completion.

9.9.4 In the event that Owner takes partial occupancy or installs furnishings and equipment prior to Substantial Completion of the Project. Contractor shall obtain an endorsement to Contractor's Builder's Risk Policy to provide extended coverage for partial occupancy if Contractor's Builder's Risk Coverage required by Article 11 would not otherwise provide such coverage.

§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect and the Program Manager finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect and the Program Manager will promptly prepare, sign, and issue Owner's Certificate of Final Completion and a final Certificate for Payment ~~stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief,~~ certifying to the Owner that, ~~and~~ on the basis of the Architect's and the Program Manager's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance, including all retainages, found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's and the Program Manager final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled. Final payment shall be made by the Owner in accordance with Owner's regular schedule for payments. Architect is not required to perform more than two inspections to determine whether a designated portion of the Work has attained Final Completion in accordance with the Contract Documents. One inspection may require multiple visits and more than one day to complete The Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for any additional inspections cause by act or commission of Contractor.

9.10.1.1 Final Completion means actual completion of the Work, including any extras or Change Orders reasonably required or contemplated under the Contract Documents other than warranty work as further defined in the Form of Contractor's Final Completion Notice attached hereto and incorporated herein as Exhibit "D

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) using AIA Document G706, an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) ~~a certificate~~ evidencing satisfactory to Owner that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) using AIA Document G707, consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) ~~if required by the Owner,~~ except for amounts previously withheld by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as AIA Document G706A, notarized subcontractor's lien releases, receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees. In addition, the following items must be completed and received by the Owner before Final Payment will be due:

.1 Written certifications required by Sections 10.5, 10.6, and 10.7;
.2 Final list of subcontractors (AIA Document G705);
.3 Contractor's certification in Texas Education Agency's Certification of Project Compliance, located at www.tea.state.tx.us/school.finance/facilities/cert_2004.pdf;
.4 Contractor's warranties, organized as required elsewhere in the Contract Documents;
.5 Maintenance and Instruction Manuals;
.6 Owner's Final Completion Certificate; and
.7 "As-constructed record drawings." At the completion of the Project, the Contractor shall submit one (1) complete set of "as-constructed" record drawings, with all changes made during construction, including concealed mechanical, electrical, and plumbing items. The Contractor shall submit these as electronic, sepia, or other acceptable medium, in the discretion of the Owner. The "as-constructed" record drawings shall delete the seal of the Architect and/or the Engineer and any reference to those firms providing professional services to the Owner, except for historical or reference purposes.

Documents identified as affidavits must be notarized. All manuals will contain an index listing the information submitted. The Index section will be divided and identified by tabbing each section as listed in the index. Upon request, the Architect will furnish the Contractor with blank copies of the forms listed above. Final payment shall be paid by the Owner to the Contractor within thirty (30) days after Owner's Board of Trustees has voted to accept the Work and approve Final Payment.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, ~~except that~~and it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall not constitute a waiver of any Claims by the Owner~~, except those arising from~~

~~.1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;~~
~~.2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;~~
~~.3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or~~
~~.4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.~~

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously asserted pursuant to Article 15~~made in writing~~ and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract and shall conform to all provisions of the "Manual of Accident Prevention in Construction," published by the Associated General Contractors of America, Inc., latest edition, and the Contractor further agrees to fully comply with all safety standards required by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration ("OSHA") 29 U.S.C. Section 651 *et seq*., and all amendments thereto. However, the Contractor's duties herein shall not relieve any Subcontractor or any other person or entity, including any person or entity required to comply with all applicable federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations, and ordinances from the obligation to provide for the safety of their employees, persons, and property and their requirements to maintain a work environment free of recognized hazards. Contractor shall provide reasonable fall protection safeguards and provide approved fall protection safety equipment for use by all exposed Contractor employees.

10.1.2 Contractor's employees, agents, Subcontractors, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, shall not perform any service for Owner while under the influence of any amount of alcohol or any illegal controlled substance; or use, possess, distribute, or sell alcoholic beverages while on Owner's premises. No person shall: use, possess, distribute, or sell illegal or nonprescribed controlled drugs or drug paraphernalia; misuse legitimate prescription or over-the-counter drugs; or act in contravention of warnings on medications while performing the Work or while on Owner's premises. Contractor's employees, agents, Subcontractors, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, shall not distribute or sell alcohol or drugs of any kind to Owner's students or staff, regardless of the location of the distribution or sale.

10.1.3 Contractor will comply with all applicable federal, state, and local drug and alcohol-related laws and regulations (e.g., Department of Transportation regulations, Drug-Free Workplace Act). Contractor has adopted or will adopt its own policy to assure a drug-free and alcohol-free workplace while on Owner's premises or performing the Work. Contractor will remove any of its employees, agents, subcontractors, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, from performing the Work any time there is suspicion of alcohol and/or drug use, possession, or impairment involving such person, and at any time an incident occurs where drug or alcohol use could have been a contributing factor. Owner has the right to require Contractor to remove any person from performing the Work any time cause exists to suspect alcohol or drug use. In such cases, the person so removed may only be considered for return to work after the Contractor certifies, as a result of a for-cause test, conducted immediately following removal, that said person was in compliance with this Contract. Contractor will not use any person to perform the Work who fails or refuses to take, or tests positive on, any for-cause alcohol or drug test.

10.1.4 Owner has also banned the presence of all weapons on the Project site, whether or not the owner thereof has a permit for a weapon, and Contractor agrees that Contractor's representatives, employees, agents, and subcontractors will abide by same. Weapons may only be permitted in Owner's parking lots if weapons are locked in personal vehicles in Owner's parking lot.

§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- **.1** employees on the Work, school personnel, students, and other persons on Owner's premises, and other persons who may be affected thereby, including the installation of fencing between the Work site and any connecting or adjacent property of Owner, when required by Texas Education Code Section 22.08341;
- **.2** the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- **.3** other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as other buildings, and their contents, fencing, trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, athletic fields, facilities and tracks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including installing fencing, posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards. The Contractor shall also be responsible, at the Contractor's sole cost and expense, for all measures necessary to protect any personal or real property adjacent to the project and improvements therein. Any damage to such property or improvements shall be promptly repaired by the Contractor.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of ~~explosives or other~~ hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel and shall only conduct such activities after giving reasonable advance written notice of the presence or use of such materials, equipment, or methods to Owner and ~~Architect~~. The storage of explosives on Owner's property is prohibited. The use of explosive materials on Owner's property is prohibited unless expressly approved in advance in advance by authorities having jurisdiction, in writing, by Owner and Architect. When use or storage of hazardous materials or equipment or unusual construction methods are necessary, the Contractor shall give the Owner, Program Manager and the Architect reasonable advance notice of the presence or use of such materials, equipment or methods.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3, ~~,~~ except damage or loss attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. ~~The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor.~~ The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect. Additionally, Contractor shall submit a Safety Plan for the Owner's approval prior to commencing the Work.

Unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents, Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, supervising, and enforcing all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. It shall be the duty and responsibility of the Contractor and all of its Subcontractors to be familiar and comply with all requirements of ~~Public Law 91-596,~~ 29 U.S.C. §§ 651 *et. Sseq.*, the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, (OSHA) and all amendments thereto, and to enforce and comply with all of the provisions of the Act. Contractor shall comply with all applicable laws and regulations of any public body having jurisdiction for safety of persons or property to protect them from damage, injury or loss and shall erect and maintain all necessary safeguards for such safety and protection. However, the Contractor's duties shall not relieve any subcontractor(s) or any other person or entity (e.g., a supplier) including any person or entity with liability relative to compliance with all applicable federal, state and local laws, rules, regulations, and ordinances which shall include the obligation to provide for the safety of their employees, persons, and property and their requirements to maintain a work environment free of recognized hazards.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not load or permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

10.2.8 The Contractor shall do all things reasonably necessary to protect the Owner's premises and all persons from damage and injury when all or a portion of the Work is suspended for any reason.

10.2.9 The Contractor shall promptly report, in writing, to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect all accidents arising out of or in connection with the Work which causes death, bodily injury, or property damage, giving full details and statements of any witnesses. In addition, if death, serious bodily injuries, or serious property damages are caused, then the accident shall be reported immediately by any means necessary to give actual notice to the Owner's representative, Program Manager and the Architect.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

10.2.10 Contractor's obligations under Section 10.2 as to each portion of the Project shall continue until Owner takes possession of and occupies that portion of the Project.

§ 10.2.11~~8~~ Injury or Damage to Person or Property

If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The written notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter. Contractor understands and acknowledges that, under Texas law, Owner has sovereign and/or governmental immunity as to all torts except as to the Owner's permitted use or operation of Owner's motor vehicles, subject to any defenses under law.

§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify, in writing, the Owner and Architect of the condition. In the event the Contractor encounters polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), and the specifications require the PCB's removal, the Contractor shall remove the PCB and store it in marked containers at the jobsite provided by the Owner. If PCBs are found which are leaking, then Contractor shall stop work on the affected fixture and shall contact Owner for removal and disposal of the leaking PCBs.

10.3.1.1 In the event Contractor encounters on the Project site any Hazardous Substance, or what Contractor may reasonably believe to be a Hazardous Substance, and which is being introduced to the Work, or exists on the Project site, in a manner in violation of any applicable Environmental Laws, Contractor shall immediately stop work in the area affected and report the condition to Owner, Program Manager and Architect in writing

§ 10.3.2 The Work in the affected area shall not thereafter be resumed except by written authorization of Owner if in fact a Hazardous Substance has been encountered and has not been rendered harmless. Contractor shall be responsible for the consequences of any failure to stop work under this Subparagraph 10.3. ~~Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up~~The Contractor may be entitled to an equitable adjustment regarding the Date of Substantial Completion and/or Final Completion.

§ 10.3.3 IF THE CONTRACTOR IMPORTS HAZARDOUS MATERIALS ONTO THE PROJECT SITE, THEN CONTRACTOR HEREBY ~~TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, THE OWNER SHALL~~ INDEMNIFIES~~Y~~ AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER, ITS ~~CONTRACTOR, SUBCONTRACTORS, ARCHITECT, ARCHITECT'S~~ CONSULTANTS, TRUSTEES, OFFICERS, ~~AND~~ PROGRAM MANAGER, AGENTS AND EMPLOYEES ~~OF ANY OF THEM FROM AND~~ AGAINST ANY CLAIMS~~, DAMAGES, LOSSES, AND EXPENSES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ATTORNEYS' FEES~~, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO ~~RESULTING FROM~~SUCH IMPORTATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ~~PERFORMANCE OF THE WORK IN THE AFFECTED AREA IF IN FACT THE MATERIAL OR SUBSTANCE PRESENTS THE RISK OF BODILY INJURY OR DEATH AS DESCRIBED IN SECTION 10.3.1 AND HAS NOT BEEN RENDERED HARMLESS, PROVIDED THAT SUCH CLAIM, DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

~~ATTRIBUTABLE TO BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE OR DEATH, OR TO INJURY TO OR DESTRUCTION OF TANGIBLE PROPERTY (OTHER THAN THE WORK ITSELF), EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS DUE TO THE FAULT OR NEGLIGENCE OF THE PARTY SEEKING INDEMNITY~~COSTS AND EXPENSES THE OWNER INCURS FOR REMEDIATION OF A MATERIAL OR SUBSTANCE THE CONTRACTOR BRINGS TO THE SITE, AS PROVIDED FOR IN SUBPARAGRAPH 3.18.

~~For purposes of this Agreement, the term "Hazardous Substance" shall mean and include any element, constituent, chemical, substance, compound, or mixture, which are defined as a hazardous substance by any applicable local, state or federal law, rule, ordinance, by-law, or regulation pertaining to environmental regulation, contamination, clean-up or disclosure, including, without limitation, The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 ("CERCLA"), The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act ("RCRA"), The Toxic Substance Control Act ("TSCA"), The Clean Water Act ("CWA"), The Clean Air Act ("CAA"), and the Marine Protection Research and Sanctuaries Act ("MPRSA"). The Occupational Safety and Health Act ("OSHA"), The Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 ("SARA"), or other state superlien or environmental clean-up or disclosure statutes including all state and local counterparts of such laws (all such laws, rules and regulations being referred to collectively as "Environmental Laws"). It is the Contractor's responsibility to comply with this Paragraph 10.3 based on the law in effect at the time its services are rendered and to comply with any amendments to those laws for all services rendered after the effective date of any such amendments.~~

§ 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site ~~unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances~~.

§ 10.3.5 For purposes of this ~~Agreement~~Contract, the term "Hazardous Substance" shall mean and include any element, constituent, chemical, substance, compound, or mixture, which are defined as a hazardous substance by any applicable local, state or federal law, rule, ordinance, by-law, or regulation pertaining to environmental regulation, contamination, clean-up or disclosure, including, without limitation, The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 ("CERCLA"), The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act ("RCRA"), The Toxic Substance Control Act ("TSCA"), The Clean Water Act ("CWA"), The Clean Air Act ("CAA"), and the Marine Protection Research and Sanctuaries Act ("MPRSA"). The Occupational Safety and Health Act ("OSHA"), The Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 ("SARA"), or other state superlien or environmental clean-up or disclosure statutes including all state and local counterparts of such laws (all such laws, rules and regulations being referred to collectively as "Environmental Laws"). It is the Contractor's responsibility to comply with this Paragraph 10.3 based on the law in effect at the time its services are rendered and to comply with any amendments to those laws for all services rendered after the effective date of any such amendments.~~The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.~~

§ 10.3.6 In those instances in which the presence of a Hazardous Substance was set forth in the AHERA documents or In which the Contractor has other written notice of such through information given to Contractor by Owner or its representative prior to execution of the ~~Agreement~~Contract, Contractor shall not be entitled to a Claim for any delays, disruption or interference it encounters. In those instances of Work stoppage due to the existence of such Hazardous Substances which were not set forth in the AHERA plans and of which the Contractor has no other prior notice, Contractor may be entitled to a Claim for delay or Work stoppage if the requirements of Article 15 are not met. ~~If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.~~

§ 10.4 Emergencies

10.4.1 In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.~~Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

10.4.2 The performance of the foregoing services by the Contractor shall not relieve the subcontractors of their responsibility for the safety of persons and property and or compliance with all federal, state, and local statutes, rules, regulations, and orders of any governmental authority applicable to the conduct of the Work.

10.5 ASBESTOS OR ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

10.5.1 Contractor shall submit to the Architect a written certification addressed to the Owner that all materials used in the construction of this Project contain less than 0.10% by weight of asbestos and for which it can be demonstrated that, under reasonably foreseeable job site conditions, will not release asbestos fibers in excess of 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter. The written certification shall further state that, should asbestos fibers be found at this Project in concentrations greater than 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter, then Contractor shall be responsible for determining which materials contain asbestos fibers and shall take all necessary corrective action to remove those materials from the Project, at no additional cost to the Owner. The written certification shall be dated, shall reference this specific Project, and shall be signed by not less than two (2) officers of the Contractors.

10.5.2 Final Payment shall not be made until this written certification has been received.

10.6 LEAD-FREE MATERIAL IN POTABLE WATER SYSTEM

10.6.1 Prior to payment of retainage and final payment, the Contractor and each subcontractor involved with the potable water system, shall furnish a written certification that the potable water system is "lead-free."

10.6.2 The written certification shall further state that should lead be found in the potable water system built under this Project, then Contractor shall be responsible for determining which materials contain lead and shall take all necessary corrective action to remove lead from the Project, at no additional cost to the Owner. The written certification shall be dated, shall reference this specific Project, and shall be signed by not less than two (2) officers of the Contractor.

10.7 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS CERTIFICATION

The Contractor shall provide written certification that no materials used in the Work contain lead or asbestos materials in them in excess of amounts allowed by federal, state, or local standards, laws, codes, rules and regulations; the Federal Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) standards; and/or the Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) standards, whichever is most restrictive. The Contractor shall provide this written certification as part of submittals under the Section in the Project Manual related to Contract Closeout.

ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

11.0.1 No Work will be commenced, and no equipment or materials can be shipped, until all requirements of this Article have been satisfied, satisfactory evidence of insurance has been provided, and all insurance is in full force and effect. Contractor shall notify Owner, Program Manager and Architect, in writing, of any proposed nonconformity with these requirements, and shall notify Owner, Program Manager and Architect, in writing, of any insurance changes which occur during the terms required under the Contract Documents. Any deviation from these requirements can only be approved by Owner's Board of Trustees. Any nonconformity may be grounds for termination or modification of the Contract. To the extent that Contractor is unable to procure the insurance designated herein because the insurance is not reasonably available or is cost-prohibitive, then Contractor shall provide written notice to Owner's Board of Trustees. Said lack of insurance may then be grounds for termination or modification of this Contract.

11.0.2 Satisfactory evidence of insurance required by this Article shall be provided to Owner, Program Manager and Architect not later than five (5) business days after execution of the Contract by Contractor. Satisfactory evidence shall include copies of all required insurance policies, declarations, and endorsements themselves. In addition, Contractor shall also provide a duly-executed ACORD Form 25 Certificate of Liability Insurance naming Owner as a certificate holder and additional insured (except as noted in Section 11.0.4) and attaching all endorsements required herein. The Contractor shall furnish Owner all insurance amendments, renewals, notices, cancellations, and additional endorsements, as they are provided to Contractor.

11.0.3 All insurance required herein shall be obtained from a company licensed to do business with the State of Texas by the Texas Department of Insurance, and shall be underwritten by a company rated no less than "A-" X in A.M. Best's Key Rating Guide, Property-Casualty, according to the latest posted ratings available on A.M. Best's website, www.ambest.com, and that permits waivers of subrogation.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

11.0.4 ~~All insurance required herein shall name the Owner, its officers, employees, representatives, or agents, as an additional insured, except Contractor's Worker's Compensation insurance.~~ All liability insurance required herein shall name Dallas ISD, it's officers, employees, volunteers, elected officials, Program Managers, Architects and their officers, employees, representatives, risk management consultants, or agents, as additional insureds, except Contractor's Worker's Compensation insurance and Professional Liability insurance.

11.0.5 ~~All insurance required herein shall, by endorsement, be primary and non-contributory insurance with respect to the Owner, its officers, employees, representatives, or agents. All insurance shall be written on an occurrence basis, if available, and shall contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner as provided for in Section 11.3.~~ All insurance required herein shall be primary insurance as respects the additional insured required by 11.0.4. Any insurance maintained by an additional insured shall be in excess of such insurance and shall not contribute with such primary insurance. All insurance shall be written on an occurrence basis where reasonably available, with the exception of professional liability policies, and shall contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of- the Owner, Program Manager, and Architect on all claims arising out of the Project. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, or did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly; and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged.

11.0.6 Any failure of Contractor to comply with the reporting provision of the policies shall not affect the coverage provided to the Owner, its officers, employees, representatives, or agents.

11.0.7 All workers on the Project must be covered by the required insurance policies of the Contractor or a Subcontractor. Contractor shall be responsible for all policy deductibles and self-insured retentions.

11.0.8 Nothing contained in this Article shall limit or waive Contractor's legal or contractual responsibilities to Owner or others. Contractor will cooperate with Owner or its designated representative to expeditiously resolve claims involving injuries to third parties, damage to the Work, or project delays. This cooperation will include providing Owner with monthly insurance carrier summary reports of builder's risk, general liability, professional liability and pollution liability claims pertaining to the Owner's projects. Contractor will provide Owner with Contractor and insurance carrier contact names and phone numbers. Contractor will be responsible for timely reporting of all claims and regulatory requirements, including MMSEA Section 111.

11.0.9. Maximum Allowable Charges for CMAR CCIP Programs

In the event that the Contractor elects to utilize a Contractor Controlled Insurance Program (CCIP) the maximum to be considered reimbursable costs under this Contract will be 2% of the final Cost of the Work (including general conditions costs) but not including Contractor Fee or CCIP charges and not including the costs of any subcontracts that included the cost of insurance covered by CCIP.

This 2% cost factor will cover all insurance required to be carried by the prime contractor and all applicable subcontractors covered by this Contract (specifically 1% for worker's compensation insurance, and 1% total for general liability insurance, excess liability insurance, and umbrella liability insurance combined).

Any contractor costs incurred in connection with the Contractor's elected CCIP program that exceeds the amount reimbursed by the Owner under the formula in this section, will be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee. Note: Contractor will not be reimbursed for any deductible stated in the CCIP policy. The deductible is considered covered by the CCIP percent and/or the Contractor Fee.

11.0.10 Maximum Allowable Charges for CMAR Liability Insurance Required by Contract

For jobs not covered by Owner Controlled Insurance Programs (OCIP) or Contractor Controlled Insurance Programs (CCIP), the amount to be reimbursed to the Contractor for all contractually required liability insurance (professional liability, general liability, umbrella liability, excess liability, and auto liability will be actual costs not to exceed a total of .~~65~~% of the net reimbursable Cost of Work (not including liability insurance and not including Contractor Fee.) If the Contractor's cost of contractually required liability insurance is greater than the amount agreed to be reimbursed per this Contract provision, the difference shall be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee. For

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

jobs covered by CCIP or OCIP, the costs of any other liability insurance will be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee.

11.0.11 Maximum Allowable Charges for Subcontract Default Insurance provided by CMAR in lieu of Subcontract Performance Bonds

In the event that Contractor elects to utilize a subcontractor default insurance program (sometimes referred to as SUBGUARD), the maximum amount to be considered reimbursable costs under this Contract will be .75% of the total amount of subcontracts enrolled in such an insurance program. Reimbursement for enrollment in any such program will be limited to subcontracts in excess of $~~2~~500,000.

Any Contractor costs incurred in connection with the Contractor's elected subcontractor default insurance program that exceeds the amount reimbursed by the Owner under the formula in this section, will be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee. In the event that Contractor elects to bond selected subcontractors rather than enroll them in the subcontractor default insurance program, the net cost to purchase any such bonds will be reimbursed in lieu of the .75%. Note: Contractor will not be reimbursed for any deductible stated in the Subguard policy. The deductible is considered covered by the .75% and/or the Contractor Fee.

In the event that the Contractor elects to provide Subguard or a similar program of subcontractor default insurance, then the program and the coverage provided by the Contractor shall extend to any additional costs incurred by the Contractor to replace or supplement the forces of a subcontractor to provide the Work, and such circumstances shall include, but not be limited to, any partial or full termination of the contract of a subcontractor for convenience or otherwise, unless the Owner specifically directs the Contractor, in writing, to terminate the contract of a subcontractor for convenience.

§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

§ 11.1.1 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall purchase and maintain, in a company or companies with a "Best Rating" of "A minus" or better, and licensed to do business in the State of Texas, such insurance as will protect, the Contractor, them and the Owner, Program Manager and Architect~~the Owner~~, from claims that may arise out of, or result from, the Contractor's operations under the Contract, whether such operations be by Contractor or by any Subcontractor, or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, at a minimum of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in this Section 11.1, in the ~~Agreement~~Contract or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. ~~The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required~~ Such insurance shall include the following:~~from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.~~

.1 Claims under workers' compensation, disability benefit, and other similar employee benefit acts that are applicable to the Work to be performed, including private entities performing work at the site, and exempt from the coverage on account of number of employees or occupation, which entities shall maintain voluntary compensation coverage at the same limit specified for mandatory coverage for the duration of the Project (see Exhibit A).

.2 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of the Contractor's employees;

.3 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than the Contractor's employees;

.4 Claims for damages insured by usual personal injury liability coverage;

.5 Claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom;

.6 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, death of a person, or property damages arising out of ownership, maintenance, or use of a motor vehicle;

.7 Claims for bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations;

.8 Claims involving contractual liability insurance applicable to the Contractor's obligations under the Contract Documents, including under Section 3.18;

.9 Claims for Products, Premises and Operations; and

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

.10 Claims for damages to the Work itself, through builder's risk insurance, pursuant to AIA A101-2017, Exhibit A, or AIA A133-2019, Exhibit ~~B~~A.

§ 11.1.2 The insurance required by Subparagraph 11.1.1 shall be written for not less than limits of liability specified in the Contract Documents or required by law, whichever coverage is greater. Coverages, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from date of commencement of the Work until date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment, and with respect to the Contractor's completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work or for such other period for maintenance of completed operations coverage as specified in the Contract Documents.~~The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.~~

~~8. Contractor's Professional Liability, if applicable~~

~~If the Work performed by the Contractor or its subcontractors will include some responsibility for design, the Contractor will purchase or cause to be purchased and maintained a professional liability policy. The limits of coverage will not be less than:~~

~~$1,000,000 each claim and annual aggregate~~

~~Coverage will include:~~
~~A waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect~~
~~A retroactive date that is the earlier of the start of design or the Work~~
~~Coverage for negligent acts, errors or omissions arising out of design or engineering services~~
~~An extended reporting period of 5 years after final completion~~

9. All Risk Builder's Risk Insurance, if applicable

If Contractor is a Construction Manager-at-Risk, then, as specified in Amendment Number One, in a total amount equal to the Guaranteed Maximum Price; otherwise, in the total amount of the Contract Sum. See Section 11.4 for Builder's Risk Insurance requirements.

11.1.2.1 The Contractor shall furnish separate payment and performance bonds covering faithful performance of the Contract and payment of obligations arising thereunder, each bond to be in a total amount equal to 100% of the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project, whichever is applicable. Provided, however, no limitation herein shall limit Contractor's liability under the Contract Documents. Except as provided below, such bond shall be furnished to Owner before any work begins and not later than five (5) business days after execution of the Contract by Owner. (If the Guaranteed Maximum Price is not known at the time that a Construction Manager at Risk contracts is awarded, then the sum of the payment and performance bonds must each be in an amount equal to the Project budget. The Construction Manager at Risk shall deliver the bonds not later than the tenth (10^{th}) day after the date of the Construction Manager at Risk executes the Contract, unless the Construction Manager at Risk furnished a bid bond or other financial security acceptable to the Owner to the District to ensure that the Construction Manager will furnish the required payment and performance bonds when the Guaranteed Maximum Price is established.) All bond shall be issued by a surety company licensed, listed and authorized to issue bonds in the State of Texas by the Texas Department of Insurance, and shall fully comply with Texas Insurance Code Section 3503.001 *et seq*. and Texas Government Code Chapter 2253, or their successors. The surety company shall have a rating of not less than "A-"X according to the latest posted ratings on the A.M. Best website, www.ambest.com. The surety company shall provide, if requested, information on bonding capacity and other projects under coverage and shall provide proof to establish adequate financial capacity for this Project. Should the bond amount be in excess of ten (10%) percent of the surety company's capital and surplus, then the surety company issuing the bond shall certify that the surety company has acquired reinsurance, in a form and amount acceptable to the Owner, to reinsure the portion of the risk that exceeds ten (10%) percent of the surety company's capital and surplus with one or more insurers who are duly authorized and admitted to do business in Texas and that amount reinsured by a reinsurer does not exceed ten (10%) percent of the reinsurer's capitals and surplus. Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner and Architect in writing if there is any change in: the rating; insolvency or receivership in any State; bankruptcy; right to do business in the State; or status of Contractor's sureties at any time until Final Completion.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

If the Contract amount is $100,000 or more, the Contractor shall furnish a Performance Bond equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Sum. If the Contract amount is $25,000 or more, the Contractor shall furnish a Payment Bond equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Sum. There shall be separate bonds, the terms of which and the sureties of which are satisfactory to the Owner and which comply with Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code, Title 10 (Vernon Supp. 1999), and all other applicable law. Contractor shall furnish a copy of the Payment Bond to each of its Subcontractors upon request. Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall permit a copy to be furnished.

11.1.2.2 Certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect shall be filed with the Owner and Architect prior to commencement of the Work. These certificates and the insurance policies required by this Paragraph 11.1 shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least thirty (30) days' prior written notice has been given to the Owner. If any of the foregoing insurance coverages are required to remain in force after final payment and are reasonably available, an additional certificate evidencing continuation of such coverage shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment as required by Subparagraph 9.10.2. Information concerning a fifty percent or greater reduction of coverage on account of revised limits or claims paid under the General Aggregate, or both shall be furnished by the Contractor to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect in writing within five (5) business days of Contractor's information and belief.

Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whose claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the limits of the insurer's liability

11.1.2.3 ~~2~~ The Contractor shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner and Architect not later than five (5) business days after execution of the Contract by Owner. All bonds will be reviewed by the Architect for compliance with the Contract Documents. In the event that the Architect has any questions concerning the sufficiency of the bonds, the bonds will be referred to the Owner or the Owner's representative with Architect's recommendation.

11.1.2.3 4 All bonds shall be originals. The Contractor shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required Bonds on behalf of the Surety to affix thereto a certified and current copy of the power-of-attorney. The name, address, and telephone number of a contact person for the bonding company shall be provided.

11.1.2.5 4 Bonds shall guarantee the faithful performance of all of the covenants, stipulations, and agreements of the Contract. Bonds shall be signed by an agent, resident in the State of Texas. If at any time during the continuance of the Contract, the Owner determines that the Contractor is unable to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, any of the Contractor's bonds become insufficient, the surety becomes insolvent, or the surety's rating drops below the required level, then the Owner shall have the right to require from the Contractor additional and sufficient sureties or other security acceptable to the Owner, which the Contractor shall furnish to the satisfaction of the Owner within ten (10) days after notice to do so. These contractual remedies are in addition to all remedies available by law. In default thereof, all payment or money due to the Contactor may be withheld until the Contractor provides additional surety or security.

11.1.2. -5 TEXAS WORKERS' COMPENSATION INSURANCE

A copy of a Certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the commission, or a coverage agreement (TWCC-81, TWCC-83, or TWCC-84), showing statutory worker's compensation insurance coverage for the person's or entity's employees providing services on a project is required for the duration of the Project.

Duration of the Project includes the time from the beginning of the Work on the Project until the Contractor's/person's work on the Project is required for the duration of the Project, including any Warranty Period.

Persons providing services on the Project ("subcontractor") in Texas Labor Code 406.096:
includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the Contractor has undertaken to perform on the Project, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with the Contractor and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnished persons to provide services on the Project.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Services include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. Services do not include activities unrelated to the Project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

The contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amount and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Code 401.011 (44) for all employees of the contractor providing services on the project for the duration of the Project.

The Contractor must provide a certificate of coverage to the governmental entity prior to being awarded the contract.

If the coverage period shown on the contactor's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project, the contractor must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with the governmental entity showing that coverage has been extended. The contractor shall obtain from each person providing services on a project, and provide to the governmental entity:

1. A certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning work on the project, so the governmental entity will have on file certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the project; and

2. No later than seven (7) days after receipt by the Contractor, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project.

The Contractor shall retain all required certificate of coverage for the duration of the project and for five (5) years thereafter.

The Contractor shall notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the contractor knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the project.

The Contractor shall post on each project site a notice, in the text, form, and manner prescribed by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing services on the project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

The Contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on a project, to:

1. Provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code 401.011 (44) for all its employees providing services on the project for the duration of the project.

2. Provide to the contractor, prior to that person beginning work on the project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the project for the duration of the project;

3. Provide the contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project:

4. Obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to the contractor:

   a. A certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning work on the project; and

   b. A new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project:

5. Retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the project and for five years

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

thereafter;

6. Notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days
after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project; and

7. Contractually require each person with whom it contracts to perform as required by items 1-6, with the
Certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

By signing this contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the contractor is representing to the governmental entity that all employees of the contractor who will provide services on the project will be covered by workers' compensation coverage for the duration of the project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the commission's Division of Self-Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions. The contractor's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of contract by the contractor that entitles the governmental entity to declare the contract void if the contractor does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from the governmental entity.

The coverage requirement recited above does not apply to sole proprietors, partners, and corporate officers who are excluded from coverage in an insurance policy or certificate of authority to self-insure that is delivered, issued for delivery, or renewed on or after January 1, 1996.

28 T.A.C. Section 110.110(i).

11.1.2.6 BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE

Contractor shall obtain, at its expense, a builder's risk "all-risk" or equivalent insurance policy, including boiler and machinery insurance if applicable, In the amount of the initial Contract Sum, or if applicable, Guaranteed Maximum Price, plus value of subsequent Contract modifications and cost of materials supplied or installed by others, comprising total value for the entire Work at the site on a replacement cost basis. Policy shall contain no co-insurance clause. Coverage shall insure against the perils of fire, lightning, wind storm, hurricane, hail, explosion, riot, civil commotion, smoke, aircraft, land vehicles, vandalism, malicious mischief, flood, earthquake, cold testing, collapse, subsidence, sinkhole, damage resulting from faulty workmanship or faulty materials, terrorism for certified and non-certified acts, law and ordinance coverage for renovations, and all other perils, and shall include materials stored on-site, off-site, and in transit. Owner shall be a named insured under the policy, and the insurance shall also include the interests of the Contractor, subcontractors, and sub-contractors. Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining said builder's risk insurance until the date of Substantial Completion

§ 11.1.2.7 ~~.3~~ Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

§ 11.1.2.8 ~~.4~~ Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor ~~becomes aware~~knows or should know of an impending or actual cancellation ~~or expiration~~ of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide written notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation ~~or expiration~~. Upon receipt of written notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of written notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage. At least 30 calendar days prior to the date of expiration of any policy required by Section 11.1.1, Contractor shall provide Owner written notice of the impending expiration.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 11.2 Owner's and Architect's InsuranceOwner's Insurance

§ 11.2.1 The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual liability insurance. The Owner shall be responsible for purchasinge and maintaining property and casualty insurance no later than the date of Substantial Completion and such dates of Owner responsibility shall be documented in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. TheIf Owner occupies or uses any completed or partially-completed potion of the Work at any stage, then such occupancy or use must be consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work. To the extent of overlap between Owner's property insurance and Contractor's builder's risk insurance, if any, Contractor's builder's risk shall be primary and non-contributory.shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance. If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto. Partial occupancy or use shall not commence until the insurance company providing this insurance has consented, in writing, by endorsement or otherwise. Owner and Contractor shall take reasonable steps to obtain such consent and shall take no action without written mutual consent that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of this insurance.

§ 11.2.3 Architect shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Architect's liability insurance, worker's compensation insurance, and errors and omissions insurance as provided in the Owner-Architect AgreementContract

Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance. Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation

§ 11.3.1 The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property. All insurance required herein shall contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

and Architect on all claims arising out of the Project. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise.

§ 11.3.2 ~~If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.~~ The Owner, as fiduciary, shall have power to adjust and settle any loss arising out of the Work, with insurers regardless of the purchaser of the insurance policy. The Contractor upon receipt of proceeds shall, as a fiduciary, pay all subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and by appropriate agreements shall require subcontractors to make payment to their sub-subcontractors in similar manner. The Owner shall deposit in a separate account proceeds so received, which the Owner shall distribute in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach. If after such loss no other special agreement is made and unless the Owner terminates the Contract for convenience, replacement of damaged property shall be performed by the Contractor with the insurance proceeds upon issuance of a Notice to Proceed from the Owner.

11.3.3 Partial occupancy or use shall not commence until the insurance company providing this insurance has consented in writing, by endorsement or otherwise. Owner and Contractor shall take reasonable steps to obtain such consent and shall take no action without written mutual consent that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of this insurance.

§ 11.4 Loss of Use~~,~~ and Business Interruption~~, and Delay in Completion~~ Insurance

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. ~~The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.~~

~~**11.4.3 WAIVERS OF SUBROGATION**~~

~~The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, and (3) Program Manager for damages caused by fire or other perils to the extent covered by property insurance obtained pursuant to this Section 11.4, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner as fiduciary. The foregoing waiver afforded the Architect, his agents, and employees, shall not extend the liability imposed by Section 3.18.3. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Separate Contractors, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated in this Section 11.4.3. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Architect's consultants, any separate contractors, subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees of any of them by appropriate agreements, similar waivers each in favor of the other parties enumerated herein.~~

~~11.4.4 The Contractor shall pay all subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and by appropriate agreements shall require subcontractors to make payment to their sub-subcontractors in similar manner.~~

~~11.4.5 Contractor's builder's risk insurance shall be endorsed to allow partial occupancy (permission to occupy) by Owner. Contractor shall ensure that such partial occupancy will not cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of this insurance.~~

§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss

§ 11.5.1 A loss insured under the property insurance required by the ~~Agreement~~Contract shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of ~~any applicable mortgagee clause and of~~ Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 11.5.2 Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor and Architect of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor and the Architect shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor and/or the Architect do~~es~~ not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor and Architect shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor and/or Architect timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's or Owner's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect or Owner, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect or Owner may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor ~~sh~~may~~ll~~ be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2 CORRECTION OF WORK

12.2.1 Before Or After Substantial Completion

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether discovered before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, ~~the cost of uncovering and replacement,~~ and compensation for the Architect's and Program Manager's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

12.2.1.1 The Owner may make emergency repairs to the Work or take such other measures necessary under the circumstances, if the Contractor does not promptly respond to a Notice of Defect or nonconforming Work. Contractor shall be responsible to Owner for this cost if the reason for the repairs is attributable to the Contractor. If payments then or thereafter due to the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such costs, then the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner on demand

§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof ~~or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1,~~ or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such written notice promptly after discovery of the condition. ~~During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty.~~ If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of written notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct the Work as provided in 12.2.2.1.1. Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 is intended to limit or modify any obligations under the law or under the Contract Documents, including any warranty obligations, expressed or implied~~it in accordance with Section 2.5~~.

12.2.2.1.1 If the Contractor fails to perform the corrective Work, then Owner may perform corrective Work, at Contractor's cost. If Owner performs corrective Work, then Owner may also remove nonconforming Work and store

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

the salvageable materials or equipment at Contractor's expense. If the Contractor does not pay all costs incurred by Owner within ten (10) days after written notice, then Owner may, upon ten (10) additional days' written notice, sell the removed materials and equipment in accordance with Owner's policies, and shall account for the proceeds thereof, after deducting costs and damages that should have been borne by the Contractor, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby. If such proceeds of sale do not cover costs which the Contactor should have borne, then the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

§ 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual performance of the Work.

§ 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2, but only as to the corrected Work. Any corrective work performed or to be performed under or pursuant to Paragraph 12.2 shall be warranted to the same extent as the Work is warranted hereunder for the greater of the remainder of the applicable warranty (corrective) period or ninety (90) days from the date such corrective work has been completed.

§ 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

§ 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction by the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

12.2.4.1 Where nonconforming Work is found, the entire area of Work involved shall be corrected unless the Contractor can completely define the limits to the Architect's satisfaction. Additional testing, sampling, or inspecting needed to define nonconforming work shall be at the Contractor's expense, and performed by the Owner's testing laboratory if such services are reasonably required by the Architect. All corrected work shall be retested at the Contractor's expense. Reasonable Architectural or Program Manager Services required to analyze nonconforming Work shall be paid for by the Contractor.

§ 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work. Nothing contained in this Paragraph 12.2 is intended to limit or modify any obligations under the law or under the Contract Documents, including any warranty obligations, expressed or implied.

12.2.6 Contractor shall replace, repair, or restore any parts of the Project or furniture, fixtures, equipment, or other items placed therein (whether by Owner or another party) that are destroyed or damaged by any such parts of the Work that do not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents or by defects in the Work.

12.2.7 The provisions of this Section 12.2 apply to Work done by Subcontractors of the Contractor as well as Work done directly by employees of the Contractor. The provision for this Section 12.2.7 shall not apply to corrective work attributable solely to the acts or omissions of any separate contractor of Owner (unless Contractor is acting in such capacities). The cost to Contractor for performing any of its obligations under this Section 12.2.7 to the extent not covered by insurance shall be borne by Contractor.

12.2.8 If, however, Owner and Contractor deem it inexpedient to require the correction of Work damaged or not done in accordance with the Contract Documents, then an equitable deduction from the Contract Sum shall be made by written agreement between Contractor and Owner. Until such settlement, Owner may withhold such sums as Owner deems just and reasonable from moneys, if any, due Contractor. The settlement shall not be unreasonably delayed by the Owner and the amount of money withheld shall be based on estimated actual cost of the correction to Owner.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 13.1 Governing Law

13.1.1 ~~The Contract shall be governed by the laws of the State of Texas, and any litigation shall be conducted in state district court. Mandatory and exclusive venue for any disputes shall be in Dallas , county in place whichere the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.~~ The Contract and any disputes related to the Work shall be governed by the laws of the State of Texas. The Contract is deemed performable entirely in Dallas, Dallas County, Texas. Any litigation to enforce or interpret any terms of the Contract, or any other litigation arising out of or as a result of the Contract or the Work, shall be brought in the State District courts of Dallas County, Texas. In the event of litigation, the substantially prevailing party shall be entitled to its reasonable and necessary attorney's fees that are equitable and just.

§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns

§ 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to the other party hereto and to partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives of such other party in respect to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. ~~Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, Nneither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract, as ain whole or in part, without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.~~ The Contractor shall not assign the Contract as a whole, or in part, without written consent of the Owner.

§ 13.2.2 The invalidity of any part or provision of the ~~Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the~~ Contract Documents shall not impair or affect in any manner whatsoever the validity, enforceability, or effect of the remainder of the Contract Documents. The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract in whole or in part. In such event, the assignee shall assume the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate such assignments. ~~The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.~~

§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies

§ 13.3.1 Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served only if the writing is delivered in person to the office of the party set out ~~O~~on the first page of the Standard Form of ~~Agreement~~Contract Between Owner and Contractor, or to such other address as has been previously clearly identified in writing by the addressee, or sent by registered or certified mail to that address. Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

§ 13.3.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner~~,~~ or Architect~~, or Contractor~~ shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing. The application of a time-is-of-the-essence clause as to any action or duty required of Contractor by the Contract Documents shall not be waived by course of performance or course of dealing by Contractor.

13.3.3 ~~4~~ Neither Contractor nor any of its materialmen, laborers or Subcontractors shall have any lien rights against the Owner's lands, building funds, materials or other property. No materialmen, laborers or Subcontractors of the Contractor shall have any enforceable rights against the Owner on this Contract. Materialmen, laborers and Subcontractors of the Contractor may have rights under any Payment Bond provided by the Contractor, but cannot look to the Owner for any help in enforcement of those rights.

13.3.4 The invalidity of any part or provision of the Contract Documents shall not impair or affect in any manner whatsoever the validity, enforceability or effect of the remainder of the Contract Documents.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made at appropriate times as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities having jurisdiction. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity employed by the Owner for this purpose ~~acceptable to the Owner,~~ or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals which shall be included in the Cost of the Work. Provided, however, per Texas Government Code Chapter 2269, Owner shall bear all costs of construction materials, engineering, testing, and inspection services, and the verification testing services necessary for acceptance of the facility by the Owner. Owner shall bear the normal costs of these services, but not any excess costs attributable to Contractor caused scheduling problems, other Contractor error or retesting. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may observe be present for such procedures. ~~The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded.~~ The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

§ 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Owner shall provide or contract ~~the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements~~ for such additional testing, inspection, or approval~~, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures.~~ Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense. Architect, Owner, and Contractor shall cooperate for the timely scheduling of such tests and inspections.

§ 13.4.3 If such procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including, but not limited to, those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect, with a copy to the Owner.

§ 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

§ 13.5 Interest

Undisputed ~~P~~payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is overdue at the rate provided by Texas Government Code Section 2251.025~~the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.~~ Any such payment shall be deemed overdue on the thirty-first (31st) day after Owner received Architect's invoice or Contractor's completed Application for Payment for the Architect, whichever is later, if Owner's Board of Trustees meet more than once per month. Any such payment shall be deemed overdue on the forty-sixth (46th) day after Owner receives Architect's invoice or Contractor's Certificate for Payment from the Architect, if Owner's Board of Trustees meet once a month or less frequently. No interest shall be due on sums properly retained by Owner, except ~~expect~~ as provided by law, or on disputed sums unpaid by Owner.

13.6 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY IN EMPLOYMENT

13.6.1 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, age, disability, sex, national origin, or any class otherwise protected by District policy or law. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants, notices setting forth the Contractor's nondiscrimination policies.

13.6.2 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by them or on their behalf, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

without regard to race, religion, age, disability, sex, national origin, or any class otherwise protected by District policy or law.

13.7 RECORDS

13.7.1 Contractor shall at all times through the date of Final Completion, maintain Job Records, including, but not limited to, invoices, Construction Documents, payment records, payroll records, daily reports, diaries, logs, instructions, drawings, receipts, subcontracts, purchase orders, vouchers, memoranda, other financial data and job meeting minutes applicable to the Project, in a manner which maintains the integrity of the documents. Job Records must be retained by Contractor for a least twelve (12) years, after the date of Final Completion of the Project. Within five (5) days of Owner's request, Contractor shall make such Job Records available for inspection, copying, and auditing by the Owner, Architect, or other respective representatives, at Owner's central office.

13.7.2 If Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk, then Contractor shall also maintain, in accordance with the provisions of Section 13.7.1, the following: subcontract files, including proposals of successful and unsuccessful bidders, bid recaps, and subcontractor payments; original estimates; estimating work sheets; general ledger entries detailing cash and trade discounts received; insurance rebates and dividends; and any other supporting evidence deemed necessary by the Owner to substantiate charges related to the Contract.

13.7.3 Contractor shall keep a full and detailed financial accounting system and shall exercise such controls as may be necessary for property financial management under this Contract; the accounting and control systems shall be satisfactory to the Owner and shall be subject to the provisions of Section 13.7.1.

13.7.4 Contractor shall keep all Contract Documents related to the Project, subject to the provisions of Section 13.7.1, provided, however, Contractor shall not destroy said documents until Contractor has confirmed with Owner in writing, that Owner has obtained a copy of all as-built drawings.

13.7.5 In the event that an audit by the Owner reveals any errors/overpayments by the Owner, then the Contractor shall refund to the Owner the full amount of such overpayments within thirty (30) days of such audit findings, or the Owner, at its option, reserves the right to deduct such amounts owed to the Owner from any payments due to the Contractor.

13.7.6 Commencement of Statutory Limitation Period, As between the Owner and Contractor; after Final Certificate for Payment.

13.7.7 At any time during the term of this ~~Agreement~~Contract and for a period of ten ~~four~~ (~~4~~10) years thereafter, the Owner or a duly authorized audit representative of the Owner, or the State of Texas, at its expense and at reasonable times, reserves the right to audit the Contractor's records and books relevant to all services provided under this ~~Agreement~~Contract. In the event such an audit by the Owner reveals any errors/overpayments by the Owner, the Contractor shall refund the Owner the full amount of such overpayments within thirty (30) day of such audit findings, or the Owner, at its option, reserves the right to deduct such amounts owing the Owner from any payments due the Contractor.

13.8 NONDISCRIMINATORY EMPLOYMENT

13.8.1 In connection with the execution of this Contract, the Contractor shall fully comply with the District non-discrimination requirement cited below.

"The Dallas Independent School District, as an equal opportunity educational provider and employer, does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, disability, sexual orientation and/or age in educational programs or activities that it operates or in employment decisions. The District is required by Title VI and Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, the Americans with Disabilities Act, and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, as well as board policy not to discriminate in such a manner. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.)"

During the performance of this Contract, the Contractor further agrees as follows:

.1 The Contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, sex, religion, national origin or age;

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

.2 The Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, color, sex, religion, national origin or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth the requirements of these non-discrimination provisions.

Submittal to Owner of reasonable evidence of discrimination will be grounds for termination of the ~~Agreement~~Contract.
This policy does not require the employment of unqualified persons.

13.9 CERTIFICATION OF NONSEGREGATED FACILITY

13.9.1 This Subparagraph is applicable to Contracts and Subcontracts exceeding $10,000.00 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause.

13.9.2 By the signing of this Contract, the Contractor signifies that it does not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it does not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. It certifies further that it will not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it will not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The undersigned agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause in this proposed Contract. As used in this certification, the term 'segregated facilities' means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated on the basis of race, creed, color, or national origin, because of habit, local custom, or otherwise. It further agrees that (except where it obtained identical certifications from proposed consultants for specific time period), it will obtain identical certification from proposed Subcontractors prior to the award of a Contract exceeding $10,000.00 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause; that it will retain such certifications in its files; and that it will forward the following notice to such proposed Subcontractors (except where the proposed Subcontractors have submitted identical certifications for specific time periods): Notice to Prospective Subcontractors of requirement for certification of non-segregated facilities, as required by the May 19, 1967 Order (32 FR.7439, May 19, 1967) on elimination of segregated facilities, by the Secretary of Labor, must be submitted prior to the award of a Contract exceeding $10,000.00 which is not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause. The certification may be submitted either for each subcontract or for all subcontracts during a period (i.e., quarterly, semiannually, or annually).

Note: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.11.

13.10 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

13.10.1 In compliance with laws of the State of Texas relating to labor Texas Government Code Section 2258.001 *et seq.* the building construction wage rates listed in the Contract Documents have been ascertained and determined by the Owner as the general prevailing rates in the locality of Dallas Independent School District for the classifications listed. The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall pay to all laborers, workers and mechanics employed by them in the execution of this Contract not less than such rates for each craft or type of worker or mechanic needed to execute the Contract. If it becomes necessary to employ any person in a trade or occupation not herein listed, such person shall be paid not less than an hourly rate fairly comparable to the rates shown hereinafter.

13.10.2 This determination of prevailing wages shall not be construed to prohibit the payment of more than the rates named.

13.10.3 In compliance with the above cited law the Contractor shall forfeit, as a penalty to the Owner, Sixty Dollars ($60.00) for each laborer, worker or mechanic employed, for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such laborer, worker or mechanic is paid less than the rates stipulated hereinafter for any work done under this Contract by him or any Subcontractor under him.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

13.10.4 Owner reserves the right to receive and review payroll records, payment records, and earning statements of employees of Contractor, and of Contractor's Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors.

13.10.5 In executing the Work under the Contract Documents, Contractor shall comply with all applicable state and federal laws, including but not limited to, laws concerned with labor, equal employment opportunity, safety and minimum wages.

13.11 CERTIFICATION OF ASBESTOS-FREE PROJECT

13.11.1 Contractor shall submit to the Architect a letter addressed to the Owner certifying that all materials used in the construction shall be asbestos free. The General Contractor shall provide certification for himself, all subcontractors, vendors, suppliers, and other entities, stating that materials and/or equipment used in the construction of the project do not contain asbestos in any form or concentration. Certification letters shall be dated, shall reference this specific Project, and shall be signed by not less than two officers of the construction company.

13.11.2 Final Payment shall not be made until this letter of certification has been received.

13.12 CERTIFICATION OF LEAD-FREE POTABLE WATER SYSTEM

13.12.1 Contractor shall submit to the Architect a letter, addressed to the Owner, stating that any components of the potable water system installed by the Contractor are lead-free as defined by the Safe Drinking Water Act Amendment of 1986 and the Lead Contamination Control Act of 1988.

13.13 Responsibility For Contractor's Forces. The Contractor shall be responsible for the actions of Contractor's forces, and Subcontractor's forces to enforce the Owner's drug-free, alcohol-free, and tobacco-free zone. Contractor agrees to abide by Owner's policies prohibiting the use of tobacco, alcohol or illegal drugs in any form on any property owned, operated, or maintained by the Owner. Contractor agrees to require all subcontractors and sub-subcontractors to abide by these policies,. Violation of this provision shall constitute a material breach of this agreement.

13.14 FAMILY CODE CHILD SUPPORT CERTIFICATION

By signing this ~~Agreement~~Contract, the Contractor certifies as follows: "Under Section 321.006, Texas Family Code, the vendor or applicant certifies that the individual or business entity named in this contract, bid, or application is not ineligible to receive the specified grant, loan, or payment and acknowledges that this contract may be terminated and payment may be withheld if this certification is inaccurate.

13.15 NON-COMPENSATION REQUIREMENT

The Owner may not accept a bid or award a contract that includes proposed financial participation by a person who received compensation from the Owner to participate in preparing the specifications or request for proposals on which the bid or contract is based. The Contractor is described as vendor in the statutory quote below:

"Under Section 2155.004, Government Code, the vendor certifies that the individual or business entity named in this bid or contract is not ineligible to receive the specified contract and acknowledges that this contract may be terminated and payment withheld if this certification is inaccurate."

13.16 ~~8~~ PROPRIETARY INTERESTS AND CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

13.16.1 ~~8~~ Neither Architect nor Contractor shall use the image or likeness of Owner's Project or Owner's official logo or emblem and any other trademark, service mark, or copyrighted or otherwise protected information of Owner, without Owner's prior written consent. Contractor and Architect shall not have any authority to advertise or claim that Owner endorses Architect or Contractor's services, without Owner's prior written consent.

13.16.2 Neither Architect nor Contractor shall disclose any confidential information of Owner which comes into the possession of Architect or Contractor at any time during the Project, including but not limited to: pending real estate purchases, exchange, lease, or value; information related to litigation; the location and employment of security devices, security access codes; student likenesses; student record information; employee information; or any other information deemed confidential by law.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

13.16.3 The parties acknowledge that, as a public entity in the State of Texas, Owner is subject to, and must comply with, the provisions of the Texas Public Information Act, Texas Government Code Section 552.001, *et seq.*, and the Texas Open Meetings Act, Texas Government Code, Section 551.001. *et seq.*

13.16.4 All information owned, possessed, or used by Owner which is communicated to, learned, developed or otherwise acquired by Contractor in the performance of services for Owner, which is not generally known to the public, shall be confidential and Contractor shall not, beginning on the date of first association or communication between Owner and Contractor and continuing through the term of this ~~Agreement~~Contract and at any time thereafter, disclose, communicate or divulge, or permit disclosure, communication or divulgence, to another or use for Contractor's own benefit or the benefit of another, any such confidential information, unless required by law. Except when defined as part of the Project, Contractor shall not make any press releases, public statements, or advertisement referring to the Project or the engagement of Contractor as an independent contractor of Owner in connection with the Project, or release any information relative to the Project for publications, advertisement or any other purpose without prior written approval of Owner. Contractor shall obtain assurances similar to those contained in this Subparagraph from persons, agents, and subcontractors retained by Contractor. Contractor acknowledges and agrees that a breach by Contractor of the provisions hereof will cause Owner irreparable injury and damage. Contractor, therefore, expressly agrees that Owner shall be entitled to injunctive and/or other equitable relief to prevent or otherwise restrain a breach of this ~~Agreement~~Contract.

.1 Contractor acknowledges and agrees that the Owner has an interest in maintaining and otherwise protecting the image and reputation of the Owner's official logo or emblem and any other trademarks, copyrighted or otherwise protected materials of the Owner (hereinafter referred to as the "Owner's Protected Materials"), and that in order to accomplish this purpose, the Owner must in all cases assure itself that the Owner's Protected Materials are at all times used in a manner consistent with the Owner's policies, administrative regulations, and this ~~Agreement~~Contract.

.2 Contractor agrees that the Owner must, therefore, have the right to examine and approve or disapprove such use in writing in advance of use, the contents, appearance and presentation of any and all advertising, promotional or other similar materials proposed by the Contractor to be used in connection with any advertising or promotion utilizing Owner's Protected Materials.

13.17 ~~8~~ The Contractor shall ~~have~~ bear full responsibility for utilizing means and methods that may result in an overstress of any structure or any part or member of it during construction. The Contractor shall fully check the effect of his
operations in this regard, and shall provide all temporary support and connections required.

13.18 ~~9~~ The Contractor shall protect and be responsible for any damage to or loss of its (his/her) work, tools, equipment, or material, from the date of the Contract until the acceptance of the Work and shall make good without cost to the Owner, any damage or loss that may occur during this period. All material affected by weather shall be covered and protected to keep it from damage while being transported to the site, as well as when it is stored on the site. The Contractor at its (his/her) own expense and option shall employ watchmen or erect fencing at such time as necessary to protect his work, tools, equipment or material by the Contractor and the fact that the Owner has a watchman, if any, shall not mean that the Owner has undertaken, nor does the Owner undertake, to protect work, tools, equipment and materials from theft or mysterious disappearance.

13.19 The Contractor should only take direction on any issues regarding the Project when provided by the Owner's Office of Construction Services or the Program Manager or Architect.

13.20 The Contractor and subcontractor shall ensure that on-site fraternization shall not occur between personnel under the Contractor's or subcontractor's direct or indirect supervision and students, school employees and the general public.

13.21 PARTNERING
Contractor will participate in a partnering process if requested by Owner.

13.22 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS
Prior to issuance of the Certificate of Final Completion by Architect and Program Manager, the Contractor shall submit to Architect a complete set of as-built drawings, with all changes made during construction, including

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

concealed mechanical, electrical and plumbing items clearly shown. The Contractor shall submit these drawings in a medium acceptable to the Architect. Based upon the as-built drawings received from Contractor, Architect shall, within thirty days after receipt of the as-built drawings from Contractor, complete Record Drawings.

ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of ninety ~~3~~90 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, for any of the following reasons, which are the sole grounds for termination under this Subparagraph 14.1.1.~~:~~;

.1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;

.2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped; or

.3 ~~Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the~~ Owner has not made payment of undisputed sums due on an approved Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents. ~~; or~~

~~.4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.~~

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 ~~If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, then, after the applicable time period, the Contractor may, upon seven (10) days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, and for proven unrecoverable loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery incurred to the date of termination as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination~~If the Work is stopped for ninety (90) consecutive days for any reason described in Subparagraphs 14.1.1 or 14.1.2, the Contractor may, upon fourteen (14) days written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, and for proven loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery, including reasonable overhead, profit and damages to date of termination.

14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of ninety (~~6~~90) consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, or a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has ~~repeatedly~~ persistently failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon ~~twenty~~ fourteen (~~20~~14) additional days' written notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

14.1.5 Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein or in the other Contract Documents, neither the Owner or any other party shall be responsible for damages for loss of anticipated profits on Work not performed on account of any termination described in Subparagraphs 14.1.1, 14.1.2 and 14.1.3.

14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

.1 persistently or repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;

.2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or ~~s~~Suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or ~~s~~Suppliers;

.3 ~~repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or~~ persistently disregards laws, ordinances, or rules, regulations or orders of a public authority having jurisdiction; or

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

.4 otherwise is guilty of ~~substantial breach of a provision of~~ a material breach of provision of the Contract Documents;

.5 fails to furnish the Owner, upon written request, with assurances satisfactory to the Owner, evidencing the Contractor's ability to complete the Work in compliance with all the requirements of the Contract Documents; ~~or~~

.6 engages in serious or repeated worker misconduct in violation of Article 3.3.2;

.7 engages in conduct that would constitute a violation of state or federal criminal law, including but not limited to, the laws prohibiting certain gifts to public servants, or engages in conduct that would constitute a violation of the Owner's ethics or conflict of interest policies; or

.8 fails to proceed continuously and diligently with the construction and completion of the Work, except as permitted under the Contact Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, subject to any prior rights of the surety, ~~and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action,~~ the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' written notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

.1 ~~Exclude the Contractor from the site and t~~Take possession of the site and of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;

.2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and

.3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished. Any further payment shall be limited to amounts earned to the date of Contractor's removal.

§ 14.2.4 If the ~~unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds~~ costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's and Program Manager's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, exceed the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price (if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), ~~such excess shall be paid to~~ then the Contractor and/or its Surety shall pay the difference to the Owner. ~~If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.~~ The amount to be paid to the ~~Contractor or~~ Owner, ~~as the case may be,~~ shall be certified by the Architect ~~the Initial Decision Maker~~, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

14.2.5 The parties hereby agree that: 1) if an order for relief is entered on behalf of the Contractor, pursuant to Chapter 11 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code; 2) if any other similar order is entered under any debtor relief laws; 3) if Contractor makes assignments for the benefit of one or more of its creditors; 4) if a receiver is appointed for the benefit of its creditors; or 5) if a receiver is appointed on account of its insolvency, any such event could impair or frustrate Contractor's performance of the Contract Documents. Accordingly, it is agreed that upon occurrence of any such event, Owner shall be entitled to request of Contractor or its successor in interest, adequate assurance of future performance in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents. Failure to comply with such request within ten (10) days of delivery of the request shall entitle Owner to terminate the Contract and to the accompanying rights set forth in Subparagraphs 14.2.1 through 14.2.6. In all events, pending receipt of adequate assurance of performance and actual performance in accordance with the Contract Documents, Owner shall be entitled to proceed with the Work with Owner's own forces or with other Contractors on a time and material or other appropriate basis, the cost of which will be charged against the Contract Sum.

If a Performance Bond has been furnished and the Contractor is declared by the Owner to be in default under the Contract, the Surety shall promptly remedy the default by completing the Contract in accordance with its terms and conditions, or by obtaining a bid or bids in accordance with its terms and conditions. At Owner's election, upon determination by the Owner and the Surety of the lowest responsible bidder, the Surety will complete the Work or will arrange for a Contract between such bidder and the Owner, and make available as Work progresses sufficient funds to pay the cost of completion less the balance of the Contract Sum, but not exceeding the Penal Sum of the bond and other costs and damages for which the Surety may be liable under the bond. The phrase 'balance of the Contract Sum' as used herein shall mean the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Contract and amendments thereto less the amount previously paid by the Owner to the Contractor.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

14.2.6 As required by Texas Government Code Chapter 2253, if a Performance Bond has been furnished and the Contractor is declared by the Owner to be in default under the Contract, then the Surety shall promptly perform the Work, in full accordance with the plans, specifications, and Contract Documents. Unless otherwise agreed in writing between the Surety and the Owner, the Surety shall complete the Work by the Surety entering into a Contract acceptable to Owner, with a Contractor acceptable to Owners, and shall obtain new Payment and Performance Bonds as required by law.

§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

§ 14.3.2 ~~The Contract Sum, Guaranteed Maximum Price, and Contract Time shmayll be adjusted, by mutual written agreement, for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit~~. An adjustment shall be made to the Contract Sum calculated under Article 7. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

.1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or

.2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause. Furthermore, if this Contract is a multi-year contract funded through Owner's current general funds that are not bond funds, then the Owner's Board of Trustees has the right to not appropriate adequate monies for the next fiscal year and to terminate this Contract at the end of each fiscal year during the term of the Contract, without the Owner incurring any further liability to Contractor as a result of such termination.

§ 14.4.2 Upon receipt of written notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

.1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;

.2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and

.3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

§ 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; and for proven unrecoverable loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery incurred to the date ~~costs incurred by reason~~ of ~~the~~ termination~~, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement~~. Such payment shall not cause the Contract Sum, or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk Project, to be exceeded. Such payment shall not include overhead and profit for Work not executed.

14.4.4 Upon determination by a Court of competent jurisdiction that termination of the Contractor pursuant to Section 14.2 was wrongful, such termination will be deemed converted to a termination for convenience pursuant to Section 14.4, and Contractor's remedy for wrongful termination shall be limited to the recovery of the payments permitted for termination for convenience as set forth in Section 14.4.

ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

§ 15.1 Claims

§ 15.1.1 Definition

A Claim is ~~any demand or assertion by one of the Contractor parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of additional compensation under the Contract Documentsmoney, interpretation of the Contract Document terms, a change in the Contract Time;, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the partyContractor making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.~~ any demand or assertion by the Contractor that it should be paid more money than the

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Contract Sum or granted more contract time by the Owner because of action or inaction on the part of Owner, any Owner representative, Architect, or any party for whom Owner is responsible, or any party with whom Owner has separately contracted for other portions of the Project, including, but not limited to, any demand or assertion that Contractor's performance has been delayed, interrupted or interfered with, that Contractor's performance has been accelerated, constructively accelerated, or suspended, that Contractor's performance has been wrongfully terminated, that there has been a failure of payment, that Contractor has encountered concealed or unknown conditions, that Contractor has encountered hazardous materials, that actions or omissions of the Owner have been wrongful related in any way to the Work, that a time extension grant was inadequate, that there has been a breach of contract, or that Contractor is entitled to any other relief, on any legal or equitable theory, related to the Work or the Contract. This definition of Claim is not intended to create any right of action where the right of action does not otherwise exist under applicable law or other provisions of this Contract.

§ 15.1.2 Notice Requirement ~~Time Limits on Litigation~~Claims

~~The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims~~litigation and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in anythe case of the Owner, not more than 120 years after the date of Final~~Substantial~~ Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2. Within fourteen (14) calendar days of the first occurrence of an event that Contractor has any reason to believe might result in a Claim, or within fourteen (14) calendar days of Contractor's discovery of the first occurrence of an event that Contractor has any reason to believe might result in a Claim if the first occurrence of the event was willfully hidden from the Contractor, the Contractor shall file a written document clearly captioned "Notice of Claim" with Owner, Program Manager and the Architect. The Notice shall clearly set out the specific matter of complaint, and the impact or damages, which may occur or have occurred as a result thereof, to the extent the impact or damages can be assessed at the time of the Notice. If the impact or damages cannot be assessed as of the date of the Notice, the Notice shall be amended at the earliest date that is reasonably possible. It is imperative that Owner have timely, specific Notice of a potential problem in order that the problem can be mitigated promptly.

15.1.2.1 In addition to the Notice required by Subparagraph 15.1.2, the Contractor shall also file a document captioned "Claim" with the Owner, Program Manager and Architect within ninety-one (91), days of occurrence of any event resulting in a Claim for damages, giving notice of the Claim. Contractor agrees that this is a reasonable Notice requirement. Any Claim or portion of a Claim that has not been made the specific subject of a Notice strictly in accordance with the requirements of this section is waived.

§ 15.1.3 ~~Notice of Claims~~ Continuing Contract Performance

After receipt of a Notice of Claim, the Architect shall have fourteen (14) calendar days to render a decision, which shall be stated in writing and delivered to the Contractor, the Owner and the Program Manager via facsimile, regular mail or hand delivery. If the Architect fails to render a decision in writing with the fourteen (14) days, the Claim shall be deemed accepted. Within five (5) calendar days of receipt of the Architect's written decision, Contractor may file a written appeal of the decision to the Program Manager. The Program Manager shall have ten (10) calendar days to render a decision, which shall be stated in writing and delivered to the Contractor, Architect and the Owner via facsimile, regular mail or hand delivery. If the Program Manager fails to render a decision in writing within the ten (10) days, the claim shall be deemed accepted. Within five (5) calendar days of receipt of the Program Manager's written decision, Contractor may file a written appeal of the decision with the Deputy Superintendent of Business Services. Within fourteen (14) calendar days of the receipt of an appeal, an Appeals Board consisting of the Deputy Superintendent of Business Services, Chief Operations Officer, and a representative of the offices of Legal Services shall render a written decision. Any Claim determination requiring a Change Order must be approved by the Board of Trustees. The filing, or rejection of a Claim does not entitle Contractor to stop performance of the Work. The Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract during the pendency of any Claim, excepting termination or under Owner's direction to stop the Work. Any Claim that would require expenditure in excess of $10,000.00, or that would require a Change Order, must be reviewed by the Program Manager and the Appeals Board using the appeals process described in this section.

15.1.3.1 Claims by ~~either~~ the ~~Owner or~~ Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by written notice to the ~~other party~~Owner and to the ~~Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the~~ Architect~~, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker~~. Claims by Contractor~~either party~~ under this Section 15.1.3.1 ~~shall~~must be

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved.** **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

initiated within 21 calendar days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 calendar days after the ~~e~~Contractor~~laimant~~ first knew or should have known~~recognizes~~ the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is ~~lat~~earlier. Claims must be initiated by written notice titled: "Notice of Claim" ("Notice") and sent to the Architect and Owner's designated representatives. The Notice shall clearly set out the specific matter of complaint, and the impact which may occur or have occurred as result thereof, to the extent that the impact can be assessed at the time of the Notice. If the impact cannot be assessed as of the date of the Notice, then the Notice shall be amended at the earliest date that is reasonably possible. It is imperative that Owner receive timely specific Notice of any potential problem identified by Contractor in order that the problem can be mitigated or resolved promptly. Claims not filed as required by this Section shall be waived.

§ 15.1.3.2 Claims by ~~either~~ the ~~Owner or~~ Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by written notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

15.1.3.3 When Owner has an applicable claim for construction defects, Owner shall comply with the provisions of Texas Government Code Chapter 2272 related to the provision of notice of defects and the Contractor's or Architect's opportunity to cure.

§ 15.1.4 ~~Continuing Contract Performance~~ Claims Handling Following Construction

The acceptance of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Contractor, which have not previously been identified in a Notice of Claim under 15.1.2 and a Claim under 15.1.2.1 and specifically reserved in the final Application for Payment.

§ 15.1.4.1 Time Limits on Litigation. The Owner and Contractor shall commence all litigation whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the dispute resolution method selected in the Contract and within the period specified by applicable law, but in the case of the Owner, not more than eight (8) years after the date of Final ~~Substantial~~ Completion of the Work, unless extended in accordance with Texas Civil Practice and Remedies Code Section 16.009. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

15.1.4.2 Pre-Litigation Mediation

~~.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7, as amended, and Article 14, as amended, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make undisputed payments for Work performed in accordance with the Contract Documents.~~ Except as to claims for injunctive relief, neither party may commence litigation relating to any Claim arising under this ~~Agreement~~Contract without first submitting the Claim to Mediation. The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally, and the mediation shall be held in Dallas, Texas. ~~Agreement~~Contracts reached in mediation must be approved by the Board of Trustees and shall thereafter be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof. Mediation shall be conducted by a mediator selected jointly by the Owner and Contractor.

15.1.4.3 ~~The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.~~

§ 15.1.5 Claims For Concealed Or Unknown Conditions. Only if conditions are encountered at the site which are (a) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions which differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents, (b) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature, which differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents or (c) in the case of renovation Work, any condition of the pre-existing construction to be renovated, that is materially different from any of the conditions that could reasonably have been expected to be present in preexisting construction of the age and type encountered on the Project, then Contractor shall be entitled to make a Claim if it can satisfy all of the requirements of Paragraph 15.1.

15.1.5.1 No adjustment in the Contract Time or Contract Sum shall be permitted, however, in connection with a concealed or unknown condition which does not differ materially from those conditions disclosed or which reasonably should have been disclosed by Contractor's (1) prior inspections, tests, reviews and preconstruction services for the Project, or (2) inspections, tests, review and preconstruction services which were given to Contractor

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

by Owner, Architect or Owner's representative or which Contractor had the opportunity to make or should have performed in connection with the Project.

15.1.6 Calculating Claim Amount

In calculating the amount of any Claim, the following standards will apply:

.1 No indirect or consequential damages will be allowed;

.2 No recovery shall be based on a comparison of planned expenditures to total actual expenditures, or on; Estimated losses of labor efficiency, or on a comparison of planned man loading to actual man loading, or any other analysis that is used to show damages indirectly;

.3 Damages are limited to extra costs specifically shown to have been directly caused by a proven wrong;

.4 The maximum daily limit on any recovery for delay shall be the amount originally estimated by the Contractor for job overhead costs divided by the total number of calendar days of Contract Time called for in the original Contract;

.5 No damages will be allowed for home office overhead or other home office charges, or any Eichlay formula calculation; and

.6 No profit will be allowed on any Claim.

§ 15.1.6.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, written notice as provided herein shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of ~~cost and of~~ probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.6.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and prevented the execution of major items of work on normal working days ~~had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction~~.

15.1.6.3 4 Time extensions may be granted for rain days in any month when the cumulative number of rain days during that month exceeds the number scheduled, provided that the rainfall prevented the execution of major items of work on normal working days. No day will be counted as a rain day when substantial Contractor forces are able to perform Work on the Project for more than fifty percent (50%) of the usual workday or when the stage of the Work on the Project is not adversely impacted. The number of rain days shown in the above schedule for the first and last months of the Contract will be prorated in determining the total number of rain days expected during the period of the Contract. No delays or extensions shall be granted for mud conditions.

15.1.6.4 ~~5~~ No extension of time shall be made to the Contractor because of hindrances or delays from any cause which is the fault of Contractor or Contractor's Subcontractors or under Contractor's control. Claims for extension of time may only be considered because of rain delays, or because of hindrances or delays which are the fault of Owner and/or under Owner's control, but only to the extent that Substantial Completion of the Project is adjusted beyond the original Substantial Completion date. Only claims for extension of time shall be considered because of hindrances or delays not the fault of either Contractor or Owner, but only to the extent that Substantial Completion of the Project exceeds the Substantial Completion date established for the Work. Board approval shall be required for any extension of time. No damages shall be paid for delays. Contractor shall only be entitled to time extensions per the terms of the Contract Documents.

15.1.6.5 6 Requests for time extension shall be submitted on a monthly basis and shall specify the time delay, the cause of the delay, and the responsible party for the delay, whether Contractor, Owner, rain day, or other. No claims for damages for delay shall be made by Contractor. Any claim not submitted under the terms of this Section shall be waived.

§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages

~~The Contractor and Owner waives all Claims against Ownereach other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract, including, but not limited to, any amount owed as compensation for the increased cost to perform the Work as a direct result of Owner-caused delays or acceleration. This mutual waiver includes~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

.1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and

.2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

15.1.8 Injury Or Damage To Person Or Property

If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to persons or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party as provided herein. The Notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

§ 15.2 ~~Initial Decision~~ Resolution of Claims and Disputes

§ 15.2.1 ~~Claims by the Contractor against the Owner, including~~excluding those alleging an error or omission by the Architect, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the ~~I~~initially Decision Maker for initial decision. to ~~t~~The Architect for written recommendation~~will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If An initial recommendation by the Architect shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation or litigation of all Claims by the Contractor arising prior to the date final payment is due, unless decision has not been rendered within 30 days have passed after the Claim has been referred to the Architect with no recommendation having been rendered by the Architectafter the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.~~

§ 15.2.2 ~~The Architect shall Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten (10) days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the Contractor~~claimant ~~or a response with supporting data from the other party, or (2) make a written recommendation to the Owner, with a copy to the Contractor. reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.~~

§ 15.2.3 ~~In evaluating Claims, the Architect~~Initial Decision Maker ~~may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Architect~~Initial Decision Maker ~~in making a written recommendation~~rendering a decision. ~~The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.~~

§ 15.2.4 ~~Owner, Architect, or their respective agents, within five (5) working days of request by Owner, Architect, or their respective agents. Job records must be retained by Contractor and all subcontractors for a least twelve (12) years after the date of Final Completion of the Project. If the Architect~~Initial Decision Maker ~~requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Architect~~Initial Decision Maker ~~1when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Architect~~Initial Decision Maker ~~that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.~~

§ 15.2.5 ~~The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

~~Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution~~ Following receipt of the Architect's written recommendation regarding a Claim, the Owner and Contractor shall attempt to reach agreement as to any adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price and/or Contract Time. If no agreement can be reached, then either party may request mediation of the dispute pursuant to Section 15.3.

§ 15.2.6 Upon receipt of a Claim against the Contractor or at any time thereafter, the Architect or the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Architect or the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy ~~Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.~~

§ 15.2.6.1 ~~Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.~~

§ 15.2.7 ~~In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.~~

§ 15.2.8 ~~If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.~~

§ 15.3 ~~Mediation~~Alternative Dispute Resolution

§ 15.3.1 ~~Claims arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived shall, be subject to mediation~~ Owner and Contractor expressly agree that mediation shall be a condition precedent to the initiation of any litigation out of such Claims. Claims for injunctive relief shall not be subject to this Section.

§ 15.3.2 ~~The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation Requests for mediation shall be filed in writing, with the other party to the Contract.Mediation shall be subject to and in accordance with Chapter 154 of the Texas Civil Practice & Remedies Code. Mediation shall be conducted by a mutually-agreed-upon mediator. In the event that the parties are unable to agree on a mediator, then the parties shall jointly request the appointment of a neutral mediator by a District Judge in the county in which the Project is located~~

§ 15.3.3 ~~The parties shall share the mediator's fee equally and, if any filing fee is required, shall share said fee equally. Mediation shall be held within the county where the Owner's main administrative office is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon by the parties. Agreements reached in mediation shall be reduced to writing, considered for approval by the Owner's Board of Trustees, signed by the parties, if approved by the Board of Trustees, and if signed, shall thereafter be enforceable as provided by the laws of the State of Texas.~~

§ 15.3.4 Any claim not resolved in mediation shall be subject to litigation pursuant to Section 13.1.

§ 15.4 No Arbitration

§ 15.4.1 Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Contract Documents or in any document forming a part hereof, there shall be no mandatory arbitration for any dispute arising hereunder.

§ 15.4.1.1 ~~A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.~~

§ 15.4.2 ~~The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.~~

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

§ 15.4.3 ~~The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.~~

§ 15.4.4 ~~**Consolidation or Joinder**~~

§ 15.4.4.1 ~~Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).~~

§ 15.4.4.2 ~~Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.~~

§ 15.4.4.3 ~~The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.~~

15.5 Contractor stipulates that Owner is a political subdivision of the State of Texas, and, as such, enjoys immunities from suit and liability provided by the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas. By entering into this Contract, Owner does not waive any of its immunities from suit and/or liability, except as otherwise specifically provided herein and as specifically authorized by law.

15.6 In any adjudication under this Contract, reasonable and necessary attorneys' fees may be awarded to the prevailing party.

ARTICLE 16 CONTRACTOR ACCOUNTS, RECORDS, AND INSPECTION

16.1 Contractor, and all subcontractors, shall at all times maintain job records, including, but not limited to, invoices, payment records, payroll records, daily reports, logs, diaries, and job meeting minutes, applicable to the project. Contractor, and all subcontractors, shall make sure reports and records available to inspection by the Owner, Architect, or their respective agents, within five (5) working days of request by Owner, Architect, or their respective agents. Job Records must be retained by Contractor and all subcontractors for at least twelve (12) years after the date of Final Completion of the Project.

16.2 Contractor~~'s~~ and all subcontractors' records, which shall include but not be limited to accounting records (hard copy, as well as computer readable data if it can be made available), written policies and procedures; subcontract files (including proposals of successful and unsuccessful bidders, bid recaps, etc.); original estimates; estimating work sheets; correspondence; back charge logs and supporting documentation; general ledger entries detailing cash and trade discounts earned; bond and insurance rebates and dividends; and any other supporting evidence deemed necessary by the Owner to substantiate charges related to any matters related to the Contract (including interviews with Contractor's personnel and Subcontractor's personnel) shall be open to inspection and subject to audit and/or reproduction by Owner's agent or its authorized representative to the extent necessary to adequately permit evaluation and verification of (a) Contractor compliance with Contract requirements, (b) compliance with Owner's business ethics policies, and (c) compliance with provisions for pricing or claims submitted by the Contractor or any of its payees. The Owner or its designee shall be afforded access to all of the Contractor and all subcontractors'~~s~~ records pursuant to the provisions of this Article throughout the term of this Contract and for a period of twelve (12) years after final payment or longer if required by law.

ARTICLE 17 BUSINESS ETHICS

17.1 During the course of pursuing contracts, and the course of Contract performance, Contractor and its Subcontractors and vendors will maintain business ethics standards aimed at avoiding real or apparent impropriety or conflicts of interest. No substantial gifts, entertainment, payments, loans or other considerations beyond that which would be collectively categorized as incidental shall be made to any personnel of the Owner, its Program Managers, or its Architects, or to family members of any of them. At any time Contractor believes there may have

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

been a violation of this obligation, Contractor shall notify Owner of the possible violation. Owner is entitled to request a representation letter from Contractor, its Subcontractors or vendors at any time to disclose all things of value passing from Contractor, its Subcontractors or vendors to Owner's personnel, its Program Managers and its Architects

17.2 The Owner may, by written notice to the Contractor, cancel the Contract for Construction without liability to the Contractor if it is determined by the Owner that gratuities, in the form of entertainment, gifts, or anything of monetary value, were offered or given by the Contractor, or any agent, or representative of the Contractor, to any officer or employee of the Dallas Independent School District with a view toward securing a contract or securing favorable treatment with respect to the awarding, amending, or making of any determinations with the respect to the performing of such a contract. In the event the Construction ~~Agreement~~Contract is cancelled by the Owner pursuant to this provision, Owner shall be entitled, in addition to any other rights and remedies, to recover or withhold the amount of the cost incurred by the Contractor in providing such gratuities.

DRAFT

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

Executed this day of , .

OWNER:	CONTRACTOR:
	By:
Title:	Title:
DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT	GENERAL CONTRACTOR NAME
OWNER *(Signature)*	CONTRACTOR *(Signature)*
Dwayne Thompson, Chief Business Officer	GC Signer's Printed Name, Title
(Printed name and title) Date	*(Printed name and title)* Date

Approved As To Form:

SCHOOL ATTORNEY *(Signature)* Date

DRAFT

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This draft was produced by AIA software at 08:33:03 CT on 02/14/2019 under Order No.2171139526 which expires on 09/13/2019, and is not for resale.
User Notes: Error! Unknown document property name. (1734563182)

SECTION 00 55 00 – NOTICE TO PROCEED FORM

Name of Contractor	

The following form will be used by the District as a formal notice to proceed with pre-construction and construction activities, respectively.

The “Notice to Proceed” is the authorization to proceed with the work in accordance with said Construction Contract and the Contract Documents. This form shall be executed after issuance of the executed contract and purchase order.

NOTICE TO PROCEED

Date

GENERAL CONTRACTOR FULL NAME OF COMPANY
General Contractor Rep.
Address
City, State Zip

PROJECT: School Name, TEA Org, associated with CSP Package

OWNER: Dallas Independent School District

ATTENTION:

This notice shall be your authorization to proceed with the work in accordance with the terms and conditions as referenced in the Construction Contract and the Contract documents as enumerated therein.

Furthermore, the date of (fill in date here) is hereby established as day “0” (zero) of the stated Construction Schedule and establishes (fill in substantial completion date here), as the date of Substantial Completion unless modified in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract.

FOR DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

By _____

Title _____

BOND NO. _____

TEXAS STATUTORY PERFORMANCE BOND
(PUBLIC WORKS)

THE STATE OF TEXAS)
COUNTY OF DALLAS)

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS

That, _____
(Legal Name of Contractor)

(hereinafter called the Principal), as Principal, and

_____
(Legal Name of Surety)

a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of _____, with its principal office in the city of _____, licensed to do business in the State of Texas and admitted to write bonds, as surety, (hereinafter called the Surety), are held and firmly bound unto the Dallas Independent School District, (hereinafter called the Obligee), in the amount of

$_____
(Numeric)

(_____**)**
(Words)

for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Obligee, dated the

_____ of _____, 20____, generally described as:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

(List Project Description From Agreement)

to do and perform certain construction work as provided in said contract and the related plans, specifications, general conditions and other contract documents, all of which are by reference made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, the conditions of this Obligation is such that if the Principal shall faithfully perform all of the work in accordance with the plans, specifications, general conditions and contract documents, and shall faithfully perform each, every and all other obligations incumbent upon him under the terms of said written contract referred to, and shall fully indemnify and save harmless the Obligee from all costs, expense and damage which it may suffer or incur because of Principal's default, or failure so to do, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

BOND NO. _____

In the event Principal shall default in the faithful performance of the work called for by said written contract, plans, specifications and contract documents, the Surety shall within 15 days of the determination of default (determined as provided in said contract, general conditions and contract documents) take over and assume completion of said contract, or within such 15 day period make other arrangements satisfactory with the Obligee for completion of the contract, and said Surety shall become entitled thereupon to the payment or benefit of the balance of the contract price as the same matures according to its terms.

The Surety, for the protection of the Obligee herein, waives notice of, and hereby consents to any subsequent modification or alteration both in the work to be performed by the Principal, and the consequent price or sums to be paid by the Obligee, as well as any other change, or amendment, addition or deletion in the contract documents during the progress of the work, including but not limited to all extensions of time or other indulgences permitted the Principal.

Notwithstanding any other provision; the liability of the Surety on this bond shall never exceed the penal sum stated in first paragraph.

This Performance Bond is given in compliance with the terms and provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code as amended by the Acts of Legislature, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Chapter, to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein. This bond and all of the provisions herein contained shall be solely for the protection of the named Obligee which has awarded the contract referred to.

The undersigned, corporate Surety, does by the execution of this Bond solemnly warrant and represent that it is duly authorized to do business in Texas.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this ____ day of _____, 20_____.

CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL:

_____
Name of Company (Please print or type)

Seal: *(if any)*

_____
Signature of Authorized Company Representative

_____
Name & Title of Authorized Company Representative (Please print or type)

_____
Witness

_____
Attest

SURETY:

_____
Name of Company (Please print or type)

_____
Signature of Attorney-In-Fact

_____
Name & Title (Please print or type)

BOND NO. _____

(Performance Bond Continued from Page 2)

NOTE:

1) This Performance Bond applies to all contracts in excess of $100,000.00 involving a contract for construction, alteration or repair of any public building or the completion or prosecution of any public work.

2) This bond must be payable to the awarding authority, Dallas Independent School District, as the named Obligee, and it must be approved as to form by such awarding authority.

3) This bond must be furnished before any work is commenced.

4) Surety must be a corporate surety duly authorized to do business in Texas.

5) This PERFORMANCE BOND must be in the full amount of the contract which it secures.

6) Power of Attorney from Corporate Surety must be attached to this Performance Bond.

BOND NO. _____

TEXAS STATUTORY PAYMENT BOND
(PUBLIC WORKS)

THE STATE OF TEXAS)
COUNTY OF DALLAS)

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS

That, _____
(Legal Name of Contractor)

(hereinafter called the Principal), as Principal, and

_____
(Legal Name of Surety)

a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of _____, with its principal office in the city of _____, licensed to do business in the State of Texas and admitted to write bonds, as surety, (hereinafter called the Surety), are held and firmly bound unto the Dallas Independent School District, (hereinafter called the Obligee), in the amount of

$_____
(Numeric)

(_____**)**
(Words)

for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Obligee, dated the

_____ of _____, 20____, generally described as:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

(List Project Description From Agreement)

to do and perform certain construction work as provided in said contract and the related plans, specifications, general conditions and other contract documents, all of which are by reference made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, the conditions of this Obligation is such that if the Principal shall promptly make payment to all claimants supplying labor and material (as hereafter defined) in the prosecution of the work provided in said contract, the related plans, specifications, general conditions and contract documents, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

BOND NO. _____

This Payment Bond is given in compliance with the terms and provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code as amended by the Acts of Legislature, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Chapter, to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein. The claimants referred to in this bond are those defined by such Chapter 2253, and this bond shall be solely for the protection of all such claimants supplying labor and material as defined in such Chapter, in the prosecution of the work provided for in said contract, and shall be for the use of such claimant and none other.

The undersigned, corporate Surety, does by the execution of this Bond solemnly warrant and represent that it is duly authorized to do business in Texas.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this _____ day of _____, 20_____.

CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL:

_____
Name of Company (Please print or type)

Seal: *(if any)*

_____
Signature of Authorized Company Representative

_____
Name & Title of Authorized Company Representative (Please print or type)

_____
Witness

_____
Attest

SURETY:

_____
Name of Company (Please print or type)

_____
Signature of Attorney-In-Fact

_____
Name & Title (Please print or type)

(Payment Bond Continued from Page 2)

NOTE:

1) This Payment Bond applies to all contracts in excess of $25,000.00 involving a contract for construction, alteration or repair of any public building or the completion or prosecution of any public work.

2) This bond must be payable to the awarding authority, Dallas Independent School District, as the named Obligee, and it must be approved as to form by such awarding authority.

3) This bond must be furnished before any work is commenced.

4) Surety must be a corporate surety duly authorized to do business in Texas.

5) This PAYMENT BOND must be in the FULL amount of the contract which it secures.

6) Power of Attorney from Corporate Surety must be attached to this Payment Bond.

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SAFETY PROGRAM GUIDELINES MANUAL

Construction Services
Minimum Safety Program Guidelines

2023 Revision

1. Table of Contents

1. Table of Contents 1
2. FOREWORD 6
3. POLICY STATEMENT 6
4. PROGRAM OBJECTIVES 7
4.1 Active Participation of All Contractors 7
5. LOSS CONTROL RESPONSABILITIES 8
5.1 Local Laws and Requirements 8
5.2 Dallas ISD Safety Orientation and Badging 9
5.3 Campus Readiness 10
5.4 Protecting the General Public 10
5.5 Work Performed Near Existing District Right-of-Way 11
5.6 General Contractors 11
5.7 Site-Specific Safety Plan 13
5.8 Work Areas 13
5.9 Site-Specific Safety Orientation 13
5.10 Jobsite Trailer Postings 13
5.11 General Contractor Project Manager 14
5.12 General Contractor Safety Representative 14
5.13 General Contractor Site-Superintendent 15
5.14 Subcontractor Competent Person 16
5.15 Safety Committee 17
5.16 Bond Safety Committee Meeting 17
5.17 Weekly Site-Safety “Toolbox Talk” Meetings 18
5.18 First Aid and Medical Treatment 18
5.19 Incident Investigations 19
5.20 Substance Abuse 19
5.21 Site Visitors and Group Tours 20
6. MINIMUM CONSTRUCTION SAFETY GUIDELINES 22
6.1 Safe Plan of Action (SPA) Guidelines 22
6.2 Repeating Scopes of Work 23
6.3 Job Hazard Analysis 23
6.4 Personal Protective Equipment 24
6.5 Hazard Communication 25
6.6 Respiratory Protection 26
6.7 Fire Prevention 26
6.8 Housekeeping 27

6.9 Silica Control 28
6.10 Sanitation 28
6.11 Demolition and Site Clearance 28
6.12 Demolition Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 29
6.13 Confined Space Entry 29
6.14 Confined Space Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 29
6.15 Trenching and Excavations 30
6.16 Trenching and Excavation Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 31
6.17 Pier Drilling 32
6.18 Pier Drilling Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 33
6.19 Locating Utilities 33
6.20 Utility and Electrical Shutdowns 34
6.21 Utility and Electric Shutdown Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 34
6.22 Electrical Work 35
6.23 Lockout/Tagout (LOTO) 35
6.24 Electrical Power Lines 36
6.25 Fall Prevention and Protection 36
6.26 Elevated Work Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 37
6.27 Roofing 38
6.28 Melting Kettles 38
6.29 Scaffolding 39
6.30 Floor and Wall Openings 40
6.31 Stairways and Ladders 41
6.32 Crane Operations 42
6.33 Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 43
6.34 Steel Erection 44
6.35 Steel Erection Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 47
6.36 Aerial Crane Operations 47
6.37 Aerial Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) 48
6.38 Hot Work 50
6.39 Welding and Cutting 50
6.40 Compressed Gas Cylinders 51
6.41 Earth Moving Equipment and Powered Industrial Trucks 51
6.42 Haul Routes 52
6.43 Traffic Control 52
6.44 Environmental and Hygiene 53

6.45 Spill Prevention and Response 53
6.46 Portable Relocation 53
7. INCIDENT NOTIFICATION GUIDELINES 54
7.1 DISD Incident/Crisis Notification Flowchart 56
7.2 Incident Investigations 57
7.3 Incident Follow-up Guidelines 57
7.4 Contributing Factors to Consider 58
8. CONSTRUCTION SAFETY FOR STUDENTS 58
8.1 Introduction 58
8.2 Separation of Construction Activities 58
9. CRISIS COMMUNICATION 60
9.1 Suggested Steps for Crisis Situations 60
9.2 EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS 60
9.3 Emergency Planning 61
10. CONTRACTOR SAFETY AUDITS 61
10.1 Purpose 61
10.2 Jobsite Safety Inspections 61
10.3 Inspections by Regulatory Agencies 62
11. GREENFIELD PROJECTS 62
11.1 Greenfield Shutdown Guidelines 63
11.2 Greenfield Badging 63
12. UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (DRONE) POLICY 64
12.1 Operating Requirements 64
12.2 Pre-Operation Procedure 64
EXHIBITS 65
EXHIBIT A – Campus Readiness Form 66
EXHIBIT B – Job Hazard Analysis (JHA) 67
EXHIBIT C – Demolition SPA Cover Letter 71
EXHIBIT D – Confined Space SPA Cover Letter 72
EXHIBIT E – Trenching and Excavation SPA Cover Letter 73
EXHIBIT F – Pier Drilling SPA Cover Letter 74
EXHIBIT G – Utility Shutdown SPA Cover Letter 75
EXHIBIT H – Electrical Shutdown SPA Cover Letter 76
EXHIBIT I – Shutdown Authorization Form 77
EXHIBIT J – Elevated Work SPA Cover Letter 78
EXHIBIT K – Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter 79
EXHIBIT L – Steel Erection SPA Cover Letter 80

EXHIBIT M – Aerial Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter 81
EXHIBIT N – Hot Work Permit 82
EXHIBIT O – Incident Investigation Report 83
EXHIBIT P – Safety Inspection Checklist 84
EXHIBIT Q – Contractor Acknowledgement Statement 90
ATTACHMENTS 91
Dallas ISD Orientation Location and Schedule 92
Site-Specific Safety Plan Guidelines 93
Crisis Communications Poster 95
Visitor's Release and Hold Harmless Agreement 96
Shutdown Notification Guidelines 97
Water Shut-off Guidelines 97
Gas Shut-off Guidelines 98
Sanitary Sewer Guidelines 98
Electrical Shutdown Guidelines 99
SWPPP Oversight Flowchart 100
Greenfield Shutdown Authorization Request Guidelines 101
Intruder Detection 102
Campus Security Reminders 103
Safety Meeting Sign-in Sheet 104
Geotechnical Soil Sampling Safety Guidelines 105
Inclement Weather Plan of Action 106

DALLAS ISD DISCLAIMER

The purpose of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual, developed for the Dallas Independent School District, is to assist in the development and implementation of appropriate safety standards. This manual is prepared for use as a minimum guideline for safety during the construction, renovation, and expansion activities to be completed by independent contractors. The program is based on applicable government regulations; insurance related safety/risk management requirements, accepted safety practices within the construction industry and common sense.

The maintenance of safe premises, operations and equipment, protection of the faculty, students, and community, and the avoidance of unsafe conditions and practices (during all construction phases) are the responsibility of the General Contractors and Subcontractors performing the construction work. The Program Manager will provide safety oversight of the Contractor's Safety Program. While mandatory, compliance with the provisions of this Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual will not guarantee or ensure compliance with the requirements of the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910). This manual is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to the Contractors. This manual is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

The Dallas Independent School District, and its Agents, Consultants, etc., assume no liability for the manual's contents or for any safety related service(s) that may be provided during the course of the project.

This Manual is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to Contractors. This Manual is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

References to "Bond Program" must refer to the Dallas Independent School District 2020 and 2015 Bond Programs and other projects managed by the Dallas Independent School District's Construction Services Department as appropriate for the project for which work is to be performed.

Note: If a situation arises that is not covered by the Contractor's Safety Manual or the Construction Minimum Safety Guidelines Manual, please discuss it with your project manager and/or call the Owner's Representative. For additional information regarding the guidelines set forth within this manual, please contact:

Dallas ISD Bond Program Safety Manager, Alvaro Meza
Direct (972) 925-7219 | Mobile (214) 435-2204 | Email almeza@dallasisd.org

2. FOREWORD

This Manual has been compiled to present Loss Control activities and guidelines. Contractors are expected to meet or exceed these minimum guidelines.

The information and suggestions summarized in this Manual were compiled from sources believed to be reliable. It cannot be assumed that this material includes every loss potential, code violation or exception to good practice and, therefore, we cannot guarantee its completeness.

It is solely the Contractor's responsibility to conform to the provisions of this Manual and standards set forth under the William-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 and, as amended, other Federal Regulations, Environmental Nuisances Considered Hazardous as they apply to state, and local regulations. The General Contractor must ensure that each of its Subcontractors comply with the requirements of this Manual.

We should also emphasize that, as with all other aspects of the work, the Contractor's selection of means and methods is his own, and that any and all suggestions contained in this Manual are only representative of the types of techniques and practices which the Contractor may choose to employ on this project.

3. POLICY STATEMENT

The principles of safety and loss control reflect a determination by Dallas Independent School District to prevent injuries to the general public and workers, as well as to prevent damage to property and equipment.

The District considers no phase of construction or administration of greater importance than accident prevention and asserts that accidents which result in personal injury and damage to property and equipment represent needless waste and loss. It must be the policy of the District for Contractors to conduct all operations safely and thereby prevent injuries to persons and damage to property.

Planning for safety must start with the design and continue through purchasing, fabrication, and construction in all phases of the Bond Program. All practical steps must be taken to maintain a safe place to work. The Contractor must accept the responsibility for safety and loss prevention and must be responsible for thorough safety and loss control training and instruction of its employees.

The objective of this policy is to establish throughout the entire Dallas Independent School District Bond Program Construction Projects the concept that the prevention of accidents and protection of property is most important and, therefore, must receive top priority, support, and participation.

4. PROGRAM OBJECTIVES

The Dallas Independent School District Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual has been created to supplement the General Contractor's own program to eliminate or reduce hazards and risks associated with the construction projects, prevent accidents, reduce employee injury, prevent damage to property, promote maximum efficiency and effective savings by the reduction of unplanned business interruption.

4.1 Active Participation of All Contractors

Supervisory staff and employees must make the program not only effective, but also successful by coordinating the participants' efforts in performing the following tasks:

a) Provide a safe environment for employees to perform high quality work.
b) Use safety planning as a tool to reduce bodily injury and property damage.
c) Provide inspections to locate and abate unsafe conditions and practices.
d) Protect the public and property immediately adjacent to all construction sites.
e) Educate and train employees through:
    (1) New hire orientation
    (2) Safety meetings
    (3) Safety training, i.e., hazard communication, trenching safety, confined space, etc.
    (4) Mandatory personal protective equipment programs
    (5) Injury reporting and record keeping up to date
    (6) Incident tracking and trends analysis
    (7) Using accident investigation information to abate deficiencies and eliminate any additional losses
f) Contractors of any tier must comply with all Federal, State, and local laws, ordinances, regulations, and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Standards including the Life Safety Code.

NOTE: The Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual is to work in conjunction with the Contractor's individual Safety Program. All Contractors are required to implement their own written Safety Program and/or the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual prior to construction activities.

5. LOSS CONTROL RESPONSABILITIES

The effectiveness of this program depends upon the active participation and cooperation of all Engineers, Project Managers, Inspectors, Supervisors, General Contractors, their employees, and Subcontractors. The primary goals of this program are to increase safety awareness, raise safety standards in the work environment, and increase management involvement in the safety process.

5.1 Local Laws and Requirements

Each contractor and each Subcontractor of any tier must comply with the most stringent OSHA, City, County, or Federal regulations governing where the project site resides.

NO FELONY CONVICTION REPRESENTATION

All contractors of any tier must comply with the following:

Sec 44.034, Subsection (a) of the Texas Education Code subparagraph (a) requires that a person or business entity that enters a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony.

A school district may terminate a contract with a person or business entity if the district determines that the person or business entity failed to give notice as required by Subsection (a) or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. The district must compensate the person or business entity for services performed before the termination of the contract. This section does not apply to a publicly held corporation.

All contracts must comply with the requirements for criminal background checks. All vendors must give advance notice to the District if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. The district may terminate any resulting agreement if the District determines that the person or business entity failed to provide notice as required by this paragraph or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. This paragraph requiring advance notice does not apply to a publicly held corporation. This paragraph is required by state law, and exceptions permitted in this advance notice do not limit the following requirements.

All vendors will obtain criminal background history record of information that relates to an employee, applicant for employment, or agent of the contractor or consultant if the employee, applicant, or agent has or will have continuing duties related to the contracted services: and the duties are or will be performed on school property or at another location where students are regularly present. The General Contractor or consultant must certify to the District before beginning work and at no less than an annual basis thereafter that criminal history record information has been obtained. General Contractors or consultants must assume all expenses associated with the background checks and must immediately remove any employee or agent who was convicted of a felony, or misdemeanor involving moral turpitude, as defined by Texas law, from District property or other location where students are regularly present.

The District must be the final decider of what constitutes a "location where students are regularly present." General Contractors' or consultants' violation of this section must constitute a substantial failure under any resulting agreement and be grounds for termination.

Unless waived in writing by the Superintendent of Schools or designee, all District vendors must be identified by a photographic identification badge, issued by a District-approved third-party company at the vendor's expense. The third-party company, as detailed in the Purchasing and Financial Activities Manual, must verify the criminal record history information, and may be used to verify compliance with the federal Drug Free Workplace Act of 1988 or its successor, and the federal Education Department General Administrative Regulations, current edition, in its testing and review process.

Employee or agent includes as example, but not by way limitation, persons providing services on the project including all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the General Contractor has undertaken to perform on the project regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, Subcontractors, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnishes persons to provide services on the project.

Services include, without limitation, providing the hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. Services do not include activities unrelated to the project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets. The District must have sole discretion to determine what constitutes a "location where students are regularly present." General Contractor's violation of this section must constitute a default under the General Terms and Conditions of the contract.

5.2 Dallas ISD Safety Orientation and Badging

Prior to working on any Dallas ISD property/project, all General Contractors and Subcontractor employees of any tier must obtain a Dallas ISD Bond Program Photographic Identification badge issued by a District approved third-party company at the General Contractor's or Subcontractor's expense. Any replacement for a lost badge should be obtained by the issuing third-party company.

A Dallas ISD Bond Program Safety Orientation Sticker (to be placed on the I.D. badge) required prior to working on any Dallas ISD property/project. The Safety Orientation sticker is obtained after completion of the required Dallas ISD Bond Program's Safety Orientation provided by the Bond Program's Safety Department. Replacement of the safety orientation sticker must be requested through the Dallas ISD Bond Safety Director or designee. Please see Attachment I for the Dallas ISD Orientation location and schedule.

5.3 Campus Readiness

Campus Readiness is a checkpoint/documented safety inspection that must be completed prior to the start and/or return of campus staff and students to ensure the sustainability of proper separation of all areas and conditions affected by construction activities.

The effectiveness of this checkpoint depends heavily upon the active participation and cooperation of all General Contractors, their employees, engineers, project managers, inspectors, supervisors, and Subcontractors of any tier.

The General Contractor must submit a completed copy of the Campus Readiness Form as EXHIBIT A to the Owner's Representative one (1) working day prior to the return or arrival of campus staff and students, as made part of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines. Campus Readiness Forms must include photographs as confirmation of existing site-conditions. Guidelines for ensuring a consistent approach to this checkpoint are as follows:

(1) Ensure all areas affected by construction are properly separated from staff, students, and the general public.

(2) A completed copy of the Campus Readiness Form, along with photographs of each affected area must be provided to the Owner's Representative one (1) working day prior to the return of staff and students.

(3) Communicate the significance of adequate separation of construction activities to all contractors of any tier.

(4) A follow-up inspection must be conducted to ensure proper separation of construction activities remain constant.

5.4 Protecting the General Public

Every precaution must be taken to prevent injury to pedestrians or damage to the property of others. The public must be considered as any person not employed by the General Contractor or Subcontractor of any tier.

Among the precautions to be taken are the following:

a) Work must be performed in a public area only when specified by the Contract or the District in writing

b) Every step necessary must be taken to protect and maintain work areas that interface with public sidewalks, building entrances (lobbies, corridors, aisles, etc.), stairways, and roadways.

c) This protection must include but not be limited to installing and maintaining the appropriate barricades, fences, guardrails, overhead protection, partitions, signs, shields, which must be adequately visible. Protection against any additional harmful exposure must also be provided.

d) All travel ways, access, emergency exits, and egress points must always be maintained clear of obstructions.

e) Warning signs are to be conspicuously positioned and a flag person must be assigned when moving equipment that may encounter pedestrians or private vehicles.

f) Overhead protection must be in accordance with the laws of the jurisdiction where the project resides.

g) Each project work area must be protected by a fence constructed of wood or metal and stand at least six (6) feet high to prevent incidental public entry.

h) Fences from construction areas should separate all playgrounds.

i) All fencing must be inspected daily, and repairs made where necessary to prevent unauthorized access.

j) Guardrails must be made of rigid materials and comply with OSHA regulations.

k) Barricades for the general public and/or public roadways must always be secured against accidental displacement and in place, except when temporary removal is required. At such times, a trained flag person must be assigned to control the unprotected area.

l) Should a permanent sidewalk require obstruction or removal, a temporary alternative pedestrian walkway must be provided. Guardrails must be installed on both sides of any temporary walkway that has a fall exposure.

m) When emergency exits must be re-routed, the General Contractor must provide the necessary signs, maps etc. that will show where the nearest emergency exits are located.

5.5 Work Performed Near Existing District Right-of-Way

For any construction equipment (such as cranes, concrete pump trucks, and back hoes) that could encroach on the District's operating right-of-way, the General Contractor must submit and obtain approval from the District for a plan describing the use of such equipment, and the necessary precautions to be taken to preclude any accidental encroachment on the right-of-way.

5.6 General Contractors

The Contractor is responsible for accident prevention and job-site safety. The extent to which these program objectives are met depends upon active management promotion and support of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines and the complete cooperation of Subcontractors, job site supervisors, and construction personnel in carrying out the following basic procedures:

a) All work must be pre-planned to minimize personal injury, property damage, and loss of production time.

b) General Contractors must maintain a system of prompt detection and correction of unsafe practices and conditions.

c) All Contractor and Subcontractor employees of any tier must successfully complete a site-specific orientation and indoctrination program as described in Section 5.9 of this manual.

d) Site records must be maintained to assure compliance with all OSHA, Federal, and State Regulations and the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines. Site records must include, but not be limited to, the following:

(1) Weekly Toolbox Talk Meeting Agenda/Sign-in Sheets
(2) Incident Investigations
(3) Corrective Action Plan
(4) Worker Training Documentation
(5) Hazard Communication Program
(6) Fire Prevention Plan
(7) Silica Control Plan
(8) Campus Readiness
(9) OSHA 300 Logs
(10) Safety Inspection Reports
(11) Substance abuse program
(12) Site-Specific Orientation
(13) Daily Job hazard analysis (JHA)
(14) Daily Sign-in Sheets

e) General Contractor and Subcontractor safety representatives of any tier must attend at minimum one (1) documented monthly safety committee meeting.

f) Each General Contractor must send a company representative to attend monthly safety committee meetings, or more frequently, as may be required for unusual circumstances and situations.

g) General Contractors must ensure all Subcontractors of any tier comply with the established policies and procedures to ensure adequate compliance with all applicable Federal and/or State Laws and Standards.

h) The General Contractor must maintain a paper copy of the "Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual" at each project site.

i) In the event of a conflict and/or ambiguity between various statutes or safety provisions, the stricter provision must apply.

j) The General Contractor must provide additional training when necessary for all its employees and must assure that each Subcontractor provides additional training when necessary for all of its employees. All training must be documented.

k) General Contractors must maintain a Daily Sign-in Sheet for the tracking of its construction workers in and out of the project each day.

NOTE: No requested advice from the representatives of Marsh Inc., Architect, Engineer, or the District must in any way relieve, alter, change, or amend any of the General Contractor's expressed, implied, or inherent legal and/or contractual obligations. Furthermore, the authority vested in the District and its designated representatives, including Marsh Inc. to act on matters regarding safety, must not in any way reduce the General Contractor's responsibility for safety and accident prevention. The District and its representatives, including Marsh Inc. are obligated only to notify the General Contractor of observed instances in which the General Contractor failed to fulfill their own obligations.

5.7 Site-Specific Safety Plan

Within fourteen calendar (14) days after the Notice of Award, but not later than the Preconstruction Conference, the General Contractor must submit a copy of the Site-Specific Safety Plan together with a letter of Management's Statement of Policy, signed by an officer of the company in relation to its contract, to the Owner's Representative and include all applicable criteria as listed in Attachment II (Site-Specific Safety Plan Guidelines) of this manual.

5.8 Work Areas

The General Contractor must provide a safe work area for its employees, Subcontractors of any tier, campus occupants, and the general public. The General Contractor may seek the District's assistance to resolve complex construction safety problems.

5.9 Site-Specific Safety Orientation

Prior to the start of work, each General Contractor and Subcontractor employee of any tier must receive a Site-Specific Safety Orientation. This orientation must be conducted by the General Contractor's Safety Representative and include project-specific safety requirements, protection of school children, public safety, proper use of personal protective equipment, and safe work practices.

a) Site-specific orientations must be no less than thirty **(30) minutes**.
b) To verify that the employee has received and understands this indoctrination, the employee must sign a "sign-in sheet", which the General Contractor must keep on file.
c) It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to ensure that non-English speaking employees receive these same instructions in a language they understand.

5.10 Jobsite Trailer Postings

On a weekly basis, the General Contractor must plan and execute its work with the utmost care and in coordination with the campus principal to not endanger the students' safety and to provide its Subcontractors with the most up to date project information available. To this end, the below items must be updated weekly and posted for Subcontractor's ready reference:

(1) The number of weeks remaining until Substantial Completion must be posted on the door.
(2) The Project Team's Contact List (phone numbers and email) must be posted on the door.
(3) A complete copy of the Operations Parameters must be posted on the wall.
(4) A colored copy of the General Contractor's GPR Report must be Posted on the wall and redlined anytime changes to utility locations are made.
(5) A Site Map showing the location of each utility shutdown valve must be posted on the wall.
(6) A copy of the project 's Baseline Schedule must be posted on the wall.
(7) A copy of the Three (3) Week Lookahead Schedule must be posted on the wall.
(8) A copy of the project's Phasing Plan must be posted on the wall.
(9) A hard copy of the last OAC Hand Outs must be posted on the wall.

(10) The Construction Drawings must be posted at the jobsite trailer and red lined weekly.

(11) A copy of the DISD Crisis Communication Guidelines Poster (Attachment III) must be posted on the wall.

5.11 General Contractor Project Manager

Responsibilities of the Project Manager must include, but are not limited to:

a) Plan and execute all work to comply with the stated objectives of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual.

b) Comply with all the provisions of the contract dealing with safety and accident prevention requirements.

c) Require project and job superintendents, safety representatives, and project foremen to enforce the federal, state, and local safety codes and regulations.

d) Cooperate with the Owner's Representative.

e) Authorize necessary action to correct sub-standard safety conditions reported or observed.

f) Review and take necessary action with respect to safety matters through directives or personal interviews with superintendents, project foreman, and/or Subcontractors' management.

g) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

5.12 General Contractor Safety Representative

At the General Contractor's discretion, the Site-Superintendent or Project Foreman may serve in the capacity of Safety Representative if the individual selected to serve can perform the minimum criteria listed below for Safety Representative.

The designated Site Safety Representative must hold an OSHA 30hr (within five (5) years of completion) and a valid First Aid/CPR certification, and minimum of 3 years of experience managing on site safety responsibilities. The Site Safety Representative must not have any other duties than monitor all Subcontractor's compliancy with Federal, State, Local ordinances, in addition to the Minimum Construction Safety Guidelines and the Contractor's Safety Manual. Moreover, the Site-safety Representative must ensure all non-compliant conditions or unsafe behavior is immediately corrected.

NOTE: If the person designated is not able to successfully perform the minimum criteria listed for safety representative, an on-site full-time site safety may be required.

Responsibilities of the designated Safety Representative must include, but are not limited to:

a) Ensure that the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines are carried out.
b) Monitor employee compliance with all jobsite rules and regulations and ensuring that the rules are improved as necessary.
c) Make daily safety inspections of jobsites and take necessary immediate corrective action to eliminate unsafe acts and conditions.
d) Ensure the OSHA 300 Form Accident Report is properly completed and distributed.
e) Review and assist when necessary, accidents and incidents to ensure that injured employees follow proper reporting procedures, and that Accident Investigation Reports are completed accurately. Where appropriate, recommend immediate corrective action to the project manager or superintendent.
f) Provide project foremen with appropriate material for use in conducting weekly "toolbox" safety meetings.
g) Periodically attend project foreman's "toolbox" safety meetings and evaluate their effectiveness.
h) Implement safety-training programs, for supervisors and employees as they apply to their specific responsibilities where the Safety Representative identifies a need.
i) Encourage programs for recognition of individual employee's safety efforts and their contribution toward improved work methods.
j) Responsible for the control and availability of the necessary safety equipment, including employee's personal protective equipment.
k) Coordinate safety activities with those of the District's personnel, the Safety Representatives of Subcontractors, and the Owner's Representative.
l) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

5.13 General Contractor Site-Superintendent

It is the responsibility of superintendents to provide constant and thorough supervision of ongoing activities including safety of its employees and the employees of all Subcontractors. The Contractor's Superintendent must hold an OSHA 30hr (within five (5) years of completion) and a valid First Aid/CPR certification.

Responsibilities of the Superintendent include, but are not limited to:

a) At minimum, one General Contractor representative who has been designated as Competent Person must be present while contractors of any tier are on-site.
b) Planning and executing all work as to comply with stated objectives of the Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual, and work with the Safety Representative to assure the effectiveness of the program.
c) Plan all work far enough in advance so that proper safety procedures and equipment can be provided before work begins.

d) Ensure that no unsafe conditions are created, i.e., poor housekeeping, removal of guardrails, etc.
e) Take immediate action to eliminate, correct, or resolve any unsafe conditions or unsafe acts, which are observed or discovered.
f) Ensure that periodic inspections of safety equipment and personal protective equipment is conducted and enforce the use of such equipment.
g) Ensure that injured employees obtain prompt medical attention.
h) Participate in the completion of supervisory accident investigation of all accidents and suggest ways to prevent similar accidents.
i) Periodically attend foreman's weekly “toolbox” safety meetings and evaluate their effectiveness.
j) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

5.14 Subcontractor Competent Person

Subcontractor Foremen/Competent Person(s) are an integral part of an effective safety program and the amount of effort they put into accident prevention on their daily assignments helps determine whether or not a good accident record is maintained. The Subcontractor’s designated Competent Person must hold an OSHA 10hr (within five (5) years of completion) and a valid First Aid/CPR certification.

In accordance with 29 CFR 1926.32(f), a "Competent Person" is defined as "one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees, and who has **authorization** to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them."

Responsibilities of the Subcontractor Competent Person shall include, but are not limited to:

a) At minimum, one Subcontractor representative who has been designated as Competent Person must be present while work is being performed (work includes self-performing and/or its contractors of any tier).
b) Instruct employees, under their supervision, on safe work practices and work methods at the time of work assignments.
c) Competent Person(s) must be trained and certified in First Aid/CPR and possess an OSHA 10-hour certification within 5 years of the issuing date.
d) Report immediately to the Safety Representative and superintendent of any violations of project safety that cannot be immediately corrected.
e) Supply and enforce the use of proper protective equipment and suitable tools for the project.
f) Verify that no unsafe practices or conditions are allowed on any part of their job.
g) Acquaint their workers with all applicable safety requirements and enforce them.
h) Set a good example for their workers. Lead by example.

i) Participate in the investigation of accidents and incidents to determine facts necessary to take corrective action.

j) Supply information for completion of the Accident Report and Investigation Form (directed by the General Contractor's Safety Representative and/or project Superintendent).

k) See that prompt first aid is administered to injured employees.

l) Hold weekly "Toolbox Talk" safety meetings with their employees

m) Weekly "toolbox" safety meetings must include:

   (1) Discuss observed unsafe work practices or conditions and corrective action taken to prevent a similar incident or condition.

   (2) Review the accident experience of their crew.

   (3) Encourage safety suggestions from their employees and report them to the Safety Representative.

   (4) All safety meetings are to be documented and kept in job trailer for review if requested.

n) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

5.15 Safety Committee

Under the direction of the District, a safety committee will be appointed from the selected company safety representatives and management. This committee will meet on a monthly basis for review of any safety issues needing attention as well as for investigation of serious accidents that result in loss of life, injury to several workers or pedestrians, or a major property loss. All employees of any tier must cooperate when necessary with any safety committee investigation. The committee will submit a report to the District at the conclusion of the investigation.

5.16 Bond Safety Committee Meeting

Bond Safety Committee Meetings are held monthly at the Dallas ISD Bond Office and must consist of the General Contractor's Project Manager, Superintendent, Safety Representative, Insurance Carriers' Representative (when available), and a Safety Representative from each Program Manager and Contractor currently working on the Bond Program.

The purpose of the meetings must be to create awareness, improve communications, encourage feedback, and solve problems. The Contractor's Safety Representative must share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at such meetings.

5.17 Weekly Site-Safety "Toolbox Talk" Meetings

Toolbox talks are weekly project safety meetings used to reinforce safety basics, focus on high-risk scenarios, and to inform workers about changes to the jobsite and working conditions that may have occurred. General Contractors must discuss any near miss, accidents, or injuries that have occurred and how they could have been prevented.

a) The General Contractor and all Subcontractors are required to hold a minimum of **one 15-minute site-safety Toolbox Talk meeting per week**.
b) All workers on the project site, including site Project Management team members, must attend a weekly safety Toolbox Talks, which must be presented in English and all other languages that are natively spoken at the project.
c) The General Contractor's safety representative may deliver each talk to the entire project population or each Subcontractor's safety representative may deliver individual meetings to their specific trade and/or group.
d) The General Contractor's safety representative must periodically participate and review individual meetings to ensure effectiveness.
e) The General Contractor must collect and maintain copies of all sign-in sheets for every meeting.
f) Meetings must address appropriate topics for the current and future work operations and current site conditions. In addition, the General Contractor must communicate information discussed during the Monthly Bond Safety Committee Meeting, inspection results, and other project safety-related topics.

5.18 First Aid and Medical Treatment

Emergency "911" telephone number must be used for all accidents requiring the response of Emergency Medical Services, Fire Department or Police.

"First Aid" can be defined as the immediate or temporary care given to a person who is ill or who has been injured. Any person trained in first aid should be able to recognize life (or other physical) threatening conditions and take some effective action to help keep the victim alive and in the best possible condition until professional medical help arrives. CFR-1926.50

For each shift of operation, all General Contractors must have on-site supervisors who are formally trained and current on basic first aid and CPR. These supervisors will be expected to provide emergency medical first aid on their jobs for all employees but in no case will be designated as the "First Responder" for the project

a) First aid supplies must be readily accessible on each project site. The first aid cabinet/kit must always be adequately stocked.
b) All injuries are to be reported to the immediate supervisor, no matter how minor. Treatment will be administered, and a report made of the injury. The employee's supervisor is responsible for making arrangements to transport the employee to and from the closest medical clinic/hospital.

c) Under no circumstances must the employee be allowed to drive him or herself to the medical clinic/hospital. All seriously injured personnel will be transported by ambulance to the nearest hospital.
d) All employees must notify their supervisor prior to leaving the site because of illness or injury.
e) If any employee obtains medical treatment without prior notification to the superintendent, the employee must notify the superintendent at the start of the next scheduled workday.
f) Prior to returning to work after treatment by a physician for a work-related injury, the employee must present a return-to-work form from the treating physician.

5.19 Incident Investigations

When an accident or near miss with major potential for a loss occurs, the supervisor of the crew(s) involved must perform an accident investigation. After the root cause has been identified and recommendations for corrective action have been determined, a procedure may be implemented to prevent a similar incident from occurring again.

5.20 Substance Abuse

Dallas Independent School District (Dallas ISD) is committed to the establishment and maintenance of a safe and efficient work environment for all personnel, free from the effects of alcohol, illegal drugs, and other controlled substances.

5.20.1 Policy:

District prohibits on their property, the use, possession, concealment, transportation, promotion, or sale of any of the following:

(1) Alcoholic beverages.
(2) Marijuana and other illegal drugs
(3) Look-a-likes and designer drugs
(4) Drug paraphernalia
(5) Controlled substances such as medications when usage is abused or when the substance is possessed without proper prescription labeling.

All person(s) directly or indirectly involved with the 2015 or 2020 Bond program, must not be under the influence of any of the above substances while on Dallas ISD property or to use, possess, conceal, transport, promote or sell any of the above substances will be grounds for disciplinary action, up to and including removal from the Bond program.

5.20.2 Other Controlled Items

Dallas ISD prohibits the use, possession, concealment, transportation, promotion, or sale of the following controlled items:

(1) Firearms, weapons, and ammunition (except when authorized for security reasons)
(2) Switchblades

(3) Unauthorized explosives including fireworks

(4) Stolen Property

5.20.3 General Contractor Requirements

General Contractors, including its Subcontractors of any tier, must employ a workforce free of the influence or possession of illegal drugs or alcohol while on District's property.

a) As a condition of employment, employees must submit to substance abuse screening (five-panel drug screening) and breath alcohol testing for Pre-employment, Post-accident/Incident, Just-cause, Random selection, and Return to work.

b) The Contractor must pay for all costs associated with a NIDA-approved laboratory to conduct substance abuse testing and breath alcohol testing.

c) All General Contractors and Subcontractors are responsible for reporting to the Bond Program Safety Manager any incidents in violation of the substance abuse program and the disposition of the violation. The Owner or its designee must reserve the right, but not the obligation, to order the Contractor to send a worker home for the day, or to remove a worker from any Bond Program Project, for his/her failure to comply with anti-substance abuse policies, and the Contractor must promptly comply with all such orders.

d) General Contractors and Subcontractors of any tier must declare one (1) or more employees to be its designated Competent Person.

e) The designated Competent Person must be dedicated to the Project for on-site safety responsibilities and must be on the project site when any part of the applicable General Contractor's or Subcontractor's work is being performed.

5.20.4 Definitions:

Property must refer to all land owned by the District, to all property thereon; buildings, structures, facilities, platforms, fixtures, tunnels, installations, and to all project vehicles, stationary or mobile equipment, whether owned or leased. This definition may also include other work locations while in the scope and course of employment on the District's Construction Projects.

5.21 Site Visitors and Group Tours

Normally there are no tours during a construction project. However, it is particularly important that a high degree of protection be afforded to all persons on authorized tours of construction worksites.

In the event a tour is authorized, the following instructions must be complied with, as applicable, by the General Contractor and those responsible for arranging such tours:

a) Tours must be scheduled prior to the start or after the end of the workday.

b) In all cases, the Program Manager and the Owner's Representative must be advised of any tour in a timely manner prior to the tour taking place.

c) Group tours must be cleared through the District, allowing maximum advance notice and in compliance with the District's policies and procedures. The District will coordinate the tour arrangements.

d) The General Contractor will coordinate the following with the individual or organization requesting the tour:

(1) Clothing: Visitors will be required to wear pants or slacks, shirt or blouse, and leather or work shoes. Sneakers, high-heeled shoes, and open toed shoes are prohibited.

(2) Minors: Persons under 18 years of age are not permitted on project tours.

(3) Protective Equipment: Hard hats, eye protection, earplugs, and other protective devices will be required, as necessary.

(4) Release and Hold Harmless Agreement: Each visitor must be required to sign a release and hold harmless agreement prior to the commencement of the tour. A sample Visitor's Release and Hold Harmless Agreement is contained in this Manual as Attachment IV.

(5) All visitors must comply with Contractor safety requirements.

(6) All visitors must be escorted by the job-site superintendent, Bond Program Safety Director, or their designated representatives.

e) Designated escorts must familiarize their group(s) with the hazards to be encountered on the tour prior to entering the project site.

f) District representatives, who visit or escort technical and official visitors in hazardous work areas, must notify the General Contractor in advance and must comply with all established construction safety procedures.

6. MINIMUM CONSTRUCTION SAFETY GUIDELINES

6.1 Safe Plan of Action (SPA) Guidelines

A Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive safety program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used when engaged in any of the following nine (9) critical phases of work:

(1) Excavation
(2) Elevated Work
(3) Crane Operations
(4) Steel Erection
(5) Confined Space
(6) Pier Drilling
(7) Demolition
(8) Utility Shutdown
(9) Electrical Shutdown

It is critical that Contractors understand the importance of developing an effectively functioning Safe Plan of Action (SPA) that is pro-active and addresses the potential hazards and exposures to their employees, campus occupants, the public, and other trades within the affected areas.

a) SPA Documentation must be submitted to the Owner's Representative within **5-7 days** of any planned critical phases of work.
b) The General Contractor must assemble all criteria as listed on the SPA Cover Letter checklist for all critical phases of work.
c) The SPA Cover Letter checklist and its supporting documentation must be combined into a single PDF so that it is an exact electronic version of the physical document that must kept on-site.
d) The General Contractor Safety Manager must review, evaluate, and approve of the SPA for adherence to all applicable federal regulations and the DISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines prior to submitting a copy to the Owner's Representative and the commencement of work.
e) The Owner's Representative may review and respond. Any issues or deficiencies will require the General Contractor to revise and resubmit the document. If no deficiencies are noted, The General Contractor must then schedule the Pre-Work SPA Meeting.
f) The Pre-Work SPA Meeting will be a final review of the complete Cover Letter checklist criteria before proceeding with any planned work. SPA Pre-Work Meetings must be held in-person and on-site. At a minimum, the following persons must be present:
    (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
    (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
    (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.2 Repeating Scopes of Work

For repeating types of work that have already gone through the SPA review process, a separate submittal and review will not be required **ONLY** if **ALL** the following conditions have been met:

(1) The General Contractor Safety Manager has reviewed and approved the safety plan
(2) The work performed will be substantially similar to the scope of work as previously approved
(3) The Competent Person(s) listed on the documents has not changed
(4) The Sub Contractor crew list, training records, and certifications have not changed or expired

6.3 Job Hazard Analysis

Planning for the safety of personnel and equipment being used must begin with each phase of construction and continue through project completion. Contractors must plan the safety procedures to be followed for each phase of construction.

a) JHA's must be implemented on any task which may cause bodily injury, damage to property, or equipment e.g., crane lifts, redirecting of foot and or vehicle traffic, use of scaffolding, use of mobile aerial work platforms, and or any other task which pose a high risk.
b) A Job Hazard Analysis (JHA) is required prior of starting any work shift, equipment, or procedure that poses a significant potential for bodily injury and/or property damage.
c) The Job Hazard Analysis must be written by the performing Contractor and submitted to the General Contractor for approval.
d) Contractors must use EXHIBIT B (Job Hazard Analysis Worksheet) or its approved equivalent.
e) The General Contractor's Safety Representative in conjunction with the job site Supervisor is directly responsible for the development and implementation of Job Hazard Analysis (JHA).
f) Daily JHA Meetings must include the General Contractor and/or Subcontractors, their responsible job site supervisors (including the craft supervisor and craft Safety Representative), and any other responsible party who may contribute to the safety of the operation.
g) Employees involved with the project must be instructed of the hazards involved and methods required in eliminating those hazards, including emergency actions to be taken in the event of an accident.
h) Employees must be made aware of the procedures to be used and requirements of the JHA.
i) The JHA serves as an operating procedure and living documents that must be available to all personnel performing the work.
j) The General Contractor and Subcontractor's Safety Representative must retain a copy of all JHAs.

6.4 Personal Protective Equipment

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) must be required for all persons on any construction site. The construction site is defined as any area within the project perimeter fence and interior renovation areas, excluding offices and office trailers.

PPE includes but is not limited to:

6.4.1 Hard Hats

All persons working, walking, or transiting the construction site must always wear an ANZI-Z-89 approved hardhat. Bump caps are prohibited. Any operation that requires an employee to wear face protection does not preclude the use of head protection. The face protection must be selected so that it can be used in conjunction with the required head protection.

6.4.2 Safety Vest

High visibility vests or high visibility upper body clothing (equivalent to ANSI Class 2 or greater as applicable) must be worn in the construction area. Primary work activities such as traffic control, excavations, rigging from ground level, exterior work at ground level or sub-ground level, earth moving operations, may require ANSI Class 3.

6.4.3 Eye Protection

Employees must wear ANZI Z-87 approved eye protection must be required when construction activities present a potential eye injury from flying debris, physical, chemical, or radiation agents.

6.4.4 Face protection

Face protection must be required when construction activities present a potential face injury from flying debris, physical, chemical, or radiation agents. Any operation that requires an employee to wear face protection does not preclude the use of eye protection. The eye protection must be selected so that it can be used in conjunction with the required face protection.

Any person working near or observing operations requiring additional or specialty eye protection must be equipped with the same type of eye protection that is required for that operation.

6.4.5 Hearing Protection

All contractors of any tier must implement a hearing conservation program when noise exposure is at or above 85 decibels averaged over 8 working hours, or an 8-hour time-weighted average.

6.4.6 Footwear

All employees and vendors in active work areas must wear substantial leather work shoes or work boots. Tennis shoes, sneakers, or other athletic footwear, flipflops, heels (1" +) or any open toe shoes are not acceptable footwear.

6.4.7 Clothing

All employees must be required to wear such additional protective clothing or equipment as required by the hazards involved with the tasks being performed.

a) All clothing should be in good repair, and not loose fitting or dragging in such a manner to pose a hazard from becoming entangled in equipment or machinery.
b) All button shirts will be buttoned or t-shirts with at least 4" sleeves must be worn at all times while on the jobsite. Tank tops, mesh shirts, sweatpants, shorts nor clothing displaying pornographic, or profanity will be allowed.
c) Long hair will be neatly kept under a hardhat as to prevent serious injury caused by entanglement.

6.4.8 Jewelry

No dangling jewelry must be permitted on work sites. Necklaces will be kept inside shirts to prevent possible entanglement in moving equipment and rotating machinery.

6.5 Hazard Communication

The General Contractor's Hazard Communication (Haz-Com) Program must be submitted to the Owner's Representative and made part of the General Contractor's Construction Safety Program and maintained on-site.

a) Contractors must provide all required training, control methods, personal protective equipment, and medical surveillance for its employees as required by OSHA 1926 Subpart Z. Training programs must ensure all employees can at a minimum:
   (1) Understand the program and can identify with hazardous chemicals.
   (2) Understand product-warning labels.
   (3) Know where Safety Data Sheets (SDS) are kept and can interpret them.
b) The General Contractor must maintain copies of Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for all chemicals to be used, stored, and/or maintained on any DISD Project prior to arrival or use.
c) All hazardous materials must be properly labeled per GHS and stored in accordance with applicable laws.
d) Contractors are responsible for proper disposal of hazardous waste in accordance with applicable laws and Environmental Requirements.
e) The General Contractor is responsible for ensuring work zones and potentially affected occupied areas are properly monitored for exposure to toxic and hazardous substances that workers or building occupants may be exposed to. Some examples include but are not limited to the following:
   (1) Asbestos
   (2) Lead
   (3) Hexavalent chromium
   (4) Beryllium
   (5) Silica
   (6) Mold

NOTE: It is the General Contractor's responsibility to monitor for these substances and to communicate with and protect building occupants if exposure is possible.

6.6 Respiratory Protection

When respirators are deemed necessary, the Contractor must have a respiratory program that complies with OSHA regulations. A copy of the Contractor's Respiratory Program must be submitted to the Owner's Representative and made part of the General Contractor's Construction Safety Program and maintained on-site.

a) Contractors of any tier must take all actions necessary to ensure air quality standards are met on the project and in its work areas. The employer shall evaluate emissions caused by their work processes (e.g., welding, running vehicles, etc.) and/or by the materials used.
b) When deemed necessary, employees must be fitted for and instructed in the proper use of respirators that will afford them the maximum protection for the environmental hazard in which they are working. Because of the extensive use of waterproofing, fireproofing, paints and welding processes, these areas may require constant monitoring

6.7 Fire Prevention

All Dallas ISD Schools Are Smoke and Tobacco Free.

The Fire Prevention and Protection Program will be determined for each project by the size and conditions at each project. The project superintendent must be responsible for the proper implementation and administration of the program giving due consideration to the availability of public Fire Departments and the type of work to be performed on the job.

The General Contractor's Site Fire Prevention and Protection Program must be submitted to the Owner's Representative made part of the General Contractor's Construction Safety Program and maintained on-site.

a) Ignition sources are not permitted in areas where flammable or explosives are stored or may be present and must be conspicuously posted: "NO SMOKING, MATCHES OR OPEN FLAMES."
b) Examples of ignition sources include, but are not limited to:
    (1) Smoking
    (2) Electrical cords that are damaged
    (3) Welding, torch cutting, and brazing
    (4) Vehicle engines and electric motors
    (5) Asphalt kettles
    (6) Hotplates
c) Fire Extinguishers of the appropriate type (A: B: C) must be provided, be placed conspicuously and sign posted.
d) Fire extinguishers will be maintained and inspected as required by Federal, State, and local regulations.

e) Fires and open flame devices must not be left unattended. Open burning for personal warming or trash disposal is prohibited.
f) All temporary heating devices must comply with all requirements of CFR 1926.154
g) All flammable liquids, e.g., gasoline, diesel, mixed gas, etc., must be labeled, stored, and dispensed from U.L. approved safety cans. The use or storge of plastic fuel containers is strictly prohibited.
h) Compressed gas cylinders, when not in use, will be secured in an upright position. Fuel and nonfuel cylinders must be separated by a minimum of 20 feet.
i) Flammables or Combustible liquids must not be stored in areas used for exits, stairways, or normally used for the safe passage of people.
j) Outdoor Flammable Storage areas must not be within 20 feet of any building. Minimum distance will also be maintained between storage areas, property lines, streets, alleys, or public ways.
k) Outdoor Portable Tanks must not be stored within 20 feet of any building.
l) Each tank must be labeled: "(Contents of Tank) – Flammable, No Smoking"
m) At least one portable fire extinguisher will be located no less than 25 feet, and no further than 75 feet, from any flammable liquid storage area located outside.
n) All areas of the project must be kept free of accumulations of wood scraps, paper, and other combustible debris.
o) Trash dumpsters must be maintained a minimum of 50 feet away from buildings or other structures.
p) In areas where welding, torching, or any open flame activity is being conducted, a trained fire watch will be posted, and he/she will have no other duties. The fire watch will remain in the hot work location for a minimum of 30 minutes after hot work activities are completed to ensure that no hot areas are present.

6.8 Housekeeping

Housekeeping is a basic requirement to construction safety and must be of primary concern to every superintendent, supervisor, and foreman on the project. The maintenance of a safe, clean work area contributes not only to worker safety, and the elimination of fire hazards, but also to efficient low-cost production.

a) All General Contractor and Subcontractor employees of any tier must collect trash, construction debris, and dispose of daily.
b) All trash and debris must be placed in proper containers, properly stacked, or removed from the jobsite daily.
c) Walking aisles, roadways, and high foot-traffic areas must be kept clear at all times.
d) All welding leads, electrical cords, and torch hoses must be strung a minimum of 7 feet high or positioned so as not to create a tripping hazard.
e) Oily rags and any flammable debris must be placed in closed covered containers at the end of each shift, or otherwise properly disposed of.
f) Tools and materials must not be left where they will create a hazard for others.

g) Spilled liquids should be cleaned up immediately.
h) Toilets, wash-up facilities, and drinking water dispensers are to be kept clean and sanitary.
i) Protruding nails must be bent down or removed from boards, plywood, construction materials, etc.
j) Surplus materials must be returned to storage areas.

6.9 Silica Control

Contractors must reduce unacceptable dust levels either through engineering controls or other means. In either case, the Contractor must provide maximum protection for those exposed to dust. Contractors of any tier are responsible for controlling dust that:

(1) Might endanger the health of children, school staff, and employees.

(2) Creates a nuisance to the general public

6.10 Sanitation

The General Contractor is responsible for obtaining and maintaining an adequate number of portable toilets on the project, as well as areas for hand washing.

a) The total number and gender of all employees working on the jobsite must determine the number of portable toilets required.
b) The General Contractor must also provide or require its Subcontractors to provide potable water.
c) Toilets, wash-up facilities, and drinking water dispensers are to be kept clean and sanitary at all times.

6.11 Demolition and Site Clearance

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Demolition Procedure that adheres to OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as EXHIBIT C, and maintained on-site.

a) Prior to commencement of work, a competent person must conduct an engineering survey. This written survey will be considered the basis for an operational work plan.
b) All structures needing support must be braced.
c) All utilities including gas, water, electricity, etc. must be shut down. All pipe work must be purged of any hazardous materials, e.g., flammable, explosive, toxic, etc.
d) All debris chutes will be manufactured of appropriate materials and must be adequately guarded and/or protected.
e) Removal of asbestos, lead, and PCBs must only be conducted by licensed contractors.
f) Remediation activities must adhere to all OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations.

6.12 Demolition Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Demolition Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Demolition Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any demolition activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or any demolition activity.

a) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Demolition SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned demolition activity. The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT C) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
b) The Demolition SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any conditions that may pose a hazard to workers and/or campus occupants as it relates to the planned demolition activity.
c) To hold a Demolition SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
    (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
    (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
    (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.13 Confined Space Entry

General Contractors must ensure the establishment of a written Confined Space Entry Procedure (when applicable) that adheres to OSHA Regulations. A copy of this procedure (when applicable) must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as EXHIBIT D, and maintained on-site.

a) All personnel connected with any confined space operation must be adequately trained and confirmation of this training must be documented.
b) Confined Space Entry Permits must be used where necessary.
c) Air monitors, rescue tripods, full body harnesses, ventilation equipment, etc. must be available and used when deemed necessary by the General Contractor.

6.14 Confined Space Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Confined Space Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Confined Space Entry Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any confined space entry. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or any confined space entry.

a) The General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting 5-7 days prior to any planned confined space entry. The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT D) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety

plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.

b) The Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any conditions that may pose a hazard to workers and/or campus occupants as it relates to the planned confined space work.

c) To hold a Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

   (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person

   (2) General Contractor Safety Representative

   (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.15 Trenching and Excavations

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Trenching and Excavation Procedure that adheres to OSHA Regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as EXHIBIT E, and maintained on-site.

a) The General Contractor must ensure trenching and/or excavation activities are not performed during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.

b) Prior to any excavation activity, the General Contractor Safety Representative or Superintendent must ensure the following:

   (1) Contact Texas811 (1-800-344-8377) for confirmation number.

   (2) Ground penetrating radar (GPR) **and** review of exiting plans must be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods. GPR reports must include an Underground Utility Location Survey/Utility Map which shows the positioning and identification of underground utilities in relation to any planned excavation activity.

   (3) Potholing/hand digging is required within three (3) horizontal feet of "located" centerlines, and in areas where knowledge is lacking.

c) The review of existing plans and any other reasonable efforts must be made to determine if any underground utilities (power lines, water lines, fuel lines, etc.) are present within the boundaries of the proposed work area.

d) As the excavation work approaches the location of any known utilities, the lines must be uncovered, using extreme caution not to disturb the lines, and adequate measures must be taken to protect the lines from damage while the work progresses.

e) All utilities known but not identified must be exposed by hand.

f) All excavation must be inspected daily by a competent person, or after heavy rain, or other change that may have caused a change in ground stability conditions. Any excavation greater than 20 feet must be designed by an engineer and a copy forwarded to the Bond Program Safety Manager for review.

g) Any personnel at the edge of a well, pit, shaft, and similar excavation six (6) feet or more in depth must be protected from falling by guardrail systems, barricades, or covers.

h) Where a guardrail system or barricade is infeasible, the use of personal fall arrest systems are required.

i) Any disturbed areas must be returned to existing and safe condition prior to departure.

j) If the Contractor must make a cut, cavity, trench, or depression in the Earth's surface formed by earth removal, it must comply with the applicable OSHA Regulations.

k) General Contractors must train, or require to be trained, those employees who will work in and around the excavation about the hazards, as required by OSHA, in the areas of daily inspections, soil testing, soil classifications, and protective or support systems.

6.16 Trenching and Excavation Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Trenching and Excavation Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Trenching/Excavation Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and utility strike prevention efforts will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any Trenching/Excavation work. Review and acceptance by the Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission and the start of work.

a) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-dig meeting one week prior to any planned excavation or trenching (hand digging included). The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT E) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.

b) The Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of the existing underground utilities as it relates to the planned trenching/excavation. At the pre-dig meeting, the General Contractor must present a contingency plan regarding any utility struck during execution of such work.

c) To hold a Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

   (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person

   (2) General Contractor Safety Representative

   (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

NOTE: As defined by OSHA, an excavation as any man-made cut, cavity, trench, or depression in the Earth's surface formed by earth removal. A trench is defined as a narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground.

6.17 Pier Drilling

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Pier Drilling Procedure that adheres to OSHA Regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as EXHIBIT F, and maintained on-site.

a) The Contractor must at no time perform any pier drilling activities during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.

b) Prior to any pier drilling activity, the General Contractor Safety Representative or Superintendent must ensure the following:

   (1) Contact Texas811 (1-800-344-8377) for confirmation number.

   (2) Ground penetrating radar (GPR) **and** review of exiting plans must be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods. GPR reports must include an Underground Utility Location Survey/Utility Map which shows the positioning and identification of underground utilities in relation to any planned excavation activity.

   (3) Potholing/hand digging is required within three (3) horizontal feet of "located" centerlines, and in areas where knowledge is lacking.

c) The review of existing plans and any other reasonable efforts must be made to determine if any underground utilities (power lines, water lines, fuel lines, etc.) are present within the boundaries of the proposed work area.

d) As the excavation work approaches the location of any known utilities, the lines must be uncovered, using extreme caution not to disturb the lines, and adequate measures must be taken to protect the lines from damage while the work progresses.

e) All utilities known but not identified must be exposed by hand.

f) Any personnel at the edge of a well, pit, shaft, and similar excavation six (6) feet or more in depth must be protected from falling by guardrail systems, barricades, or covers.

g) Where a guardrail system or barricade is infeasible, use of personal fall arrest systems are required.

h) Pier Drilling equipment must remain barricaded at all times and NOT be operated in occupied school areas.

i) Any disturbed areas must be returned to existing and safe condition prior to departure.

j) If the Contractor must make a cut, cavity, trench, or depression in the Earth's surface formed by earth removal, it must comply with the applicable OSHA Regulations.

k) General Contractors must train, or require to be trained, those employees who will work in and around the pier drilling operation about the hazards, as required by OSHA, in the areas of daily inspections, soil testing, soil classifications, and protective or support systems.

6.18 Pier Drilling Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Pier Drilling Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Pier Drilling Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and utility strike prevention efforts will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any Pier Drilling work. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission and the start of work.

a) When working adjacent to any Pier six (6) feet in depth or greater, an appropriate means of fall protection must be provided.
b) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned pier drilling. The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT F) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
c) The Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of the existing underground utilities as it relates to the planned pier drilling operation. At the pre-work meeting, the General Contractor must present a contingency plan regarding any utility struck during the pier drilling of such work.
d) To hold a Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
    (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
    (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
    (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.19 Locating Utilities

Prior to any underground work being performed, all utilities within the area of work must be located. Safety representative must ensure that Texas811 (1-800-344-8377) has been notified, and Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR) **and** review of exiting plans is be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods and a confirmation number has been issued prior to any excavation.

a) The General Contractor must coordinate with the Program Manager Network or the Architect to have all utilities within the area of work located.
b) The contract specifications and drawings must be reviewed by the General Contractor for notations of utility companies that may not be a member of an underground service alert group. Those not members of an underground service alert group must be contacted directly.
c) All calls to the utility companies must be logged and retained by the General Contractor.
d) The General Contractor must visually check the area for signs indicating the possibility of recent underground relocation work by an outside entity.
e) The General Contractor must take all necessary steps to protect the utilities from damage.
f) Ground penetrating radar (GPR) must be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods prior to any excavation activity.

g) GPR reports must include an Underground Utility Location Survey or Utility Map which shows the positioning and identification of underground utilities in relation to any planned excavation activity.

h) "Potholing" and/or hand digging must be required within three (3) horizontal feet of "located" centerlines, and in areas where knowledge is lacking, prior to any planned excavation activity.

6.20 Utility and Electrical Shutdowns

Prior to any type of shutdown, re-energizing, re-pressurizing, or tie-in activities, the General Contractor is responsible for completing the Shutdown Notification Guidelines as outlined in Attachment V, along with the applicable safety submittal requirements outlines in this section.

a) The General Contractor or Subcontractor of any tier must at no time perform any type of power or other utility shutdown activities during regular school hours. Shutdowns are to be scheduled during weekends or extended breaks.

b) **10-Day Notice of Shutdown** – General Contractor must provide Dallas ISD with notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than ten (10) calendar days in advance of the shutdown. Notification includes Dallas ISD Central Maintenance Office, A/E, Program Manager, and the Principal at each affected school.

c) Shutdown Authorization Form (EXHIBIT I) must be submitted to the Dallas ISD Bond Program Manager and Dallas ISD Project Manager for signatures of approval.

d) The General Contractor must ensure confirmation of readiness from affected Dallas ISD Departments (Including but not limited to HVAC, Kitchen, Fire Suppression, etc.) prior to any power or other utility shutdown activities.

e) When adding HVAC units, the General Contractor must notify the Project AE for approval of increased load

f) Prior to relocating any utility, Dallas ISD Sustainability Department must be notified.

6.21 Utility and Electric Shutdown Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Utility or Electrical Shutdown Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Shutdown Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and contingency efforts will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any power or other utility shutdown activities. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, and utility shutdown activities.

a) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Shutdown pre-work meeting prior to any planned Utility or Electrical Shutdown. The applicable Cover Letter (EXHIBIT G **or** EXHIBIT H) must be submitted along with a Utility or Electrical Shutdown SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.

b) The Utility or Electrical Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any existing or potential hazards and contingency efforts as it relates to the planned shutdown.

c) To hold an Electrical or Utility Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
    (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
    (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
    (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.22 Electrical Work

All electrical work for and throughout the course of any construction project must be provided and performed in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC), and OSHA, 29 CFR 1926 Subpart K, 29 CFR 1926 Subpart V, NFPA 70E and NFPA 70.

a) All 120-volt single-phase 15 and 20 ampere receptacle outlets on construction sites, which are not a part of the permanent wiring of the building or structure and which are in use by employees, must have approved ground fault circuit interrupters (GFCI) for personal protection.
b) Receptacles on a two-wire single-phase portable or vehicle-mounted generator rated not more than 5 kw, when the circuit conductors are insulated from the generator frame and all other grounded surfaces, need not be protected with ground fault circuit interrupters.
c) Employees must be instructed to visually inspect each cord set, plug, and receptacle of cord sets, temporary lighting and all equipment connected by the cord and plug before each day's use for external defects and/or damage. When there is evidence of damage, the damaged item must be taken out of service, tagged until tested, and required repairs made or the item is replaced.
d) No work must not be performed on any energized electrical circuit, busbars, equipment, or panels unless an approved written work plan in accordance with NFPA 70E and submittal for review prior to performance of work. If energized work is required during commissioning, troubleshooting, and/or maintenance work must be performed under an energized electrical permit and the requirements of NFPA 70E.
e) Panel Covers must be kept in place whenever any panel is energized.
f) All Electrical Systems must be inspected and maintained on a regular basis.

6.23 Lockout/Tagout (LOTO)

A Lockout/Tagout procedure must be in place in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.417 and 1910.147 whenever performing inspections, maintenance, repairs, and modifications to equipment, machinery or electrical systems where unexpected release of energy or stored energy could create an injury. A Site LOTO log must be maintained and posted within the GC trailer and/or jobsite officing area.

Electrical box panels, even during breaks, must not be left exposed. Exposed boxes must be physically covered with the panel cover, and areas must be protected with barricades if necessary.

6.24 Electrical Power Lines

All electrical power line must be considered energized until the person owning such line or operating official of the electrical utility supplying the line assures that it is not energized, and it has been visibly grounded.

a) Operations adjacent to power lines are prohibited unless at least one of the following conditions is satisfied:
   (1) Power has been shut off and positive means taken to prevent the lines from being energized (Lock out/Tag out).
   (2) Equipment, or any part, should not have the capability of coming within the minimum clearance of energized overhead lines. As specified in OSHA Regulations, the equipment must be positioned and blocked to ensure no part, including cables, can come within the minimum clearances. A notice of the minimum required clearance must be posted at the operator's position.

6.25 Fall Prevention and Protection

General Contractors are responsible for implementing the requirements to achieve fall protection in accordance with all OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations, this Manual, and must ensure each Subcontractor meets those requirements. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as, EXHIBIT J and maintained on-site.

a) All personnel regardless of craft working at a height of six (6) feet or greater above a lower level, and not protected by standard guardrails or other means must use an appropriate means of fall protection. The fall protection system selected should provide the employees the best means of protection while allowing the employees as much mobility as possible.
b) All employees working where there is a danger of falling must use approved fall protection equipment or devices. Fall protection is required.
c) The employer must prepare a written training program to ensure that each employee who might be exposed to a fall hazard is knowledgeable of the Fall Protection Program requirements. Training documentation must be retained and kept on file at the jobsite.
d) The Fall Protection Program must detail in writing when fall protection is required and exactly how this protection is to be provided. Sketches may be used to assist in the fall protection definition. This written program is required for any General Contractor or Subcontractor of any tier exposing workers to falls six (6) feet or greater above a lower level.
e) Employees must also be trained on the proper wearing, use, and limitations of personal Fall Protection and Arresting Device Systems. Training documentation must be retained and kept on file at the jobsite.
f) Fall arrest systems must be rigged such that an employee can neither free fall more than six (6) feet, nor contact any lower level.
g) Connecting two snap hooks together, as the possibility of a "roll-out" exists, must not be used to lengthen lanyards.

h) All harnesses and lanyards must be inspected frequently by the General Contractor and/or Subcontractor Competent Person. Regular inspections for wear, damage, or corrosion is a daily requirement. Damaged or defective equipment must be removed from service by the responsible Contractor or General Contractor and be destroyed to eliminate the possibility of using at a later date.

i) The employer must assure that a Competent Person, qualified in the following areas, has trained each employee as necessary:

   (1) Complete understanding of all Federal, State, and Local Fall Protection Regulations.

   (2) The nature of fall hazards in the work area.

   (3) The correct procedures for erecting, maintaining, disassembling, and inspecting fall protection systems to be used.

   (4) The use and operation of guardrail systems, personal fall arrest systems, safety net systems, warning line systems, safety monitoring systems, controlled access zones, and other protection to be used.

   (5) The role of each employee in the safety monitoring system (when this system is used).

6.26 Elevated Work Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

An Elevated Work Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Fall Protection Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any employee exposure at an elevation of six (6) feet or greater. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or employee exposure.

a) General Contractors must coordinate and conduct an on-site Elevated Work SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned elevated work six (6) feet or more from a lower level. The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT J) must be submitted along with an Elevated Work SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.

b) The Elevated Work SPA pre-meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any existing and/or potential fall hazards as it relates to the planned elevated work.

c) To hold an Elevated Work SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

   (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person

   (2) General Contractor Safety Representative

   (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.27 Roofing

No roofing work, regardless of the extent, is to be done over an occupied area. No other work will be allowed over an occupied area if it requires access to the roof. This includes, but is not limited to coring, drilling, or installation of electrical and plumbing pipe, Roof blocking, curb construction or reconstruction, flashing etc.

The intent is to restrict the activity that may cause a hazard to the occupants below. Inspections and maintenance activities are allowed as long as it does not involve significant work that might fall into the realm of the aforementioned hazard.

NOTE: An Elevated Work SPA (EXHIBIT J) may be required for roof work six (6) feet or grater in height or above a lower level.

6.28 Melting Kettles

Before firing a kettle (following the manufacturer's instructions), employees must check hoses, gauges, fuel tanks, bumpers, and other equipment for defects and make sure the lid fits tightly. Burners should not be ignited near fuel or flammable materials. All kettles must be equipped with after-burner devices.

a) Other workers who may be working on the roof should keep clear of the kettle workers and their equipment.
b) Work areas where melting kettles are in use will be barricaded off at a minimum distance of twenty-five (25) feet from other work areas.
c) No combustible materials, including insulation and bitumen, should be stored near the kettle.
d) Kettles should not be placed directly on combustible roofs. When it is necessary to place a kettle on such roofs, noncombustible surfaces must be placed under the kettle.
e) Heating devices or melting kettles should be placed on a level, firm foundation and protected against traffic, accidental tipping, or similar hazards.
f) A minimum of three (3) 20 lb. (A: B:C) dry chemical fire extinguishers must be provided for each kettle and tanker operation, each open flame torching operation, and each work crew using mechanical equipment, power tools, hot bitumen, or flammable liquids.
g) Travel distance from the kettle work area to the nearest fire extinguisher must be located within twenty-five (25) feet, on opposite sides of the kettle. These extinguishers shall be readily accessible at all times in case of an emergency.
h) Hot kettles should never be left unattended, **even during lunch periods**. The kettle covers should be readily available and fit tightly. All kettle workers should know how to put out a kettle fire.
i) Before refueling, burners and engines must be safely shut down and allowed to cool.
j) A non-combustible surface must be available on which to put a burner when removed from the kettle.
k) Enclosed areas in which hot substances are being heated or applied should be properly ventilated.

l) Hoisting equipment should be used to raise bitumen to the roof. Hot bitumen should never be carried up ladders. The hoisting equipment must be strong enough to hoist the load and be properly secured.

m) Employees must know the proper way to pick up a bucket and not jerk or kick a bucket that is stuck to a roof.

n) At the conclusion of work, roofing mops should be “fanned out” onto a noncombustible surface to minimize the chance of spontaneous ignition.

6.29 Scaffolding

The erection, alteration or moving, of any scaffolding system or work platform must be performed under the direction of a designated "Competent Person."

a) Guardrails, mid-rails, and toe-boards must be installed on all open sides of scaffolds. This guardrail system should be constructed from components furnished by the manufacturer.

b) Unauthorized personnel must not alter scaffolds or work platforms.

c) Guardrails are required for all scaffolding greater than six (6) feet in height. All employees working on scaffolds 6 ft. or higher must have adequate means of fall protection.

d) Where uplift may occur, scaffold planks must be cleated or secured and must extend over the end supports by at least 6 inches but not by more than 12 inches.

e) A competent person must visually inspect all scaffold members before each use. Damaged scaffold members must be removed from service immediately.

f) Access ladders must be provided for each scaffold in accordance with OSHA 1926.450.

g) Adequate mudsills and/or base plates or other rigid footing, capable of withstanding the maximum intended load, must be provided.

h) Scaffolds must be tied off to the building or structure at intervals in accordance with OSHA 1926.450.

i) Scaffolds must not be overloaded. Materials shall be brought up as needed. Excess materials and scrap must be removed from the scaffold when work is completed.

j) Barrels, boxes, kegs, horses, ladders, loose tile blocks, loose piles of bricks, or other unstable objects must not be used as work platforms or mounted on top of other work platforms.

k) Where persons are required to work or pass under a scaffold, a screen of 18 gauges, 1/2-inch wire mesh or equivalent protection is required between the toe boards and the guardrail.

l) Overhead protection is required if employees working on scaffolds are exposed to overhead hazards.

NOTE: An Elevated Work SPA (EXHIBIT J) may be required for scaffolding systems six (6) feet or grater in height or above a lower level.

6.30 Floor and Wall Openings

As defined by OSHA, a hole constitutes as any gap or void two (2) inches or more in its least dimension, in a floor, roof, or other walking/working surface. Hole covers must be capable of supporting without failure, at least twice the weight of employees, equipment, and materials that may be imposed on the cover at any one time.

6.30.1 General

a) All floor holes and openings into which persons can accidentally walk or fall through must be guarded by a physical barrier or cover, secured, and labeled, "HOLE COVER – DO NOT REMOVE", or protected by a standard guardrail system.

b) Wall openings, from which there is a drop of more than 6 feet, and where the bottom of the opening is less than 42 inches above the working surface, must be guarded with a top rail, mid-rail, and toe board.

c) A standard guardrail system or perimeter cable must guard every open-sided floor or platform 6 feet or more above the adjacent floor or ground level.

d) When it is necessary to work inside the barricade around a floor opening, or building edge, workers must wear and use a Personal Fall Arrest System, which must be tied off.

6.30.2 Guardrails

a) Top rails and mid-rails protecting all work areas 4 feet or more in height must be smooth surfaced throughout their length and have a vertical height of 42 inches. Midrails must be halfway between the toprails and the floor, platform, runway, or ramp. Synthetic or natural fiber ropes must not be used as top-rails or mid-rails.

b) Wire rope, when used as top-rails or mid-rails, must be free of sharp edges, burrs, or projections which may be a hazard. The maximum deflection of the top rail when a load of 200 pounds is applied in any direction at any point on the top rail must not exceed 3 inches in one direction, which includes the free hanging sag in the wire rope. Support posts must not be positioned more than eight (8) feet apart.

c) Wood top railing must be at least 2 x 4-inch stock or equivalent. Wood railing posts must be of at least 2 x 4-inch lumber spaced not to exceed 8 feet. Mid-rails must be at least 1 x 6-inch stock or equivalent. Toe boards must be 1 x 4-inch lumber or equivalent and securely fastened.

d) When materials are piled to such a height that a standard toe board does not provide protection, paneling, or screening from the floor to top-rail or mid-rails must be provided.

e) All guardrails and handrails must be inspected daily and repaired immediately, as needed.

6.31 Stairways and Ladders

6.31.1 Ladders

a) Manufactured ladders must be at minimum Type 1A rated (300lb.)

b) Portable aluminum ladders shall be prohibited.

c) All job-made wooden ladders and stairs, regardless of height, must be constructed according to OSHA and ANSI specifications.

d) Extension ladders must not exceed forty-four (44) feet in length.

e) Stepladders must not exceed twenty (20) feet in length.

f) Single cleat ladders must not exceed thirty (30) feet in length.

g) Double cleat ladder must not exceed a maximum length of twenty-four (24) feet.

h) Workers must maintain three points of contact, with the ladder, while ascending or descending and always face the ladder; Hands must be free of tools and materials.

i) Fixed Ladders: Fall protection must be provided for employees climbing or working from fixed ladders above twenty-four (24) feet. A fixed ladder is a ladder that cannot be readily moved or carried because it is an integral part of a building, structure, or scaffolding system.

6.31.2 Stairways

a) Stairs having 4 or more risers must have its sides protected by a standard handrail system.

b) All job-made wooden ladders and stairs, regardless of height, must be constructed according to OSHA and ANSI specifications.

c) On temporary stairways, for every 12 feet of vertical riser, there must be a landing platform, and:

   (1) Stairs must be at least 24 inches wide and equipped with treads and handrails.

   (2) Temporary stairs must have a 30-inch-wide landing for every 12 feet of vertical rise.

   (3) Stairs must be properly illuminated (5 footcandles).

   (4) Stairways, ramps, or ladders must be provided at all points where a break in elevation of 19 inches or more occurs in a frequently traveled passageway, entry, or exit.

d) Where permanent stairways are not installed, concurrently with the construction of each floor, a temporary stairway must be provided to the work level. Joints must be locked together by lock pins, bolts, or equivalent fastenings.

e) Handrails must be of construction similar to a standard guardrail. All handrails and railings must be provided with a clearance of approximately 3 inches between the handrail or railing and any other object.

f) Handrails must be not more than 37 inches or less than 30 inches from upper surface of handrail to surface of tread. Handrails must also be in line with the face of the riser, or to the surface of the ramp.

6.32 Crane Operations

A Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) pre-operational meeting is required to review the appropriate lift plan prior to making any Critical lift, Major lift, or Standard lift. It should never be assumed that any member of the crew is aware of all aspects of the lift, and therefore all aspects of the lift plan should be reviewed.

a) The General Contractor must ensure that its Subcontractors meet the requirements set forth by ASME B30.5.2011 and OSHA 29 CFR Subpart CC.

b) The following documentation must be available inside of the cab, before crane is placed into service:

   (1) current monthly inspection

   (2) Manufacturer's load chart

   (3) Manufacturer's operating manual.

c) All cranes must receive regular, thorough, and periodic inspections, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or applicable governing standards. All defects noted during any crane inspection must be corrected, prior to use.

d) All cranes must be used in accordance with manufacturer guidelines.

e) Cranes must never be operated in excess of its rated capacity.

f) Contractors must not use a crane to lift/lower and/or suspend personnel in man baskets or work platforms. Any exception to this rule must be cleared through the Contractor's project manager or superintendent.

g) All rigging equipment (i.e., slings, softeners, bridles, blocking cables, etc.) must be inspected prior to use and documented monthly.

h) The General Contractor must ensure that crane and wire rope inspections are performed and that daily, monthly, quarterly, and annual logs are maintained. Crane Inspection Record is included as EXHIBIT K (equivalent form(s) may be utilized).

i) All rigging must be kept in good condition, working load limit capacities properly identified, and properly stored when not in use.

j) All Rigging work must only be done by qualified riggers.

k) Booms and/or suspended loads must not be allowed to pass over playground or other school property when students and/or staff are present in these areas.

l) Safety hooks must be used on all operations where loads are being handled.

m) All suspended loads must be controlled by tag lines of enough length to control the load.

n) All signal persons must:

   (1) Receive proper signaling training.

   (2) Never allow a suspended load to pass over or come within ten (10) feet of power lines.

   (3) Never allow a suspended load to pass over, nor any individual to pass under, a suspended load.

   (4) Be in constant view and communication with the crane operator. Constant communications include proper hand signals and/or radio communications.

(5) Make daily general inspections of the crane prior to use and maintain a log of these inspections. The Operator, or other qualified person may also conduct the daily inspection.

o) All crane operators must:
   (1) Be thoroughly trained and must have related experience,
   (2) Be familiar with safe crane practices and procedures.
   (3) Have a complete understanding of all manuals, including maintenance and operating instructions provided for the specific crane in use.
   (4) Have no physical, visual, or mental reactions or impairments that will affect the safe operations of the assigned crane.

p) The crane operator and crew must not engage in any practice such as cell phone usage during crane operations that could divert their attention.

q) For all Dallas ISD property that lies within an Airport Control Zone (within 5 miles of any airport) the General Contractor will ensure that the crane's boom lighting, flagging, raising, and lowering comply with FFA rules.

r) To provide clearance for air traffic, all booms must be below 175 feet above ground level (AGL) during the hours of sunset to sunrise. However, if this is not possible and temporary construction cranes are left up during this time period or utilized in support of construction activities, then all cranes must have lighting in accordance with FFA Advisory Circulation 70/7460-1, "Obstruction Marking and Lighting."

6.33 Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive crane lift plan which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its plan. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any crane activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission.

a) Any changes in site conditions that could affect the safe operation of the crane must be evaluated and included within the SPA; this plan must be approved by a qualified person.

b) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned crane activity. The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT K) must be submitted along with a Crane Operations SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.

c) Prior to any crane activity, the General Contractor must submit, to the Bond Program Safety Director, or designee:
   (1) A copy of the crane certification and documentation of the most recent annual inspection prior to crane use.
   (2) Crane certificate of insurance
   (3) A copy of the annual crane inspection as well as current maintenance reports.
   (4) Crane Operator certification
   (5) Crane Operator medical card

(6) Crane Location plan that identifies known hazards for underground and overhead crane operations, and where the crane is approved or not approved to operate.

(7) Any changes in site conditions that could affect the safe operation of the crane; this plan must be approved by a qualified person.

(8) Rigger and/or Signal Person's training records

(9) Job Hazard Analysis

d) To hold a Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

(1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person

(2) General Contractor Safety Representative

(3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.34 Steel Erection

Structural stability must be maintained at all times during the steel erection process. The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Steel Erection Procedure that adheres to OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as EXHIBIT L, and maintained on-site.

6.34.1 Site Layout and Construction Sequence

General Contractors must provide erectors with a site layout/map which includes, but is not limited to:

(1) Pre-planned routes for hoisting loads

(2) Pre-planned routes for delivering material, equipment, etc.

(3) Material staging area(s)

(4) Known hazards that may affect underground and/or overhead operations.

6.34.2 Structural Steel Assembly

In addition to the items listed in this section, all contractors of any tier must comply with all federal, state, and local requirements, including those in other sections of this safety manual. All contactors must be required to comply with all parts of these requirements based on their scope of work.

a) Contractors of any tier must not erect steel until receiving a written certification of proper curing of the concrete in the footings, piers, walls, etc. is of sufficient strength to support the loads imposed during steel erection.

b) Prior to the erection of any column, the General Contractor must provide written notification to the steel erector if there has been any repair, replacement, or modification of the anchor rods (anchor bolts) of that column.

6.34.3 Hoisting and Rigging

Contractors of any tier must use qualified riggers during hoisting activities for assembly and disassembly work (29 CFR 1926.1404(r)(1)). Additionally, qualified riggers are required

whenever workers are within the fall zone and hooking, unhooking, or guiding a load, or doing the initial connection of a load to a component or structure (29 CFR 1926.1425(c)).

a) All Rigging and Signal person(s) must be properly trained in accordance with all Federal, State, and local regulations.
b) Free rigging is the practice of attaching ropes, chains, or slings to a telehandler/forklift tine(s) for the purpose of lifting and moving. Free rigging must not be permitted without the telehandler/forklift manufacturer's letter of approval.
c) Exposure to overhead loads must be minimized through pre-planned routes for hoisting loads and/or other contracting personnel who may be transiting the jobsite.
d) Any procedure(s) for multiple rigging lifts (Christmas-treeing) is prohibited.
e) General Contractors must pre-plan site-specific work practices regarding safely landing loads while maintaining proper protection from fall hazards.

6.34.4 Column Anchorage and Double Connections

Columns must be set on level finished floors, pre-grouted leveling plates, leveling nuts, or shim packs which are adequate to transfer the construction loads.

a) All columns must be evaluated by a competent person to determine whether guying or bracing is needed; if guying or bracing is needed, it must be installed.
b) All columns must be anchored by a minimum of 4 anchor rods (anchor bolts).
c) Anchor rods (anchor bolts) must not be repaired, replaced, or field-modified without the approval of the project structural engineer of record.
d) When two structural members on opposite sides of a column web, or a beam web over a column, are connected sharing common connection holes, at least one bolt with its wrench-tight nut must remain connected to the first member unless a shop-attached or field-attached seat or equivalent connection device is supplied with the member to secure the first member and prevent the column from being displaced (See Appendix H of 29 CFR 1926 subpart R for examples of equivalent connection devices).

6.34.5 Falling Object Protection

a) All materials, equipment, and tools, which are not in use while aloft, must be secured against accidental displacement.
b) The General Contractor must bar any construction processes below steel erection activities unless overhead protection for the employees below is provided.

6.34.6 Fall Protection

Each employee engaged in any steel erection activity who is on a walking/working surface with an unprotected side or edge more than six (6) feet above a lower level must be protected from fall hazards by guardrail systems, safety net systems, personal fall arrest systems, positioning device systems, or fall restraint systems.

a) A safety railing of 1/4-inch wire rope, or equal, must be installed approximately 42 inches high, around the periphery of a temporary planked or metal deck floor during structural steel erection. This wire rope must be flagged every six (6) feet.

b) Wire rope should be securely fastened yet allow for temporary removal in order to land materials.

6.34.7 Controlled Decking Zone (CDZ)

A controlled decking zone may be established in the area of the structure over fifteen (15) feet and up to thirty (30) feet above a lower level where metal decking is initially being installed and forms the leading edge of a work area. In each CDZ, the following must apply:

a) Each employee working at the leading edge within a CDZ must be protected from fall hazards six (6) feet or greater above a lower level.
b) Access to a CDZ must be limited to only those employees engaged in leading edge work.
c) The boundaries of a CDZ must be designated and clearly marked. The CDZ must not be more than ninety (90) feet wide and ninety (90) feet deep from any leading edge. The CDZ must be marked by the use of control lines or the equivalent. (Examples of acceptable procedures for demarcating CDZ's can be found in Appendix D of 29 CRF 1926 subpart R).
d) Each employee working in a CDZ must have completed CDZ training in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.761.
e) Unsecured decking in a CDZ must not exceed three thousand (3,000) square feet.
f) Safety deck attachments must be performed in the CDZ from the leading edge back to the control line and must have at least two attachments for each metal decking panel.
g) Final deck attachments and installation of shear connectors must not be performed in the CDZ.

6.34.8 Training

Each employee engaged in any steel erection activity who is on a walking/working surface with an unprotected side or edge more than six (6) feet above a lower level must be trained and instructed, but not limited to, the following areas:

a) Have completed connector training in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.761
b) Each employee working in a CDZ must have completed CDZ training in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.761.
c) The recognition and identification of fall hazards in the work area.
d) The use and operation of protective systems, such as guardrail systems, personal fall-arrest systems, positioning-device systems, fall- restraint systems, safety-net systems, and other protection to be used.
e) The correct procedures for erecting, maintaining, disassembling, and inspecting the fall protection systems to be used.
f) Procedures for protection from falls to lower levels and into holes and openings in walking/working surfaces and walls.

6.35 Steel Erection Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Steel Erection Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a comprehensive site-specific steel erection plan which outlines key erection elements such as methods, procedures, and equipment that will be utilized during all phases of the steel erection operation. This evaluation and plan must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any steel erection activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or any employee engagement with this activity.

a) General Contractors must coordinate and conduct an on-site Steel Erection SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any engagement of steel erection activities. The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT L) must be submitted along with a Steel Erection SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
b) The Steel Erection SPA pre-meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any existing and/or potential hazards as it relates to the planned scope of work.
c) To hold a Steel Erection SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
    (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
    (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
    (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

6.36 Aerial Crane Operations

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Aerial Crane Procedure that adheres to all applicable regulations of the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) 14 CFR – Part 77, and the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) 29 CFR 1926.551 – Subpart N, in addition to applicable State and local regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as EXHIBIT M, and maintained on-site.

Every precaution must be taken to provide protection against flying objects in the rotor downwash. All loose objects within one hundred (100) feet of any areas susceptible to rotor downwash must be secured or removed prior to any Aerial Crane Lift.

a) Aerial Crane Operations must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied areas.
b) No unauthorized person(s) must be allowed to approach within fifty (50) feet of the helicopter when the rotor blades are turning.
c) Open flames, hot work, or any other spark producing activities must not be permitted in an area that could result in fires being spread by the rotor downwash.
d) Ground personnel must be properly trained when required for safe helicopter loading and unloading operations.
e) Constant reliable communication must be provided between the pilot, and a designated employee of the ground crew who acts as a signalman during the period of loading and unloading. This signalman must be distinctly recognizable from other ground personnel.

f) When visibility is reduced by dust or other conditions, ground personnel must exercise special caution to keep clear of main and stabilizing rotors. Precautions must also be taken by the General Contractor to eliminate any conditions of reduced visibility.

g) Personal protective equipment for ground persons receiving the load shall consist of complete eye protection and hard hats secured by chinstraps.

h) The helicopter operator is responsible for size, weight, and manner in which loads are connected to the helicopter. If, for any reason, the helicopter operator believes the lift cannot be made safely, the lift shall not be made. The weight of any external load must not exceed the manufacturer's rating.

i) When Contractors are required to perform work under hovering craft, a safe means of access must be provided for workers to reach the hoist line hook and engage or disengage cargo slings. Employees must not perform work under hovering craft except when necessary to hook or unhook loads.

j) Static charge on the suspended load shall be dissipated with a grounding device before ground personnel touch the suspended load, or protective rubber gloves must be worn by all ground personnel touching the suspended load.

k) Loads shall be properly slung, and tag lines shall be of a length that will not cause them to be drawn up into rotors.

l) Electrically operated cargo hooks must have the electrical activating device designed and installed to prevent inadvertent operation. In addition, these cargo hooks must be equipped with an emergency mechanical control for releasing the load. The hooks must be tested prior to each day's operation to determine that the release functions properly, both electrically and mechanically.

6.37 Aerial Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

An Aerial Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive aerial lift plan which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its plan. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any aerial crane activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission.

a) Any changes in site conditions that could affect the safe operation of the aerial lift must be evaluated and included within the SPA. This plan must be approved by a qualified person.

b) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Aerial Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned crane activity. The Cover Letter (EXHIBIT M) must be submitted along with a Crane Operations SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.

c) This briefing shall set forth the plan of operation for the pilot and ground personnel. A copy of this procedure must be made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as EXHIBIT M and maintained on-site.

d) Prior to any aerial crane activity, the General Contractor must submit, to the Dallas ISD PM and Bond Program Safety Manager the following minimum elements of an Aerial Crane Operations SPA:
    (1) Lift Plan (scope of work, travel path, ground level and ariel hazards or obstructions)
    (2) Site Set-Up (map of staging areas, sequence of operation, primary and alternate emergency area locations, and potential drop zones in relation to occupied areas)
    (3) Material to be lifted (method of attachment, rigging to be used, configuration, and load capacities)
    (4) Roles and responsibilities (communication methods for ground crew, roof crew, and operator)
    (5) Competent Person Designation form (must identify areas of competency along with proof of training)
    (6) Rigger and signal person training records
    (7) JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)
    (8) Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
    (9) Standard Airworthiness Certificate
    (10) Congested Area Plan Request to FAA
    (11) FAA Registry of Aircraft
    (12) FAA Airman Detail Report
    (13) Notification of Dallas City Officials
    (14) Certificate of Aircraft liability insurance (insurance limit must be $10 million, per contract amount)
    (15) Evidence of additional insured and waiver of subrogation endorsement

e) To hold an Aerial Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
    (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
    (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
    (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

NOTE: The District's Safety Department must receive acceptance of Certificate of Insurance (COI) from the District's insurer prior to any Aerial Crane Activity.

6.38 Hot Work

All work that includes an open flame, burning, welding, or spark producing of any type must be defined as “hot work” and must require the presence of a fire extinguisher, at least one fire watch, and a Hot Work Permit.

6.38.1 General

In addition to strictly following the provisions of OSHA and NFPA, each Contractor must also comply with the following:

a) No hot work must be conducted during occupied hours
b) A Hot Work Permit issued by the Fire Marshal must be Posted within the General Contractor’s trailer or on-site officing area.
c) A Hot Work Permit must be completed for each task using EXHIBIT N or equivalent.
d) Fire extinguisher(s) used for “Hot Work” must be placed within this immediate vicinity of each task operation and must be of proper size and type for the activity, fully charged, and inspected prior to use. Extinguisher location must be kept clear and accessible at all times.
e) A fire watch must be present during all hot work operations and remain at the work area 30 minutes after work is completed. All fire watch personnel must be trained in fire extinguisher safety.

6.39 Welding and Cutting

a) All welding operations must provide appropriate screening measures, erected in advance, to contain the high energy light. Welding operations must not be allowed to present an opportunity for flash burn exposures to the eyes of any workers in the vicinity.
b) Shielding, or welding curtains must be placed around established work areas to protect other workers from flash and sparks.
c) Ventilation must be provided to adequately remove harmful fumes and gasses.
d) The unused stubs of welding electrodes “rod butts” must be collected and placed in proper disposal containers as soon as each one is expended. Whenever an operation is idle, the welding electrode must be removed from stinger/electrode holder.
e) Workers must receive training on the proper use, inspection, and limitations of all welding and cutting equipment and Personal Protective Equipment, as it pertains to the operation.
f) Regulators for fuel gas and oxygen cylinders must be inspected before each use and be maintained in good working order.
g) Anti-flashback arrestors must be properly installed on all cutting torches so that they prevent ignition of any gas sources upstream from the torch.
h) Acetylene cylinder valve key must be kept with the cylinder at all times. Valve keys must be kept in position while in use.

6.40 Compressed Gas Cylinders

Contractor must store oxygen cylinders separate from fuel gas cylinders. This separation must be either a minimum distance of 20 feet or by a fire resistive wall/partition with a one-half hour fire rating and a minimum of five (5) feet in height. All compressed gas cylinders must be properly secured from movement – in an upright (vertical) position.

a) All cylinders must be stored in the upright position, especially acetylene. When an acetylene cylinder is stored on its side, the acetylene may separate from the acetone, becoming unstable, and cause an internal explosion.
b) Valves of the empty cylinders must be in the closed position.
c) Cylinders must not be moved by tilting and rolling them on their bottom edges.
d) When not in use, cylinders must have their protective caps in place and be hand tightened.
e) Workers must be trained in the safe handling, storage and use of compressed gas cylinders.
f) Workers must be trained in the proper use and handling of fuel gas and O2 cylinders

6.41 Earth Moving Equipment and Powered Industrial Trucks

A Powered Industrial Truck (PIT) is defined by any mobile, power-pulled truck used to carry, push, pull, lift, stack, or tier materials, whether ridden by the operator or controlled by a walking operator.

a) All earth moving equipment and PIT must be maintained in a safe working condition and must be appropriate and adequate for the intended use. Excavation activities must not be conducted during occupied hours.
b) Only authorized personnel must operate equipment. Operators of equipment, machinery, vehicles, or PIT must be qualified and properly authorized for the operation involved.
c) Equipment and PIT operators must perform a pre-shift walk around safety inspection of their equipment, and any conditions that may affect safe operation will be corrected before use.
d) Equipment must not be operated unless all required safety devices are in place and functioning properly.
e) Careless, reckless, or otherwise unsafe operation or use of equipment must result in discipline and may constitute grounds for dismissal.
f) Equipment maintenance is to be performed only by qualified mechanics.
g) When equipment is serviced or repaired the operator must dismount until the service or repair is completed. Prior to remounting, operators must perform a complete walk-around safety inspection of the equipment.
h) Before performing any service or repair work, all equipment must:
    (1) Be stopped and positively secured against movement or operation.
    (2) locked and tagged out of service, unless it is designed to be serviced while running, following the manufacturer's instructions.

i) All bi-directional earth moving equipment, PIT, and motor vehicles with an obstructed view to the rear must be equipped with a warning horn and an automatic back-up (reverse) alarm that can be heard above and distinguished from the surrounding noise level.

j) All off-highway earth moving equipment and trucks such as loaders, dozers, scrapers, motor graders, rock trucks, tractors, rollers, and compactors will be equipped with roll-overprotective structures (ROPS) and seat belts, per OSHA standards.

k) Seat safety belts, when required by the manufacturer, must be used by all operators of equipment.

l) Mobile equipment must not be left unattended unless parked securely to prevent movement, with all ground engaging tools lowered to the ground, brakes set, and the engine off.

m) Equipment parked at night will be illuminated, barricaded, or otherwise clearly marked where exposed to potential traffic.

n) Personnel must not be transported or ride on any equipment or vehicles that are not equipped with seats for passengers.

o) When fueling equipment or vehicles with gasoline or liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) the engine must be shut off.

p) All equipment and vehicles must be equipped with appropriate fire extinguishers or fire suppression system.

q) Equipment, tools, and materials hauled on pickups and flatbed trucks must be secured to prevent them from falling onto the road.

6.42 Haul Routes

Haul roads must be designed, constructed, and maintained for safe operation consistent with the type of haulage equipment in use. Standard traffic control signs must be used where necessary.

a) Elevated roadways must have axle high beams or guards maintained on their outer banks.

b) Equipment, pickups, and passenger vehicles must be parked well away from the work area to reduce congestion and avoid collision.

c) Vehicle and equipment speed limit while traversing school property must be a maximum of five (5) miles per hour during school hours and/or when children are present.

6.43 Traffic Control

a) All General Contractors, Subcontractors, and employees must comply with local city ordinances when work interfaces with traffic of the general public.

b) Vehicle and equipment speed limit while traversing school property must be a maximum of five (5) miles per hour during school hours and/or when children are present.

c) All materials and equipment deliveries should be coordinated with General Contractors as to prevent traffic congestion around peak school hours for children being dropped off or picked up from school.

6.44 Environmental and Hygiene

General Contractors and Subcontractors of any tier must comply with all applicable federal, state, and local statutes, laws, rules, regulations, ordinances, codes, and any amendments relating to the environment, hazardous substances or exposure to hazardous substances, including without limitation the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 (CERCLA), the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 (SARA), the Hazardous Material Transportation Act (HMT A), Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), the Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA), the Clean Water Act (CWA), the Clean Air Act (CAA), the Oil Pollution Act (OPA) and the Safe Drinking Water Act (SDW A).

The General Contractor is responsible for the implementation and management of its Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and SWPPP Oversight as Attachment VI of this manual.

Where necessary, The General Contractor must provide, and the General Contractor's Safety Representatives must be trained and capable of, properly operating industrial hygiene equipment as required by any Federal, State, and local regulations. Tests must be performed as often as necessary to afford protection to employees and the general public.

6.45 Spill Prevention and Response

When utilizing hazardous and non-hazardous substances that could cause a negative impact when released on land, water, and\or the atmosphere, the General Contractor must exercise extreme caution by developing and implementing a site-specific spill prevention and spill response procedure in accordance with OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations.

No Contractor must omit or discharge any substance into the environment in violation of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), OSHA or other regulatory agencies. Where necessary, the General Contractor's Safety Representative must be responsible for all environmental monitoring and testing.

6.46 Portable Relocation

Prior to commencement of work, the Controlling Contractor is responsible for obtaining the Disconnection Form provided by the Moving Contractor for each portable to be relocated. The Controlling Contractor must provide a completed copy of the Disconnection Form along with applicable safety submittal documentation to the Owner’s Representative prior any relocation, demolition, or disconnection of portables.

a) The relocation of portables must be coordinated around peak hours of school traffic, i.e., morning drop off of children and afternoon pick-ups.
b) All relocation activities (including haul routes) must remain properly separated from occupied areas. Barriers for outdoor areas affected by construction must consist of six (6) foot chain link fencing.
c) Haul routes must be designed, constructed, and maintained for safe operation consistent with the type of haulage equipment in use. Standard traffic control signs must be used where necessary.

d) Equipment, pickups, and passenger vehicles must be parked well away from the work area to reduce congestion and avoid collision.
e) Vehicle and equipment speed limit while traversing school property must be a maximum of five (5) miles per hour during school hours and/or when children are present.
f) The Moving Contractor and/or General Contractor must field verify the safe relocation of portables from site "A" to site "B" and inspect the safe passage of established haul routes.
g) portable classrooms and ADA approved ramps, decks, steps, etc. must meet the specifications contained in the RFP, Contract Award Doc, and applicable Federal, State, and local requirements.

NOTE: Contractors are responsible for submitting moving permit applications to the City and are responsible for communication with the city of Dallas to resolve all action items related to the moving permit.

7. INCIDENT NOTIFICATION GUIDELINES

The District's objective is an injury and incident-free project, with a focus on project safety that must not be compromised to achieve any other business objective. The General Contractor must structure an effective and systematic safety management approach that emphasizes **continuous safety process improvement.**

The District recognizes that the General Contractor and Subcontractors may have existing safety management programs with established safety policies, processes, procedures, and work practices. The District will support these where they prove to be as effective and meet the intent and purpose of this Section.

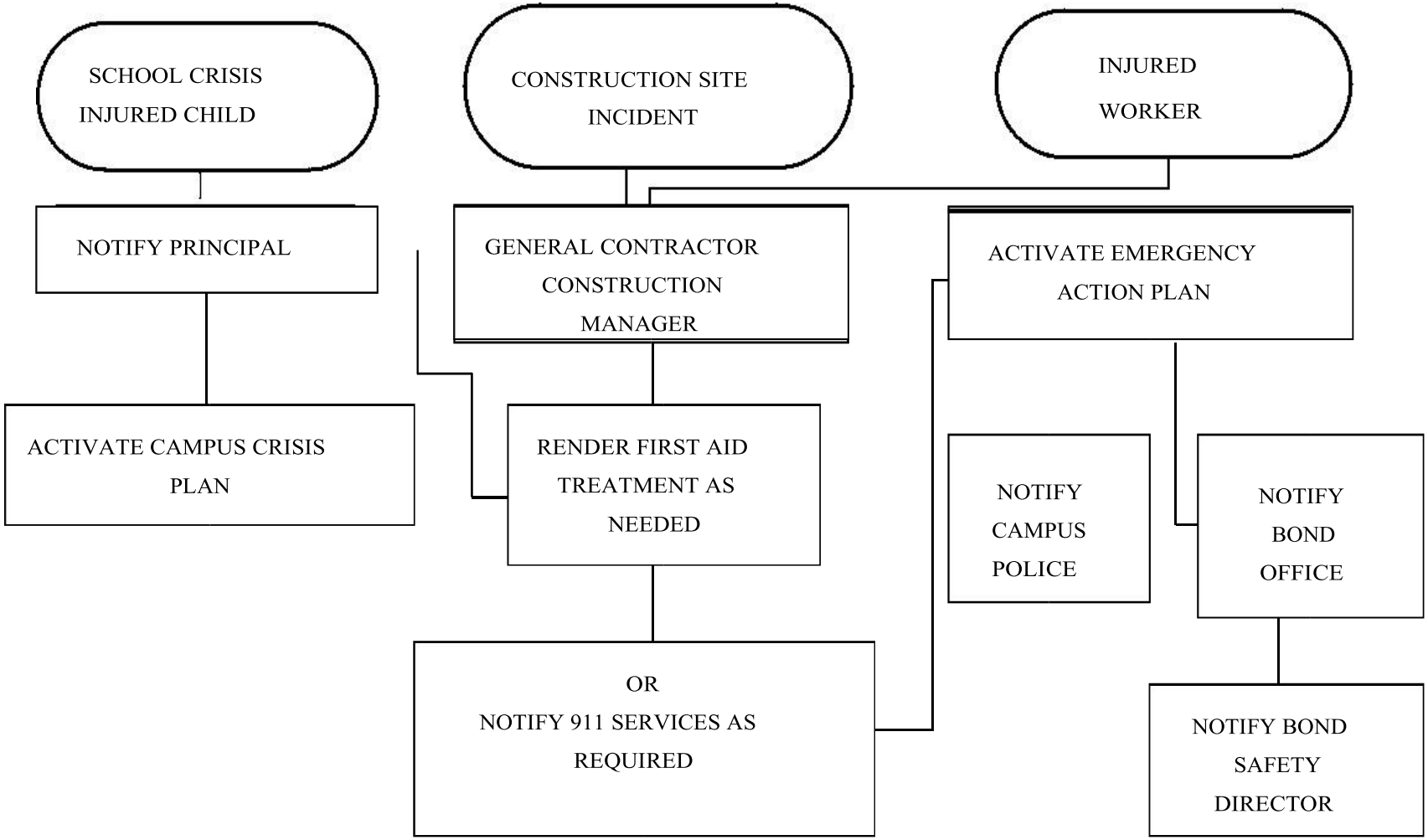
a) General Contractors and Subcontractors of any tier must instruct all workers to immediately report every incident to their supervisor, even if there is no obvious injury or property damage. Supervisors must immediately notify the General Contractor, who must immediately notify the Owner's Representative of any incident.
b) The Bond Program Safety Manager and others as directed must be included in the incident notification process. Depending on potential severity of the incident, notifications may be in written and/or verbal form as directed.
c) Upon request of the Owner's Representative, the General Contractor and/or Subcontractors of any tier must promptly produce and provide copies of any required documents related to project safety or property damage.
d) Where opportunities for improvement are identified, the General Contractor and Subcontractors of any tier must work collaboratively with the Owner's Representative in making appropriate revisions to progress toward an injury and incident-free workplace.
e) The General Contractor's Safety Representative must generate a formal incident report using EXHIBIT O, or equivalent company accident report forms, in the manner and time as directed by the Owner's Representative.
f) The General Contractor's Safety Representative, accompanied by the Owner's Representative, must perform a site inspection immediately following any near miss,

property damage, fire, hazardous chemical spill, or accident involving construction equipment that results in injury to a worker, student, school employee, or visitor to the site.

g) Contractors must review the filed copy of the pre-construction Site-specific Safety Plan and/or Safe Plan of Action (SPA) that was performed prior to commencement of any construction activity.

[Notification Flow Chart is located on the next page]

7.1 DISD Incident/Crisis Notification Flowchart



7.2 Incident Investigations

When an accident or near miss with major potential for a loss occurs, the supervisor of the crew(s) involved must perform an accident investigation. The General Contractor and involved Subcontractors must tailor the magnitude and depth of the investigation effort to correspond to the potential, rather than the actual outcome of the incident.

a) Investigation team members must include safety personnel, project management, line management, affected workers, and consultants as the circumstances dictate. The Owner's Representatives reserves the right to participate in any incident investigation.
b) Upon request of the Owner's Representative, the General Contractor and/or Subcontractors of any tier must provide a Root Cause Analysis as outlined in Section 7.4 of this manual or its equivalent.
c) Once a root cause has been identified and recommendations for corrective action have been determined, a procedure may be implemented to prevent a similar incident from occurring again.

7.3 Incident Follow-up Guidelines

All near miss incidents, first Aid injuries, high risk safety inspection observations, and other such incidents must be investigated. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must lead the efforts and follow a structured incident investigation program that emphasizes **continuous safety process improvement.**

The General Contractor and involved Subcontractors must tailor the magnitude and depth of the investigation effort to correspond to the potential, rather than the actual outcome of the incident. The Bond Program Safety Manager and/or designee reserves the right to participate in any incident investigation.

a) Investigation team members must include, at minimum:
    (1) General Contractor and Subcontractor Safety Representatives
    (2) General Contractor and Subcontractor Project Management
    (3) Designated Competent Person (Front Line Management)
    (4) Affected workers, and consultants as the circumstances dictate.
b) The General Contractor must develop a Root Cause Analysis report that summarizes the incident, identifies the underlying contributing factor(s), determines which process element(s) failed to control the incident, determines which process element(s) will be implemented or improved, and the time needed to take sustainable corrective action(s).
c) The General Contractor must conduct and submit an incident investigation report that supports the Root Cause Analysis in the manner and time as directed by the Owner's Representative. The Bond Program Safety Manager and/or designee reserves the right to determine the acceptability of the findings.
d) The General Contractor must prepare and submit reports that will allow the Bond Program Safety Director, designee, and Subcontractors to understand findings and any planned changes to the operating procedure(s) based on those findings.

7.4 Contributing Factors to Consider

The Root Cause Analysis investigation should thoroughly address the following:

(1) Was the incident controlled and limited so that all workers and the project were made safe post-incident? If so, what was done?
(2) Explain what happened (facts and circumstances) that resulted in the incident.
(3) Are there other work areas or tasks where this type of incident could occur again?
(4) What processes were in place to prevent the incident? (Identify processes that failed)
(5) What processes could've been implemented or improved that might have prevented this incident?
(6) What processes will be improved or implemented to reduce risk of recurrence?

8. CONSTRUCTION SAFETY FOR STUDENTS

8.1 Introduction

The aim of Program Managers, General Contractors, and Subcontractors of any tier is to carry out their work activities in a safe and efficient manner to complete each project in a timely manner.

The safety of the children is of the utmost importance, and every effort must be made to see to it that in those projects that are concurrent with school activities, each job done be evaluated for child safety.

Our children are totally dependent on us to create a safe place for them to learn, study and play. Any work related or work generated condition deemed to be unsafe must be corrected immediately, because children do not see the world as we do. Children are often attracted by what is new and alien to them and will try to gain access to what may seem to be great places to play and have fun.

Therefore, it is the responsibility of everyone to control the potentially dangerous areas that exist on any construction project. All, regardless of the trades involved, must make this effort. In other words, the responsibilities of each person working in occupied areas become that much larger or expanded due to child safety conditions. Remember, it is for the children that construction is underway.

8.2 Separation of Construction Activities

Should any part of an occupied and operational school facility be shut down for construction work, then the General Contractor must erect appropriate construction barricades to completely eliminate access for non-construction personnel to the work area.

General Contractors must ensure safety inspections are conducted in all work areas regularly and periodically throughout the work shift to ensure proper elimination, mitigation, and/or safeguarding of hazards which may result as contributing factors that may lead to any exposure, injury, or property damage. **All unsafe conditions must be corrected immediately.**

a) Construction work areas must be kept segregated from school operations, staff, and students at all times. Separation may include, but is not limited to fencing, privacy fencing, bulkheads, and coordination of planned construction activities.

b) Barriers for indoor construction must be made of 3/4" plywood, and must extend from floor to ceiling, wall to wall. The temporary barrier must have a door that can be locked. This barrier will remain until work in the specified area is completely finished. Proper signage should be displayed near the temporary barrier, according to safety regulations.

c) Barriers for outdoor areas affected by construction must consist of six (6) foot chain link fencing.

d) Doors and/or gates must remain secured/closed when they open directly into occupied areas. A security service may be utilized if necessary.

e) The requirements of NFPA 101, Life Safety Code for Occupied Schools must be maintained during construction. **Separate atmospheres must be maintained between the school areas in full occupancy and the areas under construction**. Construction activities must not interfere or interrupt the normal teaching schedules.

f) Means of egress for the school occupancy must be maintained free of obstructions, clean and properly lighted. While this may be a function of the school custodian, no construction related operations must be allowed to cause an impairment of the normal means of egress.

g) All components and/or combinations of existing life safety systems (smoke detection, fire alarms, fire suppression, communication, alarm systems, intrusion control, etc.) must be maintained during construction.

h) School entrances and exits must not be blocked until school officials have been notified and re-routing has been established.

i) Appropriate warning and directional signage must be maintained at all times.

j) Dust and noise must be properly controlled to ensure the school maintains its teaching schedules without interruptions. General Contractors must respond to complaints and immediately establish control measures.

k) All deliveries (heavy equipment, tools, materials, etc.) must be coordinated around peak hours of school traffic, i.e., morning drop off of children and afternoon pick-ups.

l) Electrical box panels, even during breaks, must not be left exposed. Exposed boxes must be physically covered with the panel cover, and areas must be protected with barricades if necessary.

m) Construction debris and/or material must not be left in areas occupied by students and staff.

n) All construction debris must be removed before the end of each work shift and must not be left overnight.

o) Nails and screws must not be left protruding from lumber or other materials. All nails and screws must be removed or bent over.

p) Compressed gas cylinders must never be left unattended or overnight in occupied areas. Cylinders must remain secured in upright position; caps on and regulators disconnected when not in use.

q) Tools and equipment must not be left unattended.

9. CRISIS COMMUNICATION

A crisis is an emergency event that usually requires police, fire, or EMS response and could attract media or public attention. A crisis on a construction site might involve a fire, hazardous chemical spill, or accident involving construction equipment that results in injury to a worker, student, school employee, or visitor to the site.

a) The General Contractor must instruct all construction employees not to discuss the incident with reporters. All media inquiries must be referred to an official Dallas ISD spokesperson.

b) The Dallas ISD spokesperson must be the only person authorized to release live or pre-recorded video or written statements to the media. All Contractors of any tier must cooperate with the Dallas ISD spokesperson for all media arrangements as directed.

c) Should a crisis, serious emergency, or incident occur (requiring the presence of an ambulance, Fire Department or Police) the Contractor must immediately implement the Crisis Communication Guidelines and contact by phone the Bond Program Safety Director, **including nights, weekends, and holidays.**

9.1 Suggested Steps for Crisis Situations

(1) Evaluate the situation and extent of damage or injuries.

(2) If students are present, immediately contact the principal or school office.

(3) Call **9-1-1** if necessary. Be prepared to give the dispatcher details of the accident and injuries, the exact address and where emergency crews should enter the site.

(4) Assign someone to meet emergency crews at the gate.

(5) Call Dallas ISD Communications at **(972) 925-3917**. Be prepared to provide as much information as possible.

(6) Call Dallas ISD Police at **(214) 932-5627**.

(7) Call Construction Services at **(972) 925-7200**.

(8) Call the Safety Manager at **(214) 435-2204**.

(9) Do not speak to reporters or photographers. Refer them to Dallas ISD Communications.

9.2 EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS

Dallas ISD Police	DISD Police	(214) 932-5627
District Spokesperson	Robyn Harris	(972) 925-3917
DISD Bond Safety Manager	Alvaro Meza	(214) 435-2204

9.3 Emergency Planning

On a regular basis, the General Contractor must review and update, when necessary, its Emergency Procedures for maximum effectiveness.

The updated procedures must be submitted to the Owner's Representative for review in accordance with the safety guidelines outlined in this manual and all applicable OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations and maintained on-site.

The following provisions must be included in the emergency procedure:

a) The highest-ranking supervisor automatically becomes responsible for handling any emergency that occurs during working hours and may call upon the assistance of any available employee.
b) Following an emergency, ranking personnel must:
    (1) Secure the area as expediently as possible.
    (2) Provide access and an account of the emergency to authorized representatives of the District and specific government agencies. Questions from the media must be referred to the Dallas ISD spokesperson.
c) To ensure prompt emergency services, the General Contractor must:
    (1) Determine who is responsible for making emergency calls (preferably the highest-ranking supervisor present).
    (2) Conspicuously post a list of emergency phone numbers, along with information to be transmitted.

10. CONTRACTOR SAFETY AUDITS

10.1 Purpose

The effectiveness of this program depends upon the active participation and cooperation of all Engineers, Project Managers, Inspectors, Supervisors and General Contractors, their employees, and Subcontractors. The primary goals of this program are to increase safety awareness, raise safety standards in the work environment, provide incentives to make the workplace safer, and increase management involvement in the safety process.

General Contractors must ensure safety inspections are conducted in all work areas regularly and periodically throughout the work shift to ensure proper elimination, mitigation, and/or safeguarding of hazards which may result as contributing factors that may lead to any exposure, injury, or property damage. **All unsafe conditions must be corrected immediately.**

10.2 Jobsite Safety Inspections

a) The General Contractor must ensure that its Safety Representative conducts inspections of the project as needed (including storage areas, office areas, barriers, separation of activities, work areas, etc.) to ensure compliance with the District and OSHA requirements.
b) Contractors may utilize the Construction Safety Inspection Checklist EXHIBIT P, or its equivalent. Safety deficiencies that are noted during the inspection must be recorded on

the form and those deficient items must be communicated to his/her project manager/superintendent in a timely manner.

c) The project manager and/or superintendent must be responsible for implementing corrective action.

d) The General Contractor's Safety Representative will follow up and note the status of each safety deficiency until the deficiency has been abated, but until abatement takes place, each previously noted deficiency should be recorded during each subsequent site inspection.

e) In addition to performing jobsite safety inspections, the General Contractor's Safety Representative must cooperate with designated District Representatives who conduct jobsite inspections (i.e., Insurance Carrier Loss Control personnel).

10.3 Inspections by Regulatory Agencies

The General Contractor must immediately notify the Owner's Representative of the arrival of any representative of a Regulatory Agency (OSHA Compliance Officer, TCEQ Representative, Law Enforcement Officer, etc.), and provide the Owner's Representative with a copy of any published findings or citations issued to any employer and must ensure that statutory posting requirements are met. The General Contractor must provide the Owner's Representative with a copy of any employer's response to the same findings or citations. No Contractor of any tier must prohibit the entry of an OSHA Compliance Officer onto Dallas ISD property.

11. GREENFIELD PROJECTS

Greenfield Project must refer to as any DISD property that does not have students and/or Staff present during the duration of the Project. If, during the project, staff or students are present or any District/school operation is active, it is not considered a Greenfield job site.

Property must refer to all land owned by the District, to all property thereon; buildings, structures, facilities, platforms, fixtures, tunnels, installations, and to all project vehicles, stationary or mobile equipment, whether owned or leased. This definition may also include other work locations while in the scope and course of employment on the District's Construction Projects.

Worker must refer to any employee or agent included as example, but not by way of limitation, persons providing services on the project including all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the General Contractor has undertaken to perform on the project regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, Subcontractors, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnishes persons to provide services on the project.

11.1 Greenfield Shutdown Guidelines

Prior to conducting any type of permanent or temporary shutdown, the General Contractor is responsible for completing the Greenfield Utility Authorization Request Guidelines as outlined in Attachment VII, along with the applicable safety submittal requirements outlined in section 6.15 of this manual.

11.1.1 Permanent Utility Shutdown Guidelines

(1) **10-Day Notice of Shutdown** – The General Contractor must provide Dallas ISD with notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than ten (10) calendar days in advance of shutdown.

(2) The General Contractor must select "**Permanent**" on the top right portion of the Shutdown Authorization Form (EXHIBIT I) prior to submitting for approval (See Attachment VII for reference).

(3) The General Contractor is responsible for providing power for the duration of the project.

(4) Once the project reaches substantial completion, the General Contractor and PMF representative must provide the Dallas ISD Sustainability Department with a copy of the General Contractor's utility bills for transfer of the utility service to Dallas ISD. Should Contractors have questions regarding this process, please reach out to the Dallas ISD Sustainability Department via email at: sg9453@dallasisd.org

NOTE: Before demolishing a portable and/or building, all meter numbers must be provided to the DISD sustainability department to close the account and have meters removed through the Owner provider. It is important ALL Utility Accounts are closed through sustainability to prevent the General Contractor from reimbursing the District. DISD is not responsible for providing General Contractors with utilities at Greenfield Project locations.

11.2 Greenfield Badging

Personnel who are issued a Greenfield Job Site Identification Badge are authorized to work on Greenfield Project **Sites until seven (7) days prior to substantial completion of the project or project site commencing operations** (no longer a Greenfield Project Site), whichever comes first. All other requirements for Non-Greenfield Project Sites (sites where district operations are on-going, or students/staff present) remain in effect.

a) General Contractors must issue/provide all workers with a Greenfield Identification Badge, along with a site-specific safety orientation prior to conducting any construction activity.

b) General Contractors must issue identification badges, at their own expense, for all workers on DISD Greenfield Project Sites.

c) Workers must wear the General Contractor issued identification badge at all times while on DISD Greenfield Project Sites.

d) Greenfield Project Site Identification Badge Requirements: Greenfield Identification Badges issued by the General Contractor must be issued by Dallas ISD's approved third-party badging vendor. Badges must contain the following information:

(1) The issuing/authorizing General Contractor's company logo in lieu of the DISD logo

(2) The issuing/authorizing General Contractor's company name

(3) The authorized Subcontractor or Vendor's company name
(4) The name of the specific project site authorized to work at
(5) A photograph and name of the authorized employee receiving the badge
(6) Badges must be labeled "Greenfield"

12. UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (DRONE) POLICY

The purpose of this Unmanned Aircraft System (UAS) Policy is to establish minimum standards for the safe use and operation of UAS and Small Unmanned Aircraft Systems (SUAS) on any Dallas ISD Bond Projects.

This policy requires that all UAS operations are performed in a manner that mitigates risks to safety, security, and privacy, and ensures compliance with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), 14 CFR Part 107 (for commercial purposes) and all applicable laws.

Contractors of any tier that will operate a UAS at a Dallas ISD Project must receive approval in advance in accordance with this Policy.

12.1 Operating Requirements

This Policy sets the minimum requirements for operating UAS. The requirements below must be implemented by the General Contractor, through their respective designated Project Manager. Minimum Requirements for UAS Operations and Operator:

a) Operations of UAS must not be conducted during occupied hours or extracurricular activities.
b) Operators of any UAS must hold a current Remote Pilot Certification.
c) Unmanned Aircraft must be FAA registered.
d) Certificate of Authorization must be in place and all requirements followed. The General Contractor must provide UAS / Drone liability coverage either through endorsement to its General Liability policy or a separate Aircraft Liability policy. The policy must name Dallas ISD as an Additional Insured and provide a waiver of subrogation in favor of Dallas ISD.

12.2 Pre-Operation Procedure

(1) General Contractor must submit a request to the Project Manager and DISD Safety Department **48 hours** prior to fly-through.
(2) Project Manager and DISD Safety Department may accept or reject this request.
(3) The Project Manager must verify with school admin that no activities will be taking place during fly-through.
(4) The Project Manager must notify Dallas ISD Police dispatch and school principal of UAS fly-through.

EXHIBITS

POLICY STATEMENT

It is the Dallas ISD's policy that, prior to work, Contractors are required to submit for review, an acceptable Site-Specific Safety Plan that includes safe and health work practices. The Owner's Representative will evaluate the plan to see that it meets the safety requirements for the Project's scope of work.

It is critical that contractors understand the importance of developing an effectively functioning Site-Specific Safety Plan that is pro-active and addresses the exposures to their employees for the particular work to be done. This should be addressed extensively in the Site-Specific Safety Plan.

The Site-Specific Safety Plan must provide guidelines to implement an accident prevention program on Dallas ISD projects, and fully describes the Contractor's commitments for meeting its obligations to provide safe and healthful working conditions for its employees.

This Document is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to the Contractors. This Document is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor of any tier to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBITS:

- EXHIBIT A – Campus Readiness Form
- EXHIBIT B – Job Hazard Analysis (JHA)
- EXHIBIT C – Demolition SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT D – Confined Space SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT E – Trenching and Excavation SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT F – Pier Drilling SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT G – Utility Shutdown SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT H – Electrical Shutdown SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT I – Shutdown Authorization Form
- EXHIBIT J – Elevated Work SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT K – Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT L – Steel Erection SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT M – Aerial Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter
- EXHIBIT N – Hot Work Permit
- EXHIBIT O – Incident Investigation Report
- EXHIBIT P – Safety Inspection Checklist
- EXHIBIT Q – Contractor Acknowledgement Statement

EXHIBIT A – Campus Readiness Form

A completed copy of this form, along with **photographs of each area** must be provided to the Owner's Representative one (1) working day prior to the return of staff and students to ensure sustainability of proper separation of all work areas and conditions affected by all construction activities.

General Contractor: _____ Project & ORG Number:_____

Person in Charge:_____ Date and Time of Completion: _____

Column: **A** = Adequate	Column: **B** = Inadequate	Column: **C** = Not Applicable

Focused Areas	A	B	C
Appropriate Barricades to prevent non-construction personnel from entering work areas.			
Proper signage displayed near the temporary barricades.			
Access to school facility clean, orderly, and safe, e.g., sidewalks, building entrances, lobbies, corridors, aisles, stairways, etc.			
Critical systems functional, e.g., life safety systems, air conditioning systems, water systems, electrical systems, etc.			
Laydown and Staging areas neat and orderly.			
Campus EAP not impacted by construction activities, e.g., travel ways, access, emergency exits, and egress points, maintained clear of obstructions.			
Proper Traffic Control with work that interfaces with traffic or public			
Trash Dumpsters maintained			
Excavations, Trenches properly barricaded			
All floor holes and openings into which persons can accidentally walk or fall through are guarded by a physical barrier or cover, secured, and labeled.			
Heavy Equipment inside a fenced area and properly secured to prevent unauthorized access.			
Hydraulic Booms and/or Cranes not suspended over playgrounds or occupied areas.			
Construction work areas are kept segregated from school operations, staff, and students			
Nails, screws, and rebar not protruding from lumber or other materials in occupied areas.			
Means of egress for the school occupancy is maintained, free of obstructions, clean, and properly illuminated.			
Remarks:			

EXHIBIT B – Job Hazard Analysis (JHA)

Project Name:	**Contractor Name:**
Date:	**Competent Person Name:**
Scope of work to be Performed:	

EMERGENCY CONTACT LIST ASSOCIATED WITH THIS ACTIVITY		
Name	**Title**	**Phone Number**
1.	1.	1.
2.	2.	2.
3.	3.	3.

STEPS OF THE ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL HAZARDS	ACTIONS TO ELIMINATE OR MINIMIZE HAZARDS
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		

STEPS OF THIS ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL HAZARDS	ACTIONS TO ELIMINATE OR MINIMIZE HAZARDS
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
11.		
12.		
13.		
14.		
15.		

Potential Fall Hazards	Potential Struck-By Hazards
1.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.
5.	5.

Potential Electrical Hazards	Potential Caught In-between Hazards
1.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.
5.	5.

Required Personal Protected Equipment

☐ Hard Hat	☐ Fall Protection	☐ Welding Hood
☐ Gloves	☐ Life Vest	☐ Welding Leathers
☐ Respirator	☐ Hearing Protection	☐ Welding Gloves
☐ Safety Boots	☐ Face Shield	☐ Safety Vest
☐ Rubber Boots	☐ Cutting Goggles	☐ High Vis Pants
☐ Safety Toed Boots	☐ Safety Glasses	☐ Blasting Hood
☐ Tyvek Suits	☐ Safety Goggles	☐ Other (if checked list PPE in the column spaces above)

List Other Protective Equipment (PPE)	
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

Required Equipment and Tools

☐ Telehandler	☐ Concrete Saw	☐ Welding Machine
☐ Crane	☐ Concrete Bucket	☐ Angle Grinder
☐ Scissor Lift	☐ Ladder	☐ HEPA Filtered Tools
☐ Boom Lift	☐ Generator	☐ LOTO System
☐ Scaffolding System	☐ Hand Tools	☐ GFCI
☐ Excavator	☐ Powder Actuated	☐ Cutting Torch
☐ Roofing Kettle	☐ 4-Gas Meter	☐ Other (list on right side)

Other Equipment & Tooling	
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	

Required Traffic Control Equipment	
☐ Lane Closure	☐ Pilot Car
☐ Barrier Rail	☐ Signage
☐ Trench Plates	☐ Speed Limit
☐ Flagger Station	☐ 6' Fencing

Utilities Located / Marked	
☐ Gas	☐ Overhead
☐ Electric	☐ Sewer/Water
☐ Fiber	☐ Telecommunications
☐ Irrigation	☐ Other Utilities Located:_____

PERSONNEL PARTICIPATING IN THIS ACTIVITY		
Name (Printed)	**Signature**	**Company**
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

EXHIBIT C – Demolition SPA Cover Letter

The following Demolition requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Demolition activities must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied areas.**

To hold an on-site Demolition SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Start Date: _____

Demolition SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- ☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, safe working procedures, and any critical systems affected by this operation. Critical systems include life safety systems, security systems, etc.)
- ☐ Make Safe (confirm if asbestos, lead, and/or other hazardous materials are present within the immediate work areas, provide LOTO procedure, and engineering survey)
- ☐ Asbestos Awareness Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- ☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- ☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- ☐ Silica Exposure Prevention Plan
- ☐ Existing Utilities (describe safe working practices associated with any known utilities that may be affected by demolition activities)
- ☐ Site Map (identifying areas to be affected by demolition)
- ☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- ☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT D – Confined Space SPA Cover Letter

The following Confined Space Entry requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work.

To hold an on-site Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Entry Date: _____

Confined Space SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- ☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)
- ☐ Confined Space Entry Procedure (describe atmospheric testing/monitoring methods, ventilation, communication, and make safe procedures to be taken prior to entry)
- ☐ Site Map (identifying entry points, emergency egress locations, and work areas affected by this operation)
- ☐ Confined Space Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- ☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency)
- ☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- ☐ Emergency Action Plan (describe emergency actions to be taken should a worker need rescue, first aid, medical treatment, or emergency contact information)
- ☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT E – Trenching and Excavation SPA Cover Letter

The following Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-meeting requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Trenching and Excavation activities must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.**

To hold an on-site Excavation SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Start Date: _____

Trenching and Excavation SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, known utilities in the area, and any affected right-of-way)

☐ Utility Strike Prevention (include GPR report, potholing method, and preventative measures)

☐ Excavation Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)

☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)

☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)

☐ Site Map (identify areas affected by this operation and underground utility shut-off locations)

☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)

☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT F – Pier Drilling SPA Cover Letter

The following Pier Drilling SPA pre-meeting requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Pier Drilling activities must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.**

To hold an on-site Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Start Date: _____

Pier Drilling SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, known utilities in the area, and any affected right-of-way)

☐ Utility Strike Prevention (include GPR report, potholing method, and preventative measures)

☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)

☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)

☐ Site Map (identify areas affected by this operation and underground utility shut-off locations)

☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)

☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT G – Utility Shutdown SPA Cover Letter

The following Utility Shutdown requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Contractors of any tier must at no time perform any type of power or other utility shutdown activities during regular school hours**.

To hold an on-site Utility Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Shutdown Date: _____

Utility Shutdown SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- ☐ Shutdown Authorization Form (EXHIBIT I) must be submitted **10 days prior** to any planned shutdown and must contain pre-work notification signatures of approval)
- ☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and any critical systems affected by this shutdown. Critical systems include life safety systems, security systems, kitchen, etc.)
- ☐ De-energizing System (describe system to be shutdown, methods for controlling hazardous energy, inadvertent release of stored energy, and make safe procedures)
- ☐ Contingency Plan (to prevent any disruptions to school operations, describe emergency actions to be taken for restoring system operations as quickly as possible)
- ☐ Restoring System (describe methods for safely restoring systems, removal of LOTO devices)
- ☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- ☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- ☐ Site Map (identifying areas where shutdown is to be performed)
- ☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- ☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT H – Electrical Shutdown SPA Cover Letter

The following Electrical Shutdown requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work.

To hold an on-site Electrical Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Shutdown Date: _____

Electrical Shutdown SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- ☐ Shutdown Authorization Form (EXHIBIT I) must be submitted **10 days prior** to any planned shutdown and must contain pre-work notification signatures of approval)
- ☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and any critical systems affected by this shutdown. Critical systems include life safety systems, security systems, kitchen, etc.)
- ☐ De-energizing System (describe system to be shutdown, methods for controlling hazardous energy, inadvertent release of stored energy, and make safe procedures – NFPA 120.2)
- ☐ Contingency Plan (to prevent any disruptions to school operations, describe emergency actions to be taken for restoring system operations as quickly as possible)
- ☐ Restoring System (describe methods for safely restoring systems, removal of LOTO devices)
- ☐ Electrically Qualified Person [NFPA 70 E] Training Records – NFPA 120.2(b)(2)
- ☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- ☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- ☐ Site Map (identifying areas where shutdown is to be performed)
- ☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- ☐ JHA (include hazard assessment equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT I – Shutdown Authorization Form

Dallas Independent School District
Bond Program
Scheduled Utility Shutdown Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)

SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION: ☐ ***Permanent** ☐ **Temporary**

School Name and Org. #: _____

Bond Program Manager (PM) Name: _____

General Contractor (GC) Person In-Charge: _____ _____

Sub-Contractor (SUB) Person In-Charge: (Name) _____ (Contact No.) _____

SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:

Utility System(s) to Be Shut down: _____

Utility Meter number _____

Description of Work Performed: _____

Describe Procedure for Shutdown: _____

Safety Measures/ Precautions for Shutdown: _____

Date/ Time **Requested** for Shutdown:

Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date	Restart Time

It is requested that the noted** building system(s) be allowed for "shutdown" **by the General Contractor to allow for our tie-in of services for the Project as enumerated below. We note that** five (5) days advance notice **is required as a minimum. I hereby certify that the required work has been coordinated and scheduled to achieve completion within the requested time-period.

SUB Person-In-Charge: **(Sign)** _____ **(Date)** _____

GC Person-In-Charge: _____ (Sign) _____ (Date)

Bond Program Manager (PM) Approval: _____ (Sign) _____ (Date)

DISD Project Manager Approval: _____ (Sign) _____ (Date)

SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:

Actual Date/ Time for Shutdown:

Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date	Restart Time

GC Person-In-Charge Certification: _____ (Sign) _____ (Date)

Bond Program Manager (PM) Certification: _____ (Sign) _____ (Date)

DISD Project Manager Certification: _____ (Sign) _____ (Date)

DISD Sustainability Certification: _____ (Sign) _____

SECTION D. PROCESS FOR SCHEDULED UTILITY SHUTDOWN AUTHORIZATION

A. The General Contractor is to complete the *Utility Shutdown Request Form*, at least **5 working days** prior to the scheduled utility shutdown, and submit it to the respective Bond Program Manager for approval.

B. The Bond Program Manager (PM) will review and approve submitted *Utility Shutdown Request Form* and forward to the respective Dallas ISD Project Manager for approval.

C. The Dallas ISD Project Manager will review and approve form and return to the PM.

D. PM forwards approved form to Director/Maintenance Solutions and notifies Deputy Chief Director, Emergency Operations and Bond Program Safety Manager.

Note: All scheduled shutdown requests will require a jobsite meeting with the Program Manager and the School staff 48 hours in advance to discuss the outage procedures and status of all District departments involved on the shutdown request.

Note: For electrical shutdowns (Scheduled/ involuntary), when required for building operations, the General contractor must supply a power generator to keep the telephones, data and alarms working at all times.

***Permanent shutdowns are facilities or specific meters that will not require power/ utility to be restored.**

EXHIBIT J – Elevated Work SPA Cover Letter

The following Elevated Work SPA pre-meeting requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **No roof work, regardless of the extent, is to be done over an occupied area/building.**

To hold an on-site Elevated Work SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Start Date: _____

Elevated Work SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)

☐ Fall Protection (describe systems to be used, methods, anchor point locations, etc.)

☐ Fall Protection Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)

☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)

☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)

☐ Site Map (identifying areas where work is to be performed)

☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)

☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT K – Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter

The following Crane Operation requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Booms or suspended loads must not be allowed to pass over playgrounds or other school property when there is a potential for students or staff to be present in these areas and/or within any fall radius.**

To hold an on-site Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Lift Date: _____

Crane Operations SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)

☐ Crane Location and Logistics Plan (identify underground and overhead crane hazards)

☐ Lift Plan (identify load capacities, means of communication, and rigging/lifting methods)

☐ Site Map (identifying sequence of operation and fall radius in relation to any occupied areas)

☐ Crane Certificate of Insurance and Annual Inspection Records

☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)

☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)

☐ Crane Operator Certification and Medical Card

☐ Rigger and Signal Person Training Records

☐ Fall Protection (if applicable, describe systems to be used, methods, anchor point locations, etc.)

☐ Fall Protection Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)

☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)

☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT L – Steel Erection SPA Cover Letter

The following Steel Erection requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Steel Erection must not be allowed when students and/or staff are present in occupied areas and/or within any fall radius.**

To hold an on-site Steel Erection SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Start Date: _____

Steel Erection SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

☐ Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)

☐ Steel Erection Plan (describe equipment placement, lifting methods, and connection procedures)

☐ Written Notification from the General Contractor confirming concrete footings, piers, and/or walls have been cured to a level that will provide adequate structural strength and stability.

☐ Site Map (identifying sequence of operation and fall radius in relation to any occupied areas)

☐ Fall Protection procedures (describe systems to be used, Controlled Access Zones, etc.)

☐ Fall Protection Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)

☐ Rigger and Signal Person Training Records

☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)

☐ Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)

☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)

☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

Note: This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

EXHIBIT M – Aerial Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter

The following Aerial Crane Operation requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Aircraft or suspended loads must not be allowed to pass over playgrounds or other school property when there is a potential for students, staff, or public to be present in these areas and/or within any potential drop zones.**

To hold an on-site Aerial Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: _____

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: _____

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: _____

Anticipated Lift Date: _____

Aerial Crane Operations SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

☐ Lift Plan (scope of work, travel path, ground level and ariel hazards or obstructions)

☐ Site Set-Up (overhead map of staging areas, sequence of operation, primary and alternate emergency area locations, and potential drop zones in relation to occupied areas)

☐ Material to be lifted (method of attachment, rigging to be used, configuration, and load capacities)

☐ Roles and responsibilities (communication methods for ground crew, roof crew, and operator)

☐ Competent Person Letter of Designation form (include areas of competency and proof of training)

☐ Rigger and signal person training records

☐ JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

☐ Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)

☐ Standard Airworthiness Certificate

☐ Congested Area Plan Request to FAA

☐ FAA Registry of Aircraft

☐ FAA Airman Detail Report

☐ Notification of Dallas City Officials

☐ Certificate of Aircraft liability insurance (insurance limit must be $10 million, per contract amount)

☐ Evidence of additional insured and waiver of subrogation endorsement

EXHIBIT N – Hot Work Permit

All temporary work involving open flames, intense heat, or sparks will require a Hot Work Permit. The permit must be issued by the contractor and authorized by the appropriate supervisor before any hot work (welding, brazing, cutting, grinding, etc.) can begin. Two copies of the Hot Work Permit must be made. One should be filed with the contractor. The second copy should be posted at the site of the hot work until the job is completed.

Issue Date:	Permit Expires:	
Building:	Sub:	Area:
Authorizing Supervisor (GC):	Start Time:	End Time:
Operator:	Fire Watch:	

Checklist

Following items must be checked by the authorizing supervisor and operator/welder. If any item is checked "No", then hot work must not begin until item or area is corrected.

Yes	No	
☐	☐	Work area examined
☐	☐	Equipment inspected, in good repair
☐	☐	PPE inspected, in good repair
☐	☐	Sprinkler system operable
☐	☐	Combustible materials/items moved a radius of 35 feet away from work area.
☐	☐	Explosive atmosphere (s) eliminated
☐	☐	Floor and wall openings covered
☐	☐	Fire watch assigned and required during work and for 30 minutes afterwards* *Fire watch must be at least 30 minutes in duration
☐	☐	Fire watch has ample extinguishing equipment and is trained to properly use it
☐	☐	Work area is considered a confined space (if yes additional confined space will be required. Contact supervisor before proceeding)
☐	☐	Proper ventilation provided for the work area

Other precautions

1._____

2._____

Authorizing Supervisor Signature:_____ Date:_____

Final Checkup: To be completed after hot work is finished and fire watch is over

The work area and all surrounding areas subjected to heat and sparks were monitored during the hot work operations and during the required fire watch period and found to be safe.

Fire Watcher Signature: _____ Title:_____ Date:_____

EXHIBIT O – Incident Investigation Report

CONTRACTOR: _____ACCIDENT DATE: _____TIME: _____LOCATION _____

ACCIDENT LOCATION (SPECIFIC): _____

WHAT HAPPENED? (Describe operation, activity, condition and how accident or loss occurred.

Use separate sheet and diagram if necessary): _____

_____

Recommended correction action:

_____

Equipment involved #: _____Employee involved: _____

Employee Injury (Describe):

_____

Root Cause (Describe): _____

Medical referral? Yes____ No_____

Company Property Damage or Loss

(Describe): _____

DISD Property, Damage, or Injury to Others

(Describe): _____

Witnesses (Name, address, phone): _____

Police Report Number: _____ DISD Police Report Number: _____

Foreman/Supervisor_____ Date: _____

Keep Original in contractor's File and CC: Owner's Representatives

[Attach Photos]

EXHIBIT P – Safety Inspection Checklist

SAFETY INSPECTION CHECKLIST				
Contractor:	Contract No.			
Job-site Location:				
Person in Charge:				
Date: Time:				
Person(s) making inspection:	Column: A= Adequate B= Inadequate N/A = Not Applicable			
PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Posting OSHA and other job-site warning posters.				
2. Do you have safety meetings?				
3. Job safety training, including first-aid training?				
4. Is first-aid equipment and supplies available?				
5. Are job-site injury records being kept?				
6. Are emergency telephone numbers, such as police department, fire department, doctor, hospital, and ambulance, posted?				
HOUSEKEEPING AND SANITATION:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. General neatness of working areas.				
2. Regular disposal of waste and trash.				
3. Passageways and walkways clear?				
4. Adequate lighting.				
5. Protruding nails removed or bent over?				
6. Oil and grease removed.				
7. Waste containers provided and used.				
8. Sanitary facilities adequate and clean.				
9. Drinking water potable.				
10. Adequate supply of water.				

11. Disposable drinking cups.				
FIRE PREVENTION:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Fire instructions to personnel.				
2. Fire extinguishers identified, checked, accessible.				
3. Proper fire extinguishers provided.				
4. Hydrants clear, access to public thoroughfare open.				
5. Good housekeeping.				
6. "No Smoking" signage posted and enforced where needed.				
7. Fire brigades.				
ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Adequate wiring, well insulated.				
2. Circuit breakers and GFCI (where required) provided.				
3. Fire hazards checked.				
4. Electrical danger signs posted.				
5. Are terminal boxes equipped with required covers? Are covers used?				
HAND TOOLS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Proper tool being used for each job.				
2. Neat storage, safe carrying.				
3. Inspection and maintenance.				
4. Damaged tools repaired or replaced promptly. Are employee's tools inspected and repaired?				

POWER TOOLS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Good housekeeping where tools are used.				
2. Tools and cords in good condition.				
3. Proper grounding.				
4. Proper instruction in use.				
5. All mechanical safeguards in use.				
6. Tools neatly stored when not in use.				

7. Right tool being used for the job at hand.				
8. Wiring properly installed.				
POWDER ACTUATED TOOLS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Local laws and ordinances complied with.				
2. All operators trained.				
3. Tools and charges protected from unauthorized use.				
4. Competent instruction and supervision.				
5. Tools checked and in good working order.				
6. Tools not used on anything but recommended materials.				
7. Safety goggles or face shields provided and used.				
8. Flying hazard checked by backing up, removal of personnel, or use of captive stud tool.				
LADDERS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Ladders inspected and in good condition?				
2. Secured to prevent slipping, sliding, or falling?				
3. Do side rails extend 36" above top of landing?				
4. Rungs or cleats not over 12" on center.				
5. Metal ladders not used around electrical hazards.				
6. Proper maintenance and storage.				
7. Are ladders not painted?				

SCAFFOLDING:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Is erection properly supervised?				
2. Will all structural members meet the safety factor?				
3. Are all connections secure?				
4. Is scaffold tied into structure where necessary?				
5. Are working areas free of debris, snow, ice, grease?				
6. Are base plates and mud sills provided?				
7. Are workers protected from falling objects?				

8. Is the scaffold plumb and square with cross- bracing?				
9. Are guardrails, intermediate rails, and toe boards in place?				
10. Are hoist ropes and cables in good condition?				
HOISTS, CRANES AND DERRICKS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Inspect cables and sheaves.				
2. Check slings and chains, hooks, and eyes.				
3. Equipment firmly supported.				
4. Outriggers used, proper cribbing.				
5. Power lines deactivated, removed or at safe distance				
6. Proper loading for capacity of lifting radius.				
7. All equipment properly lubricated and maintained.				
8. Signalman where needed.				
9. Signals understood and observed.				
10. Are inspection and maintenance logs maintained?				
HEAVY EQUIPMENT:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Regular inspection and maintenance.				

2. Lubrication and repair of moving parts.				
3. Lights, brakes, warning signals operative.				
4. Wheels chocked when necessary.				
5. Haul roads well maintained and laid out properly.				
6. Protection when equipment is not in use.				
7. Shut-off devices on hose lines in case of failure?				
MOTOR VEHICLES:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Regular inspection and maintenance.				
2. Qualified operators.				
3. Brakes, lights, warning devices operative.				

4. Weight limits and load sizes controlled.				
5. Is all glass in good condition?				
6. Are back-up (reverse) alarms provided?				
7. Fire extinguishers provided in all vehicles?				
BARRICADES:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Floor openings planked over and secured, or barricaded.				
2. Roadways and sidewalks effectively protected.				
3. Adequate lighting provided.				
4. Traffic controlled.				
HANDLING AND STORAGE OF MATERIALS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Are materials properly stored or stacked?				
2. Are passageways clear?				
3. Stacks on firm footings, not too high.				
4. Proper number of men for each operation.				
5. Are workers lifting loads correctly?				

6. Are materials protected from weather conditions?				
7. Protection against falling.				
8. Is dust protection observed?				
9. Extinguishers and other fire protection provided.				
10. Is traffic controlled in the storage area?				
EXCAVATION AND SHORING:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Are adjacent structures properly shored?				
2. Is shoring, benching, or sloping used for soil depth or excavation properly sloped?				
3. Are roads and sidewalks supported and protected?				
4. Is material stored at least 2 feet from excavations?				
5. Is excavation barricaded and lighting provided?				
6. Is equipment a safe distance from edge of excavation?				
7. Are ladders provided where needed?				

8. Are equipment ramps adequate?				
9. Is job supervisor on-site during trenching operations?				
DEMOLITION:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Are operations planned ahead?				
2. Is there shoring of adjacent structures?				
3. Are material chutes used?				
4. Is there sidewalk and other public protection?				
5. Adequate access ladders or stairs.				
FLAMMABLE GASSES AND LIQUIDS:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. All containers U.L. approved meeting OSHA requirements with contents clearly identified.				
2. Proper storage practices observed.				
3. Fire hazards checked.				
4. Proper storage temperatures and protection.				
5. Proper types and number of extinguishers nearby.				
6. Carts for moving cylinders available.				
MASONRY:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Proper scaffolding.				
2. Saws properly equipped; dust protection provided.				
ROADWAY CONSTRUCTION:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Laws and ordinances observed.				
2. Flag-person properly dressed, instructed, and posted.				
3. Adequate warning signs and markers.				
4. Equipment not blocking right of way.				
5. Traffic control through construction site.				
6. Adequate marking and maintenance of detours.				
7. Dust control.				
8. Adequate lighting.				
PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Eye and Head protection.				
2. Face shields.				
3. Respirators and masks.				
List actions to be taken for all items found non-compliant				

EXHIBIT Q – Contractor Acknowledgement Statement

Campus Name and ORG Number: _____

Contractor Name:_____

Date: _____

By executing this document as an authorized representative of the referenced Company identified above, I acknowledge and confirm that I have read and understand the contents of the Dallas ISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines in its entirety.

I also recognize and acknowledge that the obligation to protect the safety and health of all persons affected by construction activities is not limited to the requirements of the Dallas ISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines only, but also includes all applicable OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations, and guidelines necessary to provide a safe and healthful working environment for all contractors, campus staff, students, and general public.

The Contracting Company and its employees will comply with all applicable safety requirements while performing work on any Dallas ISD property. The Company will further communicate the requirements of the Dallas ISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines and other applicable OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations, and guidelines to all tiered Subcontractors that will perform work on the Project and retain a physical signed copy of this Contractor Acknowledgement Statement from each such Subcontractor.

_____
(Name of Authorized Representative)

_____
(Signature of Authorized Representative)

_____
(Date Signed)

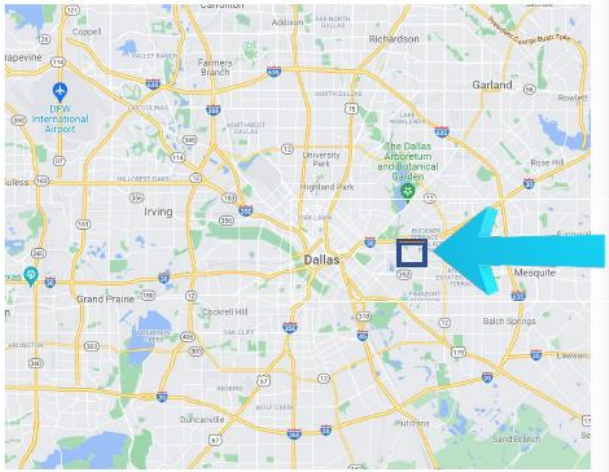
ATTACHMENTS

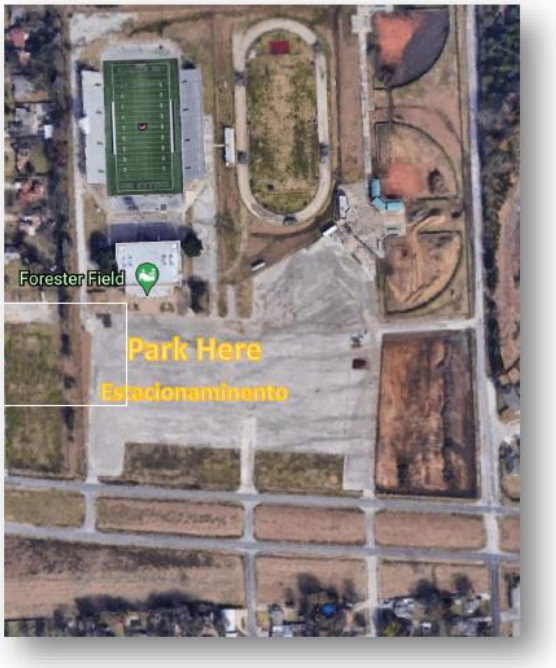
- Attachment I – Dallas ISD Orientation Location and Schedule
- Attachment II – Site-Specific Safety Plan Guidelines
- Attachment III – Crisis Communications Poster
- Attachment IV – Visitor's Release and Hold Harmless Agreement
- Attachment V – Shutdown Notification Guidelines
- Attachment VI – SWPPP Oversight Flowchart
- Attachment VII – Greenfield Shutdown Authorization Request Guidelines
- Attachment VIII – Intruder Detection
- Attachment IX – Campus Security Reminders
- Attachment X – Safety Meeting Sign-in Sheet
- Attachment XI – Geotechnical Soil Sampling Safety Guidelines
- Attachment XII – Inclement Weather Plan of Action

Dallas ISD Orientation Location and Schedule

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Construction Services





Dallas ISD
Construction Safety Orientation
(Orientacion de Seguridad)

Location/Ubicacion
Forester Field
8233 Military Pkwy
Dallas, TX 75227

Schedule/Horario
7:30am-8:30am
Tuesday and Thursday
Martes y Jueves

You must have your Dallas ISD Badge to attend this orientation.

Usted debe tener su identificacion para poder asistir a esta Orientacion.

CRITERIA FOR DEVELOPING A SITE-SPECIFIC SAFETY PLAN

Prior to work, Contractors are required to submit for review, an acceptable Site-Specific Safety Plan that includes safe and health work practices. The Owner's Representative will evaluate the plan to see that it meets the safety requirements for the Project's scope of work.

A Site-Specific Safety Plan must include but is not limited to the following:

(1) **Scope of Work:** A description of the scope of work is to be included on the front page of the Site-Specific Safety Plan.

(2) **Job Safety Procedures:** Explain in detail and specifically how job safety is to be incorporated into each phase of the scope of work. Use of ladders, scaffolds, flagging, equipment, exposures, special conditions, fall protection, etc., must be included for the plan to be accepted. Generalities will not be accepted to Explain the safety and health conditions employees will be exposed to.

(3) **General Contractor's Site-Specific Safety Orientation:** Each employee who is new to the jobsite must receive a thorough safety and hazard communication orientation, which imparts basic information about the project safety and health program, federal/state regulations, and other safety rules and regulations needed to perform tasks safely. Future safety instructions may be necessary if hazardous work and/or unfamiliar tasks are performed.

(4) **Competent Person Designation(s):** Competent Person Designation Form(s) accompanied by a valid First Aid/CPR and OSHA 30-hour certification (within 5 years of the issuing date) must be provided for all on-site persons designated as competent.

(5) **Supervising for Safety:** Explain how supervisors are going to constantly review the safe practices and procedures. Jobsite inspections are required daily. An inspection checklist should be documented at least weekly.

(6) **Disciplinary Policy:** Contractor must explain disciplinary action for any employee who jeopardizes his health or safety, or the health or safety of others.

(7) **Subcontractor Compliance:** Explain how Subcontractor compliance with your safety program and the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual will be verified and documented. When Subcontractor's programs are deficient, the General Contractor must be responsible for providing them with the necessary training and protection. This must be documented.

(8) **Incident Investigation Procedure:** Explain how the General Contractor and involved Subcontractors will investigate all incidents involving a near miss, injury, and/or property damage. Investigation Procedures must include a Root Cause Analysis and Corrective Action Plan to prevent reoccurrence.

(9) **Emergency Action Plan:** Describe Actions to be taken should an emergency occur. Emergency Action Plans must cover injuries, fires, evacuations, and similar situations. Plans must include designated emergency contact names and telephone numbers, e.g., on-site supervision, police department, fire department, doctor, hospital, and ambulance.

(10) **Personal Protective Equipment:** Describe Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) to be worn, training requirements, and parameters for its use.

(11) **Occupational Health Programs:** Site-specific Occupational Health and Illness Prevention Programs are required to protect employees working on the project, i.e., Asbestos Awareness, Air Monitoring, Silica, Sampling, Special Protective Clothing or Equipment, and Particular Hazards.

(12) **Job Hazard Analysis (JHA):** Explain the formal job hazard analysis process

(13) **Task Training:** Contractors are required to task train employees in the exposures they will be confronted with and the job they are expected to perform. Other situations, however, may arise during the course of the project that will require additional training. Explain how task training will be accomplished, how often it will be conducted, and who will be conducting the training.

(14) **Reporting Unsafe Acts or Conditions:** Explain the program in place that promotes positive feedback to supervision and employees who report unsafe acts and/or conditions.

(15) **Toolbox Talk Safety Meetings:** These must be held and documented at least weekly. Explain who will be responsible for conducting these meetings, when they will be held, and where they will be held.

(16) **Fire Prevention and Protection Plan:** Explain the job-site fire prevention and protection program in detail.

(17) **Hazard Communication Program:** Provide copy of the Site-specific Haz-Com program.

(18) **Lock-out/Tag-out (LOTO) Program**: Provide a copy of the Site-specific LOTO Program

(19) **Confined Space Entry:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific Confined Space Program

(20) **Trenching/Excavation and Utility Strike Prevention**: Provide a copy of the Site-specific Trenching/Excavation Procedures and a Utility Strike Prevention Plan.

(21) **Fall Protection and Prevention Program:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific Fall Protection and Prevention Program

(22) **Traffic Control Plan:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific Traffic Control Plan

(23) **Substance Abuse Policy:** Provide a copy of the Substance Abuse Policy

(24) **Special Instructions and Information:** Provide any special instruction or additional safety information as it relates to the unique conditions and/or environment associated with the project.

Note: The requirements outlined in this Document are intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to Contractors. This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor of any tier to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

CONSTRUCTION SITE Crisis Communications GUIDELINES

SUGGESTED STEPS FOR CRISIS SITUATIONS:

1. Evaluate the situation and extent of damage or injuries.
2. If students are present, immediately contact the principal or school office.
3. Call 9-1-1 if necessary. Be prepared to give the dispatcher details of the accident and injuries, the exact address and where emergency crews should enter the site.
4. Assign someone to meet emergency crews at the gate.
5. Call Dallas ISD Communications at (972) 925-3917. Be prepared to provide as much information as possible.
6. Call Dallas ISD Police at (214) 932-5627.
7. Call Construction Services at (972) 925-7200.
8. Call the Safety Manager at (214) 435-2204.
8. Other than as noted below, *do not speak* to reporters or photographers. Refer them to Dallas ISD Communications.

How to handle reporters who come to the construction site:

There is no such thing as "off the record." Be polite, but firm. Tell reporters and photographers they must wait off-site, outside the main gate, until an authorized Dallas ISD spokesperson arrives. Do not push, shove, block, or attempt to physically restrain a reporter or photographer. When dealing with reporters, photographers or TV crews, always assume that they are recording.

EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS:

Dallas ISD Police
(214) 932-5627

Robyn Harris
Dallas ISD Communications/ District Spokesperson
(972) 925-3917

Alvaro Meza
Bond Program Safety Manager
(214) 435-2204

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Visitor's Release and Hold Harmless Agreement

General Contractor: _____

Project Name: _____ Date: _____

In consideration of being permitted, for my own purposes and interests, to enter upon the premises or construction site of Dallas Independent School District Construction Project, I hereby release, hold harmless, and indemnify the Dallas Independent School District, Consultants, Inspectors, Contractors and Subcontractors from and against, and assume the risk for and on behalf of myself, my heirs, my supervisor and my estate, all damages, losses, injuries and any and all other claims of any type whatsoever for personal injury (including death) and other loss or damage of any nature whatsoever including damage to my personal property, and reasonable attorney's fees and court costs sustained or caused while on such premises or site.

In the event any clause, term, or provision of this agreement must be declared or adjudicated void or invalid, it must in no manner affect the other clauses, terms, and provisions hereof, which must remain in full force and effect, as if the clause, term, or provision so declared or adjudicated invalid was not originally a part hereof.

Visitor's Name: _____

Visitor's Signature: _____

Address: _____

Date: _____

Shutdown Notification Guidelines

The General Contractor must provide Dallas ISD with notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than ten (10) calendar days in advance of the shutdown. Notification includes Dallas ISD Central Maintenance Office, A/E, Program Manager, and the Principal at each affected school.

- Shutdown Authorization Form (EXHIBIT I) must be submitted to the Dallas ISD Bond Program Manager and Dallas ISD Project Manager for signatures of approval **10 days prior** to any planned shutdown.
- Shutdowns to be scheduled during weekends or extended breaks.
- Overtime Code may be needed for Dallas ISD Personnel involved after hours.
- Permanent shutdowns must be field verified by Contractor. If utility service remains active, immediately report to DISD Sustainability via Bond PM.

Water Shut-off Guidelines

Notification To:

- ✓ Dallas ISD Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Dallas ISD Department Supervisor
- ✓ Affected Dallas ISD Departments & Confirmation of readiness (Including but not limited to HVAC, Kitchen, Fire Suppression, etc.)
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician

Content of Notification:

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM.
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete, Relocation.
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable).
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ When relocating a utility, DISD Sustainability department must be notified.

Dallas ISD Plumbing Department:

- Department Manager: Bart Braswell
- SE Quad Supervisor: Jesse Rincon
- SW Quad Supervisor: James Baker
- NE Quad Supervisor: Justin Morris
- NW Quad Supervisor: David Martin
- Sustainability Department Manager: Bryant Shaw
- Sustainability Department Technician: Stephanie Garcia

Re-pressurizing:

- ✓ Include City Inspection
- ✓ Contractor to provide post inspection along with photos to DISD Plumbing Manager

Gas Shut-off Guidelines

Notification To:

- ✓ Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Department Manager
- ✓ Affected Departments & Confirmation of readiness (Including but not limited to HVAC, Kitchen, etc.)
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician

NOTE: When adding HVAC units, Project AE approval of increased load is expected.

Content of Notification:

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM.
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete, Relocation.
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable).
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ When relocating a utility, DISD Sustainability department must be notified.

Re-pressurizing:

- ✓ Include City Inspection
- ✓ Contractor to provide post inspection along with photos to DISD Plumbing Manager

Sanitary Sewer Guidelines

Notification To:

- ✓ Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Department Manager
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician

Content of Notification:

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable)
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ PMF PM to provide a Post Audit to DISD Plumbing Manager
- ✓ Include Pictures of tie-in
- ✓ Include City Inspection for all work.

Tie-In Guidelines:

- ✓ PMF PM to provide post inspection of service to DISD Plumbing Manager.

Electrical Shutdown Guidelines

Notification To: [Prior to Shut down and after restoration of service]

- ✓ ONCOR (if applicable)
- ✓ DISD Electrical Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ DISD Electrical Department Supervisor
- ✓ MEP Director
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician.
- ✓ Affected Departments & Confirmation of readiness (HVAC, Kitchen, IT, Building Security, Fire Alarm, etc.)

Dallas ISD Electrical Department:

- Department Director: Bart Webster
- Department Manager: George Lakes
- NW Supervisor: Ainsworth, Steven
- NE Supervisor: Kevin T Liles
- SE Supervisor: Douglas Hall
- SW Supervisor: Jim Ward

Dallas ISD Sustainability Department:

- Sustainability Department Manager: Bryant Shaw
- Sustainability Department Technician: Stephanie Garcia

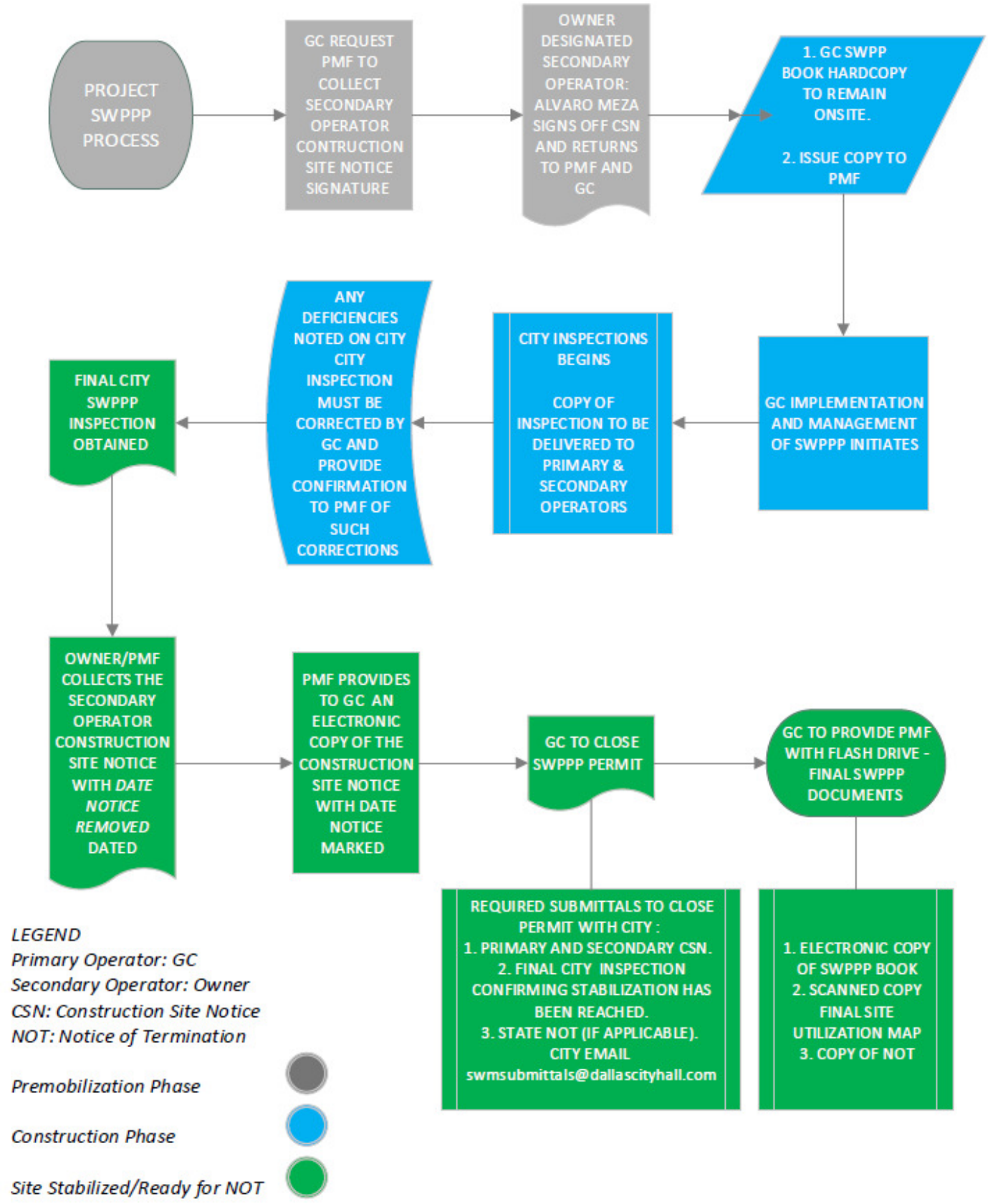
Content of notification:

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable)
- ✓ When relocating a utility, DISD Sustainability department must be notified
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ Complete-Shutdowns-

Re-energizing:

- ✓ Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Department Supervisor
- ✓ Affected Departments & Confirmation of readiness (HVAC, Kitchen, IT, Building Security, Fire Alarm, etc.)
- ✓ Electrical Contractor to gradually increase power

SWPPP Oversight Flowchart



Greenfield Shutdown Authorization Request Guidelines

See below set of guidelines for greenfield projects requesting permanent utility shutdown:

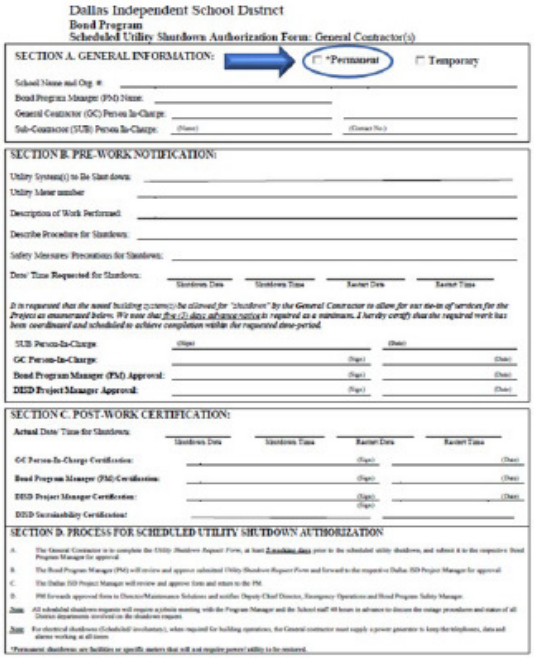
1. **Utility Shutdown request should select PERMANENT on the top right portion of our authorization form. (See below sample)**

2. **General Contractor (GC) responsible to provide power for the duration of the project.**

3. **Once the project reaches substantial completion, the GC/PMF to provide the Dallas ISD Sustainability Department with a copy of the GC utility bills to transfer the utility service to Dallas ISD.**

If you have any questions, please reach out to Dallas ISD Sustainability Department: sg9453@dallasisd.org

Note:
- Before demolishing a portable and/or building all meters numbers should be provided to DISD sustainability department to closed account and have the meters removed through the Owner provider.
- Please be reminded there is a "Minimum of 10-day(s) advance notice" for utilities.
It is very important that ALL Utility Accounts are closed through sustainability to prevent the GC reimbursing the district.
- Lastly, DISD is not responsible to provide GC utilities on Greenfield Locations.



Dallas Independent School District
Bond Program
Scheduled Utility Shutdown Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)

SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION: ☐ *Permanent ☐ Temporary

School Name and Org. #:
Bond Program Manager (PM) Name:
General Contractor (GC) Person In-Charge:
Sub-Contractor (SUB) Person In-Charge: (Name) (Contact No.)

SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:

Utility System(s) to Be Shut down:
Utility Meter number:
Description of Work Performed:
Describe Procedure for Shutdown:
Safety Measures/ Precautions for Shutdown:
Date/ Time Requested for Shutdown: Shutdown Date / Shutdown Time / Restart Date / Restart Time

It is requested that the noted building systems be allowed for "shutdown" by the General Contractor to allow for our tie-in of services for the Project as enumerated below. We note that five (5) days advance notice is required as a minimum. I hereby certify that the required work has been coordinated and scheduled to achieve completion within the requested time-period.

SUB Person-In-Charge: (Sign) (Date)
GC Person-In-Charge: (Sign) (Date)
Bond Program Manager (PM) Approval: (Sign) (Date)
DISD Project Manager Approval: (Sign) (Date)

SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:

Actual Date/ Time for Shutdown: Shutdown Date / Shutdown Time / Restart Date / Restart Time

GC Person-In-Charge Certification: (Sign) (Date)
Bond Program Manager (PM) Certification: (Sign) (Date)
DISD Project Manager Certification: (Sign) (Date)
DISD Sustainability Certification: (Sign)

SECTION D. PROCESS FOR SCHEDULED UTILITY SHUTDOWN AUTHORIZATION

A. The General Contractor is to complete the Utility Shutdown Request Form, at least 2 working days prior to the scheduled utility shutdown, and submit it to the respective Bond Program Manager for approval.
B. The Bond Program Manager (PM) will review and approve submitted Utility Shutdown Request Form and forward to the respective Dallas ISD Project Manager for approval.
C. The Dallas ISD Project Manager will review and approve form and return to the PM.
D. PM forwards approved form to Director/Maintenance Solutions and notifies Deputy Chief Director, Emergency Operations and Bond Program Safety Manager.

Note: All scheduled shutdown requests will require a phone meeting with the Program Manager and the School staff 48 hours in advance to discuss the outage procedures and status of all District departments involved on the shutdown request.

Note: For electrical shutdowns (Scheduled/ involuntary), when required for building operations, the General contractor must supply a power generator to keep the telephones, data and alarm working at all times.

*Permanent shutdowns are facilities or specific meters that will not require power/ utility to be restored.

AGENDA FOR CAMPUS SECURITY MEETING

Sign-in Sheet

- ✓ All personnel in attendance must sign-in

Welcome

- ✓ Purpose of the Meeting – To Review the Requirements Regarding Intruder Detection and Campus Security.

Intruder Detection

- ✓ All visitors must enter through the campus' secured entry point
- ✓ Immediately report any suspicious activity to the Project Management Team
- ✓ Always be alert – See Something, Say Something, Do Something
- ✓ Stop any individuals in your building who do not display a District Badge or Visitor Badge and escort them to the main office.

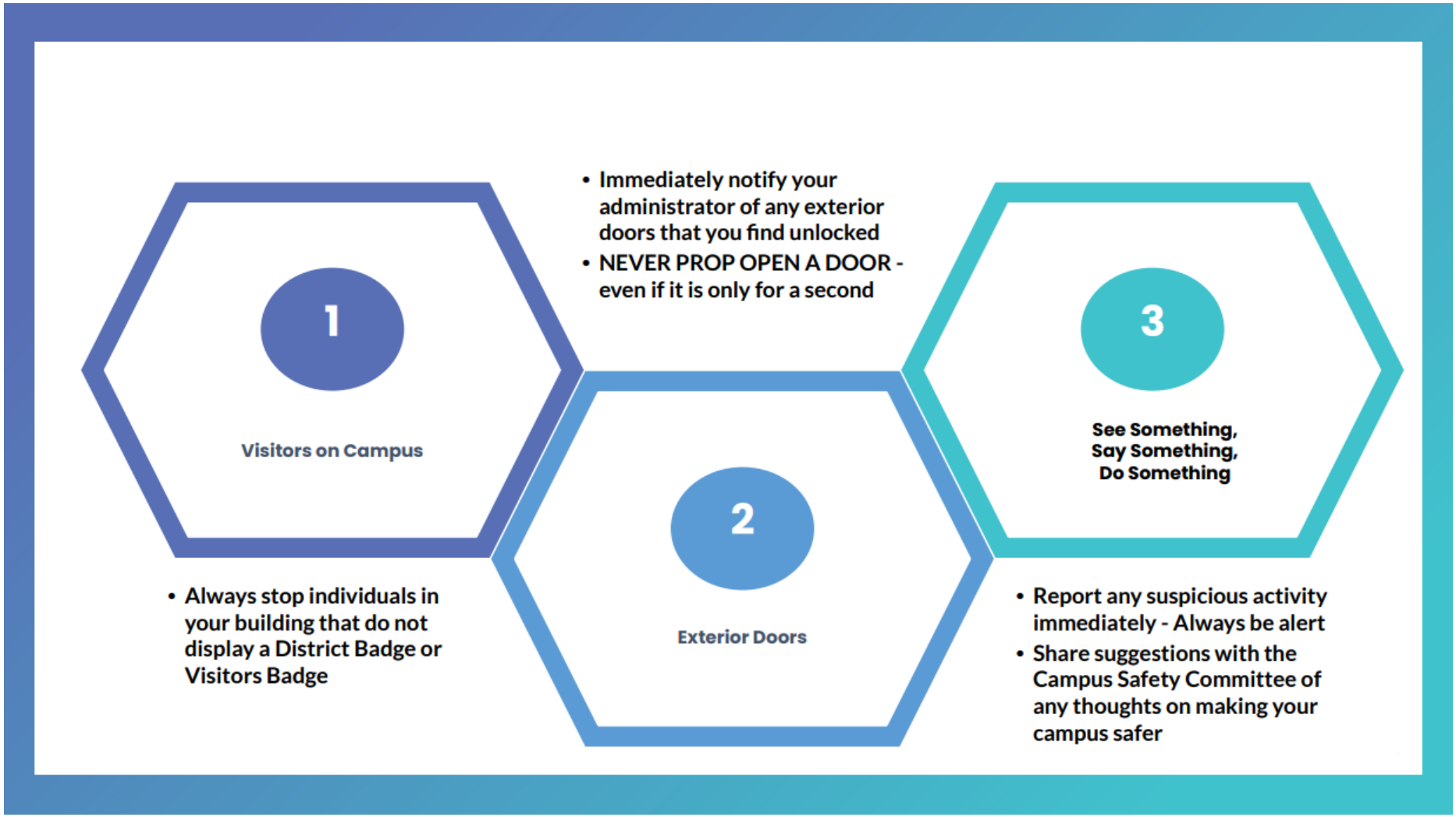
Propped Doors and Secured Areas

- ✓ **NEVER** prop open a door for any reason
- ✓ All exterior doors must remain locked at all times
- ✓ All interior doors leading into construction areas must remain locked at all times
- ✓ Portable doors are considered exterior doors and must be locked at all times
- ✓ Immediately notify the Project Management Team of any exterior door that you may find unlocked or propped open

Questions and Answers:

Note for General Contractors: All locked doors leading into construction areas and/or restricted pathways must be communicated with the campus Principal and Fire Marshal to ensure restrictions and/or physical alterations of any kind do not conflict with Campus Emergency Action Plans, Emergency Egress and NFPA 101 Life Safety Codes.

Campus Security Reminders



Safety Meeting Sign-in Sheet

DATE: _____ PROJECT: _____

CONTRACTOR:_____

Foreman's Signature:_____

Safety Representative:_____

TOPICS DISCUSSED:_____

NAME – PRINTED	SIGNATURE	COMPANY
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
11.		
12.		
13.		

Geotechnical Soil Sampling Safety Guidelines

General Information:_____

School Name and Org #:_____

Bond Program Manager: _____

Company Name: _____ Supervisor: _____Cell Phone_____

Scope: _____Boring Map Location Attached: [circle] YES or NO

Mobilization Date: _____ Demobilization Date: _____Work Hours: _____

Minimum Drilling Safety Guidelines:

1. ALL crew members must be properly badged.
2. Schedule site access through your Dallas ISD Project Manager
3. [If Applicable] Pre-approved signed forms for custodial overtime may apply. Please confirm with your Dallas ISD PM.
4. During arrival, check in at the front office with badge displayed in the upper body and face cover.
5. Drill Rig must be barricaded and NOT be operated in occupied school areas.
6. Before any excavation is started, should contact 811 DIG-TESS for confirmation, Ground penetrating radar (GPR), review of existing plans, and any other reasonable efforts shall be made to determine if any underground utilities (i.e.: power lines, water lines, fuel lines, etc.) are present within the boundaries of the proposed work area. As the excavation work approaches the location of any known utilities, the lines shall be uncovered, using extreme caution not to disturb the lines, and adequate measures shall be taken to protect the lines from damage while the work progresses.
7. Any disturbed areas must be returned to existing and safe condition prior to departure.
8. Damage to property-Injuries Beyond First Aid must be immediately reported to Alvaro Meza 214-435-2204 and your Dallas ISD Project Manager.

NOTE: This Document is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to the Contractors. This Document is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

Inclement Weather Plan of Action

General Guidelines
PMFs are required to notify and coordinate with the GCs to take proactive steps during inclement weather events. •Construction Services may schedule a coordination call prior to any severe weather event with PMF (in a group call or individually- These calls or meetings may be on a regular or impromptu basis as needed) to share information about projects with medium/high probability of damage to property or interruption to school operations. The intent is to provide Construction Services a complete situational awareness of a school's readiness for return of students, and to eliminate or mitigate risk to DISD's facilities.

PRIOR to Inclement Weather Event:
For projects under construction PMF to provide a report to DISD Construction Services any conditions that may impact campus occupancy or function.
Coordination with DISD Maintenance (Managers and Supervisors) and Custodial Services (campus, and supervisors), along with Principals is REQUIRED. Be prepared to report this coordination.

POST Inclement Weather Event:
•PMFs to conduct a field verification and begin the mitigation phase.
•Work with contractors and appropriate maintenance personnel to create a recovery plan
•Provide Construction Services a real time update - by campus- on said issue(s)•Reporting shall continue as needed till mitigation is completed.

Return of Students and Staff
•PMF Leadership or designee to coordinate with campus Principal and Facility Supervisor. iffeasible, PMF Project Manager will be on site for that morning to confirm good working schooloperations.

Sample Reporting
•013-FD Roosevelt – No issues to report
•013-FD Roosevelt- 2. Campus has an issue – Provide detailed description and mitigation.

The intent of this document is to establish a minimum level of proactive steps/reporting, but not be completely inflexible.
After Action Reviews or a Root Cause Analysis may be required. Information should be captured to support these events

[End of Document]

DISD 2020 Bond – General Contractor

Step One: Set up your project account with Field Control Analytics formerly FC Construction Services

- Visit **www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/**
  (Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher required)
- Enter your Project Pass Code: **DI20SC21**

EXISTING CUSTOMERS: You will be required to provide login credentials to complete signup. If you do not know your login credentials contact Customer Support @ customer.support@fieldca.com

You will be required to provide the following information. You will be unable to complete signup without all.

- Billing address and contact information
- Contact information for all authorized users
- Name and contact information for the company that hired you (Prime Contractor)
- Credit card information for payment

ALLOW TWO FULL BUSINESS DAYS FOR ACCOUNT SETUP COMPLETION AND NOTICE TO CLIENT/EMPLOYER

Step Two: Initiate Project Drug Testing, Background Check, and Badging

DISD 2020 Bond - $74.50 *(see Pricing Agreement for details)*
Replacement Badge Fee – $25.00 * Enrollment Fee - $50.00

1. Upon setup completion, contractor receives **Web Instructions** to download/print **Consent Document**.
2. Consent Document. ($25.00 handling fee for employees without a properly authorized Consent Document. No appointment necessary and maps are available online.)
3. Most results are available within one business day, but may take up to three. Authorized users will receive an e-mail notification when report results are available.
4. DISD badges will be printed and available for pickup at the facility selected during project setup.

Other Important Information

- FCA notifies your General Contractor of all unpaid invoices.
- If a worker fails a drug test, he/she will not be authorized to work for the duration of the project.

Background checks and badging requires one of the following identification sources of a person:

- Current U.S. Driver's License
- U.S. Birth Certificate (along with photo id)
- Current US Passport
- U.S. Citizenship Naturalization
- Foreign Passport
- U.S. issued photo ID Card
- Temporary identification card
- Resident Visa
- Employment Visa

Acceptable forms of ID do not include the non-US issued Matricula Card.

DISD 2020 Bond Badge Qualifications:

- Negative drug test result
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a minor (no time limit)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a person (25 years)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases (7 years)
- No misdemeanor crimes (see misdemeanor offenses below). Misdemeanor records are limited to the previous 7-years.
- No registered sex offenders
- No outstanding warrants for crimes that would disqualify an individual from receiving a badge

Misdemeanor Offenses Include the following:

Possession of a Prohibited Weapon
Unlawful Carrying Weapon
Purchase/Furnish Alcohol to Minor
Assault Causes Bodily Injury
Terroristic Threat
Enticing a Child
Harboring Runaway Child
Violation of a Protective Order
Criminal Mischief
Burglary
Shoplifting
Theft
Larceny
Fraud
Forgery
Passing Forgery Writing
Fleeing from Police Officer
Leaving Scene of Accident
Failure to Stop and Give Information
Fail to Identify Giving False/Fictitious Info
Resisting Arrest
Evading Arrest/Detention
Escape from Custody
Interference with Public Duties
Disorderly Conduct
Interference with Emergency Call
Harassment
Prostitution

FCA Client Support Team
Phone: (972) 404-4479
Monday - Friday 6:00am – 6:00pm CST
customer.support@fieldca.com



DISD 2020 Bond – Professional Services

Step One: Set up your project account with Field Control Analytics formerly FC Construction Services

- Visit **www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/**
  (Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher required)
- Enter your Project Pass Code: **DI20PS21**

EXISTING CUSTOMERS: You will be required to provide login credentials to complete signup. If you do not know your login credentials contact Customer Support @ customer.support@fieldca.com

You will be required to provide the following information. You will be unable to complete signup without all.

- Billing address and contact information
- Contact information for all authorized users
- Name and contact information for the company that hired you (Prime Contractor)
- Credit card information for payment

ALLOW TWO FULL BUSINESS DAYS FOR ACCOUNT SETUP COMPLETION AND NOTICE TO CLIENT/EMPLOYER

Step Two: Initiate Project Drug Testing, Background Check, and Badging

DISD 2020 Bond - $74.50 *(see Pricing Agreement for details)*
Replacement Badge Fee – $25.00 * Enrollment Fee - $50.00

1. Upon setup completion, contractor receives **Web Instructions** to download/print **Consent Document**.
2. Consent Document. ($25.00 handling fee for employees without a properly authorized Consent Document. No appointment necessary and maps are available online.)
3. Most results are available within one business day, but may take up to three. Authorized users will receive an e-mail notification when report results are available.
4. DISD badges will be printed and available for pickup at the facility selected during project setup.

Other Important Information

- FCA notifies your General Contractor of all unpaid invoices.
- If a worker fails a drug test, he/she will not be authorized to work for the duration of the project.

Background checks and badging requires one of the following identification sources of a person:

- Current U.S. Driver's License
- U.S. Birth Certificate (along with photo id)
- Current US Passport
- U.S. Citizenship Naturalization
- Foreign Passport
- U.S. issued photo ID Card
- Temporary identification card
- Resident Visa
- Employment Visa

Acceptable forms of ID do not include the non-US issued Matricula Card.

DISD 2020 Bond Badge Qualifications:

- Negative drug test result
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a minor (no time limit)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a person (25 years)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases (7 years)
- No misdemeanor crimes (see misdemeanor offenses below). Misdemeanor records are limited to the previous 7-years.
- No registered sex offenders
- No outstanding warrants for crimes that would disqualify an individual from receiving a badge

Misdemeanor Offenses Include the following:

Possession of a Prohibited Weapon
Unlawful Carrying Weapon
Purchase/Furnish Alcohol to Minor
Assault Causes Bodily Injury
Terroristic Threat
Enticing a Child
Harboring Runaway Child
Violation of a Protective Order
Criminal Mischief
Burglary
Shoplifting
Theft
Larceny
Fraud
Forgery
Passing Forgery Writing
Fleeing from Police Officer
Leaving Scene of Accident
Failure to Stop and Give Information
Fail to Identify Giving False/Fictitious Info
Resisting Arrest
Evading Arrest/Detention
Escape from Custody
Interference with Public Duties
Disorderly Conduct
Interference with Emergency Call
Harassment
Prostitution

FCA Client Support Team
Phone: (972) 404-4479
Monday - Friday 6:00am – 6:00pm CST
customer.support@fieldca.com



DISD 2020 Bond - Subcontractor

Step One: Set up your project account with Field Control Analytics formerly FC Construction Services

- Visit **www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/**
  (Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher required)
- Enter your Project Pass Code: **DI20SC21**

EXISTING CUSTOMERS: You will be required to provide login credentials to complete signup. If you do not know your login credentials contact Customer Support @ customer.support@fieldca.com

You will be required to provide the following information. You will be unable to complete signup without all.

- Billing address and contact information
- Contact information for all authorized users
- Name and contact information for the company that hired you (Prime Contractor)
- Credit card information for payment

ALLOW TWO FULL BUSINESS DAYS FOR ACCOUNT SETUP COMPLETION AND NOTICE TO CLIENT/EMPLOYER

Step Two: Initiate Project Drug Testing, Background Check, and Badging

DISD 2020 Bond - $74.50 *(see Pricing Agreement for details)*
Replacement Badge Fee – $25.00 * Enrollment Fee - $50.00

1. Upon setup completion, contractor receives **Web Instructions** to download/print **Consent Document**.
2. Consent Document. ($25.00 handling fee for employees without a properly authorized Consent Document. No appointment necessary and maps are available online.)
3. Most results are available within one business day, but may take up to three. Authorized users will receive an e-mail notification when report results are available.
4. DISD badges will be printed and available for pickup at the facility selected during project setup.

Other Important Information

- FCA notifies your General Contractor of all unpaid invoices.
- If a worker fails a drug test, he/she will not be authorized to work for the duration of the project.

Background checks and badging requires one of the following identification sources of a person:

- Current U.S. Driver's License
- U.S. Birth Certificate (along with photo id)
- Current US Passport
- U.S. Citizenship Naturalization
- Foreign Passport
- U.S. issued photo ID Card
- Temporary identification card
- Resident Visa
- Employment Visa

Acceptable forms of ID do not include the non-US issued Matricula Card.

DISD 2020 Bond Badge Qualifications:

- Negative drug test result
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a minor (no time limit)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a person (25 years)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases (7 years)
- No misdemeanor crimes (see misdemeanor offenses below). Misdemeanor records are limited to the previous 7-years.
- No registered sex offenders
- No outstanding warrants for crimes that would disqualify an individual from receiving a badge

Misdemeanor Offenses Include the following:

Possession of a Prohibited Weapon
Unlawful Carrying Weapon
Purchase/Furnish Alcohol to Minor
Assault Causes Bodily Injury
Terroristic Threat
Enticing a Child
Harboring Runaway Child
Violation of a Protective Order
Criminal Mischief
Burglary
Shoplifting
Theft
Larceny
Fraud
Forgery
Passing Forgery Writing
Fleeing from Police Officer
Leaving Scene of Accident
Failure to Stop and Give Information
Fail to Identify Giving False/Fictitious Info
Resisting Arrest
Evading Arrest/Detention
Escape from Custody
Interference with Public Duties
Disorderly Conduct
Interference with Emergency Call
Harassment
Prostitution

FCA Client Support Team
Phone: (972) 404-4479
Monday - Friday 6:00am – 6:00pm CST
customer.support@fieldca.com



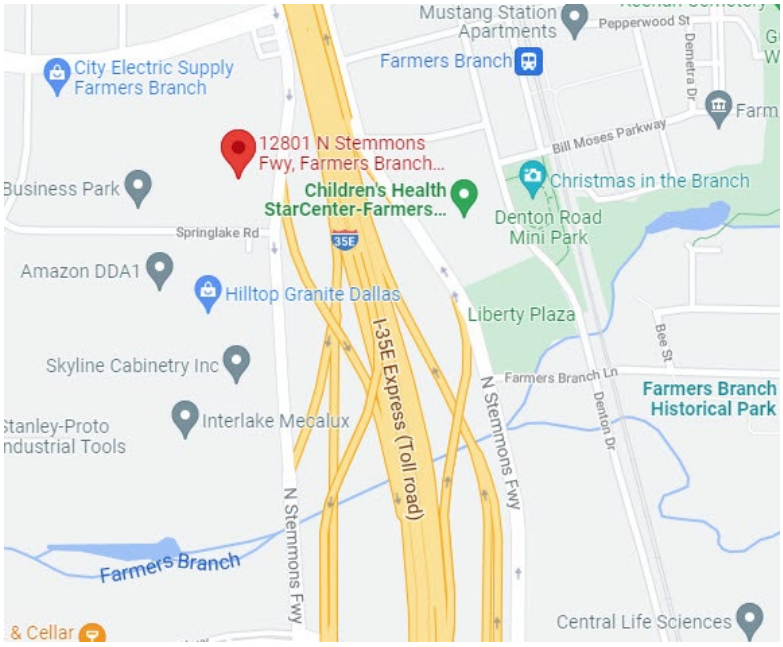
FCA EXPRESS - DALLAS SCREENING & BADGING FACILITY

ADDRESS

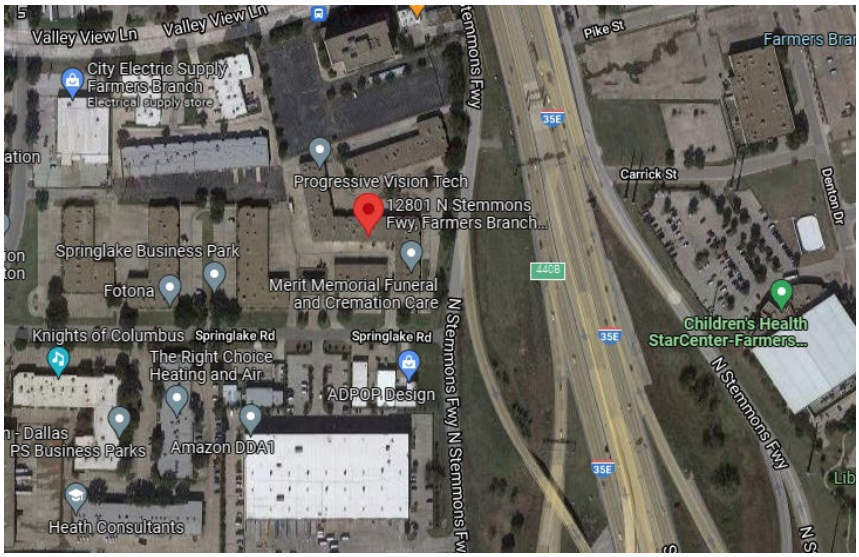
12801 N. Stemmons Frwy.
Ste. 807
Farmers Branch, TX 75234
Phone: 833.227.0637;
option 2
Hours: 7:30am - 4:30pm
Monday - Friday

OPENING FEBRUARY 14, 2022

Scan the QR code for instant directions!



Scan the QR code to contact us!



All FCA Express locations can process screens that require a background, drug test and badge.

www.fieldcontrolanalytics.com | 800-388-88827

SECTION 01 10 00 – SUMMARY OF WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

PART 2 - <<< Revise this Section by deleting and inserting text to meet Project-specific requirements.

PART 3 - Much of this Section consists of Project-specific data. Examples given in the model text in the Evaluations illustrate possible Section content. Use the model text to develop text for specific Project requirements. See Evaluations.

PART 4 - Verify that Section titles referenced in this Section are correct for this Project's Specifications; Section titles may have changed. >>>

4.1 1.1 Related Documents

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

4.2 1.2 Summary

A. A. Section includes:

1. **Project information**
2. **Work covered by Contract Documents**
3. **Phased construction**
4. **Access to site**
5. **Coordination with occupants**
6. **Work restrictions**

B. B. Related Sections:

1. **Division 00 Section 00 31 00 Available Project Information**
2. **Division 00 Section 00 31 18 School Operations Parameters Statement**
3. **Division 01 Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities**
4. **Division 01 Section 01 52 14 “Temporary Facilities for Students” for specifications and procedures regarding the use of temporary swing space that the Contractor may furnish and install to accommodate the Work**

1.3 Project Information

A. Refer to Section 00 31 00

1.4 Scope of Work. The Work consists of:

120 - John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

Addition of 1,105 SF and remodel of 2,326 SF of administration area to provide new secured vestibule and updated administrative spaces to comply with current DISD standards along with miscellaneous improvements/repairs around the school campus inclusive of but not limited to:

1. **Painting previously painted surfaces**
2. **Replacement of exterior sealants and expansion joints**
3. **Cleaning of existing masonry**
4. **Security system upgrades**
5. **New RTUs over administration area and replacement of existing chilled water RTUs throughout school**
6. **New condensate piping on several 24/7 conditioned areas**

1.5 Multiple Project Site Representation for Bid Packages. If multiple project sites are identified in the Work, the contractor shall employ and designate one qualified full-time Superintendent who shall oversee the performance on each individual project site within the bid package, for the duration of the project. Any deviation from this will need to be approved by DISD and the Program Manager.

1.6 Schedule of Values for Bid Packages. If multiple project sites are identified in the Work, the contractor shall provide one Schedule of Values for each project site attached to each application for payment. In addition, each school site shall have a separate schedule of values in the CSI format followed in the bid documents, identifying the labor and material components separately. Projects that have both Renovation and Addition scope shall have a sub-total for each of these two categories, within the Schedule of Values.

1.7 Concurrent Construction for Bid Packages. Work (additions and renovations) at each school site will be performed concurrently with the other school sites unless otherwise indicated by DISD.

1.8 Phasing. Since the school buildings will be in use during construction, the Work shall be conducted in such a manner as to not interrupt or disturb school activities. THE PHASING PLANS ARE GUIDELINES AND ARE USED TO IDENTIFY A POSSIBLE APPROACH TO THE WORK. THE CONTRACTOR MAY SUBMIT A PHASING PLAN. ANY DEVIATION FROM THE SUGGESTED PLAN CONTAINED IN THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS MUST BE APPROVED BY THE A/E, PROGRAM MANAGER, AND PRINCIPAL PRIOR TO IMPLEMENTATION.

A. Temporary classroom space (Swing Space) if needed, shall be provided by the Contractor. The Contractor will be responsible for all associated planning, permitting, scheduling, installation, removal, site restoration, coordination and costs associated with providing temporary space for classrooms. Temporary classroom space will be in accordance with Section 01 52 14 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES FOR STUDENTS.

B. The Contractor may submit, as part of the proposal, optional phasing plans that can potentially save the District time and money.

C. Some work may need to be performed after normal school operating hours, nights and weekends. A DISD representative must be present at the school during times that the Contractor is working at the school site. The Owner will incur overtime costs for DISD staff presence at the school site outside normal hours of school operation, including weekends and holidays. Such overtime costs incurred will be the financial responsibility of the General Contractor and will be credited to the Owner in a manner to be determined by the DISD and the Program Manager.

D. Refer to the School Operations Parameter Statement Section for details of the regular working hours, holidays and procedures for custodial overtime, etc.

E. Work cannot start in a particular Phase until students/staff have been relocated to the designated Swing Space (either in the existing building or in Temporary Buildings outside) or until there is an arrangement in place for alternate shift work involved.

1. Close coordination with the A/E, Program Manager, and the School Staff, will be required of the Contractor.

F. Certain areas included in the Contractor's scope of work may contain furniture, boxes, etc. Protection of these contents is the responsibility of the Contractor.

G. Refer to Construction Documents for additional Phasing information.

1.9 HVAC and Water Treatment Requirements. Contractor will coordinate with DISD for water treatment and HVAC maintenance. Please refer to the plumbing and mechanical specifications for the contractor's responsibilities related to these requirements.

1.10 Phase Acceptance. Upon certification by the Contractor and recommendation of the A/E, DISD will accept the Work of each individual phase as it is completed. Architectural acceptance shall be called "phase acceptance". The HVAC, electrical, plumbing and roofing systems will be accepted by DISD when the entire project has been completed; at that point, upon completion of all relevant contractual requirements, DISD will issue substantial completion. The contractor will operate and maintain the HVAC, electrical and plumbing systems that are a part of his scope of work until substantial completion. The contractor's warranty for any new HVAC, electrical, plumbing and roofing systems shall commence at substantial completion for each school project. The contractor will install new filters and record date of replacement on each filter upon substantial completion.

1.11 Use of Technology for Project Management. DISD will furnish information related to accessing web-enabled project management applications for this contract. DISD and the Program Manager will implement project management software, that will be easily accessible through the Internet. Contractor will cooperate with the Program Manager for the implementation and use of this tool.

Contractor will be required to create and post several types of documents into the web-enabled project management software via the Internet. Request for Information (RFIs) will be posted by the Contractor and responded to by the A/E(s) in the software via the Internet, thereby facilitating communication among all parties and expediting resolution of issues. A/E responses to RFIs will not be considered official and are still subject to revision until the Program Manager has approved the response in the software . Any meeting minutes and field reports required to be created by the Contractor or A/E(s) will be posted to the software. DISD and the Program Manager reserve the right to require additional documents to be entered into the software at their discretion.

1.12 Permitting. Contractors are responsible for the costs of acquiring the building permit at standard City of Dallas rates.

1.13 Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan. Once the Notice to Proceed has been issued, the Contractor is obligated to comply with the applicable municipalities and applicable SWPPP codes and protocol. The Contractor assumes full responsibility for any complaints, citations, maintenance and complete management of the SWPPP plan including any and all documentation. For new schools with demolition scope by a separate contractor, Contractor shall coordinate with the separate contractor for a seamless transfer / transition of an existing SWPPP. Contractor will then submit all documentation to the District at closeout.

1.14 Construction Specification Index. All construction documentation will follow the Construction Specification Index format followed by the construction bid documents.

1.15 The contractor shall tag locations of all equipment within the scope of work by securing a plastic tag on the appropriate ceiling grid locations. This will assist easy identification of the equipment to DISD maintenance staff. The contractor will install stickers on all equipment provided indicating the warranty dates/periods and the contact information.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

SECTION 01 52 14 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES FOR STUDENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 00 and 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for temporary facilities (Swing Space) for the purpose of relocating students to provide temporary classroom facilities during construction activities.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 00 Section titled “Technical Proposal”
   2. Division 01 Section title “Temporary Facilities and Controls”

1.3 DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS

Since the school buildings will be in use during construction, the Work shall be conducted in phases as proposed in the phasing drawings. Contractor will provide temporary classroom buildings for swing space, per the requirements indicated in this section. District will provide moving services to relocate movable classroom furnishings, fixtures and/or equipment in/out of each phased zone. The number of temporary buildings and classrooms which will be made available during the project shall not exceed the numbers summarized below:

SWING SPACE TYPE	ORG 237 John W. Runyon Elementary School			
Maximum External Temporary Swing Space Classrooms (to be provided by Contractor)	N/A			
Maximum Temporary Restrooms	N/A			
Swing Space Classrooms Provided Within Existing Facilities	N/A			

The Contractor can submit, as part of the proposal, alternate phasing plans that can potentially save the District time and money.

If no external or internal temporary swing space classrooms are indicated above, then Contractor will be required to schedule work during holidays, weekends, or hours other than regular school hours, and price its work accordingly. A Dallas ISD representative must be present at the school during times that the Contractor is working at the school site. Contractor will be responsible for overtime costs for Dallas ISD staff for presence at the school site outside normal hours of school operation, including holidays.

A. If students must be displaced from classroom areas due to the phasing and execution of

the work according to the Contractor's work plan, the Contractor shall be responsible for providing, on a turn-key basis, temporary facilities for those displaced students.

B. If the Contractor elects to utilize Swing Space, they must include all costs associated with the removal, transportation, installation and dismantling, including, but not limited to:
    1. Equipment relocation
    2. Transport and setup
    3. Maintenance of the temporary facilities for the duration of their use (i.e. HVAC, electrical, and other building repair and maintenance needed, not custodial maintenance)
    4. Site work and utilities
    5. ADA/TAS Accessible ramps and sidewalks
    6. Stairs
    7. Skirting
    8. Interior finish-out
    9. Miscellaneous specialties (i.e. marker boards, tack boards, flag holders, map clips, fire extinguishers)
    10. Signage
    11. Wall Clock and bell to interface with the existing system at the school
    12. Coordination with movers for relocation of Furnishings, Fixtures, and Equipment (FF&E)
    13. Breakdown, removal, and transport of the Swing Space at the completion of its use
    14. Restoration of the site following removal of facilities
    15. P.A. to interface with the existing system at the school

1.4 SCOPE OF WORK

The intent of this scope item is for the Contractor to dismantle and remove the District's existing portable building at the site(s) identified in this section, and relocate to the campus requiring swing space as identified in Section 10.7. Contractor shall be responsible for a turnkey dismantling, transportation and setup of these portable buildings.

Schools with existing portables to be utilized for this project and the portable count are as follows:

Name of School	Portable Details (Include ID# and Single/Double)

Removal of Existing Portables from Other Schools. Contractor shall provide an advance notice of at least five (5) days to the School Principal and the Program Manager before the temporary buildings are expected to be dismantled and demobilized from any of the above sites. Scope may also involve demolition of sidewalks, canopies, electrical, technology pathways as identified in the contract documents. Again, the intent of this scope of work is for the contractor to provide turnkey dismantling, and removal of identified portables and associated infrastructure. Refurbish site(s) where portables / sidewalks are removed.

Removal of Existing Portables scheduled for Demolition in the footprint of Construction or Staging. If a portable needs to be demolished because it is in the footprint of construction or staging, any necessary Abatement will be the responsibility of the Contractor. After any necessary Abatement, the GC will be responsible for the demolition and removal/disposal of the debris remaining. Refurbish site(s) where portables / sidewalks are removed.

Removal of Existing Portables Not Scheduled for Demolition in the footprint of Construction or Staging. If it is necessary to remove a portable building due to construction or staging at a campus and it is not scheduled for demolition, the GC will be responsible to disassemble, disconnect the portable, and deliver it and set it on blocks at a location designated

by Dallas ISD Maintenance (this could be another campus). This would only require that the GC set the building in the designated location, set on blocks, level, etc. Maintenance will be responsible for setting the portable up (Skirting, walkways, utilities, fire alarm hookup, etc.) at the new location and Maintenance will also be responsible for picking up the awnings, skirting and other related items that had to be disassembled at the original location. Maintenance will also be responsible for authorizing the disconnect and any re-connect of the utilities with their requested move of portables. Where portables were removed for staging, refurbish site(s) to match existent surrounding conditions.

Portables designated to be relocated into another Dallas ISD Location If there is a Dallas ISD portable that is designated to be moved from a Dallas ISD location to a campus needing Swing Space – The GC (with contract for the campus needing the swing space) would be responsible for the disconnecting of any utilities and cabling for fire and technology. The GC, who is to move the building for swing space, will be responsible for the removal of awnings, porches, skirting, etc. and be responsible for the removal of the debris. The General Contractor would then be responsible for re-grading the area. The General Contractor would then be responsible to pick up the completely disconnected portable(s) and transport it (them) to the campus they are assigned by Dallas ISD Construction Services office and then be responsible for the setup and complete reconnection of all utilities, fire alarm, technology, etc. that would match Dallas ISD requirements. At the point the work is complete and/or the swing space is no longer necessary, the GC would be responsible for the disconnect and moving to a location designated by the Dallas ISD and would have no requirement other than to secure the moving permit and to set the portable(s) securely in place. The General Contractor would have responsibility to remove any debris from that disconnect and removal. The General Contractor is responsible for all permitting required to install the portable buildings.
NOTE: In all cases involving swing space, the Campus Principal and Facilities must be appropriately and timely notified and aware of swing space issues, including determination and disposition of portable contents.

Transportation of Existing Portables from Other Schools to the Project. Contractor shall provide turnkey transportation services, including management of any required permits, for safe transportation of existing portables from any of the above site to the project. Any removal and replacement of any fencing, or other obstacles for relocation of such buildings shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

Installation of Portables at the Project. Provide turnkey services for delivery, set-up, maintenance, removal, and restoration of the site for temporary classroom buildings to accommodate phased construction for the Dallas ISD Construction Services office

A. Engineering: The Contractor will provide site engineered civil, utility, blocking plan/foundation plan, sidewalk design and deck/ramp design sufficient to receive a Building Permit from the City, for each site for the installation of all temporary classroom buildings. Existing canopies, sidewalks, foundation details, technology, fire alarm etc. at the schools may be used as a guide for the scope expectations also.

B. Location: The locations of the temporary classrooms are as indicated on the site plan drawings.

C. Permits: The Contractor will coordinate and obtain the permits as required by the City for placement of the classroom buildings at each site. This includes the permits required for the transportation of the classroom buildings.

D. Temp. Facilities: Roll off dumpsters will be provided by the Contractor as required for clean-up during installation and removal of swing space.

E. Clean up: Final broom sweep of the building(s) and removal of trash and debris from each site will be provided by the Contractor prior to occupancy of the swing space by the students and staff. Floor waxing or shampooing will be provided be the Contractor prior to occupancy by the students and staff. Provisions for site restoration upon completion of the delivery of the modules and/or completion of the scope of work will be provided by the Contractor. Upon the removal of the buildings all underground utilities and/or structures associated with the temporary classroom buildings will be removed and discarded. The concrete sidewalks will be removed and discarded. Rough grading will be performed and new sod will be placed to restore the area to its original condition.

F. Site Preparation: Dallas ISD has made no provisions for any site preparation and/or demolition as may be required for the delivery and/or installation of the portable buildings. Any site preparation and/or demolition that might be required of for installation of the temporary classrooms will be included in the Contractor's scope.

G. Construction Fencing: The contractor will maintain a clean and safe site environment within the limits of the temporary classroom construction area. Temporary chain link construction fencing 6' high will be installed around the perimeter of the limits of construction.

H. Sodding: Upon the removal of the buildings, the Contractor will provide sod within the limits of construction associated with the temporary classroom scope of work. Any irrigation of the new sod will be provided by Dallas ISD.

I. Site Utilities (if applicable): The Contractor will provide the site utility connections required for the temporary classroom buildings. The Contractor is responsible for consulting with the City regarding requirements for restrooms on school projects that are located in cities other than Dallas. If required by those cities, the Contractor must provide restroom services and utilities as required by local code.

J. Storm: All storm water management and any sedimentation control will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Gutters and downspouts will be installed as needed by the Contractor.

K. Sanitary (if applicable): The Contractor will install all fixtures, stub all sanitary lines below the floor and manifold to one location at the edge of the building(s). All final connections, utility company charges and impact fees that might be required will be included in the Contractor's scope of work. The Contractor is responsible for consulting with the City regarding requirements for restrooms on school projects that are located in cities other than Dallas. If required by those cities, the Contractor must provide restroom services and utilities as required by local code.

L. Water (if applicable): The Contractor will install all fixtures and stub all water lines to one location at the edge of the building(s). All final connections, utility company charges and impact that might be required will be included in the Contractor's scope of work. The Contractor is responsible for consulting with the City regarding requirements for restrooms on school projects that are located in cities other than Dallas. If required by those cities, the Contractor must provide restroom services and utilities as required by local code.

M. Natural Gas: No provisions for any gas service are anticipated at the present time.

N. Life Safety: Building(s) will be approved and inspected by the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation. Any provisions for fire suppression, fire sprinkler system or fire rated assemblies that might be required will be included in the Contractor's scope of work.

O. Fire Alarm: The contractor will provide and install fire detection systems as required by the building code and the City.

P. Electrical: The contractor will provide and install electrical systems as required by the building code and the City. Installation and electricity consumption costs associated with the swing space will be the financial responsibility of the Contractor.

Q. Mechanical: The Contractor will supply and install the standard end mount HVAC units. The condensate from both HVAC units of a classroom building will harnessed together and discharged into a 24" diameter by 36" deep french drain filled with gravel. All condensate piping will be PVC but will be protected where directly exposed to UV radiation.

R. Internet Access: The Contractor will provide wireless internet access appropriate for the swing space. Portable technology connectivity shall be coordinated with the Technology Department.

S. Skirting: After the modules are installed, the Contractor will install full perimeter skirting around the building(s) using the same material and finish as that of the building siding to provide a consistent finish down to grade. Sections of skirting will be perforated as required for proper crawl space ventilation. Access to the crawl space will be accomplished by removing sections of the skirting.

T. Decks/Stairs: The Contractor will install landings at the exit doors of the building(s) within the limits of construction as required by code and the City. Landings will utilize pressure treated wood construction with slip resistant surface treatment and handrails.

U. Ramps: The Contractor will install handicapped accessible ramps at the exit doors of the building(s) within the limits of construction as required by code and the Local City. Ramps will utilize pressure treated wood construction with slip resistant surface treatment and handrails.

V. Sidewalks: The Contractor will install 4' wide, 4" thick, 3,000 psi concrete sidewalks to service the building(s) within the limits of construction. Sidewalks will receive a light broom finish and be poured on select fill and/or sand bed.

W. Foundation and Anchorage: The swing space facilities should be securely anchored to a foundation system which utilizes some means of structural support, as determined by a certified structural engineer. Provide construction documents that depict the foundation system as designed and certified by a structural engineer.

X. Hitch/Tires/Axles: Hitches will be removed and stored under building while tires and axles are to remain on the modules. Tires and axles will be removed only if necessary to complete the building installation due to site constraints and will also be placed under the modules.

Y. Keys. Contractor shall coordinate with the District for re-keying of all swing space buildings. Provide 10 sets of keys for each building. Doors shall be provided with hardware to enable locking of the buildings from the inside also, and shall have vandal resistant hardware.

Dismantling / Removal of Temporary Buildings upon Completion of Work. Contractor shall demobilize/dismantle/ remove the temporary buildings from site only upon mutual agreement with the Program Manager and Dallas ISD. The temporary buildings shall not be removed from site unless the classrooms that are being renovated under the “Work” of the Contract have been substantially completed and all system upgrades/installation/repairs are

completed to accommodate students. Under no circumstances shall the temporary buildings be demobilized if it is deemed by the Program Manager and Dallas ISD that student safety is a potential issue or if the demobilization is likely to adversely impact the student instruction schedule. Contractor shall provide an advance notice of at least five (5) days to the School Principal and the Program Manager before the temporary buildings are expected to be dismantled and demobilized from the site.

Maintenance and Final Cleaning. Dallas ISD will be responsible for the day-to-day cleaning and janitorial services such as floor cleaning, floor vacuuming, trash removal, etc. Contractor shall be responsible for other maintenance of the temporary buildings, including vandalism. Maintenance of building structure and systems (HVAC, Plumbing, Electrical, Lighting, etc.), for the duration that the buildings are on the School site shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Contractor shall be responsible for rendering the Project site to its original condition after removal of the temporary buildings, including cleaning and grading and ground cover, termination of the temporary facilities and connections per the requirements of the Owner, the City of Dallas and/or the relevant Government Agency or applicable code. Removal of foundations for the buildings, sidewalks, canopies, ramps etc. will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

Coordination with Project Schedule and Phasing Plan. Contractor shall provide a detailed schedule listing all relevant milestones for the installation and dismantling of swing space buildings as part of the overall project schedule. Activities may include, but are not limited to:
1. Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS) submittals, if required,
2. Procurement of permit to transport the prefabricated buildings from another school to the Project site,
3. Procurement and delivery of the prefabricated temporary buildings,
4. Coordination with the power, water, sanitary sewer and any other applicable utility companies to obtain permits and procure additional primary connections, if required.
5. Installation of canopies, sidewalks, fire alarm systems etc.

Lack of understanding of involved coordination and approval processes, and delays caused thereby shall not be grounds for claim(s) for any contract time extension(s). Contractor shall assume a reasonable time frame from the date of issuance of the Notice To Proceed for the installation of these swing space buildings, and coordinate the timing for the delivery and installation of the temporary classroom buildings with the Project schedule.

END OF SECTION 01 52 14

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES

Project Manual

VOLUME 2 OF 2

CSP 207774

ORG 237 – John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

A/E FIRM
CACO ARCHITECTURE, LLC.

Structural: JQ Infrastructure
MEP: Purdy McGuire
Civil: JQ Infrastructure

Roofing: Drytec
Landscape: CCA Landscape Architects
IT/AV: Cedrick Frank and Associates

12/07/2025

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES

Project Manual

VOLUME 2 OF 2

CSP 207774

ORG 237 – John W. Runyon Elementary School - Renovation

A/E FIRM
CACO ARCHITECTURE, LLC.

12/07/2025

ARCHITECT AND CONSULTANTS SEALS PAGE

ARCHITECT:

CaCo Architecture LLC

Roberto Diaz, AIA
5301 Alpha Road
Suite 66-116
Dallas, TX 75240-4467
Tel. 972.865.1329

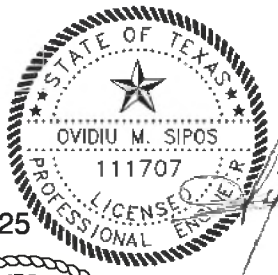


12/07/2025

CIVIL ENGINEER:

JQ Infrastructure

Ovi Sipos, PE
100 Glass Street
Suite 202
Dallas, TX 75207
Tel. 214.623.5872



12/07/2025

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT:

CCA Landscape Architects

Jaclyn Clark Szafranic
1701 Whispering Pines Lane
Gunter, TX, 75058
Tel. 214.739.9105



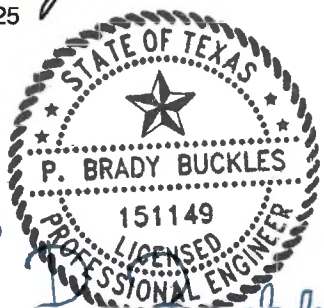
12/07/2025

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:

JQ Infrastructure

Brady Buckles, PE
3017 West 7th Street
Suite 400
Fort Worth, TX 76107
Tel. 817.546.7200

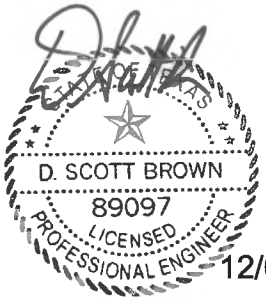
12/07/2025



MEP ENGINEER:

Purdy McGuire

Donald Scott Brown, PE
17300 Dallas Parkway
Suite 3000
Dallas. TX 75248
Tel. 972.239.5357

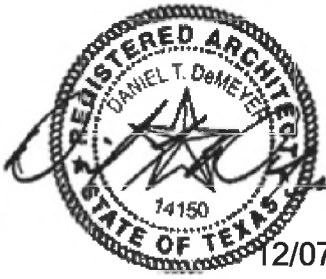


12/07/2025

Roofing Consultant:

Drytec

Daniel DeMeyer
8750 N. Central Expwy
Suite 725
Dallas. TX 75231
Tel. 214.363.2192



12/07/2025

SECTION 00 01 07 – SEALS PAGE

Telecommunications:

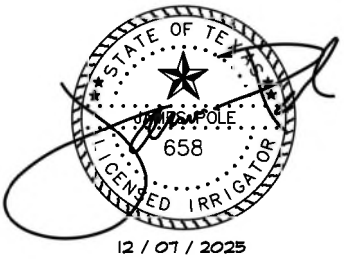
Cedrick Frank and Associates

Cedrick Frank
434 Coombs Creek Dr.
Dallas. TX 75211
Tel. 817.874.7116

Irrigation Designer:

James Pole Irrigation Consultants, Inc.

James Pole
PO Box 1845
Denton, TX, 76202
Tel. 940.243.2364



SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

Division 0

00 01 00 Project Manual Cover
00 01 01 Project Title Page
00 01 07 Seals Page
00 01 10 Table of Contents
00 01 15 List of Drawing Sheets
00 11 13 Advertisement for CSP

Proposal Requirements
00 11 17 Intention to Propose Form
00 21 13 Instructions to Proposers

Project Information
00 31 00 Available Project Information
00 31 18 School Operation Parameters Statement

Proposal Documents
00 41 10 Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist
00 41 11 (a) Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form
00 41 11 Proposal Form – Base Bid (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 41 12 Proposal Form – Alternates and Unit Pricing (Part 1-C of the CSP)
00 41 13 Technical Proposal (Part 1-B of the CSP)
00 43 13 Proposal Guarantee Bond (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 00 DISD Required forms combined (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 20 Certificate of Non-Discrimination (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 22 Notification of Hazardous Materials Affidavit (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 23 Family Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 39 SBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms (Part 2 of the CSP)

Contract Forms
00 43 43 Prevailing Wage Rates Schedule
00 52 10 Standard form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor
00 52 11 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
00 55 00 Notice to Proceed Forms
00 61 13 Performance Bond Form
00 61 16 Payment Bond Form
00 73 19 Dallas Independent School District Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual

Division 1

General Requirements
01 10 00 Summary of Work
01 21 00 Allowances
01 22 00 Unit Prices
01 23 00 Alternates
01 25 00 Substitution Procedures
01 29 00 Payment Procedures
01 29 73 Schedule of Values
01 31 00 Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00 Construction Progress Documentation
01 32 16 Construction Progress Schedule
01 32 33 Photographic Documentation
01 33 00 Submittal Procedures
01 35 43 EPA Lead-Based Paint Renovation, Repair, and Painting Program
01 40 00 Quality Requirements
01 42 00 References
01 45 23 Testing Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC – (updated 1-28-2020 Final)
01 50 00 Temporary Facilities and Controls

01 52 14 Temporary Facilities for Students
01 56 39 Tree Protection, Removal and Pruning
01 60 00 Product Requirements
01 73 00 Execution
01 77 00 Closeout Procedures & Checklist
01 78 23 Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39 Project As-Builts & Record Documents
01 79 00 Demonstration and Training
01 91 00 General Cx Requirements (1-28-20 Final)
01 92 00 Hazmat Report
01 93 00 Geotechnical Report

DIVISION 2

Existing Conditions
02 2623 Environmental assessment Information
02 3200 Geotechnical Data
02 4100 Demolition

DIVISION 3

Concrete
03 3000 Cast-in-Place Concrete
03 3511 Concrete Floor Finishes

DIVISION 4

Masonry
04 0100 Masonry Restoration and Cleaning
04 0513 Masonry Mortar and Grout
04 2001 Brick Veneer Masonry

DIVISION 5

Metals
05 1200 Structural Steel Framing
05 3100 Steel Decking
05 4000 Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 5000 Metal Fabrications
05 5133 Steel Ladders`
05 5213 Pipe and Tube Railings

DIVISION 6

Wood, Plastics, And Composites
06 6100 Rough Carpentry
06 2000 Finish Carpentry
06 4100 Architectural Wood Casework

DIVISION 7

Thermal And Moisture Protection
07 1113 Bituminous Dampproofing
07 2100 Thermal Insulation
07 2500 Weather Barriers
07 4213 Metal Wall Panels
07 5200 Sbs Modified Bitumen Membrane Roofing
07 5650 Minor Roof Renovation Work
07 5700 Coated Foam Roofing
07 6000 Sheet Metal Work
07 7100 Roof Specialties
07 7200 Roof Accessories
07 8400 Firestopping
07 9000 Joint Sealers
07 9513 Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies

DIVISION 8

Openings
08 1113 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
08 1416 Flush Wood Doors
08 3100 Access Doors and Panels
08 4113 Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
08 4413 Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
08 7100 Door Hardware
08 8000 Glazing

DIVISION 9

Finishes
09 2116 Gypsum Board Assemblies
09 3000 Tiling
09 5100 Acoustical Ceilings
09 6500 Resilient Flooring
09 6623 Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring
09 6813 Carpet Tile
09 9000 Painting and Coating

DIVISION 10

Specialties
10 1101 Visual Display Boards
10 1400 Signage
10 2601 Wall and Corner Guards
10 2800 Toilet Accessories
10 4000 Safety Specialties

DIVISION 11 (Not Used)

DIVISION 12

Furnishings
12 2113 Horizontal Louver Blinds
12 3600 Countertops
12 4813 Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

DIVISION 13 - 20 (Not Used)

DIVISION 21

Fire Suppression

21 0548 Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment
21 1000 Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems
21 5000 Common Work Results for Fire Suppression

DIVISION 22

Plumbing

22 0500 Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 0513 Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment
22 0516 Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping
22 0519 Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
22 0523 General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 0529 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0548 Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0553 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0700 Plumbing Insulation
22 1116 Domestic Water Piping
22 1119 Domestic Water Piping Specialties
22 1122 Natural Gas Piping
22 1123 Domestic Water Pumps
22 1316 Sanitary Waste, Storm Drainage and Vent Piping
22 1319 Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
22 1429 Sump Pumps
22 3300 Electric Domestic Water Heaters

DIVISION 23

Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC)

23 0500 Common Work Results for HVAC
23 0513 Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
23 0516 Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping
23 0519 Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
23 0523 General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
23 0529 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 0533 Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping
23 0548 Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 0553 Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 0593 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC
23 0700 HVAC Insulation
23 0900 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC
23 2113 Hydronic Piping
23 2123 Hydronic Pumps
23 2300 Refrigerant Piping
23 3113 Metal Ducts
23 3300 Air Duct Accessories
23 3423 HVAC Power Ventilators
23 3600 Air Terminal Units
23 3713 Diffusers, Registers and Grilles
23 6500 Cooling Towers
23 7314 Custom Air-Handling Units

23 7413 Packaged Dx Rooftop Units
23 8126 Split-System Air-Conditioners
23 8239 Unit Heaters

DIVISION 26

Electrical
26 0500 Common Work Results for Electrical
26 0519 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
26 0526 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 0529 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 0533 Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
26 0553 Identification for Electrical Systems
26 0573 Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study
26 0923 Lighting Control Devices
26 0936 Modular Dimming Controls
26 0943 Network Lighting Controls
26 2416 Panelboards
26 2713 Electrical Metering
26 2726 Wiring Devices
26 2813 Fuses
26 2816 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
26 4113 Lightning Protection for Structures
26 5100 Interior Lighting
26 5600 Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 27

Communications
27 1501 Premise Wiring Guide
27 4500 Electronic Communications

DIVISION 28

Electronic Safety And Security
28 0500 Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
28 1300 Video Intercom and Access Control System
28 2000 Electronic Surveillance
28 3100 Intrusion Detection
28 4600 Fire Detection and Alarm

DIVISION 31

Earthwork
31 1000 Site Preparation and Demolition
31 2200 Earthwork
31 2500 Erosion Control
31 3116 Termite Control
31 6329 Drilled Piers

DIVISION 32

Site Improvements
32 1313 Concrete Paving
32 8400 Landscape Irrigation System
32 9200 Turf and Grasses
32 9300 Landscaping

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 00 01 15 – LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

The list below is a description of the documents provided to the contractor as part of this Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal – 207774

1.01 Drawing List with Revision Number and Date: 10/22/2025

1.01.A Project Manual List with Revision Number and Date: 12/07/2025

ORG 237 - John W. Runyon Elementary School – Renovation

Drawings:

Civil:

C00.01	GENERAL NOTES
C01.00	EXISTING CONDITIONS
C02.00	DEMO PLAN
C03.00	ENGINEERING SITE PLAN
C04.00	GRADING PLAN
C05.00	EROSION CONTROL PLAN
C05.01	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS
C06.00	CIVIL DETAILS
C06.01	CIVIL DETAILS

Structural:

S1.01	STRUCTURAL NOTES
S1.02	STRUCTURAL NOTES
S1.03	SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
SD2.03	ROOF DEMO PLAN - ENTRY
S2.01	FOUNDATION PLAN
S2.02	ROOF FRAMING PLAN - OVERALL
S2.03	ROOF FRAMING PLAN - ADDITION
S2.10	WALL ELEVATIONS
S3.01	TYPICAL CONCRETE DETAILS
S3.02	TYPICAL CONCRETE DETAILS
S3.03	CONCRETE DETAILS
S5.01	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS
S5.02	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS
S5.03	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS
S5.04	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS

Architectural:

A0.01	COVER SHEET
A0.02	SHEET INDEX / GENERAL NOTES
A0.05	CODE & EGRESS
A0.06	TAS STANDARDS
A0.10	FRAMING DTLS
A0.11	WALL, DR, WNDW
A0.30	SF DETAILS
A0.31	CW DETAILS
A0.40	FINISHES
D2.00	DEMO L1
D2.01	DEMO ADMIN
A1.00	SITE PLAN
A1.01	SITE DETAILS
A1.02	PHOTOMETRICS
A1.03	SEQUENCE PLAN

A2.00	OVERALL PLAN
A2.01	FLOOR PLAN A
A2.02	FLOOR PLAN B
A2.03	FLOOR PLAN C
A2.04	FLOOR PLAN D
A2.10	FLOOR PLAN ADMIN
A2.11	DIMENSION PLAN
A2.20	FINISHES ADMIN
A3.00	RCP L1
A3.10	RCP ADMIN
A3.11	RCP SECTIONS
A4.00	ROOF PLAN
A5.00	EXTERIOR ELEV
A5.01	EXTERIOR ELEV
A5.03	EXTERIOR ELEV
A6.00	BLDG SECTIONS
A7.00	WALL SECTIONS
A7.01	SECTION DTLS
A7.02	PLAN DTLS
A8.00	INTERIOR ELEV
A9.00	3D VIEWS
A9.01	3D VIEWS
A10.01	MILLWORK
A11.00	FF&E PLAN

Mechanical:

DM2.01	MECHANICAL DEMOLITION PLAN - OVERALL
DM2.02	ROOF LEVEL - MECHANICAL DEMOLITION PLAN
M0.01	MECHANICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
M0.02	MECHANICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
M0.03	MECHANICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
M2.00	MECHANICAL PLAN - CRAWLSPACE - OVERALL
M2.01	MECHANICAL PLAN - OVERALL
M2.02	MECHANICAL PLAN - ENLARGED PLAN
M2.03	ROOF LEVEL - MECHANICAL PLAN
M2.11	MECHANICAL RETURN AIR PLAN -ENLARGED PLAN
M3.01	MECHANICAL SECTION VIEWS
M4.01	MECHANICAL AIR RISER
M4.02	MECHANICAL PIPING RISERS
M5.01	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M5.02	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M5.03	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M6.01	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M6.02	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
MEP2.01	ROOF LEVEL - MEP PIPING PLAN
MEP7.01	MEP CONTROLS - GENERAL
MEP7.02	MEP CONTROLS - CONDENSER WATER
MEP7.03	MEP CONTROLS - CONDENSER WATER
MEP7.04	MEP CONTROLS - CHW RTU MULTI-ZONE
MEP7.05	MEP CONTROLS - CHW RTU SINGLE-ZONE
MEP7.06	MEP CONTROLS - DX RTU SINGLE ZONE
MEP7.07	MEP CONTROLS - FANS
MEP7.08	MEP CONTROLS - MISC
MEP7.09	MEP CONTROLS - VFD'S AND IDF/MDF ROOMS
MEP7.10	MEP CONTROLS – VAV

Electrical:

E0.01	ELECTRICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
E0.02	ELECTRICAL NOTES & SYMBOLS
E1.01	ELECTRICAL SITE PLAN
E2.01	ELECTRICAL PLAN - OVERALL
E2.02	ELECTRICAL PLAN - ROOF LEVEL
E3.01	LIGHTING PLAN - OVERALL
E4.01	ELECTRICAL ENLARGED PLAN
E4.02	ELECTRICAL ENLARGED PLAN
E6.01	ELECTRICAL DETAILS - GENERAL
E6.02	ELECTRICAL DETAILS - GENERAL
E7.01	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES
E8.01	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES

Plumbing:

P0.01	PLUMBING NOTES & SYMBOLS
P0.02	PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE
P2.01	PLUMBING PLAN - OVERALL
P3.01	PLUMBING ENLARGED PLAN
P4.01	PLUMBING RISERS
P5.01	PLUMBING DETAILS
P5.02	PLUMBING DETAILS
P6.01	PLUMBING SCHEDULES

Technology:

EC0.01	ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS NOTES, LEGEND AND DETAILS
EC1.00	SITE PLAN
EC2.02	FLOOR PLAN - AREA A
EC2.03	FLOOR PLAN - AREA B
EC2.04	FLOOR PLAN - AREA C
EC2.05	FLOOR PLAN - AREA D
EC7.01	ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS DETAILS
EC7.02	ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS DIAGRAM
T0.01	TECHNOLOGY NOTES & RESPONSIBILITY CHART
T0.02	TECHNOLOGY LEGEND & DETAILS
T1.00	SITE PLAN
T2.02	FLOOR PLAN - AREA A
T2.03	FLOOR PLAN - AREA B
T2.04	FLOOR PLAN - AREA C
T2.05	FLOOR PLAN - AREA D
T7.01	TECHNOLOGY DETAILS
T7.02	TECHNOLOGY DETAILS
T7.03	TECHNOLOGY DETAILS

Roofing:

R1.01	OVERALL CONSTRUCTION PLAN
R2.00	ROOF DETAILS
R2.01	ROOF DETAILS
R2.02	DETAILS
R2.03	DETAILS
RD1.01	OVERALL DEMOLITION PLAN

SECTION 01 5639

TREE PROTECTION, REMOVAL, AND PRUNING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Divisions 00 and 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish all work and materials, appliances, tools, equipment, facilities, transportation, and services necessary for and incidental to performing all operations in connection with the protection, pruning, care, and removal of trees.

B. The Contractor shall provide protection and care of existing trees or other designated plant material in order to maintain a healthy, vigorous condition.

C. The Contractor shall perform tree removal, stump grinding and pruning as specified, utilizing acceptable horticultural standards as adopted by the Texas Association of Landscape Contractors (TALC) or Texas Nurseryman Association.

D. Such work shall include, but is not limited to, the following:

1. Protection of individual and stands of existing trees and landscape to remain from the following types of damage:
    a. Compaction of root zone by foot, vehicular traffic or material storage.
    b. Trunk, branch and canopy damage from building construction, construction access clearances, construction equipment operations, material storage, or from nailing or bolting.
    c. Root poisoning from spilled or dumped solvents, gasoline, paint, and other noxious materials.
    d. Truck wash out.
    e. Branch damage due to improper pruning or trimming.
    f. Damage from lack of water due to:
        1) Cutting or altering natural water migration patterns near root zones.
        2) Failure to provide adequate watering.
    g. Damage from alteration of soil pH factor caused by depositing lime, concrete, crusher run, plaster or other base materials near roots.
    h. Damage to root zone by coverage of soil.
2. Root pruning by cutting of roots larger than one and one-half (1 1/2) inches in diameter and application of sealant where building, walls, pavements, underground utilities are to be installed.
3. Stump grinding and removal through chipping of trees and other plant vegetation designated for removal.
4. Removal and pruning of tree branches and root pruning adjacent to new construction and excavation or where construction access route is to occur, using equipment with overhead booms, to reduce damage to tree canopy and roots.
5. Removal and pruning of tree branches to provide clearance for building construction – provide five (5) feet clear from finished roof or parapet elevations.
6. Removal and pruning of tree branches to provide clearance for fire truck access for fire lanes, fire station drive, and pervious fire lane surfaces – provide fourteen (14) feet clear from finished grade.

7. Hand removal of existing gravel drives, asphalt roads, road bedding and existing concrete curbs and sidewalk within root zone areas of existing trees to remain. Peel and rake materials away from the existing subbase soils to prevent damage to the tree's root systems below. NO excavating procedures shall take place under or around the trees.

8. Removal of abandoned existing utilities by hand trenching or air-spade trenching to prevent damage to root systems above. Root cutting shall be as directed per root pruning procedures under direction of certified Arborist.
9. Removal of dead wood and broken or hanging branches from the existing trees.
10. Hand grubbing to remove small seedling trees, vines (poison ivy, Virginia creeper, etc.), excessive surface vegetative debris, seeds, nuts, and trash.
11. Application of mulch product and root stimulant at trees to be root pruned and trees to be protected.
12. Placement of plywood over mulch in areas between tree protection fencing and face of building/vertical features/parking lot retaining walls to prevent compaction of soils.
13. Watering and maintenance of root pruned trees.
14. Supplemental hand watering as needed to existing trees.
15. Work shall be performed under the supervision of licensed Arborist.
16. Documentation of tree removal, damage and treatment shall be recorded and submitted.

E. All work of this section is to be supervised by Certified Arborist with minimum of ten (10) years of experience.

1.3 INSPECTION OF THE SITE

A. Verify and examine site conditions with the Owner's Representative prior to any ground disturbing activities.

B. Document the conditions of the easing trees on the site prior to the start of any work as part of the pre-construction photo documentation, tree status report, and assessment under this section.

C. Proceed when official notice is given to the Contractor that the work site is ready. Proceed with tree protection prior to any site work, demolition, or grading.

D. The Contractor shall verify with the Owner's Representative the extent of tree protective fencing and specific trees to be removed.

E. The Contractor shall verify with the Owner's Representative the understory trees to remain and be protected with the adjacent trees.

F. Submit application for Tree Removal Permit.

G. Utilities: Determine and mark locations of underground utilities to be removed and perform work in a manner which is intended to avoid possible damage to trees and plant root systems.

1.4 DOCUMENTATION SUBMITTAL

A. Document the condition of every tree to remain and every tree to be protected by dated photograph submitted to the Owner. Submit six (6) photographs per tree showing the tree, branching, and roots at various angles. Photograph existing trees to remain with Owner's representative present to verify and record tree designation and health at time of commencing site work. Provide one (1) copy of photos to Owner. Contractor to maintain one (1) copy of tree photos and record of tree health in notebook (or pdf file) for entire construction period.

B. Understory trees of minimum of two (2) inch caliper will remain and be protected under or adjacent to the canopy of large existing trees to remain. These trees are not reflected in the survey due to their size, but they have value in the character of this site development. Determination of species, character and condition shall be assessed on site prior to any grubbing or vegetation removal under existing trees to remain. Photos shall be taken to document understory trees.

Refer to City codes for protected trees.

C. TREE STATUS REPORTS - Submit quarterly (4) reports issued by Arborist regarding the status of tree health, for the remaining trees within the area of construction contract, and care along with recommendations to preserve tree health. Existing trees have not been regularly irrigated and are susceptible to stress due to the site construction conditions and duration. The report shall include a narrative from the Arborist and a minimum of two (2) photos per tree to document the tree's health or any damage. Additional reports shall be required should tree damage (e.g., loss of large branches or limbs) occur due to construction or act of God (snow, ice, wind) which are due within one week of the event.

1. Submit a written inventory in Excel spreadsheet format of all trees on the site. The report must be prepared and submitted by Contractor's Arborist. The Arborist shall record the tree identification number and size in caliper inches (as shown on the drawings). The spread sheet shall record all trees on site including type of protection, care, and the type of damage received (e.g., part of root zone removed due to excavation, compaction of root zone due to vehicular access or construction, etc.). The inventory shall document the type of treatment that damaged trees received. A ***sample*** inventory follows which is not meant to be comprehensive.

XYZ Project – TREE INVENTORY of Health, Damage, Repair and Removal					
Prepared by XYZ Arborist, License/Certification No.; Date					
Tree No.	Tree ID	Caliper Inches Remain	Removed	Status	Treatment*
01	Live Oak	26		Protected; no change	M
02	Live Oak		10	Removed per plans	-
03	Red Oak	12		Damage - 20% of root zone removed	RP, CT, M
04	Cedar Elm	14		Damage – 30% of root zone removed	RP, CT, M
05	Hackberry		15	Removed due to ice storm damage	--
06	Pecan	24		Removed 2 limbs for construction access	M, W
07	Post Oak	12		Damage – root zone compaction	Aeration, M
08	Live Oak	18		Damage – canopy loss, large branch broken by concrete truck	M, WP, RP
Etc…					
TOTAL INCHES REMOVED			25		

**A*Aeration – Performed hydraulic aeration of root zone, 24" on center.*

**CT – Performed canopy trimming to remove branches proportional to root loss*

**M – Mulch applied to root zone*

**RP – Root pruning and root stimulant applied*

**W, WP – Branch trimmed and wound paint applied for Quercus*

Describe other treatments

2. The inventory shall include photos of damaged trees to show status of health, damage, and signs of insect, disease, mite, pests, mistletoe, mosses, lichen or stress/decline. Submit at least four (4) photos per tree from various angles/viewpoints arranged on 8-1/2 x 11 format with trees labeled corresponding to "Tree Inventory" and site plan. Use a digital camera with at least 5.0 megapixels of resolution to document observations.

3. Submit inventory with corresponding photos in digital format (pdf) and with one copy printed on 8-1/2 x 11 paper and organized into three-hole binder. The four (4) photos per tree shall be organized onto one (1) sheet of paper.
4. Tree photographs must be accompanied by assessment of tree health and existing damage by the Contractor's licensed Arborist.
5. The photo documentation and assessment will serve as a benchmark for future comparisons when a tree is damaged or in decline after any on-site clearing, grubbing, grading, or other work activity.
6. Receive approval of tree photo documentation prior to starting tree protection and site work.
7. Proceeding with site work without approval on pre-construction tree assessment from the Owner's Representative will make the Contractor responsible for existing damage.
8. The inventory shall include photos of tree protection fencing in place prior to site work at all locations. Include at least four (4) photos of fencing in place prior to construction activities at each location.
9. Monthly Tree Assessments shall be performed by the Contractor's arborist throughout the duration of construction and landscape establishment period. Monthly Tree Assessments shall be submitted in accordance with submittal requirements.
10. Submit inventory as work progresses and at end of project as part of Final Acceptance.
11. Prior to Closeout and with approval of the Owner' Representative a final Post-Construction Tree Assessment shall be performed. The Post Construction Tree Assessment shall be performed no more than two (2) months prior to Project Closeout.

1.5 ARBORIST INVOLVEMENT AND QUALIFICATIONS

A. Submit resume and relevant tree preservation experience of Certified Arborist prior to commencing work. Arborist shall have a minimum of ten (10) years of experience in tree preservation and care. The Arborist shall submit ten (10) example tree preservation projects along with the project site address and project representative's name and phone number.

B. Submit manufacturer's product information for root sealant, limb sealant, root stimulant, or another item recommended by the Arborist.

C. The Contractor is required to his Arborist prior to any construction activity near the protected trees. The Contractor Arborist's report shall be the guide for any construction activity within the vicinity of trees identified for preservation.

D. The Arborist shall be required to regularly monitor the health of the trees being preserved. The Arborist shall inspect trees monthly and issue monthly assessment reports documenting tree health and tree care measures employed to preserve or enhance the tree's health.

1.6 SEQUENCING

A. Coordinate installation of protection devices and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that protection of existing trees is complete prior to any site work, demolition, grading or construction activities.

B. Trees designated for root or branch pruning must be pruned prior to commencing site work or demolition.

1.7 DAMAGES

A. Trees that are designated to remain but, during the course of construction, are removed, severely damaged, in significant decline or have died due to Contractor's work or neglect shall be replaced and/or damages paid by the Contractor to the Owner per the schedule below at the Contractor's expense.

B. For trees four (4) inch caliper or greater, the Owner's representative will assess the following damages for damaged, dead, or dying, or removed trees to be paid by the Contractor to the Owner.

Tree size – Diameter/Caliper in Inches	Replacement Tree or Value Each tree
Equal to 4 and up to 6	$ 1,500.00
Equal to 6 and up to 8	$ 3,000.00
Greater than 8 and up to 12	$ 6,000.00
Greater than 12 inches	$ 1,000 per caliper inch

Size will be determined by measuring caliper at twelve (12) inches above grade for trees from four (4) to twelve (12) inch caliper and at six (6) inches above grade for trees from zero (0) to four (4) inch in caliper.

Trees that are larger than twelve (12) inch in caliper shall be measured at four (4) feet above natural ground elevation, or from top of stump, if removed.

Multi-trunk trees shall be measured at twelve (12) inches above grade of each trunk. The largest trunk's diameter shall be counted as 100% caliper; the remaining trunks shall be counted at 50% caliper. In the event the tree cannot be measured, the diameter values as stated on the drawings plus two (2) inches will be used for the determination.

C. For Damaged trees twelve (12) inch caliper and greater – If a major branch is damaged, the cost will be assessed by the percentage of the tree canopy that is lost. For example, if the loss of a branch results in one-fifth of the canopy loss, then the penalty on a twenty (20) inch tree would be one-fifth or $4,000.00.

D. Slight Damage: shall be defined as damage that may heal.

1. Examples include but are not limited to: scaring of the trunk into the cambial layer one-half (½) inch to two (2) inches in width but less than one-third (1/3) trunk circumference or breaking of limbs less than two (2) inches in diameter or limbs less than one-third (1/3) trunk caliper, whichever is less.
2. Slight damage shall also include removal or lying down of protective tree fencing prior to end of construction, storing equipment or supplies within the critical root zone (CRZ), or disposing of paint or concrete within the CRZ but not closer to the trunk than 50% radius of the CRZ. Slight damage to trees shall be assessed at a rate of $100.00 for each instance. Each day tree fencing is not properly placed, equipment or supplies are stored within CRZ, or fill is stored within the CRZ shall be considered one instance.

E. Moderate Damage: shall be defined as damage that contributes to the poor health and reduced longevity of the tree.

1. Examples include but are not limited to: scaring of the trunk into the cambial layer greater than two (2) inches but less than one-third (1/3) the trunk circumference or breaking of limbs more than two (2) inches in diameter but less than one-third (1/3) trunk caliper.
2. Moderate damage shall also include compaction of soil, grading or filling in 20% of the CRZ on one of four sides but outside the 50% radius of the CRZ, disposing of paint or concrete within 50% radius of the CRZ. Moderate damages shall be calculated at a rate of one-half (½) the assessed value of the tree per each instance of damage.

F. Severe Damage: shall include removal or damage no defined as slight or moderate.

1. Examples include but are not limited to: scaring of the trunk to the cambial layer greater than one-third (1/3) the trunk circumference, uprooting or causing a tree to lean, damage to a scaffolding branch or branch greater than one-third (1/3) of trunk caliper.

2. Severe damage shall also include compaction of soil, grading or filling more than 20% of the CRZ, or within 50% radius of the CRZ or on more than one (1) of four (4) sides. Cutting one-third (1/3) of the buttress roots within three (3) times the distance of the DBH of the trunk, or cutting four (4) roots four (4) inches or greater in diameter within four (4) foot of the trunk shall also be considered severe damage.
3. Severely damaged trees shall be designated by the Owner's Representative and shall be scheduled for removal. The Contractor shall pay the Owner penalty as described in the table above.

G. Assessment of Tree Mitigation: The Owner's Representative opinion is final regarding tree damage penalties. The Owner's Representative may exercise the right to stop any work if any level of tree damages is being incurred due to the execution of the work until the Contractor and develop a work plan which prevents further damage to the existing trees.

H. Trees that must be removed due to damage caused by the Contractor shall be removed at the Contractor's expense.

I. All damages shall be paid to the Owner. Failure to replace or pay for damaged trees shall result in a breach of contract and the Contractor will be automatically assessed damages. Damages as described herein shall be deducted from payments otherwise due to the Contractor.

1.8 WATER

Potable water is available on site. If potable water is not available, contractor shall provide watering by means approved by the Owner or Contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOUND PAINT

For trees within protection fencing area that may need limb pruning/removal, use petroleum or latex base tree wound paint, dark gray, brown or black in color. Spray type paints are acceptable for use on genus Quercus only.

2.2 TREE PROTECTION FENCING

A. Refer to the drawings for the location of proposed tree protection fencing.

B. Fencing: Non-movable chain link fencing.
1. All elements hot dip galvanized and unless otherwise shown.
2. All elements consist of the following:
   a. Chain link fencing: Nine (9) gauge, two (2) inch mesh, four (4) foot height.
   b. Posts: two and three-eighths (2 3/8) inches outside diameter, minimum, steel driven and set a minimum of two (2) feet into ground. Posts are set maximum eight (8) feet on center.
   c. Brace rails: one and five-eighths (1 5/8) inch outside diameter, minimum.
   d. Stretcher bars: one-quarter (1/4) inch by three-quarter (3/4) inch, minimum.

C. Orange Safety Fencing for trees adjacent to Sanford on East Parcel (as shown on plans):
1. Orange safety fencing: polyvinyl mesh, four (4) foot height.
2. Posts: Metal T-posts, minimum of four (4) foot above finished grade and two (2) feet below grade.

D. Refer to drawings for additional fencing requirements.

E. Temporary enclosures and wrapping
1. The Contractor shall protect tree trunks and root zones from damage. If fencing is not possible due to proximity of construction, then the Contractor is obligated to wrap the trunk

with material sufficient to protect the trunk from any damage. The Contractor is obligated to protect the root zone from compaction and damage. The Contractor may use 2x4 pieces wired together to protect the trunk to a minimum height of eight (8) feet above grade. Mulch, gravel, and plywood boards should be used to cover 100% of the root zone.

2. Miscellaneous materials: burlap, coarsely shredded hardwood mulch, septic (rounded) gravel.
3. The Contractor shall be aware and flag, if necessary, existing overhead canopies of trees to remain. Equipment shall operate with lowered boom or cranes to protect the existing tree canopies from damage.

2.3 MULCH AND COMPOST

A. Mulch – Commercially available decomposed coarsely shredded hardwood mulch at three (3) inch depth. Mulch shall have been decomposing for a minimum of sixty (60) days.

B. Shredded tree mulch – Undecomposed, twice shredded hardwood mulch from on-site trees that do not include invasive tree species. This mulch must be utilized with a compost bottom layer that shall be one-half (1/2) to one (1) inch and the undecomposed hardwood added for a minimum three (3) inch combined thickness.

C. Compost - commercially available, mature, fully decomposed compost that complies with Section 32 9300 Landscape Planting.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

A. Tree Fertilizer: Fertilize all trees with a combination of PHC for trees 27-9-9 and Mycor Tree Injectable. Mix 8 pounds of PHC for trees and A and B packets of Mycor Tree Injectable per one hundred (100) gallons of water.

B. Herbicides, Insecticides, Miticides and Fungicides: Legal commercial quality non-staining materials with original manufacturers' containers, properly labeled with guaranteed analysis, least toxic required.

C. Water: Clean fresh, free of substances toxic to plant growth.

D. Sterilant: Use a horticulturally accepted sterilant for sterilizing pruning equipment.

E. Root Sealant: Use a horticulturally accepted sealant appropriate for each species of tree.

F. Erosion Control Net (Jute Mesh): Shall be heavy, twisted jute mesh, weighing approximately 1.22 pounds per linear yard and four (4) feet wide with mesh openings of approximately one (1) inch square.

G. Plywood: three-quarter (3/4) inch non-treated.

2.5 MACHINERY AND EQUIPMENT

A. Machinery or tools requirements listed under this Section are NOT intended to be restrictive of specific manufacturers or models, unless so stated. Specific mention of the manufacturers is intended as a guide to illustrate the final product of the maintenance operations desired.

B. All equipment and pruning tools shall be maintained in a safe working condition and cutting edges shall be sharp at all times.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Verify trees to remain and trees to remove with Owner’s representative. Verify health of trees to remain and provide photo documentation prior to commencing demolition or site work.

B. Verify locations of existing utilities in area of tree removal and root grinding. Contractor shall protect

all utility lines to remain.

C. Verity locations of existing utilities and old pavements to be removed in areas of trees to remain. Contractor shall protect tree's root systems.

D. Verify staging of access into site for removal or trees, and protection of trees and areas to be preserved. Utilize existing pavement surfaces to be demolished to prevent compaction of soils into protected areas.

E. By beginning Work, Contractor accepts conditions and assumes responsibility for correcting unsuitable conditions encountered at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.2 TREE PRESERVATION

A. Protect and preserve trees, understory trees, shrubs, native grasses, and plants not to be removed by the use of fencing, temporary enclosures, wrapping or other means. TREE PROTECTION MUST OCCUR PRIOR TO ANY SITE WORK, DEMOLITION, EXISTING ABANDONED UTILITY REMOVAL, OR GRADING.

B. Abandoned Utilities to be Removed: Determine locations of underground utilities and perform work in a manner which is intended to avoid possible damage to trees and protected vegetation. Hand excavate or use air-spade technology where required.

C. Tree protection must receive approval of the Owner's Representative prior to starting any site work.

D. Protected trees shown to remain must *maintain a full 75% existing undisturbed root zone minimum* to be counted as a protected site tree per the local city code or ordinance.

E. Protect trees shown with approved fencing as indicated on the drawings and as needed to protect from construction activities.

F. Per assessment report, protect existing understory trees and shrubs to remain under and adjacent to existing trees to remain.

G. Repair injuries, abrasions, and other damage to plants by cleanly removing broken members, loose and torn bark, and shape edges in order to permit drainage of rainwater from wounds. Paint wounds with an approved tree wound paint. Provide photo documentation of all tree injuries and repairs.

H. Where depth of soil over root system of existing plantings is to be modified by final grading, provide the following:

1. Where increase of one (1) foot or more in elevation is shown, spread continuous layer of rock aggregate, graded one quarter (1/4) inch to two (2) inches, six (6) inches deep from trunk to drip line of branches prior to installation of fill.
2. Provide proper aeration by installing within perimeter of spread, a system of four (4) inch clay drain tile. Install vertically flush with soil surface and penetrating into layer of aggregate fill.

I. Install tree guard fencing at a minimum of three (3) feet past the tree drip line or as noted on the drawings.

J. Do not install gates in tree guard fencing. Do not stack or store any equipment inside the tree fence.

K. Do not clean construction equipment, dump liquids, or perform field maintenance on vehicles in the vicinity of the trees to be preserved.

L. Apply three (3) inches of coarsely shredded hardwood mulch over tree root zone within fencing, unless shown otherwise.

M. Install plywood over mulch in areas reflected on plans for access between the tree protection fencing and the face of building or edge of retaining wall construction.

N. Trees inside fencing with native turf areas to remain: DO NOT install mulch or disturb soils in areas shown without mulch due to in-situ soils ability to percolate and drain.

3.3 TREE, LIMB, AND VEGETATION REMOVAL

A. **Receive approval from the Owner's Representative in the field for trees and vegetation to be removed.** Trees that have died or have been approved for removal shall be removed by felling with chain saws. Fell trees to avoid injuring protected trees and vegetation or damaging utilities and existing pavement or structures. Use felling methods that comply with OSHA and American Association of Nurserymen.

B. Undergrowth identified and designated for removal within existing tree stands to be preserved shall be removed by hand with machinery and tools that do not harm the root systems, trunks, limbs, or any other part of the trees, understory trees, understory shrubs or native grasses designated to be preserved.

C. Grind stumps to a depth of eighteen (18) inches within a three (3) foot diameter of the trunk in areas where rough grading does not exceed two (2) feet of cut. Remove ground mulch from area and fill hole with select fill or site stockpiled topsoil compacted to 90% proctor density. Trees will not need to have stumps ground that are removed within area of building construction and excavation or where rough grading exceeds two (2) feet of cut.

D. Trees within heavily rooted zones of other trees will have stumps ground to same depth as above but grind main root laterals out three (3) feet from tree. DO NOT grind over or into other tree's root systems.

E. Arborist shall prune trees to remove limbs and branches that hinder Contractor's work. Owner's Representative shall approve any pruning that removes more than ten (10) percent of the tree's canopy.

F. Prune branches of trees per approved horticultural practices, for balanced overall canopy appearance, and to prevent one-sided canopy pruning to provide for:

1. Construction equipment access clearance to fourteen (14) feet height from finished grades.
2. Building vertical face clearance to allow scaffolding, lifts, and equipment access.
3. Building projected finished roof or parapet elevation clearance of five (5) feet.
4. Fire truck access lanes and drives clearance of fourteen (14) feet above finished pavement elevation.

G. Prune trees to remove dead wood, broken branched, mistletoe and suckers from canopies as needed. Thin prune by removing no more than twenty (20) percent of growth. Sterilize pruning tools between individual plants to keep down spread of disease.

H. Neatly cut limbs and branches to be trimmed or removed close to the bole of the tree or main branches. Paint cuts more than one and one-quarter (1 1/4) inches in diameter with an approved tree wound paint. Use 3-cut process to remove branches.

I. Limb up trees to provide seven (7) foot minimum clearance over adjacent pedestrian walks, plazas, or accessible pavements to be constructed. Tree shall be limbed up by Arborist to provide balanced shape and to allow for interior branch development.

J. Remove poison ivy and other vines from tree trunks, treat and remove roots of ivy to prevent reestablishment (If applicable).

K. Hand grub to remove small seedling trees, excessive surface vegetative debris, seeds, nuts and trash. Retain a minimum layer or naturally decomposed surface litter over top of existing grade below tree canopy. Grubbing shall not extend into the surface roots of the tree to remain to prevent damage to the surface roots. Apply coarsely shredded hardwood mulch over root zone if area previously had excessive debris depth to help retain surface moisture over root zone.

L. Remove all branches and debris. Legally dispose of vegetation, branches and debris off site. Leave site in a clean and orderly manner.

3.4 ROOT PRUNING

A. Root pruning as indicated on the drawings must occur prior grading or excavation in the root zone.

B. Arborist – Major root pruning (one (1) inch caliper and larger) should be supervised by a certified Arborist where indicated on the plan or if roots are exposed due to grading or excavation. Use sharp instruments that leave a clean cut, with no ragged edges.

C. Root pruning guidelines:

1. Do not mechanically trench under trees, Trench using Air Spade Technology offered by Root Flare Services, Dallas, TX (or approved equal), hand dig or bore underneath. If roots greater than one (1) inch are encountered and severed, dig back along the root and find solid root wood, then cut flush and treat with an acceptable root sealant immediately. If the roots cannot be treated immediately, cover with moist burlap to prevent desiccation until they can be treated.
2. Any roots broken and disturbed during construction trenching operations shall be immediately cleanly cut and sprayed with root sealant. Do not leave uncut, frayed roots without immediate treatment. Owner is to inspect any trench before filling occurs.
3. Temporarily cover exposed roots with wet burlap to prevent roots from drying out.
4. Do not remove more than 25 % of the tree's roots, with no more than 20% from one side.
5. For trees twelve (12) inches in diameter and less, roots should not be removed within four (4) feet of the outer edge of the tree trunk base. Trees other than Post Oaks with diameter more than twelve (12) inches should be allowed an additional twelve (12) inches for every three (3) inches of trunk diameter measured at a point three (3) feet above the ground. Root prune all trees adjacent to proposed pavement locations.
6. Oak trees with a trunk diameter more than twelve (12) inches should be allowed an additional twelve (12) inches for every one (1) inch of trunk diameter measured at a point three (3) feet above the ground.
7. Root prune all trees adjacent to proposed pavement and excavation locations with proper pruning technique to provide clean cuts at roots with no ragged edges. Do not cut within five (5) feet of trunk.

D. Arborist will review root pruning prior to backfilling.

E. Backfill the excavation as soon as possible after sealing cuts with root sealant and water the soil around the roots to avoid leaving air pockets.

F. Backfill with five (5) parts native topsoil and one (1) part compost.

G. Apply root fertilizer / stimulator to root zone of trees where root pruning has occurred. Apply fertilizer at rates recommended by manufacturer. Inject fertilizer at depths prescribed by manufacturer.

H. The Arborist must thin the foliar tree canopy to compensate for root loss and to loss of anchorage.

I. The Arborist must receive field approval from Owner's Representative or the Landscape Architect for tree and root pruning not shown in the drawings.

3.5 BORING NEAR TREES

A. Bores within the root zone of large trees shall be horizontal directional bores. For pipe installation, mechanically bore the tunnel under the roots with a horizontal directional drill and hydraulic or pneumatic air excavation technology. In all cases, install the utility pipe immediately, backfill with soil and soak within the same day.

B. Installation shall be tunnel bored beneath the tree and roots per the following chart:

Trenching Distance	
When the Tree Diameter (at 4.5' height) is	Trenching will be Replaced with Boring at this Min. Distance (10x tree diameter) from the Face of the Tree in any Direction
6-9" measured at 6"	5– 8'

10-14” measured at 54”	10 – 13’
15-19” measured at 54”	14- 16’
19-24” measured at 54”	17-19’
Over 25” measured at 54”	20’+
Depth of Tunneling	
9” or less measured at 6”	2.0’
10-14” measured at 54”	2.5’
15-19” measured at 54”	3.0’
More than 19” measured at 54” depth of tunnel	3.5’

Bore pits shall be located at a minimum distance as specified by trenching distance table above.

3.6 WATERING

A. The Contractor shall provide watering as needed to keep existing trees to remain in vigorous condition.

B. The Contractor shall water protected trees during construction by deep root watering trees once every two weeks during the months of June, July, August, and September. Should drought of more than three (3) weeks occur from October through May, the Contractor shall provide additional deep root watering of protected trees as needed to keep trees in healthy, growing condition. A dripping hose or gator bag or other means may be used to deep root water the trees. Soil should be saturated within the drip line after deep root watering.

C. For large masses of protected trees, water trees that are located along the outside edge of protected area as described above.

3.7 MAINTENANCE OF EXISTING TREES

A. Trees shall be continuously and routinely inspected for distress caused by construction activities. Notify Owner’s representative at first sign of distress.

B. Maintain fence taut, stable, and secure until soil preparation and seeding activity is needed within the fenced area.

C. The Contractor shall maintain a three (3) inch cover of mulch on the tree root zone though out construction on individual trees. After initial mulch application re-apply mulch twice per year. Mulch shall be refreshed to specified depth within seven (7) calendar days of January 1 and July 1. Use erosion control net (jute mesh) as needed to secure mulch in place from potential heavy erosion adjacent to drainage.

D. Remove mulch when sodding commences within tree root zone.

E. For masses of protected trees, unmown grass should be left within fifteen (15) feet of the trunk line along the outside edge of the trees.

F. Native and existing turf grasses are to be retained and maintained, if necessary, during project construction period. If grass stops growing within tree protective fencing, of if the tree shows signs of stress such as leaf drop, sucker growth, wilting, or if tree shows signs of insects or disease, the Contractor shall notify the Owner immediately. It is the Contractor’s responsibility to maintain the health of the trees during the construction period.

G. Any Fire Ant mounds around or on top of a tree root zone of a specimen tree shall be treated immediately and the mound removed physically. Do not allow the mound to build on the tree

trunk as this will cover the tree root flare and possibly cause injury or death. Ensure that any chemical application to the Fire Ant mound is safe for application atop tree root zones. Ant mounds do not need to be treated in tree masses.

3.8 DISPOSAL

A. Haul off and legally dispose of any debris from the work of this section.

B. Dispose of debris off the Site only with permission of property owner where such debris is to be deposited and in accordance with codes and regulations of the jurisdictional authorities.

C. Burning and burying debris on the Worksite is prohibited.

3.9 CLEAN-UP

Remove and dispose of any debris, trash, protective materials, enclosures and fencing upon completion of the Work.

3.10 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

A. The trees designated for protection will be examined as part of final acceptance when all site work has reached final acceptance.

B. The Arborist shall issue a final Post Construction Tree Assessment regarding the status of the tree health for each specimen tree and for the large tree groupings. The report should identify if future care is required to maintain the health of the specimen trees. The report should identify what specific treatment the trees should receive coordinated with a time schedule to the treatment to promote tree health.

C. If grading impacts the critical root zone, the Contractor's Arborist will be required to report specifically on the impacted tree. The Arborist shall recommend tree treatment and maintenance after final acceptance.

D. Request inspection for final acceptance at least thirty (30) calendar days from project close out.

E. Receive approval from the Owner's Representative for the work of this section completed.

END OF SECTION 01 5639

SECTION 02 2623

ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT INFORMATION

1.1 INVESTIGATION

A. Asbestos Containing Materials investigations were conducted at the site, the results of which can be found in the report issued by Icon Environmental Consultatns, on January 17, 2024. ICON Project No. 23-2597.

B. A copy of the report is bound into the Project Manual.

1.2 INTERPRETATION

A. The report is bound into specifications as a convenience to the Owner and is not a part of the A/E Teams scope of work. Architect do not warrant the accuracy or extent of the report nor do they represent any knowledge or opinion to locations, procedures or regulations pertaining to the abetment of ACMs.

B. It is the Owner’s intent that the General Contractor include abetment as a part of their CSP proposal to the Owner.

END OF DOCUMENT

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
FOR ASBESTOS ABATEMENT AT

JOHN W. RUNYON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL

ORG #237, (2020 BOND PROGRAM)
10750 CLADLEROCK DRIVE
DALLAS, TX 75217

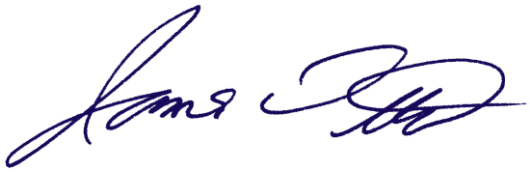
ICON Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024

Prepared for:

Dallas Independent School District, 2020 Bond Program
c/o CBRE I VANIR - Bond Program Manager
9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, TX 75231
PHN: 901-619-3088

Prepared by:

ICON ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS
245 Bevers Lane, Valley View, Texas 76272
PHN: 940-367-0410



James E. Otto, CIEC
TDSHS Licensed Individual Asbestos Consultant #10-5236, exp. 06/05/2025

PROJECT / WORK IDENTIFICATION

General: Project name is: John W. Runyon Elementary School Asbestos Abatement

The Technical Specifications was prepared by ICON project staff member James E. Otto, Texas Department of State Health Services (TDSHS) License No. #10-5236, exp. 06/05/2025, and is dated January 17, 2024. The Technical Specifications was prepared in compliance with existing State of Texas statues and regulations governing the removal and disposal of asbestos-containing materials (ACMs) in facilities accessible to the public within the State of Texas. The Technical Specifications was prepared to provide a prudent course of action for handling of ACMs in the best interests of the facility owner, building occupants, and the general public. The Texas TDSHS Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules 25 TAC, Section 296 et. seq. (effective July 2021) and this Technical Specification apply to this project.

Where compliance with two or more standards, the Technical Specifications, the TDSHS Rules, or the Federal Rules is specified, and they establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, the most stringent requirement will be enforced. Requirements that are different, but apparently equal, and uncertainties as to which quality level is more stringent, refer to the Owner's Representative or TDSHS for a decision before proceeding.

Contractor will provide standard DISD forms for contract, schedule of values, and pay requests.

Technical Specifications: This Technical Specifications (aka, Contract Documents) consists of the scope of work for the Contract, the specifications and other related requirements and conditions that have an impact on the project. Relegated requirements and conditions include, but are not necessarily limited to the following (See Table of Contents).

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Cover Page
Table of Contents
Project/Work Identification

Page

PART 1 - GENERAL CONDITIONS 1
1100 Bidding Requirements 1
1101 Pre-bid Walkthrough and Bid Submittal Deadline 1
1102 Site Investigation 1
1103 Patents/Licenses 2
1104 Discrepancies 2
1105 Modification and Withdrawal of Bids 3
1107 Licenses and Insurance Requirements 3
1108 Qualifications 4
1109 Rejection of Bids 4
1200 Definitions 5
1300 Scope of Work 16
1400 Description of Work 30
1500 Schedule of Work 32
1503 The project will be performed in the following phase(s): 32
1600 Applicable Standards and Guidelines 33
1700 Submittals and Notices 36
1800 Site Security 42
1900 Emergency Planning 43

PART 2 - MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT 44
2100 Materials 44
2200 Equipment 46
2300 Substitutions 49

PART 3 - EXECUTION 51
3100 Preparation 51
3200 Workplace Entry and Exit Procedures 59
3300 Waste Container Pass-out Procedures 61
3400 Personal Protection Requirements 62
3500 Removal Procedures 66
3700 Visual Clearance Inspections and Final Air Clearance Sampling 72
3800 Waste Disposal Procedures 75
3900 Release and/or Re-establishment of the Regulated Area 78

APPENDICES

Appendix A - Figures
Appendix B - Asbestos Result Summaries
Appendix C - Forms
Appendix D - Certifications

PART 1 - GENERAL CONDITIONS

1100 Bidding Requirements

1101 Pre-bid Walkthrough and Bid Submittal Deadline

See DISD documents.

1102 Site Investigation

1102.1 By submitting a bid, the Contractor acknowledges that he has investigated and satisfied himself as to: a) the conditions affecting the work, including, but not limited to, physical conditions of the site which may bear upon site access, handling and storage of tools and materials, access to water, electric or other utilities or otherwise affect performance of required activities; b) the character and quantity of all surfaces and subsurface materials or obstacles to be encountered in so far as this information is reasonably ascertainable from an inspection of the site, exploratory work done by the Owner or designated consultants, and information presented in specification included with this contract; c) the environmental condition, including the presence, location, and condition of asbestos-containing materials, at the site; and d) the phasing of the project. Any failure by the Contractor to acquaint himself with available information will not relieve him from the responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty or cost of successfully performing the work.

1102.2 **Under no circumstances** shall the Contractor rely on the material quantities indicated in this document as the total basis for the bid price. All quantities indicated herein are approximate and intended to alert the Contractor to the general scope of the project. Scheduled quantities refer only to asbestos-containing materials (ACMs) the contractor may expect to encounter. No increase in contract cost will be considered due to the Contractor's failure to physically verify all quantities of the ACMs specified by this document for removal.

1102.4 The Owner is not responsible for any conclusions or interpretations made by the Contractor on the basis of the information made available by the Owner.

1102.5 No bids will be accepted from any Contractor who has not inspected the job site either in person or through a qualified designated representative.

1103 Patents/Licenses

1103.1 By submitting a bid on this project, the Contractor acknowledges and accepts full responsibility for compliance with patent or licensing requirements on any equipment procedures or systems utilized on this project.

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. He shall defend all suits or claims for infringement of any patent rights and shall save the Owner/Responsible Party harmless from loss on account hereof, except that the Owner/Responsible Party shall be responsible for all such loss when a particular design process on the product of a particular manufacture or manufacturer is specified, but if the Contractor has reason to believe the design, process or product specified is an infringement of a patent, he shall be responsible for such loss unless he promptly gives such information to the Owner/Responsible Party.

1103.2 All Bidders shall show proof of Texas Abatement Contractors License and registration with the Texas Department of State Health Services (TDSHS). Such proof shall be submitted as a part of the bid package.

1104 Discrepancies

1104.1 Should a Bidder find discrepancies in the plans and/or specifications or should he be in doubt as to the meaning or intent of any part thereof, he must, no later than two days prior to the bid submittal, request clarification from the Owner or their representative. Discrepancies with regard to conflicts between the Contract Documents and applicable Federal, State, or local regulations or requirements shall be included herein. Failure to request such clarification is a waiver to any claim by the Bidder for expense made necessary by reason of later interpretation of the Contract Documents by the Owner or their representative.

1104.2 Explanations desired by a prospective Bidder regarding the specifications or other bid documents shall be requested from the Owner's Representative no later than two days prior to the bid submittal. Requests shall be directed to
ICON Environmental, 245 Bevers Lane, Valley View, Texas 76272, 940-367-0410
Attn: James E. Otto, *jotto@iconenviro.com*

1104.3 Oral explanations or instruction will not be binding. Only written addenda are binding. Any addenda resulting will be faxed to all listed holders of the Bid

document no later than one day prior to the bid submittal deadline. The Bidder shall acknowledge the receipt of all addenda.

1105 Modification and Withdrawal of Bids

1105.1 Withdrawal or modifications to bids are effective only if written notice thereof is filed prior to time and bid opening deadline. A notice of withdrawal or modifications to a bid must be signed by the Contractor or his designated representative. This provision is not applicable to change order items.

1105.2 No withdrawal or modifications shall be accepted after the time specified for opening of bids, except for change order modifications if requested by the Owner or the Owner's representative.

1106 Bond and Wage Requirements

1106.1 No bid bond is required.

1106.2 No Payment and Performance Bonds are required in base bid, however a line-item cost shall be included on the bid form for Payment and Performance Bonding.

1106.3 Liquidated damages in the amount of (See DISD documents) per day will apply for each day after the scheduled completion date until the abatement work is completed. Completion date will be determine based on number of days submitted on bid form.

1107 Licenses and Insurance Requirements

1107.1 By initiating work on this project the Contractor acknowledges and accepts full responsibility for advising his current insurance carrier(s) of the fact that he is engaging in asbestos abatement work. Contractor shall provide one copy of project specifications to his insurance carrier upon award of contract. The verification of this submittal shall be included in project submittal documents.

1107.2 All Bidders must show proof that its workers are properly trained, certified, and licensed to perform the work. Such proof will be submitted to Owner's Representative for review at least one day prior to start of work.

1107.3 In addition to the insurance requirements in the technical specifications, enclosed is DISD’s contractor construction and insurance requirements.

1108 Qualifications

1108.1 Bidders shall demonstrate as part of the bid package, prior experience on asbestos abatement projects of similar nature and scope through the submission of letters of reference from at least three previous Owners including the name, address, and telephone number of contact person (someone specifically familiar with the Contractor's work) for at least three (3) previous years of service. Include descriptions of projects, locations, and records of air monitoring data that were generated during the project.

1108.2 The apparent low bidder will be required to submit a statement, signed by an officer of the company, containing the following information:

1108.2.1 A record of any citations issued by Federal, State, or local regulatory agencies relating to asbestos abatement activity. Include projects, dates, and resolutions.

1108.2.2 A list of penalties incurred through non-compliance with asbestos abatement project specifications including liquidated damages, overruns in scheduled time limitations and resolutions.

1108.2.3 Situations in which an asbestos related contract has been terminated, including projects, dates and reasons for termination.

1108.2.4 A listing of any asbestos-related legal proceedings/claims in which the Contractor (or employees scheduled to participate in this project) has participated or is currently involved. Include descriptions of role, issuer and resolution to date.

1109 Rejection of Bids

A bid may be rejected if it is found incomplete or in non-compliance with any provisions of these specifications, or for any other reason, in Owner's sole discretion. The contract may be terminated if any information supplied by Bidder pursuant to Sections 1107 and 1108 is found to be incorrect.

1200 Definitions

General: Definitions contained in this Article are not necessarily complete, but are general to the extent that they are not defined more explicitly elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

Regulations: The term "regulations" includes laws, statutes, ordinances, rules, regulations, requirements, guidance documents, and similar guidelines and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, as well as rules, conventions and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the work, whether they are lawfully imposed by authorities having jurisdiction or not.

Furnish: The term "furnish" is used to mean "supply and deliver to the project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations."

Install: The term "install" is used to describe operations at project site including the actual "unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations."

Provide: The term "provide" means "to furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use."

Project Site: The space available to the Contractor for performance of the work, either exclusively or in conjunction with others performing other construction as part of the project. The extent of the project site will be identified at the pre-bid walk-through.

Testing Laboratory: A "testing laboratory" is an entity certified by the appropriate Federal, State and/or local agencies engaged to perform specific analysis of asbestos bulk or air samples, either at the project site, or elsewhere.

Contractor: The Contractor provides labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the scope of work described in the Contract documents.

Owner: Dallas Independent School District
c/o CBRE I VANIR Bond Program Manager
9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, Texas 75231
PHN 901-619-3088

Owner's Representative: The Owner's Representative and/or the Owner's environmental consultant or any employee of the environmental consultant who will represent the Owner during abatement and until final completion of the work. Owner's Representative will advise and consult with the Owner. The Owner's instructions to the contractor will be forwarded through the Owner's Representative.

General Superintendent: This is the Contractor's Representative at the work site. This person shall be the Competent Person required by OSHA and EPA regulations and licensed as a supervisor in Texas.

Competent Person: One who is capable of identifying existing asbestos hazards in the workplace and selecting the appropriate control strategies and corrective measures to eliminate asbestos exposure.

DEFINITIONS RELATIVE TO ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

Accredited or Accreditation: (when referring to a person or laboratory): A person or laboratory accredited in accordance with section 206 of Title II of the Toxic Substance Control Act (TSCA) and other Federal, State and local laws applicable to the work.

Abatement: An act which is intended to reduce, eliminate or encapsulate asbestos-containing materials.

Adequately Wet: To sufficiently mix or penetrate with liquid to prevent the release of particulates. If visible emissions are observed coming from asbestos-containing material, then that material has not been adequately wetted. However, the absence of visible emissions is not sufficient evidence of being adequately wet.

Airlock: A system for permitting ingress and egress with minimum air movement between a contaminated area and an uncontaminated area, typically consisting of two curtained doorways separated by distance of at least 3 feet such that one passes through one doorway into the airlock, allowing the doorway sheeting to overlap and close off the opening before proceeding through the second doorway, thereby preventing flow-through contamination.

Air Monitoring: The process of measuring the fiber content of a known volume of air collected during a specific period of time. The procedure normally utilized for asbestos follows the NIOSH Standard Analytical Method for Asbestos in Air P&CAM 239 or Method 7400. For clearance air monitoring, electron microscopy methods may be utilized for lower detectable limits and specific fiber identification.

Air Sampling Professional: The professional contracted or employed by the Owner/Responsible Party to supervise and/or conduct air monitoring and analysis schemes. This individual may also function as the Asbestos Project Manager, if qualified. Supervision of air sampling and evaluation of results should be performed by an individual who has completed an EPA approved NIOSH 582 course or equivalent course and has specialized experience in air sampling for asbestos. Other acceptable Air Sampling Professionals include Environmental Engineers, Architects, Chemists, and Environmental Scientists, or others with equivalent experience in asbestos air monitoring and asbestos abatement. This individual shall not be affiliated in any way other than through this contract with the Contractor performing the abatement work.

Amended Water: Water to which a surfactant (wetting agent) has been added to increase the ability of the liquid to penetrate ACM.

Asbestos: The asbestiform varieties of chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, anthophyllite, actinolite and tremolite. For purposes of determining respiratory and worker protection both the asbestiform and non-asbestiform varieties of the above minerals and any of these materials that have been chemically treated and/or altered shall be considered as asbestos.

Asbestos-Containing Material (ACM): Any material containing more than one percent of asbestos as determined by polarized light microscopy methods.

Asbestos-Containing Building Material (ACBM): Surfacing ACM, thermal system insulation ACM, or miscellaneous ACM that is found in or on structural members or other parts of a building.

ACM Waste: Mill tailings or any waste that contains commercial asbestos and is generated by a source subject to the provisions of 40 CFR 61. This term includes filters from control devices, friable asbestos waste material, and bags or other similar packaging contaminated with asbestos. As applied to demolition and renovations operations, this term also includes regulated asbestos-containing material waste and materials contaminated with asbestos including disposable equipment and clothing.

ACM Debris: Pieces of ACM that can be identified by color, texture, or composition, and dust, if the dust is determined by an accredited inspector to be ACM.

Authorized Person: A person authorized by Owner's Representative and General Superintendent and is required by work duties to be present in the regulated area.

Breathing Zone: A hemisphere forward of the shoulder with a radius of approximately 6 to 9 inches.

Category I Nonfriable ACM: Asbestos-containing packings, gaskets, resilient floor covering, and asphalt roofing products containing more than one percent asbestos that when dry cannot be crumbled, pulverized or reduced to powder by hand pressure.

Category II Nonfriable ACM: Any material, excluding Category I nonfriable ACM, containing more than one percent asbestos that when dry cannot be crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by hand pressure.

Class I asbestos work: Activities involving the removal of thermal system insulation (TSI) and surfacing ACM.

Class II asbestos work: Activities involving the removal of ACM which is not TSI or surfacing ACM. This includes, but is not limited to, the removal of asbestos-containing wallboard, floor tile and sheeting, roofing and siding shingles, and construction mastics.

Class III asbestos work: Repair and maintenance operations, where ACM, including thermal system insulation and surfacing material, is likely to be disturbed.

Clean Room: An uncontaminated area or room which is a part of the worker decontamination enclosure system with provisions for storage of worker's street clothes and clean protective equipment.

Critical Barrier: One or more layers of plastic sealed over all openings into a work area or any other similarly placed physical barrier sufficient to prevent airborne asbestos in a work area from migrating to an adjacent area.

Contractor: The individual and/or business with which the Building Owner/Responsible Party arranges to perform the asbestos abatement.

Curtained Doorway: A device to allow ingress and egress from one room to another while permitting minimal air movement between the rooms, typically constructed by placing two overlapping sheets of plastic over an existing or temporarily framed doorway, securing each along the top of the doorway, securing the vertical edge of one sheet along one vertical side of the doorway and securing the vertical edge of the other sheet along the opposite vertical side of the doorway. Other effective designs are permissible.

Decontamination Area: An enclosed area adjacent and connected to the regulated area and consisting of an equipment room, shower area, and clean room separated by airlocks, which is used for the decontamination of workers, materials, and equipment that are contaminated with asbestos.

Demolition: The wrecking or taking out of any load-supporting structural member and any related razing, removing, or stripping of asbestos products.

Disposal Bag: A properly labeled 6 mil thick leak-tight plastic bag used for transporting ACM waste from the regulated area to the disposal site.

Encapsulant: A material that surrounds or embeds asbestos fibers in an adhesive matrix to prevent release of fibers.

Bridging encapsulant: An encapsulant that forms a discrete layer on the surface of an in-situ asbestos matrix.

Penetrating encapsulant: An encapsulant that is absorbed by the in-situ asbestos matrix without leaving a discrete surface layer.

Removal encapsulant: A penetrating encapsulant specifically designed to minimize fiber release during removal of asbestos-containing materials rather than for in-situ encapsulation.

Enclosure: The construction of an air-tight, impermeable, permanent barrier around asbestos containing material to control the release of asbestos fibers into the air.

Equipment Decontamination Enclosure System: That portion of a decontamination enclosure system designed for controlled transfer of material and equipment into or out of the work area, typically consisting of a washroom and holding area.

Equipment Room: A contaminated area or room which is part of the worker decontamination enclosure system with provisions for storage of contaminated clothing and equipment.

Facility: Any institutional, commercial, or industrial structure, installation or building.

Facility component: Any pipe, duct, boiler, tank, reactor turbine, or furnace at or in a facility or any structural member of a facility.

Filter: A media component used in respirators or ventilation equipment to remove solid fibers and particles from the processed air.

Fixed object: A piece of equipment or furniture in the work area which cannot be removed from the work area.

Friable ACM: Material containing more than one percent asbestos that when dry can be crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by hand pressure.

Glovebag: An impervious bag (typically constructed with 6 mil polyethylene plastic) affixed around ACM (typically TSI) with attached inner gloves used for the handling of tools.

HEPA Filter: A High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filter capable of trapping and retaining 99.97% of asbestos fibers greater than 0.3 microns in diameter.

HEPA Filtration System: An air ventilation system utilizing HEPA filters and may or may not utilize a pressure differential relative to the work zone exterior.

HEPA Filter Vacuum Collection Equipment (or Vacuum Cleaner): High efficiency particulate air filtered vacuum collection equipment with a filter system capable of collecting and retaining asbestos fibers. Filters should be of 99.97% efficiency for retaining fibers of 0.3 microns or larger.

Holding Area: A chamber in the equipment decontamination enclosure located between the washroom and an uncontaminated area. The holding area comprises an airlock.

HVAC: Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning system.

Movable Object: A piece of equipment or furniture in the work area which can be removed from the work area.

Negative Pressure Respirator: A respirator in which the air pressure inside the respiratory-inlet covering is positive during exhalation in relation to the air pressure of the outside atmosphere and negative during inhalation in relation to the air pressure of the outside atmosphere.

Negative Pressure Ventilation System: A portable exhaust system equipped with HEPA filtration and capable of maintaining a constant low velocity air flow into contaminated areas from adjacent uncontaminated areas.

Owner: Dallas Independent School District
c/o CBRE I VANIR Bond Program Manager
9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, Texas 75231
PHN 901-619-3088

Outside Air: The air outside buildings and structures.

Plasticize: To cover floors and walls with plastic sheeting as herein specified.

Prior Experience: Experience required of the Contractor on asbestos projects of similar nature and scope in insure capability of performing the asbestos abatement in a satisfactory manner. Similarities shall be in areas related to material composition, project size, abatement methods required, number of employees and the engineering, work practice, and personal protection controls required.

Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL): The level at which employees must not be exposed to airborne asbestos fibers. The time weighted average (TWA) limit is 0.1 f/cc.

Protection Factor: The ratio of the ambient concentration of an airborne substance to the concentration of the substance inside the respirator at the breathing zone of the wearer. The protection factor is a measure of the degree of protection provided by a respirator to the wearer.

Regulated Area: An area established by the Contractor to demarcate areas where Class I, II, and III asbestos work is conducted, and any adjoining area where debris and waste from such asbestos work accumulate; and a work area within which airborne concentrations of asbestos, exceed or there is a reasonable possibility they may exceed the permissible exposure limit.

Regulated Asbestos-Containing Material (RACM): Regulated asbestos-containing material (RACM) means (a) Friable asbestos material. (b) Category I nonfriable ACM that has become friable. (c) Category I nonfriable ACM that will be or has been subjected to sanding, grinding, cutting, or abrading, or (d) Category II nonfriable ACM that has a high probability of becoming or has become crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by the forces expected to act on the material in the course of demolition or renovation operations regulated by 40 CFR 61.

Removal: All operations where ACM is taken out or stripped from structures or substructures and include demolition operations.

Renovation: Altering in any way one or more facility components. Operations in which load-supporting structural members are wrecked or taken out are excluded

Respirator: A device to protect the wearer from the inhalation of harmful atmospheres.

Shower room: A room between the clean room and the equipment room in the worker decontamination enclosure with hot and cold or warm running water controllable at the tap and suitably arranged for complete showering during decontamination.

Structural Member: Any load-supporting member of a facility, such as beams and load-supporting walls or any non-load-supporting walls or any non-load-supporting member, such as ceilings and non-load-supporting walls.

Surfacing material: ACM material that is sprayed, troweled-on or otherwise applied to surfaces (such as acoustical plaster on ceilings and fireproofing materials on structural members, or other materials on surfaces for acoustical, fireproofing and other purposes).

Surfactant: A chemical wetting agent added to water to improve penetration, thus reducing the quantity of water required for a given operation or area.

Thermal System Insulation (TSI) material: ACM applied to pipes, fittings, boilers, breaching, tanks, ducts or other structural components to prevent heat loss or gain.

Time Weighted Average (TWA): The average concentration of a contaminant in air during a specific time period.

Transite: Cement asbestos products, e.g., shingle, pipe, panel.
Visible Emissions: Any emissions containing particulate asbestos material that are visually detectable without the aid of instruments. This does not include condensed uncombined water vapor.

Waste Shipment Record: The shipping document (manifest), required to be originated and signed by the waste generator and used to track and substantiate the disposition of asbestos-containing waste material.

Waste Transfer Airlock: A decontamination system utilized for transferring containerized waste from inside to outside of the work area.

Wet Cleaning: The process of eliminating asbestos contamination from building surfaces and objects by using cloth, mops, or other cleaning utensils which have been dampened with amended water or diluted removal encapsulant and afterwards thoroughly decontaminated or disposed of as asbestos-contaminated waste.

Work Area: Designated rooms, spaces or areas of the project in which asbestos abatement actions are to be undertaken or which may become contaminated as a result of such abatement actions. A contained work area is a work area which has been sealed, plasticized, and equipped with a decontamination enclosure system. A non-contained work area is an isolated or controlled-access work area which has not been plasticized nor equipped with a decontamination enclosure system.

Working Day: Working day means Monday through Friday, excluding federal and state holidays from 7:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. “Loud” work shall not take place between 8:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m. If work activities are to take place after normal business hours, then the on-site security shall be notified.

Worker Decontamination Enclosure: A decontamination system consisting of a clean room, a shower room, and an equipment room separated from each other and from the work area airlocks and contained doorways. This system is used for all workers entering and exiting the work area and for equipment and waste pass out for small jobs.

Abbreviations and Names: Trade association names and titles of general standards are frequently abbreviated. The following acronyms or abbreviations as referenced in Contract Documents are defined to mean associated names. Names and addresses are subject to change, and are believed to be, but are not assured to be, accurate and up-to-date as of date of Contract Documents:

AIHA American Industrial Hygiene Association
475 Wolf Ledges Parkway
Akron, OH 44311
(216) 762-7294

ANSI American National Standards Institute
11 West 42nd Street
New York, NY 10036
(212) 642-4900

ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials
100 Bar Harbor Dr.
W. Conshohocken, PA 19428
(610) 832-9500

CFR Code of Federal Regulations
Available from Government Printing Office:
U.S. Government Printing Office
Customer Services or Public Affairs (Choose Either One)
732 N. Capital St. NW
Washington, D.C. 20401
(202) 512-0000

CS Commercial Standards of NBS
U.S. Dept. of Commerce
Government Printing Office
Hubert C. Hoover Bldg.
14th Street and Constitution Ave. NW
Washington, D.C. 20230
(202) 482-2000

DOT Department of Transportation
400 Seventh St., SW
Washington, D.C. 20590
(202) 366-4000

EPA Environmental Protection Agency
401 M. St., SW
Washington, D.C. 20460
(202) 260-2090

NIST National Institute of Standards and Technology (The Lab)
(U.S. Department of Commerce)
Bldg. 820, Rm. 282
Gaithersburg, MD 20899 - 0001
(301) 975-4016

OSHA Occupational Safety & Health Administration
(U.S. Dept. of Labor)
950 Upshur St. NW 2nd Floors
Washington, D.C. 20402
(202) 576-6339

UL Underwriters Laboratories
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062
(847) 272-8800

ICON ICON Environmental Consultants
245 Bevers Lane
Valley View, Texas 76272
940-367-0410 Phone
www.iconenviro.com

1300 Scope of Work

1301 This specification covers the abatement of exposure to asbestos hazards from building components listed in 1305.2. It is the intent of the Contract Documents to show all of the work necessary to complete the project. The Contractor shall have proper knowledge of the conditions for the project along with the Contract Documents and is responsible for verifying the quantities and locations of all work to be performed as outlined in this section. The Contractor shall include all costs in his bid to cover any multiple layers or quantities of asbestos-containing materials scheduled for removal. Failure to do so shall not relieve the Contractor of his obligation to furnish all materials, labor, and supervision necessary to carry out the provisions of the Contract. There will be an Owner's Representative at the job site throughout all phases of the work.

1301.1 Site Maintenance: The Contractor shall keep the Site clean and free from rubbish and debris resulting from it operation. Materials and equipment shall be removed from the Site when they are no longer necessary. Upon completion of the Work and before final acceptance, the Site shall be cleared of equipment, unused materials, and rubbish, then graded, to present a clean and neat appearance. The Contractor shall water surfaces of access roads and parking areas, as needed or as requested by Engineer, to prevent excessive dusting.

1301.2 Air Pollution Control: The Contractor shall not discharge smoke, duct, and other pollutants into the atmosphere that violate Laws and Regulations. Contractor shall also abate dust by cleaning, sweeping, and sprinkling with water, or other means as necessary. Site operations may create dust that in turn may create a nuisance including, but not limited to the following:

A. Prevention of surface water run-on and run-off from stockpiles.
B. Covering exposed impacted (affected) soils with plastic covering.
C. Limiting the exposure of impacted soils in the excavation.
D. Temporary cessation of operations pending more favorable environmental conditions.

1301.3 Noise Control: Noise from Contractor’s operations shall not exceed limits established by applicable Laws and Regulations.



1301.4 Traffic Control: Contractor shall control traffic as required at the Site. Control shall include barricades, lighting, and traffic detour signs, which comply with Laws and Regulations and which are acceptable to the Engineer.

1302 The Contractor will furnish all labor, supervision, materials, services, insurance, and equipment necessary for the total removal of all areas of ACMs listed in 1305.2 and ACM debris associated with those portions of the project site.

The Contractor will consult the Description of Work (1400) and the ACM listing in 1305 as a guide and will visit the site to assess the exact amounts of ACM present as well as the extent of physical difficulty involved in its complete removal.

Remove by appropriate methods, boards, furniture, shelving, and all other movable fixtures and objects prior to construction of the containment work area. However, this removal activity shall not disturb any existing ACMs unless performed inside an established containment work area.

Protection of floor and walls from contact and/or water damage is the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

1303 The Contractor shall dispose of all ACM and asbestos debris in an EPA approved landfill in a safe and approved manner in compliance with all applicable Federal, State and local statutes, laws, rules, regulations and requirements, and provides Owner with records of the same. In the event procedural questions not covered by this job specification arise, the Contractor will be guided by the overall purpose of Section 1302. Intentional or willful violations of these job specifications will be grounds for immediate termination of the contract and possible assessment of damages.

1304 The Contractor shall remove all ACM from the areas specified in Section 1305.2 and leave those areas of the site in a condition free of ACM and ACM debris.



1305 Asbestos-Containing Materials

1305.1 If, at any time during the specified scope of work, the Contractor encounters any suspect, friable ACMs which are not characterized by the original specifications as containing or not containing asbestos, or if the Contractor encounters any other material which might contain friable asbestos as a matter of common knowledge in the asbestos abatement industry and which is not characterized by the original specifications as containing or not containing friable asbestos, then the Contractor shall stop work immediately. The Contractor also shall immediately give notice to Owner's Representative, in person or by telephone, describing the nature and location of the discovery. By the end of the next business day, the Contractor shall confirm the notices in writing. Owner's Representative shall determine whether testing is necessary and shall make any test results available to the Contractor. The Contractor shall not resume work in these areas until Owner's Representative has given written notice to the Contractor to proceed in all, or specified parts, of the work as indicated, with or without change order. Where a change order is indicated, Contractor shall not proceed with respect to that part of the work until the execution of the change order.

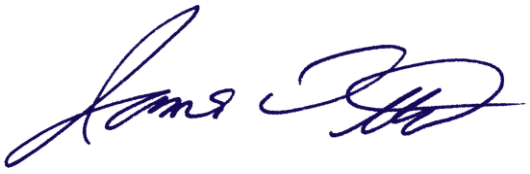
1305.2 The following asbestos-containing materials and amounts, subject to Contractor verification, are scheduled for removal at the project site:



TABLE I - ACMS TO BE REMOVED

General Location	Material & % Asbestos	Approximate Removal Quantity*
floors	12" x 12" floor tiles and black mastic includes any vinyl cove base and any ceramic cove base *(positive AHERA plan)*	~ 2,200 sf
floors	black mastic under carpet *(positive AHERA plan)*	see above
walls and floors	mortar under ceramic tile 2% Chrysotile *(positive Icon sampling)*	see above
exterior soffits	hard plaster 2% Chrysotile *(positive Icon sampling)*	~ 100 sf
basement/crawl space boiler rooms, risers, air handler rooms, above ceilings, wall cavities and etc.	pipe and fitting insulation *(positive AHERA plan)*	~ 300 lf
roof	miscellaneous roof material *(positive AHERA plan)*	~ 50,000 sf
throughout	fire doors *(positive AHERA plan)*	~ 10 units
classrooms	chalkboard, tack boards, marker boards and mirrors *(assumed positive)*	~ 10 units
exterior	waterproof membrane/mastic under brick *(assumed positive)*	TBD
crawl space make safe	existing debris removal, wet wipe & HEPA vac hard surfaces, polywrap damaged sections of pipe insulation, then add poly over soil floor *(assumed positive)*	~ 3,600 sf

Note:Quantities and locations are approximate. Other asbestos-containing materials will remain in the building. Contractor is responsible for verifying all quantities and locations expected to be impacted by renovation activities. See final Construction Documents by the architects for specific abatement locations and quantities. The Contractor shall include all costs in his bid to cover any multiple layers, locations, or quantities of asbestos-containing materials scheduled for removal. Failure to do so shall not relieve the Contractor of his obligation to furnish all materials, labor, and supervision necessary to carry out the provisions of the Contract.



1306 General Removal Procedures

The following general abatement procedures will be utilized for the project:

(1) Full Containment Removal: Construct critical and full containment barriers throughout appropriate areas. Wall barriers to consist of two (2) layers of four (4)-mil polyethylene sheeting on critical barriers and walls. Floors barriers to consist of two (2) layers of six (6)-mil polyethylene sheeting. Attach worker decontamination unit, waste pass-out chamber, and place HEPA filtration system inside containment area (see Section 3104) and other TDSHS items. Contractor shall mark the work area perimeters with caution tape and post OSHA notifications and barriers. Scaffolding erected for removal shall conform to requirements contained in OSHA 29 CFR 1926, Subpart L. The contractor will ensure that a "competent person", as defined by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.450, is present to inspect scaffolding during each day of project activity. Pass an Owner's Representative pre-abatement inspection prior to the start of removal.

Remove materials using wet methods. Items to be removed during containment include: drywall system. Areas above the grid system (above work area only) and extending the width of one ceiling tile shall be clean/wet wiped. Confirm the presence of and remove any over-spray/debris on or in ducts, electrical boxes, horizontal surfaces, pipe chases, etc. All ACM wastes generated shall be double-bagged, appropriately labeled, transported, and disposed of at a TDSHS-approved landfill. A manifest must accompany the ACM waste during transport and disposal. Copies of manifests will be provided to the owner's representative. A waste log form will be completed and attached to each manifest. An example of this waste log form is in Appendix C.

Use proper worker protective equipment. Pass an Owner's Representative visual clearance inspections. Apply lockdown encapsulant to all exposed surfaces. Pass final air clearance test (70 s/mm - TEM). Remove remaining containment barriers and dispose of as ACM waste and pass a final Owner's Representative visual clearance inspections. It will be the responsibility of the Owner to pay TDSHS fees associated with this abatement project.



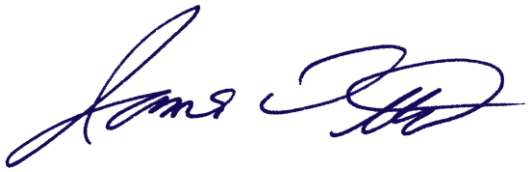
(2) Floor Tile, Mastic, and Floor Leveling Compound Removal: RFCI methods maybe used for floor tile and associated mastic removal. If during the RFCI removal operations floor tile is broken, then the RFCI procedure shall be stopped and normal abatement procedures shall be used.

Construct critical and full containment barriers throughout appropriate areas. Barriers shall consist of two (2) layers of four (4)-mil polyethylene sheeting on walls and critical barriers. Cover floors with two (2) layers of six (6)-mil polyethylene sheeting. Asbestos-containing materials being removed do not require polyethylene sheet coverings. Work areas with non-porous surfaces (portions of walls where removal is taking place/ceilings) that may be cleaned by HEPA vacuuming and wet wiping do not require polyethylene sheeting. These directives will meet or exceed TDSHS standards/recommendations/regulations.

Attach worker decontamination unit, waste pass-out chamber, and place HEPA filtration system inside containment area and other TDSHS items. Contractor shall mark the work area perimeters with caution tape and post OSHA notifications and barriers. Scaffolding erected for removal shall conform to requirements contained in OSHA 29 CFR 1926, Subpart L. The contractor will ensure that a “competent person”, as defined by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.450, is present to inspect scaffolding during each day of project activity. Pass an Owner's Representative pre-abatement inspections.

Remove materials using wet methods. Confirm the presence of and remove any over-spray/debris on or in ducts, electrical boxes, horizontal surfaces, pipe chases, etc. per the scope of work defined by the client/owner. All ACM wastes generated shall be double-bagged, appropriately labeled, transported, and disposed of at a TDSHS-approved landfill. A manifest must accompany the ACM waste during transport and disposal. Copies of manifests will be provided to the owner’s representative. A waste log form will be completed and attached to each manifest.

Use proper worker protective equipment. Pass an Owner's Representative visual clearance inspections. Apply lockdown encapsulant to all exposed surfaces. Pass final air clearance test (0.01 f/cc - PCM). Remove remaining containment barriers and dispose of as ACM waste and pass a final Owner's Representative visual clearance inspections. It will be the responsibility of the Owner to pay all TDSHS fees associated with this abatement project.



(3) Thermal System Insulation: Contractor shall remove mudded pipe fittings/pipe runs using standard glovebag removal techniques as described in Part 3 of this document. Contractor shall mark the work area perimeters with caution tape and post OSHA notifications and barriers.

Scaffolding erected for removal shall conform to requirements contained in OSHA 29 CFR 1926, Subpart L. The contractor will ensure that a "competent person", as defined by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.450, is present to inspect scaffolding during each day of project activity.

Pass an Owner's Representative visual inspection prior to starting any removal activities. Contractor shall use drop cloths, wet methods and hand removal techniques. All visible ACM debris shall be HEPA vacuumed. Used glovebag shall be placed into a disposal bag, labeled and disposed of as ACM waste. Use proper worker protection equipment.

All ACM wastes generated shall be transported and disposed of at a TDSHS-approved landfill. A manifest must accompany the ACM waste during transport and disposal. Copies of manifests will be provided to the owner's representative. Use proper worker protection equipment. Pass an Owner's Representative final clearance inspection/sampling. It will be the responsibility of the Owner to pay all TDSHS fees associated with this abatement project.

In order to provide a safe work environment in the crawlspace for construction trades, the abatement contractor will police whole crawlspace for any asbestos-containing debris. Any visible asbestos debris will be removed and the soil floor in the vicinity of the debris will be encapsulated. After crawl space debris and pipe insulation removal is completed, a 10-foot-wide layer of 6-mil poly will be place on the ground of the crawlspace in all areas of new pipe runs.

(4) Exterior Roofing, Caulking / Transite Panels: Contractor shall mark the work area perimeters with caution tape and post OSHA notifications and barriers. Scaffolding erected for removal shall conform to requirements contained in OSHA 29 CFR 1926, Subpart L. The contractor will ensure that a "competent person", as defined by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.450, is present to inspect scaffolding during each day of project activity.

Pass an Owner's Representative visual inspection prior to starting any removal activities. Contractor shall use drop cloths, wet methods and hand removal techniques. All visible ACM debris shall be HEPA vacuumed. Removed caulking / panels shall be double-bagged and appropriately labeled for property disposed.



All ACM wastes generated shall be transported and disposed of at a TDSHS-approved landfill. A manifest must accompany the ACM waste during transport and disposal. Copies of manifests will be provided to the owner's representative. Use proper worker protection equipment. Pass only an Owner's Representative final visual clearance inspection. It will be the responsibility of the Owner to pay all TDSHS fees associated with this abatement project.

(5) Spot Removal:

1. Construct containment box. Dimension box as needed for the holes to be installed.

   a. Construct it of rigid materials such as plywood, heavy enough to prevent undue flex and movement once the box is braced against the surface where work will be performed. Paint or otherwise finish interior of box to make a smooth surface for easy cleaning.
   b. Install "tabs" consisting of 1 - ½" or longer screws, extending out from box edges approximately ½." The purpose of the screws "tabs" is to minimize the surface area of contact between the containment box and the surface in which the holes are being cut.
   c. Install spiral-reinforced plastic duct from box to ducted intake of full-sized negative air machine (capacity at least 1,500 CFM. A HEPA-vacuum is NOT adequate to provide proper ventilation control.
   d. Attach a disposal bag to a hole in the bottom of the containment box. Use heavy gage wire to assist in supporting the bag. Do not rely on duct tape and / or adhesive to support bag.
   e. Use 6-mil thick disposal bags, properly labeled as asbestos waste bags.
   f. Use mechanical bracing (such as 2x4s or PVC piping) to hold box against surface in which the hole is being cut. Do not rely on personnel to hold the containment box in place during the work.
   g. Ensure that containment box has a lip of approximately 1" high across open end to keep loose debris from escaping.

2. Personnel performing asbestos-related work using shrouded drill (including clean-up) shall wear appropriate respiratory protection (minimum half-face dual cartridge respirator) and disposal suits.

3. Turn on HEPA-vacuum and carefully place containment box against surface in which hole is to be cut. Minimize disturbance to surface.

4. Install bracing to hold containment box in place.

5. Test air flow around containment box using ventilation smoke tubes. Ensure that airflow moves into containment box through open end, and through cracks at top edges of containment box at tab-surface contact.

6. Wet edges of hole to be cut. Have second person physically support the bag as the hole is cut in the surface so that loose debris does not dislodge bag from the bottom of the containment box.

7. As the debris is removed and dropped into the bag, wet it thoroughly with amended water.

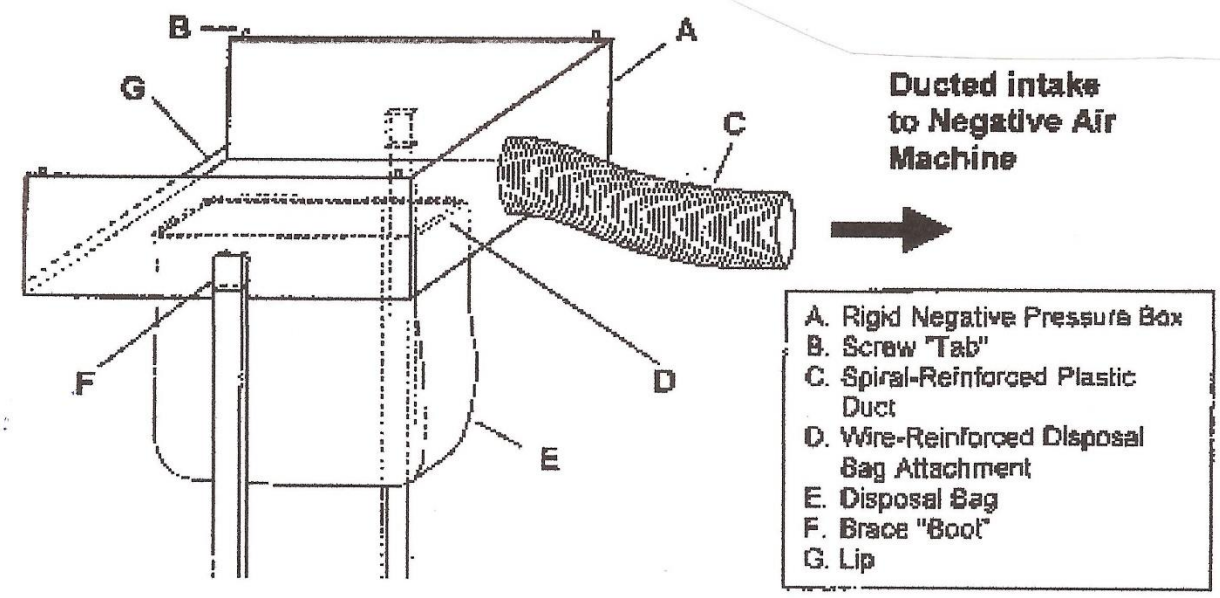
8. Remove loose debris from cut edge of surface and mist edges with clear encapsulant.

9. Before moving containment box to new location, wet wipe all surfaces inside containment box and cover bottom hole in containment box with a piece of plastic sheeting. Leave negative air machine on during containment box relocation.

10. Remove disposal bag be twisting it and taping it shut before releasing it from the box. Double bag and label all waste for disposal as asbestos-containing material.

11. All ACM wastes generated shall be double-bagged, appropriately labeled, transported, and disposed of at a TDSHS-approved landfill. A manifest must accompany the ACM waste during transport and disposal. Copies of manifests will be provided to the owner's representative.

12. Use proper worker protective equipment. Pass final visual clearance inspection. Apply lockdown encapsulant to all exposed surfaces. Pass final air clearance test (0.01 f/cc-PCM). Remove remaining containment barriers and dispose of as ACM waste. It will be the responsibility of the Owner to pay all TDSHS fees associated with this abatement project.



(5) Mini-containment Procedures

A mini-containment area and change room shall be constructed around the work area.

1. Shutdown air handling equipment and isolate the area by restricting access of unauthorized personnel.

2. Minimum personal protection during set-up and take-down will consist of a half-face respirators with HEPA filters, disposable full-body suits and safety glasses. When removing the ACM or PACM, a full-face Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR) with HEPA filters may be substituted for the half-face respirator.

3. Place appropriate warning signs on entrances to the work area to prohibit unauthorized personnel from entering the area.

4. Place or hang critical barriers over openings to the work area. The critical barriers will consist of six (6) mil poly and duct tape.

5. Moveable objects should be removed from the work area to protect them from asbestos contamination and to prevent damage to surfaces or equipment. Objects that cannot be removed will be covered with six (6) mil poly sheeting. If the objects have already been contaminated, they should be cleaned with a HEPA vacuum or wet-wiped before being removed or covered with poly.

6. Place a drop cloth of six (6) mil poly on the floor directly under the work site and assure that it extends a minimum of ten (10) feet from the work site.

7. The following material will be needed for construction:

    a. Six (6) mil poly

    b. Duct tape or spray adhesive

    c. Staples

    d. Lumber (2 x 4)

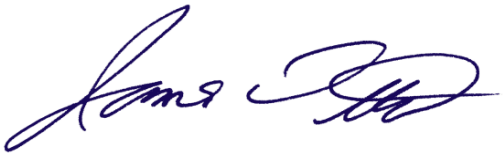
The following describes the two primary components of mini-containment areas:

Mini-Containment Work Area

a. Ceiling, floor and walls are comprised of six (6) mil poly.

b. Will contain work area and be large enough to accommodate one person.

c. Ceiling, floor and wall seams will be sealed with duct tape/spray adhesive.



d. Walls will be supported with lumber, as necessary. Attach poly with duct tape or staples.

e. Seal penetrations (conduit, pipe, staple holes, etc.) with duct tape.

Change Room

a. Ceiling, floor, and walls are comprised of six (6) mil poly.

b. Minimum size: three (3) feet square.

c. Walls will be supported with lumber, as necessary. Attach poly with duct tape or staples.

d. Ceiling, floor, and wall seams will be sealed with duct tape/spray adhesive.

e. Two (2) ingress/egress openings are made in the walls of the change room which are covered by poly flaps. One opening allows ingress/egress into the change room from outside the work area and the other allows ingress/egress from the change room to the work area.

8. Mini-containment ingress and egress are as follows:

Ingress:

a. Worker dons properly fit-tested PAPR with HEPA filters.

b. Worker dons two (2) full-body suits over street clothes.

c. Worker enters work area through change room.

Egress:

a. Once work is complete and waste is sealed in appropriately labeled bags, the worker removes the outer suit and steps into the change room.

b. In the change room, the worker will HEPA vacuum and/or wet-wipe their hands, face and any possible areas of contamination on the inner suit.

c. The worker will then remove the second (innermost) suit, place it into a waste bag and step out of the change room.



d. The respirator will then be removed, cleaned and disinfected.

(optional): Icon recommends the workers go to remote shower and wash thoroughly, especially hair, after removing respirator.

9. Prior to removal, a HEPA filtration device consisting of HEPA vacuum or a negative HEPA filter machine will be attached to the mini-containment area to cause a negative air pressure on the inside of the mini-containment area. Exhaust from such devices will be vented outside the building when possible.

10. Removal practices

a. Wet ACM with an amended water solution using an airless sprayer, Hudson sprayer, or garden hose with a fine mist nozzle frequently during abatement. Use a HEPA wet/dry vacuum to collect water accumulation on the floor poly.

b. Mist the air in the work area with an amended water solution frequently to minimize airborne fiber levels.

c. Bag all asbestos-containing waste as the work progresses to prevent material from drying or being disturbed.

d. Wire brush or scrub surfaces thoroughly where ACM or PACM was removed.

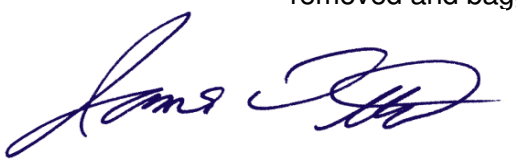
e. Water drainage, spills, or leaks occurring outside the mini-containment area shall be immediately contained using an appropriate HEPA wet-dry vacuum or other approved methods. Water collected shall be treated as asbestos-containing waste material and disposed of accordingly.

f. All water inside the mini-containment area shall be removed using HEPA vacuums. All surfaces within the containment area shall be HEPA vacuumed or wet-wiped. No visible ACM or PACM shall remain. All water or debris collected shall be treated as asbestos-containing waste.

11. Clean-up and tear-down practices

a. A minimum of one (1) coat of an appropriate encapsulant (check manufacturer's directions) shall be applied to all surfaces from which ACM or PACM was removed.

b. Once encapsulation is completed and dry, all poly covering shall be removed and bagged as asbestos-containing waste.



c. Clean tools, equipment and work area using wet wiping and HEPA vacuuming as appropriate and return tools and equipment to outside work area.

d. Decontaminate packaged waste and move waste to outside work area.

e. Workers decontaminate and remove protective clothing as described in the Egress section above.

f. Complete visual inspection of work area for presence of exposed ACM or ACM debris. Complete air monitoring work.

g. Transport waste to designated asbestos waste storage area.

h. Remove drop cloth and/or mini-enclosure.

i. Return decontaminated tools, equipment and remaining materials to the storage area.

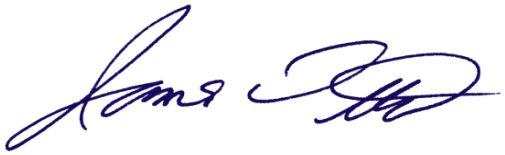
j. Remove lockout tags and restart HVAC/electrical system(s).

k. Restore normal accessibility to work area.

l. Notify APM, or designee, that work has been completed and return documents to APM.

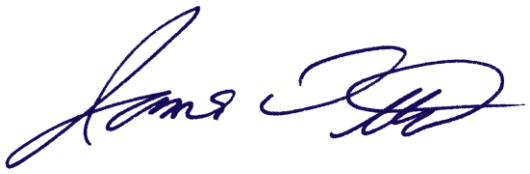
12. All ACM wastes generated shall be double-bagged, appropriately labeled, transported, and disposed of at a TDSHS-approved landfill. A manifest must accompany the ACM waste during transport and disposal. Copies of manifests will be provided to the owner's representative.

13. Use proper worker protective equipment. Pass final visual clearance inspection. Apply lockdown encapsulant to all exposed surfaces. Pass final air clearance test (0.01 f/cc- PCM). Remove remaining containment barriers and dispose of as ACM waste. It will be the responsibility of the Owner to pay all TDSHS fees associated with this abatement project.



James E. Otto, TDSHS license #10-5236 authorizes the following TDSHS licensed Air Monitoring Technicians and Project Managers to serve as the owner's on-site representative during all abatement and clearance activities. The following individuals have the authority as project manager(s) to interpret and enforce asbestos abatement-related specifications, TDSHS rules, and conduct the final visual inspection and clearance-related activities:

1. Arturo Ruiz	AMT: #706699, exp. 03/05/2025	PM: #501566, exp. 03/05/2025
2. Brian Jacobs	AMT: #706321, exp. 06/09/2025	PM: #501186, exp. 06/09/2025
3. John E. Benstowe	AMT: #706282, exp. 10/05/2025	PM: #501143, exp. 09/19/2025
4. Tyler Tate	AMT: #706946, exp. 08/22/2025	PM: #501782, exp. 08/22/2025



1400 Description of Work

1401 The work specified herein shall be the complete, licensed removal of all specified asbestos-containing materials (Section 1305.2) and associated ACM debris. The work will be performed by competent, licensed persons trained, knowledgeable and qualified in the techniques of abatement, handling and disposal of asbestos-containing and asbestos-contaminated materials and the subsequent cleaning of internal contaminated areas. These competent persons must comply with all applicable Federal, State and local regulations and are capable of and willing to perform the work of this Contract. All such persons shall be properly licensed, certified and accredited. The Contractor will be responsible for verifying the validity of each workers licensing, certification, and accreditation.

1402 The Contractor shall supply all labor, supervision, materials, services, insurance, permits and equipment necessary to carry out the work in accordance with all applicable Federal, State, and local regulations and these specifications. It will be the responsibility of the Owner to pay TDSHS fees associated with this abatement project.

1403 Contractor shall examine the site and verify that there are no known "special conditions" which must be considered by the Contractor when performing the asbestos abatement (e.g., high temperatures, equipment that must remain in operation, other toxic substances in the air, high ceilings, or contaminated surfaces or fixtures). Any failure by the Contractor to identify "special conditions" will not relieve him from the responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty or cost of successfully performing the work.

1404 Throughout the prep, removal, and subsequent cleaning operations, the Contractor is responsible for all personal air monitoring as required under OSHA regulations for the protection of his employees. Samples shall be taken to establish an 8-hour Time-Weighted Average and exposure for each type of employee operation. Sampling and analysis shall be conducted in strict accordance with applicable OSHA regulations. Air samples to be analyzed by phase contrast microscopy (PCM). Analytical results of personal air samples shall be made available to the Owner's Representative on a 24-hour maximum turnaround basis. A minimum of 25% of the workers in each type of work operation shall be monitored continuously. All air samples submitted by the Contractor for analysis shall be submitted with two filter blanks to a laboratory currently enrolled in the AIHA/NIOSH Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT) program. The microscopist responsible for asbestos analysis shall have successfully completed the NIOSH 582 course and shall be a TDSHS licensed air-monitoring technician.

1405 Baseline, area and final clearance air sampling will be conducted by the Owner's Representative. The results of this air sampling, or any final visual clearances, will be made available to the Contractor within 24 hours. Should the Contractor desire this information earlier, he shall make a written request to the Owner's Representative. Air monitoring samples will be analyzed by PCM, NIOSH Method 7400.

1406 Asbestos, Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCB), Hazardous Wastes and Debris, and Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC): Contractor recognizes hazards related to asbestos, PCB's, VOCs and hazardous waste materials, and agrees to exercise its best skill and judgment in prevention of such hazards. Contractor agrees not to dispose of any chemical waste or any other HAZARDOUS WASTE, PCB's or VOCs, including but not limited to paints, solvents, cleaning compounds, degreasers, paint, thinners, or any other associated products and their respective containers in the dumpster(s) provided. Contractor agrees to physically remove any products/containers mentioned above from the dumpster(s) should the products/containers be disposed of by Contractor's employees, agents or representatives.

If Contractor generates hazardous and chemical waste and petroleum products on the project site or staging areas off site, Contractor agrees to be responsible for the management and disposal responsibilities for such substances.

1500 Schedule of Work

1501 Upon award of the Contract, Contractor shall immediately file all necessary notifications with TDSHS.

1502 Contractor shall schedule abatement work on this project in such a manner so as to complete work by the scheduled completion date. Contractor shall have access to the work area 10 hours a day per each workday from 7:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. “Loud” work shall not take place between 8:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m. If work activities are to take place after normal business hours, then the on-site security shall be notified.

1503 The project will be performed in the following phase(s):

Completion date(s) will be determine based on number of days submitted on the bid form.

1504 Contractors shall submit with bid form total numbers of days proposed for project duration (abatement). That number of days will be used in evaluating bids and used as a source for contract duration to determine liquidated damages.

1505 Liquidated damages. Liquidated damages in the amount of (See DISD documents) per day will apply for each day after the scheduled completion date until the abatement work is completed. Completion date will be determine based on number of days submitted on bid form.

1506 Submit a schedule of total project duration with phasing and milestones noted (i.e., mobilization, work area preparation, abatement activities, work area cleaning, clearance, and demobilization).

1600 Applicable Standards and Guidelines

1601 General Requirements

1601.1 All work under this contract shall be done in strict accordance with all applicable Federal, State, and local regulations, standards and codes governing asbestos abatement (including removal, transportation and disposal), and any other trade work done in conjunction with the abatement.

1601.2 By initiating work on this project the Contractor acknowledges that he has reviewed and is knowledgeable of all current Federal, State, and local regulations (including those listed below) affecting the work on this project. The act of initiating work on this project indicates that the Contractor is willing to solely accept responsibility for the adherence to all regulations and the enforcement of all personal protection and safety requirements. The Contractor further acknowledges willingness to solely accept responsibility for the defense and resolution of any claims, filed by any party, as they may relate to the work performed by the Contractor on this project.

1601.3 Where compliance with two or more standards is specified, and they establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, the most stringent requirement will be enforced. Refer requirements that are different, but apparently equal, and uncertainties as to which quality level is more stringent to the Owner's Representative for a decision before proceeding.

1601.4 Copies of all standards, regulations, codes and other applicable documents relating to the work, including this specification and those listed in Section 1602 shall be made available by Contractor at the work site in the clean room of the worker decontamination area.

1602 Specific Regulations: Those which govern asbestos abatement work or transporting and disposal asbestos waste material including but not limited to the following:

1602.1 Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

1602.1.1 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1926.1101 - Construction Industry Standards for Asbestos.

1602.1.2 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1910.1001 - General Industry Standard for Asbestos.

1602.1.3 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1910.134 - General Industry Standard for Respiratory Protection.

1602.1.4 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1910.20 - Employee Exposure and Medical Records.

1602.1.5 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1910.1200 - Hazard Communication.

1602.1.6 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1910.146 - Confined Space.

1602.1.7 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1926.150 Subpart F - Fire Protection and Prevention.

1602.1.8 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1926, Subpart L - Scaffolds

1602.1.9 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1910.36 - Safe Emergency Egress.

1602.1.10 Title 29 Code of Federal Regulations Section 1926.62 - Lead.

1602.2 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

1602.2.1 Title 40 Code of Federal Regulations Part 61 Subparts A and M (Revised Subpart M-11/20/90) - National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants - Asbestos.

1602.3 Hazardous Materials Transportation Act (Department of Transportation).

1602.3.1 Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations parts 171-180.

1602.4 State of Texas, Department of Health, Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules 25 TAC, Sec. 295.31 through 295.73.

1603 ANSI Z88.2, latest edition (Respiratory Protection)

1604 American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists' Adopted Threshold Limit Value for Heat Stress

1605 Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction of any part of the Project is required to be familiar with industry standards applicable to that entities' construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents. Where copies of standards are needed for performance of a required construction activity, the Contractor shall obtain copies directly from the publication source. Although copies of standards needed for enforcement of requirements may be part of required submittals, the Owner's Representative reserves the right to require the Contractor to submit additional copies as necessary for enforcement of requirements.

1700 Submittals and Notices

1701 Contractor Submittals (Prior to Abatement)

1701.1 Send written notification in accordance with 40 CFR Part 61.145 of Subpart M (11/20/90 Revision) to the appropriate State administrator and/or Federal air pollution control agency responsible for the enforcement of the National Emission Standard for Asbestos and the TDSHS notification at least ten (10) working days prior to the commencement of any on-site project activity. Provide the Owner's Representative with a copy of the notice prior to beginning removal of ACMs.

1701.2 Submit proof satisfactory to the Owner's Representative that required permits have been obtained and that disposal site location and arrangements for transportation of asbestos-containing waste materials have been made. If a separate transporter (other than the Contractor) is to be employed to transport the ACM waste to the landfill, copies of the transporter's licenses and permits shall be submitted to Owner's Representative.

1701.3 Submit documentation satisfactory to the Owner's Representative that the Contractor's employees (supervisors and abatement workers) are properly licensed in TDSHS and have current refresher training.

1701.4 Submit documentation from a physician that all employees or agents who may be exposed to airborne asbestos in excess of background level have been provided with an opportunity to be medically monitored to determine whether they are physically capable of working while wearing the respirator required without suffering adverse health effects. In addition, document that personnel have received medical monitoring as required in OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101 (m). The Contractor must be aware of and provide information to the examining physician about unusual conditions in the workplace environment (i.e., high temperatures, humidity, and chemical contaminant) that may impact on the employee's ability to perform work activities.

1701.5 Submit, to the Owner's Representative, shop drawings for layout and construction of decontamination enclosure system and barriers for isolation of the work area, as appropriate. Drawings shall indicate location of individual HEPA filtration systems and their respective exhausting locations.

1701.6 Submit, to the Owner's Representative, manufacturer's certification that HEPA vacuums and HEPA filtration units and any other local exhaust ventilation equipment conform to ANSI standards.

1701.7 When rental equipment is to be used in abatement areas or to transport asbestos contaminated waste, a written notification concerning intended use of the rental equipment must be provided to the rental agency with a copy submitted to the Owner's Representative.

1701.8 Document NIOSH approvals for all respiratory protective devices utilized on-site. Include manufacturer certification of HEPA filtration capabilities for all cartridges and filters.

1701.9 Submit documentation of respirator fit-testing for all Contract or employees and agents who must enter the regulated area. This fit-testing shall be in accordance with qualitative procedures as detailed in the OSHA Asbestos Standard 29 CFR 1910.1001 Appendix C, Qualitative Fit Test Protocol or be quantitative in nature.

1701.10 Submit a schedule of total project duration with phasing and milestones noted (i.e., mobilization, work area preparation, abatement activities, work area cleaning, clearance, and demobilization).

1701.11 Submit a disposal facility listing.

1701.12 Submit a transporter listing.

1701.13 Submit a health and safety plan.

1701.14 Submit a construction quality control plan.

1701.15 Submit a Site security plan.

1701.16 Submit verification of compliance with the trench safety design, as specified within the Specifications.

1701.17 Submit all submittals required by Specification found in other sections.

Pre-Start Meeting

The successful Bidder will attend a pre-start job meeting. Attending this meeting will be representatives of the Owner/Responsible Party and the Owner/Responsible Party's agents along with testing/monitoring personnel (e.g., Asbestos Project Manager, Air Monitoring Professional, etc.), who will actually participate in the Owner's testing/monitoring program.

The Contractor and supervisory personnel, who will provide on site direction of the abatement activities, must attend.

At this meeting, the Contractor shall provide all submittals, as required. Failure to do this will result in the Contract being awarded to the next qualified Bidder. In addition, he/she shall be prepared to provide detailed information concerning:

Preparation of work area.

Personnel protective equipment including respiratory protection and protective clothing.

A listing of employees participating in the project, including delineation of experience, training, and assigned responsibilities during the project will be provided.
Decontamination procedures for personnel, work area, and equipment.

Abatement methods and procedures to be utilized.

Required air monitoring procedures.

Procedures for handling and disposing of waste materials.

Procedures for final decontamination and cleanup.

A sequence of work and performance schedule.
Procedures for dealing with heat stress.

Emergency procedures.

Items that MUST be presented at the pre-start meeting are; Performance and Payment Bonding documentation, if required, Insurance Certifications as required in, asbestos workers certifications, physicals, and required State licensure/registration for those workers who will work on this project only, logs documenting filter changes in respirators, HEPA vacuum and negative pressure ventilation units, and the proposed work schedule. Failure to have this material ready at the pre-start meeting could result in the project being awarded to the next bidder.

The Contractor shall submit the name of the project supervisor, **(THIS SUPERVISOR CANNOT BE REPLACED WITHOUT PRIOR NOTIFICATION AND APPROVAL OF THE PROJECT MANAGER).** The Project Supervisor is to be present at all times. He is to see that there is someone to maintain the containment at all times.

1702 Contractor Submittals (During Abatement Activities)

1702.1 Submit job progress reports detailing abatement activities as requested by the Owner's Representative. Include review of program with respect to previously established milestones and schedules, major problems and action taken, injury reports, equipment breakdown and all bulk material and air sampling results conducted by Contractor.

1702.2 Submit to Owner's Representative, copies of all transport manifests, waste shipment records, trip tickets and disposal receipts for all asbestos waste materials removed from the work area during the abatement process.

1702.3 Submit to Owner's Representative daily, copies of worksite entry logbooks with information on worker and visitor access.

1702.4 Submit to Owner's Representative, logs documenting filter changes on respirators, HEPA vacuums, HEPA filtration ventilation units and other engineering controls.

1702.5 Submit to Owner's Representative, results of any bulk asbestos analysis and air sampling data and compliance air monitoring results within two working days of sampling date.

1702.6 Post in the clean room area of the worker decontamination unit a list containing the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of the Contractor, the Owner, the Owner's Representative, the General Superintendent, emergency support/facilities and any other personnel who may be required to assist during abatement activities.

1703 Owner/Owner's Representative Submittals to Contractor

1703.1 During Abatement

Submit, to the Contractor, results of ambient air sampling data collected during the course of the ACM removal work. These sample results are for information only and may not be relied upon by Contractor for any purpose. They serve only to monitor Contractor performance during the project and shall not release the Contractor from any responsibility to sample for OSHA compliance or to otherwise perform Contractor's obligations hereunder.

1703.2 All ambient and final clearance visual inspection and air monitoring will be performed by the Owner's Representative; a copy of which shall be submitted to Contractor for inclusion into their permanent record.

1704 Potential Asbestos Hazard

The disturbance or dislocation of asbestos-containing materials may cause asbestos fibers to be released into the building or ambient atmosphere, thereby creating a potential health hazard to workmen, building occupants and others present at or near this site. Apprise all workers, supervisory personnel, subcontractors, consultants and others who will be at the job site of the seriousness of the hazard and of proper work procedures which must be followed.

Where in the performance of the work, workers, supervisory personnel, subcontractors, consultants or others may encounter, disturb or otherwise function in the immediate vicinity of any identified asbestos-containing materials, take appropriate continuous measures as necessary to protect all building occupants or others from the potential hazard of exposure to airborne asbestos. Such measures shall include the procedures and methods described herein, and compliance with regulations of applicable Federal, State and local agencies.

1705 Stop Work

If the Owner's Representative presents a written stop work order immediately and automatically stop all work. Do not recommence work until authorized in writing by Owner's Representative.

1706 Site Use

1706.1 General: During the entire abatement period, the Contractor shall have the use of the project site for construction operations 10 hours a day per each working day from 7:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. “Loud” work shall not take place between 8:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m. If work activities are to take place after normal business hours, then the on-site security shall be notified. Contractor must confine operations at the site to the areas permitted under the Contract. Portions of the site beyond areas on which work is indicated are not to be disturbed except as necessary to insure the safety of those present at or near the site. Conform to site rules and regulations affecting the work while engaged in project construction.

1706.2 Keep existing driveways and entrances serving the premises clear and available to the Owner and his employees at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials without prior consent from Owner.

1706.3 Do not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment. Storing of materials is to be approved by Owner in advance. Confine stockpiling of materials to the areas indicated by the Owner. If additional storage is necessary, obtain and pay for such storage off site.

1800 Site Security

1801 The regulated area is to be restricted only to authorized, licensed, trained, and protected personnel. This may include the Contractor's employees, Owner's Representative and employees of State and local inspectors and any other designated individuals. A list of authorized personnel shall be established prior to job start and posted in the clean room of the worker's decontamination area or at the entrance to the project site.

1802 Entry into the regulated area by unauthorized individuals shall be reported immediately to the Owner's Representative by the Contractor.

1803 A log book shall be maintained by the Contractor in the clean room of the worker decontamination area. Anyone who enters the regulated area must record name, affiliation, time in, and time out for each entry. In addition to the previously mentioned daily log book, each worker or each licensee on the project must keep a daily record of his or her activities (TDSHS Regulations 295.58 (d)).

1804 Access to the regulated area shall be through a single worker decontamination system. All other means of access (doors, windows, hallways, etc.) shall be blocked or locked so as to prevent entry to or exit from the work area. The only exceptions for this rule are the waste pass-out airlock which shall be sealed except during removal of containerized asbestos waste from the regulated area, and emergency exits in case of fire or accident. Emergency exits shall not be locked from the inside. However, they shall be sealed with polyethylene sheeting and tape until needed.

1805 Contractor shall control site security during ACM removal operations whenever possible, in order to protect work efforts and equipment.

The Contractor will have Owner/Responsible Party's assistance in notifying building/site occupants of impending activity and enforcement of restricted access by Owner/Responsible Party's employees.

1900 Emergency Planning

1901 Emergency planning (Health and Safety Plan) shall be developed prior to abatement initiation and agreed to by Contractor, Owner, and Owner's Representative.

1902 Emergency procedures shall be prepared by Contractor in written form and prominently posted in the clean room of the worker decontamination area.

1903 Emergency procedures shall include written notification of police, fire, and emergency medical personnel of planned abatement activities, work schedule and layout of work area, particularly barriers that may affect response capabilities.

1904 Emergency planning shall include considerations of fire, explosion, toxic atmospheres, electrical hazards, slips, trips and falls, confined spaces and heat related injury. Written procedures shall be developed and employee training in procedures shall be provided.

1905 Employees shall be trained in evacuation procedures in the event of workplace emergencies.

1905.1 For non-life-threatening situations - Employees injured or otherwise incapacitated shall decontaminate following normal procedures with assistance from fellow workers, if necessary, before exiting the work place to obtain proper medical treatment.

1906 Telephone numbers of all emergency response personnel (including environmental substance agencies) shall be prominently posted in the clean room, along with the location of the nearest telephone and the location of the nearest hospital. There must be a telephone available for emergency use at all times. If the owner does not have one on-site, the Contractor must provide one at his expense.

PART 2 - MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

2100 Materials

2101 General:

2101.1 Deliver all materials in the original packages, containers or bundles bearing the name of the manufacturer and the brand name (where applicable).

2101.2 Store all materials subject to damage off the ground, away from wet or damp surfaces and under cover sufficient enough to prevent damage or contamination. Replacement materials shall be stored outside of the work area until abatement is completed.

2101.3 Damaged, deteriorating or previously used materials shall not be used and shall be removed from the worksite and disposed of properly.

2101.4 If used, glovebags shall be minimum of six (6) mil thickness and be seamless at the bottom. All glovebags shall be removed from the original packing material and thoroughly inspected for defects around all seams and at the point of glove and accessory attachments. Any defective glovebags will be repaired or discarded.

2101.5 Polyethylene sheeting for walls and stationary objects shall be a minimum of four (4) mil thick.

2101.6 For floors and all other uses, sheeting of six (6) mil thickness shall be used in widths selected to minimize the frequency of joints.

2101.7 Method of attaching polyethylene sheet shall be agreed upon in advance by the Contractor and Owner's Representative. Method of attachment may include any combination of duct tape or other waterproof tape, furring strips, spray glue, staples, nails, screws or sheets of polyethylene and capable of sealing polyethylene to dissimilar finished or unfinished surfaces under both wet and dry conditions (including the use of amended water).

2101.8 Polyethylene sheeting utilized for worker decontamination enclosure shall be opaque white or black in color.

2101.9 Disposal bags shall be of clear, six (6) mil polyethylene, preprinted with labels per OSHA requirement 29 CFR 1910.1001 (j)(2) and 29 CFR 1926.1101 (k)(7).

2101.10 Disposal drums shall be metal or fibercoated with interlocking ring tops.

2101.11 Stick-on labels as per OSHA requirements (see 2101.9) for disposal drums.

2101.12 Warning signs as required by OSHA 29 CFR 1910.1001 (j)(1) and 29 CFR 1926.1101 (k)(6).

2102 Removal Chemicals

2102.1 Surfactant (wetting agent) shall be a 50/50 mixture of polyoxyethylene ether, or equivalent, mixed in a proportion of one (1) fluid ounce of five (5) gallons of water or as specified by manufacturer. (An equivalent surfactant shall be understood to mean a material with a surface tension of 29 dynes/cm as tested in its properly mixed concentration, using ASTM method D1331-56- "Surface and Interfacial Tension of Solutions of Surface-Active Agents.") Where work area temperature may cause freezing of the amended water solution, the addition of ethylene glycol in amounts sufficient to prevent freezing is permitted.

2102.2 Chemical Remover shall be suitable to aid in the removal of ACM with prior approval of Owner. THE CHEMICAL MUST NOT BE SOLVENT-BASED AND NOT BE FLAMMABLE.

2102.3 Removal, Penetrating and Bridging Encapsulants shall be suitable to aid in removal of ACM. The encapsulants shall act as its own solvent and be capable of binding and encapsulating individual asbestos fibers.

2103 Lockdown

2103.1 Encapsulation lockdown materials shall be bridging type. ENCAPSULANTS SHOULD NOT BE SOLVENT-BASED OR UTILIZE A VEHICLE (the liquid in which the solid parts of the encapsulant are suspended) **consisting of hydrocarbons and shall not be flammable**. Encapsulant must be color tinted so that its application can be easily verified.

2200 Equipment

2201 General:

2201.1 A sufficient quantity of HEPA filtration units equipped with multi-stage HEPA filtration and operated in accordance with ANSI standards (local exhaust ventilation requirements) and EPA guidance document EPA 560/5-43-002 Guidance for Controlling Friable Asbestos - Containing Materials in Buildings Appendix F. Recommended Specifications and Operating Procedures for the Use of Negative Pressure Systems for Asbestos Abatement shall be utilized so as to provide at least one workplace air change every fifteen (15) minutes. If air-supplied respirators are utilized, estimate the volume of supplied air, and add to workplace air volume when calculating ventilation requirements.

To calculate total air flow requirement:

Total cu. ft. of work area divided by 15 minutes = total cu. ft./min.
To calculate the number of units needed for the abatement: Number of units needed = (total cu. ft./min.) divided by (capacity of unit in cu. ft./min.)

2201.1.1 Each HEPA filtration machine must have a minimum of 1,800 to 2,000 cfm capacity.

2201.1.2 Each HEPA filtration machine which is utilized on the project shall be tested/certified prior to the start of work. This test is intended to ensure that air does not bypass or leak around the HEPA filter assembly within the HEPA filtration machine.

2201.1.3 Each HEPA filtration machine shall have a backdraft damper installed on the discharge of the machine. Dampers shall be properly fitted to the equipment utilizing a 20-gauge sheet metal transition fitting or poly sheeting.

2201.2 Type "C" air-supplied respirators in positive pressure or pressure demand mode with full face pieces and HEPA filtered disconnect protection have traditionally been recommended by the EPA for all full shift abatement work until the successful completion of final clearance air monitoring. However, powered air purifying respirators equipped with HEPA filters and full face-pieces with highest NIOSH assigned protection factor may be used if the air fiber level in the regulated area does not exceed 0.5 f/cc during removal work. A sufficient supply of charged replacement batteries, HEPA filters and a flow test meter shall be available in the clean room for use with powered air purifying respirators.

Spectacle kits and eyeglasses must be provided by the Contractor for employees who wear glasses and who must wear full face-piece respirators. Respirators shall be provided by the Contractor that have been tested and approved by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health for use in asbestos contaminated atmospheres.

2201.3 Compressed air systems, if used, shall be designed to provide air volumes and pressures to accommodate respirator manufacturer's specifications. The compressed air systems shall have a receiver of adequate capacity to allow escape of all respirator wearers from contaminated areas in the event of compressor failure. Compressors must meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.134 (d). Compressors must have an observable in-line carbon monoxide monitor. Documentation of adequacy of compressed air systems/respiratory protection system must be retained on site. This documentation will include a list of compatible components with the maximum number of and type of respirators that may be used as described in Compressed Gas Association Specifications G-7.1. The Contractor is responsible for having a type "C" System at their disposal in case it is required.

2201.4 Full body disposable protective clothing, including head, body and foot coverings (unless using reusable/cleanable footwear) consisting of material impenetrable by asbestos fibers (Tyvek or equivalent) authorized visitors in sizes adequate to accommodate movement without tearing.

2201.5 Additional safety equipment (e.g., hard hats meeting the requirements of ANSI Standard Z87.1-1981, eye protection meeting the requirements of ANSI Standard Z87.1-1979, safety shoes meeting the requirements of ANSI Standard Z41.1-1967, disposable PVC gloves), as necessary, shall be provided to all workers and authorized visitors.

2201.6 Non-skid footwear shall be provided to all abatement workers. Disposable clothing shall be adequately sealed to the footwear to prevent body contamination.

2201.7 If launderable clothing is to be worn underneath disposable protective clothing, it shall be provided by the Contractor to all abatement workers. (It is recommended that launderable clothing be a unique, specific color to enable it to be distinguished from general purpose blue, gray or black coveralls which are commonly worn.) Laundering must occur in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.1001 (h)(3) and 29 CFR 1926.1101 (i)(2). However, it is preferable that the following procedures be utilized:

2201.7.1 Launders must be trained in proper techniques for handling asbestos contaminated clothing and provided with personal protective equipment consisting of appropriate respirators and disposable clothing for use when needed. The work must be done so as to prevent the release of airborne fibers in excess of the PEL.

2201.7.2 Machines used for laundering asbestos contaminated clothing shall be isolated and restricted for such use.

2201.7.3 Washers shall be equipped with filters to remove asbestos fibers from discharged water (see Section 3102.7).

2201.7.4 Dryers shall be isolated and restricted for use with asbestos contaminated fabrics and have HEPA filtered exhaust.

2201.7.5 Machine maintenance shall be performed by protected individuals (as per 2201.7.1).

2201.8 A sufficient supply of disposable mops, rags and sponges for regulated area decontamination shall be available.

2202 Removal Equipment

2202.1 A sufficient supply of scaffolds, ladders, lifts and hand tools (e.g., scrapers, wire cutters, brushes, utility knives, wire saws, etc.) shall be provided as needed and shall be erected or set-up and maintained in a safe manner.

2202.2 Sprayers with pumps capable of providing 500 pounds per square inch (psi) at the nozzle tip at a flow rate of two gallons per minute for spraying amended water.

2202.3 Rubber or plastic dustpans, shovels, and squeegees shall be provided for cleanup.

2202.4 Brushes utilized for removing loose asbestos containing material shall have nylon or fiber bristles, not metal.

2202.5 A sufficient supply of HEPA filtered vacuum systems shall be available during ACM removal and cleanup. If an outside vacuum system such as a "Guzzler" is used, a full containment enclosure with negative air pressure will be required around the system so as to prevent possible contamination to the outside ambient air.

2300 Substitutions

2301 Pre-approval Required:

2301.1 The Contract is based on the materials, equipment, and methods described in the Contract Documents.

2301.2 The Owner's Representative will consider proposals for substitutions of materials, equipment and methods only when such proposals are accompanied by full and complete technical data and all other information required by the Owner's Representative to evaluate the proposed substitution. All substitutions must comply with applicable Federal, State and local laws.

2301.3 Do not substitute materials, equipment or methods unless such substitution has been specifically approved for this work by the Owner's Representative.

2302 "Or Equal"

2302.1 Where the phrase "or equal" or "or equal as approved by the Owner" occurs in the Contract Document, do not assume that materials, equipment or methods will be approved by the Owner's Representative unless the item has been specifically approved for this work by the Owner's Representative.

2302.2 The decision of the Owner or Owner's Representative shall be final.

2303 Separate Substitute Bids:

Bidders may, if they wish, submit completely separate bids using materials and methods other than those described in the Contract Documents, provided that all substitutions are clearly identified and described, and that the Bid in all other respects is in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents.

2304 Availability of Specified Items

2304.1 Verify prior to bidding that all specified items will be available in time for installation during orderly and timely progress of the work.

2304.2 In the event that specified items will not be available, notify the Owner prior to receipt of bids.

2304.3 Costs of delays because of non-availability of specified items, when such delays could have been avoided by the Contractor, will be back-charged as necessary and shall not be borne by the Owner or Owner's Representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3100 Preparation

3101 Work Area - General Requirements

3101.1 This section applies to the construction of a Negative Pressure Enclosure (NPE).

3101.2 Post warning signs and warning tape meeting the requirements of OSHA 29 CFR 1910.1001 (j)(1) and 29 CFR 1926.1101 (k)(6) to demarcate the regulated area or other approaches where airborne fiber concentrations may be reasonably expected to exceed ambient background levels. Signs and warning tape shall be posted at a distance sufficiently far enough away from the regulated area to permit an employee or others to read the sign and take the necessary protective measures to avoid exposure. Exterior doors accessing the regulated area must be locked and posted on the outside with warning signs.

3101.3 Shut down and lock out electric power to the regulated area. Make provisions to draw temporary power and lighting from outside the abatement area. Insure safe installation (including ground faulting) of temporary power sources and equipment by compliance with all applicable electrical code requirements and OSHA requirements for temporary electrical systems. All costs for electric shall be paid by the Owner.

3101.4 The Owner will provide water at owner's expense for abatement purposes. The Contractor will provide power (via temp-poles/panels) at contractor's expense for abatement purposes. The Contractor should connect to existing systems where possible.

3101.5 Preclean all movable objects within the regulated area using a HEPA filtered vacuum and/or wet cleaning methods as appropriate. After cleaning, these objects shall be removed from the work area and carefully stored or disposed of in compliance with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws.

Pre-clean all surfaces in the work area using HEPA filtered vacuums and/or wet cleaning methods as appropriate. Do not use any methods that would raise dust, such as, dry sweeping or vacuuming with equipment not equipped with HEPA filters. Do not disturb asbestos-containing materials during the pre-cleaning phase.

3101.5.1 Pre-clean all fixed objects in the work area using HEPA filtered vacuum and/or wet cleaning techniques as appropriate. Careful attention must be paid to machinery behind grills or gratings where access may be difficult. After pre-cleaning, enclose fixed objects in two (2) layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting and seal securely in place with tape.

3101.6 Seal off all windows, doorways, corridor entrances, drains, ducts, grates, diffusers, skylights and any other openings leading into, out of, or through the regulated area from areas outside of the regulated area with two (2) layers of 6 mil polyethylene sheeting and duct tape/spray adhesive (critical barrier).

3101.6.1 Shut down and lock out HVAC system in the regulated work area. The Owner will provide assistance with the shut down procedures. For those openings in the regulated area which are part of the heating, venting, and air conditioning (HVAC) system, one additional layer of 6 mil polyethylene sheeting shall be applied to those areas.

3101.7 Floor sheeting in the full containment area shall consist of two layers of 6 mil polyethylene plastic and extend at least twelve (12) inches above the floor on walls.

3101.7.1 Floor sheeting shall be installed first and extend up the wall. Wall sheeting shall be placed as close to the ceiling as possible and extend down to overlap the floor sheeting and taped into place.

3101.7.2 Plastic shall be sized to minimize seams. If the floor area necessitates seams, those on successive layers of sheeting shall be staggered to reduce the potential for water to penetrate to the flooring material. A distance of at least six (6) feet between seams is sufficient. Do not locate any seams at wall/floor joints.

3101.7.3 Floor sheeting shall extend at least twelve (12) inches up the sidewalls of the decontamination unit. Floors inside the decontamination chamber shall be covered with two layers of 6 mil polyethylene sheeting.

3101.7.4 Sheeting shall be installed in a fashion so as to prevent slippage between successive layers of material. (Vinyl sheeting may be used for improved traction on floors.)

3101.8 Cover walls in the regulated area with polyethylene sheeting. Walls that are non-porous and will not be damaged by water, surfactant or encapsulant do not necessarily need protection. They can be decontaminated following ACM removal using HEPA vacuums and wet cleaning techniques. Walls with mortar joints (e.g., tile) or drywall are considered porous. In addition, openings through these walls to uncontaminated areas of the building must be sealed as described previously.

3010.8.1 Wall sheeting shall consist of two (2) layers of 4-mil polyethylene sheeting.

3101.8.2 Wall sheeting shall be secured adequately to prevent it from falling away from the walls. This will require additional support/attachment when HEPA filtration systems are utilized.

3102 Worker Decontamination Area

3102.1 The Worker Decontamination Area shall be provided at locations as close as practically possible to the regulated area. One system at a single location for each contained work area is preferred. The system may consist of existing rooms or areas outside of the work area, if the layout is appropriate, that can be enclosed in plastic sheeting and are accessible from the work area. When this situation does not exist, enclosure systems may be constructed out of metal, wood or plastic support as appropriate.

3102.2 Plans for construction, including materials, shall be submitted as shop drawings and approved, in writing, by the Owner's Representative prior to work initiation. Such approval shall not release or relieve Contractor from its obligation to perform the work in accordance with the Contract documents or the terms thereof. Worker decontamination enclosure systems constructed at the worksite shall utilize 6 mil opaque black or white polyethylene sheeting or other acceptable materials for privacy. Detailed descriptions of portable, pre-fabricated units, if used, must be submitted for the Owner's Representative's approval. Plans must include a floor plan in relation to the abatement areas with dimensions, materials, size, thickness, plumbing and electrical utilities and waste pass out and storage areas.

3102.3 The worker decontamination enclosure shall consist of, at least, a clean room, a shower room and an equipment room, each separated from each other and from the work area by airlocks.

3102.4 Entry to and exit from all airlocks and decontamination enclosure system chambers shall be through curtained doorways consisting of three (3) sheets of overlapping polyethylene sheeting. One (1) sheet (#1) shall be secured at the top and left sides, the center sheet (#2) at the top and right side, and the third sheet (#3) secured to the top and left sides. The sheets shall have weights attached to the bottom to insure that they hang straight and maintain a seal over the doorway when not in use. Doorway designs, providing equivalent protection and acceptable to the Owner's Representative may be utilized.

3102.5 Access between any two (2) rooms in the decontamination enclosure system shall be through an airlock with at least three (3) feet separating each curtained doorway. Pathways into (from clean to contaminated) and out from (contaminated to clean) the work area shall be clearly designated.

3102.6 Clean room shall be sized to adequately accommodate the work crew. Benches shall be provided as well as hooks for hanging up street clothes (lockers may be provided for valuables, however, workers may be required to secure valuables in their cars). Shelves for storing respirators shall also be provided in this area. Clean work clothes (if required under disposable clothing), clean disposable clothing, replacement filters for respirators, towels and other necessary items shall be provided in adequate supply in the clean room. A location for postings shall also be used to permit access into the clean room from outside the work area. Lighting, heat and electricity shall be provided, as necessary, for comfort. This space shall not be used for storage of tools, equipment or materials, (except as specifically designated) or as office space.

3102.7 Shower room shall contain one shower head per every five (5) workers in containment or more as necessary to adequately accommodate workers. Each shower head shall be supplied with hot and cold water adjustable at the tap. The shower enclosure shall be constructed and available at all times. Shower water shall be drained, collected and filtered through a system with at least 0.5-to-1.0-micron particle size collection capability.

(Notice: A system containing a series of several filters with progressively smaller pore sizes is recommended to avoid rapid clogging of filtration system by large particles).

3102.8 No asbestos contaminated water may be allowed to evaporate or leak into non-work areas. All filtered water must be disposed of in a sanitary sewer. This water must not be allowed to go to storm drains, or run off onto adjacent soil or paved surfaces.

3102.9 The equipment room shall be suited for storage of equipment and tools at the end of a shift after they have been decontaminated using HEPA filter vacuum and/or wet cleaning techniques as appropriate. Replacement filters (in sealed containers until used) for HEPA vacuums and HEPA filtration ventilation equipment, extra tools, containers of surfactant and other materials and equipment that may be required during the abatement may also be stored here. A pool or equivalent filled with water shall be located in the work area just outside the equipment room for workers to clean off foot coverings after leaving the work area and prevent excessive contamination of the worker decontamination enclosure system. A drum lined with a labeled six (6) mil polyethylene bag for collection of disposable clothing may be located in this room. Contaminated footwear (e.g., rubber boots, other reusable footwear) shall be stored in this area for reuse the following work day

3103 Waste Container Pass-Out Airlock

3103.1 The waste container pass-out airlock shall be attached to the abatement containment barriers at a location near the waste disposal transport container.

3103.2 This airlock system shall consist of an airlock, a container staging area, and another airlock with access to the abatement work area.

3103.3 The waste container pass-out airlock shall be constructed in a similar fashion to the worker decontamination enclosure system using similar materials and airlock and curtain doorway designs.

3103.4 This airlock system **shall not** be used to enter or exit the worksite.

3104 Maintenance of the Negative Pressure Enclosure

3104.1 Following completion of the construction of all polyethylene barriers and decontamination system enclosures, allow settling to insure that barriers will remain intact and secured to walls and fixtures before beginning actual abatement activities.

3104.2 The NPE shall be inspected prior to beginning removal work and then be inspected at least twice daily: prior to the start of each day's abatement activities and following the completion of the day's abatement activities. Document inspections and observations on separate sheet or in the daily project log.

3104.3 Use smoke tubes to test and inspect the NPE.

3104.4 Damage and defects in the NPE are to be repaired immediately upon discovery.

3104.5 At any time during the abatement activities, if visible material is observed outside of the work area or if damage occurs to the NPE, work shall immediately stop, repairs be made to barriers, and debris/residue cleaned up using appropriate HEPA vacuuming and wet mopping procedures.

3104.6 If air samples collected outside of the regulated area during abatement activities indicate airborne fiber concentrations greater than 0.01 f/cc or pre-measured background levels (whichever is lower), work shall immediately stop for inspection and repair of the NPE. Clean-up of surfaces outside of the work area using HEPA vacuum or wet cleaning techniques may be necessary.

3104.7 Install and initiate operation of HEPA filtration equipment as needed to provide one air change in the work area every fifteen (15) minutes (see Section 2201.1). Openings made in the enclosure system to accommodate these units shall be made air-tight with tape, spray adhesive, and/or caulking as needed. If more than one (1) unit is installed, they should be turned on one at a time, checking the integrity of wall barriers for secure attachment and need for additional reinforcement. Insure that adequate power supply is available to satisfy the requirements of the ventilating units, air sampling pumps, and other equipment. HEPA filtration units shall be exhausted to the outside of the building whenever feasible. They shall not be exhausted into occupied areas of the building. Twelve (12) inch extension ducting shall be used to reach from the work area to the exhaust area. Contractor shall insure that HEPA filters are changed regularly, filters are not obstructed or damaged and that the exhaust ducting does not release fibers into uncontaminated building areas.

3104.8 A minimum of -0.02 column inches of water pressure differential, relative to outside pressure, shall be maintained within the NPE as evidenced by manometric measurements.

3104.9 The NPE shall be kept under negative pressure throughout the period of its use.

3104.10 Monitoring of airborne fiber concentrations shall be performed in areas adjoining but outside of the NPE. This air monitoring is intended to demonstrate the integrity of the enclosure, worker decontamination area, and HEPA filtration systems. The area air monitoring will be performed by Owner's Representative.

3104.10.1 The area air monitoring will be performed at areas leading into or out of the NPE (clean room, waste pass-out chamber) and within 20 feet from exhaust ports of the HEPA filtration machines.

3104.10.2 The air samples will be collected at flow rates between 1 liter per minute to 10 liters per minute with a minimum total air volume of 1,250 liters.

3104.10.3 The air sampling procedures will be similar to those described in Section 3700 (cassette size, sampling techniques).

3104.10.4 Air sample cassettes collected for area monitoring shall be analyzed by PCM methods on a 24-hour turnaround at a laboratory licensed by the TDSHS.

3105 Emergency Exits

Clearly identify and maintain emergency and fire exits from the work area. Emergency exits shall be established and clearly marked with duct tape arrows or other effective designations to permit easy visibility from anywhere within the work area. They shall be secured to prevent access from uncontaminated areas and still permit emergency exiting. These exits shall be properly sealed with polyethylene sheeting which can be cut to permit egress if needed. These exits may be the worker decontamination enclosure, the waste pass-out airlock and/or other alternative exits satisfactory to fire officials.

3106 Removal of Fixtures

Clean, enclose in polyethylene and remove the ceiling mounted objects such as lights and other items that may interfere with the abatement process and where not previously cleaned and sealed off. In the case of fixtures which will not interfere with timely abatement progress if left in place, clean and enclose such fixtures during work preparation activities. Utilize localized spraying of amended water and/or HEPA vacuums to reduce fiber dispersal during the removal of these fixtures.

3107 Commencement of work shall not occur until:

3107.1 The NPE has been constructed and inspected for breaches and smoke-tested for leaks.

3107.2 HEPA filtration ventilation systems are functioning adequately.

3107.3 Electrical circuits in the NPE are deactivated unless equipped with ground-fault circuit interrupts.

3107.4 All pre-abatement submissions, notifications, postings, permits, and abatement drawings have been provided and are satisfactory to the Owner's Representative (see Section 1701).

3107.5 All equipment for abatement, clean-up and disposal are on hand and proven to be in operating order.

3107.6 All worker training (and certification) is completed and evidence thereof has been provided to Owner's Representative.

3107.7 Contractor receives written permission from the Owner or Owner's Representative to commence abatement.

3200 Workplace Entry and Exit Procedures

3201 General Requirements

3201.1 All workers and authorized personnel shall enter the work area through the worker decontamination area (see Section 3102).

3201.2 All personnel who enter the regulated area must sign the entry log, located in the clean room, upon entry and exit.

3201.3 All personnel, before entering the regulated area, shall read and be familiar with all posted regulations, personal protection requirements (including workplace entry and exit procedures) and emergency procedures. A sign-off sheet shall be used to acknowledge that these have been reviewed and understood by all personnel prior to entry.

3202 Worker Protection Procedures During Entry and Exit

3202.1 All personnel shall proceed first to the clean room, remove all street clothes and appropriately don respiratory protection (as deemed adequate for the job conditions) and launderable and/or disposable coveralls, head covering and foot covering. Hard hats, eye protection and gloves shall also be utilized, if required. Clean respirators and protective clothing shall be provided and utilized by each person for each separate entry into the work area.

3202.2 Personnel wearing designated personal protective equipment shall proceed from the clean room through the shower room and equipment room to the regulated area.

3202.3 Before leaving the regulated area, all personnel shall remove gross contamination from the outside of respirators and protective clothing by brushing and/or wet wiping procedures. (Small HEPA vacuums with brush attachments may be utilized for this purpose, however, larger machines may tear the suits). Each person shall clean bottoms of protective footwear in the walk-off pan using brushes or other appropriate equipment just prior to entering the equipment room.

3202.4 Personnel shall proceed to equipment room where they remove all protective equipment except respirators. Deposit disposable (or launderable) clothing into appropriately labeled impermeable containers for disposal (or laundering).

3202.5 Reusable, contaminated footwear shall be stored in the equipment room when not in use in the work area. Upon completion of abatement, it shall be disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste. Rubber boots, if used, may be decontaminated at the completion of the abatement for reuse.

3202.6 Still wearing respirators, personnel shall proceed to the shower area, clean the outside of the respirators and the exposed face area under running water prior to removal of respirator and shower and shampoo to remove residue asbestos contamination. Various types of respirators will require slight modification of these procedures. An airline respirator with HEPA filtered disconnect protection may be disconnected in the equipment room and worn into the shower. A powered air-purifying respirator face-piece will have to be disconnected from the filter-power pack assembly which is not waterproof, upon entering the shower. Cartridges must be changed for each new entry into the regulated area.

3202.7 After showering and drying off, proceed to the clean room and don clean disposable (and/or launderable) clothing if there will be later re-entry into the regulated area or street clothes if it is the end of the work shift.

3203 These procedures shall be posted in the clean room and equipment room.

3300 Waste Container Pass-out Procedures

3301 Asbestos contaminated waste that has been containerized shall be transported out of the work area through the waste container pass-out airlock (or through the worker decontamination enclosure if a separate airlock has not been constructed).

3302 Waste pass-out procedures shall utilize two (2) teams of workers, an "inside" team and an "outside" team.

3303 The inside team wearing appropriate protective clothing and respirators for inside the regulated area shall clean the outside, including bottom, of properly labeled, impermeable containers (bags, drums, or wrapped components) using HEPA vacuum and wet wiping techniques. The cleaned containers shall then be placed into the waste container pass-out airlock. No worker from the inside team shall further exit the regulated area through this airlock.

3304 The outside team, wearing a different color protective clothing and appropriately assigned respirators, shall enter the airlock from outside the regulated area, enclose the ACM waste containers into another clean, labeled, six (6) mil polyethylene disposal bag and remove the bags from the airlock to the outside. No worker from the outside team shall enter any further into the regulated area through this airlock.

3305 The double-wrapped disposal bags are then loaded into the ACM waste transport trailer.

3306 The exit from this airlock shall be secured to prevent unauthorized entry.

3400 Personal Protection Requirements

3401 General

3401.1 The Contractor, by initiating work on this project acknowledges that he alone is responsible for providing for and enforcing the personal protection requirements on this project.

3401.2 The air samples shall be analyzed by PCM methods on a 24-hour laboratory turnaround. A laboratory performing the analysis must be accredited by the AIHA laboratory accreditation program. A mobile laboratory performing the analysis, if used, must be analyzed by a person licensed by the TDSHS.

3401.3 The personnel air sampling shall be performed at rates of 0.5 to 2.5 liters per minute with a total air volume between 25 liters to 2,400 liters of air sampled during the work process.

3402 Training

3402.1 Prior to commencement of abatement activities all personnel who will be required to enter the work area or handle containerized asbestos containing materials must have received adequate training, in accordance with this document and all applicable regulations.

3402.2 Special on site training on equipment and procedures unique to this job site shall be performed as required.

3402.3 Training in emergency response and evacuation procedures shall be performed as required.

3403 Respiratory Protection

3403.1 All respiratory protection shall be provided to workers in accordance with the submitted written respiratory protection program, which includes all items in OSHA 29 CFR 1910.134 (a) (1-11). This program shall be posted in the clean room of the worker decontamination enclosure system.

3403.2 Workers shall be provided with personally issued, individually identified (marked with waterproof designations) respirators. Where not in violation of NIOSH and OSHA requirements, the contractor shall provide, as a minimum, the following respirator protection for each phase of operation:

Precleaning/Wet wiping of area: NSHA/NIOSH half-face dual cartridge respirators equipped with HEPA cartridges.

Plastic Installation: NSHA/NIOSH half-face dual cartridge respirators equipped with HEPA cartridges.

Asbestos Removal: **Up to 0.05 f/cc** NSHA/NIOSH half-faced dual cartridge respirators equipped with HEPA cartridges, and organic vapor cartridge whenever solvents are used.

Asbestos Removal: **Above 0.05 f/cc** NSHA/NIOSH full-faced powered air purifying respirators equipped with HEPA cartridges and organic vapor cartridges whenever solvents are used.

Asbestos Removal: **Above 0.5 f/cc** NSHA/NIOSH Type "C," grade "D" air supplied respirators.

Plastic removal: NSHA/NIOSH half-face dual cartridge respirators equipped with HEPA cartridges.

Loading Waste Material (outside work area): NSHA/NIOSH half-face dual cartridge respirators equipped with HEPA cartridges.

Unloading Bags at Landfill: NSHA/NIOSH half-face dual cartridge respirators equipped with HEPA cartridges.

Implementation Suggestions: The use of engineering controls such as HEPA filtration ventilation units and HEPA vacuums and good work practices such as the wetting of ACM prior to abatement, removal in small sections, use of glove bags and proper clean-up and containerization all help to reduce airborne fiber levels in the work area. Additionally, air movement should be directed away from workers in the NPE during removal and toward a HEPA filtration device. A property designed air monitoring program, implemented by a qualified air sampling professional and analytical laboratory, may support the use of respiratory protective devices that provide a lower factor of protection to the workers than air supplied respirators, for some abatement activities. Safety problems associated

with the use of airline systems and time and financial constraints may be reduced through the use of alternative types of respiratory protection. It is imperative, however, that adequate air monitoring of fiber levels and a well-designed respiratory protection program (in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134) be implemented. Basic points of the respirator program include: proper selection of respirator type and size, training of personnel in the proper inspection, donning, cleaning and maintenance procedures for the respirator selected including their use limitations, and a good filtering and fit testing program to provide proper protection. Single-use disposable respirators are not recommended for use during any asbestos abatement activities. Negative-pressure dual cartridge respirators shall be equipped with high efficiency filters and exhalation and inhalation valves to permit the performance of positive and HEPA filtration fit checks.

3403.3 Fit Testing

3403.3.1 Workers must perform positive and negative pressure fit checks each time a respirator is put on, whenever the respirator design so permits. Powered air-purifying respirators shall be tested for adequate flow as specified by the manufacturer.

3403.3.2 Workers shall be given a qualitative fit test in accordance with procedures detailed in the OSHA Asbestos Construction Standard (29 CFR 1926.1101, Appendix C) for all respirators to be used on this abatement project. An appropriately administrated quantitative fit test may be substituted for qualitative fit test.

3403.3.3 Documentation of adequate respirator fit must be provided to the Owner's Representative.

3403.4 No one wearing a beard shall be permitted to don a respirator and enter the work area.

3403.5 Additional respirators (minimum of 2 of each type) and training on their donning and use must be available at the work site for authorized visitors who may be required to enter the regulated area.

3404 Protective Clothing

3404.1 Disposable clothing including head foot and full body protection shall be provided by the Contractor in sufficient quantities and adequate sizes for all workers and authorized visitors.

3404.2 Launderable clothing, if used, shall be provided by the Contractor in sufficient quantities and adequate sizes for all workers and authorized visitors.

3404.3 Protective eyewear, gloves, rubber boots and/or other footwear shall be provided by the Contractor as required for workers and authorized visitors. Safety shoes may be required for some activities.

3500 Removal Procedures

3501 Full Containment Areas:

3501.1 Pre-clean, isolate, and prepare the regulated area in accordance with Section 3100.

3501.2 Wet the ACM with amended water solution using appropriate equipment. Saturate the material to the greatest extent possible. Keep all removed material wet enough to prevent fiber release until it can be containerized for disposal.

3501.2.1 Remove the ACM from the substrate. A layer of 4 mil polyethylene sheeting to act as a dropcloth shall be placed on surfaces beneath the removal activity.

3501.3 Removed material should be containerized (disposal bags or wrapped) before moving to a new location for continuance of work.

3501.4 Materials removed from building structures or components shall not be dropped or thrown to the floor and/or ground. Materials should be removed as intact sections or components whenever possible, containerized and carefully lowered to the floor.

3501.5 Containers (six (6) mil polyethylene disposal bags or drums) shall be sealed when full. (Wet material can be exceedingly heavy. Double bagging of waste material is always necessary.)

3501.6 Asbestos containing waste with sharp-edge components (e.g., nails, screws, metal lath, tin sheeting, etc.) will tear the polyethylene bags and sheeting and shall be placed in drums for disposal.

3501.7 After completion of any stripping work, surfaces from which ACM has been removed shall be wet brushed and sponged or cleaned by some equivalent method to remove all visible residue.

3501.8 Clean-up shall proceed in accordance with Section 3600.

3501.8.1 After the regulated area has been rendered free of visible residues (pass final visual clearance inspection - Section 3700), two coats of a satisfactory lockdown encapsulant agent shall be applied to all surfaces in the work area including structural members, building components and plastic sheeting on walls, floors and covering non-removable items, to seal in non-visible residue.

3502 Glove bag Removal Procedures:

3502.1 Glovebags shall be constructed of 6 mil polyethylene plastic and be seamless at the bottom. The glovebags must have built-in internal sleeve gloves, tool pouch and small openings for the insertion of water sprayers and/or HEPA vacuum nozzles. The glovebags shall be pre-labeled with appropriate EPA, OSHA and DOT warnings.

3502.2 The glovebags may only be used on straight runs of thermal system insulation ACM of unlimited lengths.

3502.3 The glovebags may only be used once and may not be moved.

3502.4 Glovebags shall not be used on surfaces whose temperatures exceed 150°F.

3502.5 The glovebag removal work shall be performed by at least two properly trained Contractor employees. The work must also be supervised by the General Superintendent.

3502.6 Glovebag equipment and supplies shall include:

3502.6.1 Pump-up garden sprayer.

3502.6.2 Tape to seal glovebag to piping.

3502.6.3 Amended water and lockdown encapsulant.

3502.6.4 HEPA filtered vacuum system and/or HEPA filtration machine.

3502.6.5 Tools such as wire saws, utility knife, wire cutters, tin snips, scrub brush and rags.

3502.6.6 Pre-labeled, 6 mil disposal bags.

3502.6.7 4-mil polyethylene sheeting.

3502.6.8 Smoke tubes with aspirator bulb.

3502.6.9 HEPA respirators and protective clothing.

3502.7 Glovebag work practices shall consist of the following:

3502.7.1 Isolate the regulated area with critical barriers (one layer of 6 mil polyethylene sheeting) over all openings leading into or out of the area. Place one additional critical barrier layer over all HVAC openings. Demarcate the regulated area with warning signs.

3502.7.2 Place dropcloths (one layer 4 mil polyethylene sheeting) over all objects in the regulated area which cannot be moved.

3502.7.3 Ventilate the regulated area using HEPA vacuum system or HEPA filtration machine.

3502.7.4 Place one layer of 4 mil polyethylene sheeting on the floor or surface below the entire length of the pipe run. This sheeting shall extend at least 3 feet to either side of the pipe run.

3502.7.5 Wrap and/or seal any pre-existing damaged, friable and/or loose TSI material with tape or two layers of 6 mil polyethylene sheeting prior to glovebag work.

3502.7.6 Securely attach glovebag to piping. The installation must completely cover the circumference of the pipe.

3502.7.7 Test glovebag for leaks using smoke tubes. Seal with tape any leaks and retest.

3502.7.8 Thoroughly wet the ACM and strip/remove the material from the piping. Maintain the ACM in the glovebag in a wet condition during the removal process.

3502.7.9 After ACM removal from the piping, clean the exposed piping with brushes and/or wet wiping to remove any remaining residue.

3502.7.10 Apply lockdown encapsulant to exposed piping and adjacent TSI material, if applicable.

3502.7.11 Remove tools from glovebag by pulling them through internal sleeve gloves. Twists the sleeve gloves and tape. The tools may be placed into the next section of glovebag or decontaminated in a bucket of water.

3502.7.12 Making sure the removed ACM is in the bottom of the bag, evacuate the air from the glovebag using a HEPA filtered vacuum system, twist the glovebag several times and tape the bag closed.

3502.7.13 Place the glove bag into a 6-mil disposal bag and perform clean-up procedures in accordance with Section 3600.

3502.8 Workers performing glovebag removal shall wear, at a minimum, a half-face, dual cartridge HEPA respirator and protective clothing (Section 3400).

3502.9 Procedures for negative pressure glovebag use shall comply with work practices described above and to include the following:

3502.9.1 A HEPA filtered vacuum system is attached to bag and a device shall be placed in bag to prevent collapse during work.

3502.9.2 The HEPA vacuum system and device to prevent collapse shall be used continuously during glovebag removal operations.

3502.9.3 A separate waste collection bag may be used during ACM removal process. The waste bag may only be used once.

3502.9.4 The collection/work bag may be reused if the bag is rinsed clean with water prior to next set-up.

3503 Class II Asbestos Removal Practices:

3503.1 All Class II ACM work shall be completed in accordance with the requirements stated in the OSHA Asbestos Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101(g)(7).

3503.2 Demarcate the area around the removal area with asbestos warning tape and signs.

3503.3 For indoor work, critical barriers shall be placed over all openings leading into or out of the regulated area.

3503.4 One layer of 4 mil polyethylene sheeting shall be placed under the removal activity, where practical.

3503.5 Worker protection practices as described in Section 3400 shall apply.

3503.6 Class II removal practices shall consist of the following:

3503.6.1 The ACM shall not be removed by high-speed abrasive saws, sanders or drills, compressed air systems, mechanical chipping or other types of powered cutting tools.

3503.6.2 The ACM shall be removed in an intact state to the extent possible.

3503.6.3 The ACM must be thoroughly wetted with amended water prior to removal.

3503.6.4 Removed material shall be immediately placed in pre-labeled disposal bags or wrapped in polyethylene sheeting. The material must remain in a wet condition and transferred into waste transport trailer.

3503.6.5 Any ACM debris shall be collected using HEPA vacuum system and/or wet wiped.

3600 Clean-up Procedure for Areas Governed by Section 3500

3601 Remove and containerize all visible accumulations of ACM and ACM debris utilizing rubber dust pans and rubber squeegees. Do not use metal shovels to pick up or move accumulated waste. Special care shall be taken to minimize damage to floor sheeting.

3602 Clean all surfaces in the regulated area using wet-dry HEPA vacuums, rags, mops and sponges as appropriate.

3603 Remove and/or clean the outer layer of plastic sheeting from walls and floors. Windows, doors, HVAC system vents and all other openings shall remain covered. The NPE shall remain in place and continued to be utilized.

3604 Remove all containerized waste from the regulated area and waste container pass-out airlock and place into waste transport trailer (see Section 3800).

3605 Decontaminate all tools and equipment and remove at the appropriate time in the cleaning sequence. Materials and/or equipment which cannot be thoroughly decontaminated must be placed in either locking containers or wrapped in two layers of 6 mil polyethylene sheeting.

3606 Empty HEPA filtered vacuum collection units of ACM waste and remove/change filters from HEPA filtration machines.

3607 Inspect the regulated area for visible residue. If any accumulation of residue is observed, it will be assumed to be ACM debris and the cleaning sequence will be repeated.

3608 The regulated area shall be cleaned until it is in compliance with Federal, State and local requirements or any more stringent criteria agree upon by the Contractor and Owner's Representative prior to initiation of abatement. Any additional cleaning cycles shall be provided, as necessary, at no cost to the Owner, until all criteria have been met.

3700 Visual Clearance Inspections and Final Air Clearance Sampling

3701 Following the completion of clean-up operations, the Contractor shall notify the Owner's Representative that the regulated area is ready for a final visual clearance inspection and final air sampling.

3702 The Owner's Representative shall then arrange with the General Superintendent to visually survey areas where ACM has been removed for any remaining asbestos materials or debris.

3702.1 If visible ACM debris or residue is observed, the regulated area shall be recleaned in accordance with Section 3600. If the regulated area is free of visible ACM debris or residue and passes the final visual clearance inspection, Contractor will apply a lockdown encapsulant to all surfaces in the work area.

3702.2 Lockdown encapsulants shall be spray-applied with a color tinting only after the exposed substrate surfaces are dry.

3703 PCM air monitoring shall be accomplished during all abatement activities. This air monitoring will be performed by the owner's representative. The following is a minimum guideline for daily air sampling during abatement activities:

Prior to abatement (baseline)	3 minimum per work area	1,250 L
Inside containment (work area)	1 minimum per day	500 L
Inside containment (personal)	25% of crew	500 L
Outside containment inside building	1 minimum	1,250 L
Waste decontamination unit	1 minimum	1,250 L
Personnel decontamination unit clean room	1 minimum	1,250 L
HEPA exhaust	1 per bank	1,250 L

The contractor is responsible for the collection and analysis of OSHA compliance samples.

Air sampling shall be conducted using sampling pumps calibrated at a flow rate of at least two (2) and not more than ten (10) liters per minute using collection media and procedures in accordance with NIOSH Standard Analytical Method 7400. Air volumes shall be sufficient to provide reliable results down to a concentration of 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (f/cc) or lower. Minimum air volumes of 1,250 liters shall be collected for method 7400.

3703.1 Air collection filter assemblies (cassettes) shall consist of a pre-assembled 25 mm diameter, 0.8-micron porosity mixed cellulose ester filter with support pad mounted in a carbon filled polypropylene housing.

3703.2 The cassettes shall be placed on a stand separate from the sampling pumps at a height of approximately four (4) feet above the floor. The cassettes shall be connected to the sampling pumps by flexible tubing and oriented downward at approximately 45 degrees from the horizontal.

3703.3 Prior to final air sampling, sweep all surfaces in the regulated area with the exhaust of a minimum one (1) horsepower leaf blower.

3703.4 Place stationary fans in the regulated area during final air sampling with the flow directed at the ceiling. One fan shall be used for each 10,000 cubic feet of regulated area.

3703.5 Maintain operation of HEPA filtration machines and negative pressure enclosure during final air sampling activities.

3703.6 At the conclusion of final air sampling, turn cassettes upward before stopping air flow. Cap ends, label and store cassettes in polyethylene bags for transport.

3704 The number of final clearance samples that are required (minimum of three [3]) and the specific locations where they shall be taken will be established by the Owner's Representative.

3705 Air samples shall be analyzed by Phase Contrast Microscopy unless specifically required or requested otherwise by the Owner or the Contractor. If the Contractor requests an alternate method, they will be invoiced for any additional analysis costs.

3706 All final air samples collected for clearance purposes shall indicate concentrations of airborne fibers less than 70 s/mm for release of the regulated area.

3707 A regulated area that does not pass a final visual clearance inspection or exceeds the clearance level of 70 s/mm shall be recleaned until the asbestos material or debris has been satisfactorily removed. Contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated for recleaning and retesting the air within the regulated area for clearance purposes.

3800 Waste Disposal Procedures

3801 For asbestos-containing waste material to be transported off the facility site, label containers or wrapped materials with the name of the waste generator and the location at which the waste was generated.

3802 All asbestos-containing waste material shall be disposed of as soon as is practical by the Contractor. The ACM waste generated from the project site shall be transported directly from the site to the disposal facility. Contractor shall not mingle ACM wastes from other facilities with wastes generated from the project site.

3803 Disposal must occur at an approved landfill authorized to accept asbestos waste in accordance with regulatory requirements of NESHAP and other applicable Federal, State and local statutes, laws, ordinances, rules, guidelines and regulations.

3804 Copies of all dump receipts, trip tickets, transportation manifests or other documentation of disposal shall be delivered to the Owner's Representative for inclusion in his records. The record keeping format shall utilize a chain-of-custody form which includes the names and addresses of the Generator (Owner as identified in General Specifications), Contractor, pickup site, and disposal site, the estimated quantity of the asbestos waste and the type of containers used. The form shall be signed by the Generator, the Contractor and the Disposal Site Operator, as the responsibility for the material changes hands. If a separate hauler is employed, his name, address, telephone number and signature shall also appear on the form.

3805 For all asbestos-containing waste material transported off the facility site, maintain waste shipment records (WSR) as stipulated in Section 61.150 of the November 20, 1990 NESHAPs Asbestos Revision (40 CFR, Part 61, Subpart M.).

3806 Transportation to the Landfill

3806.1 Once drums, bags and wrapped components have been removed from the regulated area, they shall be loaded into an enclosed truck or container for transportation. This truck or container shall be locked to prevent access when not in use.

3806.2 Mark vehicles used to transport asbestos-containing waste material with asbestos danger signs during the loading and unloading of waste so that the signs are visible. During transportation, the enclosed truck or container shall be marked with a Class 9 placard pursuant to Department of Transportation requirements.

3806.3 When moving containers, utilize hand trucks, carts and proper lifting techniques to avoid back injuries. Trucks with lift gates are helpful for raising and lowering drums of material to and from the truck.

3806.4 The encapsulated cargo area of the truck shall be free of debris and lined with six (6) mil polyethylene sheeting to prevent contamination from leaking or spilled containers. Floor sheeting shall be installed first and extended up the sidewalls. Wall sheeting shall be overlapped and taped into place.

3806.5 Drums shall be placed on level surfaces in the cargo area and packed tightly together to prevent shifting and tipping. Large structural components shall be secured to prevent shifting and bags placed on top. Do not throw containers into truck cargo area.

3806.6 Personnel loading asbestos containing waste shall be protected by disposable clothing including head, body and foot protection and, at a minimum, half-face-piece, air-purifying, dual cartridge respirators equipped with high efficiency filters.

3806.7 Any debris, water, or residue observed on containers or surfaces outside of the work area resulting from clean-up or disposal activities shall be immediately cleaned up using HEPA filtered vacuum equipment and/or wet methods as appropriate.

3806.8 Large metal dumpsters are sometimes used for asbestos waste disposal. These should have doors or tops that can be closed and locked to prevent vandalism or other disturbance of the bagged asbestos debris and wind dispersion of asbestos fibers. Unbagged material shall not be placed in these containers, nor shall the dumpster be used for non-asbestos waste. Bags shall be placed, not thrown, into these containers to avoid splitting.

3807 Disposal at the Landfill

3807.1 If an independent transporter is employed, he shall, for the purposes of compliance with these specifications, be considered a subcontractor to the abatement contractor and shall be supplied with and held to the provisions of this section.

3807.2 Upon reaching the landfill, trucks are to approach the dump location as closely as possible for unloading of the asbestos containing waste.

3807.3 Bags, drums and components shall be inspected as they are off-loaded at the disposal site. Material in damaged containers shall be placed in empty drums or bags or repaired using duct tape as necessary.

3807.4 Waste containers shall be placed on the ground at the disposal site, not pushed or thrown out of trucks (weight of wet material could rupture containers).

3807.5 Personnel off-loading containers at the disposal site shall wear protective equipment consisting of disposable head, body and foot protection and, at a minimum, half-facepiece, air-purifying, dual cartridge respirators equipped with high efficiency filters.

3807.6 Following the removal of all containerized waste, the truck cargo area shall be decontaminated using EPA vacuums and/or wet methods to meet the nonvisible residue criteria. Polyethylene sheeting shall be removed and discarded along with contaminated cleaning materials and protective clothing, in bags or drums at the disposal site.

3900 Release and/or Re-establishment of the Regulated Area

3901 Re-establishment of the regulated area shall only occur following the completion of clean-up procedures, visual clearance inspection and final air clearance sampling have been performed and documented to the satisfaction of the Owner and the Owner's Representative.

3902 Polyethylene barriers shall be removed from walls and floors at this time, maintaining the worker decontamination area and critical barriers over doors, windows, etc. as required.

3903 HEPA filtration machines shall be wrapped in plastic before removal from the regulated area.

3904 The Contractor and the Owner's Representative shall visually inspect the regulated area for any remaining ACM debris. Evidence of contamination will necessitate additional cleaning requirements in accordance with the provisions of Section 3600, to be performed at the Contractor's expense.

3905 Additional air monitoring, if necessary, shall be performed at the Contractor's expense in accordance with Section 3700 if additional clean-up is necessary.

3906 Following satisfactory clearance of the regulated area, remaining polyethylene barriers shall be removed and disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste.

3907 At the discretion of the Contractor, mandatory requirements for personal protective equipment may be waived following the removal of all barriers.

3908 Re-secure mounted objects removed from their former positions during area preparation activities.

3909 Relocate objects that were removed to temporary locations back to their original positions.

3910 Re-establish HVAC, mechanical and electrical systems in proper working order. Remove contaminated HVAC system filters and dispose of as asbestos-contaminated waste. Decontaminate filter assembly using HEPA vacuums and wet cleaning techniques. Install new filters in HVAC systems. Dispose of old filters appropriately.

3911 Repair all areas of damage that occurred as a result of abatement activities.

END OF TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Appendix A

FIGURES

General Abatement Notes

1. EU(s) must be placed inside containment area and at a minimum have four containment air changes per hour and provide a pressure difference of at least 0.02 inches of water.

2. GFCIs must be used on all electrical circuits.

3. One fire extinguisher per 3,000 sq. ft. of floor area must be inside containment.

4. HVAC system in or passing through the containment area must be shut off.

5. Salvage all doors indicated by owner, remaining doors maybe disposed of as general construction waste, if applicable.

6. Remove all gypsum board/plaster from around columns that are inside containment areas, if applicable.

7. These plans have been compiled from various existing drawings and asbestos survey field sketches and illustrate the general location of ACMs only. Any use of these plans for construction purposes required field verification.

8. It is the intent of this contract to remove all ACMs from the designated areas regardless of quantities or number of layers indicated. The contractor shall be responsible for and include in his bids, the removal of all multiple layers, all quantities, and all overspray / debris in the affected areas. Amount expected to be impacted by renovation activities. See final Construction Documents by the architects for specific abatement locations and quantities.

9. It is the intent of these drawings to depict the total number of containment areas required. Contractor will not deviate from areas as shown without approval of owner's representative.

10. All conditions, dimensions, and quantities are approximate and shall be verified by the contractor.

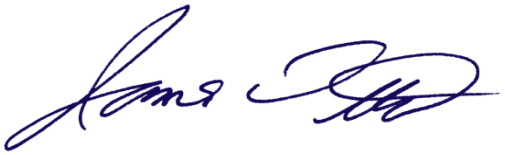
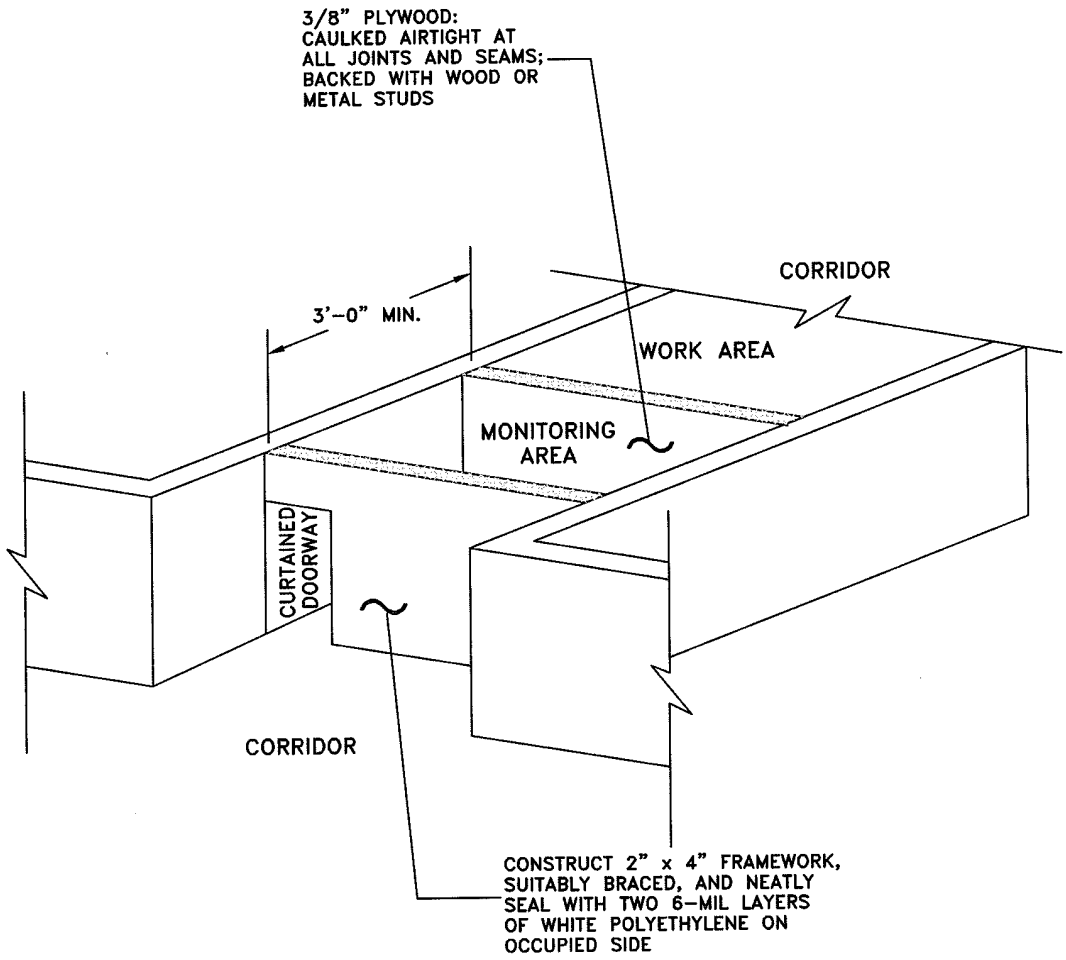


FIGURE 19
John W. Runyon Elementary School
Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024



NOTE:

PROVIDE CURTAINED DOORWAY ACCESS
FOR AIR MONITOR FROM OCCUPIED SIDE

TWO SHEETS 6-MIL POLYETHYLENE ON
EACH BARRIER

FIGURE 20
John W. Runyon Elementary School
Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024

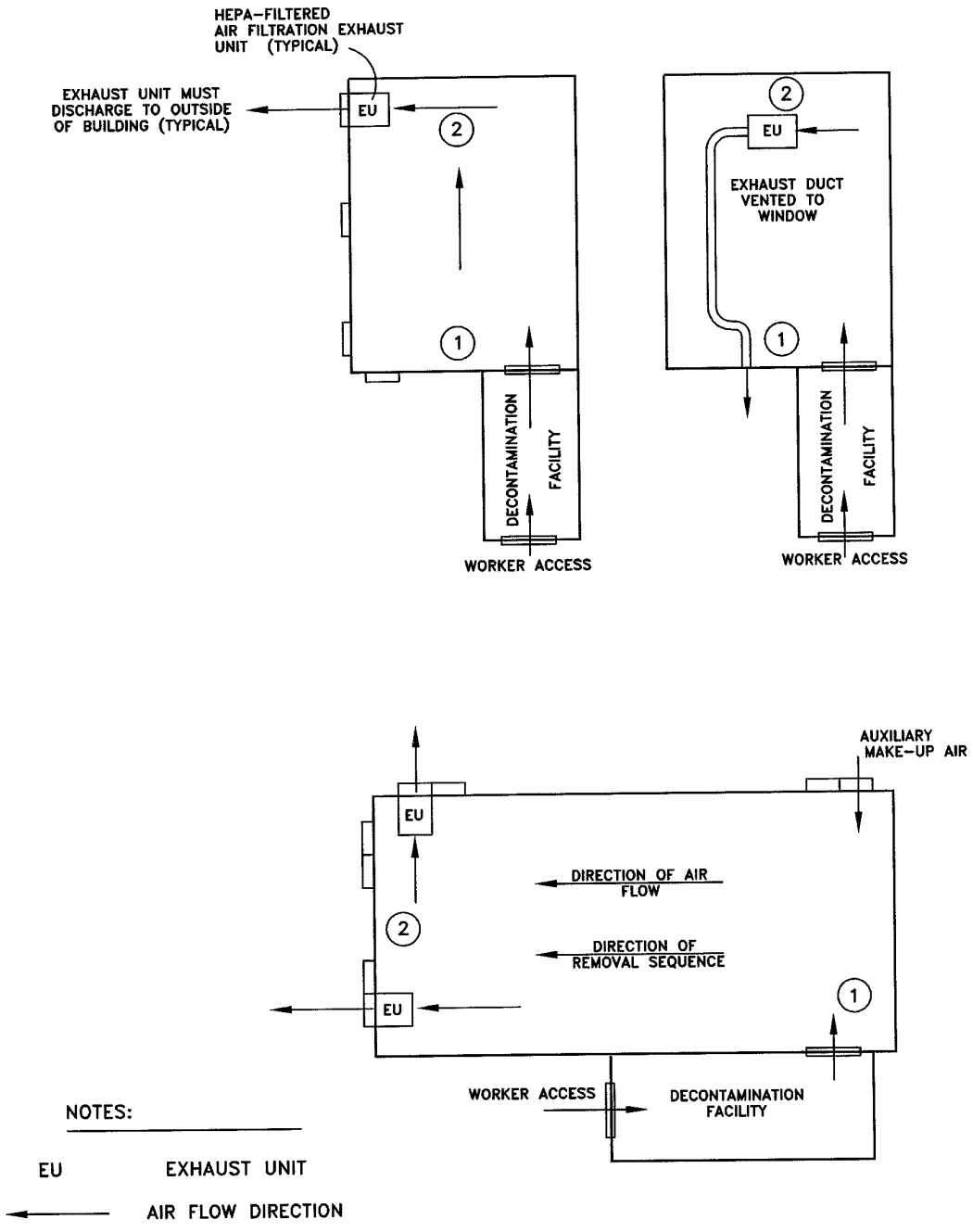
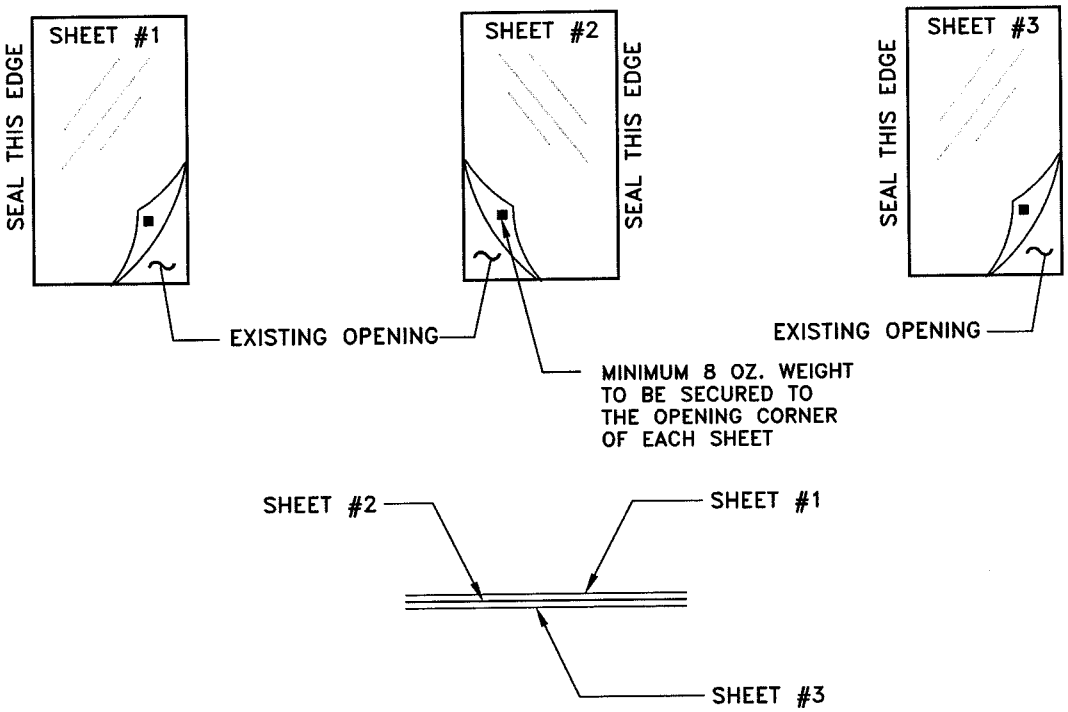


FIGURE 21
John W. Runyon Elementary School
Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024

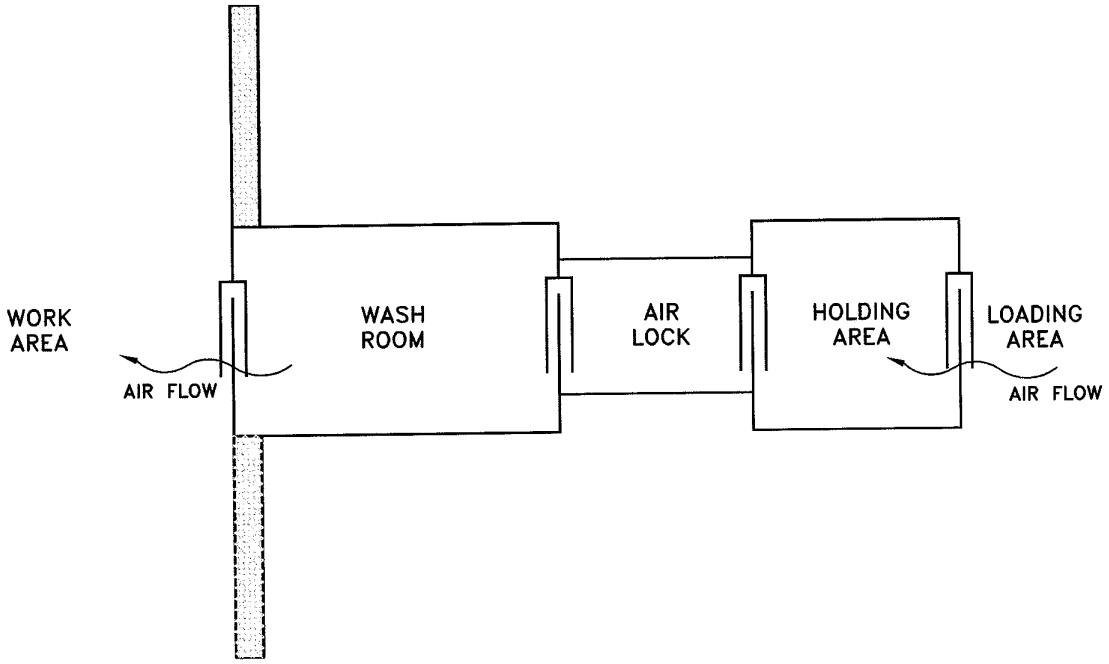


VERTICAL SEALS PLAN VIEW

ALL CURTAINED DOORWAYS SHALL BE 6-MIL POLYETHYLENE SHEETING MAXIMUM WIDTH OF DOORWAYS SHALL BE 42". MINIMUM WIDTH SHALL BE 24" EXCEPT EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURES.

1 – SECURE TOP EDGE OF SHEET #1 ALONG TO EDGE OF OPENING
2 – SECURE SHEET #1 ALONG ONE VERTICAL SIDE OF OPENING
3 – SECURE TOP EDGE OF SHEET #2 ALONG TOP EDGE OF OPENING
4 – SECURE SHEET #3 ALONG SIDE OF OPENING, OPPOSITE OPENING SIDE OF SHEET #1
5 – SECURE TOP EDGE OF SHEET #3 ALONG TO EDGE OF OPENING
6 – SECURE SHEET #3 ALONG SAME VERTICAL EDGE AS SHEET #1

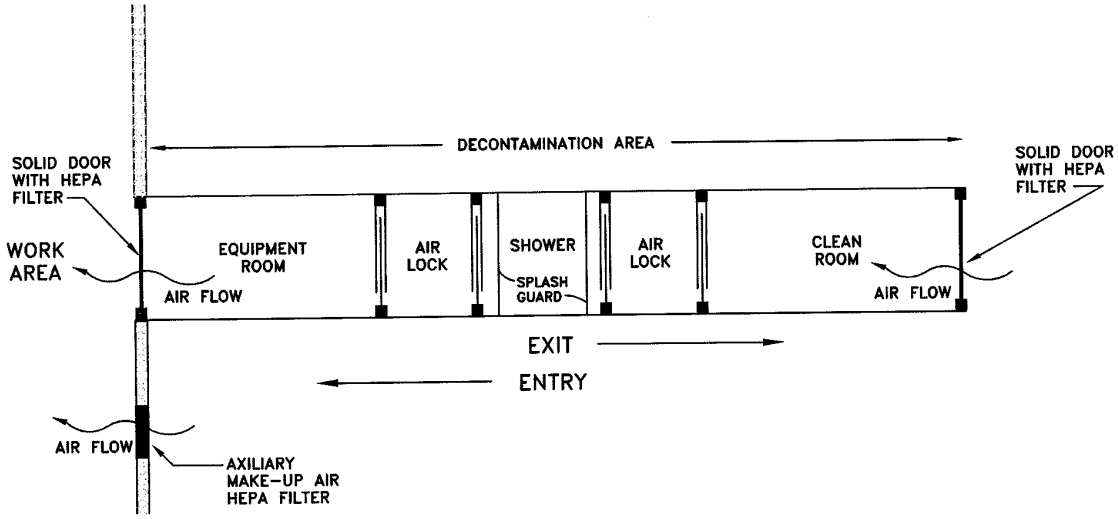
FIGURE 22
John W. Runyon Elementary School
Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024



NOTES:

1. PROTECTIVE CLOTHING AND RESPIRATORS ARE REQUIRED DURING ALL PHASES OF WASTE LOAD-OUT.
2. DOUBLE BAG WASTE MATERIAL IN 6 MIL POLYETHYLENE BAGS.
3. PLACE GENERATOR LABELS ON ALL WASTE BAGS.
4. PLACE WASTE BAGS IN ENCLOSED TRUCK.
5. SECURE TRUCK AND WASTE LOAD-OUT AREA.
6. WORKERS SHALL NOT ENTER OR EXIT FROM THE WORK AREA VIA THE WASTE AND EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE.

FIGURE 23
John W. Runyon Elementary School
Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024



EQUIPMENT ROOM

ENTRY:

1. PUT ON ADDITIONAL PROTECTIVE CLOTHING (RUBBER BOOTS, HARD HAT)
2. COLLECT NECESSARY TOOLS
3. PROCEED TO WORK AREA

EXIT:

1. REMOVE ALL CLOTHING EXCEPT RESPIRATOR
2. PLACE ALL CLOTHING IN A DISPOSABLE BAG
3. LEAVE ALL CONTAMINATED TOOLS IN EQUIPMENT ROOM
4. PROCEED TO SHOWER

SHOWER

ENTRY:

1. PROCEED TO EQUIPMENT ROOM

EXIT:

1. WASH RESPIRATOR (WITHOUT REMOVING)
2. REMOVE RESPIRATOR REMOVE OR SEAL FILTERS
3. WASH RESPIRATOR
4. WASH SWIM SUIT
5. THROUGHLY WASH BODY & HAIR WITH SOAP & WATER
6. PROCEED TO CLEAN ROOM

CLEAN ROOM

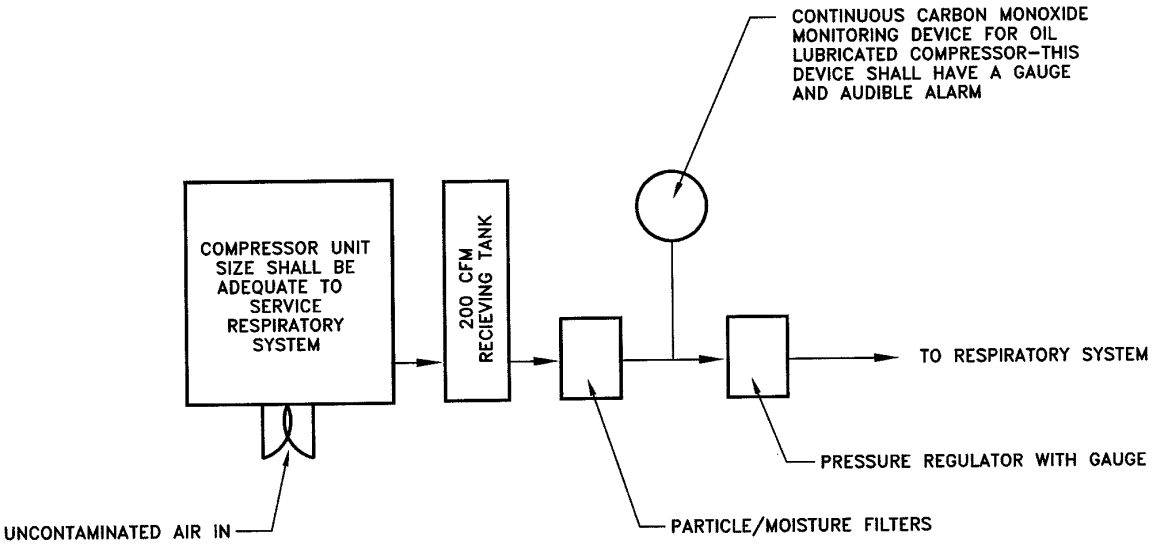
ENTRY:

1. ENTER CLEAN ROOM
2. REMOVE CLOTHING, PLACE IN LOCKER
3. PUT ON NYLON SWIM SUIT (OPTIONAL)
4. PUT ON DISPOSABLE COVERALLS
5. PUT ON DISPOSABLE FOOT WEAR (IF NEEDED) APPLY TAPE AROUND ANKLES, WRISTS, ETC.
6. INSPECT RESPIRATOR, PUT IT ON, CHECK THE FIT
7. PUT ON DISPOSABLE HOOD, CHECK PROTECTIVE CLOTHING
8. PROCEED TO EQUIPMENT ROOM

EXIT:

1. DRY OFF USING DISPOSABLE TOWELS, PLACE TOWELS IN DISPOSABLE BAG
2. DRESS IN STREET CLOTHES
3. CLEAN AND DRY RESPIRATOR
4. REPLACE FILTERS (IF NEEDED)
5. EXIT CLEAN ROOM

FIGURE 24
John W. Runyon Elementary School
Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024



NOTES:

1. RECEIVING DEVICE LOCATION TO BE AWAY FROM ALL BUILDING AND ENGINE EXHAUSTS.
2. BACK–UP AIR TANK REQUIRED.
3. AIR SUPPLY FOR "TYPE C" SHALL BE AT MINIMUM, GRADE "D" IN COMPLIANCE WITH OSHA 1910.134.
4. INCORPORATED WITHIN THE SYSTEM SHALL BE A COMPRESSOR ALARM, HIGH TEMPERATURE ALARM AND A CONTINUOUS CARBON MONOXIDE MONITORING DEVICE.
5. THE CONTRACTOR ACKNOWLEDGES THAT HE IS RESPONSIBLE FOR COMPLIANCE WITH PERSONNEL PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS AND THAT THESE SPECIFICATIONS SET FORTH GUIDELINES FOR A MINIMUM ACCEPTABLE STANDARD.

FIGURE 25
John W. Runyon Elementary School
Project No. 23-2597
January 17, 2024

Appendix B

ASBESTOS RESULTS SUMMARIES

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY & SAMPLE LOG

24B-00213 5nPLM

(asbestos PLM)

Project Name: DISD - Runyon E. S. **Project No:** 23-2597

Year Built: 1968 **Survey Area:** _____ sf **# of Floors:** 1

Inspected & Sampled by: *James E. Otto, asbestos consultant #10-5236* **Date Sampled:** 1/3/24

Turnaround Requested: *Immediate 1 day 2 day 3 day (5 day)* **Report:** *jotto@iconenviro.com*

Positive stop: *(yes) no* **Page** 1 **of** 2

SAMPLE NO.	BULK SAMPLE CODE	SAMPLE LOCATION (Size / Elevation / Direction / Color / etc.)
1	AAT	1'x1' OFFICE CLOSET
2		" " "
3		" " "
4	CRT	12x12 / 6"x12" PINK
5		" " "
6		" " "
7	CRT	6"x6" YELLOW
8		" "
9		" "
10	CRT	6"x6" GREEN
11		" "
12		" "
13	HP	INTERIOR
14		"
15		"
16	HP	EXTERIOR
17		"
18		"
19	RB	BLACK
20		"
21		"
22	RB	BROWN
23		"
24		"
25	SAT	2'x2' HOLES
26		" "
27		" "
28	BTPB	GRAY ABOVE DROP CEILING
29		" " " "
30		" " " "
31	CG	YELLOW
32		"
33		"
34	MOR	UNDER WINDOW EXTERIOR
35		" " "
36		" "

Relinquished By:	Date/Time	Received By:	
[signature]	1/3/24	[signature]	1/8/24 4:40

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY & SAMPLE LOG

24B-60213

(asbestos PLM)

Project Name: DISD- RUNYON E. S. **Project No:** 23-2597

SAMPLE NO.	BULK SAMPLE CODE	SAMPLE LOCATION (Size / Elevation / Direction / Color / etc.)
37	HP	EXTERIOR FASCIA
38		" "
39		" "
40	CRT	1"x1" GREEN REST ROOM WALL
41		" " " "
42		" " " "
43	CRT	VARIOUS SIZES GREEN R.R. FLOOR
44		" " " " "
45		" " " " "
46	MISC	EXTERIOR UNDER METAL STONE BED
47		" " " " "
48		" " " " "
49	WC	EXTERIOR
50		"
51		"
52	CAU	EXTERIOR
53		"
54		"
55	DTMS	EXT. ROOF GRAY
56		" " "
57		" " "
58		
59		
60		
61		
62		
63		
64		
65		
66		
67		
68		
69		
70		
71		
72		
73		
74		
75		

Relinquished By: **Date/Time** 1/3/24 **Received By:** 1/8/24 4:40 pm

PLM Summary Report

Moody Labs
2051 Valley View Lane
Farmers Branch, TX 75234 Phone: (972) 241-8460

NVLAP Lab Code 102056-0
TDSHS License No. 300084

Client : ICON Environmental - Texas
Project : DISD, Runyon E.S.
Project # : 23-2597
Identification : Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis
Test Method : Polarized Light Microscopy / Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS)
EPA Method 600 / R-93 / 116

Lab Job No. : 24B-00213
Report Date : 01/15/2024
Sample Date :01/08/2024

On 1/8/2024, fifty seven (57) bulk material samples were submitted by a representative of ICON Environmental - Texas for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. The PLM Detail Report is attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Sample Number	Client Sample Description / Location	Asbestos Content
1	1' x 1' Adhered Acoustical Tiles, Office Closet	None Detected - Acoustic Tile
2	1' x 1' Adhered Acoustical Tiles, Office Closet	None Detected - Acoustic Tile
3	1' x 1' Adhered Acoustical Tiles, Office Closet	None Detected - Acoustic Tile
4	12 x 12 / 6" x 12" Ceramic Tile (Pink)	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout 2% Chrysotile - Mortar
5	12 x 12 / 6" x 12" Ceramic Tile (Pink)	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop
6	12 x 12 / 6" x 12" Ceramic Tile (Pink)	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop
7	6" x 6" Ceramic Tile (Yellow)	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout 2% Chrysotile - Mortar
8	6" x 6" Ceramic Tile (Yellow)	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop
9	6" x 6" Ceramic Tile (Yellow)	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop
10	6" x 6" Ceramic Tile (Green)	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout 2% Chrysotile - Mortar
11	6" x 6" Ceramic Tile (Green)	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop
12	6" x 6" Ceramic Tile (Green)	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop
13	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Interior	None Detected - Plaster
14	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Interior	None Detected - Plaster
15	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Interior	None Detected - Plaster
16	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Exterior	2% Chrysotile - Plaster
17	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Exterior	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop
18	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Exterior	Not Analyzed - Positive Stop

PLM Summary Report

2051 Valley View Lane
Farmers Branch, TX 75234 Phone: (972) 241-8460

NVLAP Lab Code 102056-0
TDSHS License No. 300084

Client : ICON Environmental - Texas
Project : DISD, Runyon E.S.
Project # : 23-2597
Identification : Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis
Test Method : Polarized Light Microscopy / Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS)
EPA Method 600 / R-93 / 116

Lab Job No. : 24B-00213
Report Date : 01/15/2024
Sample Date :01/08/2024

On 1/8/2024, fifty seven (57) bulk material samples were submitted by a representative of ICON Environmental - Texas for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. The PLM Detail Report is attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Sample Number	Client Sample Description / Location	Asbestos Content
19	Resilient Base, Nosing, Trim (Black)	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
20	Resilient Base, Nosing, Trim (Black)	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
21	Resilient Base, Nosing, Trim (Black)	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
22	Resilient Base, Nosing, Trim (Brown)	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
23	Resilient Base, Nosing, Trim (Brown)	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
24	Resilient Base, Nosing, Trim (Brown)	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
25	2' x 2' Suspended Acoustical Tiles (Holes)	None Detected - Acoustic Tile
26	2' x 2' Suspended Acoustical Tiles (Holes)	None Detected - Acoustic Tile
27	2' x 2' Suspended Acoustical Tiles (Holes)	None Detected - Acoustic Tile
28	Batt Insulation with Paper Backing (Gray), Above Drop Ceiling	None Detected - Insulation None Detected - Paper / Tar Wrap
29	Batt Insulation with Paper Backing (Gray), Above Drop Ceiling	None Detected - Insulation None Detected - Paper / Tar Wrap
30	Batt Insulation with Paper Backing (Gray), Above Drop Ceiling	None Detected - Insulation None Detected - Paper / Tar Wrap
31	Carpet Glue (Yellow)	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic
32	Carpet Glue (Yellow)	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic
33	Carpet Glue (Yellow)	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic

PLM Summary Report

Moody Labs
2051 Valley View Lane
Farmers Branch, TX 75234 Phone: (972) 241-8460

NVLAP Lab Code 102056-0
TDSHS License No. 300084

Client : ICON Environmental - Texas
Project : DISD, Runyon E.S.
Project # : 23-2597
Identification : Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis
Test Method : Polarized Light Microscopy / Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS)
EPA Method 600 / R-93 / 116

Lab Job No. : 24B-00213
Report Date : 01/15/2024
Sample Date :01/08/2024

On 1/8/2024, fifty seven (57) bulk material samples were submitted by a representative of ICON Environmental - Texas for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. The PLM Detail Report is attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Sample Number	Client Sample Description / Location	Asbestos Content
34	Mortar, Under Window Exterior	None Detected - Mortar
35	Mortar, Under Window Exterior	None Detected - Mortar
36	Mortar, Under Window Exterior	None Detected - Mortar
37	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Exterior Fascia	None Detected - Caulking None Detected - Plaster
38	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Exterior Fascia	None Detected - Plaster
39	Hard Finish Stucco or Plaster, Exterior Fascia	None Detected - Plaster
40	1" x 1" Ceramic Tile (Green), Restroom Wall	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
41	1" x 1" Ceramic Tile (Green), Restroom Wall	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
42	1" x 1" Ceramic Tile (Green), Restroom Wall	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
43	Ceramic Tile (Various Sizes, Green), Restroom Floor	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout None Detected - Mortar
44	Ceramic Tile (Various Sizes, Green), Restroom Floor	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout None Detected - Mortar
45	Ceramic Tile (Various Sizes, Green), Restroom Floor	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout None Detected - Mortar
46	Miscellaneous Material, Exterior, Under Window Stone Bed	None Detected - Mortar
47	Miscellaneous Material, Exterior, Under Window Stone Bed	None Detected - Mortar
48	Miscellaneous Material, Exterior, Under Window Stone Bed	None Detected - Mortar
49	Window Caulking, Exterior	None Detected - Caulking

PLM Summary Report

2051 Valley View Lane
Farmers Branch, TX 75234 Phone: (972) 241-8460

NVLAP Lab Code 102056-0
TDSHS License No. 300084

Client : ICON Environmental - Texas
Project : DISD, Runyon E.S.
Project # : 23-2597
Identification : Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis
Test Method : Polarized Light Microscopy / Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS)
EPA Method 600 / R-93 / 116

Lab Job No. : 24B-00213
Report Date : 01/15/2024
Sample Date : 01/08/2024

On 1/8/2024, fifty seven (57) bulk material samples were submitted by a representative of ICON Environmental - Texas for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. The PLM Detail Report is attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Sample Number	Client Sample Description / Location	Asbestos Content
50	Window Caulking, Exterior	None Detected - Caulking
51	Window Caulking, Exterior	None Detected - Caulking
52	Caulking, Exterior	None Detected - Caulking
53	Caulking, Exterior	None Detected - Caulking
54	Caulking, Exterior	None Detected - Caulking
55	Duct Insulation Mastic (Gray), Exterior Roof	None Detected - Gray Mastic
56	Duct Insulation Mastic (Gray), Exterior Roof	None Detected - Gray Mastic
57	Duct Insulation Mastic (Gray), Exterior Roof	None Detected - Gray Mastic

These samples were analyzed by layers. Quantification, unless otherwise noted, is performed by calibrated visual estimate. The test report shall not be reproduced except in full without written approval of the laboratory. The results relate only to the items tested. These test results do not imply endorsement by NVLAP or any agency of the U.S. Government. Accredited by the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Bulk Asbestos Fiber Analysis under Lab Code 102056-0.

NVLAP Testing NVLAP Lab Code 102056-0

Analyst(s): Heather Lopez

Lab Manager : Heather Lopez — Approved Signatory : Heather Lopez

Lab Director : Bruce Crabb — Approved Signatory : Bruce Crabb

Thank you for choosing Moody Labs

AHERA THREE-YEAR REINSPECTION

JOHN W. RUNYON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL
10750 CRADLEROCK DRIVE
Dallas, Texas 75217

Prepared for

9400 N. Central Expressway
Dallas, Texas 75231

Prepared by

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT
ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES DEPARTMENT
3701 Botham Jean Blvd.
Dallas, Texas 75215

FEBRUARY 14, 2023

J. Sarker

Joyashree Sarker
AHERA Asbestos
Management Planner
TDSHS No. 205777

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 INTRODUCTION 3

i. General Information 3

ii. Purpose 3

iii. Warranty 3

2.0 ABREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS SCHEDULE 4

3.0 ORIGINAL INSPECTION SUMMARY 6

4.0 SURVEY METHODOLOGY 7

5.0 REINSPECTION FINDINGS 8

Table 1 - Material Description and Condition Assessment. 8

6.0 CONCLUSIONS 10

Table 2 - Floor Tile Detail by Room 11

APPENDICES 12

Certificates 12

Floor Plan 13

1.0 INTRODUCTION

i. General Information

An Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) three-year re-inspection for John W. Runyon Elementary School has been completed. The survey performed for this report was conducted on February 14, 2023, by Joyashree Sarker, a licensed Texas Department of State Health Services (TDSHS) Asbestos Management Planner (TDSHS No. 205777).

ii. Purpose

The purpose of the AHERA three-year re-inspection was to visually re-inspect all known friable and non-friable Asbestos Containing Building Materials and to reassess any changes in the condition of each material by an accredited inspector. This report meets requirements of 40 CFR Section 763.85 of AHERA.

iii. Warranty

Environmental Services Department (ESD) warrants that the findings contained herein have been promulgated in general accordance with accepted professional practices at the time of its preparation as applied by professionals in the local community. Conditions may exist which could not be identified within the scope of the survey or which were not apparent during the site visit. This inspection covered only those areas that were exposed and/or physically accessible to the inspector.

No other warranties are implied or expressed.

2.0 ABREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS SCHEDULE

1. **Abatement** – removal, encapsulation or enclosure of asbestos-containing material
2. **ACBM** – asbestos-containing building material
3. **ACM** – asbestos-containing material
4. **AHERA** – asbestos hazard emergency response act
5. **ASB** – asbestos
6. **CFR** – Code of Federal Regulations
7. **Chase** – pipes running vertically and horizontally throughout the building
8. **DISD** – Dallas Independent School District
9. **ESD** – environmental services department
10. **FRI** – friable (material containing greater than 1% asbestos by weight and can be crumbled, pulverized or reduce to powder with hand pressure)
11. **HA** – hazard assessment (a number assigned by the Management Planner to assess the current condition of a specific material and the potential for damage). See table below

1	Good condition with low potential for damage.
2	Good condition with potential for damage.
3	Good condition with potential for significant damage.
4	Damaged condition with low potential for damage.
5	Damaged condition with potential for damage.
6	Damaged condition with potential for significant damage.
7	Significant damage.

12. **LF** – linear feet
13. **SF** – Square feet
14. **Mastic** – glued used for tile or carpet installation (may or may not be asbestos-containing)
15. **Misc.** – miscellaneous material (any other materials not included in the TSI/Surfacing categories)
16. **NA** – not applicable
17. **On-going age** – gradual deterioration due to continued process
18. **Riser** – pipes rising from one level of the building to another
19. **Surfacing** – material that is sprayed, troweled-on or otherwise applied to surfaces for acoustical, fireproofing and other purposes
20. **TDSHS** – Texas Department of State Health Services
21. **TSI** – thermal system insulation (ACM applied to pipes, fittings, boilers, breeching, tanks, ducts, or other structural components to prevent heat transfer
22. **VC** – vinyl composition

3.0 ORIGINAL INSPECTION SUMMARY

The ACBMs identified in the original 1988 AHERA Management Plan are in the original inspection report, for review purposes, copies of the original report are located at John W. Runyon Elementary School facility at 10750 Cradlerock Dr., Dallas, Texas, 75216, and the Dallas Independent School District ESD located at 3701 Botham Jean Blvd., Dallas, Texas 75215. 972-925-5300.

Asbestos Management Planner:
John Cook (Texas License No.M467)

Asbestos Inspector:
Daniel Marple (Texas License No. I240)

James Hargrave (Texas License No. I227)

Designated Asbestos Program Director:
John P. Russell, Jr. (Texas License No. 1166)

4.0 SURVEY METHODOLOGY

After reviewing existing documentation within the ESD, a walkthrough of the facility building(s) was performed to inspect and assess the previously identified ACBMs. The following tasks were performed in each area of the facility building (s):

- Visual assessment of current condition of all friable ACBMs, both known and assumed;
- Visual tactile assessment of materials previously considered non-friable to determine if the nature of friability has changed;
- Identified homogeneous areas that were determined to have friable materials present since previous inspection; and
- Assess condition of previously identified friable materials.

5.0 REINSPECTION FINDINGS

AHERA regulations require condition assessments of all friable ACBMs, both known and assumed. Table 1 presents the condition assessments for these materials at John W. Runyon Elementary School.

Table 1. Material Description and Condition Assessment.

Changes Y/N	Homogeneous Area/ Material Description/ Category/Friability	Material Location & Amount	Material Condition Assessment	Remarks
N	**1A/ 12"X12" Brown Color Floor Tile and Mastic/ Miscellaneous/ Non-friable**	Various areas throughout the Facility . **Approx. 24,050 SF**	**HA-1 ACBMs in good condition with low potential for damage**	No action. O&M until removed
Y Abated No closeouts	**1B/ 12"X12" White Color with Brown Specks Floor Tile and Mastic/ Miscellaneous/ Non-friable**	Rooms 100, 170, 139, 139A, 117,118, 120,121,122, 125, 127, 127A, 140, 130, 130A, 131, 131A,132, 132A, 133, 133A, 134, 134A, 135, 135A are Assumed ACBM **Approx. 10,600 SF**	**HA-1 Floor Tile is in good condition**	No action Operations and Maintenance
Y Abated No closeouts	**2A/ Carpet Mastic only/Miscellaneous /Non-friable**	Rooms 100A, 100A closet &191 are Assumed ACBM **Approx.380 SF**	**HA-1 Mastic under the carpet is in good condition**	No action Operations and Maintenance
N	**3A/ Crawl Space/ Thermal System Insulation// Friable**	**Crawl Space. Approx. 7,400 LF**	**HA-3 ACBMs in good condition with potential for significant damage**	No action. O&M until removed
N	**10A/ Fire Doors/ Miscellaneous/ Non-Friable**	Various areas throughout the Facility **Approx. 50SF**	**HA-1 ACBMs in good condition with low potential for damage**	Test upon disturbance. No action. O&M until removed

Changes Y/N	Homogeneous Area/ Material Description/ Category/Friability	Material Location & Amount	Material Condition Assessment	Remarks
N	**8B/ Roofing material/ Miscellaneous/ Non-Friable**	Facility Roof	**HA-3 ACBMs in good condition with potential for significant damage**	Test upon disturbance. No action. O&M until removed

6.0 CONCLUSIONS

This inspection was based upon information found in the Previous Inspection Reports, the AHERA Management Plan for the school, and EHS's visual assessment of the school. There is a possibility that ACBMs may exist which could not be identified within the scope of the survey or which were not apparent during the site visit. This reinspection covered only those areas that were exposed and/or physically accessible to the inspector.

Based on the information in the original management plan, subsequent reinspections, and this reinspection, six homogenous materials at John W. Runyon Elementary School are known or assumed to contain greater than 1-percent asbestos. These materials are:

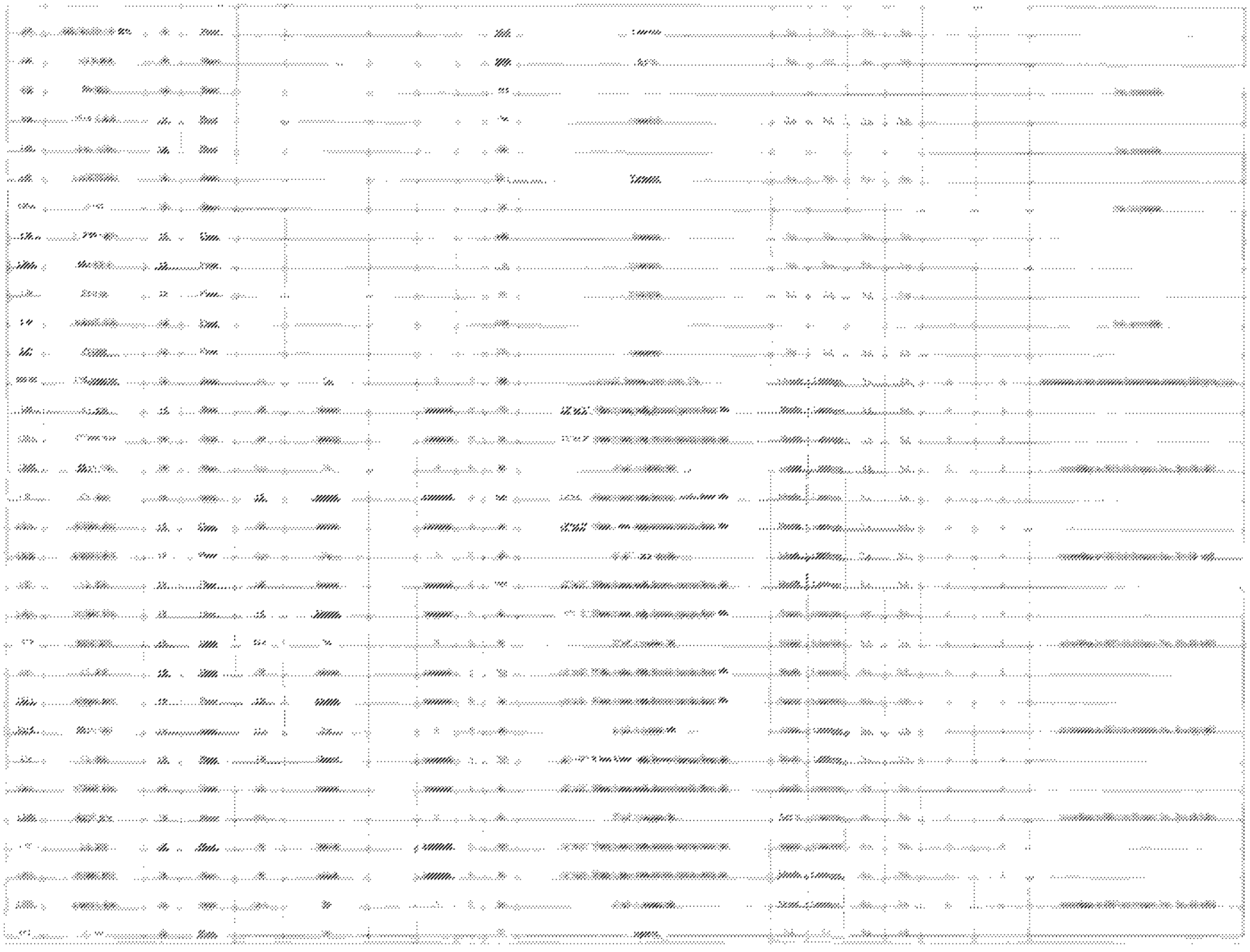
- 12"x12" Brown color resilient floor tile with associated mastic located in various areas throughout the building.
- 12"x12" White color with brown specks resilient floor tile with associated mastic located in various areas throughout the building.
- Mastic under the carpet.
- TSI on pipes located in chases and in the crawlspace throughout the facility.
- Roofing material throughout the facility roof
- Fire Doors located in various areas throughout the facility

The above-mentioned ACBMs were found to be in fair to good condition and should be maintained under an operations and maintenance program until they are removed. If identified in other locations in the facility, these materials should be assumed to be asbestos-containing until laboratory analysis determines otherwise. The ACBMs appeared to present a low hazard to the subject property. However, material conditions may change suddenly or gradually.

There is a new addition to the original building and the new addition has been inspected. According to the BENAS inspection report (BENAS Project #BA-18-1402), the new addition's building materials are asbestos free.

ROOM	AREA	FLOOR PLAN	MATERIAL TYPE	HOMOG	CHANGE	ACTIONS	ASB?	FRI?	SQFT	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	HAZARD #	RESPONSE	NOTES
100A1	CORRIDOR	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	1070	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
100	OFFICE HM	1A	Floor	1A & 1B	Altered		Assumed	N	240	Wall Carpet and half 12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
100A	OFFICE MANAGER	1A	Floor	2A	No		Assumed	N	99	Carpet	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
	CLOSET	1A	Floor	2A	No		Assumed	N	3	Carpet	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
	DUST RM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	9	2"x2" Ceramic Tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IB-1402
138	CLASIC RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	185	12"x12" Brown color floor tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
139	NURSE RM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	60	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
140	STORE RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	80	12"x12" Brown color floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
	REST RM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	36	2"x2" Ceramic Tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IB-1402
101	STORAGE RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	363	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
102	BK. RM.	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	150	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
103	ASST. PRINC. RM	1A	Floor						285								Not Accessible
150	CUSD RM	1A	Floor		No				35	Concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA	1	1	
102	REST RM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	200	2"x2" Ceramic tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IB-1402
103	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
104	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
105	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
106	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
107	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
108	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
109	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
110	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
111	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
101	REST RM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	200	2"x2" Ceramic tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IB-1402
151	CUSD	1A	Floor						35	Concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA	1	1	
	FAC. EXC.	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	336	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
	REST RM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	35	2"x2" Ceramic tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IB-1402
100A2	CORRIDOR	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	1400	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
112	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
113	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A
114	CL RM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Mastic	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOMOG:F2A

115	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
1990139	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	700	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
1195	CLINICS/GENT'S BM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	420	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
116	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	700	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
1993A1	CORRIDOR	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	2674	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
105	MENS BM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	250	2"x2" Ceramic tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IE-1402
178	CLSD	1A	Floor						30	Concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA	1	1	
179	MENS BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		N	N	30	2"x2" Ceramic tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IE-1402
186	IMR BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	270	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
117	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	660	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
118	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1B	No		Assumed	N	660	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
119	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
120	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	660	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
121	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	660	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
122	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	660	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
123	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
124	LAB BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	860	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
125	MOF BM	1A	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	840	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
107	REST BM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	375	2"x2" Ceramic tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IE-1402
177	CLSD	1A	Floor						30	Concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA	1	1	
180	OFFICE BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	120	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
178	REST BM	1A	Floor	11A	No		N	N	60	2"x2" Ceramic tile	Grout	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to BENAS Project No.: BA-IE-1402
191	TECH BM	1A	Floor	2A	No		Assumed	N	200	Carpet	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
191A	STORE BM	1A	Floor						30								Not Accessible
126	DEFICE BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	510	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
128	LAB BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
129	CL, BM	1A	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	660	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
1993B1	CORRIDOR	1B	Floor	1A	No		Y	N	2640	12"x12" Brown color Floor Tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	According to the original Inspection Report HOSMOG/E1A
140	AUDTR	1B	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	1190	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
140A	STAGE	1B	Floor						640	Wood	NA	NA	NA	NA			
127	WK BM	1B	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	495	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	
127A	OFFICE	1B	Floor	1B	Altered		Assumed	N	135	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks floor tile	Marble	Concrete	NA	NA	1	1	



Legend	
	Asbestos Containing
Inspections	PACS AS Present No Rx 10 1401

Sample Area	
1A	12"x12" Brown Color Floor Tile & Mastic
1B	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks Floor Tile & Mastic
1C	9"x9" Floor Tile & Mastic
2A	Mastic Only
3A	Carpet TSI
3B	Cove Carpet TSI
4A	Mechanical Room TSI
4B	Air Handler TSI
5A	CEM. Stucco TSI
5B	Misc. Stucco TSI
6A	Wainscot Putty
7A	Resilient Sheet Vinyl Cutback
7B	Floor Leveling or Concrete
8A	Vinyl Tile Adhesive
9A	Sheet Vinyl Underlayment
9B	Hardboard
10A	Fire Blanket
11A	Grout

Hazard Assessment	Friable	Cond.	Friable
1	N	Good	Low
2	N	Good	Moderate
3	N	Good	High
4	Y or N	Fair	Low
5	Y or N	Fair	Moderate
6	Y or N	Fair	High
7	Y	Significantly	Any

Restrictions	
1	Operations Limited Maintenance
2	Restrict Access
3	Outdoor
4	Encapsulate
5	Remove when Feasible

ROOM	AREA	FLOOR PLAN	HOMOG	CHANGE	ACTIONS	ASB*	FRI*	SQFT	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	HAZARD #	RESPONSE	NOTES
	CRAWL SPACE	Not shown	3A	No		Y	Y	7,450	Black tar	Canvas covering	*Asbestos containing insulation	NA	NA	3	5	According to Original Inspection report: HOMOG 4A &4B
	ROOFING MATERIAL	Not shown	8B	No		Y	N	50,000	Black tar	*Asbestos containing felt material	NA	NA	NA	1	5	According to Original Inspection report: HOMOG 9A
	FIRE DOORS	1B	10A	No		Y	N	50	Metal Outer Shell	*Asbestos containing Insulation	NA	NA	NA	1	1	According to Original Inspection report: HOMOG10B

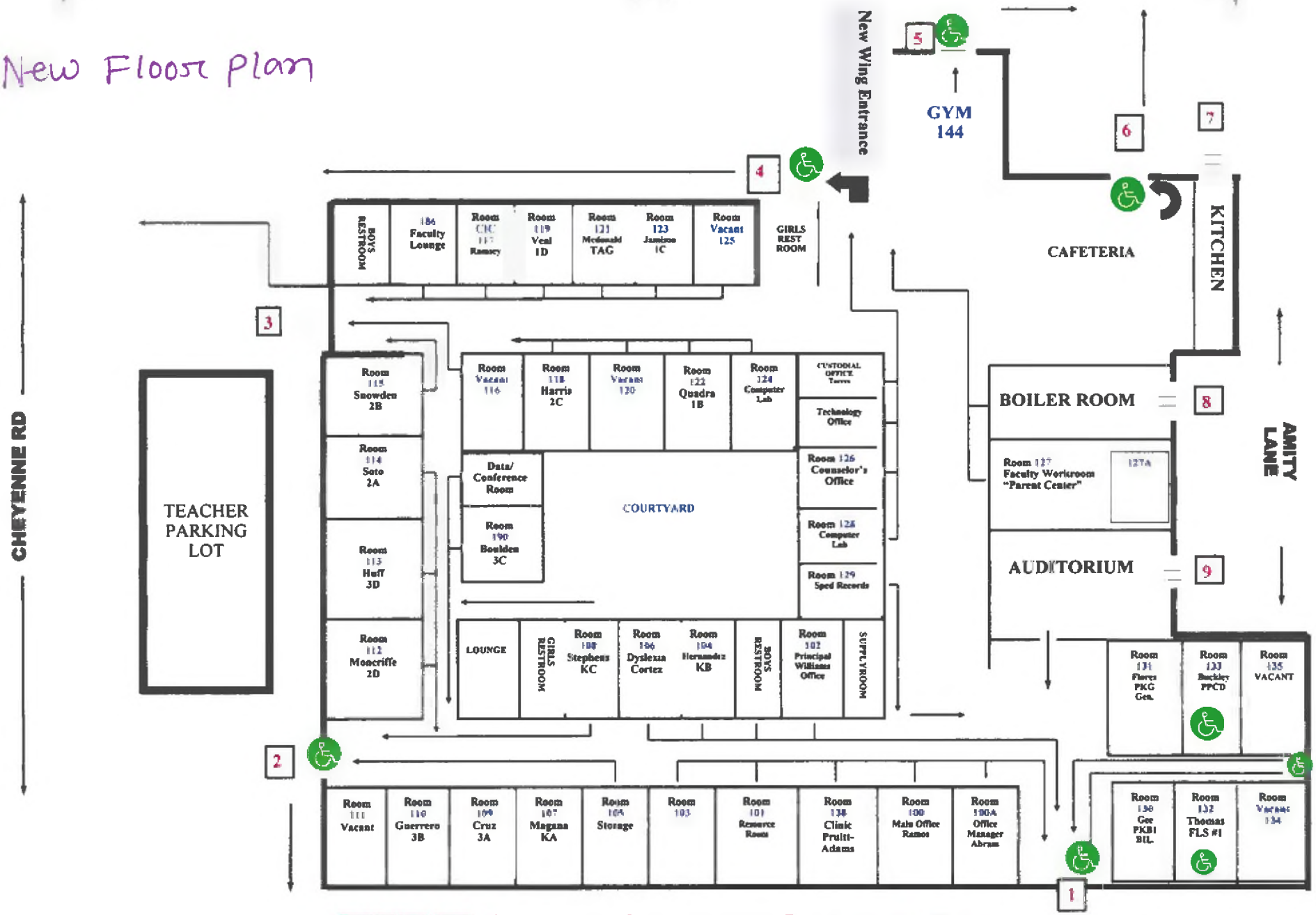
Legend	
	*Asbestos Containing
HOMOG	Original Floor Tile Building Key

Homog Area	
1A	12"x12" Brown Color Floor Tile & Mastic
1B	12"x12" White Color with Brown Specks Floor Tile & Mastic
1C	9"x9" Floor Tile & Mastic
2A	Mastic Only
3A	Crawl TSI
3B	GYM Crawl TSI
4A	Mechanical Room TSI
4B	Air Handler TSI
5A	GYM Room TSI
5B	Misc. Issues TSI
6A	Window Putty
7A	Retardant Spray-On Ceiling
7B	Fireproofing on Concrete
8A	Ceiling Tile Adhesive
8B	Roofing material
9A	Joint Compound
9B	Hardboard
10A	Fire Doors
11A	Grout

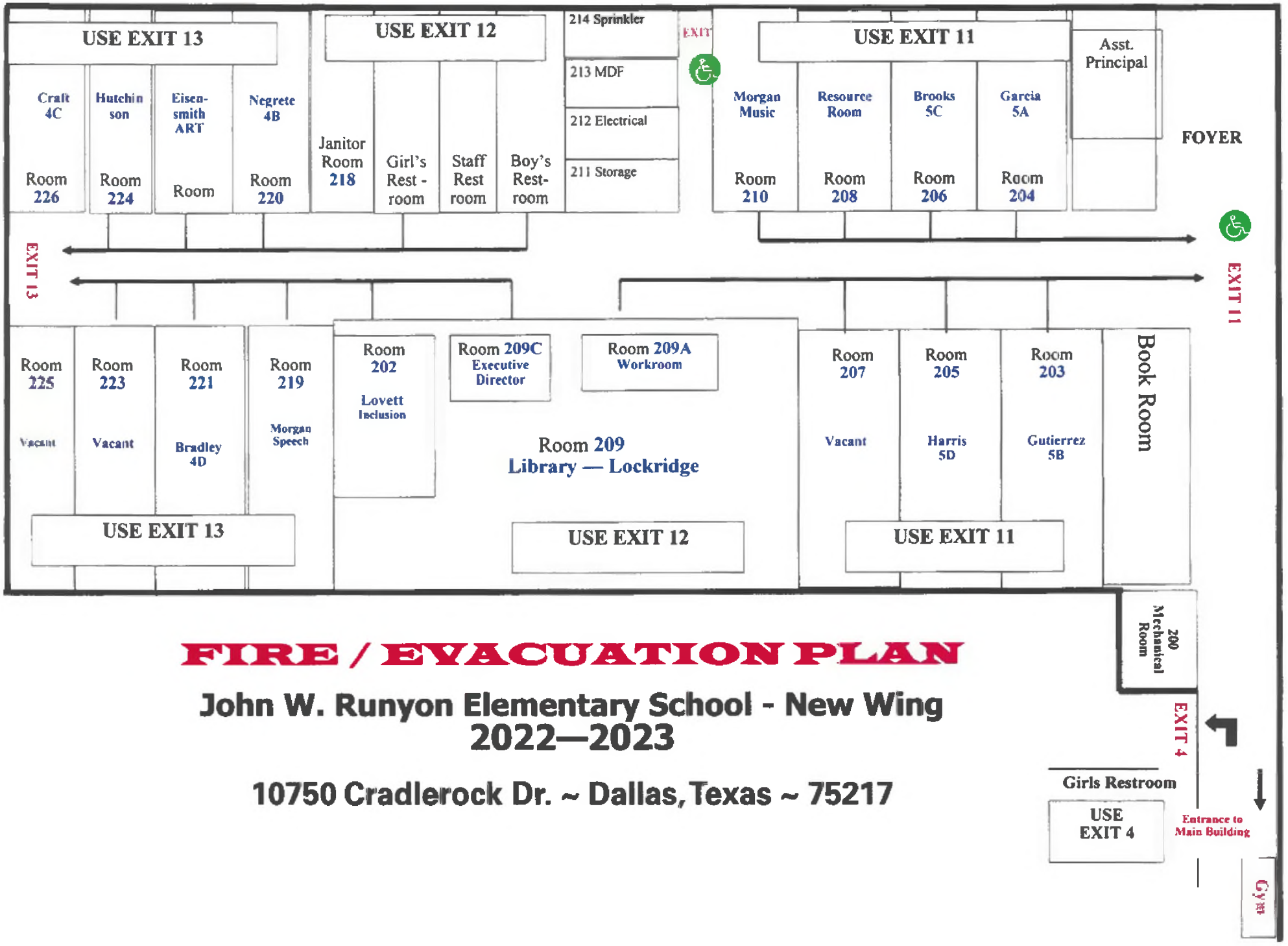
Friable Assessment	Friable	Cond.	Disturb.
1	N	Good	Low
2	N	Good	Moderate
3	N	Good	High
4	Y or N	Fair	Low
5	Y or N	Fair	Moderate
6	Y or N	Fair	High
7	Y	Signif	Any

Response	
1	Operations and Maintenance
2	Restrict Access
3	Enclose
4	Encapsulate
5	Remove when Feasible

New Floor Plan



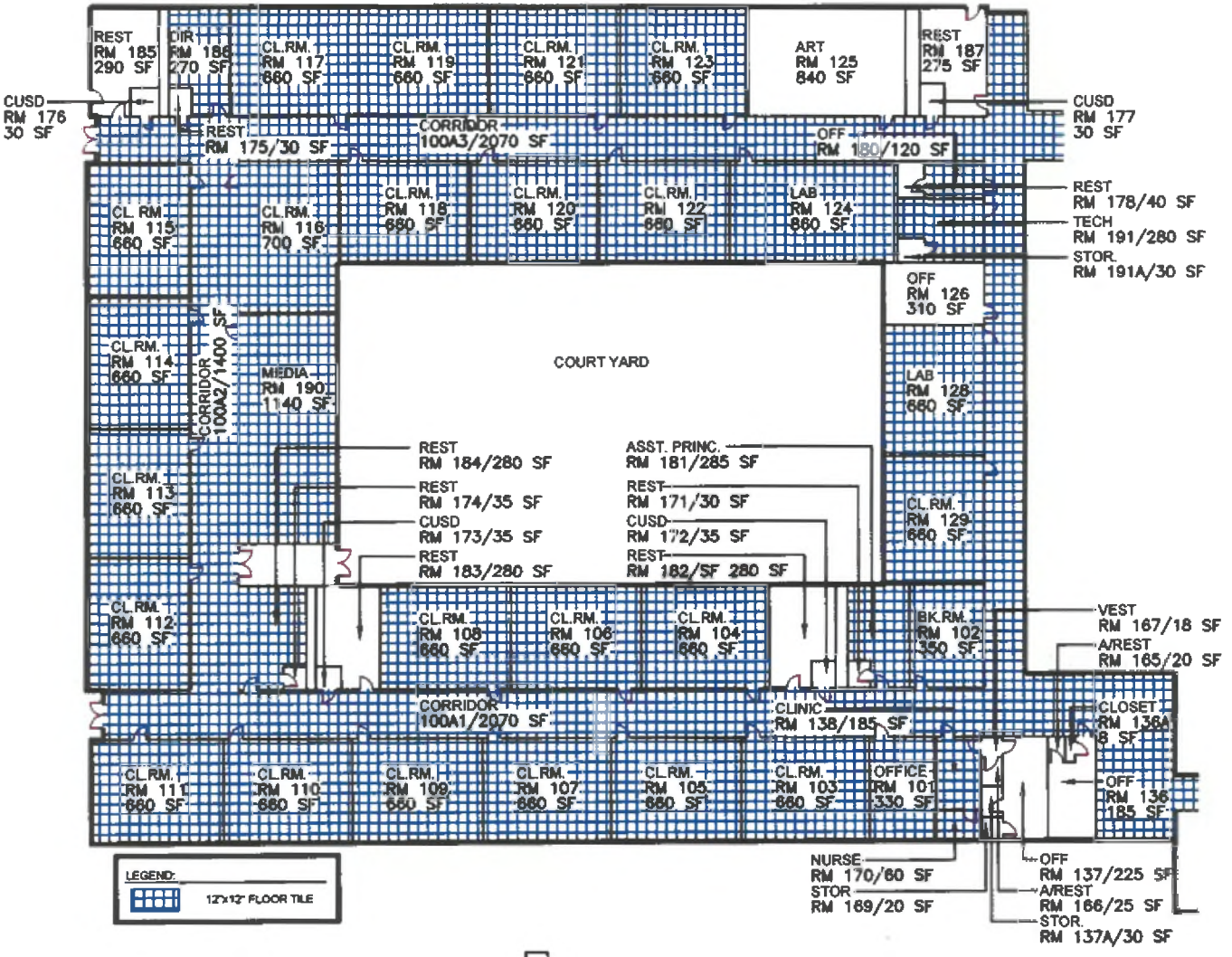
New Floor Plan



FIRE / EVACUATION PLAN

John W. Runyon Elementary School - New Wing
2022—2023

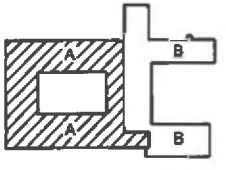
10750 Cradlerock Dr. ~ Dallas, Texas ~ 75217



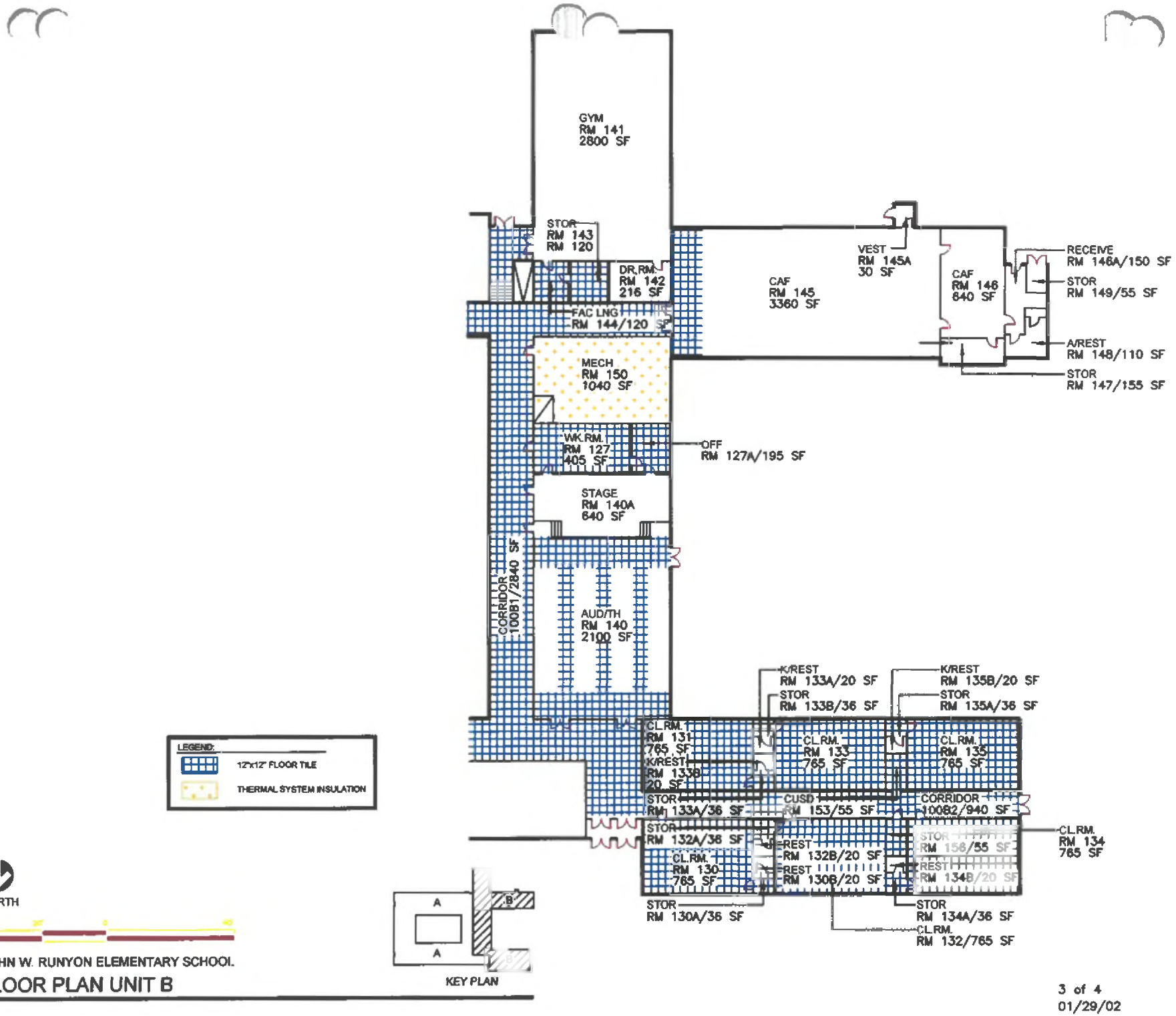
NORTH

JOHN W. RUNYON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL

FLOOR PLAN UNIT A



KEY PLAN



JOHN W. RUNYON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL

FLOOR PLAN UNIT B

Appendix C

FORMS

Texas Department of State Health Services
Asbestos Survey and Notification Requirements for Renovation of Buildings
Decision Tree Flowchart

NOTICE: This document summarizes applicable law. Please consult state and federal law for complete requirements.

Is the structure to be renovated a single family dwelling or an apartment or condominium of 4 or less units?

Yes

Will it be converted to an apartment or condo with 5 or more units, or to a commercial or public building?

No

Are other homes or commercial or public buildings on the same site also being renovated?

No

TAHPR and NESHAP not applicable. OSHA worker protection rules may apply.

Yes

Regulated by the National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAP). Asbestos survey must be performed. Are the other buildings public?

No

Asbestos survey must be performed in accordance with NESHAP. In commercial buildings the inspector must have had an EPA/State approved asbestos inspector's course. Does the survey identify Regulated Asbestos Containing Material (RACM) above the 160 square feet, 260 linear feet, or 35 cubic feet removal threshold (total for all buildings combined)?

Yes

- Submit notification to DSHS a minimum of 10 working days before any activity begins that will disturb or remove RACM.
- RACM must be removed prior to activity that would disturb it.
- NESHAP trained person must be on site during removal of RACM.

No

Is the project part of an O&M plan whose activities over the course of the calendar year will exceed the RACM notification threshold?

Yes

Submit annual O&M notification to DSHS.

No

TAHPR and NESHAP not applicable. OSHA worker protection rules may apply.

Yes

Regulated by the TAHPR and/or the NESHAP. Is the facility a public building (allows general public access) or will it be used as a public building?

No

Asbestos survey in public buildings must be performed in accordance with TAHPR by a DSHS licensed asbestos inspector. Does the survey identify ACBM?

Yes

- Submit notification to DSHS a minimum of 10 working days before any activity begins that will disturb or remove ACBM.
- ACBM on the interior of the building, and on covered walkways and porticos, must be abated by a licensed asbestos abatement contractor and if greater than 160 square feet, 260 linear feet, or 35 cubic feet designed by licensed consultant.
- RACM on the exterior must be abated in accordance with NESHAP.
- NESHAP trained person must be on site during removal of RACM.

No

TAHPR and NESHAP not applicable. OSHA worker protection rules may apply.

Key:
EPA – Environmental Protection Agency
DSHS – Department of State Health Services
TAHPR – Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules
NESHAP – National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants
OSHA – Occupational Health and Safety Administration
RACM – Regulated Asbestos Containing Material
ACBM – Asbestos Containing Building Materials

Publication No. E18-14059 rev 02/04/13

TEXAS Department of State Health Services

For Office Use Only:

Notification #:_____

ASBESTOS/DEMOLITION NOTIFICATION FORM

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOX- FOR DEPARTMENT USE ONLY
Date received:___/___/___ Postmark date:___/___/___ Walk-in date:___/___/___

TYPE OF NOTIFICATION: ***(Select one and fill in the requested information)***

☐ **ORIGINAL** ☐ **AMENDMENT No. ___** ☐ **CANCELLATION**

☐ **EMERGENCY**

- Was emergency request made to the Regional Office or Environmental Health Notifications Group (EHNG) by phone? ☐Yes ☐No
- If yes, the DSHS reference #:_____ and name of the Regional or EHNG representative with whom you spoke? _____ Date: __/__/__ Time: _____ ☐a.m. ☐p.m.
- Describe the reason for Emergency: _____

_____

☐ **ORDERED:** (***For structurally unsound facilities, attach copy of demolition order and identify Governmental Official)***
Name: _____ Registration No. _____
Title: _____
Date of order (MM/DD/YY): __/__/__ Date order to begin (MM/DD/YY): __/__/__

(x) Below if Amended

AMENDMENTS: ***You must complete the entire form and mark the appropriate check box(es) along the left-hand side of this form to indicate amended information.***

TYPE OF WORK

☐ Asbestos Abatement ☐ Demolition ☐ Annual Consolidated O&M ☐ Abatement/Demolition
Is this a phased project? ☐ Yes ☐ No

FACILITY INFORMATION

1. Facility Location

☐……. Description or Facility Name: _____
☐……. Physical Address: _____
☐……. County: _____ City: _____ Zip: _____
☐……. Facility Contact: _____ Phone #: (___) ___-____

2. Type of Facility ***(Select one)***
☐ Public ☐ Federal ☐ Industrial/Manufacturing ☐ NESHAP-Only ☐ Public School K-12

3. Facility Details

☐…… Description of Area/Room Number: _____
☐…… Age of Building: ____ Size: _____ Number of Floors: ___
☐…… Is this building occupied? ☐ Yes ☐ No
☐…… Prior Use: _____
☐…… Future Use: _____
☐…… Date of Asbestos Survey/NESHAP Inspection: __/__/__
☐…… DSHS Inspector License #: _____
☐…… Analytical Method: ☐ PLM ☐ TEM ☐ Assumed Asbestos ☐ No Suspect Material
☐…… DSHS Laboratory License #: _____

WORK SCHEDULE/ASBESTOS AMOUNTS (***Note: if the start date(s) entered below cannot be met, the DSHS Regional or Local Program office must be notified prior to the scheduled start date. Failure to do so is a violation of TAHPA Section 295.61.)***

1. Asbestos Abatement Work Schedule:

☐…… Start date: __/__/__ and End date: __/__/__
☐…… Work days: ☐Mon. ☐Tues. ☐Wed. ☐Thurs. ☐Fri. ☐Sat. ☐Sun.
☐…… Working hours: _____ ☐ a.m. ☐ p.m. to _____ ☐a.m. ☐p.m.

2. Demolition Work Schedule:

☐…… Start date: __/__/__ and End date: __/__/__
☐…… Work days: ☐Mon. ☐Tues. ☐Wed. ☐Thurs. ☐Fri. ☐Sat. ☐Sun.
☐…… Working hours: _____ ☐ a.m. ☐ p.m. to _____ ☐a.m. ☐p.m.

(x) Below if Amended

C. ASBESTOS AMOUNTS

☐…… Is Asbestos Present? ☐ Yes ☐ No ***(Complete the table below if asbestos is present)***

Asbestos-Containing Building Material Type	**Approximate amount of Asbestos**						
Only mark the boxes below on this chart if they are being amended	**Pipes**	**Ln Ft**	**Ln M**	**Surface Area**	**SQ Ft**	**SQ M**	**Cu Ft**
☐ **RACM to be removed**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **RACM left in place during demolition**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **Interior Category I non-friable removed**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **Exterior Category I non-friable removed**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **Category I non-friable left in place during demolition**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **Interior Category II non-friable removed**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **Exterior Category II non-friable removed**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **Category II non-friable left in place during demolition**		☐	☐		☐	☐	
☐ **RACM Off-Facility Component**							

DESCRIPTION OF WORK PRACTICES AND PROCEDURES

☐…… **1**. Description of procedures to be followed in the event that unexpected asbestos is found or previously non-friable asbestos material becomes crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder: _____

_____

_____

☐…… **2.** Description of planned demolition or abatement work, type of material, and method(s) to be used: _____

_____

_____

☐……. **3.** Description of work practices and engineering controls to be used to prevent emissions of asbestos at the demolition site:

_____

_____

_____

PROJECT INFORMATION

☐…… **A. FACILITY OWNER**

Facility Owner Name: _____
Phone #: (___) ___ - ____
Attention: _____
Mailing Address: _____
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____

☐…… **B. ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR #1**

DSHS Asbestos Contractor License #: _____
Contractor Name: _____
Address: _____
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____
Office Phone #: (___) ___ - ____ Job-Site Phone #: (___) ___ - ____

☐…… **C. ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR #2 (*Only if there is more than one Contractor*)**

DSHS Asbestos Contractor License #: _____
Contractor Name: _____
Address: _____
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____
Office Phone #: (___) ___ - ____ Job-Site Phone #: (___) ___ - ____

D. ASBESTOS SUPERVISOR

☐…… DSHS Supervisor License #: _____ Site Supervisor: _____
☐…… DSHS Supervisor License #: _____ Site Supervisor: _____

(x) Below if Amended

E. NESHAP TRAINED INDIVIDUAL

☐ …… NESHAP Trained Individual: _____
Certification Date: __/__/__

☐ ……**F. DEMOLITION CONTRACTOR**
Demolition Contractor: _____
Address: _____
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____ Phone #: (___) ___-____

☐ ……**G. PROJECT CONSULTANT OR OPERATOR**
DSHS License No.: _____
Project Consultant or Operator: _____
Address: _____
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____ Phone #: (___) ___-____

☐ …… **H. Waste Transporter**
DSHS Waste Transporter License #: _____
Waste Transporter: _____
Address: _____
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____
Contact Person: _____Phone #: (___) ___-____

☐ ……**I. Waste Disposal Site**
TCEQ Permit #: _____
Waste Disposal Site: _____
Address: _____
City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____
Phone #: (___) ___-____

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

I hereby declare that I have examined this notification and, to the best of my knowledge and belief, all information provided is complete, true, and correct. I affirm that I am the owner, operator, or delegated agent and that I am responsible for the fee associated with this notification. I also understand that the owner, operator, or delegated agent is responsible for notification to the department.

_____ Date: __/__/__
(Signature of Owner, Operator or Delegated Agent)

_____
(Printed Name & Title)

E-mail Address: _____ Phone #: (___) ___-____

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

NOTIFICATION TIMELINESS REQUIREMENT:
Your Asbestos/Demolition Notification form must be postmarked no less than ten working days (not calendar days) prior to the start of any asbestos abatement or demolition.

FILING FEE: An invoice will be mailed to the facility owner upon completion of the project.

CALL FOR ASSISTANCE: (512) 834-6747 or (888) 778-9440 (toll free in Texas)

MAIL FORM TO: ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH NOTIFICATIONS GROUP
TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF STATE HEALTH SERVICES
PO BOX 143538
AUSTIN, TX 78714-3538

Department of State Health Services
Environmental and Consumer Safety Section – Inspection Unit
P.O. Box 149347, Austin, TX 78714-9347 mail code 1986
Phone (512) 834-6787

Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules
Asbestos Abatement Inspection Checklist

Notification No. _____ _____ **Priority** _____ **Tracking No.** _____
Reason for Inspection: Notified _____ **Discretionary** _____ **Complaint** _____ **Referral** _____ **Follow-up** _____
Type of Facility: Public Building _____ _____ **NESHAP Facility** _____
Type of Inspection: Renovation _____ **O&M** _____ **Phased** _____ **Demolition** _____ **Other** _____
Inspection Date: _____ **Time:** _____ **Inspector:** _____ **Region:** _____
Facility Name: _____ **Owner:** _____
Facility Address: _____ **Address:** _____
City: _____ **Zip:** _____ **City:** _____ **State:** _____ **Zip:** _____
County: _____ **Phone:** _____

Contractor: _____ **Address:** _____
City: _____ **State:** _____ **Zip:** _____
Project Description: _____
Name(s) and title(s) of person(s) being interviewed: _____
_____

Owner/Operator Responsibilities (295.34; 61.145)	**Yes**	**No**	**Unk.**	**N/A**
1. Was a survey conducted? [295.34(c)]				
2. Was a notification provided? [295.61(a)]				
3. Was the notification form filled out completely and properly? [295.61(a)]				
4. Did the project begin on the notified (amended) date? [295.61(f)]				
5. Is the asbestos abatement work being performed by licensed entity? [295.34(b)]				
Work Practice				
6. Is a regulated area established? [295.60(a)(3)]				
7. Are critical barriers properly installed? [295.60(b)]				
8. Are moveable objects removed from the containment? [295.60(c)]				
9. Is wall sheeting properly installed?[295.60(d)]				
10. Is floor sheeting properly installed? [295.60(d)]				
11. Is the decontamination system functional? [295.60(e)]				
12. Is the decontamination system being used properly? [295.60(e)]				
13. Is the HVAC serving the containment area shut down? [295.60(f)]				
14. Are danger signs in English and Spanish posted? [295.60(g)]				
15. Is there sufficient containment ventilation? [295.60(i)]				
16. Is monitoring of differential pressure showing –0.02" wc?[295.60(i)]				
17. Is ACBM or RACM adequately wet? [295.60(j)(1); 61.145(c)(3)]				
18. Is ACBM or RACM properly containerized and labeled? [295.60(j)]				
19. Are ground-fault circuit interrupters (GFCI) being used for circuits in containment? [295.60(m)(2)]				
20. Is there one fire extinguisher per 3,000 square feet of containment? [295.60(m)(1)]				
Contractor Responsibilities				
21. Are there appropiate viewing windows? [295.60(d)]				
22. Are workers properly using personal protective equipment while in containment? [295.45(f)(5)]				
23. Is the supervisor at the job site during abatement activity? [295.58(b)(1), (2)]				
Consultant Responsibilities				
24. Is a project manager/consultant on site during abatement activity? [295.47(h)(4)]				
25. Is specification/design signed by consultant? [295.47(i)]				
26. Is baseline air monitoring included in specifications? [295.58(i) (1)(A)]				
27. Is Project Manager, responsibilities and authority designated in writing?[295.47(h)(4)]				

Department of State Health Services
Environmental and Consumer Safety Section – Inspection Unit
P.O. Box 149347, Austin, TX 78714-9347 mail code 1986
Phone (512) 834-6787

Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules
Asbestos Abatement Inspection Checklist (Continued)

Tracking No:_____

Air Monitoring

28. Is ambient air monitoring being conducted? [295.58(i)(2)(A)(B)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
29. Is personal air monitoring being conducted, or NEA available? [295.60(m)(3)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___

Records On Site

30. Are copies of Orders posted? (if applicable) [295.58(j)(2)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
31. Is the DSHS information poster posted on site? [295.58(j)(1)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
32. Are applicable documents on site? [295.58(k)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
    (License, training, physical exam and fit test documents current and on site?)
33. Are licenses or license cards current and appropriate to conduct activities?
    [295.35 – 295.56] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
    If "no," name(s) and employer:_____
34. Is a contract or specifications available? (if applicable) [295.62(c)(2)(C)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
35. Are daily sign-in/out logs being maintained? [295.62(c)(2)(E)&(F)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
36. Are air monitoring results posted on site? [(295.62(c)(2)(G)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
37. Is a written respiratory program available on site? [295.62(c)(2)(H)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
38. Are written personnel safety practices available on site? [295.62(c)(2)(K)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
39. Are original department issued ID cards for each licensee on site? [295.68(f)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
    If "no," name(s) of Person(s)_____

Waste Containers/Transport

40. Are waste containers labeled with OSHA warning? [295.60(j)(3)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
41. Do waste containers/bags have generator labels? [295.60(j)(3)]..... ___ ___ ___ ___
42. Is the waste transporting vehicle marked during loading? [61.150(c)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___
43. Is the Waste Transporter licensed? [295.56(a)] ..... ___ ___ ___ ___

Comments:

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

Inspector's Signature _____ **Date** _____

Competent Person/Supervisor's Signature_____ **Date** _____

Additional Signatures (if applicable) _____ **Date** _____

Your signature verifies only that the inspection results were explained to you.

The above information will be forwarded to the Texas Depa ent of State Health Services, Division for Regulatory Services for further review. Deficiencies May Result in Notice of Alleged Violation

Distribution: Original- DSHS Central Office, Pink- Inspection Site, Yellow- DSHS Inspection

Department of State Health Services
Environmental and Consumer Safety Section – Inspection Unit
P.O. Box 149347, Austin, TX 78714-9347 mail code 1986
Phone (512) 834-6787

Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules
Renovation/New Construction Inspection Checklist

Tracking No. _____

Reason for Inspection: Discretionary _____ **Complaint** _____ **Referral** _____ **Follow-up** _____
Type of Facility: Public Building _____ **NESHAP Facility** _____
Inspection Date: _____ **Time:** _____ **Inspector:** _____ **Region:** _____
Facility Name: _____ **Owner:** _____
Facility Address: _____ **Address:** _____
City: _____ **Zip:** _____ **City:** _____ **State:** ____ **Zip:** _____
County: _____ **Phone:** _____

Contractor: _____ **Address:** _____
City: _____ **State:** _____ **Zip:** _____
Project Description: Renovation _____ New Construction _____
Name(s) and title(s) of person(s) being interviewed: _____
_____

	Yes	No	Unk.	N/A
1. Was an Asbestos survey conducted prior to renovation activity? [295.34(c)]	___	___	___	___
2. Was ACBM or RACM removed prior to renovation activity?	___	___	___	___
3. Are suspect materials being installed?	___	___	___	___
4. Are Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) available for new suspect materials?	___	___	___	___
5. Does MSDS identity match the installed or stored on site materials?	___	___	___	___
6. Does MSDS identify the presence of asbestos or mineral fiber? (If "Yes" collect samples)	___	___	___	___
7. Is Architect, Engineer, Asbestos Consultant, or Asbestos Management Planner aware that MSDS can be certified for later use by owner for survey?	___	___	___	___

Comments: _____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

Inspector's Signature: _____ **Date:** _____

Contractor's/Supervisor's Signature: _____ **Date:** _____

Your signature verifies only that the inspection results were explained to you.

The above information will be forwarded to the Department of State Health Services, Division for Regulatory Services for further review. Deficiencies May Result in Notice of Alleged Violation

Distribution: Original – DSHS Central Office, Pink – Inspection Site, Yellow – DSHS Inspection Unit

Publication # EH-17 Revised 0609

Department of State Health Services
Environmental and Consumer Safety Section – Inspection Unit
P.O. Box 149347, Austin, TX 78714-9347 mail code 1986
Phone (512) 834-6787

Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules
Demolition Inspection Checklist

Notification No._____ **Priority**_____**Tracking No.** _____
Reason for Inspection: Notified _____ **Discretionary** _____ **Complaint** _____ **Referral** _____ **Follow-up** _____
Type of Facility: Public Building _____ **NESHAP Facility** _____
Inspection Date: _____ **Time:** _____ **Inspector:** _____ **Region:** _____
Facility Name: _____ **Owner:** _____
Facility Address: _____ **Address:** _____
City: _____ **Zip:** _____ **City:** _____ **State:**____ **Zip:**_____
County: _____ **Phone:** _____

Contractor:_____ **Address:**_____
City:_____ **State:** _____ **Zip:**_____
Project Description: _____
Name(s) and title(s) of person(s) being interviewed:_____
_____

	Yes	No	Unk.	N/A
1. Was an asbestos inspection conducted prior to demolition activity? [61.145(a)]	___	___	___	___
2. Was ACBM or RACM removed prior to demolition? [61.145(c)(1)]	___	___	___	___
3. Was a timely notification submitted (or amended)? [61.145(b)(1)]	___	___	___	___
4. Is notification form filled out completely and properly? [61.145(b)(2)]	___	___	___	___
5. Did demolition begin on the notified (amended) date? [61.145(b)(3)(C)]	___	___	___	___
6. Is RACM that is not removed being kept wet during demolition? [61.145(c)(1)(iii)]	___	___	___	___
7. Is contaminated debris being treated as asbestos-containing waste material? [61.145(c)(1)(iii)]	___	___	___	___
8. Is there a NESHAP trained individual on site? (When RACM is present) [61.145(c)(8)]	___	___	___	___
9. Are visible emissions being prevented? (When RACM is present) [61.150(a)]	___	___	___	___
10. Are warning labels visible and legible on asbestos-containing waste materials (ACWM) packaging? [61.150(a)(1)(iv)]	___	___	___	___
11. Are generator labels on containers or wrapped materials that contain ACWM? [61.150(a)(1)(v)]	___	___	___	___
12. Is vehicle transporting ACWM marked during loading? [61.150(c)]	___	___	___	___

Comments: _____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

Inspector's Signature: _____ **Date:**_____

Competent Person/Supervisor's Signature: _____ **Date:** _____

Your signature verifies only that the inspection results were explained to you.

The above information will be forwarded to the Department of State Health Services, Division for Regulatory Services for further review. Deficiencies May Result in Notice of Alleged Violation .

Distribution: Original- DSHS Central Office, Pink- Inspection Site, Yellow-DSHS Inspection Unit

Publication # F18-12270 revised '

mailed out
4/18/11

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF STATE HEALTH SERVICES

FILE COPY

DAVID L. LAKEY, M.D.
COMMISSIONER

P.O. Box 149347
Austin, Texas 78714-9347
1-888-963-7111
TTY: 1-800-735-2989
www.dshs.state.tx.us

April 18, 2011

Drew Garner, Jr., President
Garner & Associates, Inc.
13027 Stiles Lane
Sugar Land, TX 77478

RE: Request for clarification on containment requirements

Dear Mr. Garner:

The Texas Department of State Health Services (DSHS) has received your March 29, 2011, letter regarding full containment requirements as required by the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules (TAHPR). Your specific questions regarding inverted prep will be addressed in the order listed in your letter.

1. Is full ceiling prep ("inverted prep") now required for all asbestos abatement projects in public buildings (yes or no)?

2. Is full ceiling prep ("inverted prep") now required for all asbestos abatement projects in public buildings with drywall or plaster ceilings (yes or no)?

3. Is full ceiling prep ("inverted prep") now required for all asbestos abatement projects in public buildings with suspended acoustical ceiling systems (yes or no)?

DSHS response to Questions 1-3:

No, ceiling prep ("inverted prep") is an industry term not addressed in the TAHPR and is not terminology used by DSHS. Any solid ceiling that is not open to adjacent areas (sealed) is not required by the TAHPR to be covered (prepped) with plastic sheeting. However, a suspended ceiling with ceiling tiles is not a sealed surface, and if it is open to other parts of the building (such as an open air plenum), then the suspended ceiling should be covered with a critical barrier. TAHPR §295.60(b) states, "Regulated areas within which asbestos abatement is to be conducted shall be separated from adjacent areas by impermeable barriers such as plastic sheeting attached securely in place. All openings between containment areas and adjacent areas, including but not limited to windows, doorways, elevator openings, corridor entrances, ventilation openings, drains, ducts, grills, grates, diffusers, and skylights, shall be sealed. All penetrations that could permit air infiltration or air leaks through the barrier shall be sealed, with exceptions of the make-up air provisions and the means of entry and exit." Critical barriers should be determined by the consultant for each project. Any individual asbestos consultant may determine that a ceiling is porous or cannot be cleaned and must be covered due to contamination concerns.

4. Are "critical barriers" with "splash guards" still allowed (as previously specified in a DSHS memorandum) for floor tile and mastic abatement projects (yes or no)?

   DSHS response to Question 4:

   Yes, the TAHPR, §295.60 (a)(2) states, "the individual asbestos consultant may specify work practices that vary from the requirements of this section as long as the work practices specified are at least as protective of public health and are clearly described in the project notification submitted to the Texas Department of Health (department). The burden of proof for establishing equivalent protection rests with the asbestos consultant."

   In addition, the 1999 TDH memorandum reiterates the above citation and states splash guards may be used when:

   - The use of splash guards is specified by a licensed consultant;
   - The consultant can defend that the practice is equally protective of public health;
   - The area abated is under negative pressure with critical barriers, and all other work practice requirements enumerated under §295.60 are met; and
   - The splash guard shall be at least four (4) feet high and consists of a least one layer of six (6) mil poly sheeting (or equivalent, as specified in §295.60(d).

5. Will a written clarification be made by the DSHS addressing this issue (yes or no)?

   DSHS response to Question 4:

   No, a written clarification is not required because the regulations clearly address your concerns. However, your questions and these responses will be posted on the asbestos website.

DSHS appreciates your interest in complying with the TAHPR regulations. If you have any questions, please contact Mr. Terry Collins, TAHPR/NESHAP Specialist, at (512) 834-6787 extension 2454 or Ms. Roxanna Guerrero, Asbestos Programs Coordinator, at (512) 834-6787 extension 2198.

Sincerely,

Annabelle Dillard, Manager
Environmental Hazards Group
Policy, Standards, and Quality Assurance Unit
Division for Regulatory Services

GARNER & ASSOCIATES, INC.

March 29, 2011

VIA: e-mail (1 Page)

Mr. Alan Morris
Asbestos Branch Manager
Texas Department of State Health Services
1100 W. 49th Street
Austin, Texas 78756

Dear Mr. Morris

This letter is in reference to a rumor in the Texas Asbestos Consulting and Abatement Industry that the Texas Department State Health Services is considering enforcement of full containment ("inverted prep") of ceilings on interior asbestos abatement projects. It is understood that DSHS Inspectors have recently informed Consultants and Contractors that they would report (as a violation) the Consultant and Contractor if they did not specify the construction of full containment ("inverted prep") of ceilings in any type of abatement project to include floor tile abatement projects.

As you are aware, the TAHPR addresses prep of floors and walls in TAHPR 295.60 (d) and does not specifically reference ceiling prep. However, Consultants usually specify "critical barriers" (one layer of plastic sheeting) over lights, vents, diffusers, other openings, etc. in ceilings. TAHPR 295.60 (b) defines a "critical barrier" as a " ... plastic sheeting attached securely in place". The TAHPR also indicates that "All openings between containment areas and adjacent areas, including but not limited to windows, doorways, elevator openings, corridor entrances, ventilation openings, drains, ducts, grills, grates, diffusers, and skylights, shall be sealed. All penetrations that could permit air infiltration or air leaks through the barrier shall be sealed, ... ".

As a DSHS Licensed Asbestos Consultant and an Approved Asbestos Training Instructor, I need immediate clarification and yes or no answers to the following questions;

1. Is full ceiling prep ("inverted prep") now required for all asbestos abatement projects in public buildings (yes of no)?

2. Is full ceiling prep ("inverted prep") now required for all asbestos abatement projects in public buildings with drywall or plaster ceilings (yes of no)?

3. Is full ceiling prep ("inverted prep") now required for all asbestos abatement projects in public buildings with suspended acoustical ceiling systems (yes of no)?

4. Are "critical barriers" with "splash guards" still allowed (as previously specified in a DSHS Memorandum) for floor tile & mastic abatement projects (yes or no)?

5. Will a written clarification be made by the DSHS addressing this issue (yes or no)?

Thank you for your cooperation and assistance with this issue. Please respond at your earliest convenience in an effort for us to continue to conduct asbestos consulting and training services in compliance with regulatory requirements.

Sincerely,

Drew Garner, Jr., President
Texas DSHS Asbestos Consultant
License No. 10-5001

13027 STILES LANE • SUGAR LAND, TEXAS 77478 • (281) 491-8844 • FAX (281) 491-8995

WASTE LOG

Project: _____ Landfill: _____

Contractor: _____ Waste Type: _____

Date/ Time	Building	Work Area	Quantity Removed (sf or lf)	Manifest No.	No. of Bags from Work Area	Estimated Weight	Container type	Hauler	Recorder

TEXAS Department of State Health Services

Regulatory Guidance and Clarification Documents - Asbestos Program

Table of Contents

- Resilient Floor Coverings
- Regulatory Clarification Documents
- Policy Letters
  - Notification of Phased Projects
  - Recognition of Emergency Notification

Resilient Floor Covering Institute Guidance

Please be advised that DSHS is enforcing the **1998 Resilient Floor Covering Institute (RFCI) Recommended Work Practices** (PDF, 589KB).

DSHS will publish any RFCI advisories, updates, etc. on the Asbestos Web Page following any changes on the use of the RFCI Guidelines. The January 1998 RFCI Guidelines are issued by the **Resilient Floor Covering Institute**; 996 Hungerford Drive; Suite 12B; Rockville, MD 20850; (301) 340-8580.

Asbestos Regulatory Clarification Documents

Date	Description	Publication Number / Link
2011-03	Removal of Non-Asbestos Flooring Adhered to Asbestos-Containing Adhesive/Mastic and the Applicability of the Resilient Floor Coverings Institute (RFCI) Recommended Work Practices	PSQA-ASB002 (PDF, 44KB)
2007-05	Demolition of Small Residential Buildings by Municipalities	PSQA-ASB001 (PDF, 27KB)

Asbestos Regulatory Clarifications Written by the Legacy TDH Asbestos Program Prior to August 2003

Date	Description	Publication Number / Link
2003-08	Removing Non-Asbestos Floor Tile with RFCI *This ARC has been replaced with PSQA-ASB002*	ARC-022 (PDF, 125KB)
2003-07	Qualifiable Licensing Experience	ARC-021 (PDF, 165KB)
2002-06	The Role of a General Contractor in a Renovation or Demolition Project	ARC-015 (PDF, 167KB)
2001-11	Work Practices that Deviate from the Provisions - Alternate Control Method Format and Process Approval	ARC-020 (PDF, 125KB)
2001-11	Application of Point Counting Bulk Samples in Regards to TAHPR	ARC-019 (PDF, 139KB)
2001-11	Asbestos Survey Conducted Prior to December 1998	ARC-018 (PDF, 131KB)
2001-11	Licensing Renewal Period	

Date	Description	Publication Number / Link
		ARC-017 (PDF, 111KB)
2001-11	The Meaning of "During the Project" in Public Buildings	**ARC-016** (PDF, 103KB)
2001-11	Analysis of Joint Compound for Asbestos Content	**ARC-014** (PDF, 137KB)
2001-11	The Impact of Sovereign Immunity and the Relationship of State to Federal Regulations	**ARC-013** (PDF, 121KB)
2001-11	Clarification of the Term "Airlock"	**ARC-012** (PDF, 109KB)
2001-11	Clarification of the Term Completion Date for Demolition and Renovation Projects	**ARC-011** (PDF, 128KB)
2001-11	The Applicability of TAHPR and NESHAP to Painting Asbestos-Containing Materials (ACM)	**ARC-010** (PDF, 124KB)
2001-02	The Demolition of a Public Building with Asbestos Containing Materials in Place	**ARC-009** (PDF, 208KB)
2001-02	AHERA, ESA's, EIS's, & the 3-sample requirement	**ARC-008** (PDF, 175KB)
2001-02	Amounts of Asbestos Regulated by the TAHPR	**ARC-007** (PDF, 482KB)
2001-02	Clarification of the Term "Start Date" for Asbestos Abatement Projects in Public Buildings	**ARC-006** (PDF, 153KB)
2001-02	The Utilization of Large Consolidated Waste Containment Systems (LCWCS)	**ARC-005** (PDF, 188KB)
2001-02	Eligibility for Licensure under 25 TAC §295.47(e)	**ARC-004** (PDF, 239KB)
2001-02	Air Monitoring Technician Working for an O&M Contractor	**ARC-003** (PDF, 204KB)
2001-02	Preparatory Work and Licensing	**ARC-002** (PDF, 201KB)
2001-02	Application of the TAHPR and NESHAP to the Demolition of a Public Building	**ARC-001** (PDF, 296KB)

Policy Letters

RE: POLICY 295.61 - NOTIFICATION OF PHASED ASBESTOS ABATEMENT AND/OR DEMOLITION PROJECTS

This policy replaces all previous policies and/or guidelines.

The following policy is adopted to help the regulated community comply with the intent and spirit of the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules (TAHPR) and the National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAP) regulations that apply to the notification procedures for public buildings and facilities.

A phased project notification is an option when all of the following conditions apply:

- The notified project does not exceed 12 consecutive calendar months from the project start date.
- The project has planned periods of inactivity.

- All asbestos abatement and/or demolition work will be performed at one site. The site may contain more than one building, such as an office complex or university, under the control of one owner or operator.

To notify:

- An Asbestos Abatement/Demolition Notification for a phased project must be accompanied by a Phased Project Schedule.
- An Asbestos Abatement/Demolition Notification and a Phased Project Schedule must be completed and submitted 10 working days (not calendar days) before the phased project start date. The notification form must state that the asbestos abatement and/or demolition will be a phased project.
- The start and stop dates on the notification form are the overall dates of the entire project. A phased abatement and/or demolition project exceeding 12 months will require a separate, initia l phased project notification to be filed for each 12-month period.
- The individual start and stop dates of each phase must be entered on the Phased Project Schedule. Changes to the project schedule must be submitted as an amendment to the notification form.
- The amount of asbestos-containing building material that will be abated from all of the public buildings and facilities must be combined and reported as a total amount on the notification form.
- An amended notification must be submitted with each revised Phased Project Schedule. The appropriate department regional inspector must be contacted by phone and provided a copy of the amendment and revised schedule by email or fax as soon as possible, but no later than, the current scheduled date or the proposed scheduled date, whichever is earlier.

Failure to comply with this policy may result in a violation of 25 TAC §295.61, Operations: Notifications.

Questions may be directed to the Department of State Health Services, Environmental Health Notifications Group in Austin at either (512) 834-6747 or 1-800-572-5548 (Texas only).

Policy Letter 295.61(h) - #1, Recognition of Emergency Notification

December 9, 1996

(This policy replaces all previous policies and/or guidelines, including the original unsigned version dated February 8, 1996)

There may be some misunderstanding regarding the verification of an emergency for the 10 working day requirement for asbestos abatement or building demolition notification. There have been several cases where emergency notification was requested for "financial loss if a job is shut down waiting" or "that if not allowed to start will cost the company $X."

In and of itself the foregoing does not constitute an emergency under the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Act (TAHPA) or the National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAP). If the company affected an emergency, it still must be proven by them or they will be found in violation of an improper notification. **40 CFR Subpart M, §61.141 of the NESHAP defines an emergency renovation operation as a renovation operation that was not planned but results from a sudden, unexpected event, that is necessary to avoid imposing an unreasonable financial burden. This term includes operations necessitated by nonroutine failures of equipment.** Failure to plan for work, for which one could have prepared does not constitute an emergency. An inspection, by a TDH inspector will be performed to ensure the emergency is valid.

- Examples of a valid emergency are: **1)** when abatement has been performed and renovation or demolition has begun, and ACM is found in an area which could not have been known because it was hidden from view; and **2)** when a boiler which provides heat

to a building suddenly fails and needs immediate replacement in winter because the contents of the structure will be severely damaged without the heat, or the building must be occupied by people who have no other place to go.

- In cases where there appears to be a valid emergency, we request that you call the department regional or local program inspector. If the inspector concurs with your request then an emergency number will be issued, which must be listed on the subsequent notification form. If you are unable to contact the field inspector, the central office in Austin may then be contacted. When emergencies occur at times when no one can be contacted, write a full justification and attach it to the notification form to be sent to the central office in Austin in compliance with§295.61(h) of the TAHPA (1994). No approval is required, however, the burden of proof rests with the notifier.

One recent case involved a chain store in a small town in the central part of the state. The competition had gone out of business. This remaining store was the only one in easy commuting distance which could provide the service. As a result, customers were parking across the street in a parking lot at a closed store. The headquarters of the remaining store bought the property and were seeking to quickly demolish the abandoned building and repave the parking lot. Their claim for an emergency was the threat to public health of the abandoned building and that it would cost the company too much money to delay the project. It also appears that there was no survey on the building to be demolished. The request for an emergency notification was denied.

We are trying to ensure that we all are applying the policy in a uniform fashion. The report from the regional or local program inspector tells us whether or not the job is in compliance, and if not, is the basis to issue a Notice of Violation.

Questions may be directed to the regional/local program office or the central office in Austin at either (512) 834-6770 or (800) 572-5548 (Texas only).

Last updated February 26, 2016

Appendix D

CERTIFICATIONS

Texas Department of State Health Services

MOODY LABS LLC DBA
MOODY LABS

is certified to perform as an

Asbestos Laboratory

PCM, PLM, TEM

in the State of Texas and is hereby governed by the rights, privileges and responsibilities set forth in Texas Occupations Code, Chapter 1954 and Title 12, Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 295 relating to Texas Asbestos Health Protection, as long as this license is not suspended or revoked.

License Number: 300084

Expiration Date: 05/31/2024

John Hellerstedt, M.D.,
Commissioner of Health

Control Number: 96624

(Void After Expiration Date)

VOID IF ALTERED NON-TRANSFERABLE

SEE BACK

Texas Department of State Health Services

Asbestos Individual Consultant

JAMES E OTTO

License No. **105236**

Control No. **98217**

Expiration Date: **5-Jun-2025**



James E. Otto

Managing ACBM in Buildings
Annual Update
7/12/2023

Expires: 7/12/2024
Cert. No.: 100.000.569.032



James E. Otto

Inspecting Buildings for ACBM
Annual Update
7/12/2023

Expires: 7/12/2024
Cert. No.: 100.000.569.031



James E. Otto

Design of ACBM Abatement
Projects Annual Update
5/2/2023

Expires: 5/2/2024
Cert. No.: 100.000.569.033



James E. Otto

Air Monitoring Technician
Annual Update
5/1/2023

Expires: 5/1/2024
Cert. No.: 100.000.569.034



SECTION 02 3200

GEOTECHNICAL DATA

1.1 INVESTIGATION

A. Geotechnical investigations were conducted at the site, the results of which can be found in the report issued by JRB Engineering; Project No. 23-16117, issued on November 6, 2023

B. A copy of the report is bound into the Project Manual.

1.2 INTERPRETATION

A. The report is provided only for bidder's information and convenience and is not part of the Contract Documents. Owner and Architect do not warrant the accuracy or extent of the report or locations of the test borings.

B. Opinions expressed in the report are those of the Geotechnical Engineer and represent the Geotechnical Engineer’s interpretation of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses that the Geotechnical Engineer has conducted.

C. The report is based upon the assumption that uniform variation exists in soil properties between borings. Interpretation of the report is bidder's responsibility. Owner and Architect will not be responsible for interpretation of report by bidders.

D. Bidders are urged to examine the report and the site.

E. Additional soil borings or other exploratory operations may be made by bidders at no additional cost to Owner, provided such operations are approved by Owner in advance.

F. Refer to Conditions of the Contract for additional information.

END OF DOCUMENT

JRB ENGINEERING

JOHN W RUNYON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL
10750 CRADLEROCK DRIVE
DALLAS, TEXAS

Prepared for:

Dallas Independent School District
9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 105
Dallas, TX

Attn: Mr. David Narine, CBRE|VANIR Joint Venture Program Management

November 2023
PROJECT NO. 23-16117
www.jrbengineering.com

November 6, 2023

Mr. David Narine
CBRE VANIR JV Program Management
9400 N. Central Expressway, 8th Floor
Dallas, TX

Re: Geotechnical Study
John W Runyon Elementary School
10750 Cradlerock Drive
Dallas, Texas
JRB Report No. 23-16117

Dear Mr. Narine:

JRB Engineering, LLC. (JRB) is pleased to submit our Geotechnical Report for the above referenced project. The geotechnical study was carried out in general accordance with JRB Proposal No. P-12486-23 dated March 31, 2023.

This report presents geotechnical recommendations for the construction of a marquee sign, a canopy, and an administration building addition at John W. Runyon Elementary School with respect to available project characteristics. Results of our field exploration and laboratory testing are shown in detail in the appendix section of the study.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of service to you on this project, and we look forward to providing Construction Materials Testing services as the project progresses through the construction phase. Please contact us if you have any questions or if we can be of further assistance.

Respectfully Submitted,

JRB Engineering, LLC
Texas Engineering Firm License No. F-11302

Fadi N. Faraj, PE
Senior Geotechnical Engineer

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

1 PROJECT INFORMATION 1
2 PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF STUDY 1
3 FIELD EXPLORATION AND LABORATORY TESTING 2
4 GENERAL SITE CONDITIONS 2
4.1 Site Geology 2
4.2 Subsurface Soil Conditions 3
4.3 Groundwater 3
4.4 Gypsum 3
5 FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS 4
5.1 General 4
5.2 Shrink and Swell Potential 4
5.3 Seismic Site Class 5
5.4 Marquee Sign and Canopy Shallow Foundation Recommendations 5
5.5 Straight Drilled Shafts Axial Loading Design Recommendations 5
5.6 Straight Drilled Shafts Lateral Loading Design Recommendations 6
5.7 Drilled Shaft Group Effect 7
5.8 Design and Construction Factors for Drilled Shafts 8
6 PAVEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS 9
6.1 Pavement Subgrade Preparation 9
6.2 Pavement Section 10
6.3 Pavement Drainage 10
7 SITE PREPARATION FOR CONSTRUCTION 10
7.1 General 10
7.2 Excavations 11
8 SITE COMPLETION AND MAINTENANCE 11
8.1 Site Grading and Drainage 11
8.2 Landscaping and Irrigation 11
9 STUDY CLOSURE 11
10 COPYRIGHT 2023 JRB ENGINEERING, LLC 12

APPENDIX A

Plate

VICINITY MAP A.1
GEOLOGY MAP A.2
BORING LOCATION DIAGRAM A.3
BORING LOGS A.4-A.6
KEY TO CLASSIFICATIONS AND SYMBOLS A.7
UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM A.8

APPENDIX B

Page

FIELD OPERATIONS B.1
LABORATORY TESTING B.2

TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDIX C

Page

IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT THIS GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING REPORT C.1

1 PROJECT INFORMATION

The subject property is an existing elementary school located at 10750 Cradlerock Drive, Dallas, Texas. A summary of the proposed project is provided below:

Table 1: Project Overview

Item	Description
Location	The site is located in Dallas, Texas and it is surrounded by Cheyenne Road to the east, Cradlerock Drive to the north, Amity Lane to the west, and Checota Drive to the south.
Project Description	The project consists of the construction of a marquee sign, a canopy, and an administration building addition at John W. Runyon Elementary School.
Existing Site Conditions	The site is developed with an existing school building that is surrounded by neighboring streets. There are existing utilities within the property limits.
Topography	The site appears to be relatively flat based on field observations, and as shown in the USPS Topo Maps.
Hydrogeologic Setting	No apparent streams are observed within ½ a mile radius from the project site, as observed in aerial photos.

Site vicinity and geology maps are attached as Plates A.1 and A.2, respectively, in Appendix A of this report. Boring locations are shown on the Boring Location Diagram, Plate A.3.

2 PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF STUDY

The principal purpose of this study is evaluation of site subsurface conditions to provide geotechnical recommendations for the design and construction of a marquee sign, a canopy, and an administration building addition at John W. Runyon Elementary School. The study was conducted in the following phases:

- Borings were drilled and sampled to evaluate the subsurface conditions at the boring locations and to obtain soil samples.
- Laboratory tests were conducted on samples recovered from the borings to evaluate the pertinent engineering characteristics of the subsurface materials.
- Engineering analyses were conducted for foundation and pavement design recommendations.

3 FIELD EXPLORATION AND LABORATORY TESTING

The boring locations were identified in the field by JRB personnel using site landmarks, maps, aerial photographs, and a handheld GPS device.

A total of three borings were completed to depths of ranging between 25 to 35 feet below existing grades using truck-mounted drill rig on September 23, 2023. The approximate boring locations are shown on Plate A.3, Boring Location Diagram. Sample depth, description of soils, and classification (based on the Unified Soil Classification System) are presented in the Logs of Boring, Plates A.4 through A.6. Keys to terms and symbols used on the logs are also included in Appendix A.

Laboratory tests were performed on selected samples recovered from the borings to confirm visual classification, determine material strata, and estimate in-situ strength and other engineering properties of the materials encountered. Laboratory test results are presented on the Boring Logs. Descriptions of the procedures used in the field and laboratory phases of this study are presented in Appendix B.

4 GENERAL SITE CONDITIONS

4.1 Site Geology

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered at the boring locations and the Geologic Atlas of Texas, Dallas Sheet (published by the Bureau of Economic Geology), the site appears to be located within Ozan Formation (mapped as Ko). The Ozan formation is mainly calcareous clay with silt and sand increasing upward. Clay may be montmorillonitic, exhibit a blocky, conchoidal fracture, and be medium gray and weather light brownish gray. Minor constituents include glauconite, phosphate pellets, hematite nodules, pyrite nodules, and marine megafossils may be found. In some localities, very thin limestone lenses may be present in the lower part. The rock of this formation generally exhibits poor fissility and grades upward to the Wolfe City Formation. The thickness of the formation is plus or minus 500 feet.

4.2 Subsurface Soil Conditions

Based on the field and laboratory testing the subsurface soils at the project site consist of clayey sand and sandy lean clay in the upper approximately 13 to 14 feet, followed by fat clays to the termination depth of the borings. Traces of gypsum were encountered in boring B-3, which is an indicator of sulfates.

The Logs of Boring in Appendix A should be reviewed for detailed information at specific boring locations. Stratification boundaries shown in the logs represent the approximate locations of changes in types of in-situ materials. The transition between material types may vary between borings, and be gradual and indistinct. Variations will occur and should be expected across the site. The approximate cross section location is shown on the Boring Location Diagram in Appendix A.

4.3 Groundwater

The borings were advanced using continuous flight augers. The borings were monitored during and immediately after drilling for the presence of water seepage. Groundwater was encountered at depths ranging between 8 and 14 feet. A thorough assessment of the vadose zone or upper groundwater was not conducted, and the study did not include extended monitoring of groundwater levels or perched water conditions.

In general, groundwater levels and moisture content in the vadose zone vary climatically and seasonally depending on topography, land usage, surface hydrology, subsurface hydrogeology, and proximity to bodies of surface water. The rate and extent of these variations depend on many variables including subsurface stratigraphy, soil strata properties, capillary sources, capillary strength, consolidation states, soil structure, thermal cover, and surface infiltration and evapotranspiration rates.

4.4 Gypsum

In soil, soluble sulfates are often encountered in concentrated banks or seams, generally in the form of gypsum. As noted earlier, scattered traces of gypsum were encountered in Boring B-3. As site grading is performed, these areas of concentrated sulfates are likely to be randomly distributed throughout the site. When soluble sulfates come into contact with calcium (supplied by lime or cement during subgrade treatment) and water, a process commonly referred to as “sulfate-induced heave” will occur. In this process, a chemical reaction releases aluminum from the soil, forming a material called ettringite and causing large volume increases. The rate at which the reaction occurs is highly variable, and is primarily dependent of the availability of the reagents and the size of the soluble sulfate crystals. It can occur in as little as 10 to 12 hours, or take years to fully manifest itself.

Elevated sulfate levels should be considered when installing concrete features that will be in direct contact with the on-site soils, including concrete pipe, floor slabs, foundations, and/or pavement. Sulfate solutions chemically attack the cement binder in concrete, causing it to weaken and resulting in concrete corrosion. To slow the corrosion process, a corrosion-resistant concrete mix may be used. Alternatively, a buffer of "clean" (low sulfate) soil can be constructed around concrete that will be in contact with high sulfate soils. Locally, Type I/II cement, or IL with a high fly ash content is used for severe sulfate conditions. There are additional American Concrete Institute (ACI) requirements that should be met when sulfate levels exceed 10,000 ppm, including water to cement ratios and other concrete mix design considerations.

5 FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS

5.1 General

We understand that the project involves the construction of a marquee sign, a canopy, and an administration building addition. We also understand that the existing building is on a structural slab with crawl space. Boring B-1 was drilled for the marquee sign, boring B-2 was drilled for the canopy, and boring B-3 was drilled for the building addition.

5.2 Shrink and Swell Potential

The rate and magnitude of volume change is controlled by the rate and extent of wetting and drying cycles. Volume change potential is affected by moisture change potential, clay mineralogy, material density, soil structure, hydrogeologic conditions, and confining pressure to swell pressure ratios. Moisture change potential, material density, and soil structure can be modified and controlled; and clay content, hydrogeologic environment and confining pressure can be managed to limit volume change.

The upper soil strata is greatly influenced by surface water infiltration, which could change from the time of sampling and the time of construction. A complete hydrogeologic study was not conducted. The sources of potential upper groundwater and phreatic surfaces were not evaluated, so the potential for sources of capillary moisture to vary was not assessed.

Potential Vertical Rise (PVR) was estimated using the TEX-124-E method. Based on the clayey sand and sandy lean clay soils encountered in the upper 10 feet, the estimated PVR is less than 1 inch and considered moderately low.

5.3 Seismic Site Class

The site class for seismic design is based on several factors that include subsurface profile, shear wave velocity, density, relative hardness, and strength, averaged over a depth of 100 feet. The borings for this project did not extend to a depth of 100 feet; therefore, we assumed the conditions below the depth of the borings based on our experience with local geology. Based on Section 1613.2.2 of the 2018 International Building Code and Table 20.3-1 of ASCE 7-16, we recommend using **Site Class C (stiff soil / soft rock)** for seismic design.

5.4 Marquee Sign and Canopy Shallow Foundation Recommendations

Based on the anticipated low loads and the soil conditions encountered at the project site, a mat foundation or spread footing may be used for the Marquee Sign and Canopy at a depth of 2 to 4 feet below grade. The allowable bearing capacity will be 1,500 psf. Surfaces exposed after stripping should be proof-rolled in accordance with TxDOT Standard Specification Item 216 or equivalent. Because of the presence of traces of gypsum and the potential of high sulfates, we recommend using sulfate resistant concrete for the foundation.

5.5 Straight Drilled Shafts Axial Loading Design Recommendations

We understand that the existing building has a structurally suspended slab with a crawl space. To avoid any differential movement between the new building addition and the existing building, we recommend using a structurally suspended slab supported on drilled shafts for the new addition. A minimum void space of 12 inches is recommended beneath the slabs and grade beams. Furthermore, the marquee sign and canopy may also be supported on drilled shaft foundation system.

The shafts may be subject to uplift load due to heave of clayey soils. The uplift load will depend on the shaft diameter, and the in-situ moisture levels at the time of construction. The shaft continuous vertical steel reinforcement and embedment depth should be designed to resist the net tensile load. The uplift load can be approximated by assuming a uniform uplift of 700 psf over the shaft perimeter for a depth of 7 feet.

Below are recommendations for axial capacity for drilled shafts at the three boring locations:

Boring	Depth to Top of Strata (ft)	Depth to Bottom of Strata (ft)	Soil Strata	Allowable Skin Friction in Compression (psf)	Allowable Skin Friction in Tension (psf)	Allowable End Bearing (psf)
B-1	10	13	Clayey Sand	300	200	Ignore
	13	18	Fat Clay	250	170	Ignore
	18	25	Fat Clay	450	300	5,400
B-2	7	13	Sandy Clay	225	150	Ignore
	13	23	Fat Clay	250	170	Ignore
	23	35	Fat Clay	400	270	4,800
B-3	7	14	Clayey Sand	300	200	Ignore
	14	18	Fat Clay	325	220	Ignore
	18	35	Fat Clay	450	300	5,400

A factor of safety of 3.0 was used for the allowable end bearing capacity, and a factor of safety of 2.0 was used for allowable skin friction in compression. For uplift resistance, an allowable skin friction in tension of 2/3rd of the allowable skin friction in compression is used.

It should be noted that groundwater was encountered in all three borings and it ranged between depths of 8 to 14 feet. Sandy soils were also encountered in the borings. These conditions result in high risk of caving-in of open shafts. Therefore, we recommend the use of straight drilled shafts. These conditions will also require the use of temporary casings for the installation of the shafts.

Because of the presence of traces of gypsum and the potential of high sulfates, we recommend using sulfate resistant concrete for the drilled shafts.

5.6 Straight Drilled Shafts Lateral Loading Design Recommendations

Lateral loads on the drilled shafts will result in horizontal forces acting on the shafts. Passive earth pressures along the shaft will resist the lateral loads. We recommend using software such as LPile for designing for lateral loading. The following table includes the recommended parameters for use with LPile software.

Boring	Depth to Top of Strata (ft)	Depth to Bottom of Strata (ft)	Soil Strata	Total Unit Weight	Effective Unit Weight	Friction Angle (Φ) (Degrees)	Cohesion (psi)	Strain Factor, E50	p-y Modulus, k (pci)	
				pci	pci				Static	Cyclic
B-1	7	13	Loose Sand	0.0723	0.0362	30	-	-	20	-
	13	18	Fat Clay (CH)	0.0723	0.0362	-	6.9	0.007	500	200
	18	25	Fat Clay (CH)	0.0723	0.0362	-	12.5	0.007	500	200
B-2	7	13	Sandy Clay	0.0723	0.0362	-	6.3	0.01	100	-
	13	23	Fat Clay (CH)	0.0723	0.0362	-	6.9	0.007	500	200
	23	35	Fat Clay (CH)	0.0723	0.0362	-	11.1	0.007	500	200
B-3	7	14	Loose Sand	0.0723	0.0362	30	-	-	20	-
	14	18	Fat Clay (CH)	0.0723	0.0362	-	9.0	0.007	500	200
	18	35	Fat Clay (CH)	0.0723	0.0362	-	12.5	0.007	500	200

5.7 Drilled Shaft Group Effect

For axial capacity, groups of drilled shafts should have a minimum spacing of 2.5 times the shaft diameter when using one row of drilled shafts, and a minimum spacing of 3.0 times the shaft diameter when using more than one row of drilled shafts. For greater spacing than the above referenced minimums, the total capacity will be equal to the sum of the capacities of the individual shafts in the group. The group capacity may be less than the sum of individual capacities at closer spacings. For group effect, the axial capacity should be considered the lower capacity of:

1. The sum of the capacities of the shafts.
2. The capacity of a potential block failure of the group of shafts.

For lateral capacity, groups of shafts should have a center-to-center spacing of at least 5.0 times the shaft diameter when designing foundations using one row group of shafts, and 6.0 times the shaft diameter for foundations using more than one row of shafts. The recommended P-multiplier values for lateral design by row position is given in the table below.

P-Multiplier Values						
Shafts Spacing center-to-center	2 Shaft Diameter	2.5 Shaft Diameter	3 Shaft Diameter	4 Shaft Diameter	5 Shaft Diameter	>/= 6 Shaft Diameter
Lead Row	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.85	1.00	1.00
2nd Row	0.40	0.45	0.50	0.65	0.85	1.00
3rd or higher	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.50	0.70	1.00

5.8 Design and Construction Factors for Drilled Shafts

We recommend the geotechnical engineer be onsite at the beginning of drilled shaft operations to initiate observation and testing procedures, and confirm the intent of the geotechnical recommendations contained in this report. The construction of all drilled shafts should be observed by experienced personnel to document conformance with project documents and confirm the following:

- Shafts are plumb and within the acceptable tolerance
- Groundwater seepage is correctly handled
- Sides of shaft are not sloughing or caving
- Minimum penetration into the bearing strata or below the bottom of the casing
- Bearing surface is clean
- Proper concrete mix design and slump
- Proper removal of casing

Groundwater and/or sandy soils were encountered in all of the borings and will likely be encountered during drilled shaft excavation. The risk of encountering groundwater seepage is increased during or after periods of precipitation. We anticipate that successful installation of drilled shafts will require temporary casings; however, the need for casings should be determined during construction based on the conditions encountered during the shaft excavations. Reinforcing steel cages and concrete should be placed in the shafts immediately after the excavation has been completed, dewatered, cleaned and observed. Complete installation of individual shafts should be accomplished the same day they are excavated. Prolonged air exposure or inundation of the bearing surface could deteriorate the bearing material.

If casing is used, a full head of concrete should be maintained within the casing during removal. In no case should water be allowed to infiltrate the concrete of the shaft. Vibratory casing removal is recommended, and is required for friction shafts. Complete installation of a shaft should be accomplished at least 48 hours before beginning another excavation located within four shaft diameters, center-to-

center. If groundwater is encountered, it will be displaced during concrete placement. A sump may be excavated adjacent to each shaft to collect displaced water.

Concrete should have a slump of 7 to 9 inches and the concrete mix design should allow for sufficient working time. The concrete should not be allowed to strike the casing sidewall or steel reinforcement during placement. Submersible pumps may be required to control seepage; the concrete must be placed using a tremie if groundwater cannot be kept at a depth of 1 inch or less during concrete placement. Mushrooming of the drilled shafts should not be allowed in the upper 12 feet of the shaft since this condition will result in an increase in uplift forces acting on the shaft. JRB should be contacted for further evaluation and recommendations if excessive groundwater seepage or caving occurs.

6 PAVEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS

6.1 Pavement Subgrade Preparation

All topsoil, vegetation, and any unsuitable materials should be removed. We recommend pavement subgrade be scarified to a depth of at least 8 inches and recompacted to 95 percent of maximum dry density and within optimum and +4 percent of optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM D698. The pavement subgrade should be proof-rolled with a fully loaded (40,000 lbs) tandem axle dump truck or similar pneumatic-tire equipment to locate areas of soft or loose subgrade. In areas to be cut, the proof-rolling should be performed after final grade is established. In areas to be filled, the proof-rolling should be performed prior to placement of engineered fill and after subgrade preparation is complete. Areas of loose or soft subgrade encountered during the proof-rolling should be removed and replaced with engineered fill, or moisture conditioned (dried or wetted, as needed) and recompacted.

Because of the presence of traces of gypsum and the potential of high sulfates, we recommend a minimum of 6 inches of Flexible Base subgrade material. The Flexible Base should extend at least one foot beyond the edge of the pavement.

The use of sand or other granular fill as a leveling course should not be used beneath pavements as these more porous materials can allow water between the pavement and the subgrade, causing heave and strength loss in the subgrade. Utility trenches that lie beneath the pavement should be properly compacted prior to the treatment of the pavement subgrade.

6.2 Pavement Section

Traffic loading is not available; however, we anticipate that traffic loads will be produced primarily by automobile traffic, dumpster trucks, and fire trucks. Based on the anticipated traffic loading conditions, we recommend the following concrete pavement sections.

Pavement Section	Light Duty (Automobile Traffic)	Heavy Duty (Dumpster area and Fire Lanes)
	Thickness	
Concrete Pavement	5 inches	6 inches
Flexible Base	6 inches	6 inches

The concrete should have a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi in automobile lots and 4,000 psi in dumpster areas and fire lanes. The pavement should be reinforced at a minimum with No. 3 bars on 18-inch centers in both directions.

6.3 Pavement Drainage

Proper drainage should be provided both during and after construction. The pavement surface should be contoured such that surface water drains from the pavement and into inlets. Water allowed to pond on or near pavement surfaces may saturate the subgrade soils and lead to premature pavement failure.

7 SITE PREPARATION FOR CONSTRUCTION

7.1 General

Existing structures, foundations, utilities, deleterious materials, debris, and other manmade features should be removed or relocated in accordance with the project plans and specifications. All vegetation and organic matter, including tree stumps and root systems, should be removed from within the proposed construction limits. Remove any undocumented fill from structural areas. All debris from clearing and grubbing operations should be properly disposed. In no case should any organic or deleterious material be used within the fill materials, or permanently placed onsite except where authorized by the geotechnical engineer.

7.2 Excavations

All excavations should be performed to the limits and grades indicated in the design documents. This study was not performed to evaluate the difficulty of ripping, processing and/or excavating the on-site materials, or estimating the volume of those excavated materials. The earthwork contractor should have experience in construction and excavation within these materials. The contractor must use his or her own experience when making decisions regarding means, methods and costs to accomplish the proposed construction, including excavation tools, excavation rates, and number of trucks.

8 SITE COMPLETION AND MAINTENANCE

8.1 Site Grading and Drainage

Site grading and drainage should be efficient in paved areas and less efficient in lawn and landscape areas. Roof runoff should be collected by gutters and downspouts, and discharge onto paved areas draining away from the building.

8.2 Landscaping and Irrigation

Subgrade moisture levels should be maintained around the building perimeter before and during construction. Irrigated landscaping and lawn areas are recommended with even distribution around the structures. Irrigated areas will serve as supplemental moisture sources surrounding the foundations and pavement areas. Accordingly, regular and uniform irrigation will be required in these areas, particularly during dry and hot weather periods. Above-grade planters may also be considered around the perimeter of the building with regular irrigation to maintain light perimeter infiltration along pavement joints.

9 STUDY CLOSURE

The analyses, conclusions and recommendations contained in this report are based on site conditions as they existed at the time of the field exploration and further on the assumption that the exploratory borings are representative of the subsurface conditions throughout the site with little variance beyond that found by the borings. If different subsurface conditions from those encountered in our borings are observed or appear to be present in excavations, JRB should be advised promptly so that these conditions can be evaluated and our recommendations can be reassessed as may be necessary. If there is a substantial lapse of time between submission of this report and the start of the work at the site, if

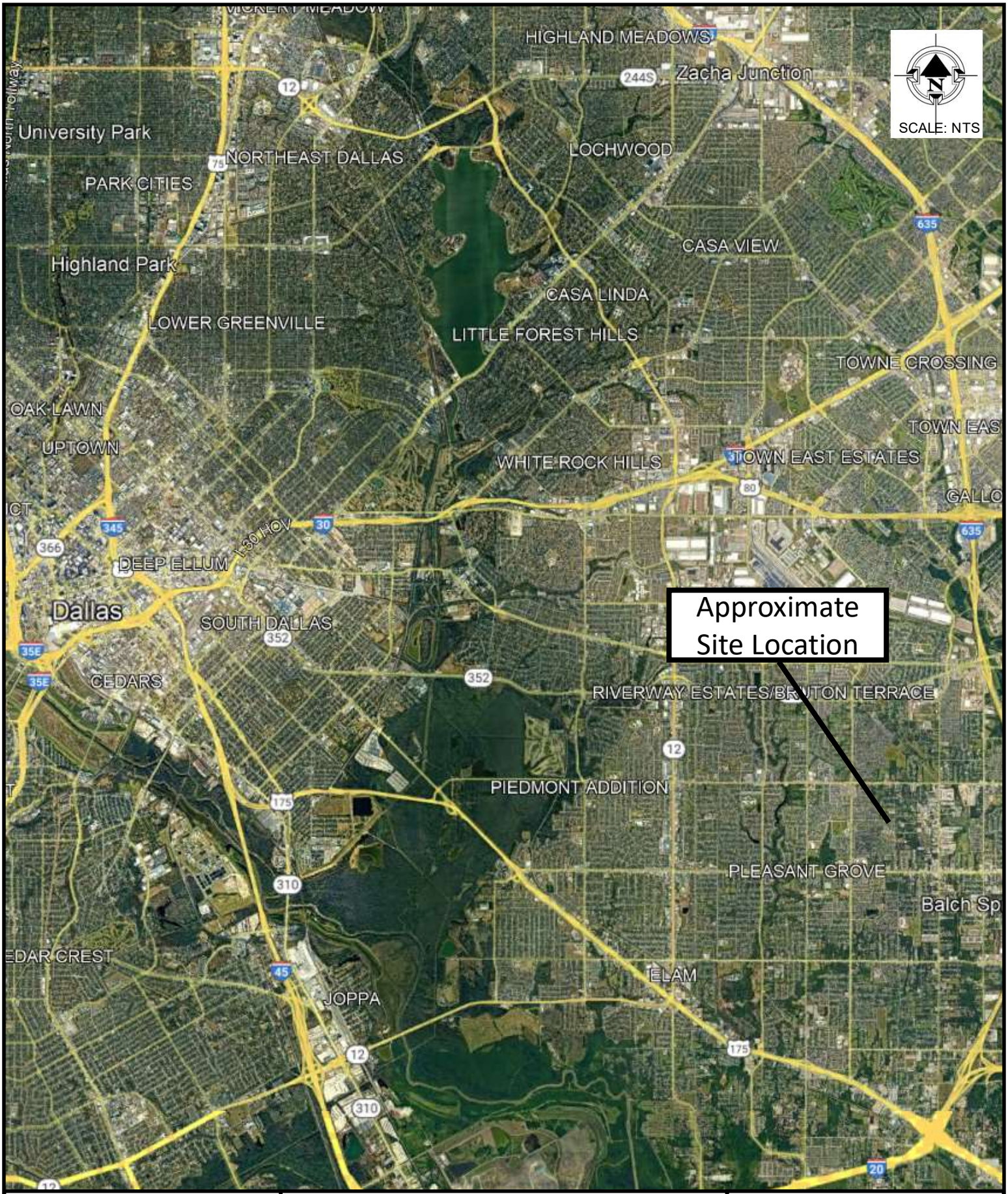
conditions have changed due either to natural causes or to construction operations at or adjacent to the site, or if structure locations, structural loads or finish grades are changed, JRB should be promptly informed and retained if necessary if the changed conditions warrant review and reassessment.

This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of the Client and their designated agents for specific application to design and construction of this project. We have exercised a degree of care and skill exceeding that ordinarily exercised under similar conditions by reputable members of our profession practicing in the same or similar locality. The engineering services and solutions provided herein are considered advanced, and while design and construction controls are improved, no warranty, expressed or implied, can be made or intended.

10 COPYRIGHT 2023 JRB ENGINEERING, LLC

This report provides advanced engineering services, and is in its entirety the sole property of the Client, JRB Engineering, LLC, and its affiliates. Use of this report is subject to all applicable copyrights. This report may be used in practice or referenced by any project party as necessary, solely for the party's role on the project for which this report is prepared. Beyond that use, no part of this report may be copied, downloaded, transmitted, or otherwise reproduced or stored, in any form or means, except as permitted in writing by JRB Engineering, LLC. Each reproduction of any part of this report must include all copyright notices, registered trademark (®) designations, and non-registered trademark (™) designations.

APPENDIX A



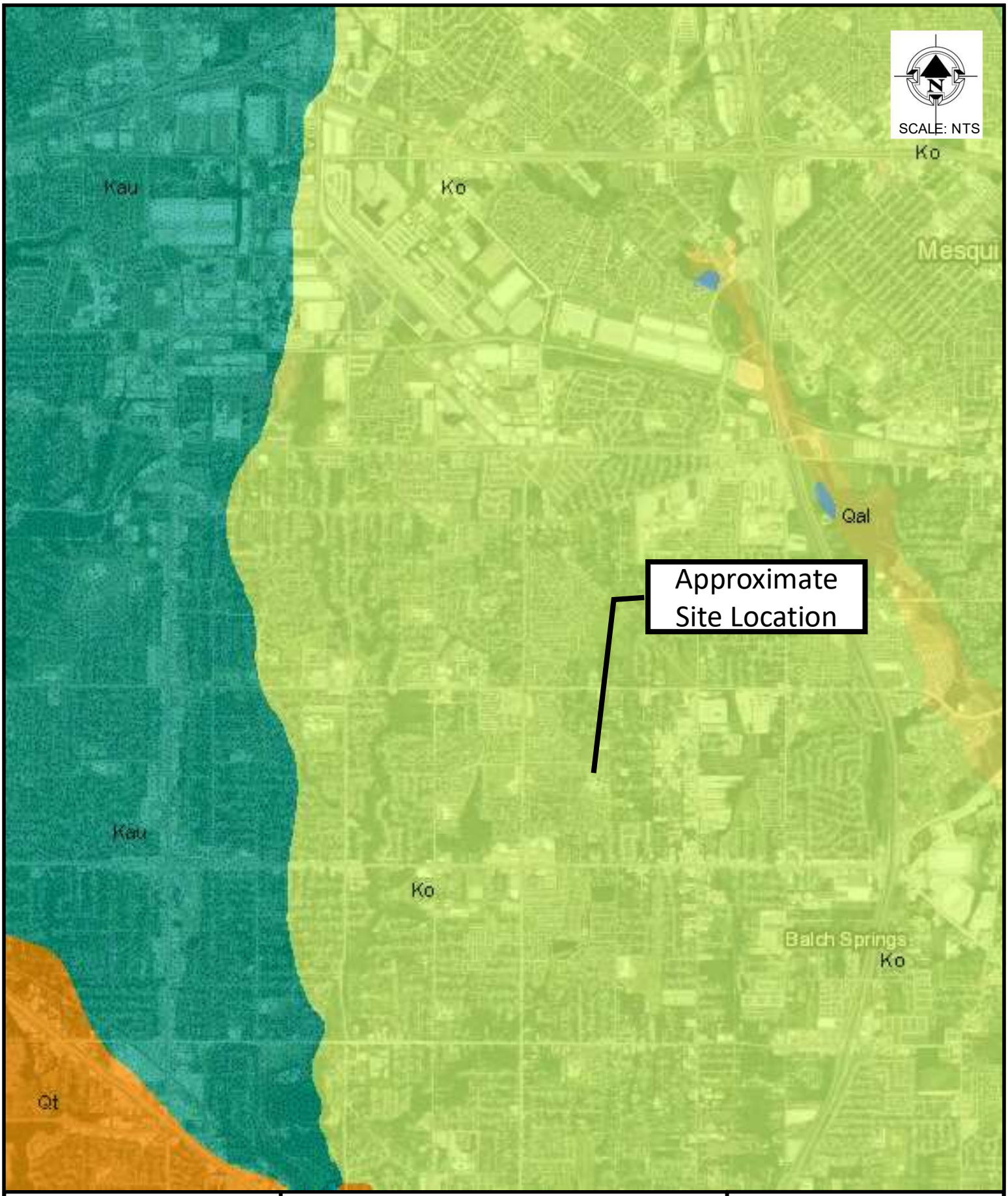
JRB ENGINEERING

Plate A.1

VICINITY MAP

John W. Runyon Elementary School
10750 Cradlerock Drive
Dallas, TX

PROJECT NO: 23-16117	
DRAWN BY: FF	DATE: 10/25/2023
APPROVED BY: RL	DATE: 10/25/2023



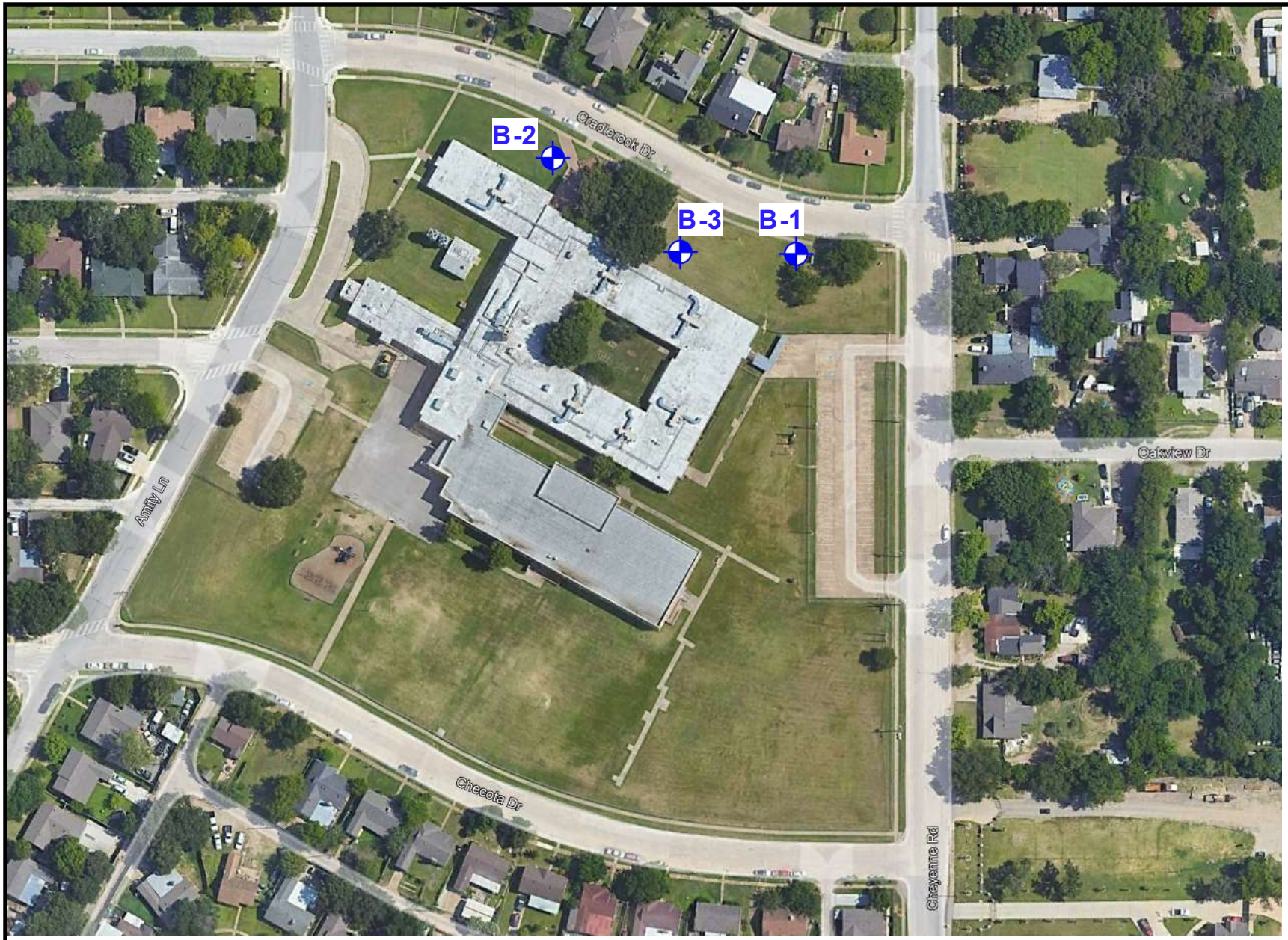
JRB ENGINEERING

Plate A.2

GEOLOGY MAP

John W. Runyon Elementary School
10750 Cradlerock Drive
Dallas, TX

PROJECT NO: 23-16117	
DRAWN BY: FF	DATE: 10/25/2023
APPROVED BY: RL	DATE: 10/25/2023



N

SCALE: NTS

Approximate Boring Location

JRB ENGINEERING

Plate A.3

PLAN OF BORINGS

John W. Runyon Elementary School
10750 Cradlerock Drive
Dallas, TX

PROJECT NO: 23-16117	
DRAWN BY: FF	DATE: 10/25/2023
APPROVED BY: RL	DATE: 10/25/2023

Log	Project No.	John W. Runyon Elementary School 10750 Cradlerock Drive Dallas, Texas
B-1	**23-16117**	
Boring Location **See Plate A.3**		

JRB ENGINEERING

Latitude	Water Level Observations (feet)		Date
	While Drilling ▽	14	**9-23-23**
Longitude	At Boring Completion	Not Observed	
	End of Day	Not Measured	

Depth, ft.	Symbol	Sample Type	Elevation, ft.	Stratum Description	Water Level Observations	SPT or TCP REC RQD %	Penetrometer Reading, tsf	Passing No. 200 Sieve %	Atterberg Limits LL-PL-PI	Moisture Content %	Swell %	Dry Unit Weight, pcf	Unconfined Compression, tsf
				CLAYEY SAND (SC) - Brown w/ calcareous nodules, ferrous stains, and trace gravels			4.50	30		10			
						18-26-26 N=52				7			
5						15-17-25 N=42				9			
							4.50	32	26-14-12	9		109	2.4585
						12-12-14 N=26				9			
10													
				FAT CLAY (CH) - MARLY, gray w/ Ferrous stains	▽	7-11-13 N=24				28			
15													
							4.50	97	86-44-42	23		96	0.9405
20													
							4.50			25			
25				Boring Terminated at Approximately 25 Feet									

Material boundaries are approximate; in situ, transitions may be gradual.

Driller:
Drilling Method: Continuous Flight Augers

Plate A.4

This boring log should not be considered valid if separated from the remainder of the geotechnical report.

Log	Project No.	John W. Runyon Elementary School 10750 Cradlerock Drive Dallas, Texas	JRB ENGINEERING
B-2	**23-16117**		
Boring Location **See Plate A.3**			
Latitude	Water Level Observations (feet)	Date	
	While Drilling ▽ 11	**9-23-23**	
Longitude	At Boring Completion ▼ 8		
	End of Day Not Measured		

Depth, ft.	Symbol	Sample Type	Elevation, ft.	Stratum Description	Water Level Observations	SPT or TCP REC RQD %	Penetrometer Reading, tsf	Passing No. 200 Sieve %	Atterberg Limits LL-PL-PI	Moisture Content %	Swell %	Dry Unit Weight, pcf	Unconfined Compression, tsf
				CLAYEY SAND (SC) - dark brown w/ calcareous nodules, scattered gravel/pebbles, and trace organics			4.50	46	17-12-5	9		109	0.325
							4.50			8			
5							4.50			9		111	1.308
				SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL) - tan w/ ferrous stains	▼		4.50	52	38-20-18	14			
							4.50			18		100	0.356
10				- w/ flowing sands between 10'-13'	▽								
				FAT CLAY (CH) - MARLY, tan gray w/ ferrous stains		4-9-11 N=20				22			
15													
						10-14-19 N=33		60	66-29-37	23			
20													
						13-20-21 N=41				27			
25													
						19-21-23 N=44				26			
30													
						19-31-34 N=65				25			
35				Boring Terminated at Approximately 35 Feet									

Material boundaries are approximate; in situ, transitions may be gradual.

This boring log should not be considered valid if separated from the remainder of the geotechnical report.

Driller:
Drilling Method: Continuous Flight Augers

Plate A.5

Log	Project No.	John W. Runyon Elementary School 10750 Cradlerock Drive Dallas, Texas	JRB ENGINEERING
B-3	**23-16117**		
Boring Location **See Plate A.3**			
Latitude	Water Level Observations (feet)	Date **9-23-23**	
	While Drilling ▽ 12		
Longitude	At Boring Completion ▼ 8		
	End of Day Not Measured		

Depth, ft.	Symbol	Sample Type	Elevation, ft.	Stratum Description	Water Level Observations	SPT or TCP REC RQD %	Penetrometer Reading, tsf	Passing No. 200 Sieve %	Atterberg Limits LL-PL-PI	Moisture Content %	Swell %	Dry Unit Weight, pcf	Unconfined Compression, tsf
				CLAYEY SAND (SC) - brown w/ ferrous stains			4.50	49	24-19-5	9			
							4.50			10		101	2.8905
5							4.50			8		108	2.7465
					▼		4.50	38	32-18-14	9			
							4.50			8		106	2.933
10					▽								
				- w/ sand and gravel @ 13'		8-14-22 N=36				16			
15				**FAT CLAY (CH)** - MARLY, tan gray w/ ferrous stains, and scattered traces of gypsum									
						10-21-30 N=51		75	73-34-39	26			
20													
						18-24-40 N=64				25			
25													
						17-23-26 N=49				25			
30													
						24-26-30 N=56				24			
35				Boring Terminated at Approximately 35 Feet Material boundaries are approximate; in situ, transitions may be gradual.									

This boring log should not be considered valid if separated from the remainder of the geotechnical report.

Driller:
Drilling Method: Continuous Flight Augers

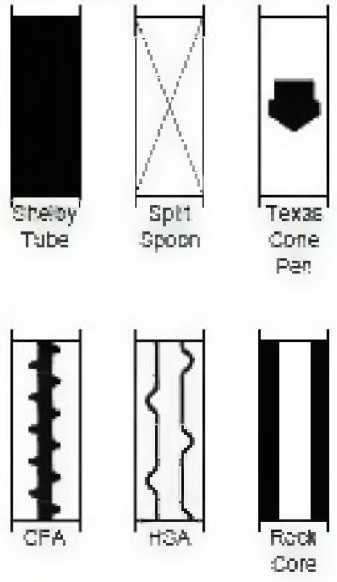
Plate A.6

SOIL OR ROCK TYPES

Undocumented Fill	Well-Graded Sand (SW)
Lean Clay (CL)	Clayey Sand (SC)
Gravelly Lean Clay (CL)	Well-Graded Gravel (GW)
Fat Clay (CH)	Marl
Gravelly Fat Clay (CH)	Weathered Shale
Clayey Gravel (GC)	Shale
Silt (ML)	Weathered Limestone
Poorly-Graded Sand (SP)	Limestone

JRB ENGINEERING

DRILLING AND SAMPLING METHODS



TERMS DESCRIBING CONSISTENCY, CONDITION, AND STRUCTURE OF SOIL

Fine Grained Soils (More than 50% Passing No. 200 Sieve)

Consistency	Penetrometer Reading, (tsf)	Unconfined Compression, (psf)
Very Soft	< 0.5	< 1000
Soft	0.5 to 1.0	1000 to 2000
Firm	1.0 to 2.0	2000 to 4000
Hard	2.0 to 4.0	4000 to 8000
Very Hard	> 4.0	> 8000

Coarse Grained Soils (More than 50% Retained on No. 200 Sieve)

Penetration Resistance (Blows / Foot)	Descriptive Item	Relative Density
0 to 4	Very Loose	0 to 20%
4 to 10	Loose	20 to 40%
10 to 30	Medium Dense	40 to 70%
30 to 50	Dense	70 to 90%
Over 50	Very Dense	90 to 100%

Soil Structure

Calcareous	Contains appreciable deposits of calcium carbonate; generally nodular
Slickensided	Having inclined planes of weakness that are slick and glossy in appearance
Laminated	Composed of thin layers of varying color or texture
Fissured	Containing cracks, sometimes filled with fine sand or silt
Interbedded	Composed of alternated layers of different soil types, usually in approximately equal proportions

TERMS DESCRIBING PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF ROCK

Hardness and Degree of Cementation

Very Soft or Plastic	Can be remolded in hand; corresponds in consistency up to hard in soils
Soft	Can be scratched with fingernail
Moderately Hard	Can be scratched easily with knife; cannot be scratched with fingernail
Hard	Difficult to scratch with knife
Very Hard	Cannot be scratched with knife
Poorly Cemented or Friable	Easily crumbled
Cemented	Bound together by chemically precipitated material; Quartz, calcite, dolomite, siderite, and iron oxide are common cementing materials.

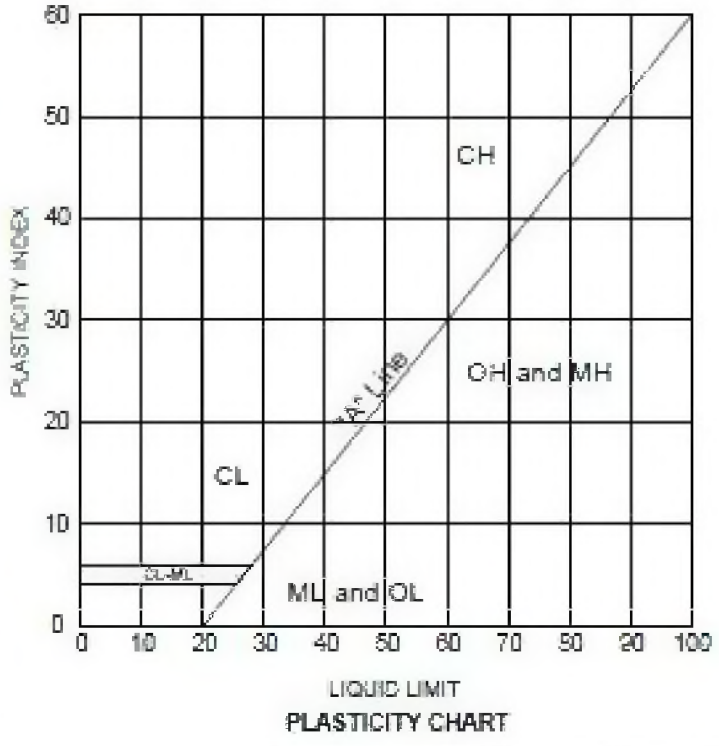
Degree of Weathering

Unweathered	Rock in its natural state before being exposed to atmospheric agents
Slightly Weathered	Noted predominantly by color change with no disintegrated zones
Weathered	Complete color change with zones of slightly decomposed rock
Extremely Weathered	Complete color change with consistency, texture, and general appearance approaching soil

KEY TO CLASSIFICATION AND SYMBOLS

PLATE A.7

Major Divisions			Grp. Sym.	Typical Names	Laboratory Classification Criteria	
Coarse - Grained Soils (more than half of the material is larger than No. 200 Sieve size)	Gravels (more than half of coarse fraction is larger than No. 4 Sieve size)	Clean gravels (Little or no fines)	GW	Well graded gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	Determine percentages of sand and gravel form grain size curve. Depending on percentage of fines (fraction smaller than No. 200 sieve size), coarse-grained soils are classified as follows: Less than 5 percent.....GW,GP,SW,SP; More than 12 percent.....GM,GC,SM,SC; 5 to 12 percent.....Borderline cases requiring dual symbols	$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}}$ greater than 4; $C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$ between 1 and 3
			GP	Poorly graded gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines		Not meeting all gradation requirements for GW
		Gravels with fines (Appreciable amount of fines)	GM	Silty gravels, gravel - sand - silt mixtures	Liquid and Plastic limits below "A" line or P.I. greater than 4	Liquid and plastic limits plotting in hatched zone between 4 and 7 are borderline cases requiring use of dual symbols
			GC	Clayey gravels, gravel - sand - clay mixtures	Liquid and Plastic limits above "A" line with P.I. greater than 7	
	Sands (more than half of coarse fraction is smaller than No. 4 Sieve size)	Clean sands (Little or no fines)	SW	Well graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines	$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}}$ greater than 6; $C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$ between 1 and 3	
			SP	Poorly graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines		Not meeting all gradation requirements for SW
		Sands with fines (Appreciable amount of fines)	SM	Silty sands, sand silt mixtures	Liquid and Plastic limits below "A" line or P.I. less than 4	Liquid and plastic limits plotting between 4 and 7 are borderline cases requiring use of dual symbols
			SC	Clayey sands, sand clay mixtures	Liquid and Plastic limits above "A" line with P.I. greater than 7	
Fine - Grained Soils (more than half of the material is smaller than No. 200 Sieve)	Silts and Clays (Liquid limit less than 50)		ML	Inorganic silts and very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands, or clayey silts with slight plasticity		
			CL	Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, silty clays, and lean clays		
			OL	Organic silts and organic silty clays of low plasticity		
	Silts and Clays (Liquid limit greater than 50)		MH	Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils, elastic silts		
			CH	Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays		
			OH	Organic clays of medium to high plasticity, organic silts		
	Highly Organic soils		Pt	Peat and other highly organic soils		



PLASTICITY CHART

UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

PLATE A.8

APPENDIX B

FIELD EXPLORATION

Subsurface conditions were defined by three sample borings located as shown on the Boring Location Diagram, Plate A.3. The borings were completed at locations staked in the field by JRB personnel. The borings were advanced between sample intervals using continuous flight auger drilling procedures. Field and laboratory test results, sample depth, description, and soil classification based on the Unified Soil Classification System are shown on the Logs of Boring. Keys to the symbols and terms used on the logs are presented in Appendix A.

Relatively undisturbed samples of cohesive soils were obtained using nominal 3-inch diameter tube samplers at the locations shown on the Logs of Boring. The tube sampler consists of a steel tube with a sharp cutting edge connected to a head equipped with a ball valve threaded for rod connection. The tube is pushed into the soil by the hydraulic pulldown of the drilling rig. The soil specimens were extruded from the tube in the field, logged, tested for consistency with a hand penetrometer, sealed and packaged to limit loss of moisture.

The consistency of cohesive soil samples was evaluated in the field using a calibrated hand penetrometer. In this test, a ¼-inch diameter piston is pushed into a relatively undisturbed sample at a constant rate to a depth of approximately ¼ inch. The results of these tests are presented at the respective sample depths on the Logs of Boring. When the capacity of the penetrometer is exceeded, the value is tabulated as 4.5+.

Samples of stiff and/or granular materials were obtained using split-barrel sampling procedures in general accordance with ASTM D1586. In the split-barrel procedure, a disturbed sample is obtained in a standard 2-inch OD split-barrel sampler driven 18 inches into the ground using a 140-pound hammer falling freely 30 inches. The number of blows for the last 12 inches of the 18-inch penetration is recorded as the Standard Penetration Test resistance (N-value). The N-values are recorded on the Logs of Boring at the depth of sampling. The samples were packaged and returned to our laboratory for further examination and testing.

Groundwater observations during and at completion of drilling are shown on the Logs of Boring. Upon completion of drilling, the boreholes were backfilled with soil cuttings to ground level.

LABORATORY TESTING

Laboratory tests were performed on selected samples retrieved from the borings to evaluate the engineering characteristics of the subsurface materials, and to provide data for developing engineering design parameters. The subsurface materials recovered during the field exploration were described by an engineering geologist or senior staff member in the field and/or the laboratory, and were later refined based on results of the laboratory tests performed.

Classification Tests

All recovered soil samples were classified and described, in part, using the Unified Soil Classification System (USCS). Visual classification of soils was verified by index testing, including natural moisture content, Atterberg limits, and gradation tests (percent passing the No. 200 U.S. Standard Sieve). Testing was performed in general accordance with applicable American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) standards as follows:

Test	ASTM Standard Number
Atterberg Limits	D4318
Percentage of Particles Passing the No. 200 Sieve	D1140
Moisture Content	D2216
Dry Unit Weight	D2167
Unconfined Compressive Strength – Soil	D2166

APPENDIX C

Important Information about This

Geotechnical-Engineering Report

Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.

While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.

The Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA) has prepared this advisory to help you – assumedly a client representative – interpret and apply this geotechnical-engineering report as effectively as possible. In that way, you can benefit from a lowered exposure to problems associated with subsurface conditions at project sites and development of them that, for decades, have been a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. If you have questions or want more information about any of the issues discussed herein, contact your GBA-member geotechnical engineer. Active engagement in GBA exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk-confrontation techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project.

Understand the Geotechnical-Engineering Services Provided for this Report

Geotechnical-engineering services typically include the planning, collection, interpretation, and analysis of exploratory data from widely spaced borings and/or test pits. Field data are combined with results from laboratory tests of soil and rock samples obtained from field exploration (if applicable), observations made during site reconnaissance, and historical information to form one or more models of the expected subsurface conditions beneath the site. Local geology and alterations of the site surface and subsurface by previous and proposed construction are also important considerations. Geotechnical engineers apply their engineering training, experience, and judgment to adapt the requirements of the prospective project to the subsurface model(s). Estimates are made of the subsurface conditions that will likely be exposed during construction as well as the expected performance of foundations and other structures being planned and/or affected by construction activities.

The culmination of these geotechnical-engineering services is typically a geotechnical-engineering report providing the data obtained, a discussion of the subsurface model(s), the engineering and geologic engineering assessments and analyses made, and the recommendations developed to satisfy the given requirements of the project. These reports may be titled investigations, explorations, studies, assessments, or evaluations. Regardless of the title used, the geotechnical-engineering report is an engineering interpretation of the subsurface conditions within the context of the project and does not represent a close examination, systematic inquiry, or thorough investigation of all site and subsurface conditions.

Geotechnical-Engineering Services are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects, and At Specific Times

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs, goals, and risk management preferences of their clients. A geotechnical-engineering study conducted for a given civil engineer will not likely meet the needs of a civil-works constructor or even a different civil engineer. Because each geotechnical-engineering study is unique, each geotechnical-engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client.

Likewise, geotechnical-engineering services are performed for a specific project and purpose. For example, it is unlikely that a geotechnical-engineering study for a refrigerated warehouse will be the same as one prepared for a parking garage; and a few borings drilled during a preliminary study to evaluate site feasibility will not be adequate to develop geotechnical design recommendations for the project.

Do not rely on this report if your geotechnical engineer prepared it:

- for a different client;
- for a different project or purpose;
- for a different site (that may or may not include all or a portion of the original site); or
- before important events occurred at the site or adjacent to it; e.g., man-made events like construction or environmental remediation, or natural events like floods, droughts, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations.

Note, too, the reliability of a geotechnical-engineering report can be affected by the passage of time, because of factors like changed subsurface conditions; new or modified codes, standards, or regulations; or new techniques or tools. *If you are the least bit uncertain* about the continued reliability of this report, contact your geotechnical engineer before applying the recommendations in it. A minor amount of additional testing or analysis after the passage of time – if any is required at all – could prevent major problems.

Read this Report in Full

Costly problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical-engineering report did not read the report in its entirety. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selective elements only. *Read and refer to the report in full.*

You Need to Inform Your Geotechnical Engineer About Change

Your geotechnical engineer considered unique, project-specific factors when developing the scope of study behind this report and developing the confirmation-dependent recommendations the report conveys. Typical changes that could erode the reliability of this report include those that affect:

- the site's size or shape;
- the elevation, configuration, location, orientation, function or weight of the proposed structure and the desired performance criteria;
- the composition of the design team; or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project or site changes – even minor ones – and request an assessment of their impact. *The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot accept*

responsibility or liability for problems that arise because the geotechnical engineer was not informed about developments the engineer otherwise would have considered.

Most of the "Findings" Related in This Report Are Professional Opinions

Before construction begins, geotechnical engineers explore a site's subsurface using various sampling and testing procedures. *Geotechnical engineers can observe actual subsurface conditions only at those specific locations where sampling and testing is performed.* The data derived from that sampling and testing were reviewed by your geotechnical engineer, who then applied professional judgement to form opinions about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual sitewide-subsurface conditions may differ – maybe significantly – from those indicated in this report. Confront that risk by retaining your geotechnical engineer to serve on the design team through project completion to obtain informed guidance quickly, whenever needed.

This Report's Recommendations Are Confirmation-Dependent

The recommendations included in this report – including any options or alternatives – are confirmation-dependent. In other words, they are not final, because the geotechnical engineer who developed them relied heavily on judgement and opinion to do so. Your geotechnical engineer can finalize the recommendations *only after observing actual subsurface conditions* exposed during construction. If through observation your geotechnical engineer confirms that the conditions assumed to exist actually do exist, the recommendations can be relied upon, assuming no other changes have occurred. *The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot assume responsibility or liability for confirmation-dependent recommendations if you fail to retain that engineer to perform construction observation.*

This Report Could Be Misinterpreted

Other design professionals' misinterpretation of geotechnical-engineering reports has resulted in costly problems. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer serve as a continuing member of the design team, to:

- confer with other design-team members;
- help develop specifications;
- review pertinent elements of other design professionals' plans and specifications; and
- be available whenever geotechnical-engineering guidance is needed.

You should also confront the risk of constructors misinterpreting this report. Do so by retaining your geotechnical engineer to participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences and to perform construction-phase observations.

Give Constructors a Complete Report and Guidance

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can shift unanticipated-subsurface-conditions liability to constructors by limiting the information they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent the costly, contentious problems this practice has caused, include the complete geotechnical-engineering report, along with any attachments or appendices, with your contract documents, *but be certain to note conspicuously that you've included the material for information purposes only.* To avoid misunderstanding, you may also want to note that "informational purposes" means constructors have no right to rely on the interpretations, opinions, conclusions, or recommendations in the report. Be certain that constructors know they may learn about specific project requirements, including options selected from the report, *only* from the design drawings and specifications. Remind constructors that they may perform their own studies if they want to, and *be sure to allow enough time* to permit them to do so. Only then might you be in a position to give constructors the information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions. Conducting prebid and preconstruction conferences can also be valuable in this respect.

Read Responsibility Provisions Closely

Some client representatives, design professionals, and constructors do not realize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. This happens in part because soil and rock on project sites are typically heterogeneous and not manufactured materials with well-defined engineering properties like steel and concrete. That lack of understanding has nurtured unrealistic expectations that have resulted in disappointments, delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. To confront that risk, geotechnical engineers commonly include explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations," many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely.* Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

Geoenvironmental Concerns Are Not Covered

The personnel, equipment, and techniques used to perform an environmental study – e.g., a "phase-one" or "phase-two" environmental site assessment – differ significantly from those used to perform a geotechnical-engineering study. For that reason, a geotechnical-engineering report does not usually provide environmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated subsurface environmental problems have led to project failures.* If you have not obtained your own environmental information about the project site, ask your geotechnical consultant for a recommendation on how to find environmental risk-management guidance.

Obtain Professional Assistance to Deal with Moisture Infiltration and Mold

While your geotechnical engineer may have addressed groundwater, water infiltration, or similar issues in this report, the engineer's services were not designed, conducted, or intended to prevent migration of moisture – including water vapor – from the soil through building slabs and walls and into the building interior, where it can cause mold growth and material-performance deficiencies. Accordingly, ***proper implementation of the geotechnical engineer's recommendations will not of itself be sufficient to prevent moisture infiltration. Confront the risk of moisture infiltration*** by including building-envelope or mold specialists on the design team. ***Geotechnical engineers are not building-envelope or mold specialists.***

GEOPROFESSIONAL BUSINESS ASSOCIATION

Telephone: 301/565-2733
e-mail: info@geoprofessional.org www.geoprofessional.org

Copyright 2019 by Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA). Duplication, reproduction, or copying of this document, in whole or in part, by any means whatsoever, is strictly prohibited, except with GBA's specific written permission. Excerpting, quoting, or otherwise extracting wording from this document is permitted only with the express written permission of GBA, and only for purposes of scholarly research or book review. Only members of GBA may use this document or its wording as a complement to or as an element of a report of any kind. Any other firm, individual, or other entity that so uses this document without being a GBA member could be committing negligent

SECTION 02 4100
DEMOLITION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Building and structure demolition.

B. Selective demolition for renovation and alterations.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations; current edition.

B. Dallas Independent School District: Comply with published regulations and requirements of DSID authorities, for all demolition procedures.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 sections, for submittal procedures.

B. Site Plan: Showing:
   1. Vegetation to be protected.
   2. Areas for temporary construction and field offices.
   3. Areas for temporary placement of removed materials.

C. Demolition Plan: Submit demolition plan as specified by OSHA and Dallas Independent School District requirements.
   1. Indicate extent of demolition, removal sequence, bracing and shoring, and location and construction of barricades and fences.
   2. Identify demolition firm and submit qualifications.
   3. Include a summary of safety procedures.

D. Project Record Documents: Accurately survey and record locations of capped and active utilities and subsurface construction including, but not necessarily limited to, piers, grade beams, vaults, and all other existing structures remaining below ground after demolition. Indicate location and depth below proposed finish grades.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: Company specializing in the type of work required.
   1. Minimum of five years of documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS – NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SCOPE

A. Demolition drawings are diagrammatic and not intended to delineate the general scope of the extents of demolition, they are not intended to illustrate all items scheduled for demolition.

B. The General Contractor shall be responsible to coordinate the extents of demolition with the Construction Documents in order to achieve the desired design intent.

C. The scope of this project does not include asbestos removal. If suspicious materials are uncovered, cease work and contact the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Remove indicated components of existing buildings, as indicated in the drawings.

E. Remove paving and curbs as required to accomplish new work.

F. Remove other items indicated, for relocation.

G. Fill excavations, open pits, and holes in ground areas generated as result of removals, using specified fill; compact fill as required so that required rough grade elevations do not subside within one year after completion.

3.2 GENERAL PROCEDURES AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Comply with Dallas Independent School District regulations, applicable codes and regulations for demolition operations and safety of adjacent structures and the public.
   1. Obtain required permits.
   2. Comply with applicable requirements of NFPA 241.
   3. Use of explosives is not permitted.
   4. Take precautions to prevent catastrophic or uncontrolled collapse of structures to be removed; do not allow worker or public access within range of potential collapse of unstable structures.
   5. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary barriers and security devices.
   6. Use physical barriers to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public.
   7. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
   8. Do not close or obstruct roadways or sidewalks without permit.
   9. Conduct operations to minimize obstruction of public and private entrances and exits; do not obstruct required exits at any time; protect persons using entrances and exits from removal operations.
   10. Obtain written permission from owners of adjacent properties when demolition equipment will traverse, infringe upon or limit access to their property.

B. Do not begin removal until receipt of notification to proceed from Owner.

C. Do not begin removal until built elements to be salvaged or relocated have been removed.

D. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.
   1. Provide bracing and shoring.
   2. Prevent movement or settlement of adjacent structures.
   3. Stop work immediately if adjacent structures appear to be in danger.

E. Minimize production of dust due to demolition operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.

F. If hazardous materials are discovered during removal operations, stop work and notify Architect and Owner; hazardous materials include regulated asbestos containing materials, lead, PCB's, and mercury.

G. Partial Removal of Paving and Curbs: Neatly saw cut at right angle to surface.

3.3 EXISTING UTILITIES

A. Coordinate work with Dallas Independent School District and utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with their requirements; obtain required permits.

B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.

C. Do not disrupt public utilities without permit from authority having jurisdiction.

D. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing life safety systems that are in use without at least 7 days prior written notification to Owner.

E. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing utility branches or take-offs that are in use without at least 3 days prior written notification to Owner.

F. Locate and mark utilities to remain; mark using highly visible tags or flags, with identification of

utility type; protect from damage due to subsequent construction, using substantial barricades if necessary.

G. Remove exposed piping, valves, meters, equipment, supports, and foundations of disconnected and abandoned utilities.

H. Prepare building demolition areas by disconnecting and capping utilities outside the demolition zone; identify and mark utilities to be subsequently reconnected, in same manner as other utilities to remain.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS

A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
   1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as shown.
   2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
   3. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.

B. Separate areas in which demolition is being conducted from other areas that are still occupied.
   1. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary dustproof partitions.

C. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.

D. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
   1. Remove rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete; replace with new construction specified.
   2. Remove items indicated on drawings.

E. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove existing systems and equipment as indicated.
   1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components.
   2. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
   3. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities before removal.
   4. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification.

F. Protect existing work to remain.
   1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
   2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
   3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
   4. Patch as specified for patching new work.

3.5 DEBRIS AND WASTE REMOVAL

A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.

B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.

C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 30 00

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
   1. Grade beams.
   2. Suspended slabs.
   3. Drilled Piers
   4.

B. WORK INCLUDED
   1. Design, fabrication, erection, and stripping of formwork for cast-in-place concrete including shoring, reshoring, falsework, bracing, proprietary forming systems, prefabricated forms, void forms, permanent metal forms, bulkheads, keys, blockouts, sleeves, pockets, and accessories. Erection shall include installation in formwork of items furnished by other trades.
   2. Furnish all labor and materials required to fabricate, deliver and install reinforcement and embedded metal assemblies for cast-in-place concrete, including steel bars, welded steel wire fabric, ties and supports.
   3. Furnish all labor and materials required to perform the following:
      a. Cast-in-place concrete
      b. Concrete mix designs
      c. Grouting structural steel baseplates
      d. Concrete for drilled piers

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 31 Section “Drilled Piers” for drilled concrete piers.
   2. Division 32 Section “Concrete Paving” for concrete pavement and walks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, Slag Cement, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, submit proposed mix designs in accordance with ACI 318 requirements. Each proposed mix design shall be accompanied by a record of past performance.
   1. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
   2. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
   1. Do not reproduce the structural drawings for use as shop drawings.
   2. Embedded metal assemblies: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and placement. Use standard AWS welding symbols.
   3.
   4. Include construction joint dowels, baskets.

D. Steel Reinforcement Submittals for Information: Mill test certificates of supplied concrete reinforcing, indicating physical and chemical analysis.

E. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the State where the project is located, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
   1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and installing and removing reshoring.

F. Welding certificates.

G. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
   1. Aggregates.

H. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
   1. Cementitious materials
   2. Admixtures
   3. Form materials and form-release agents
   4. Steel reinforcement and accessories
   5. Waterstops
   6. Curing compounds
   7. Floor and slab treatments
   8. Bonding agents
   9. Adhesives
   10. Vapor retarders
   11. Joint-filler strips
   12. Repair materials

I. Submit manufacturer's certification of maximum chloride ion content in admixtures.

J. Fly ash: Submit certification attesting to carbon content and compliance with ASTM C618.

K. Construction Joint Layout: Submit a diagram of proposed construction joint locations for horizontal framing that exceed the limits of a single placement as stated in the structural notes, other than those indicated on the Drawings.

L. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.

M. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.

N. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

O. Submittal for Collaborative for High Performance Schools (CHPS) program:
   1. Product Data: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer, preconsumer, and total recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
   1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
   1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
   2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.

E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."

F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
   1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete,"

2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

G. Concrete Testing Service: Owner may engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests.

H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
a. Contractor's superintendent.
b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
d. Concrete subcontractor.
e.
2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, forms and form removal limitations, shoring and reshoring procedures, vapor-retarder installation, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, steel reinforcement installation, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

C. Store all proprietary materials in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
1. ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
2. ACI 117 (ACI 117M).

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
3. Steel Forms

B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

C. Void Forms: Shall be the product of a reputable manufacturer regularly engaged in the commercial production of void forms.
1. Void form composition shall be of corrugated paper material with a moisture resistant exterior and an interior fabrication of a uniform cellular configuration, composed of components constructed of double-faced wax-impregnated (partially or fully), corrugated fiberboard that is laminated with moisture resistant adhesive.
2. Design and maintain void forms to support all vertical and lateral loads that might be applied during construction until such loads can be supported by the concrete structure.
3. Form material shall be designed to lose its strength under prolonged contact with the moisture which normally accumulates beneath slabs and beams on grade.
4. Void forms shall be used around the circular edges of all drilled piers at the intersection of the grade beams and/or structural slabs by using premanufactured, non-field cut, sealed void forms with curved edges adjacent to drilled piers.
5. Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, VoidForm Products, Inc., Englewood, Colorado.

D. Protection Board: For use over void forms under structural slabs. Hard-pressed cellulose fiber board, 1/8 inch minimum thickness.

E. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.

F. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

G. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

H. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

I. Soil Retainers: Shall be provided where specified and shown on the drawings to prevent migration of backfill under suspended foundation elements:
1. Retainers shall be composed of high density polypropylene materials that are not adversely affected by moisture. They must be flexible, impact resistant and have sufficient strength to resist lateral loads applied by soil.
a. Thickness: 3/8” for void spaces of 8” or less and 1/2” for void spaces greater than 8”, but less than 12”, inclusive.
b. Soil retainers shall extend six inches above the void forms and a minimum of 3 inches below the void forms.
1. Retainers shall be ribbed and made from high density polyethylene. Refer to the Drawings for additional information. Soil retainers shall be Motzblock by M&M Construction Specialties or SureRetainer by VoidForm Products, Inc.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Source of Steel Producers: In accordance with Section 2252.202 of the Texas Government Code steel shall be produced in the United States.

B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 60 percent.

C. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

D. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.

E. Deformed-Bar Anchor: ASTM A1064/ A1064M.

F. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
2. For slabs on grade and slabs on void forms, provide sand plates, horizontal runners, or precast concrete blocks on bottom where base material will not support chair legs or where vapor barrier has been specified.

2.5 MECHANICAL SPLICES

A. Provide mechanical splices designed to develop, in tension and compression, 125 percent of the minimum ASTM specified yield strength of the smaller bar being spliced. The following splicing systems are acceptable:
1. Erico "Cadweld T-Series"

2. Erico "Lenton"
3. Dayton Barsplice "Bar-Grip"
4. Dayton Barsplice "Grip-Twist"

2.6 DOWEL BAR ANCHORS

A. Provide dowel bar anchors and threaded dowels designed to develop, in tension and compression, 125 percent of the minimum ASTM specified yield strength of the dowel bars. Unless otherwise indicated, anchors shall be furnished with ACI standard 90 degree hooks. Dowels shall be furnished by the anchor supplier. The following dowel splicing systems are acceptable:
1. Richmond Screw Anchor "Dowel Bar Splicer"
2. Erico "Lenton Form Saver"
3. Dayton Barsplice "Grip-Twist"

2.7 EMBEDDED METAL ASSEMBLIES

A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36

B. Headed Studs: Heads welded by full-fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.

C. Welded Deformed Bar Anchors: ASTM A1064/ A1064M: Welded by full fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.

D. Reinforcing Bars to be Welded: ASTM A706.

E. Coatings
1. Epoxy coating for metal assemblies shall be "Hi-Build Epoxoline," as manufactured by the Tnemec Company, Kansas City, Missouri, applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

2.8 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II, gray. Supplement with the following:
a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.
b. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: As indicated on drawings.
2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

C. Water: ASTM C 1602/C 1602M and potable.

2.9 ADMIXTURES

A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.10 WATERSTOPS

A. Waterstops: At all construction joints below grade. "Synko-Flex" Preformed Plastic Waterstop by the Henry Company, Inc., meeting the requirements of Federal Specification SSS-210.

B. VAPOR RETARDERS

C. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A.
1. Membrane shall have the following properties:
a. Minimum 15 mils thickness.
b. Permeance Rating: ASTM E96, 0.01 Perms [grains/(ft^2 * hr *- in Hg)] or lower as tested after mandatory conditioning (ASTM E 154 sections 8, 11, 12, 13)

c. Installation shall be in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's instructions.

2. Products:
   a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.: Blackline 400.
   b. Epro; Ecoshield-E 15 mil.
   c. Inteplast Group; Barrier Bac VBC-350 Composite Vapor Retarder
   d. Reef Industries; Vaporguard.
   e. Stego Wrap 15 mil, by Stego.
   f. W.R. Meadows, Inc.: Perminator 15 mil.
3. Accessories
   a. Perimeter/seam sealing tape for use with membranes that are not self-adhering to the underside of concrete slabs on void forms:
      1) Crete Claw detail tape by Stego Industries, LLC, for adhering vapor retarder membrane to the underside of concrete surface at slabs on carton void forms, 3-inch and 6-inch widths as noted in Part 3.
      2) StegoTack double-sided adhesive tape by Stego Industries, LLC, for adhering membrane to concrete at gradebeams.
   b. Manufacturer's recommended standard adhesive or pressure sensitive tape for general use.

2.11 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
   1. Products:
      a. Axim Concrete Technologies; CATEXOL Cimfilm.
      b. BASF Construction Chemicals – Building Systems; Confilm.
      c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
      d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.
      e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
      f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; BurkeFilm.
      g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
      h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
      i. Lambert Corporation; LAMBCO Skin.
      j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
      k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.
      l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
      m. Nox-Crete Products Group; Monofilm.
      n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
      o. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
      p. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid.
      q. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2120 TRI-FILM.
      r. Unitex; Pro-Film.
      s. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Envio Set.

B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

D. Water: Potable.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
   1. Products:
      a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
      b. BASF Construction Chemicals – Building Systems; Kure 200.
      c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
      d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; W.B. Resin Cure.
      e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
      f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Res X Cure WB.
      g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX; TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
      h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
      i. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
      j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
      k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
      l. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.

m. Right Pointe; Clear Water Resin.
n. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Rez Clear.
o. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem Clear.
p. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2519 DC WB.
q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
1. Products:
a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Clear Cure WB.
b. BASF Construction Chemicals – Building Systems; Kure-N-Seal WB.
c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure & Seal 20.
d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Cure and Seal WB.
e. Cresset Chemical Company; Crete-Trete 309-VOC Cure & Seal.
f. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-18).
g. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Spartan Cote WB II.
h. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Aqua Cure VOX; Clearseal WB 150.
i. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Cure & Seal 309 Emulsion.
j. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
k. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
l. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
m. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure.
n. Nox-Crete Products Group; Cure & Seal 150E.
o. Symons by Dayton Superior; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
p. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2519 WB.
q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 309.

G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating**,** certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
1. Products:
a. BASF Construction Chemicals – Building Systems; Kure-N-Seal W.
b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; High Seal.
d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-19).
e. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Spartan Cote WB II 20 Percent.
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM Company; Diamond Clear VOX; Clearseal WB STD.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureCure Emulsion.
h. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 0800.
l. Nox-Crete Products Group; Cure & Seal 200E.
m. Symons by Dayton Superior; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 0800.
2. VOC Content: Curing and sealing compounds shall have a VOC content of 200 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24)

2.12 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.

B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

C. Sleeves and Blockouts: Formed with galvanized metal, galvanized pipe, polyvinyl chloride pipe, fiber tubes, or wood.

D. Nails, Spikes, Lag Bolts, Through Bolts, Anchorages: Sized as required; of strength and character to maintain formwork in place while placing concrete.

2.13 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Repair Mortar – Hand-Applied: Pre-packaged, cement-based, two-component, polymer-modified, trowel-grade mortar, enhanced with penetrating corrosion inhibitor.

1. Compressive Strength: 1200 psi minimum at 1 day; 6000 psi minimum at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.
2. Bond Strength: 1800 psi minimum at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 882 (Modified).
3. Product / Manufacturer: SikaTop 122 Plus or SikaTop 123 Plus, Sika Corporation, or approved equal.

B. Repair Mortar – Form and Pour or Pump: Pre-packaged, cement-based, single-component, polymer-modified, silica-fume-enhanced, cementitious mortar.
1. Compressive Strength: 3000 psi minimum at 1 day; 6500 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.
2. Bond Strength: 2200 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 882 (modified).
3. Product / Manufacturer: Sika MonoTop 611, Sika Corporation, or approved equal.

2.14 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
2. Required average strength above specified strength:
   a. Based on a record of past performance: Determination of required average strength above specified strength shall be based on the standard deviation record of the results of at least 30 consecutive strength tests in accordance with ACI 318, Chapter 5.3 by the larger amount defined by formulas 5-1 and 5-2.
   b. Based on laboratory trial mixtures: Proportions shall be selected on the basis of laboratory trial batches prepared in accordance with ACI 318, Chapter 5.3.3.2 to produce an average strength greater than the specified strength f'c by the amount defined in table 5.3.2.2.
      1) Proportions of ingredients for concrete mixes shall be determined by an independent testing laboratory or qualified concrete supplier.
      2) For each proposed mixture, at least three compressive test cylinders shall be made and tested for strength at the specified age. Additional cylinders may be made for testing for information at earlier ages.

B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
1. Fly Ash: 20 percent.
2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
3. Slag Cement: 50 percent.
4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Slag Cement: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.

D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Do not use admixtures which have not been incorporated and tested in accepted mixes.
2. Use water-reducing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
3. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
4. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

2.15 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

A. Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as indicated on drawings.

2.16 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.17 FABRICATION OF EMBEDDED METAL ASSEMBLIES

A. Fabricate metal assemblies in the shop. Holes shall be made by drilling or punching. Holes shall not be made by or enlarged by burning. Welding shall be in accordance with AWS D1.1.

B. Welding of deformed bar anchors and headed stud anchors shall be done by full fusion process equal to that of TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division. A minimum of two headed studs shall be tested at the start of each production period for proper quality control. The studs shall be capable of being bent 45 degrees without failure.

C. Welding of reinforcement shall be done in accordance with AWS D1.4, using the recommended preheat temperature and electrode for the type of reinforcement being welded. Bars larger than no. 9 shall not be welded. Welding shall be subject to the observance and testing of the Testing Laboratory.

D. Metal assemblies exposed to earth, weather or moisture shall be hot dip galvanized. All other metal assemblies shall be either hot dip galvanized or painted with an epoxy paint. Repair galvanizing after welding with a Cold Galvanizing compound installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Repair painted assemblies after welding with same type of paint.

2.18 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and furnish batch ticket information.
   1. When air temperature is between 85 and 95 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 95 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
   1. Vertical alignment:
      a. Lines, surfaces and arises less than 100 feet in height - 1 inch.
      b. Outside corner of exposed corner columns and control joints in concrete exposed to view less than 100 feet in height - 1/2 inch.
   2. Lateral alignment:
      a. Members - 1 inch.
      b. Centerline of openings 12 inches or smaller and edge location of larger openings in slabs - 1/2 inch.
      c. Sawcuts, joints, and weakened plane embedments in slabs - 3/4 inch.
   3. Level alignment:
      a. Elevation of top surfaces of formed slabs before removal of shores - 3/4 inch.
      b. Elevation of formed surfaces before removal of shores - 3/4 inch.
      c. Lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other lines exposed to view - 1/2 inch.
   4. Cross-sectional dimensions: Overall dimensions of beams, joists, and columns and thickness of walls and slabs.
      a. 12 inch dimension or less - plus 3/8 inch to minus 1/4 inch.
      b. Greater than 12 inch to 3 foot dimension - plus 1/2 inch to minus 3/8 inch.
      c. Greater than 3 foot dimension - plus 1 inch to minus 3/4 inch.
   5. Relative alignment:
      a. Stairs:
         1) Difference in height between adjacent risers - 1/8 inch.
         2) Difference in width between adjacent treads - 1/4 inch.
         3) Maximum difference in height between risers in a flight of stairs - 3/8 inch.
         4) Maximum difference in width between treads in a flight of stairs - 3/8 inch.
      b. Grooves:
         1) Specified width 2 inches or less - 1/8 inch.
         2) Specified width between 2 inches and 12 inches - 1/4 inch.
      c. Vertical alignment of outside corner of exposed corner columns and control joint grooves in concrete exposed to view - 1/4 inch in 10 feet.
      d. All other conditions - 3/8 inch in 10 feet.

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
   1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
   2. Class C, 1/2 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
   3.

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
   1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
   2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
   3.

F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

G. Provide elevation or camber in formwork as required for anticipated formwork deflections due to weight and pressures of concrete and construction loads.

H. Foundation Elements: The sides of all below grade portions of beams, pier caps, walls, and columns shall be formed straight and to the lines and grades specified. Foundation elements shall not be earth formed unless specifically indicated on the Drawings.

I. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

J. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

K. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

L. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

M. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

N. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
   1. Do not apply form release agent where concrete surfaces are scheduled to receive subsequent finishes which may be affected by agent. Soak contact surfaces of untreated forms with clean water. Keep surfaces wet prior to placing concrete.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
      a. Spacing within a bolt group: 1/8"
      b. Location of bolt group (center): 1/2"
      c. Rotation of bolt group: 5 degrees
      d. Angle off vertical: 5 degrees
      e. Bolt projection: ± 3/8"
   2. Headed Studs: Heads welded by full-fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.
   3. Welded Deformed Bar Anchors: ASTM A1064/ A1064M: Welded by full fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.

3.3 VOID FORMS

A. Install void forms in all locations shown on the Drawings. In general, void forms shall be placed below all structural elements supported by piers to separate these elements from the earth.

B. Seal discontinuous ends of void forms and tape all joints with waterproof tape so that concrete will not enter the void space during placement of concrete. Do not leave gaps between void form sections.

C. Premanufactured void forms with circular edges shall be used around all drilled piers. Field fabrication of pier void forms is not permitted.

D. Do not allow any portion of void forms to fall within the circumference of piers causing a reduction in the bearing area.

E. Protect void forms from water. Do not install void forms during wet weather or on wet ground. Void forms which become saturated prior to placement of concrete shall be removed and replaced. Void forms shall not be wrapped in plastic, or other similar material to protect from moisture when installed.

F. Exercise care in placement of concrete to avoid collapse of void form. If void forms collapse, soil beneath the concrete shall be dug out and a proper void space shall be created by installing soil retainers on each side of element.

G. Void forms under slabs shall be protected by a layer of one-eighth inch thick protection board followed by a vapor barrier or retarder per the specifications. Do not install void forms under soil supported slabs on grade.

3.4 SOIL RETAINERS

A. Install soil retainers in straight, clean trenches at sides of void forms prior to concrete placement. The gaps between the trench and retainers must be properly positioned or backfilled prior to the placement of concrete. Do not cast the sides of concrete beams directly against the soil.

B. Affix the soil retainers to the concrete beam with adhesive, pin/washer/load, or concrete hard nails spaced on 24 inch centers.

3.5 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
   1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
   2. Formwork supporting conventionally reinforced concrete shall not be removed until concrete has attained 85 percent of its specified 28 day compressive strength as established by tests of field cured cylinders. In the absence of cylinder tests, supporting formwork shall remain in place until the concrete has cured at a temperature of at least 50 degrees Fahrenheit (10 degrees Celsius) for the minimum cumulative time periods given in ACI 347, Section 3.7.2.3. When the surrounding air temperature is below 50 degrees Fahrenheit (10 degrees Celsius), that time period shall be added to the minimum listed time period. Formwork for two-way conventionally reinforced slabs shall remain in place for at least the minimum cumulative time periods specified for one-way slabs of the same maximum span.
   3. Two-way conventionally reinforced slabs shall be immediately reshored after formwork removal. Reshores shall remain until the concrete has attained the specified 28 day compressive strength.
   4. Minimum cumulative curing times may be reduced by the use of high-early strength cement or forming systems which allow form removal without disturbing shores, but only after the Contractor has demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Architect that the early removal of forms will not cause excessive sag, distortion or damage to the concrete elements.
   5. Forms for post-tensioned concrete shall not be removed until tensioning operations have been completed.
   6. Wood forms shall be completely removed. Provide temporary openings if required.
   7. Provide adequate methods of curing and thermal protection of exposed concrete if forms are removed prior to completion of specified curing time.
   8. Areas required to support construction loads in excess of 20 psf shall be reshored to properly distribute construction loading. Construction loads up to the rated live load capacity may be placed on unshored construction provided the concrete has attained the specified 28 day compressive strength.
   9. Obtaining concrete compressive strength tests for the purposes of form removal shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
   10. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.

B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.6 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with tape as noted below.
   1. Vapor retarder membrane seal at slabs on void forms for use with membranes that are not self-adhering to the underside of concrete slabs: Seal vapor retarder membrane to underside of slab using perimeter/seam seal tape applied continuously to perimeter of vapor retarder membrane at grade beams (3in. tape) and at the seams at interior conditions (6in. tape).
      a. Apply double-sided adhesive tape top surface of grade beam and adhere membrane to tape. Refer to the drawings for detail.
      b. Remove any dirt or debris from membrane prior to application of sealing tape.
   2. General sealing and at slabs on grade: Use manufacturer’s standard adhesive or pressure sensitive tape for sealing membrane at seams, pipe penetrations, tears, etc.

3.7 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
   1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.

C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
   1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated. Only steel conforming to ASTM A706 may be welded.

D. Installation tolerances:
   1. Top and bottom bars in structured slabs, girders, beams and joists:
      a. Members 8" deep or less: ±3/8"
      b. Members more than 8" deep: ±1/2"
   2. Concrete Cover to Formed or Finished Surfaces: ±3/8" for members 8" deep or less; ±1/2" for members over 8" deep, except that tolerance for cover shall not exceed 1/3 of the specified cover.

E. Concrete Cover: Refer to the Structural Notes.

F. Splices: Provide standard reinforcement splices by lapping and tying ends. Comply with ACI 318 for minimum lap of spliced bars where not specified on the documents.

G. Mechanical Splices: Use for splicing of bars larger than no. 11 or where no. 11 bars are spliced to larger size bars and where indicated on the drawings. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for preparation of bars and installation procedures.

H. Field Welding of Embedded Metal Assemblies: All paint and galvanizing shall be removed in areas to receive field welds. All areas where paint or galvanizing has been removed shall be field repaired with the specified paint or cold galvanizing compound, respectively.

I. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

J. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.8 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
   1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
   3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.

4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.9 WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.

B. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, and only if specifically noted as withheld on the batch ticket.
1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
2. Water content shall not exceed the maximum specified water/cement ratio for the mix.

C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
4. Do not permit concrete to drop freely any distance greater than 20'-0" for concrete containing a high range water reducing admixture (superplasticizer) or 5'-0" for other concrete. Provide chute or tremie to place concrete where longer drops are necessary. Do not place concrete into excavations with standing water. If place of deposit cannot be pumped dry, pour concrete through a tremie with its outlet near the bottom of the place of deposit.
5. Pump priming grout shall be discarded and not used in the structure.

D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.

4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

E. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

F. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 305.1 and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below 95 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.11 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.

C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

1. Housekeeping pads: Concrete fill shall be normal weight concrete (3000 psi), reinforced with 4x4-W2.1xW2.1 welded wire mesh set at middepth of pad. Trowel concrete to a dense, smooth finish. Set anchor bolts for securing mechanical or electrical equipment during pouring of concrete fill.

D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.
1. Mix one part Portland Cement and two parts crushed stone or gravel passing 3/8" sieve and retained on a 1/8" sieve, measured by volume with only sufficient water to produce a dry consistency for proper placing and finishing.
2. Placing: Place fill and reinforcement in all steel pan treads and landings. Reinforcement shall be 4x4-W2.1xW2.1 welded wire mesh extending over the area of each tread and landings. Support reinforcement 3/4" above bottom of steel pans. After sufficient hardening of the concrete fill, steel trowel the exposed surface to a smooth finish.

3. Abrasive aggregate: Sprinkle abrasive aggregate into the troweled concrete fill in two shakes at the rate of 1/4 pound per square foot and trowel lightly into the surface.

E. Protective slabs ("Mud slabs"): Concrete fill shall be normal weight concrete (2500 psi minimum) with a minimum thickness of 3 1/2". Reinforce protective slabs with 6x6-W2.9xW2.9 welded wire mesh reinforcing. Finish slab to a wood float finish.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF NON-SHRINK GROUT UNDER BASEPLATES

A. Grout under all bearing and baseplates. Comply with manufacturer's instructions. Do not dry pack.

B. Mixing: Use a mechanical mixer. Add only enough water to make grout placeable. Do not mix more grout than can be used in 20 minutes. Under no circumstances shall grout be retempered.

3.14 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.

D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
   a. Water.
   b. Continuous water-fog spray.
   c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
   a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
   b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
   c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
   a. After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Surface Defects in Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Engineer. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Owner's approval.

B. Contractor shall submit a detailed, descriptive procedure listing proposed pre-packaged repair materials and methods for the repair of surface defects prior to the start of repair work.

C. Patching Mortar: Mix, place and finish pre-packaged repair mortar in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

D. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, minor honeycombs and rock pockets with no exposed reinforcement, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
   1. Immediately after form removal, cut out minor honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface, 1/4 inch deep minimum. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
   2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view using pre-packaged repair mortar so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

E. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
   1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include minor spalls, pop outs, honeycombs and rock pockets with no exposed reinforcement, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide that do not penetrate to reinforcement, and other objectionable conditions.
   2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
   3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
   4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
   5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
   6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with patching mortar. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, ¼" deep minimum. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Place, compact, and finish patching mortar to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
   7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
   8. Unapproved and defective repairs shall be removed and replaced in accordance with requirements provided by the Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.16 STRUCTURAL REPAIRS

A. Structurally Defective Concrete: Structural defects include spalls, honeycombs or rock pockets with exposed reinforcement, hollow-sounding concrete, cracks that penetrate to the reinforcement or completely through concrete elements, inadequate cover over reinforcement, and other conditions that affect the structural performance or durability of the concrete as determined by the Engineer.

B. Repair structural defects in concrete in accordance with plans, specifications, details, etc. provided by the Engineer.
   1. The cost of the additional services provided by the Engineer to prepare the repair documents, and to oversee the repair work shall be borne by the Contractor.

C. Unapproved and defective repairs shall be removed and replaced in accordance with requirements provided by the Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.17 CLEANUP

A. Imperfect or damaged work or any material damaged or determined to be defective before final completion and acceptance of the entire job shall be satisfactorily replaced at the Contractor's expense, and in conformity with all of the requirements of the Drawings and Specifications. Removal and replacement of concrete work shall be done in such manner as not to impair the appearance or strength of the structure in any way.

B. Cleaning: Upon completion of the work all forms, equipment, protective coverings and any rubbish resulting therefrom shall be removed from the site. After sweeping floors, wash floors with clean water. Finished concrete surfaces shall be left in a clean condition, satisfactory to the Owner.

3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner may engage a special inspector and/or a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Inspections may include:
1. Steel reinforcement placement.
2. Steel reinforcement welding.
3. Headed bolts and studs.
4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.

C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
3. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
4. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    a. Cast and laboratory cure four cylinders for each composite sample.
        1) Do not transport field-cast cylinders until they have cured for a minimum of 24 hours.
7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M;
    a. Test one cylinder at 7 days
    b. Test two cylinders at 28 days
    c. Test one cylinder at 56 days
    d. If 4” by 8” cylinders are used, provide 1 additional cylinder at each stage
8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
9. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
11. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine

adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

a. When the strength level of the concrete for any portion of the structure, as indicated by cylinder tests, falls below the specified requirements, the Contractor shall provide improved curing conditions and/or adjustments to the mix design as required to obtain the required strength. If the average strength of the laboratory control cylinders falls so low as to be deemed unacceptable, the Contractor shall follow the core test procedure set forth in ACI 301, Section 1.6. Locations of core tests shall be approved by the Architect. Core sampling and testing shall be at Contractors expense.

b. If the results of the core tests indicate that the strength of the structure is inadequate, any replacement, load testing, or strengthening as may be ordered by the Architect shall be provided by the Contractor without cost to the Owner.

12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 3511

CONCRETE FLOOR FINISHES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Liquid densifiers and hardeners.

B. Clear penetrating sealers.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Finishing of concrete surface to tolerance; floating, troweling, and similar operations; curing.

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate the work with concrete floor placement and concrete floor curing.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's published data on each finishing product, including information on compatibility of different products and limitations.

C. Maintenance Data: Provide data on maintenance and renewal of applied finishes.

D. Specimen Warranty: Manufacturer warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 MOCK-UP

A. For coatings, construct mock-up area under conditions similar to those that will exist during application, with coatings applied.

B. Mock-Up Size: 10 feet (3 m) square.

C. Locate where directed.

D. Mock-up may remain as part of the work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's sealed packaging, including application instructions.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain light level equivalent to a minimum 200 W light source at 8 feet (2.5 m) above the floor surface over each 20 foot (6 m) square area of floor being finished.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.

B. Correct defective work within a two-year period commencing on the Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE FLOOR FINISH APPLICATIONS

A. Unless otherwise indicated, all concrete floors are to be finished using liquid densifier/hardener.

B. Penetrating Clear Sealer: All areas of unfinished concrete.

C. Clear Coating: All areas of unfinished concrete.

2.2 DENSIFIERS AND HARDENERS

A. Liquid Densifier and Hardener: Penetrating chemical compound that reacts with concrete, filling the pores, hardening, and dustproofing.

2.3 COATINGS

A. Penetrating Sealer: Transparent, nonyellowing, water- or solvent-based coating.
   1. Composition: Siloxane.
      a. Products:
         1) Concrete Sealers USA; www.concretesealersusa.com/#sle.
         2) SureCrete Design Products; www.surecretedesign.com/#sle.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that floor surfaces are acceptable to receive the work of this section.

B. Verify that flaws in concrete have been patched and joints filled with methods and materials suitable for further finishes.

3.2 GENERAL

A. Apply materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 COATING APPLICATION

A. Verify that surface is free of previous coatings, sealers, curing compounds, water repellents, laitance, efflorescence, fats, oils, grease, wax, soluble salts, residues from cleaning agents, and other impediments to adhesion.

B. Protect adjacent non-coated areas from drips, overflow, and overspray; immediately remove excess material.

C. Apply coatings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, matching approved mock-ups for color, special effects, sealing and workmanship.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 0100

MASONRY RESTORATION AND CLEANING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Water and Chemical cleaning of masonry surfaces.

B. Repointing mortar joints.

C. Repair of damaged masonry.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 04 0513 - Mortar and Masonry Grout.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. TMS 402/602 - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures 2016.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week prior to commencing work of this section.
   1. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this section.
   2. Review conditions of installation, installation procedures, and coordination with related work.

B. Scheduling:
   1. Perform cleaning and washing of masonry between the hours of 7 am to 11 pm only.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data on cleaning compounds.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with provisions of TMS 402/602, except where exceeded by requirements of Contract Documents.

B. Restorer: Company specializing in masonry restoration with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver masonry neatly stacked and tied on pallets. Store clear of ground with adequate waterproof covering.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold and Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with requirements of TMS 402/602 or applicable building code, whichever is more stringent.

B. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 40 degrees F (5 degrees C) prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.

C. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to maximum 90 degrees F (32 degrees C) prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Restoration and Cleaning Chemicals:
   1. PROSOCO; www.prosoco.com.
   2. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 CLEANING MATERIALS

A. Basis of Design: PROSOCO Enviro Klean EK Restoration Cleaner

B. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

2.03 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements of Section 04 0513.

2.04 MASONRY MATERIALS

A. Brick: To match existing brick.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that surfaces to be cleaned are ready for work of this section.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Protect surrounding elements from damage due to restoration procedures.

B. Carefully remove and store removable items located in areas to be restored, including fixtures, fittings, finish hardware, and accessories; reinstall upon completion.

C. Separate areas to be protected from restoration areas using means adequate to prevent damage.

D. Cover existing landscaping with tarpaulins or similar covers.

E. Mask immediately adjacent surfaces with material that will withstand cleaning and restoration procedures.

F. Close off adjacent occupied areas with dust proof and weatherproof partitions.

G. When using cleaning methods that involve water or other liquids, install drainage devices to prevent runoff over adjacent surfaces unless those surfaces are impervious to damage from runoff.

H. Do not allow cleaning runoff to drain into sanitary or storm sewers.

3.03 REBUILDING

A. Cut out damaged and deteriorated masonry with care in a manner to prevent damage to any adjacent remaining materials.

B. Support structure as necessary in advance of cutting out units.

C. Cut away loose or unsound adjoining masonry as directed.

D. Build in new units following procedures for new work specified in other section(s).

E. Mortar Mix: Colored and proportioned to match existing work.

F. Ensure that anchors are correctly located and built in.

G. Install built in masonry work to match and align with existing, with joints and coursing true and level, faces plumb and in line. Build in all openings, accessories and fittings.

3.04 REPOINTING

A. Perform repointing prior to cleaning masonry surfaces.

B. Cut out loose or disintegrated mortar in joints to minimum 1/2 inch depth or until sound mortar is reached.

C. Use power tools only after test cuts determine no damage to masonry units will result.

D. Do not damage masonry units.

E. When cutting is complete, remove dust and loose material by brushing.

F. Premoisten joint and apply mortar. Pack tightly in maximum 1/4 inch layers. Form a smooth, compact concave joint to match existing.

G. Moist cure for 72 hours.

3.05 CLEANING EXISTING MASONRY

A. Follow manufacturer's instruction for chemical cleaning of the existing masonry. Use cleaning materials only on types of masonry approved by manufacturer.

3.06 RESTORATION CLEANING

A. Clean surfaces and remove large particles with wood scrapers or non-ferrous wire brush.

B. Spray coat masonry with the appropriate restoration cleaner, mixed into solution in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Provide a second application if required to match mock-up area.

D. Allow sufficient time for solution to remain on masonry and agitate with soft fiber brush or sponge.

E. Rinse from the bottom up with potable water applied at 400 psi and at a rate of 4 gal/min.

3.07 CLEANING

A. Immediately remove stains, efflorescence, or other excess resulting from the work of this section.

B. Remove excess mortar, smears, and droppings as work proceeds and upon completion.

C. Clean surrounding surfaces.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 0513

MASONRY MORTARING AND GROUT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Mortar for masonry.

B. Grout for masonry.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 04 2001 – Masonry Veneer: Installation of mortar.

B. Section 04 2010 – Concrete Unit Masonry

C. Section 04 4301 – Stone Masonry Veneer

D. Section 04 7200 – Cast Stone Masonry

E. Section 08 1113 – Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Grouting steel door frames installed inmasonry.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 - Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures; AmericanConcrete Institute International; current edition.

B. ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 - Specification for Masonry Structures; American Concrete InstituteInternational; current edition.

C. ASTM C 94 - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; current edition.

D. ASTM C 144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar, current edition.

E. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; current edition.

F. ASTM C 207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes; current edition.

G. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry; current edition.

H. ASTM C 404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout; current edition.

I. ASTM C 476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry; current edition.

J. ASTM C 780 - Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation ofMortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry; current edition.

K. ASTM C 1019 - Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout; current edition.

L. IMIAWC (CW) - Recommended Practices & Guide Specifications for Cold Weather MasonryConstruction; International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council; current edition.

M. IMIAWC (HW) - Recommended Practices & Guide Specifications for Hot Weather MasonryConstruction; International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council; current edition.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Include design mix and indicate that the Property specification of ASTM C 270 isto be used. Also include required environmental conditions and admixture limitations.

C. Samples: Submit one sample of each available color of mortar, illustrating mortar color and color range from manufacturer's complete line of available colors. Architect will make an initial selection of mortar color for incorporation into the approval mock.

D. Reports: Submit reports on mortar indicating conformance of component mortar materials to requirements of ASTM C 270 and test and evaluation reports per ASTM C 780.

E. Reports: Submit reports on grout indicating conformance of component grout materials to requirements of ASTM C 476 and test and evaluation reports to requirements of ASTM C 1019.

F. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with provisions of ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402 and ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602, except where exceeded by requirements of the contract documents.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Maintain packaged materials clean, dry, and protected against dampness, freezing, and foreign matter.

1.07 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Cold Weather Requirements: Comply with recommendations of IMIAWC (CW).

B. Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with IMIAWC (HW).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I – Normal. Standard gray color and white color are required.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

C. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C 144.

D. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C 404.

E. Water: Clean and potable.

F. Accelerating Admixture: Nonchloride type for use in cold weather.

G. Moisture-Resistant Admixture: Water repellent compound designed to reduce capillarity.

H. Bonding Agent: Latex type.

2.02 MORTAR MIXES

A. Mortar for Unit Masonry: ASTM C 270, Property Specification.
   1. Engineered masonry: Type S.
   2. Masonry below grade and in contact with earth: Type S.
   3. Exterior, non-loadbearing masonry: Type N.
   4. Pointing mortar: Type N with maximum 2 percent ammonium stearate or calcium stearate per cement weight.

2.03 MORTAR MIXING

A. Thoroughly mix mortar ingredients using mechanical batch mixer, in accordance with ASTM C 270 and in quantities needed for immediate use.

B. Maintain sand uniformly damp immediately before the mixing process.

C. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of mortar.

D. If water is lost by evaporation, re-temper only within two hours of mixing.

E. Use mortar within two hours after mixing at temperatures of 90 degrees F, or two-and-one-half hours at temperatures under 40 degrees F.

2.04 GROUT MIXES

A. Bond Beams and Lintels: 3,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; provide premixed type in accordance with ASTM C 94.
   1. Fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less.
   2. Coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.

B. Engineered Masonry: 3,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; provide premixed type in accordance with ASTM C 94.
   1. Fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less.
   2. Coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.

2.05 GROUT MIXING

A. Mix grout in accordance with ASTM C 94.

B. Thoroughly mix grout ingredients in quantities needed for immediate use in accordance with ASTM C 476 for fine and coarse grout.

C. Add admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; mix uniformly.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Apply bonding agent to existing concrete surfaces.

B. Plug clean-out holes for grouted masonry with block masonry units. Brace masonry to resist wet grout pressure.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install mortar and grout to requirements of section(s) in which masonry is specified.

B. Work grout into masonry cores and cavities to eliminate voids.

C. Do not install grout in lifts greater than 16 inches without consolidating grout by rodding.

D. Do not displace reinforcement while placing grout.

E. Remove excess mortar from grout spaces.

3.03 GROUTING

A. Use either high-lift or low-lift grouting techniques, at Contractor's option, subject to other limitations of contract documents.

B. Low-Lift Grouting:
   1. Limit height of pours to 12 inches.
   2. Limit height of masonry to 16 inches above each pour.
   3. Pour grout only after vertical reinforcing is in place; place horizontal reinforcing as grout is poured. Prevent displacement of bars as grout is poured.
   4. Place grout for each pour continuously and consolidate immediately; do not interrupt pours for more than 1-1/2 hours.

C. High-Lift Grouting:
   1. Verify that horizontal and vertical reinforcement is in proper position and adequately secured before beginning pours.
   2. Hollow Masonry: Limit lifts to maximum 4 feet and pours to maximum height of 24 feet.

3. Place grout for spanning elements in single, continuous pour.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. An independent testing agency will perform field tests, in accordance with provisions of Section 01 4000.

B. Test and evaluate mortar in accordance with ASTM C 780 procedures.
   1. Test with same frequency as specified for masonry units.

C. Test and evaluate grout in accordance with ASTM C 1019 procedures.
   1. Test with same frequency as specified for masonry units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 2001
BRICK VENEER MASONRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Clay Facing Brick.

B. Reinforcement and Anchorage.

C. Flashings.

D. Installation of Lintels.

E. Accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 04 0513 - Mortar and Masonry Grout.

B. Section 07 9000 - Joint Sealers: Sealing control and expansion joints.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. TMS 402/602 - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures; 2016.

B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.

C. ASTM C216 - Standard Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From Clay or Shale); 2017a.

D. BIA Technical Notes No. 7 - Water Penetration Resistance – Design and Detailing; 2017.

E. BIA Technical Notes No. 28B - Brick Veneer/Steel Stud Walls; 2005.

F. BIA Technical Notes No. 46 - Maintenance of Brick Masonry; 2017.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 sections for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data for masonry units, fabricated wire reinforcement, and mortar.

C. Samples: Submit four samples of facing brick units to illustrate color, texture, and extremes of color range.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that masonry units meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with provisions of TMS 402/602, except where exceeded by requirements of the contract documents.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.06 MOCK-UP

A. Construct a masonry wall as a mock-up panel sized 8 feet long by 6 feet high; include mortar and accessories and structural backup in mock-up.

B. Locate where directed.

C. Mock-up may remain as part of the Work, following approval.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, handle, and store masonry units by means that will prevent mechanical damage and contamination by other materials.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold and Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with requirements of TMS 402/602 or applicable building code, whichever is more stringent.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 BRICK UNITS

a. Facing Brick: ASTM C216, Type FBS Smooth Face, Grade SW.
   1. Manufacturer, Color and Texture: Brick selections are indicated on the “Finish Schedule” on the Drawings.
   2. Nominal Size: Modular.
   3. Special Shapes: Molded units as required by conditions indicated, unless standard units can be sawn to produce equivalent effect.

2.02 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Mortar and Grout: As specified in Section 04 0513.

2.03 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

A. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Brick Veneer to Concrete Masonry Units:
   1. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
   2. Basis of Design Product: 170-2X Truss Eye-Wire, adjustable reinforcement with 2x-Hook, manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      a. Sized to accommodate wall widths detailed on the drawings.
   3. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

B. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Brick Veneer to Cold Formed Metal Framing:
   1. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
   2. Basis of Design Product: HB-213-2X, adjustable veneer anchor, manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      a. Sized to accommodate wall widths detailed on the drawings.
   3. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

C. Metal-to-Metal Fasteners: Self-drilling, self-tapping screws; corrosion resistant finish or hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153/A153M.

2.04 FLASHINGS

A. Rubberized Asphalt Flashing: Self-adhering composite membrane, 40 mil thickness. Adhesive to be factory laminated to polyethylene sheeting.
   1. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
   2. Basis of Design Product: Textroflash, manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      a. Width: As detailed on drawings.
   3. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

B. Flashing Sealant/Adhesives: Silicone, polyurethane, or silyl-terminated polyether/polyurethane, or other type required or recommended by flashing manufacturer; type capable of adhering to type of flashing used.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

A. Preformed Control Joints: Rubber material. Provide with corner and tee accessories, fused joints.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Blok-Lok Limited: www.blok-lok.com/#sle.
      b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
      c. WIRE-BOND: www.wirebond.com/#sle.
      d. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

B. Joint Filler: Closed cell rubber; oversized 50 percent to joint width; self expanding; in maximum lengths available.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
      b. WIRE-BOND: www.wirebond.com/#sle.
      c. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

C. Weeps: Molded honeycomb grilles, insect resistant.
   1. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
   2. Basis of Design Product: Quadro-Vent, manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      a. Size: 3/8" x 3-3/8" x 2-1/2".
   3. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.
   2. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

D. Cavity Mortar Control: High density polyethylene mesh panels, sized to thickness of wall cavity, and designed to prevent mortar droppings from clogging weeps and cavity vents and allow proper cavity drainage.
   1. Panels to be installed at flashing locations.
   2. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
   3. Basis of Design Product: Mortar Trap, manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

E. Termination Bars: Stainless steel; compatible with membrane and adhesives.
   1. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
   2. Basis of Design Product: T1 Termination Bar, manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
   3. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

F. Drip Edge: Stainless steel; compatible with membrane and adhesives.
   1. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.
   2. Basis of Design Product: DP Drip Plate, manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
   3. Provide factory fabricated stainless steel corners and end dams at inside and outside corners.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

G. Corners and End Dams: Provide factory fabricated stainless steel corners and end dams at inside and outside corners, below flashing.
   1. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: www.h-b.com/#sle.

H. Lap Sealants and Tapes: As recommended by flashing manufacturer; compatible with membrane and adhesives.

I. Cleaning Solution: Non-acidic, not harmful to masonry work or adjacent materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive masonry.

B. Verify that related items provided under other sections are properly sized and located.

C. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.

3.02 COURSING

A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.

B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.

C. Brick Units:
   1. Bond: As indicated for different locations.
   2. Coursing: Three units and three mortar joints to equal 8 inches.
   3. Mortar Joints: Concave.

3.03 PLACING AND BONDING

A. Lay solid masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.

B. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints is not permitted.

C. Remove excess mortar as work progresses.

D. Interlock intersections and external corners, except for units laid in stack bond.

E. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.

F. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.

G. Isolate top joint of masonry veneer from horizontal structural framing members or support angles with compressible joint filler.

3.04 WEEPS/CAVITY VENTS

A. Install weeps in veneer walls at 24 inches on center horizontally above through-wall flashing, above shelf angles and lintels, and at bottom of walls.

3.05 CAVITY MORTAR CONTROL

A. Do not permit mortar to drop or accumulate into cavity air space or to plug weep/cavity vents.

B. For cavity walls, build inner wythe ahead of outer wythe to accommodate accessories.

C. Install cavity mortar diverter at base of cavity and at other flashing locations as recommended by manufacturer to prevent mortar droppings from blocking weep/cavity vents.

3.06 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE - MASONRY VENEER

A. Masonry Back-Up: Embed anchors to bond veneer at spacings vertically and horizontally that comply with applicable codes. Place additional anchors at perimeter of openings and ends of panels, so maximum spacing of anchors is 8 inches on center.

B. Stud Back-Up: Embed anchors to bond veneer at spacings vertically and horizontally that comply with applicable codes. Place additional anchors at perimeter of openings and ends of panels, so maximum spacing of anchors is 8 inches on center..

3.07 MASONRY FLASHINGS

A. Whether or not specifically indicated, install masonry flashing to divert water to exterior at all locations where downward flow of water will be interrupted.
   1. Extend flashings full width at such interruptions and at least 6 inches, minimum, into adjacent masonry or turn up at least 8 inches, minimum, to form watertight pan at non-masonry construction.
   2. Remove or cover protrusions or sharp edges that could puncture flashings.
   3. Seal lapped ends and penetrations of flashing before covering with mortar.

B. Extend flashings to within 1/4 inch of exterior face of masonry.

C. Lap end joints of flashings at least 6 inches, minimum, and seal watertight with flashing sealant/adhesive.

3.08 LINTELS

A. Install loose steel lintels over openings.

3.09 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Do not continue horizontal joint reinforcement through control or expansion joints.

B. Install preformed control joint device in continuous lengths. Seal butt and corner joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Size control joints as indicated on drawings; if not indicated, 3/4 inch wide and deep.

D. Form expansion joint as detailed on drawings.

3.10 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation From Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/16 inch.

B. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 ft and 1/2 inch in 20 ft or more.

C. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story non-cumulative; 1/2 inch in two stories or more.

D. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 ft and 1/4 inch in 10 ft; 1/2 inch in 30 ft.

E. Maximum Variation of Mortar Joint Thickness: Head joint, minus 1/4 inch, plus 3/8 inch.

F. Maximum clear distance at pipe, conduit and other masonry penetrations: Clear distance at any point not to exceed 1/8 inch from the surface of the penetrating component, when measured at any point.

3.11 CUTTING AND FITTING

A. Cut and fit for pipes, conduit and other masonry penetrations. See 3.10, F of this section for allowable tolerances. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.

B. Obtain approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.

3.12 CLEANING

A. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.

B. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.

C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.

D. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.

3.13 PROTECTION

A. Without damaging completed work, provide protective boards at exposed external corners that are subject to damage by construction activities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 51 33

STEEL LADDERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Steel Ladders.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01: Administrative, procedural, and temporary work requirements.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) (www.ansi.org) A14.3 - American National Standards for Ladders - Fixed - Safety Requirements.

B. American Welding Society (AWS) (www.aws.org):
   1. D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel.

C. ASTM International (ASTM) (www.astm.org):
   1. A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.
   2. A47/A47M - Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings.
   3. A48/A48M - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.
   4. A108 - Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Cold-Finished, Standard Quality.
   5. A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
   6. A283 - Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates, Shapes and Bars.
   7. A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners.
   8. A354 - Standard Specification for Quenched and Tempered Alloy Steel Bolts, Studs, and Other Externally Threaded Fasteners.
   9. A500 - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
   10. A501 - Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.
   11. A510 - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Wire Rods and Coarse Round Wire, Galvanized Steel.
   12. A780 - Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings.
   13. A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability.
   14. A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength, Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability.

D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM) (www.naamm.org):
   1. AMP 503 - Finishes for Stainless Steel.
   2. MBG 531 - Metal Bar Grating Manual.

E. Society for Protective Coatings (SSPC) (www.sspc.org) - Painting Manual.

1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Minimum Design Loads:
   1. Pedestrian loading:
      a. Uniform load of 100 PSF.
      b. Concentrated load of 300 pounds.
      c. Maximum deflection under loading: L/240.

2. Concentrated and uniform loads do not need to be applied simultaneously.
3. Perform design under direct supervision of Professional Structural Engineer licensed in the state of Texas, with minimum 2 years documented experience in work of this Section.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals for Review:
   1. Shop Drawings: Show dimensions, metal thicknesses, finishes, joints, attachments, and relationship of work to adjacent construction.

B. Quality Control Submittals:
   1. Certificate of Compliance from Professional Structural Engineer performing system design.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Minimum 5 years documented experience in work of this Section.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store steel above ground on platforms, skids, or other supports; separate with wooden separators.

B. Protect steel from corrosion.

C. Prevent damage to prime coat and galvanized coatings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS - STEEL

A. Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M.

B. Plate: ASTM A283.

C. Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M.

D. Pipe: ASTM A501.

E. Tube: ASTM A500.

F. Bars: ASTM A108.

2.02 MATERIALS - BAR GRATINGS

A. Deformed Steel Rod for Cross Bars: ASTM A615.

B. Platforms: Grip Strut Tread by McNichols Co.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Exposed Screws: Same material as metal being fastened; Phillips flat head, countersunk, unless noted otherwise.

B. Bolts: ASTM A307, hexagonal head type.

C. Primer Paint: SSPC Paint 15, Type 1, red oxide.

D. Anchoring Cement: Two component epoxy type.

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Fit and shop assemble items in largest practical sections, for delivery to site.

B. Fabricate items with joints tightly fitted and secured.

C. Grind exposed joints flush and smooth with adjacent finish surface. Make exposed joints butt tight, flush, and hairline. Ease exposed edges to small uniform radius.

D. Exposed Mechanical Fastenings: Flush countersunk screws or bolts, unobtrusively located, consistent with design of component except where specifically noted otherwise.

E. Supply components required for anchorage of fabrications. Fabricate anchors and related components of same material and finish as fabrication, except where specifically noted otherwise.

F. Conceal fastenings where possible.

G. Welding to conform to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
   1. Use welds for permanent connections where possible. Grind exposed welds smooth.
   2. Tack welds prohibited on exposed surfaces.

2.05 FINISHES

A. Exterior Ferrous Metal: Galvanized; ASTM A123/A123M, to 1.3 ounces per square foot.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install items in accordance with approved Shop Drawings.

B. Install components plumb, level, and rigid.

C. Welding: AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Grind and fill exposed welds; finish smooth and flush.

D. Install sleeved components with anchoring cement.

3.02 ADJUSTING

A. Clean and touch up damaged primer paint with same product as applied in shop.

B. Clean and touch up galvanized coatings at welded and abraded surfaces in accordance with ASTM A780, Annex A1.

3.03 SCHEDULE

A. This Schedule includes principal items only; refer to Drawings for additional items not listed.

B. Ladders:
   1. Side rails: Continuous steel flat bars, 1/2 x 2-1/2 inches, eased edges, spaced as dimensioned on drawings.
   2. Rungs: Round steel bars, 3/4 inch diameter, knurled to ANSI A14.3 (corrugated, non-slip), spaced 12 inches on center. Fit rungs in centerline of side rails and plug weld on outer rail face.
   3. Support ladders at top, bottom, and at intermediate points spaced maximum 5'-0" on center with steel brackets, welded or bolted to supports.
   4. Crossover Platforms: Fit platforms between side rails and weld in place.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 52 13

PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Exterior steel pipe handrails.

B. Freestanding KeeGuard Roof Edge Fall Protection System, including pipe railings, uprights, bases, counterweights, fittings.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS:

A. Metal Fabicrations – Section 055000

1.3 REFERENCES:

A. ASTM A36 – Structural Steel.

B. ASTM A53 - Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless.

C. ASTM A123 - Specification for Zinc (Hot-Galvanized) Coatings on Products Fabricated from Rolled, Pressed, and Forged Steel Shapes, Plates, Bars and Strip.

D. ASTM A500 – Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.

E. NAAMM – Metal Rail Manual, 1986 Edition.

F. OSHA: 29 CFR 1910.23 (e) (1); (e) (3) (iv).

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. Procedures for Submittals: Section 01340.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data sheets for aluminum railing system.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate each item being furnished, including materials, finishes, quantities, sizes, shapes, locations, connections, and fasteners. Furnish setting diagrams, erection plans, templates, and directions for installation of anchors and other items.

D. Quality Control Submittals (For Information Only):
   1. Certificates:
      a. Manufacturer's or fabricator’s certificates attesting that handrail and railing systems meet or exceed specified design criteria.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Design Criteria: Design, fabricate and install railing systems to withstand a minimum concentrated load of 200 pounds applied in any direction at any point on top rail, or 50 pounds per lineal foot.

B. Regulatory Requirements:
   1. 2006 International Building Code with City of Dallas Amendments.
   2. State of Texas: Texas Accessibility Standard (TAS) of the Architectural Barriers Act,
   3. Article 9102, Texas Civil Statues, April 1, 1994.
   4. Federal: American with Disabilities Act of 1990, Title 3 Provisions, Public Accommodations and Commercial Facilities.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

A. Properly identify and mark items in accordance with reviewed Shop Drawings.

B. Store products completely clear of ground and covered to avoid damage by elements.

1.7 SEQUENCING/SCHEDULING:

A. Coordinate with other work affected by railing systems work. Verify support framing requirements with other applicable work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

A. Steel Tubing: Carbon steel, cold-rolled tubing, ASTM A500, Grade B.

B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53 black seamless pipe, Grade B, Schedule 40 unless otherwise specified, free of pits and abrasions.

C. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard fasteners, screws, bolts and spacers compatible with material in contact, non-corrosive and non-ferrous.

D. Galvanized Repair Paint: ZRC Compound by ZRC Chemical Products Co., Carbo Zinc No. 11 by Carbonline or Galv-weld Alloy by Galv-weld Products.

2.2 STEEL PIPE HANDRAILS:

A. Qualities: Steel pipe handrails, welded construction, post mounted
   1. Steel Pipe: Steel pipe, sizes as indicated.
   2. Sleeves: Steel pipe, sized to receive pipe posts.
   3. Finish: Hot dip galvanized.

B. Source: Custom as detailed on Drawings.

2.3 COUNTERWEIGHTED RAILINGS:

A. Railing shall consist of top rails, mid rails, uprights, counterweights and connections.

B. All guardrails shall be part of an OSHA compliant system with a minimum height of 42 inches above the walking surface. Midrail to be 21 inches above the walking surface. Post spacing shall not exceed 8 feet and railing system shall extend 3 feet minimum beyond equipment ends parallel to the roof edge.

C. Railing assembly shall be capable of withstanding a load of at least 200 pounds applied in any direction at any point on the top rail. Test in accordance with OSHA Regulation 29 CFR 1910.23 (e) (1); (e) (3) (iv).
   1. Rooftop Anchor, Inc., Model: Contour Counterweighted Guard Rail System. Phone: (800) 411-3914.

2.4 FABRICATION - GENERAL:

A. Fabricate railing systems in accordance with NAAMM standards and guidelines.

B. Form sections to required sizes and profiles in maximum practical lengths. Completely shop fabricate, fit, and assemble in maximum practical sections.

C. To ensure proper assembly and fit, completely assemble, mark, and disassemble work that cannot be completely shop fabricated.

D. Fabricate work true to shape and size, with straight lines, square and sharp corners, or smooth bends, free from twists, warps, dents, or other imperfections.

E. Provide rigid, hairline, uniform joints between members. Provide concealed fasteners.

F. Perform required welding in accordance with AWS recommendations using welding electrodes recommended by metal manufacturer. Weld in a manner to prevent localized stresses that would cause visible deviation from flatness. Remove discoloration, weld spatter and weld oxide from finish surfaces. Grind and polish entire welded assembly to match finish of adjacent members.

G. Completely clean lubricants and other foreign matter from surfaces after fabrication.

2.5 SHOP FINISH:

A. Galvanized Finish: Zinc coating, ASTM A123.

B. KeeGuard Pipe for handrails, mid-rails, uprights and counterweight connection is to be galvanized mill finish to the requirements of ASTM A53.

C. Kee Klamp® Fittings shall be galvanized to meet ASTM A153.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION:

A. Examine structure and surfaces for defects that would prevent proper installation of railing systems. Do not proceed until defects are corrected.

B. Field measure related work as required for proper fit.

3.2 INSTALLATION:

A. Install items in accordance with reviewed Shop Drawings, true to line, plumb, level, square and in proper planes, free from waves, buckles, deflection, or other objectionable defects.

B. Anchor rigid and secure with concealed fasteners, unless otherwise detailed.

C. Field weld members as specified for Fabrication. Grind and polish welds smooth.

D. Provide even, hairline joints between adjacent members and panels.

E. Touch-up field welds with galvanized touch-up paint.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 12 00

STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Structural steel framing members and connections.
2. Galvanized cooling tower framing.
3. Deck support angles.
4. Shop prime painting and touch up painting in the field.
5. Temporary construction bracing.
6. Fabrication and erection inspection and testing.
7. Grouting under base plates and bearing plates.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
2. Division 1 Section “Submittals” for administrative requirements for the submission of shop drawings and other submittals.
3. Division 5 Section “Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel.
4. Division 5 Section "Steel Deck" for field installation of shear connectors.
5. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels or shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications, and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
6. Division 5 Section “Metal Stairs”.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand LRFD factored loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC's " Steel Construction Manual, edition as referenced in the Building Code.
2. Engineering Responsibility: Fabricator's responsibilities include using a qualified professional engineer to prepare structural analysis data for structural-steel connections.

B. Construction: Type PR, partially restrained.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit in accordance with Division 1 Section “Submittals”.

B. Submittals for Review
1. Provide complete details and schedules for fabrication and shop assembly of members, erection plans, details, procedures, and diagrams showing sequence of erection of structural steel components.
a. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
b. Include embedment drawings.
c. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
d. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts.
2. Shop drawings and erection drawings shall not be made by using reproductions of Contract Drawings.

3. Structural steel members for which shop drawings have not been reviewed shall not be fabricated. Engineer's review shall cover general locations, spacings, and details of design. Omission from shop drawings of any materials required by the Contract Documents shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility of furnishing and installing such materials, even though such shop drawings may have been reviewed and returned.

C. Submittals for Information:
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
3. Connection Calculations: Contractor shall design all connections not specifically detailed on the Drawings under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State of Texas. Submit design calculations for the connections designed by the contractor, prior to or with the steel shop drawings. Shop drawings containing connections for which calculations have not been received shall be returned unchecked as an incomplete submittal. Calculations shall be retained for the Engineer's file and will not be approved or returned.
   a. Connections shall be designed in accordance with the requirements specified in the Structural Drawings and Specifications.
   b. Beam connections: Submit a complete calculation for each different beam connection used and detailed on the shop drawings. Conditions which are similar may be grouped together so as to utilize a single connection design.
   c. Submit complete connection calculations for wind brace connections, truss connections, moment connections and other connections where specified on the Contract Drawings. Each calculation shall identify the location or locations for which the connection applies, the member mark(s) from the Contract Documents, the piece mark(s) from the shop drawings, the member size, the design loading(s), member size, and the end of the member to which the connection applies.
   d. The unit of measurement for the connection calculations must follow the United States customary system (USCS).
4. Welding certificates.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator, and testing agency.
6. Mill Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:
   a. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
   b. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
   c. Shear stud connectors.
   d. Shop primers.
   e. Nonshrink grout.
7. Source quality-control test reports.

D. Submittal for Collaborative for High Performance Schools (CHPS) program:
Product Data: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer, preconsumer, and total recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum 5 years documented experience.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum 10 years of documented experience.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: The special inspector shall verify that the fabricator maintains detailed fabrication and quality control of the workmanship and the fabricator’s ability to conform to approved construction documents and referenced standards. The special inspector shall review the procedures for completeness and adequacy relative to the code requirements for the fabricators scope of work
1. Exception: Special inspections shall not be required where the work is done on the premises of a fabricator that is enrolled in a nationally accepted inspections program acceptable to the registered design professional in responsible charge. At completion of fabrication, the approved fabricator shall submit a certificate of compliance to building official upon request and to the registered design professional in responsible charge stating that the work was performed in accordance with the approved construction documents.

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

E. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this Section shall apply unless noted otherwise. In case of conflict between these Contract Documents and the referenced standard, the Contract Documents shall govern. In case of conflict between these Contract Documents and the Building Code, the more stringent shall govern.

F. The Contractor shall furnish fabrication and erection inspection and testing of all welds in accordance with AWS D1.1, Chapter 6. Submit records of inspections and tests to the Owner's testing laboratory for their review. The fabrication and erection inspectors shall be AWS certified welding inspectors.

G. All materials, fabrication procedures and field erection are subject to verification inspection and testing by the Owner's testing laboratory in both the shop and field. Such inspections and tests will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for providing materials and fabrication procedures in compliance with specified requirements.

H. Qualifications for Welding Work: Contractor shall be responsible for qualifying welding operators in accordance with the AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure." Provide certification to Owner's testing laboratory that welders to be employed in the work have satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests. Recertification of welders shall be Contractor's responsibility.

I. Qualification of Welding Procedures: Contractor shall provide the testing laboratory with welding procedures which are to be used. Welding procedures shall be qualified prior to use in accordance with AWS D1.1, Part B.

J. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges”
2. AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
3. ASTM A6 "Specifications for General Requirements for Delivery of Rolled Steel Plates, Shapes, Sheet Piling, and Bars for Structural Use."
4. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
5. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts."
6. AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code"
7. SSPC (Society for Protective Coatings), standards as noted.

K. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.

1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. Source of Steel Producers: In accordance with Section 2252.202 of the Texas Government Code steel shall be produced in the United States.

A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content and total recycled meet the percentages outlined below:
1. Basic Oxygen Furnace (BOF) Produced Steel
   a. Post-Consumer Recycled Content = 16%
   b. Total Recycled Content = 16%
2. Electric Arc Furnace (EAF) Produced Steel
   a. Post-Consumer Recycled Content = 67%
   b. Total Recycled Content = 67%

B. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992.

C. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36.

D. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36.

E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade C, structural tubing.

F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B.
1. Weight Class: As indicated.
2. Finish: Black, except where indicated to be galvanized.

G. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125, grade A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
1. Finish: Plain.

B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers, plain.

C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.

D. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
1. Configuration: Straight.
2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
4. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
5. Finish: Plain.

E. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 193.
1. Nuts: ASTM A 563hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
3. Finish: Plain.

2.3 PRIMER

A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.

B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

C. Cold Galvanizing Compound shall be "ZRC" cold galvanizing compound as manufactured by ZRC Worldwide, Marshfield, Massachusetts.

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time, capable of developing a minimum compressive strength of 5,000 psi at 28 days.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges", AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings", and as indicated on accepted shop drawings.
1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Mill tolerances shall conform to ASTM A6. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
4. Plates shall be free of gross discontinuities such as ruptures and delaminations. Plates shall comply with ASTM A578, Level 1.
5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.

C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads. Members in compression joints which depend on contact bearing shall have the bearing surfaces milled to a common plane. Members to be milled shall be completely assembled before milling.

E. Base Plates: Oversize anchor bolt holes in base plates to facilitate erection as specified in Table 14-2 in AISC 360-10.

F. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning, or SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

G. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.
1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM F3125, grade A 325 or grade A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
2. Provide washers over all slotted holes in an outer ply.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work. Welds not specified shall be continuous fillet welds designed to develop the full strength of the member. A combination of welds and bolts shall not be used to transmit stress at the same face of any connections. Clean completed welds prior to inspection. Slag shall be removed from all completed welds.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Galvanized surfaces.
5. Top surfaces of beams which support composite metal floor deck.
6. Headed shear studs, although overspray is acceptable.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

2.8 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/ A 123M.
1. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.

B. Galvanizing: The following steel shall be hot-dip galvanized (including any associated fasteners):
1. Lintels and shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.
2. Cooling tower framing and supports.
3. Cooling tower screen support members and braces.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM F3125, grade A 325 or grade A 490 Bolts."

D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
   1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
   2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
   3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
   4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
   1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
   2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Design of temporary bracing and supports shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design," unless closer tolerances are required for proper fitting of adjoining or enclosing materials, in which case the more stringent shall apply.

B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
   1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
   2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
   3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
   4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
   5. Grout under baseplates in accordance with Section 033000.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," Unless adjoining materials dictate a tighter tolerance.

D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
   1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
   2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated. Any member having a splice not shown and detailed on the accepted shop drawings shall be rejected.

F. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of Architect/Engineer. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect/Engineer. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.

G. Gas Cutting: Do not use gas cutting torches in the field to correct fabrication errors in structural framing.

H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM F3125, grade A 325 or grade A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
   1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
   2. A307 bolts and high-strength (ASTM F3125, grade A325 and grade A490) bolts noted to be "snug-tight" shall be tightened using a few impacts of an impact wrench or the full effort of a man using an ordinary spud wrench, bringing the plies into contact.
   3. High-strength bolts which are not specifically designated to be "snug-tight" shall be tightened to provide at least the minimum tension shown in Table 4 of the "Specification for Structural Joints using ASTM F3125, grade A325 and grade A490 Bolts." Tightening shall be done by the turn-of-the-nut method, with direct tension indicators, or by properly calibrated wrenches.
   4. Bolts tightened with a calibrated wrench or by torque control shall have a hardened washer under the element (nut or bolt head) turned in tightening.
   5. Hardened washers shall be placed over slotted holes in an outer ply. Hardened beveled washers shall be used where the outer face of the bolted parts has a slope greater than 1:20 with respect to the bolt axis.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work. Welds not specified shall be continuous fillet welds designed to develop the full strength of the member. A combination of welds and bolts shall not be used to transmit stress at the same face of any connections. Clean completed welds prior to inspection. Slag shall be removed from all completed welds.
   1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.

B. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM F3125, grade A 325 or grade A 490 Bolts."

C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.
   1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
      a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
      b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
      c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
      d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:

1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.

E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Touch-up Cold Galvanizing: Touch up areas of hot dip galvanized members where galvanizing has been abraded during shipping and erection and areas where galvanizing has been removed or damaged due to welding. Apply cold galvanizing compound in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 31 00

STEEL DECK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Roof deck.

B. Work Included
   1. Furnish all labor and materials required to fabricate, deliver and install steel roof deck and accessories including formed steel cant strips, eave strips, valley strips, sump pans, edge closures, pour stops, reinforcing plates and related accessories.
   2. Furnish all labor and materials required to fabricate, deliver and install steel floor deck and accessories including formed steel end closures, edge forms, flashings, and reinforcing plates, headed shear studs, and related accessories.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for structural concrete fill over steel deck.
   2. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
   3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals for Review:
   1. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
   2. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated. Provide deck dimensions, sectional properties, uplift resistance and diaphragm capacity for specified fastener layout and support spacing, and finishes.

B. Submittals for Information:
   1. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck, signed by product manufacturer. Certify that products comply with SDI, UL and ICC standards as specified.
   2. Manufacturer’s installation instructions.
   3. Welding certificates: For each welder employed on the Work.
   4. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
   5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
      a. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
   6. ICC Evaluation Service Reports: Deck units shall be approved by the International Code Council and shall have a corresponding report from ICC.
   7. Deck units shall be classified by Underwriter's Laboratory, Inc. and shall be labeled and marked as required by UL, indicating manufacturer testing and inspection.

C. Submittal for Collaborative for High Performance Schools (CHPS) program:
   1. Product Data: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer, preconsumer, and total recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years documented experience.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents.
   1. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
   2. FM Global Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Global and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.
   3. SDI (Steel Deck Institute) - Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, Roof Decks.
   4. UL - Fire Resistance Directory.

F. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source of Steel Producers: In accordance with Section 2252.202 of the Texas Government Code steel shall be produced in the United States.

B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Steel Deck:
      a. Canam Steel Corp.;The Canam Manac Group.
      b. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
      c. Epic Metals Corporation.
      d. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
      e. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
      f. Verco Manufacturing Co.

2.2 ROOF DECK

A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
   1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A, Structural Steel (SS), Grade as indicated, G60 zinc coating.
   2. Deck Profile: As indicated.
   3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
   4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
   5. Span Condition: As indicated.
   6. Side Laps: Overlapped.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
   1. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized hardened steel, self-tapping "Teks" screws, manufactured by Illinois Tool Works, Inc., Buildex Division, or equal. Size shall be #10 minimum, unless noted otherwise.
   2. Powder Actuated Fasteners: Zinc coated fastener with .145 inch shank diameter and 1 1/4 inch shank length. X-ENP-19 pin as manufacturer by Hilti, or equal.

C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.

D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth.

G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

I. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, sealed watertight. For drains, cut holes in the field.

J. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A780.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

C. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.

D. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

E. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

F. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.

G. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

H. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
   1. Weld Diameter: As indicated.
   2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds as indicated.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 18 inches, and as follows:
   1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
   2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
   3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
   1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.

D. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.

1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

F. Architectural finishes and mechanical, electrical, and plumbing equipment shall not be hung directly from the metal deck.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 4000

COLD FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Load bearing formed steel framing.

B. Formed steel joist framing and bridging.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. AISI SG02-1 - North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members; American Iron and Steel Institute; current edition.

B. ASTM A 153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; current edition.

C. ASTM A 653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; current edition.

D. ASTM C 955 - Standard Specification for Load-Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners (Tracks), and Bracing or Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases; current edition.

E. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel; American Welding Society; current edition.

F. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, "Inorganic," and Type II, "Organic"); Society for Protective Coatings; current edition.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Size components to withstand design loads in conformance with applicable codes:

B. Horizontal Deflection: Design to permit maximum deflection of 1/600 of span.

C. Vertical Deflection: Design non-axial loadbearing framing to accommodate not less than 3/8 in vertical deflection.

D. Design wall system to provide for movement of components without damage, failure of joint seals, undue stress on fasteners, or other detrimental effects when subject to seasonal or cyclic day/night temperature ranges.

E. Design system to accommodate construction tolerances, deflection of building structural members, and clearances of intended openings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data on standard framing members; describe materials and finish, product criteria, limitations.

C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on factory-made framing connectors, showing compliance with requirements.

D. Shop Drawings: Indicate component details, including widths and gages of studs and joists, framed openings, bearing, anchorage, loading, welds, and type and location of fasteners, and accessories or items required of related work.
   1. Indicate stud, floor joist, ceiling joist, roof joist, and roof rafter layout.
   2. Describe method for securing studs to tracks and for bolted framing connections.
   3. Provide calculations for loadings and stresses of specially fabricated framing that have been stamped by a Professional Structural Engineer licensed in the State of Texas.
   4. Provide details and calculations for factory-made framing connectors, stamped by a Professional Structural Engineer licensed in the State of Texas.

E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, conditions requiring special attention.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Calculate structural properties of framing members in accordance with requirements of AISI North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.

B. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the types of products specified in this section, and with minimum five years of documented experience.

C. Installer: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum five years of experience.

D. Design structural elements under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in Texas.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on the drawings.

1.7 RECYCLED CONTENT

A. Provide products and accessories containing not less than 90 percent recycled content.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Metal Framing, Connectors, and Accessories:
   1. ClarkDietrich Metal Framing: www.clarkdietrich.com.
   2. Marino-Ware: www.marinoware.com.
   3. The Steel Network Inc: www.SteelNetwork.com.
   4. Telling Industries: www.tellingindustries.com.
   5. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

2.2 FRAMING MATERIALS

A. Joists and Purlins: Fabricated from ASTM A 653 steel sheet, with G90/Z275 hot dipped galvanized coating.
   1. Base Metal: As required to meet specified performance levels and design detail compatibility.

2. Gage and depth: As required to meet specified performance levels and design detail compatibility. Do not exceed joist widths indicated on drawings without architect approval.

B. Framing Connectors: Factory-made formed steel sheet, ASTM A 653 SS Grade 50, with G60/Z180 hot dipped galvanized coating and factory punched holes.
1. Structural Performance: Maintain load and movement capacity required by applicable code, when evaluated in accordance with AISI North American Specification for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members; minimum 16 gage, 0.06 inch thickness.
2. Movement Connections: Provide mechanical anchorage devices that accommodate movement using slotted holes, screws and anti-friction bushings, while maintaining structural performance of framing. Provide movement connections where indicated on drawings.
3. Provide non-movement connections for tie-down to foundation, floor-to-floor tie-down, roof-to-wall tie-down, joist hangers, gusset plates, and stiffeners.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Bracing, Furring, Bridging: Formed sheet steel, thickness determined for conditions encountered; finish to match framing components.

B. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Surfaces: SSPC-Paint 20, Type I - Inorganic, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. Self-Drilling, Self-Tapping Screws, Bolts, Nuts and Washers: Hot dip galvanized per ASTM A 153.

B. Anchorage Devices: Power actuated.

C. Welding: In conformance with AWS D1.1.

2.5 SHOP FABRICATED ASSEMBLIES

A. Shop fabricate metal framing to the greatest extent possible.

B. Fabricate assemblies of framed sections of sizes and profiles required; with framing members fitted, reinforced, and braced to suit design requirements.

C. Fit and assemble in largest practical sections for delivery to site, ready for installation.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that building framing components are ready to receive work.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF JOISTS AND PURLINS

A. Install framing components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved submittals.

B. Make provisions for erection stresses. Provide temporary alignment and bracing.

C. Place joists at 16 inches o.c.; not more than 2 inches from abutting walls. Connect joists to supports using fastener method.

D. Set joists parallel and level, with lateral bracing and bridging.

E. Locate joist end bearing directly over load bearing studs or provide load distributing member to top of stud track.

F. Provide web stiffeners at reaction points.

G. Touch-up field welds and damaged galvanized surfaces with primer.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/8 inch.

B. Maximum Variation of any Member from Plane: 1/8 inch.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 5000

METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Shop fabricated steel and aluminum items for applications where framing and supports are notspecified in other Sections.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; American ArchitecturalManufacturers Association; current edition.

B. ANSI A14.3 - American National Standard for Ladders -- Fixed -- Safety Requirements; currentedition.

C. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, current edition.

D. ASTM A 36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; current edition.

E. ASTM A 45 – Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings, current edition.

F. ASTM A 53 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Weldedand Seamless; current edition.

G. ASTM A 153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware;current edition.

H. ASTM A 283 - Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon SteelPlates; current edition.

I. ASTM A 325 - Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksiMinimum Tensile Strength; current edition.

J. ASTM A 500 - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon SteelStructural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes; current edition.

K. ASTM B 26 - Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings; current edition.

L. ASTM B 85 - Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Die Castings; current edition.

M. ASTM B 209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; currentedition.

N. ASTM B 210 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes;current edition.

O. ASTM B 211 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Bar, Rod, and Wire;current edition.

P. ASTM B 221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; current edition.

Q. AWS A2.4 - Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing, and Nondestructive Examination; AmericanWelding Society; current edition.

R. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel; American Welding Society; current edition.

S. SSPC-Paint 15 - Steel Joist Shop Primer; Society for Protective Coatings; current edition.

T. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, "Inorganic," and Type II, "Organic"); Society forProtective Coatings; current edition.

U. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning; Society for Protective Coatings; current edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Indicate profiles, sizes, connection attachments, reinforcing, anchorage, size and type of fasteners, and accessories. Include erection drawings, elevations, and details whereapplicable.
   1. Indicate welded connections using standard AWS A2.4 welding symbols. Indicate net weldlengths.

B. Welders' Certificates: Submit certification for welders employed on the project, verifying AWS qualification within the previous 12 months.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design metal fabrications to resist imposed loads under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in the State of Texas.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS - STEEL

A. Steel Sections: ASTM A 36.

B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B cold-formed structural tubing.

C. Plates: ASTM A 283.

D. Pipe: ASTM A 53, Grade B Schedule 40, black finish.

E. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1.

F. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1; type required for materials being welded.

G. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, complying with VOC limitations of authoritieshaving jurisdiction.

H. Provide material with maximum amount of recycled content available that achieves performancerequirements of this Section,

I. Provide material with maximum amount of regional (within 500 miles) material feasible thatachieves performance requirements of this Section,

2.2 MATERIALS - ALUMINUM

A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, 6063 alloy, T6 temper.

B. Sheet Aluminum: ASTM B 209, 5052 alloy, H32 or H22 temper.

C. Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes: ASTM B 210, 6063 alloy, T6 temper.

D. Aluminum-Alloy Bars: ASTM B 211, 6061 alloy, T6 temper.

E. Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings: ASTM B 26.

F. Aluminum-Alloy Die Castings: ASTM B 85.

G. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: Stainless steel.

H. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1; type required for materials being welded.

I. Provide material with maximum amount of recycled content available that achieves performancerequirements of this Section,

J. Provide material with maximum amount of regional (within 500 miles) material feasible thatachieves performance requirements of this Section.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fit and shop assemble items in largest practical sections, for delivery to site.

B. Fabricate items with joints tightly fitted and secured.

C. Grind exposed joints flush and smooth with adjacent finish surface. Make exposed joints butttight, flush, and hairline. Ease exposed edges to small uniform radius.

D. Exposed Mechanical Fastenings: Flush countersunk screws or bolts; unobtrusively located;consistent with design of component, except where specifically noted otherwise.

E. Supply components required for anchorage of fabrications. Fabricate anchors and relatedcomponents of same material and finish as fabrication, except where specifically noted otherwise.

2.4 DOWNSPOUT BOOTS

A. Downspout Boots: Smooth interior without boxed corners or choke points; include integral lubslots, integral cleanout, cleanout cover, and tamper proof fasteners
   1. Configuration: Angluar or straight as shown on Drawings.
   2. Material: Cast iron, ATM A48, casting thickness 3/8 inch minimum.
   3. Finish, Manufacturer's standard factory applied powder coat finish.
   4. Color: To be selected by Architect.
   5. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel fastenings, stainless steel building wallanchors, integral neoprene gaskets, and rubber coupling.
   6. Manufacturers:
      a. Neenah Foundry, a division of Neenah Enterprises, Inc.; www.nfco.com.
      b. Downspout Boots.com, a division of J. R. Hoe & Sons; www.downspoutboots.com.
      c. Substitutions: See section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

2.5 FINISHES - STEEL

A. Prime paint all steel items. Comply with Division 1 Section "Indoor Air Quality Management Plan"
   1. Exceptions: Do not prime surfaces in direct contact with concrete, where field welding isrequired, and items to be covered with sprayed fireproofing.

B. Prepare surfaces to be primed in accordance with SSPC-SP2.

C. Clean surfaces of rust, scale, grease, and foreign matter prior to finishing.

D. Prime Painting: Two coats.

2.6 FINISHES - ALUMINUM

A. Exterior Aluminum Surfaces: Class I natural anodized.

B. Interior Aluminum Surfaces: Class I natural anodized.

C. Class I Natural Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A41 Clear anodic coating not less than
0.7 mils thick.

2.7 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concreteconstruction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports that are not a part of structural-steel framework as necessary to complete the Work.

B. Fabricate units from structural-steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receivehardware, hangers, and similar items.
   1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrallywelded steel strap anchors 1-1/4 inches wide by 1/4 inch thick by 8 inches long at 24 incheso.c., unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Furnish inserts if units must be installed after concrete is placed.

C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions as follows:
   1. Beams: Continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated. Drill bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods;locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from structural-steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints, and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation withother work. Provide anchors, welded to trim, for embedding in concrete or masonry construction,spaced not more than 6 inches from each end, 6 inches from corners, and 24 inches o.c., unlessotherwise indicated.

2.10 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

A. Squareness: 1/8-inch maximum difference in diagonal measurements.

B. Maximum Offset Between Faces: 1/16 inch.

C. Maximum Misalignment of Adjacent Members: 1/16 inch.

D. Maximum Bow: 1/8 inch in 48 inches.

E. Maximum Deviation from Plane: 1/16 inch in 48 inches.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and strip primed steel items to bare metal where site welding is required.

B. Supply setting templates to the appropriate entities for steel items required to be cast into concrete or embedded in masonry.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install items plumb and level, accurately fitted, free from distortion or defects.

B. Provide for erection loads, and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain true alignment untilcompletion of erection and installation of permanent attachments.

C. Field weld components indicated.

D. Perform field welding in accordance with AWS D1.1.

E. Obtain approval prior to site cutting or making adjustments not scheduled.

F. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed, except surfaces to be incontact with concrete.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story, non-cumulative.
B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment: 1/4 inch.
C. Maximum Out-of-Position: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 5213
PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Wall mounted handrails.

B. Free-standing railings at steps.

C. Other railings and guardrails shown on drawings.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Placement of anchors in concrete.

B. Section 04 2000 – Concrete Unit Masonry: Placement of anchors in masonry.

C. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Placement of backing plates in stud wall construction.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 53 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; current edition.

B. ASTM E 935 - Standard Test Methods for Performance of Permanent Metal Railing Systems and Rails for Buildings; current edition.

C. ASTM E 985 - Standard Specification for Permanent Metal Railing Systems and Rails for Buildings; current edition.

D. SSPC-Paint 15 - Steel Joist Shop Paint; The Society for Protective Coatings; current edition

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate profiles, sizes, connection attachments, anchorage, size and type offasteners, and accessories.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.02 RAILINGS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Design, fabricate, and test railing assemblies in accordance with the most stringent requirements of ASTM E 985 and applicable local code.

B. Design railing assembly, wall rails, and attachments to resist lateral force of 75 lbs at any point without damage or permanent set. Test in accordance with ASTM E 935.

C. Allow for expansion and contraction of members and building movement without damage to connections or members.

D. Dimensions: See drawings for configurations and heights.
   1. Top Rails and Wall Rails: 1-1/2 inches diameter, round.
   2. Intermediate Rails: 1-1/4 inches diameter, round.
   3. Posts: 1-1/4 inches diameter, round.

E. Provide anchors and other components as required to attach to structure, made of same materials as railing components unless otherwise indicated; where exposed fasteners are unavoidable provide flush countersunk fasteners.
   1. For anchorage to concrete, provide inserts to be cast into concrete, for bolting anchors.
   2. For anchorage to masonry, provide brackets to be embedded in masonry, for bolting anchors.
   3. For anchorage to stud walls, provide backing plates, for bolting anchors.
   4. Posts: Provide adjustable flanged brackets.

F. Provide welding fittings to join lengths, seal open ends, and conceal exposed mounting bolts and nuts, including but not limited to elbows, T-shapes, splice connectors, flanges, escutcheons, and wall brackets.

2.03 STEEL RAILING SYSTEM

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Grade B Schedule 40, galvanized finish.

B. Welding Fittings: Factory- or shop-welded from matching pipe or tube; seams continuously welded; joints and seams ground smooth.

C. Exposed Fasteners: Flush countersunk screws or bolts; consistent with design of railing.

D. Straight Splice Connectors: Steel concealed spigots.

E. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Finish: Field applied over galvanized finish.

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Accurately form components to suit specific project conditions and for proper connection to building structure.

B. Fit and shop assemble components in largest practical sizes for delivery to site.

C. Fabricate components with joints tightly fitted and secured. Provide spigots and sleeves to accommodate site assembly and installation.

D. Welded Joints:
   1. Exterior Components: Continuously seal joined pieces by continuous welds. Drill condensate drainage holes at bottom of members at locations that will not encourage water intrusion.
   2. Interior Components: Continuously seal joined pieces by continuous welds.
   3. Grind exposed joints flush and smooth with adjacent finish surface. Make exposed joints butt tight, flush, and hairline. Ease exposed edges to small uniform radius.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean and strip primed steel items to bare metal where site welding is required.

B. Supply items required to be cast into concrete or embedded in masonry with setting templates, for installation as work of other sections.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install components plumb and level, accurately fitted, free from distortion or defects, with tight joints.

C. Anchor railings securely to structure.

D. Field weld anchors as indicated on shop drawings. Touch-up welds with primer. Grind welds smooth.

E. Conceal anchor bolts and screws whenever possible. Where not concealed, use flush countersunk fastenings.

3.04 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch per floor level, non-cumulative.

B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/4 inch.

C. Maximum Out-of-Position: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 1000
ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Non-structural dimension lumber framing.
B. Roof-mounted curbs.
C. Roofing nailers.
D. Roofing cant strips.
E. Miscellaneous framing and sheathing.
F. Communications and electrical room mounting boards.
G. Concealed wood blocking, nailers, and supports.
H. Miscellaneous wood nailers, furring, and grounds.
I. Wall sheathing.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Wood Protection Association (AWPA) (www.awpa.com) U1 – Use Category System – User Specification for Treated Wood
B. ASTM C1177/C1177M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing.
C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
D. AWPA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood; American Wood Protection Association.
E. PS 1 - Structural Plywood.
F. PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard; National Institute of Standards and Technology, Department of Commerce.
G. SPIB (GR) - Grading Rules; Southern Pine Inspection Bureau, Inc..

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
B. Product Data: Provide technical data on insulated sheathing, wood preservative materials, and application instructions.
C. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
    1. Certified Wood:
        a. Product data and chain-of-custody certificates for products containing certified wood.
        b. Provide invoices for all permanently installed wood on the project, whether FSC-Certified or not. Invoices must indicate product name, product manufacturer, product cost, FSC status and chain-of-custody number for vendor.
    2. Provide VOC content documentation for any adhesives, sealants, paints or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site.
        a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
    3. Provide certification of no-added-formaldehyde for any permanently-installed composite wood used on the interior of the building.
        a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating that the product has no added urea-formaldehyde (NAUF).

b. Provide product information or statement from manufacturer indicating that composite wood or agrifiber products or adhesives used to fabricate the product have no added urea-formaldehyde (NAUF),

D. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Lumber Grading Agency: Certified to NIST PS 20.

B. Identify lumber and sheet materials by official grade mark.

C. Fire Retardant Treated Products: Bear label of recognized independent testing laboratory indicating flame spread rating of 25 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. General: Cover wood products to protect against moisture. Support stacked products to prevent deformation and to allow air circulation.

B. Fire Retardant Treated Wood: Prevent exposure to precipitation during shipping, storage, or installation.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 01 8113 Sustainable Design Requirements.

B. Required Certification: Composite wood products shall contain No Added Urea-Formaldehyde (NAUF) in the product or laminating adhesives used to fabricate the product.

C. Certified Wood: Lumber and plywood shall be produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

D. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
   1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
   2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
   3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
   4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Dimension Lumber: Comply with PS 20 and requirements of specified grading agencies.
   1. If no species is specified, provide any species graded by the agency specified; if no grading agency is specified, provide lumber graded by any grading agency meeting the specified requirements.
   2. Grading Agency: Any grading agency whose rules are approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standard Committee (www.alsc.org) and who provides grading service for the species and grade specified; provide lumber stamped with grade mark unless otherwise indicated.

F. Lumber fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

G. Provide wood harvested within a 500 mile radius of the project site.

H. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER FOR CONCEALED APPLICATIONS

A. Grading Agency: Southern Pine Inspection Bureau, Inc. (SPIB).

B. Sizes: Nominal sizes as indicated on drawings, S4S.

C. Moisture Content: S-dry or MC19.

D. Miscellaneous Framing, Blocking, Nailers, Grounds, and Furring:
   1. Lumber: S4S, No. 2 or Standard Grade.
   2. Boards: Standard or No. 3.

2.3 CONSTRUCTION PANELS

A. Wall Sheathing: Glass mat faced gypsum, ASTM C1177/C1177M, 5/8 inch Type X fireresistant.

B. Wall Sheathing: Oriented strand board structural wood panel with factory laminated water-resistive and air barrier layer.

C. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: PS 1 A-D plywood, or medium density fiberboard; 3/4 inch thick; flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.4 FACTORY WOOD TREATMENT

A. Treated Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements of AWPA U1 - Use Category System for wood treatments determined by use categories, expected service conditions, and specific applications.

B. Fire Retardant Treatment; treat lumber and sheet products in accordance with AWPA U1:
   1. Interior Locations: Category UCFA – Fire Retardant/Interior.
   2. Exterior Locations: Category UCFB – Fire Retardant/Exterior.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Where wood framing bears on cementitious foundations, install full width sill flashing continuous over top of foundation, lap ends of flashing minimum of 4 inches and seal.

3.2 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

A. Select material sizes to minimize waste.

B. Reuse scrap to the greatest extent possible; clearly separate scrap for use on site as accessory components, including: shims, bracing, and blocking.

C. Where treated wood is used on interior, provide temporary ventilation during and immediately after installation sufficient to remove indoor air contaminants.

3.3 BLOCKING, NAILERS, AND SUPPORTS

A. Provide framing and blocking members as indicated or as required to support finishes, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

B. In framed assemblies that have concealed spaces, provide solid wood fireblocking as requiredby applicable local code, to close concealed draft openings between floors and between top story and roof/attic space; other material acceptable to code authorities may be used in lieu ofsolid wood blocking.

C. In metal stud walls, provide continuous blocking around door and window openings for anchorage of frames, securely attached to stud framing.

D. Where ceiling-mounting is indicated, provide blocking and supplementary supports above ceiling, unless other method of support is explicitly indicated.

E. Provide the following specific non-structural framing and blocking:
   1. Cabinets and shelf supports.
   2. Wall brackets.

3. Handrails.
4. Grab bars.
5. Towel and bath accessories.
6. Wall-mounted door stops.
7. Chalkboards and marker boards.
8. Wall paneling and trim.
9. Joints of rigid wall coverings that occur between studs.

3.4 ROOF-RELATED CARPENTRY

A. Coordinate installation of roofing carpentry with deck construction, framing of roof openings, and roofing assembly installation.

B. Provide wood curb at all roof openings except where prefabricated curbs are specified and where specifically indicated otherwise. Form corners by alternating lapping side members.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CONSTRUCTION PANELS

A. Wall Sheathing: Secure with long dimension perpendicular to wall studs, with ends over firm bearing and staggered, using nails, screws, or staples.

B. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: Secure with screws to studs with edges over firm bearing; space fasteners at maximum 24 inches on center on all edges and into studs in field of board.
   1. At fire-rated walls, install board over wall board indicated as part of the fire-rated assembly.
   2. Where boards are indicated as full floor-to-ceiling height, install with long edge of board parallel to studs.
   3. Install adjacent boards without gaps.

C. Wall Sheathing and Roof Sheathing with Laminated Water-Resistive Barrier and Air Barrier: Secure to studs as recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Install with laminated water-resistive and air barrier on exterior side of sheathing.
   2. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
   3. Use only mechanically attached and drainable EIFS and exterior insulation with wall sheathing with laminated water-resistive and air barrier.
   4. Apply manufacturer's standard seam tape to joints between sheathing panels. Use tape gun or hard rubber roller as recommended by manufacturer.

3.6 TOLERANCES

A. Framing Members: 1/4 inch from true position, maximum.

B. Variation from Plane (Other than Floors): 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum, and 1/4 inch in 30 feet maximum.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Waste Disposal: Comply with the requirements of Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
   1. Comply with applicable regulations.
   2. Do not burn scrap on project site.
   3. Do not burn scraps that have been pressure treated.
   4. Do not send materials treated with pentachlorophenol, CCA, or ACA to co-generation facilities or “waste-to-energy” facilities.

B. Do not leave any wood, shavings, sawdust, etc. on the ground or buried in fill.

C. Prevent sawdust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 2000
FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Finish carpentry items.

B. Wood casings and moldings.

C. Hardware and attachment accessories.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data:

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, accessories, to a minimum scale of 1-1/2 inch to 1 ft.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform work in accordance with AWI Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated, Custom grade at clubhouse and Economy grade elsewhere.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect work from moisture damage.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Sequence the installation to ensure utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

B. Coordinate the work with plumbing rough-in, electrical rough-in, and installation of associated and adjacent components.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER MATERIALS

A. Softwood Lumber: Southern Pine species, plain sawn, maximum moisture content of 6percent; with vertical grain, of quality suitable for transparent finish.

B. Hardwood Lumber: Refer to Finish Legend for species, and cut, maximum moisture content of 6 percent; with vertical grain, of quality suitable for transparent finish.

C. Product made without formaldehyde and complying with ANSI A208.2 Grade MD.

2.2 SHEET MATERIALS

A. Softwood Plywood Not Exposed to View: Any face species, veneer core; PS 1 Grade A-B; glue type as recommended for application.

B. Softwood Plywood Exposed to View: Face species as indicated, plain sawn, medium density fiberboard core; PS 1 Grade A-B; glue type as recommended for application.

C. Hardwood Plywood: Face species as indicated in Finish Legend, cut as indicated, book matched, medium density fiberboard core; glue type as recommended for application.

D. Softwood Plywood: PS 1 Grade A-B; Veneer core; Southern Pine face species, plain sliced cut.

E. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1; composed of wood chips, sawdust, or flakes of medium density, made with waterproof resin binders; of grade to suit application; sanded faces.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. Fasteners: Of size and type to suit application; brushed chrome finish in exposed locations.

B. Adhesives, General: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
   1. VOC Limits for Installation Of Adhesives and Glues: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
      a. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
      b. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Lumber for Shimming, Blocking: Softwood lumber of Southern Pine species.

B. Primer: Alkyd primer sealer.

C. Wood Filler: Solvent base, tinted to match surface finish color.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Shop assemble work for delivery to site, permitting passage through building openings.

B. Fit exposed sheet material edges with 3/8 inch matching hardwood edging. Use one piece for full length only.

C. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.

D. Back prime all edges.

2.6 SHOP FINISHING

A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.

B. Apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations.

C. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler that matches surrounding surfaces and is of type recommended for the applicable finish.

D. Finish work in accordance with AWI Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated, Section 1500:
   1. Transparent: Conversion varnish (formerly TR-4).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.

B. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed andready to receive this work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb and level.

B. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/16 inch.

B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment with Abutting Materials: 1/32 inch.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 4100

ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Shop fabricated cabinet units.

B. Countertops.

C. Cabinet hardware.

D. Factory finishing.

E. Preparation for installing utilities.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program, www.awiqcp.org; current edition at www.awiqcp.org.

B. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2009.

C. BHMA A156.9 - American National Standard for Cabinet Hardware; Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; 2010 (ANSI/BHMA A156.9).

D. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2005.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Pre-installation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting not less than one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 – Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
   1. Minimum Scale of Detail Drawings: 1-1/2 inch to 1 foot.
   2. Provide the information required by AWI/AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards.
   3. Include certification program label.

C. Product Data: Provide data for hardware accessories.

D. Samples: Submit actual samples of architectural cabinet construction, minimum 12 inches square, illustrating proposed cabinet, countertop, and shelf unit substrate and finish.

E. Samples: Submit actual sample items of proposed pulls, hinges, shelf standards, and locksets, demonstrating hardware design, quality, and finish.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
   1. Company with at least one project in the past 5 years with value of woodwork within 20percent of cost of woodwork for this Project.
   2. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement offabrication and throughout the duration of the project.

B. Quality Certification: Provide AWI Quality Certification Program inspection report and quality certification of completed work.
   3. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the work complies with requirements of AWSGrade or Grades specified.
   4. Prior to delivery to the site provide shop drawings with certification labels.
   5. Provide labels on each product when required by certification program.

6. Upon completion of installation provide certificate certifying that the installation andproducts meet the specified requirements.
7. Arrange and pay for inspections required for certification.
8. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.

1.06 MOCK-UP

A. Provide mock-up of typical base cabinet, wall cabinet, and countertop, including hardware, finishes, and plumbing accessories.

B. Locate where directed.

C. Mock-up may remain as part of the Work, if approved by the Architect.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect units from moisture damage.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. During and after installation of custom cabinets, maintain temperature and humidity conditions in building spaces at same levels planned for occupancy.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CABINETS

A. Quality Grade: Unless otherwise indicated provide products of quality specified by AWI//AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards for Custom Grade.

B. Plastic Laminate Faced Cabinets: Custom grade.

2.02 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS

A. Hardwood Edgebanding: Use solid hardwood edgebanding matching species, color, grain, and grade for exposed portions of cabinetry.

2.03 LAMINATE MATERIALS

A. Manufacturers:
1. Formica Corporation: www.formica.com.
2. Panolam Industries International, Inc\Nevamar: www.nevamar.com.
3. Wilsonart International, Inc: www.wilsonart.com.
4. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

B. High Pressure Decorative Laminate (HPDL): Scheduled in Finish Schedule on Drawings.

C. Provide types suitable to meet specified Custom Grade cabinet requirements.

2.04 COUNTERTOPS

A. Countertops are specified in Section 12 3600 - Countertops.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

A. Adhesive: Type recommended by fabricator to suit application.

B. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.

C. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, Pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; galvanized or chrome-plated finish in concealed locations and stainless steel finish in exposed locations.

D. Grommets: Standard rubber grommets for cut-outs, in color to match adjacent surface.

2.06 HARDWARE

A. General: BHMA A156.9 Grade 1 and as follows.

B. Standards and Brackets:
1. Cabinet. Recessed Mounted.
a. Pilaster Standards: #255.

b. Brackets: #256,
c. Finish: Steel/Aluminum, epoxy painted, color to match cabinet interior.
d. Manufacturer: Knape & Vogt.

C. Cabinet Hinges
2. Heavy duty overlay type, with hospital tips.
3. Acceptable Products:
a. Rockford – Five Knuckle Overlay Hinge, 270 degree opening angle.
b. Side panel and door thickness to accommodate casework.
c. Finish: Steel/aluminum.

D. Drawer and Cabinet Pulls:
4. 3-1/2" aluminum pull.
5. Acceptable Product: No. 4483-1/2 by Stanley.

E. Drawer Slide:
6. Full extension slides for box, card file and utility drawers.
7. Acceptable Product: No. 7432/7434 by Accuride.

F. Drawer Slide:
8. Full extension slides for file drawers.
9. Acceptable Product: No. C4034 by Accuride.

G. Touch Latch:
10. Magnetic push latch.
11. Acceptable Product: No. 245.61. by Hafele.

H. Drawer Lock: No. 986 by Knape and Vogt.

I. Cabinet Locks: Keyed cylinder, two keys per lock, master keyed, steel with chrome finish.

2.07 SHOP TREATMENT OF WOOD MATERIALS

A. Provide UL approved identification on fire retardant treated material.

B. Deliver fire retardant treated materials cut to required sizes. Minimize field cutting.

2.08 FABRICATION

A. Assembly: Shop assemble cabinets for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.

B. Edging: Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with specified edging. Do not use more than one piece for any single length.

C. Fitting: When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide matching trim for scribing and site cutting.

D. Plastic Laminate: Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arises. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet from sink cut-outs.

E. Apply laminate backing sheet to reverse side of plastic laminate finished surfaces.

F. Cap exposed plastic laminate finish edges with material of same finish and pattern.

G. Matching Wood Grain: Provide vertical grain direction. Comply with requirements of quality standard for specified Grade and as follows:

H. Provide sequence matching across each elevation.

I. Mechanically fasten back splash to countertops with steel brackets at 16 inches on center.

J. Provide cutouts for plumbing fixtures. Verify locations of cutouts from on-site dimensions. Prime paint cut edges.

2.09 SHOP FINISHING

A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.

B. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler matching or blending with surrounding

surfaces and of types recommended for applied finishes.

C. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 5 -Finishing for Grade specified and as follows:
   1. Transparent:
      a. System - 11, Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
      b. Stain: As selected by Architect.
      c. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.

B. Verify location and sizes of utility rough-in associated with work of this section.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Set and secure custom cabinets in place, assuring that they are rigid, plumb, and level.

B. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.

C. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units.

D. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.

E. Secure cabinets to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.

F. Countersink anchorage devices at exposed locations. Conceal with solid wood plugs of species to match surrounding wood; finish flush with surrounding surfaces.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Test installed work for rigidity and ability to support loads.

B. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings, and fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 52 00 – SBS MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOFING MEMBRANE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Installation of rigid foam roof insulation over prepared (metal and structural concrete) deck(s).

B. Installation of cover board over rigid foam roof insulation.

C. Installation of new hot mop applied SBS modified bitumen roof system with reflective cap sheet.

D. Installation of heat welded SBS modified bitumen roof system with reflective cap sheet.

E. Related membrane and penetration flashing.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS:

A. Section 05 30 00 – Metal Decking.

B. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal flashing and other roof related sheet metal items.

C. Section 07 71 00 – Roof Specialties: Manufactured copings and fascia.

D. Section 07 72 00 - Roof Accessories: Roof mounted curbs, pipe supports and roof hatches.

1.03 REFERENCES:

A. FM 4470 – Approval Standard for Class I Roof Cover

B. ASTM C177 – Test for Thermal Conductivity of Materials

C. ASTM C728 – Perlite Thermal Insulation Board

D. ASTM C1289-02 Type II, Class I, Grade 2 – Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Insulation

E. ASTM D41 – Asphalt Primer

F. ASTM D312 – Asphalt for Use in Constructing Built-up Roof Coverings

G. ASTM D4601 Type II - Standard Specification for Asphalt-Coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing

H. ASTM E84 – Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

I. ASTM E108 – Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings

J. ASTM E136–16 – Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750C.

K. ASTM E1980 - Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces; 2001.

L. FM 1-29 – FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet.

M. FM DS1-28 – Design Wind Loads, Factory Mutual Research Corporation.

N. FM 4450 – Approval Standard for Class I Insulated Steel Decks

O. U.L. 1256 – Standard for Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction

1.04 SUBMITTALS:

A. Procedures for Submittals: Section 01 33 00.

B. Product Data: Submit latest edition of manufacturer's roofing and base flashing specifications, including list of materials proposed for use, and manufacturer's data sheets for other products. Product data submittal to include at a minimum, roofing membrane, flashing membrane assembly, adhesives, primers, sealants, component, fasteners and accessories.

C. Shop Drawings:
   1. Manufacturer's standard pre-printed details will not be acceptable Shop Drawings.
   2. Indicate complete project specific installation details of roofing and flashing, including flashing details, penetration details and accessories.
   3. Include complete flashing detail for each flashing condition. Indicate flashing detail locations on roof plan.
   4. Indicate complete installation details of tapered insulation, including identification of each insulation block, sequence of installation, layout, roof slopes, thicknesses, crickets and saddles.
   5. Submit proposed fastening patterns for the field, perimeter and corners of each individual roof area in accordance with FM Global Data Sheet 1-29.

D. Samples: Submit 8 x 11 in. sample of roof membrane cap sheet with specified color.

E. Quality Control Submittals:
   1. Warranty: Submit specimen copy of roofing contractor and roofing manufacturer's roofing warranty with Product Data submittal, including evidence of application for warranty.
   2. Manufacturer's Reports:
      a. Concurrent with Shop Drawing submittal; submit roof manufacturer's review of Contract Documents, acceptance of applicator and warranty conditions.
      b. At completion of project, submit manufacturer's field quality reports of field inspections, including copy of manufacturer's final inspection punch list.
   3. Certification:
      a. If roof insulation and cover board is not manufactured by the roofing manufacturer, submit roof manufacturer’s certification that insulation furnished is acceptable to roofing manufacturer as a component of roofing system and is eligible for roof manufacturer’s system warranty.

F. Progress Schedule/Phasing Plan:
   1. Submit a complete progress schedule and phasing plan.
   2. Include roof plan with layout of phasing, indicating amount of roof area included in each day's work.
   3. Indicate dates for beginning and completing each activity.
   4. Identify other related work affected by roofing work.

G. Materials Storage: Submit manufacturer’s written materials storage requirements for review.

H. Contract Closeout Submittals:
   1. Maintenance Data: Compile and submit maintenance instructions in accordance with Division 1. Include complete manufacturer's instructions for periodic inspection and maintenance of roofing system, including precautions and warnings to prevent damage and deterioration to roofing system.

I. Warranties: Contractor to provide professionally framed copies of the contractor and roofing manufacturer’s warranties mounting such at the roof access point as designated by Owner.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Applicator:
   1. Roofing sub-contractor shall have the highest level of certification issued by the roofing system manufacturer prior to bidding of the Construction Contract and shall provide said letter stating such in along with the roofing related submittals.
   2. This documentation shall demonstrate the roofing sub-contractor's experience for a minimum of 5 completed projects of similar size and type within the last 4 years.
   3. Roofing sub-contractor shall maintain a permanent office within a reasonable distance of project site to satisfy Owner that projects can be properly serviced during warranty phase.
   4. Roofing sub-contractor to submit asphalt fume control plans for equipment and proposed loading and heating procedures to limit ground level asphalt fumes for mop-on applications.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Class A fire hazard classification from a recognized independent testing laboratory.

C. Pre-Installation Conference:
   1. Prior to the commencement of roofing related work, conduct a roofing related pre-installation conference at the project site.
   2. Attendance: Architect, Contractor, project superintendent, roof foreman and roof manufacturer's technical representative.
   3. Agenda:
      a. Maintaining water tightness of building during reroofing, including night seal procedures and temporary covering of deck openings.
      b. Review of previously approved submittals.
      c. Quality control.
      d. Roofing details and procedures.
      e. Critical work sequencing.
      f. Contractor’s proposed materials storage and set up locations.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original unopened containers or packages with labels intact and legible, including required fire resistance classification labels.

B. Store rolled goods on end on clean raised platforms with weather protective covering when stored outdoors. The manufacturer’s factory applied plastic wrap will not serve in, and of its self, as a weather protective covering. Manufacturer’s factory applied plastic wrap shall be removed if required to prevent condensation from forming in the respective stored materials. Adhere to manufacturer’s written jobsite storage requirements.

C. Provide continuous protection of materials against wetting and absorption; remove wet materials from project site.

D. Materials stored on roof levels for immediate use shall be:
   1. Distributed to prevent concentrated loads that would impose excessive strain on deck or structural members.
   2. Positively secured to prevent displacement by excessive wind forces.
   3. Stored in a manner that is acceptable to roofing manufacturer.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Existing Conditions: Examine substrates to receive roofing and other items that affect the installation of new roofing.

B. Environmental Requirements:
   1. Apply roofing in dry weather.
   2. Do not remove existing roofing and flashing in inclement weather or when a 30% or higher percentage of rain is forecasted by the local national weather service for the period of time that is planned for the installation of roofing on a given day.
   3. Do not apply roofing when ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F.
   4. Ensure roof deck is structurally sound and sufficiently rigid to support the live and dead load requirements of the construction traffic.

C. Protection:
   1. Provide special protection or avoid heavy traffic on completed work when ambient temperature is above 80 degrees F.
   2. Restore to original condition or replace work or materials damaged during handling of roofing materials.

D. Emergency Equipment: Maintain on-site equipment necessary to apply emergency temporary edge seal in the event of sudden storms or inclement weather.

E. Restrictions:
   1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 14 00 on work restrictions of site.
   2. The use of tobacco products on project site is prohibited.

1.08 SEQUENCING/SCHEDULING:

A. For each day's work, install complete roof system including flashings, penetrations and other materials required for a complete, watertight installation.

1.09 WARRANTIES:

A. Applicator: Furnish a 5-year warranty against leaks and defects in materials and workmanship.
   1. Include repairs required to maintain roof and base flashing in a watertight condition and the repair of roofing deficiencies such as blisters even if such has not created a path for moisture entry into the roof system components and subject facility.
   2. Make repairs at no expense to Owner.
   3. Make repairs in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements with such roofing manufacturer inspecting such repairs and providing a letter certifying that all repairs have been properly performed with approved materials leaving all warranties in full effect.

B. Roof Manufacturer: Furnish a 20-year NDL total roof system warranty against leaks and defects in materials and workmanship.
   1. Include agreement to maintain roof and base flashing in a watertight condition for period of warranty. Warranty coverage to include:
      a. Base ply materials, fasteners and adhesives.
      b. Roof membrane components and adhesives.
      c. All accessory products required for installation of membrane roofing system, including surface mastics, coatings, stripping plies, primers, and tapered edge and cant strips.
      d. Roof insulation.
      e. Warranty shall not exclude coverage as a result of winds less than 54 m.p.h.
      f. Make repairs at no expense to Owner.
      g. Monetary liability of warranty shall not be limited.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER:

A. System specified for roofing is an SBS modified bitumen sheet roof system manufactured by Johns Manville and is listed as a standard of quality.

B. Other SBS systems by Siplast, and Soprema are listed as acceptable substitutions. These acceptable substitution roof systems shall include modifications and other accessories required by roof system manufacturer to provide same performance and warranty as specified.

C. Products furnished for roofing system shall be products of a single manufacturer.

D. Component products listed for roofing system are product names of Johns Manville, unless otherwise specified.

E. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's recommendations for component roofing system materials not listed in this specification.

Note: No "cold" application will be acceptable. No "aluminum" clad base flashings are acceptable. Also note: A 4hour fire watch will be required.

2.02 ROOFING SYSTEM - OVER INSULATION:

A. Qualities: Torch applied multi-ply SBS modified bitumen roofing, consisting of an unsurfaced SBS sheet and reflective mineral surfaced SBS cap sheet, applied over cover board.

B. Roofing System Performance Requirements:
   1. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) for exposed roofing: 78, minimum, calculated in accordance with ASTM E 1980.
      a. Field applied coating may not be used to achieve specified SRI.
   2. External Fire Exposure Classification: ASTM E108 Class A, UL or Warnock Hersey listed.
   3. Wind Resistance Classification: Factory Mutual 1-90, in accordance with FM DS 1-28.

C. Source: Specification 2FID by Johns Manville consisting of base sheet, one layer of DynaBase HW and one layer of DynaKap FR T1 HW CR G is basis of design.

2.03 ROOF FLASHING MEMBRANES:

A. Flashing: 2 ply system with reflective surfaced SBS cap sheet applied over a base sheet.
1. Base Ply: Unsurfaced base ply sheet. Product: DynaWeld 180 by Johns Manville.
2. Top Sheet: DynaWeld Cap 180FR CR G by Johns Manville.

B. Penetration Flashing:
1. Liquid Applied Flashing: A liquid and fabric reinforced flashing system created with a stitchbonded polyester scrim and a two-component, moisture cured, elastomeric, liquid applied flashing material, consisting of an asphalt extended urethane base material and an activator. Product: PermaFlash System
2. Product: PermaFlash System by Johns Manville.

C. Joint Sealants: Refer to Section 07 92 00.

2.04 ROOF INSULATION:

A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by modified bitumen roofing manufacturer.

B. Rigid Foam Roof Insulation:
1. Qualities: Rigid closed cell polyisocyanurate foam core bonded to heavy duty glass fiber mat facers:
   a. Thicknesses: As indicted on Drawings.
   b. Size: 48 in. x 48 in. maximum.
   c. R Value: R-30 minimum, LTTR Method.
   d. UL Rating: Class A.
   e. Complies with Factory Mutual 4450 or U.L. 1256 for use directly over metal roof deck without separate thermal barrier.
2. Standards:
   a. Overall Product: ASTCM 1289-02, Type II, Class I, Grade 2
   b. Fire Hazard: ASTM E84.
   c. Thermal Conductance: ASTM C177.

C. Tapered Rigid Foam Roof Insulation:
1. Qualities: Same as rigid foam roof insulation board.
   a. Tapers: As indicated on Drawings.
   b. Minimum Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Standards: Same as rigid foam roof insulation board.

2.05 ROOF INSULATION COVER BOARD:

A. Cover Board:
1. Qualities: Primed, fiberglass faced gypsum coverboard. No cellulose content.
   a. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
   b. Size: Nominal 4 x 4 ft.
   c. Source: Georgia Pacific: DensDeck Prime.

2.06 RELATED MATERIALS:

A. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D41.

B. Asphalt Bitumen: ASTM D312, Type IV.

C. Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, Type II; asbestos free; Bestile Industrial Roof Cement by Johns Manville.

D. Fasteners - General:
   1. Nails: Non-ferrous, cement-coated, or galvanized fasteners approved by roofing manufacturer.
      a. Self-Clinching Nails: (Lightweight Insulating Concrete) Zonolite base ply fastener, (Nail-Tite MK III), by ES Products, Inc., or Soprema Base Sheet Fasteners, type and size as recommended by manufacturer.

E. Fasteners – Roof Insulation:
   1. Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions set forth in FMG 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate as supplied or approved by roof manufacturer in writing.

F. Roof Drain Flashing: 4 lb. sheet lead, 30 x 30 in.

G. Roof Walkway: Additional ply of specified SBS cap sheet.

H. Fiber Cants and Tapered Edge Strips: Asphalt impregnated preformed fiberboard or preformed perlite fiberboard.

I. Metal Termination Bar: 1/8 x one inch aluminum bar pre-drilled or punched for fasteners at 6 in. o.c.

J. Synthetic Chips: Synthetic chips to match the factory applied reflective surfacing of the finish ply cap sheet.

K. Polyurethane Foam Adhesive: INSTA-STIK Professional Roofing Adhesive by Dow Chemical, Inc., or other approved adhesive by membrane manufacturer.

L. Asphalt-Coated Vented Fiberglass Base Sheet: ASTM D4601, Type II.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION:

A. Verify that work penetrating roof deck has been completed, and pipes, conduits, etc. are secured to structure below the deck.

B. Ensure that no curing compound has been used on concrete deck. If curing compound has been used, bead blast the concrete to remove all curing compound.

C. Examine surfaces for defects, rough spots, ridges, depressions, foreign material, moisture and unevenness.

D. Confirm that roof openings and deck penetrations are located so as to allow for them to be properly flashed, that roof drains are installed at the designated elevations and secured in place and that blocking, curbs and wood nailers are properly installed. Proceed only when conditions are acceptable to manufacturer.

E. Do not proceed until defects are corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION:

A. Priming: Prime metal, concrete and masonry surfaces with asphalt primer.

B. Cleaning:
   1. Verify that debris has been completely removed.
   2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and piping.

3.03 APPLICATION – ROOF INSULATION OVER SLOPED METAL DECK – MECHANICALLY ATTACH AND ADHERED:

A. General:
   1. Install insulation with longitudinal joints, continuous straight lines with end joints staggered at 24 inches minimum.

2. Neatly cut and fit insulation around penetrations and at roof perimeters. Any gaps in insulation exceeding 1/4 inch in width shall be filled with insulation.
3. Install no more insulation at one time than can be roofed on the same day. Any insulation left exposed at the end of the workday, or which is exposed to water, shall be removed and discarded with no exceptions.
4. Install temporary water cut-offs at completion of each day's work and remove such upon resumption of work.
5. Verify that metal deck is dry, free of moisture and approved by manufacturer for installation of insulation.

B. Mechanically Attached and Adhered:
1. Inspect metal deck to provide a smooth, sound substrate to secure the new roof assembly to.
2. Mechanically attach bottom layer of rigid foam insulation in accordance with manufacturer's requirements and to comply with ASCE 7 for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area.
3. Fully adhere second layer of rigid foam insulation with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7. Each layer shall be staggered 12 inches in relation to the layer below.
4. Fully adhere scheduled tapered insulation for crickets with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area over rigid insulation as scheduled in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10. Each layer shall be staggered 12 inches in relation to the layer below. All tapered insulation shall be installed in accordance with approved shop drawings.

C. Gypsum Cover Board:
1. Fully adhere gypsum cover board with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10. Coverboard shall be staggered 12 inches in relation to the layer below.

3.04 APPLICATION – ROOF INSULATION OVERLAY OVER LEVEL LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE DECKS – MECHANICALLY ATTACHED AND ADHERED:

A. General:
1. Install insulation with longitudinal joints, continuous straight lines with end joints staggered at 24 inches minimum.
2. Neatly cut and fit insulation around penetrations and at roof perimeters. Any gaps in insulation exceeding 1/4 inch in width shall be filled with insulation.
3. Install no more insulation at one time than can be roofed on the same day. Any insulation left exposed at the end of the work day, or which is exposed to water, shall be removed and discarded with no exceptions.
4. Install temporary water cut-offs at completion of each day's work and remove such upon resumption of work.
5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry, free of moisture and approved by manufacturer for installation of insulation.

B. Mechanically Attached Base Sheet:
1. Inspect and repair existing lightweight concrete as required to provide a smooth, sound substrate to secure the new roof assembly to. Refer to Section 07 56 50, Minor Roof Renovation Work for repair of lightweight concrete.
2. Mechanically attach a base sheet to the level lightweight concrete using approved fastening patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10.
3. Fully adhere bottom layer of rigid foam insulation with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and

corners for each roof area over mechanically attached base sheet in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10.

4. Fully adhere second layer of insulation with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area over rigid insulation as scheduled in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10. Each layer shall be staggered 12 inches in relation to the layer below. All tapered insulation shall be installed in accordance with approved shop drawings. Insulation starting thickness is required to provide R-30 insulating value at the lowest point of the roof.
5. Fully adhere scheduled tapered insulation to provide 1/4 inch per foot slope with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area over rigid insulation as scheduled in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10. Each layer shall be staggered 12 inches in relation to the layer below. All tapered insulation shall be installed in accordance with approved shop drawings.
6. Fully adhere scheduled 1/2 inch per foot tapered insulation for crickets with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area over rigid insulation as scheduled in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10. Each layer shall be staggered 12 inches in relation to the layer below. All tapered insulation shall be installed in accordance with approved shop drawings.

C. Gypsum Cover Board:
1. Fully adhere gypsum cover board with low-rise foam adhesive with bead spacing in accordance with the approved adhesive patterns for the field, perimeters and corners for each roof area in accordance with roofing manufacturer's requirements and ASCE 7-10. Coverboard shall be staggered 12 inches in relation to the layer below.

3.05 TORCH APPLICATION OF SBS MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOFING BASE SHEET AND TORCH APPLICATION OF CAP SHEET:

A. General:
1. Membrane application: Apply roofing in accordance with roofing manufacturer's instructions and as detailed and specified herein.
2. Aesthetic considerations: An aesthetically pleasing overall appearance of the finished roof system will be required prior to the work being accepted. Numerous patches and other repairs that will be sight exposed after the installation of the roof system has been completed will not be acceptable.
3. Unroll all roofing plies, base and cap, and allow to fully relax before rerolling and installing.

B. Roofing Membrane – Torch Application of Base Ply:
1. Install in accordance with roofing manufacturer's specifications, and as specified below.
2. Lay sheets at right angles to slope of deck.
3. Extend field of roof base ply to the top of the cant minimum, and 2 inches maximum above the top of the cant.
4. Torch apply unsurfaced base sheet to substrate lapping sides a minimum of 3 inches and ends a minimum of 6 inches. Stagger end laps a minimum of 3 ft. Prevent traffic of all types from ply sheets until asphalt has cooled to 50 degrees below EVT.
5. Prior to the installation of any cap sheet, inspect the roof with the owner, contractor, roofing contractor, roofing manufacturer and owner's third-party consultant. Address all deficiencies in base sheet application prior to beginning installation of any cap sheet.

C. Roofing Membrane – Torch Application of Cap Sheet:
1. Install in accordance with roofing manufacturer's specification, and as specified below.
2. Phased construction of roofing membrane is strictly prohibited, unless specifically approved by roofing manufacturer.
3. Lay sheets at right angles to slope of deck.

4. Extend field of roof cap sheet to the top of the cant minimum, and 2 inches maximum above the top of the cant, and fully degranulate from the top of the cap sheet to 4 inches beyond the toe of the cant.
5. Heat weld cap sheet over unsurfaced ply membrane, lapping sides a minimum of 3 inches and ends a minimum of 6 inches. Fully degranulate, for end laps, cap sheet as required prior to beginning the next sheet. Stagger laps between plies a minimum of 12 inches. Heat weld in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Avoid asphalt seepage greater than 1/2 inch at seams. Check lap seams using edge of a hot trowel. Correct defects. Stagger end laps of adjacent sheets 3 feet. Prevent traffic of all types from ply sheets until asphalt has cooled to 50 degrees below EVT.
6. Granule Embedment: Broadcast approved granules into asphalt seepage during installation of cap sheet while bitumen is still hot.
7. Complete application of roofing system without pockets, blisters, wrinkles or fish mouths.
8. Complete installation of roofing system up to line of termination of day's work. Install temporary water cut-offs of asphalt or plastic cement and fiberglass felts at end of each day's work. Remove upon resumption of work.
9. Ponding Water: Areas which pond water in excess of the roofing system manufacturer's definition of acceptable standing or ponding water, shall be corrected by adding additional layers of modified bitumen base ply or by adding a coating to the mineral surfaced cap sheet in accordance with the roofing system manufacturer's written instructions in order eliminate any conditions that will result in a warranty exclusion. The installation of an additional 1,000 s.f. of base ply is to be included in the Base Bid with the actual cost for additional base ply being adjusted on the basis of unit pricing.

D. Base Flashing:
1. Install 2 ply system consisting of unsurfaced ply sheet and mineral surfaced cap sheet in accordance with requirements of roofing system manufacturer, with each ply sheet extending full height of flashing to 12 inches minimum and 30 inches maximum above the finished roof surface.
2. Mechanically attach leading/top edge of flashings with continuous termination bars with fasteners installed at 6 inches on center. Apply 3-course flashing to cover top of roof membrane and termination bar.
3. Install where indicated and where roofing system abuts vertical surfaces and at curbs.
4. Extend base flashing up rise walls and parapet walls as indicated, with such flashings being extended onto the field of the roof in accordance with the manufacturer’s requirements.

E. Liquid Applied Penetration Flashing:
1. Install penetration flashings at scheduled penetrations as detailed in accordance with manufacturer's directions.
2. Prepare metal surfaces by sandblasting to bare metal or as otherwise required by roofing manufacturer. Prime all metal surfaces with manufacturer's recommended primers.
3. Install liquid flashing in a layered application with scrim cloth reinforcing.

F. Roof Drains:
1. Extend roof membrane into roof drain and flash with lead flashing and membrane in accordance with manufacturer's directions.
2. Securely tighten clamping rings and securely install strainers. Replace damaged, missing or plastic roof drain strainers with painted cast iron strainers properly sized for each subject roof drain.

G. Roof Walkways: Adhere and additional ply of modified bitumen cap sheet over the surface of the finished modified bitumen cap sheet in accordance with the manufacturer’s requirements. Install walkways around three sides of all roof hatches, below doors providing access to roof areas, on each side of roof access ladders installed to provide access from one roof area to another and around all rooftop equipment requiring periodic maintenance. Provide one inch gaps between walkways at a maximum of 6 ft. on center or as otherwise approved.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:

A. Manufacturer's Field Service:
   1. Attend pre-installation conference.
   2. During installation, provide one on-site inspection for each 10,000 s.f. of roofing application by qualified technical representatives of roofing manufacturer.
   3. Upon completion of installation of the base ply, provide an interim inspection by a technical representative of roofing manufacturer to confirm that base ply has been installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements. Issue roofing manufacturer's interim inspection document noting any deficiencies that need to be addressed prior to the cap sheet being installed.
   4. Upon completion of roof system installation, provide a final inspection by a technical representative of roofing manufacturer to confirm that roofing system has been installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements. Issue the roofing manufacturer's final completion checklist to Architect and Owner for review.

B. Ponding Water: Areas which pond water in excess of the roofing system manufacturer's definition of acceptable standing or ponding water, shall be corrected by adding additional layers of modified bitumen base ply or by adding a coating to the mineral surfaced cap sheet in accordance with the roofing system manufacturer's written instructions in order to eliminate any conditions that will result in a warranty exclusion. This shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. Provide one copy of the roofing manufacturer's Final Inspection Report to Owner, Architect and Owner's third-party consultant within 2 working days from the date of the Final Inspection having been completed.

D. Contractor shall have copies of their roof warranty and the roofing manufacturer's warranty professionally mounted and framed installed near the main access point to the roof as designated by Owner.

E. Following is a list of the DISD's Habitual Punch List items as they relate to this project:
   1. All roof system base flashings shall be a minimum of 12 inches, or as indicated, above adjacent finish roof elevation. The height of all roof curbs should take this requirement into consideration.
   2. Provision of soldered corners on counter flashings installed at roof curbs. Installation of properly sized roof curbs.
   3. Provision of soldered joints on all thru wall scuppers. Continuous sealant installed on scupper escutcheon plates.
   4. Installation of properly sized pipe supports for all roof level piping at 8 ft. o.c. maximum in linear direction and within 2 ft. of each change in direction. Provide pipe supports with rollers for all piping 1.25 inches or greater in diameter. All pipe supports are to be installed over an additional ply of modified bitumen cap sheet as protection pas.
   5. Provision of non-damaging pads for all equipment installed directly on roof.
   6. Provision of temporary roof protection by trades performing work over roof system. Limit storage of materials on roof.
   7. Roof system base flashings shall not have aluminum cladding.
   8. No penetrations thru base flashings unless resin flashings for such are approved by roofing manufacturer.
   9. Installation of resin flashings in lieu of pitch pans or metal penetration dams at piping and conduit penetrations. All piping and conduit penetrations must be hard pipe or conduit and shall be properly anchored to deck.
   10. Refrigerant line penetrations. Membrane to be peeled at refrigerant line penetration to determine flashing and sealed.
   11. Avoid damage to roof from cutting oils, refrigerant oils, soldering, etc.
   12. Provision of overflow provisions in conductor heads.
   13. Provision of thru-wall flashings with weeps at all masonry rise walls that occur above roofing.

14. Provision of minimum 12 inch high roof system base flashings below windows that occur above roofing.
15. Overflow drains shall have their inlet elevations set at 2 inches above the inlet elevation for the primary roof drains.
16. Ponding water 48 hours after rain is unacceptable.
17. New and replaced roof drain strainers to be metal not plastic.
18. Verify all roof drains and overflow drains, thru wall scuppers and downspouts are open and in functioning order.
19. All gas legs should have 1 inch clearance from finish roof elevation.
20. Turn in all lead flashings at plumbing stocks a minimum of 1 inch.
21. Precast concrete splash blocks are required at locations where a given roof area discharges storm water onto a roof system.
22. All condensing units are to be installed on pre-manufactured roof curbs with sheet metal curb caps.
23. Where required sumps are to be provided at all roof drains.
24. Roof penetrations shall not occur within 18 inches of any roof system base flashings.
25. Gutter expansion joints should be every 50ft. maximum or as otherwise required.
26. Roof to roof ladder supports must not penetrate copings. Any supports occurring in the roof system base flashings must be flashed with resin flashings.
27. Clamping rings at drains must be properly secured.
28. All fastener spacing should be 8 in. o.c. maximum.
29. No stepping thru wall flashings and base flashings – be consistent.
30. Provide isolation at support clamps for where dissimilar metals occur.
31. All roof level gas piping shall be primed and painted.
32. Rise wall base flashings must not cover weep holes installed above thru wall flashings.
33. Three course flashing and term bar anchored at 6 in. o.c. to be installed at all base flashings.
34. At all cap sheet installations, a maximum of one patch per membrane roll shall be considered acceptable.

3.07 CLEANING AND PATCHING:

A. Clean up debris, excess materials and equipment and remove from site.

B. Remove drippage or spills of coatings, sealant, mastic or primers from finish surfaces.

C. Patch misaligned or inadequately lapped seams, inadequately adhered areas, punctures or other damage to membrane with a patch of membrane sheet that extends at least 6 inches in each direction from deficiency.

3.08 PROTECTION:

A. Provide special protection and avoid heavy traffic on completed work. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period.

B. Prevent all threading and cutting of pipes on the roof. Provide welding blankets as required to protect the roof from welding, soldering, and other potentially damaging activities.

C. Restore to original condition or replace work or materials damaged during handling of roofing materials.

END OF SECTION 07 52 00

SECTION 07 56 50 - MINOR ROOF RENOVATION WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Required minor renovation for reroofing work.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS:

A. Section 07 22 00 - Roof Insulation.

B. Section 07 60 00 - Sheet Metal Work: Sheet metal flashings.

C. Section 07 52 00 - Modified Bitumen Sheet Roofing.

D. Section 07 77 20 - Roof Accessories: Pipe supports; equipment supports.

1.03 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Products provided within this section support compliance with the standards established by Collaborative for High Performance Schools in the “2015 TX-CHPS Criteria: New Construction and Renovation.”

1.04 SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data sheets for each product in accordance with Section 01 33 00.

1.05 COORDINATION:

A. Sequence renovation with work sequence of reroofing work.

B. Coordinate with reroofing work so that no more existing items are removed in one day than can be replaced along with new roofing work in same day.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS:

A. Wood Nailers and Blocking:
   1. No. 2 or better Southern Yellow Pine.
   2. Fire-retardant treated with Osmose Flame Proof LHC, bearing UL Label FR-S.

B. Plywood Sheathing: Fir or Southern Yellow Pine plywood, C-C plugged, EXT-APA Grade, fire-retardant treated with Osmose Flame Proof or Koppers NCX, bearing UL Label FR-S. Thickness as scheduled.

C. Fasteners:
   1. Screws: Hot-dip galvanized wood screws.
   2. Nails: Non-ferrous, cement-coated, or hot-dip galvanized nails. Use finish nails for attaching wood trim and wood-fiber cement board.
   3. Concrete and Masonry: Stainless steel or galvanized screws with lead expansion anchor, Rawlplug by The Rawlplug Co.

D. Water: Clean and potable, free of organic matter.

I. Gypsum Concrete: ASTM C317, Class A (500 psi compressive strength), density of not more than 60 pcf.

E. Metal Paint:
   1. Galvanized Metal Primer: PPG Galvanized Steel Primer, No. 6-209.
   2. Ferrous Metal Primer: PPG Speedhide Inhibitive Red Primer, No. 6-208.

3. Exterior Metal Paint: PPG Alkyd Gloss Enamel, Interior-Exterior, 6 Series. Color as selected.

F. Sheet Steel: ASTM A653, gauge as scheduled.

G. Steel Plate: Flat plate, rolled from ASTM A36 steel, Grade A, galvanized. thickness as indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION:

A. Verify that required barricades and other protective measures are in place.

3.02 MINOR RENOVATION WORK:

A. New wood nailers and curbs:
1. Clean and prepare existing surfaces to receive wood nailers.
2. Install wood nailers as indicated.
3. Install wood nailers continuously without gaps and plumb, level and true with joints flush. Securely fasten to structure with fasteners suited for specific installation. Use of powder-actuated fasteners is prohibited.

B. Plywood Sheathing:
1. Install plywood sheathing where shown utilizing fasteners suited for specific installation.

C. Equipment Removal and Reinstallation to Accommodate New Roof System: Refer to notes on plans. Raise all roof drains as required to prevent sumps at drains in excess of 1/2 inch.

D. Metal Painting - existing designated surfaces; new metal surfaces:
1. Remove loose, chipped or cracked paint.
2. Completely remove existing paint from rusted metal areas down to bare metal.
3. Lightly sand existing paint surfaces.
4. Prime bare metal areas with appropriate primer.
5. Apply 2 coats of exterior metal paint, 4.0 mils (wet film) per coat.
6. Spray application not permitted.

E. Raising Piping and Conduit: Refer to notes on plans.

F. Roof Drain Renovation and Cleaning (For existing roof drains to remain):
1. Reuse existing roof drain body at existing roof drains. Verify that flow line elevation is correct. Reset as necessary to achieve proper flow line elevation.
2. Replace broken, cracked, damaged or missing clamp rings, overflow rings and strainer domes. New strainer domes shall be painted cast iron.
3. Replace bolts with new stainless steel bolts.
4. Examine existing drains and downspouts for debris or clogging.
5. Remove debris and flush with water and ensure that drains flow freely.

G. Replacement Roof Drains:

1. Remove existing concrete around roof drains to be replaced and remove existing roof drain body. Install new cast iron roof drain body with cast iron roof drain strainer and install 3000 psi concrete around drain.

3.03 PATCHING ABANDONED DECK PENETRATIONS:

A. Patch abandoned deck penetrations where existing equipment and penetrations have been removed.
1. Set 14 ga. sheet metal cover plate over small openings 12 x 12 in. size or smaller. Set in full bed of plastic cement.
2. Cover larger openings in concrete decks (over 12 x 12 in. size up to 18 x 18 in. size) with 10 ga. sheet steel cover plate. Fasten to existing deck with expansion fasteners. Set in full bed of plastic cement.

3. Cover large openings in concrete decks with 1/4 inch steel plate fastened to structure with expansion fasteners. On inside face of opening, install 18 ga. sheet steel cover plate, fastened to existing concrete with expansion fasteners. Fill space between inner and outer plates with fire safing insulation.

B. Completely cover openings in existing decks resulting from abandonment of penetration item regardless of size or shape of opening.

C. Complete patching of penetrations prior to application of roof membrane.

3.04 POURED GYPSUM FILL RENOVATION:

A. Remove areas of gypsum fill that are wet, saturated, powdery or deteriorated. Remove down to sound fill or to existing gypsum form boards.

B. Replace removed areas with new poured gypsum fill.

C. Include in the Contract Amount the quantity of Four Thousand (4,000) s.f. by 2 inch deep removal and replacement of lightweight insulating concrete fill. Variations in quantities between the above allowance and that amount actually replaced will be adjusted by Change Order on Unit Price basis.

D. Patch minor voids and damages in existing fill from removal of existing roof membrane under Base Bid.

END OF SECTION 07 56 50

SECTION 07 5700

SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Preparing surfaces of existing spray polyurethane roof roofing (SPFR) and applying new SPFR.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS:

A. Section 07 60 00 – Sheet Metal Work: New and replacement metal flashings.

1.03 REFERENCES:

A. ASTM C 177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 1997.

B. ASTM C273/237M – Standard Test Method for Shear Properties of Sandwich Core Materials; 1997.

C. ASTM D 412 - Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension; 2015a.

D. ASTM D 471 – Standard Test Method for Rubber Property – Effects of Liquids; 2016.

E. ASTM D 822/822M – Standard Practice for Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint Related Coatings; 2013.

F. ASTM D903 – Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds; 2010.

G. ASTM D 1004 – Standard Test Method for Tear Resistance (Graves Tear) of Plastic Film and Sheeting.

H. ASTM D 1621 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties Of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2000.

I. ASTM D 1622/1622M - Standard Test Method for Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2014.

J. ASTM D 1623 - Standard Test Method for Tensile And Tensile Adhesion Properties of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 1978 (Reapproved 1995).

K. ASTM D 2126 - Standard Test Method for Response of Rigid Cellular Plastics to Thermal and Humid Aging; 1999.

L. ASTM D 2240 – Standard Test Method for Rubber Property – Durometer Hardener; 2015.

M. ASTM D 2842 - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2001.

N. ASTM D 2856 - Standard Test Method for Open-Cell Content of Rigid Cellular Plastics by the Air Pycnometer; 1994 (Reapproved 1998).

O. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015.

P. ASTM E 96/96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2016.

Q. UL 790 (ASTM E108) – Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings.

1.04 SUBMITTALS:

A. Procedures for Submittals: Section 01 3300.

B. Product Data: Provide data on foam insulation and polyurethane overcoat, physical and chemical properties, MSDS, preparation of substrate required, product limitations, and cautionary requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate following.
   1. Complete installation details of SPFC roof rehabilitation including new urethane foam, new polyurethane coating and flashing, roof slopes, flashing details, penetration details and accessories.

D. Samples: Submit 2 samples of complete ALPHA roofing system, size 2 ft. x 2 ft. on 1/4 in. plywood, showing thickness of polyurethane foam; colors and thicknesses of layers of polyurethane coatings.

E. Certificates: Certify that products of this section meet or exceed specified requirements.

F. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturers' published instructions for application of the roofing system and sealants, marked and noted to indicate procedures to be followed for this project.

G. Manufacturer's Field Reports:
   1. Concurrent with Shop Drawing submittal; submit roof manufacturer's review of Contract Documents, acceptance of applicator and warranty conditions.
   2. During progress of Work, submit 2 copies of manufacturer's field quality reports of field inspections on a weekly basis.
   3. At completion of project, submit manufacturer's field quality reports of field inspections, including 2 copies of manufacturer's final inspection punch list.

H. Progress Schedule/Phasing Plan:
   1. Submit a complete progress schedule and phasing plan indicating complete sequence of polyurethane roof rehabilitation for each area and phase of work.
      a. Include roof plan with layout of phasing, indicating amount of roof area included in each day's work.
      b. Indicate dates for beginning and completing each activity.
      c. Identify other related work affected by roof rehabilitation and phasing.

I. Maintenance Data: Provide copies of manufacturer's maintenance data.

J. Warranty: Submit manufacturers and applicator joint warranties and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturers.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Perform work in accordance with NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual and manufacturer's instructions.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Ensure that the primary roofing materials manufacturers provide direct trained company personnel to attend necessary job meetings, perform periodic inspections as necessary, and conduct a final inspection upon successful completion of the project

C. Applicator Qualifications:
   1. Current approved applicator of each manufacturer.
   2. Applicator shall maintain a permanent office within a reasonable distance of project site to satisfy Owner that project can be properly serviced during warranty phase.

D. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies:
   1. Materials used in SPFR system shall meet Federal, State and local VOC regulations.
   2. SPFR system shall be approved for use on this project and rated "Class A" by Underwriters Laboratories. (ASTM E108/UL790).

E. Pre-Installation Conference:
   1. Prior to installation of roofing system, conduct a pre-installation conference at each project site.

2. Attendance: Architect, Contractor, project superintendent, roof applicator and roof manufacturer's technical representative.
3. Agenda:
   a. Methods of removing existing roofing and debris and controls required to prevent damage to building.
   b. Maintaining watertightness of building during roof rehabilitation work.
   c. Quality control.
   d. Roofing details and procedures.
   e. Critical work sequencing.

1.06 MOCK-UP:

A. Construct roof replacement mock-up, 50 feet long by 50 feet wide, including foam insulation, polyurethane overcoat, and typical counter flashings.

B. Locate where directed.

C. Accepted mock-up will be used as a standard to judge quality and workmanship of completed SPFR roof recovery.

D. Accepted mock-up may remain as part of the Work.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION:

A. Materials shall be delivered in original sealed containers, clearly marked with supplier’s name, product identification, safety information and batch or lot number.

B. Recommended material storage temperature is 75°F (24°C). Handle products to avoid damage to the container. Do not store in direct sunlight. All components of roofing system should be installed within three months of manufacture date of any materials under this specification. All materials shall be stored in compliance with local fire and safety requirements. All materials shall be handled in accordance with the Manufacturers guidelines.

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Environmental Conditions:
   1. Do not proceed with application of sprayed polyurethane foam materials or elastomeric polyurethane coating materials when substrate temperature and/or ambient conditions are less than 40°F (4.4°C).
   2. Do not proceed with application of sprayed polyurethane foam or elastomeric polyurethane coating materials when inclement weather is imminent or when temperature and /or humidity are outside the limits set by the manufacturer.
   3. Do not apply material unless surface to receive sprayed polyurethane foam and/or elastomeric polyurethane coating is clean, dry and free of all contaminants.
   4. Wind barriers shall be used if wind conditions could affect the quality of the spray polyurethane foam or elastomeric polyurethane coating installation during spraying. The elastomeric polyurethane coating can be either spray or roller applied.

1.09 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE:

A. Pre-Installation Conference:
   1. Prior to installation of roofing system, conduct a pre-installation conference at project site. Pre-installation conference is to be scheduled only after roofing related submittals have been reviewed and approved.
   2. Attendance: General Contractor, roof applicator, roof manufacturer’s technical representative and Owner’s representative.
   3. Agenda:
      a. Review preparation and installation procedures and coordinating and scheduling required with related work.
      b. Review methods and procedures for roofing installation, and manufacturer’s written procedures.

c. Review schedule and facilities needed for progress and avoid delays.
d. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes.
e. Review special installation details.
f. Review temporary protection requirements.
g. Review manufacturer inspection requirements and forms.
h. Final roof inspections will include acceptance from the manufacturer, Contractor, Architect and Owner.

1.10 WARRANTY:

A. Warranty:
1. The manufacturer's 15-year Full System Warranty shall be issued upon completion, inspection and acceptance of the project. Any repairs covered by the warranty are without cost to the Owner throughout the term. The warranty shall be comprehensive with no proration and no cap for repairs and shall provide a guarantee against leaks, sprayed polyurethane foam or elastomeric polyurethane coating membrane failures caused by faulty material or workmanship or by ordinary weathering, bird peck damage, wind forces up to 90 mph, and severe hail (SH) damage as defined by Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FMRC) simulated hail damage tests. Bird proof addendum will need to be added to the manufacturer's standard warranty document as necessary.
2. Roofing installer to provide 2-year Warranty against leaks and defects in materials and workmanship. Include agreement to maintain roof and base flashing in a watertight condition for period of warranty and to repair any blisters or other roofing deficiencies even if they do not lead to moisture entry inside the subject structures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS:

A. The basis of design is a system consisting of a urethane coating installed over high density spray polyurethane foam as provided by BASF Corporation, 1609 Biddle Avenue, Wyandotte, MI 48192, (800) 547-4004, www.basf.com/spray. Other systems satisfying the requirements specified herein will be acceptable if approved after review of a substitution request prepared as specified in Division 1 prior to the receipt of bids.

2.2 MATERIALS:

A. Sprayed Polyurethane Foam
1. The sprayed polyurethane foam insulation shall be a two-component system made by combining an isocyanate (A) component with a polyol (B) component. The sprayed polyurethane foam system shall be BASF Elastospray 81305 Series (B) component and Elastospray 8000A Isocyanate (A) component as made by BASF Corporation or approved equal with the following performance properties:
a. Thermal Conductivity: When tested in accordance with ASTM C 177:
1) K value of 0.14 initial at 32 degrees F.
2) Water Vapor Permeability: 3.0 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96.
3) Closed Cell Content: 95 percent, determined in accordance with ASTM D 2856.
4) Compressive Strength: ASTM D 1621; 45 psi.
5) Tensile Strength: ASTM D 1623, 70 psi.
6) Shear Strength: ASTM C 273, 60 psi.
7) Dimensional Stability: Maximum 8 percent volume change, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2126 for 28 days at 150 deg F and 100 percent relative humidity.
8) Density: ASTM D 1622; 2.8-3.2 lb/cu ft.
9) Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 75/450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.

B. Elastomeric Coating System
   1. The elastomeric polyurethane coating shall be the Permathane Aliphatic coating system FR system as manufactured by NEOGARD®, Dallas, TX. consisting of two 70620 base coats, an 70630 intermediate coat and 7490 topcoat white in color.
   2. Performance requirements for cured elastomeric coating system used on this project are:
      i. Tensile Strength ASTM D412 1,000 psi 1,500 psi
      ii. Elongation ASTM D412 375% 360%
      iii. Permanent Set ASTM D412 <10% <10%
      iv. Tear Resistance ASTM D1004 100 lb/in 140 lb/in
      v. Water Resistance ASTM D471 <3 @ 7 days <3 @ 7 days
      vi. MVT @ 30 mils ASTM E96 1.6 Perms 2.2 Perms
      vii. Shore A ASTM D2240 50 - 55 70 - 75
      viii. Adhesion ASTM D903 20 lb/in 15 lb/in
      ix. Weathering Resistance ASTM D822 N/A Slight Chalk
      x. Fire Resistance ASTM E108,
      xi. UL 790 System Rated Class "A"

C. ACCESSORIES
   1. Miscellaneous materials such as primers, elastomeric sealants, etc. as required for a complete installation shall be compatible with the roof system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION:

A. Power wash surfaces of existing coated foam roofing to remain.

B. Shut down or mask air intakes or exhaust to prevent entry of fumes from roofing operations into building.

C. Prime existing polyurethane foam insulation substrate as recommended by foam manufacturer for proper bond.

D. Roof areas that retain water and do not drain properly shall be built up with sufficient foam and coating to provide slope to roof drainage system so that ponding water will not occur.

3.02 FOAM INSULATION INSTALLATION:

A. Apply primer and foam insulation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install minimum 1-1/2 inch (+/- 1/4 inch) new foam insulation. Place foam in minimal pass thicknesses of 1/2 inch.

C. Extend foam 2 inches up vertical intersections, fillet insulation and feather out. Form a cant of foam at perpendicular interruptions.

D. Sculpt foam insulation at crickets where shown to provide positive drainage.

E. Surface Flatness: 1/4 inch per 10 foot measured with a straight edge in plane with the roof slope.

F. Apply foam to permit first coat of overcoat application on same day.

G. Develop finish skin surface to smooth and unbroken "rough orange peel" texture. Uneven surfaces are not acceptable.

3.03 FLASHINGS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Coordinate installation of new PVC clad metal gutter lining.

B. Seal flashings and flanges of items penetrating membrane.

C. Install flashings at curbs and items penetrating roof in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.04 MEMBRANE COATING INSTALLATION

A. Install polyurethane coating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Exercise caution to prevent trapping of moisture in coating system.

B. Prepare and seal penetrations through roof with sealant.

C. Apply coating in 4 coats with dissimilar colors for each coat to an average dry film thickness of 36 mils with a minimum coating thickness, at any point on roof, of 20 dry mils.
   1. Base Coat:
      a. Apply first seamless base coat same day as polyurethane foam. If due to weather conditions, more than 24 hours elapse between foam and base coat application, examine foam for UV degradation. If degradation is present, repair or replace foam as directed by manufacturer.
      b. Apply base coat at rate of 3 gallons/100 sq. ft.in a minimum of 2 coats to yield an average dry film thickness of 36 mils.
   2. Intermediate Coat: Apply seamless intermediate coast in a timely manner to insure proper adhesion between coats.
      a. Allow base coat to cure prior to installing intermediate coat. Examine base coat for pinholes, insufficient thickness, uncured areas and other defects. Repair defects prior to proceeding.
      b. Clean base coat free of dirt, debris, dust, moisture or other contaminants prior to application of the first intermediate coat.
      c. Apply intermediate coat at a rate of 1 gallon/100 sq. ft. in one coat to yield an average dry film thickness of 11.25 mils.
   3. Topcoat: Apply topcoat in a timely manner to insure proper adhesion between coats.
      a. Allow base intermediate coat to cure prior to installing topcoat. Examine base intermediate coat for pinholes, insufficient thickness, uncured areas and other defects. Repair defects prior to proceeding.
      b. Clean base coat free of dirt, debris, dust, moisture or other contaminants prior to application of topcoat.
      c. Apply topcoat at rate of 3/4 gallon/100 sq. ft.in one coat to yield an average dry film thickness of 9 mils.

D. Completed coating surfaces shall be free from voids, pinholes and blisters.

E. Extend coating to cover foam insulation and extend 2 inches above foam termination on protrusions to a self-terminating, water tight seal.

F. Examine completed application to verify that cured dry film thickness is in accordance with specification requirements. Check thickness as recommended by SPFR manufacturer. Recoat areas that are found to have insufficient thickness.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:

A. Maintain a daily project log containing following information:
   1. Temperature and Relative Humidity at start time, midway and end of day (sling psychrometer permitted).
   2. Wind Velocity (speed and direction).
   3. Sky conditions (overcast, partly cloudy, clear).
   4. Amounts and batch numbers of coated foam or coating installed (Record on plan of roof).
   5. Details on problems encountered and where (Record on map of roof).

B. Manufacturer's Field Service:
   1. During installation, provide for one on-site inspection of roof application or rehabilitation at site by qualified technical representatives of roof coating manufacturer.

2. Upon completion of installation, provide a final inspection by a technical representative of roofing manufacturer to confirm that roofing system has been installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

3.06 PROTECTION:

A. Protect buildings, building contents, interior and exterior finishes and surfaces, landscaping and improvements from damage due to roofing operations. Protect adjacent surfaces and improvements from overspray of foam and coating.

B. Provide barriers, fences, coverings, weatherproofing and other protection to prevent damage to existing work, and surrounding property and protect applied system from detrimental weather conditions and construction operations during and after installation. Provide wind shields if applying foam or coating system in winds over 10 mph, or where overspray could damage property.

C. During roofing operations, barricade adjacent parking facilities within danger of overspray damage to parked vehicles.

3.07 CLEANING:

A. Clean up debris, excess materials and equipment and remove from site.

B. Remove drippage, overspray or spills of coatings, sealant, foam or primers from finish surfaces.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 60 00 - SHEET METAL WORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Shop or field-formed sheet metal work for moisture protection

B. Reglets and accessories.

1.02 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Products provided within this section support compliance with the standards established by Collaborative for High Performance Schools in the “2015 TX-CHPS Criteria: New Construction and Renovation.”

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels; 1998.

B. ASTM A 653/A 653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2000.

C. ASTM B 32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2000.

D. FS FF-S-325 - Shield Expansion; Nail, Expansion; and Nail, Drive-Screw.

E. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; 2012.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedures for Submittals: Section 01 33 00.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual requirements and standard details, except as otherwise indicated.

B. Fabricator and Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in sheet metal work with 5 years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, and abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.

B. Prevent contact with materials which may cause discoloration or staining.

1.07 WARRANTY:

A. Provide Owner a written warranty which shall warrant sheet metal work to be free of leaks and defects in materials and workmanship for 5 years after date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SHEET MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating. Furnish ARMCO Zincgrip Paintgrip at items indicated to be field painted. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings. Zincgrip to be painted where visible.

B. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 0.02 inch thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF coating, color as selected. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
   1. PVDF (Polyvinylidene Fluoride) Coating: Superior Performance Organic Finish, AAMA 2605; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer finish system; color as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners: Same material and finish as flashing metal, with soft neoprene washers.
   1. Nails: Flathead, wire, barbed, slating type.
   2. Screws: Self-tapping sheet metal type.
   3. Rivets: Type and size as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer.
   4. Concrete Fasteners: Round-head stainless steel screw and neoprene washer with lead expansion anchor, FS FF-S-325, Group IV, Type 2. Powers Rawl Screw Type Nailins.

B. Primer: Zinc chromate type.

C. Protective Backing Paint: Zinc chromate alkyd.

D. Sealant: Type silicone sealant specified in Section 07 90 05.

E. Solder: ASTM B 32; Sn50 (50/50) type.

2.03 FABRICATION

A. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.

B. Fabricate cleats of same material as sheet, minimum 3 inches wide, interlocking with sheet.

C. Form pieces in longest possible lengths.

D. Make angle bends and folds for interlocking metal with full regard for expansion and contraction to avoid buckling or fullness in metal after installation.

E. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.

F. Form material with scheduled or specified seams. At moving joints, use sealed lapped, bayonet-type or interlocking hooked seams.

G. Solder shop formed metal joints in galvanized steel fabrications. After soldering, remove flux. Wipe and wash solder joints clean. Weather seal joints.

H. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam for rigidity, seal with sealant.

I. Fabricate vertical faces with bottom edge formed outward 1/4 inch and hemmed to form drip.

2.04 FABRICATED ITEMS:

A. Flashings, Counter flashings and Misc: Galv. sheet steel as scheduled, formed in minimum 10 ft. lengths where possible detailed as indicated.

B. Scuppers (Metal Edge): Galv. sheet steel (ZincGrip PaintGrip), similar to SMACNA Figure 1-28, joints fully soldered.

C. Overflow Parapet Scuppers: Prefinished sheet steel face trim and 24 ga. galv. sheet steel throat (ZincGrip PaintGrip), SMACNA Figure 1-30A and 130B, joints of flashing flange and throat fully soldered.

D. Area Divider Curb Cover: 24 ga. galv. sheet steel, formed in 10 ft. lengths, with lapped joints.

E. Continuous Cleats: Minimum 1-1/4 inch continuous strips, same material, 22 ga. minimum sheet metal item, except where heavier gauge is noted on detail drawings.

F. Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies: Gauge and material as indicated on drawings formed in 10-foot maximum lengths where possible. Fabricated as indicated, similar to SMACNA Figure 5-1, 5-3 (near roof edges) and 5-6B.

G. Gutters and Downspouts: Gauge, profile and material as indicated on drawings. Provide gutter expansion joints where indicated as detailed.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, and vents through roof are solidly set, reglets in place, and nailing strips located.

B. Verify roofing termination and base flashings are in place, sealed, and secure.

C. Verify that substrates are smooth and clean to extent needed for sheet metal work.

D. Do not start sheet metal work until conditions are satisfactory.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation. Install at exposed edges of metal cap flashings, and where shown or required, nailed at 4 inches o.c.

B. Back paint concealed metal surfaces with protective backing paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 15 mil.

3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

A. Install work watertight, without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, allowing for expansion and contraction.

B. Install fabricated sheet metal items in accordance with SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, except as otherwise detailed.

C. Insert flashings into receivers to form tight fit.

D. Secure flashings in place using fasteners as indicated.

E. Make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.

F. Seal prefinished metal joints watertight using sealant specified in Section 07 92 00.

G. Solder metal joints in galvanized steel items for full metal surface contact. After soldering, wash metal clean with neutralizing solution and rinse with water.

3.04 INSTALLATION - FABRICATED ITEMS:

A. Flashings, Counter Flashings:
   1. Extend flanges into reglets or receivers and securely fasten.
   2. Where nailing is required, nail at 6 inches o.c.
   3. Overlap counter flashing 4 inches over base flashing, lap ends of sheets 3 inches.

B. Scuppers: Install throat with joints fully soldered. Extend flanges 4 inches in each direction. Install sealant between flanges and wall surfaces.

C. Area Divider Curb Flashings:
   1. Install over membrane base flashing or rubberized underlayment.
   2. Secure flanges with neoprene washered screws through slotted holes at 24 inches o.c., similar to SMACNA Figure 3-1.
   3. Join sheets with lapped and soldered joints.
   4. Form corners and connections watertight, seamed and soldered.

D. Expansion Joint Curb Cover and Flashings:
   1. Install 45 mil EPDM sling with sealed and overlapped joints and fibrous batt insulation as detailed.
   2. Install metal cover as detailed.
   3. Secure with fasteners and neoprene washers at 12 inches on center.
   4. Slope top to drain.
   5. Furnish pre-fabricated corners at all changes in plane or direction in accordance with SMACNA requirements.

C. Copings at Parapet Walls:
   1. Fabricate in minimum 10 ft. lengths where possible.
   2. Install galvanized steel cleat over wood nailers as shown.
   3. Install approved sealant over fasteners used to anchor to wood nailers.
   4. Fasten bottom drip edge of face to cleat 2 inches minimum below bottom of wood blocking.
   5. Install fasteners with rubber washers on interior face of coping to secure coping to wood nailer.
   6. Seal joints in prefinished metal with sealant.
   7. Provide for expansion at 20 ft. o.c. maximum.

E. Hung Gutters:
   1. Prefinished sheet steel formed in minimum 10 ft. lengths. Lap joints one inch and rivet and seal.
   2. Provide outlet thimble to fit downspouts or roof drain leaders complete with downspout strainer.
   3. Provide butt type expansion joints at 50 ft. o.c. maximum per SMACNA requirements and as detailed.

F. Downspouts: Prefinished sheet steel, upper sections telescoped into lower sections 1-1/2 inch, riveted and sealed.
   1. Fabricate downspouts with elbows discharging onto splash pans or splash blocks.

3.05 CLEANING:

A. Remove flux and residual acid immediately by neutralizing with baking soda and washing with clean water. Leave work clean and free of stains, scrap, and debris.

END OF SECTION 07 60 00

SECTION 07 7100 - ROOF SPECIALITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Manufactured copings.

1.2 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Products provided within this section support compliance with the standards established by Collaborative for High Performance Schools in the "2015 TX-CHPS Criteria: New Construction and Renovation."

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. AAMA 2604 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for High Performance Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels; 2005.

B. ANSI/SPRI ES-1 - Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roofing Systems, American National Standards Institute/Single-ply Roofing Institute.

C. FM DS 1-49 - Perimeter Flashing; Factory Mutual Research Corporation.

D. (SMACNA) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, 7th Edition, 2012.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedures for Submittals: Section 01 3300.

B. Product Data: Provide data on shape of components, materials and finishes, anchor types and locations.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate configuration and dimension of components, adjacent construction, required clearances and tolerances, and other affected work.

D. Samples: Submit one appropriately sized sample of each coping profile. Submit verification sample of pre-finished metal color.

E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual details, FM DS 1-49 and ANSI/SPRI ES-1.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Provide Owner a written warranty which shall warrant metal coping system to be free of leaks and defects in materials and workmanship for 5 years after date of Substantial Completion.

B. Provide finish warranty for 20 years against defects in finish including fading, chipping and chalking.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

A. Copings:
   1. Viridian Systems; Product Permasnap Coping: www.wph.com.
   2. MM Systems Corp; Product Snap-Lock Coping: www.mmsystemscorp.com.
   3. Construction Specialties; Product Snap-Lock Coping.

2.2 COMPONENTS

A. Copings: Formed 24-gauge prefinished galvanized steel, custom shaped as indicated, including special supports spaced at 60 inches on center. Include cover plates to conceal and weather seal joints and attachment flanges. Copings tested to meet requirements of ANSI/SPRI ES-1

1. Internal Splice Plates: Concealed with matching finish to maintain outside face continuity.
2. Coping Finish: Fluoropolymer coating (High Performance).
3. Color: To match existing.

B. Contractor's Option: Shop fabricated copings may be substituted for manufactured copings providing that independent testing of fabricated copings is performed in accordance with ANSI/SPRI ES-1, refer to Section 07 6000.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchor Cleats: Formed anchor cleat with integral drainable gutter, 20 ga. galvanized steel.

B. Sealant: Type silicone sealant as specified in Section 07 5900.

2.4 FINISHES

A. Fluoropolymer Coating: High Performance Organic Finish, AAMA 2604; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer finish system; color to match existing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that walls, curbs, roof membrane, base flashing, and other items affecting work of this Section are in place and positioned correctly.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and in accordance with SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, FM DS 1-49 and ANSI/SPRI ES-1.

B. Install work watertight, without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, allowing for expansion and contraction.

C. Securely fasten copings with concealed fasteners, anchors and cleats.
1. Cleats: Secure with fasteners spaced at 12 inch centers maximum.
2. Copings: Secure at exterior face to continuous cleat and at interior face with neoprene gasketed fasteners at 12 inch centers maximum through slotted holes.
3. Double fasteners (decrease spacing by 1/2) at corners in accordance with ANSI/SPRI ES-.

D. Install copings plumb and level, and in true alignment.

END OF SECTION 07 71 00

SECTION 07 72 00 ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Pipe supports.

B. Prefabricated equipment supports.

C. Prefabricated roof curbs.

D. Precast concrete splash blocks.

E. Pipe Penetration Housings.

1.2 REFERENCES:

A. ASTM D4586 - Fibrated Asphalt Roof Cement.

B. ASTM A 500/A 500M - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes; 2007.

C. Occupational Safety & Health Administration (OSHA): 29 CFR 1910.23 - Guarding Floor and Wall Openings and Holes.

D. FS FF-S-325 - Shield Expansion; Nail, Expansion; and Nail, Drive-Screw.

E. FS TT-C-494A - Coating Compound, Bituminous, Solvent Type, Acid Resistant.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

A. Submittal Procedures: Section 01 33 00.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE SUPPORTS:

A. Type 1:
   1. Qualities: Molded closed cell, medium density black polyurethane foam support base with 14 gage Channel Strut designed to support pipes 4 in. above roof.
   2. Source: Pipe Pier PP50H4 by Erico

B. Type 2:
   1. Qualities: Molded closed cell, medium density black polyurethane foam support base with 14 gage Channel Strut designed to support pipes 6 in. above roof.

2. Source: Pipe Pier PP50H6 by Erico.

C. Type 3:
1. Qualities: 12- or 16-gauge stainless steel pipe support base with self-lubricating polycarbonate or SBR rubber roller on a stainless steel rod. Designed to support pipes up to 8 inches in diameter with 6 in. clearance above roof.
2. Source: Pillow Block Pipe Stands by Miro Industries, Inc., Model No. 8-R6 SS.

D. Type 4:
1. Qualities: EPDM-SBR rubber designed to support 1 inch pipe size.
2. Source: Erico Part No. RPSE1H24.

2.2 PREFABRICATED EQUIPMENT SUPPORT:

A. Qualities: Prefabricated equipment support fabricated from galv. sheet steel, 18 ga. minimum, welded construction designed to support weight of equipment being supported. Provide with metal cap flashing and preservative treated wood nailer.
1. Size: Height: 12 inches above roof deck; length and width required for conditions.

B. Source:
1. Model CES - 3 by Custom Curb, Inc.
2. Model TEMS-3 by ThyCurb.

2.3 PREFABRICATED ROOF CURB:

A. Qualities: Prefabricated insulated curb for mechanical equipment support fabricated from galvanized sheet steel, 18 ga. minimum, welded construction designed to support weight of unit being supported. Provide with preservative treated wood nailer.
1. Fabricate curbs to compensate for roof slope at location of each curb unit.
2. Fabricate curbs with minimum 12-inch height above roof deck, unless otherwise detailed.
3. Fabricate curbs to width and length of unit being supported, less 1-1/2 in. overall to allow for membrane flashing installation.

B. Source:
1. Model CRC-3 by Custom Curb, Inc.
2. Model TC-3 by ThyCurb.

2.4 PRECAST CONCRETE SPLASH BLOCKS:

A. Qualities: Reinforced precast concrete splash blocks, fabricated from minimum 2500 psi concrete, smooth finish, with drainage channel cast in top surface.
1. Size: Minimum 18 x 33 in.

B. Source: Custom or standard commodity.

2.5 PIPE PENETRATION HOUSING – THE VAULT:

A. Product: The Vault by Roof Penetration Housings

B. Construction:
   1. 0.080 inch (2mm) thick aluminum housing and curb
   2. UV protected powder coated finish (2 mil (.05 mm) thick)
   3. Stainless Steel. V.P. fasteners
   4. Gasketed lid to housing and housing to curb connection joints to ensure compliance to ICC 2015 Air Permeance Levels
   5. Standard Color: Beige – To meet an initial SRI of 85 (White available for SRI 100)
   6. Seismic Available upon request. Seismic calculations, conditions to be furnished to RPH by engineer
   7. Constructed to withstand wind to 225+ MPH, third party tested.

C. Style & Sizes TWO MODELS AW SERIES AND THE AWI SERIES
   1. Series AW Vault – All Aluminum Construction, Zero Plastic, Wind rated to +225 mph and pre-insulated (R-2 for Condensate) V.P./S.S. Fasteners meets ICC 2015 Energy Code for Air Permeance Levels. The curb is not insulated.
      a. Mini-Tower Vault Model: AW-121022 - L- 12” W- 10” H-22”.
      b. Small Vault Model: AW-161010 - L- 16 ½” W- 9 ¾” H- 10”.
      c. Medium Vault Model: AW-201412 - L- 20 ½” W- 14 ½” H – 12”.
      d. Mega Vault Model: AW-343424 - L – 34” W – 34” H – 24”.
      e. Custom – Consult Factory – 1-800-994-0945
   2. Series AWI – Same as AW Series w/Pre-Insulated curb, 6” Thick, R-40 Factor, to meet ICC – 2015 Energy Code.
      a. Small Vault Model: AWI-161010 - L – 16 ½” W – 9 ¾” H – 10”
      b. Medium Vault Model: AWI-201412 - L – 20 ½” W – 14 ½” H – 12”
      c. Mega Vault Model: AWI-343424 - L – 34” W – 34” H – 24”

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Verify that substrates are smooth and clean to extent needed for roof accessories work.

B. Do not start work until conditions are satisfactory.

3.2 INSTALLATION:

A. Pipe Supports:
   1. Install Molded Pipe Support - Type 1 or 2 as appropriate under single small piping and conduit.
   2. Install Molded Pipe Support - Type 3 under piping over 4 in. in diameter.
   3. Install Molded Pipe Support – Type 4 under 1 inch diameter conduit where scheduled.
   4. Install pipe supports at 8 ft. o.c. maximum and within 2 ft. of each change of direction.
   5. Place pipe support on additional layer of modified bitumen cap sheet adhered to modified bitumen cap sheet and adhere to pad.
   6. Secure pipe and conduit loosely in pipe support using metal strap fastened with two 1/2 in. No. 10 screws.

B. Prefabricated Equipment Supports:
   1. Install equipment supports beneath scheduled equipment units.

2. Set supports level and square on roof deck and securely fasten curb flanges to roof deck with appropriate fasteners for type of deck material. Seal bolt heads with flashing cement.
3. Set cap flashing over support after membrane flashing is complete and securely fasten cap flanges to top nailer.

C. Prefabricated Roof Curbs:
1. Install prefabricated roof curbs beneath rooftop equipment requiring curbs.
2. Set level and square on roof deck; securely fasten curb flanges to roof deck with appropriate fasteners for type of deck material. Seal bolt heads with flashing cement.
3. Install foam gasket continuously on top of curb frame immediately prior to setting units on curbs.

D. Splash Blocks:
1. Install splash blocks at downspouts discharging on grounds where splash blocks are missing and at other scheduled locations. Set splash blocks on full bearing of soil and adjust to slope away from building.
2. Install splash blocks at downspouts discharging on roofs. Set splash blocks in cold adhesive on roof walkway pads.

3.3 CLEANING:

A. Leave work clean and free of stains, scrap, and debris.

END OF SECTION 07 72 00

SECTION 07 1113

BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Bituminous dampproofing.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM D4586/D4586M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free; current edition.

B. NRCA (WM) - The NRCA Waterproofing Manual; current edition.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 Sections for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide properties of primer, bitumen, and mastics.

C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with at least three years of documented experience.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 degrees F for 24 hours before and during application until dampproofing has cured.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Bituminous Dampproofing Manufacturers:
   1. Karnak Corporation: www.karnakcorp.com.
   2. Mar-Flex Systems, Inc: www.mar-flex.com/sle.
   3. W.R. Meadows, Inc: www.wrmeadows.com/sle.
   4. Substitutions: Refer to applicable Division 1 sections.

2.02 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

A. Bituminous Dampproofing: Cold-applied, trowel-grade; asphalt base, volatile petroleum solvents, and other content, suitable for application by trowel on vertical and horizontal surfaces.
   1. Composition: ASTM D4586/D4586M Type I, minimum, asbestos free.
   2. VOC Content: Not more than permitted by local, State, and federal regulations.
   3. Applied Thickness: 1/16 inch, minimum, wet film.
   4. Products:
      a. W.R. Meadows, Inc; Sealmastic Trowel-Mastic: www.wrmeadows.com/sle.
      b. Substitutions: Refer to applicable Division 1 sections.

B. Primers, Mastics, and Related Materials: Type as recommended by dampproofing manufacturer.

C. Accessories: Protection board: ¼-inch thick biodegradeable hardboard.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify existing conditions are acceptable prior to starting this work.

B. Verify substrate surfaces are durable, free of matter detrimental to adhesion or application of dampproofing system.

C. Verify that items penetrating surfaces to receive dampproofing are securely installed.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Protect adjacent surfaces not designated to receive dampproofing.

B. Clean and prepare surfaces to receive dampproofing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Do not apply dampproofing to surfaces unacceptable to manufacturer.

D. Apply mastic to seal penetrations, small cracks, or minor honeycombs in substrate.

3.03 APPLICATION

A. Perform this work in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NRCA (WM) applicable requirements.

B. Prime surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NRCA (WM) applicable requirements.

C. Prime surfaces at a rate approved by manufacturer for application indicated, and allow primer to dry thoroughly.

D. Seal items watertight with mastic, that project through dampproofing surface.

END OF SECTION 07 1113

SECTION 07 2100
THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Batt thermal insulation for in walls.

B. Rigid insulation for use in exterior wall construction where noted on Drawings.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C 665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing; current edition.

B. ASTM E 136 - Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace At 750 Degrees C; current edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance criteria, and product limitations.

B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include information on special environmental conditions required for installation and installation techniques.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not install insulation adhesives when temperature or weather conditions are detrimental to successful installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Insulation in Metal Framed Wall Spaces: Batt insulation, thickness as designated on Drawings.

2.2 BOARD INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Insulated Air and Water-Resistive Barrier System: Complete single-source continuous insulation system including tapes and flashings, and as required to provide an air and water-resistive barrier system. The system has been tested in accordance with ASTM E2357 and ICC-ES AC71 Acceptance Criteria for Foam Plastic Sheathing Panels Used as Water-Resistive Barriers and listed as an Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Evaluated Boardstock Air Barrier Assembly.
   1. The system incorporates polyisocyanurate foam insulation board, joint tapes, flashing tapes, liquid sealant, and flashing materials, by one manufacturer.
   2. Basis of Design: ECOMAXci FR Air Barrier from Rmax, a Business Unit of Sika Corporation.
   3. Board Size: 16 x 96 inch.
   4. Board Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
   5. Board Edges: Square
   6. Water Absorption: 0.1 percent by volume, maximum, when tested In accordance with ASTM C 272-91.
   7. Board Density: 1.6 lb/cu ft. minimum.
   8. Compressive Resistance: 25 psi minimum.
   9. Thermal Resistance per one inch thickness when aged 5 years:
      a. 75 degrees F: 5.6 minimum.
      b. 40 degrees F: 6.0 minimum.

10. Flame Spread: 15.
11. Smoke Developed: 165.
12. Substitutions: In accordance with Section 01 6000..

2.3 BATT INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Glass Fiber Batt Insulation: Flexible preformed batt or blanket, complying with ASTM C 665; friction fit.
   1. Combustibility: Non-combustible, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 136.
   2. Thermal Resistance: R value indicated on drawings.
   3. Thickness: As required to achieve R-value.
   4. Facing, vinyl scrim, where designated on Drawings.
   6. Acceptable Manufacturers:
      a. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
      b. Johns Manville Corporation: www.jm.com.
      c. Knauf Insulation GmbH: www.knaufinsulation.us.
      d. Owens Corning Corp: www.owenscorning.com.
   7. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Tape: Bright aluminum self-adhering type, mesh-reinforced,2-inch wide.

B. Tape joints of rigid insulation in accordance with roofing and insulation manufacturer’s instructions.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation materials are dry and that substrates are ready to receive insulation.

B. Verify substrate surfaces are flat, free of honeycomb, fins, irregularities, or materials or substances that may impede adhesive bond.

3.2 BOARD INSTALLATION AT EXTERIOR WALLS

A. Adhere a 6 inch wide strip of polyethylene sheet over expansion joints with double beads of adhesive each side of joint.
   1. Tape seal joints between sheets.
   2. Extend sheet full height of joint.

B. Apply adhesive to back of boards:
   3. Three continuous beads per board length.
   4. Full bed 1/8 inch thick.

C. Install rigid insulation directly to steel studs or exterior grade sheathing at 16 inches on center with manufacturer recommended mechanical fasteners, and tape joints with manufacturer's minimum 4 inch wide sealant tape; comply with ASTM E2357.

D. Install boards horizontally on walls.
   5. Place boards to maximize adhesive contact.
   6. Install in running bond pattern.
   7. Butt edges and ends tightly to adjacent boards and to protrusions.

E. Extend boards over expansion joints, unbonded to wall on one side of joint.

F. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.

G. Place 6 inch wide polyethylene sheet at perimeter of wall openings, from adhesive vapor retarder bed to window and door frames, and tape seal in place to ensure continuity of vapor retarder and air seal.

H. Tape insulation board joints.

3.3 BATT INSTALLATION

A. Install insulation and vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install in exterior wall and roof spaces without gaps or voids. Do not compress insulation.

C. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.

D. Fit insulation tightly in cavities and tightly to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of the insulation.

E. Tape insulation batts in place.

F. Tape seal butt ends, lapped flanges, and tears or cuts in membrane.

G. At metal framing, place vapor retarder on warm side of insulation; lap and seal sheet retarder joints over member face.

H. Tape seal tears or cuts in vapor retarder.

I. Extend vapor retarder tightly to full perimeter of adjacent window and door frames and other items interrupting the plane of the membrane. Tape seal in place.

J. Coordinate work of this section with construction of air barrier seal specified in Section 07 2500.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Do not permit installed insulation to be damaged prior to its concealment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 2500
WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Weather barrier membrane.

B. Seam Tape.

C. Flashing.

D. Fasteners.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International
   1. ASTM C920; Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
   2. ASTM C1193; Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
   3. ASTM D882; Test Method for Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting
   4. ASTM D1117; Standard Guide for Evaluating Non-woven Fabrics
   5. ASTM E84; Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
   6. ASTM E96; Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
   7. ASTM E1677; Specification for Air Retarder Material or System for Framed Building Walls
   8. ASTM E2178; Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials
   9. ASTM E2357; Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies

B. AATCC – American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists
   1. Test Method 127 Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure Test

C. TAPPI
   1. Test Method T-410; Grams of Paper and Paperboard (Weight per Unit Area)
   2. Test Method T-460; Air Resistance (Gurley Hill Method)

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 sections for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer current technical literature for each component.

C. Quality Assurance Submittals
   1. Design Data, Test Reports: Provide manufacturer test reports indicating product compliance with indicated requirements.
   2. Manufacturer Instructions: Provide manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   3. Manufacturer's Field Service Reports: Provide site reports from authorized field service representative, indicating observation of weather barrier assembly installation.

D. Closeout Submittals
   1. See Division 1 sections for close-out procedures..
   2. Weather Barrier Warranty: Manufacturer's executed 10 Year Limited Product and Labor Warranty form with authorized signatures and endorsements indicating date of Substantial Completion.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications
   1. Installer shall have experience with installation of commercial weather barrier assemblies under similar conditions.
   2. Installation shall be in accordance with weather barrier manufacturer's installation guidelines and recommendations.
   3. Source Limitations: Provide commercial weather barrier and accessory materials produced by single manufacturer.

B. Mock-up
   1. Install mock-up using approved weather barrier assembly including fasteners, flashing, tape and related accessories per manufacturer's current printed instructions and recommendations.
      a. Mock-up size: 10 feet by 10 feet.
      b. Mock-up Substrate: Match wall assembly construction, including window opening.
      c. Mock-up may remain as part of the work following approval.
   2. Contact manufacturer's designated representative prior to weather barrier assembly installation, to perform required mock-up visual inspection and analysis as required for warranty.

C. Pre-installation Meeting
   1. Hold a pre-installation conference, two weeks prior to start of weather barrier installation. Attendees shall include Contractor, Architect, Engineer, Installer, Owner's Representative, and Weather Barrier Manufacturer's Designated Representative.
   2. Review all related project requirements and submittals, status of substrate work and preparation, areas of potential conflict and interface, availability of weather barrier assembly materials and components, installer's training requirements, equipment, facilities and scaffolding, and coordinate methods, procedures and sequencing requirements for full and proper installation, integration and protection.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver weather barrier materials and components in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

B. Store weather barrier materials as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

1.06 SCHEDULING

A. Review requirements for sequencing of installation of weather barrier assembly with installation of windows, doors, louvers and flashings to provide a weather-tight barrier assembly.

B. Schedule installation of weather barrier materials and exterior cladding within nine months of weather barrier assembly installation.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Special weather-barrier manufacturer's warranty for weather barrier for a period of ten (10) years from date of purchase.

B. Pre-installation meetings and jobsite observations by weather barrier manufacturer for warranty are required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 BASIS OF DESIGN MANUFACTURER

A. DuPont; 4417 Lancaster Pike, Chestnut Run Plaza 728, Wilmington, DE 19805; 1-800-44-TYVEK (8-9835); http://www.construction.tyvek.com

B. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Basis of Design: spunbonded polyolefin, non-woven, non-perforated, weather barrier is based upon DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® and related assembly components.

B. Performance Characteristics:
   1. Air Penetration: 0.001 cfm/ft2 at 75 Pa, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178. Type I per ASTM E1677. ≤0.04 cfm/ft2 at 75 Pa, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357
   2. Water Vapor Transmission: 28 perms, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96, Method B.

3. Water Penetration Resistance: 280 cm when tested in accordance with AATCC Test Method 127.
4. Basis Weight: 2.7 oz/yd2, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-410.
5. Air Resistance: Air infiltration at >1500 seconds, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-460.
6. Tensile Strength: 38/35 lbs/in., when tested in accordance with ASTM D882, Method A.
7. Tear Resistance: 12/10 lbs., when tested in accordance with ASTM D1117.
8. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84. Flame Spread: 10, Smoke Developed: 10.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Seam Tape: 3 inch wide, DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape for commercial applications.

B. Fasteners:
   1. DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Screws, as distributed by DuPont: 1-5/8 inch rust resistant screw with 2-inch diameter plastic cap or manufacturer approved 1-1/4” or 2” metal gasketed washer

C. Sealants
   1. Provide sealants that comply with ASTM C920, elastomeric polymer sealant to maintain watertight conditions.
   2. Products:
      a. Sealants recommended by the weather barrier manufacturer.

D. Adhesives:
   1. Provide adhesive recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

E. Primers:
   1. Provide flashing manufacturer recommended primer to assist in adhesion between substrate and flashing.

F. Flashing
   1. DuPont™ FlexWrap™, as distributed by DuPont: flexible membrane flashing materials for window openings and penetrations.
   2. DuPont™ StraightFlash™, as distributed by DuPont: straight flashing membrane materials for flashing windows and doors and sealing penetrations such as masonry ties, etc.
   3. DuPont™ StraightFlash™ VF, as distributed by DuPont: dual-sided straight flashing membrane materials for brick mold and non-flanged windows and doors.
   4. DuPont™ Thru-Wall Surface Adhered Membrane with Integrated Drip Edge: Thru-Wall flashing membrane materials for flashing at changes in direction or elevation (shelf angles, foundations, etc.) and at transitions between different assembly materials.
   5. Preformed Inside and Outside Corners and End Dams as distributed by DuPont: Preformed three-dimensional shapes to complete the flashing system used in conjunction with DuPont™ Thru-Wall Flashing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify substrate and surface conditions are in accordance with weather barrier manufacturer recommended tolerances prior to installation of weather barrier and accessories.

3.02 INSTALLATION – WEATHER BARRIER

A. Install weather barrier over exterior face of exterior wall substrate in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

B. Install weather barrier prior to installation of windows and doors.

C. Start weather barrier installation at a building corner, leaving 6-12 inches of weather barrier extended beyond corner to overlap.

D. Install weather barrier in a horizontal manner starting at the lower portion of the wall surface with subsequent layers installed in a shingling manner to overlap lower layers. Maintain weather barrier plumb and level.

E. Sill Plate Interface: Extend lower edge of weather barrier over sill plate interface 3-6 inches. Secure to foundation with elastomeric sealant as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

F. Window and Door Openings: Extend weather barrier completely over openings.

G. Overlap weather barrier
   1. Exterior corners: minimum 12 inches.
   2. Seams: minimum 6 inches.

H. Weather Barrier Attachment:
   1. Attach weather barrier to studs through exterior sheathing. Secure using weather barrier manufacturer recommended fasteners, space 12 -18 inches vertically on center along stud line, and 24 inch on center, maximum horizontally.

I. Apply 4 inch by 7 inch piece of DuPont™ StraightFlash™ or weather barrier manufacturer approved alternate to weather barrier membrane prior to the installation cladding anchors.

3.03 SEAMING

A. Seal seams of weather barrier with seam tape at all vertical and horizontal overlapping seams.

B. Seal any tears or cuts as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

3.04 OPENING PREPARATION (for use with non-flanged windows – all cladding types)

A. Flush cut weather barrier at edge of sheathing around full perimeter of opening.

B. Cut a head flap at 45-degree angle in the weather barrier at window head to expose 8 inches of sheathing. Temporarily secure weather barrier flap away from sheathing with tape.

3.05 FLASHING (for use with non-flanged windows – all cladding types)

A. Cut 7-inch wide DuPont™ FlexWrap™ or DuPont™ FlexWrap™ NF a minimum of 12 inches longer than width of sill rough opening. Apply primer as required by manufacturer.

B. Cover horizontal sill by aligning DuPont™ FlexWrap™ edge with inside edge of sill. Adhere to rough opening across sill and up jambs a minimum of 6 inches. Secure flashing tightly into corners by working in along the sill before adhering up the jambs.

C. Fan DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at bottom corners onto face of wall. Firmly press in place. Mechanically fasten fanned edges. Mechanical fastening is not required for DuPont™ FlexWrap™ NF.

D. Apply 9-inch wide strips of DuPont™ StraightFlash™ at jambs. Align flashing with interior edge of jamb framing. Start DuPont™ StraightFlash™ at head of opening and lap sill flashing down to the sill.

E. Spray-apply primer to top 6 inches of jambs and exposed sheathing.

F. Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ DuPont™ FlexWrap™ NF at opening head using same installation procedures used at sill. Overlap jamb flashing a minimum of 2 inches.

G. Coordinate flashing with window installation.

H. On exterior, install backer-rod in joint between window frame and flashed rough framing. Apply sealant at jambs and head, leaving sill unsealed. Apply sealants in accordance with sealant manufacturer’s instructions and ASTM C 1193.

I. Position weather barrier head flap across head flashing. Adhere using 4-inch wide DuPont™ StraightFlash™ over the 45-degree seams.

J. Tape top of window in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

K. On interior, install backer rod in joint between frame of window and flashed rough framing. Apply sealant around entire window to create air seal. Apply sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer’s instructions and ASTM C 1193.

3.06 OPENING PREPARATION (for use with flanged windows)

A. Cut weather barrier in an "I-cut" pattern.
   1. Cut weather barrier horizontally along the bottom and top of the window opening.
   2. From the top center of the window opening, cut weather barrier vertically down to the sill.
   3. Fold side and bottom weather barrier flaps into window opening and fasten.

B. Cut a head flap at 45-degree angle in the weather barrier at window head to expose 8 inches of sheathing. Temporarily secure weather barrier flap away from sheathing with tape.

3.07 FLASHING (for use with flanged windows)

A. Cut 7-inch wide DuPont™ FlexWrap™ or DuPont™ FlexWrap™ NF a minimum of 12 inches longer than width of sill rough opening.

B. Cover horizontal sill by aligning DuPont™ FlexWrap™ edge with inside edge of sill. Adhere to rough opening across sill and up jambs a minimum of 6 inches. Secure flashing tightly into corners by working in along the sill before adhering up the jambs.

C. Fan DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at bottom corners onto face of wall. Firmly press in place. Mechanically fasten fanned edges. Mechanical fastening is not required for DuPont™ FlexWrap™ NF.

D. On exterior, apply continuous bead of sealant to wall or backside of window mounting flange across jambs and head. Do not apply sealant across sill.

E. Install window according to manufacturer's instructions.

F. Apply 4-inch wide strips of DuPont™ StraightFlash™ at jambs overlapping entire mounting flange. Extend jamb flashing 1-inch above top of rough opening and below bottom edge of sill flashing.

G. Apply 4-inch wide strip of DuPont™ StraightFlash™ as head flashing overlapping the mounting flange. Head flashing should extend beyond outside edges of both jamb flashings.

H. Position weather barrier head flap across head flashing. Adhere using 4-inch wide DuPont™ StraightFlash™ over the 45-degree seams.

I. Tape head flap in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

J. On interior, install backer rod in joint between frame of window and flashed rough framing. Apply sealant around entire window to create air seal. Apply sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C 1193.

3.08 THRU-WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Apply primer per manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install preformed corners and end dams bedded in sealant in appropriate locations along wall.

C. Starting at a corner, remove release sheet and apply membrane to primed surfaces in lengths of 8 to 10 feet.

D. Extend membrane through wall and leave ¼ inch minimum exposed to form drip edge.

E. Roll flashing into place. Ensure continuous and direct contact with substrate.

F. Lap ends and overlap preformed corners 4 inches minimum. Seal all laps with sealant.

G. Terminate membrane on vertical wall. Terminate into reglet, counterflashing or with termination bar.

H. Apply sealant bead at each termination.

3.09 THRU-WALL FLASHING / WEATHER BARRIER INTERFACE AT BASE OF WALL

A. Overlap thru-wall flashing with weather barrier by 6-inches.

B. Mechanically fasten bottom of weather barrier through top of thru-wall flashing.

C. Seal vertical and horizontal seams with tape or sealing membrane.

3.10 THRU-WALL FLASHING / WEATHER BARRIER INTERFACE AT SHELF ANGLE

A. Seal weather barrier to bottom of shelf angle with sealing membrane.

B. Apply thru-wall flashing to top of shelf angle. Overlap thru-wall flashing with weather barrier by 6-inches.

C. Seal bottom of weather barrier to thru-wall flashing with tape or sealing membrane.

3.11 THRU-WALL FLASHING / WEATHER BARRIER INTERFACE AT WINDOW HEAD

A. Cut flap in weather barrier at window head.

B. Prime exposed sheathing.

C. Install lintel as required. Verify end dams extend 4 inches minimum beyond opening.

D. Install end dams bedded in sealant.

E. Adhere 2 inches minimum thru-wall flashing to wall sheathing. Overlap lintel with thru-wall flashing and extend ¼ inch minimum beyond outside edge of lintel to form drip edge.

F. Apply sealant along thru-wall flashing edges.

G. Fold weather barrier flap back into place and tape bottom edge to thru-wall flashing.

H. Tape diagonal cuts of weather barrier.

I. Secure weather barrier flap with fasteners.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Notify manufacturer’s designated representative to obtain required periodic observations of weather barrier assembly installation.

3.13 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed weather barrier from damage.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 4213

FORMED METAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Composite Metal Wall Panels.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Drawings – “Structural Notes” - Structural Steel" for steel framing supporting metal panels.

B. Section 05 4000 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Cold-formed metal framing supporting metal panels.

C. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation: Thermal insulation installed behind metal panels.

D. Section 07 2500 – Weather Barriers: Air and moisture barriers within wall assembly and adjacent to wall assembly.

E. Division 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Sheet metal flashing items in addition to items specified in this Section.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. American Architectural Manufacturer's Association (AAMA): www.aamanet.org:
   1. AAMA 621 - Voluntary Specifications for High Performance Organic Coatings on Coil Coated Architectural Hot Dipped Galvanized (HDG) & Zinc-Aluminum Coated Steel Substrates.
   2. AAMA 809.2 Voluntary Specification Non-Drying Sealants.

B. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE): www.asce.org/codes-standards:
   1. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.

C. ASTM International (ASTM): www.astm.org:
   1. ASTM A755 - Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-Dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-Coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products.
   2. ASTM A792/A792M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process.
   3. ASTM C920 - Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
   4. ASTM D2244 - Test Method for Calculation of Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates.
   5. ASTM D4214 - Test Methods for Evaluating Degree of Chalking of Exterior Paint Films.
   6. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
   7. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
   8. ASTM E1592 - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer/Source: Provide metal panel assemblies and accessories from a single manufacturer accredited under IAS AC472, Part B.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Approved manufacturer listed in this Section with minimum five years experience in manufacture of similar products in successful use in similar applications.
   1. Approval of Comparable Products: Submit the following in accordance with project substitution requirements, within time allowed for substitution review:
      a. Product data, including certified independent test data indicating compliance with requirements.

b. Samples of each component.
c. Sample shop drawings from similar project.
d. Project References: Minimum of five installations not less than three years old, with Owner and Architect contact information.
e. Sample warranty.
f. Certificate of accreditation under IAS AC472 Part B.
g. Substitutions following award of contract are not allowed except as stipulated in Division 01 General Requirements.
h. Approved manufacturers must meet separate requirements of Submittals Article.

C. Installer Qualifications: Experienced Installer with minimum of five years experience with successfully completed projects of a similar nature and scope.
1. Installer's Field Supervisor: Experienced mechanic supervising work on site whenever work is underway.

1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Preinstallation Meeting: Prior to erection of framing, conduct preinstallation meeting at site attended by Owner, Architect, metal panel installer, metal panel manufacturer's technical representative, inspection agency and related trade contractors.
1. Coordinate building framing in relation to metal panel system.
2. Coordinate openings and penetrations of metal panel system.
3. Coordinate work of Division 07 Sections "Roof Specialties" and/or "Roof Accessories" and openings and penetrations and manufacturer's accessories with installation of metal panels.

1.06 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer’s data sheets for specified products. Include data indicating compliance with performance requirements.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of metal panels. Include details of each condition of installation, panel profiles, and attachment to building. Provide details at a minimum scale 1-1/2-inch per foot of edge conditions, joints, fastener and sealant placement, flashings, openings, penetrations, and special details. Make distinctions between factory and field assembled work.
1. Indicate points of supporting structure that must coordinate with metal panel system installation.
2. Include structural data indicating compliance with performance requirements and requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each exposed product specified including sealants. Provide representative color charts of manufacturer's full range of colors.

D. Samples for Verification: Provide 12-inch-long section of each metal panel profile. Provide color chip verifying color selection.

1.07 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: Indicating compliance of products with requirements.

B. Qualification Information: For Installer firm and Installer’s field supervisor.

C. Manufacturer's warranty: Unexecuted sample copy of manufacturer's warranty.

1.08 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Executed copy of manufacturer's warranty.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect products of metal panel system during shipping, handling, and storage to prevent staining, denting, deterioration of components or other damage. Protect panels and trim bundles during shipping.
   1. Deliver, unload, store, and erect metal panels and accessory items without misshaping panels or exposing panels to surface damage from weather or construction operations.
   2. Store in accordance with Manufacturer's written instruction. Provide wood collars for stacking and handling in the field.
   3. Shield foam insulated metal panels from direct sunlight until installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: On manufacturer's standard form, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal panel assemblies that fail in materials and workmanship within one year from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Panel Finish Warranty: On Manufacturer's standard form, in which Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal panels that evidence deterioration of factory-applied finish within the warranty period, as follows:
   1. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System.
      a. Basis of Design System: **Reynobond Colorweld 500 Composit Wall Panels**.
      b. Color fading in excess of 5 Hunter units per ASTM D2244.
      c. Chalking in excess of No. 8 rating per ASTM D4214.
      d. Failure of adhesion, peeling, checking, or cracking.
      e. Warranty Period: 40 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. Basis of Design Manufacturer, ACM wall panels: Reynobond Colorweld 500 Composite Metal Wall Panels.

B. Provide basis of design product, or comparable product approved by Architect prior to bid.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide metal panel system meeting performance requirements as determined by application of specified tests by a qualified testing facility on manufacturer's standard assemblies.

B. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of indicated loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, as determined by ASTM E1592:
   1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on uniform pressure, importance factor, exposure category, and basic wind speed indicated on drawings.
      a. Wind Negative Pressure: Certify capacity of metal panels by actual testing of proposed assembly.
   2. Deflection Limits: Withstand inward and outward wind-load design pressures in accordance with applicable building code with maximum deflection of 1/120 of the span with no evidence of failure.
   3. Seismic Performance: Comply with ASCE 7 Sections 9, "Earthquake Loads."

C. Wall Panel Air Infiltration, ASTM E283:
   1. 0.002 cfm/sq. ft. air infiltration at static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
   2. 0.003 cfm/sq. ft. air infiltration at static-air-pressure difference of 12.00 lbf/sq. ft.

D. Wall Panel Water Penetration Static Pressure, ASTM E331: No uncontrolled water penetration at a static pressure of 20.00 lbf/sq. ft.

E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from variations in both ambient and internal temperatures. Accommodate movement of support structure caused by thermal expansion and contraction. Allow for deflection and design for thermal stresses caused by temperature differences from one side of the panel to the other.

2.03 FORMED METAL WALL PANELS

A. Composite Metal Wall Panels: Panels to be Reynobond Fire Resistant (FR) Aluminum Composite Materials Reynobond as manufactured by Arconic Architectural Products LLC (AAP), 50 Industrial Boulevard, Eastman, Georgia 31023. Contact Eastman Plant at 800.841.7774 or 478.374.4746 or at www.reynobond.com.
   1. Panel Thickness: 6mm
   2. Finish: Coil-coated Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000 based polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF). AAP shall be Colorweld 500, a fluoropolymer coating utilizing 70% Kynar 500 resins.
   3. Colors: As indicated on the “Finish Schedule” on the Drawings.

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide complete metal panel assemblies incorporating trim, copings, fasciae, gutters and downspouts, and miscellaneous flashings. Provide required fasteners, closure strips, and sealants as indicated in manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Flashing and Trim: Match material, thickness, and finish of metal panels.

C. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws and other acceptable fasteners recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Where exposed fasteners cannot be avoided, supply corrosion-resistant fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of factory-applied coating, with weathertight resilient washers.

D. Panel Sealants:
   1. Concealed Joint Sealant: Non-curing butyl, AAMA 809.2.
   2. Elastomeric Joint Sealant: Urethane sealant, single-component, ASTM C920 Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT, A, M, G, O.
   3. Tape Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl type.

2.05 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide factory fabricated and finished metal panels, trim, and accessories meeting performance requirements, indicated profiles, and structural requirements.

B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, approved shop drawings, and project drawings.

2.06 FINISHES

A. Finishes, General: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: 0.2 – 0.3 mil primer with 0.7 - 0.8 mil 70 percent PVDF fluoropolymer color coat, AAMA 621, meeting solar reflectance index requirements.
   1. Basis of Design: MBCI, Signature 300.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine metal panel system substrate with Installer present. Inspect for erection tolerances and other conditions that would adversely affect installation of metal panels.
   1. Inspect framing that will support insulated metal panels to determine if support components are installed as indicated on approved shop drawings and are within tolerances acceptable to metal panel manufacturer and installer. Confirm presence of acceptable framing members at recommended spacing to match installation requirements of metal panels.

B. Correct out-of-tolerance work and other deficient conditions prior to proceeding with insulated metal panel installation.

3.02 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. Concealed-Fastener Formed Metal Panels: Install metal panel system in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, approved shop drawings, project drawings, and referenced publications. Install metal panels in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Anchor panels and other components securely in place. Provide for thermal and structural movement.

B. Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each location indicated on approved shop drawings, at spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Fasten panel to support structure through leading flange. Snap-fit back flange of subsequent panel into secured flange of previous panel.
   1. Cut panels in field where required using manufacturer's recommended methods.
   2. Dissimilar Materials: Where elements of metal panel system will come into contact with dissimilar materials, treat faces and edges in contact with dissimilar materials as recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

C. Attach panel flashing trim pieces to supports using recommended fasteners and joint sealers.

D. Joint Sealers: Install liquid sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal panel assemblies.
   1. Seal panel base assembly, openings, panel head joints, and perimeter joints using joint sealers indicated in manufacturer's instructions.
   2. Seal perimeter joints between window and door openings and adjacent panels using elastomeric joint sealer.
   3. Prepare joints and apply sealants per requirements of Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.03 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install metal panel accessories with positive anchorage to building and weather tight mounting; provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
   1. Install components required for a complete metal panel assembly, including trim, copings, flashings, sealants, closure strips, and similar items.
   2. Comply with details of assemblies utilized to establish compliance with performance requirements and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   3. Set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently weather resistant.

3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

B. Replace damaged panels and accessories that cannot be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 8400

FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Firestopping materials.

B. Firestopping of all penetrations and interruptions to fire rated assemblies, whether indicated on drawings or not, and other openings indicated.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Division 1 sections: Cutting and patching.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM E 814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops; current edition.

B. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; Intertek Testing Services NA, Inc.; current edition.

C. FM P7825 - Approval Guide; Factory Mutual Research Corporation; current edition.

D. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 sections for submittal procedures.

B. Schedule of Firestopping: List each type of penetration and proposed product.

C. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics.

D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation and installation instructions.

E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

F. Certificate from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of materials used.

G. General Contractor to submit and retain on project a 3 ring binder with a schedule of all required firestopping products to be applied on the project to ensure fire ratings as shown on code sheets are preserved. Binder should be stamped by AHJ and sent to project Architect, Owner and Contractor for field reference purposes. It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to provide compatible products for each coordinated penetration and current building and inspector code required installations.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire Testing: Provide firestopping assemblies of designs which provide the specified fire ratings required by local applicable code when tested in accordance with methods indicated.
   1. Listing in the current classification or certification books of UL, FM, or ITS (Warnock Hersey) will be considered as constituting an acceptable test report.
   2. Current evaluation reports published by CABO, ICBO, or BOCA will be considered as constituting an acceptable test report.
   3. Submission of actual test reports is required for assemblies for which none of the above substantiation exists.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.

C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section and:
   1. With minimum five years documented experience installing work of this type.

2. Approved by firestopping manufacturer.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with firestopping manufacturer's recommendations for temperature and conditions during and after installation. Maintain minimum temperature before, during, and for 3 days after installation of materials.

B. Provide ventilation in areas where solvent-cured materials are being installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRESTOPPING ASSEMBLIES

A. Firestopping: Use listed materials meeting requirements.
   1. Fire Ratings: Use any system listed by UL or tested in accordance with ASTM E 814 that has F Rating equal to fire rating of penetrated assembly and T Rating Equal to F Rating and that meets all other specified requirements.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Elastomeric Silicone Firestopping: Single component silicone elastomeric compound and compatible silicone sealant.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc: www.adfire.com.
      b. 3M Fire Protection Products: www.mmm.com/US/arch_construct.
      c. Specified Technologies, Inc: www.stifirestop.com.
      d. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

B. Foam Firestoppping: Single component foam compound.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. 3M Fire Protection Products: www.mmm.com/US/arch_construct.
      b. Specified Technologies, Inc: www.stifirestop.com.
      c. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

C. Fibered Compound Firestopping: Formulated compound mixed with incombustible non-asbestos fibers.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc: www.adfire.com.
      b. USG Corporation: www.usg.com.
      c. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

D. Fiber Packing Material: Mineral fiber packing insulation.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc: www.adfire.com.
      b. Pecora Corporation: www.pecora.com.
      c. USG Corporation: www.usg.com.
      d. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

E. Firestop Devices: Mechanical device with silicone elastomer filler and sheet stainless steel jacket, collar, and flanged stops.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Grace Construction Products: www.na.graceconstruction.com.
      b. 3M Fire Protection Products: www.mmm.com/US/arch_construct.
      c. Specified Technologies, Inc: www.stifirestop.com.
      d. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

F. Intumescent Putty: Compound which expands on exposure to surface heat gain.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Grace Construction Products: www.na.graceconstruction.com.
      b. 3M Fire Protection Products: www.mmm.com/US/arch_construct.

c. Specified Technologies, Inc: www.stifirestop.com.
d. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

G. Firestop Pillows: Formed mineral fiber pillows.
1. Manufacturers:
a. Grace Construction Products: www.na.graceconstruction.com.
b. Nelson Firestop Products: www.nelsonfirestop.com.
c. Specified Technologies, Inc: www.stifirestop.com.
d. See Division 1 sections for substitution procedures.

H. Primers, Sleeves, Forms, and Accessories: Type required for tested assembly design.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify openings are ready to receive the work of this section.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate surfaces of dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose material, or other matter which may affect bond of firestopping material.

B. Remove incompatible materials which may affect bond.

C. Install backing materials to arrest liquid material leakage.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install materials in manner described in fire test report and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, completely closing openings.

B. Do not cover installed firestopping until inspected by authority having jurisdiction.

C. Install labeling required by code.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces of firestopping materials.

B. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage by material installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 9000

JOINT SEALERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Sealants and joint backing.

B. Precompressed foam sealers.

C. Hollow gaskets.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 834 - Standard Specification for Latex Sealants; current edition.

B. ASTM C 919 - Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications; current edition.

C. ASTM C 920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; current edition.

D. ASTM C 1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; current edition.

E. ASTM D 1056 - Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials--Sponge or ExpandedRubber; current edition.

F. SCAQMD 1168 - South Coast Air Quality Management District Rule No.1168; current edition;www.aqmd.gov.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 sections for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data indicating sealant chemical characteristics.

C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Maintain one copy of each referenced document covering installation requirements on site.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified inthis section with minimum five years documented experience.

C. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section withminimum five years experience.

D. Joint sealer to be applied to all dissimilar materials whether indicated on drawings or not.Colors must be submitted and approved as a mock up prior to commencement of Work.

1.5 MOCK-UP

A. Provide mock-up of sealant joints in conjunction with exterior masonry mock-ups.

B. Construct mock-up with specified sealant types and with other components noted.

C. Locate where directed.

D. Mock-up may not remain as part of the Work.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Maintain temperature and humidity recommended by the sealant manufacturer during and afterinstallation.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate the work with all sections referencing this section.

B. Mock-ups must be complete for review and approval. Only after complete mock-up has beenapproved may Work commence.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Correct defective work within a ten year period after Date of Substantial Completion.

B. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories which fail to achieve airtightseal, exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SEALANTS

A. General Purpose Exterior Sealant: Polyurethane; ASTM C 920, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M,G, and A; single component.
   1. Color: Standard colors matching finished surfaces.
   2. Applications: Use for:
      a. Control, expansion, and soft joints in masonry.
      b. Joints between concrete and other materials.
      c. Joints between metal frames and other materials.
      d. Other exterior joints for which no other sealant is indicated.

B. General Purpose Siliconce Building Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, single componentsilicone type, nonstaining.
   1. Color : As selected by Architect to match existing work.

C. Exterior Expansion Joint Sealer: Precompressed foam sealer; urethane with water-repellent;
   1. Color: Selected from standard range by Architect.
   2. Size as required to provide weathertight seal when installed.
   3. Applications: Use for:
      a. Exterior wall expansion joints.

D. Exterior Metal Lap Joint Sealant: Butyl or polyisobutylene, nondrying, nonskinning, noncuring.
   1. Applications: Use for:
      a. Concealed sealant bead in sheet metal work.
      b. Concealed sealant bead in siding overlaps.

E. General Purpose Interior Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex; ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NFsingle component, paintable.
   1. Color: Standard colors matching finished surfaces as approved by Architect.
   2. Applications: Use for:
      a. Interior wall and ceiling control joints.
      b. Joints between door and window frames and wall surfaces.
      c. Other interior joints for which no other type of sealant is indicated.

F. Bathtub/Tile Sealant: White silicone; ASTM C 920, Uses I, M and A; single component, mildewresistant. Color to be selected by Architect.
   1. Applications: Use for:
      a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and floor and wall surfaces.
      b. Joints between kitchen and bath countertops and wall surfaces.

G. Acoustical Sealant: Butyl or acrylic sealant; ASTM C 920, Grade NS, Class 12-1/2, Uses Mand A; single component, solvent release curing, non-skinning.
   1. Applications: Use for concealed locations only:
      a. Sealant bead between top stud runner and structure and between bottom stud track and floor, when indicated on drawings.

H. Interior Floor Joint Sealant: Polyurethane, self-leveling; ASTM C 920, Grade P, Class 25, UsesT, M and A; single component.

1. Approved by manufacturer for wide joints up to 1-1/2 inches.
2. Color: Standard colors matching finished surfaces approved by Architect.
3. Applications: Use for:
   a. Expansion joints in floors.

I. Concrete Paving Joint Sealant: Polyurethane, self-leveling; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Uses T, I,M and A; single component.
   1. Color: Gray.
   2. Applications: Use for:
      a. Joints in sidewalks and vehicular paving.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Primer: Non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.

B. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer;compatible with joint forming materials.

C. Joint Backing: Round foam rod compatible with sealant; ASTM D 1056, sponge or expandedrubber; oversized 30 to 50 percent larger than joint width.

D. Bond Breaker: Pressure sensitive tape recommended by sealant manufacturer to suitapplication.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.

B. Verify that joint backing and release tapes are compatible with sealant.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter which might impair adhesion of sealant.

B. Clean and prime joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C 1193.

D. Protect elements surrounding the work of this section from damage or disfigurement.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation ofsurfaces and material installation instructions.

B. Perform installation in accordance with ASTM C 1193.

C. Perform acoustical sealant application work in accordance with ASTM C 919.

D. Measure joint dimensions and size joint backers to achieve the following, unless otherwiseindicated:
   1. Width/depth ratio of 2:1.
   2. Neck dimension no greater than 1/3 of the joint width.
   3. Surface bond area on each side not less than 75 percent of joint width.

E. Install bond breaker where joint backing is not used.

F. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags.

G. Apply sealant within recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturerwhen sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.

H. Tool joints concave.

I. Precompressed Foam Sealant: Do not stretch; avoid joints except at corners, ends, andintersections; install with face 1/8 to 1/4 inch below adjoining surface.

J. Compression Gaskets: Avoid joints except at ends, corners, and intersections; seal all jointswith adhesive; install with face 1/8 to 1/4 inch below adjoining surface.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent soiled surfaces.

3.5 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

A. Protect sealants until cured.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 9513
EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Expansion joint cover assemblies for floor, wall, ceiling, and soffit surfaces.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Custom fabricated metal expansion and control joint devices.

B. Section 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Roof expansion and control joint covers.

C. Section 07 7100 - Roof Specialties: Roof expansion and control joint covers.

D. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing expansion and control joints using gunnable and pourable sealants.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; current edition.

B. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); current edition.

C. ASTM B308/B308M - Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy 6061-T6 Standard Structural Profiles; current edition.

D. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; current edition.

E. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Installation Templates: For frames and anchors to be embedded in concrete or masonry, furnish templates to relevant installers; include installation instructions and tolerances.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide joint assembly profiles, profile dimensions, anchorage devices and available colors and finish.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate joint and splice locations, miters, layout of the work, affected adjacent construction and anchorage locations.

D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 inch long, illustrating profile, dimension, color, and finish selected.

E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate rough-in sizes and required tolerances for item placement.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies:
   1. Architectural Art Mfg, Inc: www.archart.com.
   2. Construction Specialties, Inc: www.c-sgroup.com.
   3. Inpro: www.inprocorp.com.
   4. MM Systems Corp: www.mmsystemscorp.com.
   5. Nystrom, Inc: www.nystrom.com/sle.
   6. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLY APPLICATIONS

A. Interior Floor Joints Subject to Thermal Movement.

B. Interior Wall/Ceiling Joints Subject to Thermal Movement.

C. Interior Fire-Rated Wall/Ceiling Joints Subject to Thermal Movement.

D. Exterior Wall Joints Subject to Thermal Movement.

E. Roof Joints Subject to Thermal Movement: See Section 07 7100 – Roof Specialties.

2.03 EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES

A. Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies - General: Factory-fabricated and assembled; designed to completely fill joint openings, sealed to prevent passage of air, dust, water, smoke; suitable for traffic expected.
   1. Joint Dimensions and Configurations: As indicated on drawings.
   2. Joint Cover Sizes: Selected to suit joint width and configuration, based on manufacturer's published recommendations and limitations.
   3. Joint Cover Styles: As indicated on drawings.
   4. Joint Movement Capability: If not indicated, provide minimum plus/minus 25 percent joint movement capability.
   5. Lengths: Provide covers in full lengths required; avoid splicing wherever possible.
   6. Anchors, Fasteners, and Fittings: Provided by cover manufacturer.

B. Floor Joint Covers: Coordinate with indicated floor coverings.
   1. If floor covering is not indicated, obtain instructions from Architect before proceeding.
   2. If style is not indicated, provide extruded aluminum frame both sides, resilient seals, and minimize exposed metal.

C. Resilient Seal Type Covers: Having flat exposed surface without crevices that could collect dirt; designed to withstand expected movement without extrusion of seal from joint assembly; for floors, provide style that is flush with top of floor covering; for exterior joints, weathertight.

D. Covers In Gypsum Board Assemblies: Provide style with anchoring wings that can be completely covered by joint compound.

E. Covers In Fire Rated Assemblies: Provide cover assembly having fire rating equivalent to that of assembly into which it is installed.
   1. Acceptable Evaluation Agencies: UL (DIR) and ITS (DIR).

2.04 MATERIALS

A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), 6063 alloy, T6 temper; or ASTM B308/B308M, 6061 alloy, T6 temper.
   1. Exposed Finish Outdoors: Natural anodized.
   2. Exposed Finish at Floors: Mill finish or natural anodized.
   3. Exposed Finish at Walls and Ceilings: Natural anodized.

B. Resilient Seals:
   1. For Ceilings: Any resilient material, flush, pleated, or hollow gasket.

C. Anchors and Fasteners: As recommended by cover manufacturer.

D. Ferrous Metal Anchors: Galvanized where embedded in concrete or in contact with cementitious materials.

E. Threaded Fasteners: Aluminum.

F. Backing Paint for Aluminum Components in Contact with Cementitious Materials: Asphaltic type.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that joint preparation and dimensions are acceptable and in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

B. Verify that frames and anchors installed by others are in correct locations and suitable for installation of remainder of assembly.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install components and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Align work plumb and level, flush with adjacent surfaces.

C. Rigidly anchor to substrate to prevent misalignment.

3.03 PROTECTION

A. Do not permit traffic over unprotected floor joint surfaces.

B. Provide strippable coating to protect finish surface.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 1113

HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fire rated and non-fire-rated steel doors and frames.

B. Steel frames for wood doors.

C. Thermally insulated steel doors.

D. Steel glazing frames.

E. Accessories, including glazing and louvers.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 08 7100 – Door Hardware: Hardware for doors.

B. Section 08 8000 - Glazing: Glass for doors.

C. Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating: Field painting.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ANSI/ICC A117.1 - American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings andFacilities; International Code Council; current edition.

B. ANSI A250.8 - SDI-100 Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames;current edition.

C. ANSI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces forSteel Doors and Frames; current edition.

D. ASTM A 653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-IronAlloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; current edition.

E. ASTM E 1408 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of the Sound TransmissionLoss of Door Panels and Door Systems; current edition.

F. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames; current edition.

G. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Guide Specifications for Installation and Storage of Hollow Metal Doorsand Frames; The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; current edition.

H. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Fire Windows; National Fire Protection Association;current edition.

I. UL (BMD) - Building Materials Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

J. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; current edition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Materials and details of design and construction, hardware locations, reinforcement type and locations, anchorage and fastening methods, STC rating (if any), finishes; and onecopy of referenced grade standard.

B. Shop Drawings: Details of each opening, showing elevations, throat opening width, glazing,frame profiles, and identifying location of different finishes, if any.

C. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's published instructions, including any special installationinstructions relating to this project.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certification that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified inthis section with minimum three years documented experience.

B. Maintain at the project site a copy of all reference standards dealing with installation.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store in accordance with NAAMM HMMA 840.

B. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Steel Doors and Frames:
1. Assa Abloy Ceco, Curries, or Fleming: www.assaabloydss.com.
2. Windsor Republic Doors: www.republicdoor.com.
3. Steelcraft: www.steelcraft.com.
4. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

2.2 DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Requirements for All Doors and Frames:
1. Accessibility: Comply with ANSI/ICC A117.1.
2. Door Top Closures: Flush with top of faces and edges.
3. Door Edge Profile: Beveled on both edges.
4. Door Texture: Smooth faces.
5. Glazed Lights: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations asindicated on drawings.
6. Hardware Preparation: In accordance with BHMA A156.115, with reinforcement welded inplace, in addition to other requirements specified in door grade standard.
7. Galvanizing for Units in Wet Areas: All components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated(galvannealed), manufacturer's standard coating thickness.
8. Finish: Factory primed, for field finishing.

B. Combined Requirements: If a particular door and frame unit is indicated to comply with morethan one type of requirement, comply with all the specified requirements for each type; for instance, an exterior door that is also indicated as being sound-rated must comply with the requirements specified for exterior doors and for sound-rated doors; where two requirementsconflict, comply with the most stringent.

2.3 STEEL DOORS

A. Exterior Doors:
1. Grade: ANSI A250.8 Level 3, physical performance Level A, Model 2, seamless.
2. Core: Polystyrene foam.
3. Galvanizing: All components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) in accordance with ASTM A 653/A 653M, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness.

B. Interior Doors, Non-Fire-Rated:
1. Grade: ANSI A250.8 Level 2, physical performance Level B, Model 1, full flush.
2. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.

C. Interior Doors, Fire-Rated:
   1. Grade: ANSI A250.8 Level 2, physical performance Level B, Model 1, full flush.
   2. Fire Rating: As indicated on Door and Frame Schedule, tested in accordance with UL 10C("positive pressure").
      a. Provide units listed and labeled by UL.
      b. Attach fire rating label to each fire rated unit.
   3. Core: Mineral fiberboard.

2.4 STEEL FRAMES

A. General:
   1. Comply with the requirements of grade specified for corresponding door.
      a. Frames for Wood Doors: Comply with frame requirements specified in ANSI A250.8for Level 1, 16 gage up to 36” wide, 14 gage over 36” wide.
   2. Finish: Same as for door.
   3. Provide mortar guard boxes for hardware cut-outs in frames to be installed in masonry orto be grouted.
   4. Frames in Masonry Walls: Size to suit masonry coursing with head member 4 inches highto fill opening without cutting masonry units.
   5. Frames Wider than 48 Inches: Reinforce with steel channel fitted tightly into frame head,flush with top.
   6. Prior to ordering frames, field-confirm all wall throat openings.

B. Exterior Door Frames: Face welded, seamless with joints filled, 16 gage.
   1. Galvanizing: All components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) inaccordance with ASTM A 653, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness.
   2. Weatherstripping: Separate, see Section 08 7100.

C. Interior Door Frames, Non-Fire-Rated: Fully welded type.
   1. Terminated Stops: Provide at all interior doors; closed end stop terminated 6 inches abovefloor at 45 degree angle.

D. Interior Door Frames, Fire-Rated: Fully welded type.
   1. Fire Rating: Same as door, labeled.

E. Frames for Interior Glazing or Borrowed Lights: Construction and face dimensions to matchdoor frames, and as indicated on drawings.

F. Tornado Rated Frames
   1. Frame: 12 gauge galvannealed steel.
   2. Reinforced Channels: 12 gauge.
   3. Welded anchor reinforcements around perimeter.
   4. Factory finished primer for field finish coat.
   5. Meets requirements of ASTM E1886-05, ASTM 1996-06, SSTD 12-99, ANSIA250, FM 4473, and ICC-500.

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Louvers: Roll formed steel with overlapping frame; finish same as door components; factory-installed.
   1. In Fire-Rated Doors: UL-listed fusible link louver, same rating as door.
   2. Style: Standard straight slat blade.
   3. Fasteners: Concealed fasteners.

B. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 8000, factory installed.

C. Removable Stops: Formed sheet steel, shape as indicated on drawings, mitered or buttedcorners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.

D. Grout for Frames: Specified in Section 04 0513.

E. Silencers: Resilient rubber, fitted into drilled hole; 3 on strike side of single door, 3 on centermullion of pairs, and 2 on head of pairs without center mullions.

F. Temporary Frame Spreaders: Provide for all factory- or shop-assembled frames.

2.6 FINISH MATERIALS

A. Primer: Rust-inhibiting, complying with ANSI A250.10, door manufacturer's standard.

B. Bituminous Coating: Asphalt emulsion or other high-build, water-resistant, resilient coating.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coat inside of frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted, with bituminous coating, priorto installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with the requirements of the specified door grade standard and NAAMMHMMA 840.

B. In addition, install fire rated units in accordance with NFPA 80.

C. Coordinate frame anchor placement with wall construction.

D. Grout frames in masonry construction, using hand trowel methods; brace frames so thatpressure of grout before setting will not deform frames.

E. Coordinate installation of hardware.

F. Coordinate installation of glazing.

G. Coordinate installation of electrical connections to electrical hardware items.

H. Touch up damaged factory finishes.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Clearances Between Door and Frame: As specified in ANSI A250.8.

B. Maximum Diagonal Distortion: 1/16 in measured with straight edge, corner to corner.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.

B. Test sound control doors for force to close, latch, and unlatch in accordance with ASTM E 1408;adjust as required to comply.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 1416

FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Flush wood doors; flush configuration; fire rated, non-rated.

B. Sound-rated doors.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM E90 – Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements, 2009 (Rapproved 2016).

B. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation; current edition.

C. ASTM E1408 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of the Sound Transmission Loss of Door Panels and Door Systems; current edition.

D. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program, www.awiqcp.org; current edition at www.awiqcp.org.

E. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; current edition.

F. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; Intertek Testing Services NA, Inc.; current edition.

G. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; current edition.

H. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; National Fire Protection Association; current edition.

I. The Forest Stewardship Council; www.fscus.org

J. UBC Std 7-2, Part II - Test Standard for Smoke- and Draft-control Assemblies; International Conference of Building Officials; current edition.

K. UL (BMD) - Building Materials Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

L. UL 10B - Standard for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

M. UL 1784 - Standard for Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, STC rating (if any), and type and characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: Show doors and frames, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts, beveling, blocking for hardware, factory machining, factory finishing, cutouts for glazing and other details.
   1. Provide the information required by AWI/AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards.
   2. Include certification program label.

C. Specimen warranty.

D. Test Reports: Show compliance with specified requirements for the following:

E. Sound-retardant doors and frames; sealed panel tests are not acceptable.

F. Samples: Submit three samples of door construction, 12 x 12 inch in size cut from top corner of door.

G. Samples: Submit three samples of door veneer, 24 x 24 inch in size illustrating wood grain, stain color, and sheen.

H. Certifications: Provide wood products containing certification and label of the Forest Stewardship Council.

I. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special installation instructions.

J. Warranty, executed in Owner's name.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Maintain one copy of the specified door quality standard on site for review during installation and finishing.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
   1. Company with at least one project in the past 5 years with value of woodwork within 20percent of cost of woodwork for this Project.
   2. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement offabrication and throughout the duration of the project.

C. Quality Certification: Provide AWI Quality Certification Program inspection report and quality certification of completed work.
   3. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the work complies with requirements of AWSGrade or Grades specified.
   4. Prior to delivery to the site provide shop drawings with certification labels.
   5. Provide labels on each product when required by certification program.
   6. Upon completion of installation provide certificate certifying that the installation andproducts meet the specified requirements.
   7. Arrange and pay for inspections required for certification.
   8. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.

D. Installed Fire Rated Door: Conform to NFPA 80 for fire rated class as indicated.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.

B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage.

C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic. Do not store in damp or wet areas; or in areas where sunlight might bleach veneer. Seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week. Break seal on site to permit ventilation.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Interior Doors: Provide manufacturer's warranty for the life of the installation.

B. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, and telegraphing core construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Wood Veneer Faced Doors:
   1. Eggers Industries: www.eggersindustries.com.
   2. Graham Wood Doors: www.grahamdoors.com
   3. Maiman Fine Architectural Doors: www.maiman.com
   4. Haley Brothers; www.haleybros.com
   5. Marshfield Door Systems; www.marshfielddoors.com
   6. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

B. Acoustical Doors:
   7. Masonite Architectural; Acoustically Rated Door Solutions: www.architectural.masonite.com.
   8. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

2.2 DOORS AND PANELS

A. All Doors: See drawings for locations and additional requirements.
   1. Quality Level: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI ArchitecturalWoodwork Standards.
   2. Wood Veneer Faced Doors: 5-ply unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Sound-Rated Doors: Minimum STC of 50, calculated in accordance with ASTM E413, tested in accordance with ASTM E90.

B. Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
   4. Provide solid core doors at all locations.
   5. Fire Rated Doors: Tested to ratings indicated on drawings in accordance with NFPA 252, UL 10B, or UBC Standard 7-2-94 ("neutral pressure"); UL or WH (ITS) labeled without anyvisible seals when door is open.
   6. Smoke and Draft Control Doors: In addition to required fire rating, provide door assembliestested in accordance with UL 1784 with maximum air leakage of 3.0 cfm per sq ft of door opening at 0.10 inch w.g. pressure at both ambient and elevated temperatures; with "S" label; if necessary, provide additional gasketing or edge sealing.
   7. Smoke and Draft Control Doors: In addition to required fire rating, provide door assembliestested in accordance with UBC Standard 7-2, Part II; provide additional gasketing or edge sealing.
   8. Wood veneer facing with factory applied transparent finish.

2.3 DOOR AND PANEL CORES

A. Non-Rated Solid Core and 20 Minute Rated Doors: Type – Structural Composite Lumber, plies and faces as indicated above.

B. Fire Rated Doors: Mineral core, Type FD, plies and faces as indicated above; with core blocking as required to provide adequate anchorage of hardware without through-bolting.

C. Sound Rated Doors: Equivalent to type, with particleboard core (PC) construction as required to achieve STC rating specified; plies and faces as indicated above.

D. All doors to contain minimum 85% recycled content.

2.4 DOOR FACINGS

A. Wood Veneer Facing for Transparent Finish: Match species and cut of existing doors. Veneer grade as specified by quality standard.
   1. Vertical Edges: Same species as face veneer.
   2. Pairs: Pair match each pair; set match pairs within 10 feet of each other when doors areclosed.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Glazing Stops: Aluminum channel shape, mitered corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.

B. Astragals for Non-Rated Double Doors: Steel, T shaped, overlapping and recessed at face edge.

C. Astragals for Fire Rated Double Doors: Steel, T shaped, overlapping and recessed at face edge, specifically for double doors.

D. Fill, sand and match finish of all nail holes.

2.6 DOOR CONSTRUCTION

A. Fabricate doors in accordance with door quality standard specified.

B. Cores Constructed with stiles and rails:
   1. Provide solid blocks at lock edge for hardware reinforcement.
   2. Provide solid blocking for other through-bolted hardware.
   3. Top and Bottom Rails to be minimum 2-3/8 inches.
   4. Side Rails to be minimum 2-1/2 inches.

C. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.

D. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.

E. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.

2.7 FACTORY FINISHING - WOOD VENEER DOORS

A. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 5 - Finishing for Grade specified and as follows:
   1. Transparent:
      a. System - 3, Lacquer, Postcatalyzed.
      b. Stain: To match existing.
      c. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.

C. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
   1. Install fire-rated doors in accordance with NFPA 80 requirements.

B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not factory cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.

C. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.

D. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.

E. Coordinate installation of glazing.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Conform to specified quality standard for fit and clearance tolerances.

B. Conform to specified quality standard for telegraphing, warp, and squareness.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement.

B. Adjust closers for full closure.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 3100
ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Wall access door and frame units.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; Intertek Testing Services NA, Inc.; current edition.

B. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide sizes, types, finishes, hardware, scheduled locations, and details of adjoining work.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate exact position of all access door units.

D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation requirements.

E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of all access units.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCESS DOOR AND PANEL APPLICATIONS

A. Walls, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
   1. Material: Stainless steel, Type 304.
   2. Size: 12 x 12 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Tool-operated spring or cam lock; no handle.
   4. In All Wall Types: Surface mounted face frame and door surface flush with frame surface.
   5. In Gypsum Board: Drywall bead frame with door surface flush with wall surface.
   6. In Plaster: Drywall bead frame with door surface flush with wall surface.
   7. In Masonry: Surface mounted frame with door surface flush with frame surface.

B. Walls in Wet Areas:
   1. Material: Stainless steel, Type 304.
   2. Size: 12 x 12 inches, (24 x 24 in group restrooms) unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Tool-operated spring or cam lock; no handle.
   4. In All Wall Types: S urface mounted face frame and door surface flush with frame surface.
   5. In Gypsum Board: Drywall bead frame with door surface flush with wall surface.
   6. In Plaster: Drywall bead frame with door surface flush with wall surface.
   7. In Masonry: Surface mounted frame with door surface flush with frame surface.
   8 In Tile: Recessed cover to accept matching ceramic tile.

C. Fire Rated Walls: See drawings for wall fire ratings.
   1. Material: Stainless steel, Type 304.
   2. Size: 12 x 12 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Insulated, double skin door panel.
   4. Tool-operated spring or cam lock; no handle.

C. Floor Access Doors:
   1. Bilco KD 2, with safety posts.

2.2 WALL UNITS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Acudor Products Inc: www.acudor.com.
   2. The Bilco Company: www.bilco.com
   2. Cendrex, Inc: www.cendrex.com.

3. Karp Associates, Inc: www.karpinc.com.
4. Milcor by Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc: www.milcorinc.com.

B. Access Doors: Factory fabricated door and frame units, fully assembled units with corner joints welded, filled, and ground flush; square and without rack or warp; coordinate requirements with assemblies units are to be installed in.
1. Style: Exposed frame with door surface flush with frame surface.
   a. In Gypsum Board: Use drywall bead type frame.
   b. In Plaster: Use plaster bead type frame.
2. Door Style: Single thickness with rolled or turned in edges.
3. Frames: 16 gage, 0.0598 inch, minimum.
4. Double-Skinned Hollow Steel Door Panels: 16 gage, 0.059 inch, minimum, on both sides and all edges.
5. Units in Fire Rated Assemblies: Fire rating as required by applicable code for the fire rated assembly in which they are to be installed.
   a. Provide products listed and labeled by UL or ITS (Warnock Hersey) as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
6. Stainless Steel Finish: No. 4 brushed finish.
7. Hardware:
   a. Hardware for Fire Rated Units: As required for listing.
   b. Hinges for Non-Fire-Rated Units: Concealed, constant force closure spring type.
   c. Latch/Lock: Tamperproof tool-operated cam latch.
   d. Gasketing: Extruded neoprene, around the perimeter of the door panel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that rough openings are correctly sized and located.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install frames plumb and level in openings. Secure rigidly in place.

C. Position units to provide convenient access to the concealed work requiring access.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 4113

ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes
   1. Aluminum storefront walls, perimeter trim, stools, accessories, shims and anchors, and perimeter sealing of storefront units.

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Storefront System Performance Requirements:
   1. Wind loads: Provide storefront system; include anchorage, capable of withstanding windload design pressures required by applicable codes.
   2. Air Infiltration: The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 283. Air infiltration rate shall not exceed 0.06 cfm/ft2 at a static air pressure differential of 6.24 psf.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
   1. Test Reports: Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's descriptive literature for each component in all-glass entrance assembly.

C. Shop Drawings: Drawings showing layout, dimensions, identification of components, and interface with adjacent construction.

D. Verification Samples: Two samples, minimum size 2 by 3 inches, representing actual materialand finish of exposed metal.

E. Certificates: Contractor's certification that installer of entrance assemblies meets specified qualifications.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For manufacturer-supplied operating hardware.

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Project Warranty: Refer to "Conditions of the Contract" for project warranty provisions.

B. Manufacturer's Product Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's warranty for storefront system as follows:
   1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from Date of Substantial Completion of the project provided however that the Limited Warranty shall begin in no event later than six monthsfrom date of shipment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:
   1. Installer Qualifications: Installer experienced (as determined by contractor) to perform work of this section who has specialized in the installation of work similar to that requiredfor this project and who is acceptable to product manufacturer.
   2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer capable of providing structural calculations, applicable independent product test reports, installation instructions, a review of the application method, customer approval and periodic field service representation during construction.

B. Pre-Installation Meetings: Conduct pre-installation meeting to verify project requirements, substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions, and manufacturer's warranty requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.

B. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions.Handle storefront material and components to avoid damage. Protect storefront material againstdamage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during and after storefront installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Drawings and specifications are based on manufacturer's literature from Kawneer Company Inc.unless otherwise indicated. Other manufacturers to comply with the minimum levels of material and detailing indicated on the drawings and in the specifications and in conformance with provisions of Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

B. Basis of Design: Kawneer Company, Inc. www.kawneer.com
   1 Acceptable Product: Kawneer Aluminum Storefront Systems.
      a. Kawneer Aluminum Storefront System
      b. Series: Trifab® 451T medium stile, storefront system.
      c. Interior storefront: Flush glazed aluminum frames configured for single glazing.
      d. Exterior storefront: Thermally broken flush glazed aluminum frames configured for double glazing.
      e. Finish: Clear anodized.
      f. Other acceptable manufacturers:
         (1. YKK AP; ykkap.com
         (2. Tubelite,Inc; www.tubeliteinc.com
         (3. Efco Corporation; www.efcocorp.com

C. Basis of Design is provided to establish a standard of quality and configuration and is not intended to preclude the use of accepted alternates.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Framing and Components:
   1. Material Standard: ASTM B 221; 6063-T6 alloy and temper
   2. Member Wall Thickness: Each framing member shall provide structural strength to meet specified performance requirements.
   3. Tolerances: Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of storefront members are nominal and in compliance with AA Aluminum Standards and Data.

2.3 FINISHES

A. Finish: Class I Dark Bronze Anodized Finish, not less than 0.7 mils thick.

2.4 HARDWARE

A. Door Hardware: As specified in Section 08 7100.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners: Where exposed, shall be Stainless Steel.

B. Gaskets: Glazing gaskets shall be extruded EPDM rubber.

C. Perimeter Anchors: Aluminum. When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and aluminum material to prevent galvanic action.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 8000.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. General:
   1. Fabricate components per manufacturer's installation instructions and with minimum clearances and shim spacing around perimeter of assembly, yet enabling installation and dynamic movement of perimeter seal.
   2. Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints flush, hairline and weatherproof.
   3. Prepare components to receive anchor devices. Fabricate anchors.
   4. Arrange fasteners and attachments to conceal from view.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Source Quality: Provide aluminum storefront specified herein from a single source.
   5. Building Enclosure System: When aluminum storefront is part of a building enclosure system, including entrances, entrance hardware, windows, curtain wall system and related products, provide building enclosure system products from a single source manufacturer.

D. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate aluminum storefront in accordance with framing manufacturer's prescribed tolerances.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions are acceptable for product installationin accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Verify openings are sized to receive storefront system and sill plate is level in accordance with manufacturer's acceptable tolerances.
   1. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements, fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install framing system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and AAMA storefront and entrance guide specifications manual.
   1. Dissimilar Materials: Provide separation of aluminum materials from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action contact points.
   2. Weathertight Construction: Install sill members and other members in a bed of sealant or with joint filler or gaskets, to provide weathertight construction. Coordinate installation withwall flashings and other components of construction.
   3. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerancesand other irregularities.
   4. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
   5. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp and twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances aligning with adjacent work.

3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Protection: Protect installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction. Protect aluminum storefront system from damage from grinding and polishing compounds, plaster, lime,acid, cement, or other harmful contaminants.

B. Cleaning: Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to owner's acceptance. Remove constructiondebris from project site and legally dispose of debris.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 4413
GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Aluminum-framed curtain wall, with vision glazing and glass infill panels.

B. Firestopping between curtain wall and edge of floor slab.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum From Shop to Site; current edition.

B. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document); current edition.

C. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; current edition.

D. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; current edition.

E. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; current edition.

F. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; current edition.

G. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate [Metric]; current edition.

H. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; current edition.

I. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes [Metric]; current edition.

J. ASTM C661 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Elastomeric-Type Sealants by Means of a Durometer; current edition.

K. ASTM C793 - Standard Test Method for Effects of Laboratory Accelerated Weathering on Elastomeric Joint Sealants; current edition.

L. ASTM C794 - Standard Test Method for Adhesion-In-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants; current edition.

M. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; current edition.

N. ASTM C1087 - Standard Test Method for Determining Compatibility of Liquid-Applied Sealants with Accessories Used in Structural Glazing Systems; current edition.

O. ASTM C1135 - Standard Test Method for Determining Tensile Adhesion Properties of Structural Sealants; current edition.

P. ASTM C1184 - Standard Specification for Structural Silicone Sealants; current edition.

Q. ASTM C1249 - Standard Guide for Secondary Seal for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Structural Sealant Glazing Applications; current edition.

R. ASTM C1401 - Standard Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing; current edition.

S. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen. current edition

T. ASTM E330/E330M - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; current edition.

U. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, "Inorganic," and Type II, "Organic"); current edition.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate with installation of other components that comprise the exterior enclosure.

B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 Sections for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, describe components within assembly, anchorage and fasteners, internal drainage details, glazing and infill.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, and field welding required.

D. Shop Drawings: Provide details of proposed structural sealant glazing (SSG) and weather sealant joints indicating dimensions, materials, bite, thicknesses, profile, and support framing.

E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that the products supplied meet or exceed the specified requirements.

F. Design Data: Provide framing member structural and physical characteristics and engineering calculations, and identify dimensional limitations; include load calculations at points of attachment to building structure.

G. Structural Sealant Glazing (SSG): Submit product data and calculations showing compliance with performance requirements.

H. Test Reports: Submit results of full-size mock-up testing. Reports of tests previously performed on the same design are acceptable.

I. Field Quality Control Submittals: Report of field testing for water leakage.

J. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Designer Qualifications: Design structural support framing components under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed at the State of Texas.

B. Verify that each component is appropriate for use in structural sealant glazing (SSG) application in regards to at least the following properties; size, shape, dimensions, material, self-life, storage conditions, and color.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.

D. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handle products of this section in accordance with AAMA CW-10.

B. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F. Maintain this minimum temperature during and 48 hours after installation.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Refer to applicable Division 1 sections for additional warranty requirements.

B. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.

C. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against failure of glass seal on insulating glass units, including interpane dusting or misting. Include provision for replacement of failed units.

D. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against excessive degradation of exterior finish. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading, chalking, or flaking.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER – GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALL

A. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Kawneer Company Inc: www.kawneer.com

B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers
   1. Kawneer Company Inc; www.kawneer.com
   2. Manko Window Systems Inc; www.mankowindows.com
   3. Old Castle Building Envelope: www.obe.com.
   4. YKK AP America Inc: www.ykkap.com.

C. Substitutions: Refer to applicable Division 1 sections.

2.02 CURTAIN WALL

A. Aluminum-Framed Curtain Wall: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members with infill, and related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
   1. Finish: Class I natural anodized.
      a. Factory finish surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.
      b. Coat concealed metal surfaces that will be in contact with cementitious materials or dissimilar metals with bituminous paint.
   2. Provide flush joints and corners, weathersealed, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
   3. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
   4. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.

B. Structural Performance Requirements: Design and size components to withstand the following load requirements without damage or permanent set.
   1. Design Wind Loads: Comply with all applicable codes.
      a. Measure performance by testing in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M, using test loads equal to 1.5 times the design wind loads and 10 second duration of maximum pressure.
   2. Movement: Accommodate the following movement without damage to components or deterioration of seals:
      a. Expansion and contraction caused by 180 degrees F surface temperature.
      b. Expansion and contraction caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12 hour period.
      c. Movement of curtain wall relative to perimeter framing.
      d. Deflection of structural support framing, under permanent and dynamic loads.

C. Water Penetration Resistance: No uncontrolled water on indoor face when tested as follows:
   1. Test Pressure Differential: 10 psf.

D. Air Leakage: Maximum of 0.06 cu ft/min sq ft of wall area, when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at 6.27 psf pressure differential across assembly.

2.03 COMPONENTS

A. Aluminum Framing Members: Tubular aluminum sections, thermally broken with interior section insulated from exterior, drainage holes and internal weep drainage system.
   1. Structurally Reinforced Members: Extruded aluminum with internal reinforcement of structural steel member.

B. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 8000.

2.04 MATERIALS

A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).

B. Sheet Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).

C. Structural Steel Sections: ASTM A36/A36M; galvanized in accordance with requirements of ASTM A123/A123M.

D. Exposed Flashings: Aluminum sheet, 20 gage, 0.032 inch minimum thickness; finish to match framing members.

E. Concealed Flashings: Sheet aluminum, 26 gage, 0.017 inch minimum thickness.

F. Firestopping: As specified in Section 07 84 00.

G. Structural Sealant Glazing (SSG) Adhesive: Neutral curing, silicone sealant formulated for SSG applications in compliance with ASTM C1184 and structural glazing industry guidelines, ASTM C1401.
   1. SSG adhesive in compliance with ASTM C920; Type S - Single-component, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT, G, and A.
   2. Ultimate Tensile Strength: Minimum of 50 psi as determined by test method ASTM C1135 under the following conditions.
      a. Exposure to air temperatures of 190 degrees F and minus 20 degrees F.
      b. Water immersion for seven (7) days, minimum.
      c. Exposure to weathering for 5,000 hours, minimum.
   3. Sealant Design Tensile Strength: 20 psi, maximum.
   4. Hardness: 20 to 60 with Type A-2 durometer in compliance with test method ASTM C661.
   5. SSG sealant tested for compatibility with glazing accessories in compliance with ASTM C1087, tested for accelerated weathering in compliance with ASTM C793, and in compliance with insulating glass secondary sealant design standards of ASTM C1249.

H. Weatherseal Sealant: Silicone, with adhesion in compliance with ASTM C794; compatible with glazing accessories.

I. Sill Flashing Sealant: Elastomeric, silicone or polyurethane, and compatible with flashing material.

J. Glazing Gaskets: Type to suit application to achieve weather, moisture, and air infiltration requirements.

K. Glazing Accessories: As specified in Section 08 8000.

L. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Steel Surfaces: SSPC-Paint 20, zinc rich.

2.05 FINISHES

A. High Performance Organic Finish: AAMA 2604; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer system.

B. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standard range.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install curtain wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.

C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.

D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.

E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.

F. Install sill flashings. Turn up ends and edges; seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.

G. Install firestopping at each floor slab edge.

H. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.

I. Install louvers and associated flashings.

J. Structural Sealant Glazing (SSG) Adhesive: Install structural sealant glazing adhesive and weatherseal sealant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

K. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

3.02 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 0.5 inches per 100 ft, whichever is less.

B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.

C. Sealant Space Between Curtain Wall Mullions and Adjacent Construction: Maximum of 3/4 inch and minimum of 1/4 inch.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide services of manufacturer's field representative to observe installation and submit report.

B. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for general testing and inspection requirements.

C. Replace curtain wall components that have failed field testing and retest until performance is satisfactory.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.

B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.

C. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean aluminum surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware
2. Electronic access control system components

B. Section excludes:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories
5. Overhead doors

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for alternates affecting this section.
2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
3. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry"
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
5. Division 08 Sections:
   a. "Metal Doors and Frames"
   b. "Flush Wood Doors"
   c. "Stile and Rail Wood Doors"
   d. "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames"
   e. "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
   f. "Stainless Steel Doors and Frames"
   g. "Special Function Doors"
   h. "Entrances"
6. Division 26 "Electrical" sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.
7. Division 28 "Electronic Safety and Security" sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system and fire alarm system.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. UL LLC

1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware

B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute

1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule

2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware

C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association

1. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
2. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
3. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
4. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
5. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute

1. ANSI A117.1 - 2017 Edition - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
2. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
3. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems
4. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors
5. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Standard Steel Doors and Frames
6. T.A.S. - Texas Accessibility Standards

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. General:

1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
   a. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
   b. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
   a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
      1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
      2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
      3) Point-to-point wiring.
      4) Risers.

3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
   a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.

4. Door Hardware Schedule:
    a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.
    b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
    c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
        1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
        2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
        3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
        4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
        5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
        6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
        7) Mounting locations for hardware.
        8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
        9) Degree of door swing and handing.
        10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.

5. Key Schedule:
    a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
    b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
    c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
    d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
    e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
    f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
2. Provide Product Data:
    a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
    b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
    a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
    b. Catalog pages for each product.
    c. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as installed.
    d. Final keying schedule

e. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
f. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.

E. Inspection and Testing:

1. Submit written reports to the Owner and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) of the results of functional testing and inspection for:
   a. Fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
   b. Required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with a minimum of 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project. Supplier to be recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturer of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in the Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff, a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
   a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
   b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
   c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
   d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.

4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

B. Certifications:

1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
   a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by UL LLC, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.

2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
   a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105

b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.

3. Electrified Door Hardware
   a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Accessibility Requirements:
   a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article 087100, 1.02.D3 herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route. This project must comply with all Federal Americans with Disability Act regulations and all Local Accessibility Regulations.

C. Pre-Installation Meetings

1. Keying Conference
   a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
      1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
      2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
      3) Requirements for key control system.
      4) Requirements for access control.
      5) Address for delivery of keys.

2. Pre-installation Conference
   a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
   b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
   c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
   d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
   e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
   f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.

3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:
   a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.

C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.

D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.

F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.06 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.

B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.

1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.
    a. Mechanical Warranty
        1) Locks
            a) Schlage L Series: 10 years
        2) Exit Devices
            a) Von Duprin: 10 years
        3) Closers
            a) LCN 4000 Series: 30 years
        4) Automatic Operators
            a) LCN: 2 years
    b. Electrical Warranty
        1) Locks
            a) Schlage: 3 year
        2) Exit Devices
            a) Von Duprin: 3 year
        3) Closers
            a) LCN: 2 years

1.08 MAINTENANCE

A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.

B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The Owner requires use of certain products for their unique characteristics and project suitability to ensure continuity of existing and future performance and maintenance standards. After investigating available product offerings, the Awarding Authority has elected to prepare proprietary specifications. These products are specified with the notation: "No Substitute."

1. Where "No Substitute" is noted, submittals and substitution requests for other products will not be considered.

B. Approval of alternate manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category are only to be considered by official substitution request in accordance with section 01 25 00.

C. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.

D. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Fabrication

1. Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. provide screws according to manufacturer’s recognized installation standards for application intended.
2. Finish exposed screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
3. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible for hardware units exposed when door is closed. Coordinate with “Metal Doors and Frames”, “Flush Wood Doors”, “Stile and Rail Wood Doors” to ensure proper reinforcements. Advise the Architect where visible fasteners, such as thru bolts, are required.

B. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.

1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.

C. Cable and Connectors:

1. Where scheduled in the hardware sets, provide each item of electrified hardware and wire harnesses with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.

2. Provide Molex connectors that plug directly into connectors from harnesses, electric locking and power transfer devices.
3. Provide through-door wire harness for each electrified locking device installed in a door and wire harness for each electrified hinge, electrified continuous hinge, electrified pivot, and electric power transfer for connection to power supplies.

2.03 HINGES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
   a. Ives 5BB series

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
   a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
   b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high

4. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
   a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
   b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high

5. 2 inches or thicker doors:
   a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
   b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high

6. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
7. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
8. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
   a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
   b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
   c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
   d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
   e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins

9. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. Zero

B. Requirements:

1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

2.05 ELECTRIC POWER TRANSFER

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
   a. Von Duprin EPT-10

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide power transfer with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
2. Locate electric power transfer per manufacturer's template and UL requirements, unless interference with operation of door or other hardware items.

2.06 FLUSH BOLTS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide automatic, constant latching, and manual flush bolts with forged bronze or stainless-steel face plates, extruded brass levers, and with wrought brass guides and strikes. Provide 12 inch (305 mm) steel or brass rods at doors up to 90 inches (2286 mm) in height. For doors over 90 inches (2286 mm) in height increase top rods by 6 inches (152 mm) for each additional 6 inches (152 mm) of door height. Provide dust-proof strikes at each bottom flush bolt.

2.07 COORDINATORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Where pairs of doors are equipped with automatic flush bolts, an astragal, or other hardware that requires synchronized closing of the doors, provide bar-type coordinating device, surface applied to underside of stop at frame head.
2. Provide filler bar of correct length for unit to span entire width of opening, and appropriate brackets for parallel arm door closers, surface vertical rod exit device strikes, or other stop mounted hardware. Factory-prepared coordinators for vertical rod devices as specified.

2.08 MORTISE LOCKS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
   a. Schlage L9000 series

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide mortise locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Series 1000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors.
2. Indicators: Where specified, provide indicator window measuring a minimum 2-inch x 1/2 inch with 180-degree visibility. Provide messages color-coded with full text and/or symbols, as scheduled, for easy visibility.
3. Provide locks manufactured from heavy gauge steel, containing components of steel with a zinc dichromate plating for corrosion resistance.
4. Provide lock case that is multi-function and field reversible for handing without opening case. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
5. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset with full 3/4 inch (19 mm) throw stainless steel mechanical anti-friction latchbolt. Provide deadbolt with full 1-inch (25 mm) throw, constructed of stainless steel.
6. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Where scheduled, provide switches and sensors integrated into the locks and latches.

7. Provide motor based electrified locksets that comply with the following requirements:
   a. Universal input voltage – single chassis accepts 12 or 24VDC to allow for changes in the field without changing lock chassis.
   b. Fail Safe/Fail Secure – changing mode between electrically locked (fail safe) and electrically unlocked (fail secure) is field selectable without opening the lock case.
   c. Low maximum current draw – maximum 0.4 amps to allow for multiple locks on a single power supply.
   d. Low holding current – maximum 0.01 amps to produce minimal heat, eliminate “hot levers” in electrically locked applications, and to provide reliable operation in wood doors that provide minimal ventilation and air flow.
   e. Connections – provide quick-connect Molex system standard.

8. Lever Trim: Solid brass, bronze, or stainless steel, cast or forged in design specified, with wrought roses and external lever spring cages. Provide thru-bolted levers with 2-piece spindles.
   a. Lever Design: 17N.

2.09 DEADBOLTS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
   a. Schlage B600/B700/B800 Series

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide grade 1 deadbolt series conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide deadbolts with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset. Provide 2-3/8 inches (60 mm) where noted or if door or frame detail requires. Provide deadbolt with full 1-inch (25 mm) throw, constructed of steel alloy.
4. Provide manufacturer's standard strike.

2.10 EXIT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
   a. Von Duprin 99 series

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide grooved touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.

4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide exit devices with weather resistant components that can withstand harsh conditions of various climates and corrosive cleaners used in outdoor pool environments.
7. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
8. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
9. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
10. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
11. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
12. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
13. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
14. Provide electrified options as scheduled.
15. Top latch mounting: double- or single-tab mount for steel doors, face mount for aluminum doors eliminating requirement of tabs, and double tab mount for wood doors.
16. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.
17. Special Options:
    a. SI
        1) Provide dogging indicators for visible indication of dogging status.
    b. XP
        1) Rim Exit Devices: where specified provide devices with non-tapered smart latchbolt with 90° latchbolt to strike engagement under stress and Static Load Resistance of 2000 pounds.

2.11 POWER SUPPLIES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    a. Schlage/Von Duprin PS900 Series

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide power supplies approved by manufacturer of supplied electrified hardware.
2. Provide appropriate quantity of power supplies necessary for proper operation of electrified locking components as recommended by manufacturer of electrified locking components with consideration for each electrified component using power supply, location of power supply, and approved wiring diagrams. Locate power supplies as directed by Architect.
3. Provide regulated and filtered 24 VDC power supply, and UL class 2 listed.
4. Provide power supplies with the following features:
    a. 12/24 VDC Output, field selectable.
    b. Class 2 Rated power limited output.
    c. Universal 120-240 VAC input.

d. Low voltage DC, regulated and filtered.
e. Polarized connector for distribution boards.
f. Fused primary input.
g. AC input and DC output monitoring circuit w/LED indicators.
h. Cover mounted AC Input indication.
i. Tested and certified to meet UL294.
j. NEMA 1 enclosure.
k. Hinged cover w/lock down screws.
l. High voltage protective cover.

2.12 CYLINDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Best

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Cams and tailpieces must be coordinated with locking mechanism.
2. Provide blocking rings as required to adapt cylinder housing to the locking mechanism.
3. Provide cylinders/cores compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset; manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
4. Provide cylinders in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
   a. Patented Restricted Small Format: cylinder with small format interchangeable cores (SFIC) with restricted, patented keyway.

2.13 KEYING

A. Scheduled System:

1. Existing factory registered system:
   a. Provide cylinders/cores keyed into Owner's existing factory registered keying system. Comply with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.

B. Requirements:

1. Construction Keying:
   a. Replaceable Construction Cores.
      1) Furnish keyed brass construction cores installed in every cylinder and cylinder housing included in the project.
      2) All temporary construction cores shall have a minimum of two levels such that a pass key can be issued to individual users limiting access to a single space with a second level "master" of all construction cores that can be issued to school principal and DISD Lock Department.
      3) Provide temporary construction cores replaceable by permanent cores, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
         a) 1 construction keys for each core.

b. Manufacturers and Products:
   1) Scheduled Manufacturer:
      a) Falcon
   2) Acceptable Manufacturers:
      a) No Substitute

2. Permanent Keying:
   a. Furnish combinated cores so as not to breach security of existing system.
   b. CORMAX keying system must be guaranteed of no duplication of existing change keys, master keys or grandmaster keys located in this project.
   c. Provide new permanent cores for all new cylinder housings and locks as well as any existing locks that have been modified.
   d. Manufacturers:
      1) Scheduled Manufacturer:
         a) Best
      2) Acceptable Manufacturers:
         a) No Substitute

   e. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
      1) Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
   f. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
   g. Identification:
      1) Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable key set symbols for identification. Do not provide key set symbols marks with bitting codes.
      2) Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
      3) Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; Stamp permanent keys "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection. Do not include bitting within visual key control marks or codes.
      4) Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
      5) Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
      6) Provide key collection envelopes, receipt cards, and index cards in quantity suitable to manage number of keys.
      7) Deliver keys with identifying tags to Owner by security shipment direct from manufacturer.
         a) Contact Lock Supervisor, David Davis.
         b) Phone: 214-762-3579
         c) Address: 3701 South Lamar Street, Dallas, TX 75215
   h. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
      1) Permanent Control Keys: 2.
      2) Master Keys to include all levels: 4 each.
      3) Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core that is keyed differently
      4) Key Blanks: Quantity as determined in the keying meeting.

2.14 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. Key Control

b. Lund
c. Telkee

B. Requirements:

1. Provide key control system, including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet, all as recommended by system manufacturer, with capacity for 150% of number of locks required for Project.
   a. Provide complete cross index system set up by hardware supplier, and place keys on markers and hooks in cabinet as determined by final key schedule.
   b. Provide hinged-panel type cabinet for wall mounting.

2.15 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
   a. LCN 4040XP series

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2-inch (38 mm) diameter piston with 5/8-inch (16 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal. QR code with a direct link to maintenance instructions.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards. Provide snap-on cover clip, with plastic covers, that secures cover to spring tube.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck. Provide graphically labelled instructions on the closer body adjacent to each adjustment valve. Provide positive stop on reg valve that prevents reg screw from being backed out.
7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).
10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

2.16 DOOR TRIM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, pulls, and hands-free reversible door pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

2.17 PROTECTION PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
2. Sizes plates 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
3. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches high with UL label.

2.18 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
   a. Glynn-Johnson 900/100 Series

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.

2.19 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:

a. No Substitute

B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button of thumbturn.
2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops.
3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

2.20 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Zero International

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

2.21 SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames.
2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
3. Omit where gasketing is specified.

2.22 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Schlage

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Requirements:

1. Provide recessed or surface mounted type door position switches as specified.
2. Coordinate door and frame preparations with door and frame suppliers. If switches are being used with magnetic locking device, provide minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) between switch and magnetic locking device.

2.23 COAT HOOKS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
   a. Ives

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. No Substitute

B. Provide coat hooks as specified.

2.24 FINISHES

A. FINISH: BHMA 626/652 (US26D); EXCEPT:

1. Hinges at Exterior Doors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
2. Aluminum Geared Continuous Hinges: BHMA 628 (US28)
3. Push Plates, Pulls, and Push Bars: BHMA 630 (US32D)
4. Protection Plates: BHMA 630 (US32D)
5. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630 (US32D)
6. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
7. Wall Stops: BHMA 630 (US32D)
8. Latch Protectors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
9. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum
10. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.

C. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
3. Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A
4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware: DHI TDH-007-20

B. Install door hardware in accordance with NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and provide post-install inspection, testing as specified in section 1.03.E unless otherwise required to comply with governing regulations.

C. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.

D. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.

E. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.

F. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.

G. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.

H. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

I. Exit Devices: Install exit devices with sex, nuts and bolts through all doors.

J. Lock Cylinders:

1. Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
2. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying section.
3. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.

K. Wiring: Coordinate with Division 26, ELECTRICAL and Division 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections for:

1. Conduit, junction boxes and wire pulls.
2. Connections to and from power supplies to electrified hardware.
3. Connections to fire/smoke alarm system and smoke evacuation system.
4. Connection of wire to door position switches and wire runs to central room or area, as directed by Architect.

5. Connections to panel interface modules, controllers, and gateways.
6. Testing and labeling wires with Architect's opening number.

L. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.

M. Door Closers & Auto Operators: Mount closers/operators on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers/operators so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.

N. Overhead Stops/Holders: Mount overhead stops/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.

O. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.

P. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of exterior grade caulk complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

Q. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.

R. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.

S. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.

T. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

1. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door can close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.
2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
3. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Install all door closers with thru-bolts and adjust after HVAC is in operation.

B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.05 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.

B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.

C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.

D. Hardware Sets:

106122 OPT0360734 Version 8

Hw Set# 103

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	OFFICE/ENTRY LOCK	L9050L 17N L583-363		626	SCH
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
1	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER

Hw Set# 103S

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	OFFICE/ENTRY LOCK	L9050L 17N L583-363		626	SCH
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
1	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
1	EA	OH STOP	100S SERIES X SIZE & MOUNTING AS REQ		630	GLY
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER

Hw Set# 201C

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080L 17N		626	SCH
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
1	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ		689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER

Hw Set# 347

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK W/ OUTSIDE INDICATOR	L9040 17N L583-363 OS-OCC (INDICATOR)		626	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	100S SERIES X SIZE & MOUNTING AS REQ		630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ (EDA @ 180 DEGREE SWING)		689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER

-OCCUPIED/VACANT INDICATOR ON OUTSIDE OF DOOR.

Hw Set# 541

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM SECURITY W/ INSIDE INDICATOR	L9071L 17N IS-LOC		626	SCH
2	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
2	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ (EDA @ 180 DEGREE SWING)		689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS		630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER

-LOCKED/UNLOCKED INDICATOR ON INSIDE TRIM.

Hw Set# 547

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM SECURITY W/ INSIDE INDICATOR	L9071L 17N IS-LOC		626	SCH
2	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
2	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
1	EA	OH STOP	100S SERIES X SIZE & MOUNTING AS REQ		630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ (EDA @ 180 DEGREE SWING)		689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER

Hw Set# C201

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON		689	VON
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092LEU 17N CON (FAIL SECURE)		626	SCH
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
1	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ (EDA @ 180 DEGREE SWING)		689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS		630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ			SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY) BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR			SCH
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT SERIES READER BY DIV 28 (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)		BLK	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	DOOR CONTACT(S) BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		WHT	SCE
1	EA	MOTION SENSOR	MOTION SENSOR/RX BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY BY SECURITY CONTACTOR		LGR	SCE

-INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.

Hw Set# C207

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 (PROVIDE NRP @ OUTSWING, LOCKABLE DOORS)		652	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON		689	VON
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092LEU 17N CON (FAIL SECURE)		626	SCH
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
1	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
1	EA	OH STOP	100S SERIES X SIZE & MOUNTING AS REQ		630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ (EDA @ 180 DEGREE SWING)		689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS) (PERIMETER SEAL BY ALF MFR @ ALF)		BK	ZER
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ			SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY) BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR			SCH
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT SERIES READER BY DIV 28 (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)		BLK	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	DOOR CONTACT(S) BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		WHT	SCE
1	EA	MOTION SENSOR	MOTION SENSOR/RX BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY BY SECURITY CONTACTOR		LGR	SCE

-INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.

Hw Set# C714AM

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT HEIGHT AS REQ			628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON			689	VON
1	EA	KEYED REMOVABLE MULLION	KR4954 STAB HEIGHT AS REQ			689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-XP99-EO-CON-SNB LENGTH AS REQ			626	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-XP99-NL-OP-CON-SNB LENGTH AS REQ			626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	1E72			626	BES
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	1E74 X CAM AS REQ			626	BES
2	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA			622	FAL
2	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)			626	BES
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 DT			630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 NL			630	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ			689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER				
1	SET	ASTRAGAL	MEETING STILE SEAL BY DOOR MANUFACTURER				
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA LENGTH AS REQ			AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A LENGTH AS REQ			A	ZER
2	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ				SCH
2	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W				SCH
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT SERIES READER BY DIV 28 (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)			BLK	SCE
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ (COORDINATE FINAL LOCATIONS WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)			WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CARD READER BY ANOTHER SECTION				
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.)				VON

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PADS.

Hw Set# CR201AC

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT			628	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON			689	VON
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092LEU 17N RX CON (FAIL SECURE)			626	SCH
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	1E74 X CAM AS REQ			626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)			626	BES
1	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA			622	FAL
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ			689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER				
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ				SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W				SCH
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT SERIES READER BY DIV 28 (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)			BLK	SCE
1	EA	DESK MOUNT BUTTON	660-PB			628	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)			WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY BY SECURITY CONTACTOR			LGR	SCE

-INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER, REMOTE RELEASE, OR KEY OVERRIDE.
-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.
-VERIFY ALUMINUM DOOR IS WIDE STILE.
-5" STILE IS REQUIRED FOR THE SPECIFIED HARDWARE, COORDINATE WITH DOOR MFR./SUPPLIER.

Hw Set# CR207AC

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT			628	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON			689	VON
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092LEU 17N RX CON (FAIL SECURE)			626	SCH
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	1E74 X CAM AS REQ			626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)			626	BES
1	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA			622	FAL
1	EA	OH STOP	100S SERIES X SIZE & MTG AS REQ			630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ (EDA @ 180 DEGREE SWING)			689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER				
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ				SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W				SCH
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT SERIES READER BY DIV 28 (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)			BLK	SCE
1	EA	DESK MOUNT BUTTON	660-PB			628	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)			WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY BY SECURITY CONTACTOR			LGR	SCE

-INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER, REMOTE RELEASE, OR KEY OVERRIDE.
-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.
-VERIFY ALUMINUM DOOR IS WIDE STILE.
-5" STILE IS REQUIRED FOR THE SPECIFIED HARDWARE, COORDINATE WITH DOOR MFR./SUPPLIER.

Hw Set# CR710AMV

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT HEIGHT AS REQ		628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON		689	VON
1	EA	KEYED REMOVABLE MULLION	KR4954 STAB HEIGHT AS REQ		689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-XP99-EO-CON-SNB LENGTH AS REQ		626	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-XP99-NL-OP-CON-SNB LENGTH AS REQ		626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	1E72		626	BES
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	1E74 X CAM AS REQ		626	BES
2	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
2	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 DT		630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 NL		630	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ		689	LCN
1	EA	MULLION SEAL	8780N PSA HEIGHT AS REQ		BK	ZER
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER			
1	SET	ASTRAGAL	MEETING STILE SEAL BY DOOR MANUFACTURER			
2	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ			SCH
2	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W			SCH
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT SERIES READER BY DIV 28 (COORDINATE WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS)		BLK	SCE
1	EA	DESK MOUNT BUTTON	660-PB		628	SCE
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ (COORDINATE FINAL LOCATIONS WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)		WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CARD READER BY ANOTHER SECTION			
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.)			VON

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER, REMOTE RELEASE, OR KEY OVERRIDE.
-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PADS.

Hw Set# D710AMV

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT HEIGHT AS REQ			628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON			689	VON
1	EA	KEYED REMOVABLE MULLION	KR4954 STAB HEIGHT AS REQ			689	VON
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	XP99-EO-SNB LENGTH AS REQ			626	VON
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	XP99-NL-OP-SNB LENGTH AS REQ			626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	1E72			626	BES
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	1E74 X CAM AS REQ			626	BES
2	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA			622	FAL
2	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)			626	BES
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 DT			630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 NL			630	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ			689	LCN
1	EA	MULLION SEAL	8780N PSA HEIGHT AS REQ			BK	ZER
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER				
1	SET	ASTRAGAL	MEETING STILE SEAL BY DOOR MANUFACTURER				
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ (COORDINATE FINAL LOCATIONS WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)			WHT	SCE

Hw Set# DR714AM

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT HEIGHT AS REQ		628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON		689	VON
1	EA	KEYED REMOVABLE MULLION	KR4954 STAB HEIGHT AS REQ		689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-XP99-EO-CON-SNB LENGTH AS REQ		626	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-XP99-NL-OP-CON-SNB LENGTH AS REQ		626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	1E72		626	BES
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	1E74 X CAM AS REQ		626	BES
2	EA	SFIC CONST. CORE	C607CCA		622	FAL
2	EA	PERMANENT CORE	1C7 (VERIFY WITH OWNER)		626	BES
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 DT		630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR PULL	VR910 NL		630	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ		689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER			
1	SET	ASTRAGAL	MEETING STILE SEAL BY DOOR MANUFACTURER			
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA LENGTH AS REQ		AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A LENGTH AS REQ		A	ZER
2	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ			SCH
2	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W			SCH
1	EA	DESK MOUNT BUTTON	660-PB		628	SCE
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ (COORDINATE FINAL LOCATIONS WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)		WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CARD READER BY ANOTHER SECTION			
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.)			VON

-INGRESS BY REMOTE RELEASE OR KEY OVERRIDE.
-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PADS.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 8000

GLAZING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Glass and glazing materials for windows, doors, storefront and curtainwalls.

B. Spandrel glazing.

C. Glazing compounds and accessories.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 07 9000 - Joint Sealers: Sealant and back-up material.

B. Section 08 1213 – Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Glazing for doors.

C. Section 08 1416 – Flush Wood Doors: Glazing for doors.

C. Section 08 4113 – Aluminum-Framed Storefront: Glazing for storefronts.

D. Section 08 4413 – Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls: Glazing for curtainwalls.

E. Section 08 5113 – Aluminum Windows: Glazing for aluminum windows.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass; current edition.

B. ASTM C 1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Flat Glass--Kind HS, Kind FT Coated and Uncoated Glass; current edition.

C. ASTM C 1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; current edition.

D. ASTM E 1300 - Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings; current edition.

E. GANA (GM) - GANA Glazing Manual; Glass Association of North America; current edition.

F. GANA (SM) - FGMA Sealant Manual; Glass Association of North America; current edition.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide glass and glazing materials for continuity of building enclosure vapor retarder and airbarrier:
   1. In conjunction with materials described in Section 07 9200 and 08 4113.
   2. To utilize the inner pane of multiple pane sealed units for the continuity of the air barrierand vapor retarder seal.
   3. To maintain a continuous air barrier and vapor retarder throughout the glazed assemblyfrom glass pane to heel bead of glazing sealant.

B. Select type and thickness of exterior glass to withstand dead loads and wind loads acting normal to plane of glass at design pressures calculated in accordance with applicable code.
   1. Use the procedure specified in ASTM E 1300 to determine glass type and thickness.
   2. Limit glass deflection to 1/200 or flexure limit of glass, whichever is less, with full recoveryof glazing materials.
   3. Thicknesses listed are minimum.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data on Glass Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, and special handling or installation requirements.

B. Product Data on Glazing Compounds: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements. Identify available colors.

C. Samples of each glass type indicating color and tint properties.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that glass meets or exceeds specified requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with GANA Glazing Manual and FGMA Sealant Manual for glazing installation methods.

B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum five years documented experience.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 50 degrees F.

B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Provide a five (5) year warranty to include coverage for sealed glass units from seal failure, interpane dusting or misting, and replacement of same.

B. Provide a five (5) year warranty to include coverage for de-lamination of laminated glass and replacement of same.

C. The Warranties submitted under this Section shall not deprive the Owner of other rights or remedies that the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and the laws of governing jurisdictions and is in addition to and runs concurrently with other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Manufacturers:
1. Basis of Design: Guardian Glass; www.guardianglass.com
2. AFG Industries, Inc: www.afgglass.com.
3. Pilkington Building Products North America: http://buildingproducts.us.pilkington.com.
4. PPG Industries, Inc: www.ppg.com.
5. Viracon: www.viracon.com.
6. Basis of Design is provided to establish a standard of quality and configuration and is notintended to prevent the use of approved alternates.

75. Substitutions: Permitted under provisions of Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

B. Acid Etched Glass: #25 Guardian SatinDeco Acid-etched Glass, ¼-inch thick.

C. Spandrel Glass: #31 Guardian Sunguard Spandrel HT – White.

D. Monolithic Clear Float Glass: Clear, annealed.
1. Comply with ASTM C 1036, Type I, transparent flat, Class 1 clear, Quality q3 glazingselect, ¼-inch thick, minimum.

E. Safety Glass: Clear; tempered with horizontal tempering.
2. Comply with ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (Fully Tempered), Type II, transparent flat, Class 1,Quality Q-6, Form 3, ¼"-inch-thick minimum.

F. Insulating Glass Units: Nominal 1-inch-thick units (0.25"+0.5" air space +0.25") double laminated insulating VE19-2M (STC 42).
3. Comply with ASTM E2160 Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performanceand Evaluation.
4. The unit overall thickness tolerance shall be -1/16"/ +1/32".
5. Sealed insulating glass units to be double sealed with a primary seal of polyisobutyleneand a secondary seal of silicone.
6. Summer U Value – 0.29.5. SHGC – 0.25.
6: Guardian Gray Float, #10 Superneutral 68 on Gray, coated #2 surface.

G. Glazing Tape: Closed cell polyvinyl chloride (PVC) foam, coiled on release paper over adhesive on two sides.

H. Silicone Sealant: One-part neutral curing silicone, medium modulus sealant, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25 with additional movement capable of 50 percent in both extension and compression. Dow Corning 795.
   7. Dow Corning 795.
   8. General Electric Silglaze-II 2800.
   9. Tremco Sprectrem 2.

I. Setting Blocks: Neoprene, EPDM or silicone tested for compatibility with glazing compound.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerance.

B. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that mayimpede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and ready to receive glazing.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean contact surfaces with solvent and wipe dry.

B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.

C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant.

D. Install sealants in accordance with ASTM C 1193 and FGMA Sealant Manual.

E. Install sealant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install glass in accordance with recommendations and procedures in GANA Glazing Manual and FGMA Sealant Manual.

B. Install glass in accordance with storefront frame manufacturer recommendations and instructions.

C. Install glass with lines or waves horizontal.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Remove glazing materials from finish surfaces.

B. Remove labels after Work is complete.

C. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces.

3.5 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste; do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 2116

GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Metal stud wall framing.

B. Metal channel ceiling and suspended grid framing.

C. Gypsum wallboard.

D. Joint treatment and accessories.

E. Textured finish system.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. AISI SG-971 - Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members; currentedition.

B. ASTM A 653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-IronAlloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; current edition.

C. ASTM C 36 - Standard Specification for Gypsum Wallboard; current edition.

D. ASTM C 475 - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing GypsumBoard; current edition.

E. ASTM C 514 - Standard Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board; currentedition.

F. ASTM C 645 - Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members; current edition.

G. ASTM C 754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to ReceiveScrew-Attached Gypsum Panel Products; current edition.

H. ASTM C 840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; currentedition.

I. ASTM C 954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum PanelProducts or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. to 0.112 in. in Thickness; currentedition.

J. ASTM C 1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs;current edition.

K. ASTM C 1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and GypsumVeneer Base; current edition.

L. ASTM C 1396 - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board; current edition.

M. GA-600 - Fire Resistance Design Manual; Gypsum Association; current edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings:
   1. Show locations, fabrication, and installation of control and expansion joints, in accordancewith Gypsum Association Standards unless otherwise approved by Architect in writing. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other unitsof Work. Indicate special details associated with acoustic seals.

B. Product Data: Provide data on metal framing, gypsum board, accessories, and joint finishingsystem.

C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on partition head to structure connectors, showingcompliance with requirements.

D. Submit keyed plan showing all control joints per 3.04 this specification section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor is responsible for design, engineering and construction of the gypsum board assemblies, including framing. Contractor may increase framing gage, reduce stud spacing orflange width as required to carry loads and span dimensions. Depth of stud web may not be changed without Architect’s approval.

B. Perform in accordance with ASTM C 840. Comply with requirements of GA-600 for fire-ratedassemblies.

C. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing gypsum board application andfinishing, with minimum five years of documented experience.

D. Gypsum that becomes wet from spills, weather or mechanical failure shall be replaced byContractor at no cost to Owner.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code for fire rated assemblies.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL FRAMING MATERIALS

A. Metal Framing Manufacturers:
   1. Clark Steel Framing Systems: www.clarksteel.com.
   2. Dale/Incor: www.daleincor.com.
   3. Dietrich Metal Framing, Inc: www.dietrichmetalframing.com.
   4. Marino-Ware: www.marinoware.com.

B. Metal Framing Connectors and Accessories:
   1. Same manufacturer as framing.

C. Non-Loadbearing Framing System Components: ASTM C 645; galvanized sheet steel, of sizeand properties necessary to comply with ASTM C 754 for the spacing indicated, with maximumdeflection of wall framing of L/240 at 5 psf. Where brittle finishes such as tile, stone or plaster are applied to framing, limit deflection of wall framing to L/360 at 5 psf.
   1. Studs: C shaped with knurled faces.
   2. Runners: U shaped, sized to match studs.
   3. Curved partition components: Top tracks and runners to be factory rolled to required radius. In lieu of factory rolling provide pre-engineered tracks and runners by Flex-AbilityConcepts, or approved substitute. www.flexc.com
   4. Ceiling Channels: C shaped.
   5. Furring: Hat-shaped sections, minimum depth of 7/8 inch.

D. Grid Suspension System for Interior Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct hung system composed ofmain beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
   1. Acceptable Product: USG Interiors, Inc.: Drywall Suspension System.
   2. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements for substitution procedures.

E. Ceiling Hangers: Type and size as specified in ASTM C 754 for spacing required.

F. Partition Head to Structure Connections: Partition Head To Structure Connections: Provide track fastened to structure with legs of minimum 3 inch length to accommodate for minimum 1inch deflection for friction fit of studs cut short.

G. Between stud wall blocking: Type and size appropriate to stud spacing.

2.2 WALL BOARD MATERIALS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. G-P Gypsum Corporation: www.gp.com.
   2. National Gypsum Company: www.nationalgypsum.com.
   3. USG Corporation: www.usg.com.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 Product Requirements for substitution procedures.

B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 36 and ASTM C 1396. Sizes to minimize joints in place; endssquare cut.
   1. Type X: Fire resistant, UL or WH rated.
      a. Application: Schoolwide, unless noted otherwise.
      b. Thickness: As indicated on drawings.
      c. Edges: Tapered.

C. Cementitious Backer Board: ANSI A118.9; High density, cementitious, glass fiber reinforced,1/2-inch-thick; 2-inch-wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Finishing Accessories: ASTM C 1047, galvanized steel or rolled zinc, unless otherwiseindicated.
   1. Types: As detailed or required for finished appearance.
   2. Special Shapes: In addition to conventional cornerbead and control joints, provide U-beadat exposed panel edges.

B. Joint Materials: ASTM C 475 and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for projectconditions.
   1. Tape: 2-inch-wide, creased paper tape for joints and corners.
   2. Ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound.

C. Textured Finish Materials: Latex-based compound; plain.

D. Screws: ASTM C 1002; self-piercing tapping type.

E. Screws: ASTM C 954; steel drill screws for application of gypsum board to loadbearing steelstuds.

F. Anchorage to Substrate: Tie wire, nails, screws, and other metal supports, of type and size tosuit application; to rigidly secure materials in place.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.

3.2 FRAMING INSTALLATION

A. Metal Framing: Comply with ASTM C 754 and manufacturer's instructions.

B. Suspended Ceilings: Space framing and furring members as indicated.
   1. Level ceiling system to a tolerance of 1/1200.
   2. Laterally brace entire suspension system.

C. Studs: Space studs as scheduled.
   1. Extend partition framing to structure where indicated. Extend to minimum 4 inches abovelay-in ceiling plane where not scheduled to extend to deck.
   2. Partitions Terminating at Structure: Attach top runner to structure, maintain clearance between top of studs and structure, and connect studs to track using specified mechanical devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; verify free movement of top of studconnections; do not leave studs unattached to track.

D. Openings: Reinforce openings as required for weight of doors or operable panels, using notless than full height double studs at jambs.

E. Standard Wall Furring: Install at concrete and masonry walls scheduled to receive gypsum board, not more than 4 inches from floor and ceiling lines and abutting walls. Secure in placeon alternate channel flanges at maximum 16 inches on center.
   1. Orientation: Horizontal.
   2. Spacing: As indicated.

F. Furring for Fire Ratings: Install as required for fire resistance ratings indicated and to GA-600requirements.

G. Blocking: Install blocking for support of plumbing fixtures, toilet partitions, toilet accessories,and hardware.

3.3 WALL BOARD INSTALLATION

A. Comply with ASTM C 840 and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints,especially in highly visible locations.

B. Single-Layer Non-Rated: Install gypsum board in most economical direction, with ends andedges occurring over firm bearing.

C. Install cementitious backerboard in all wet locations.

D. Moisture Protection: Treat cut edges and holes in exterior gypsum soffit board with sealant.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

A. Control Joint Schedule: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and asindicated.
   1. Not more than 30 feet apart on walls and ceilings over 50 feet long. At open spaces such as atriums and long hallways, space control joints equally. Obtain approval for control joints not specifically shown on plans from Architect and Owner prior to commencement ofWork.
   2. Install at both jambs of all single leaf doors and at both jambs of pairs of doors.
   3. Install at intersection of all gypsum wall and gypsum ceiling planes. Joint at ceiling planesmay be backer rod and sealant as contractor option.
   4. Install at all column fur outs and intersecting wall planes.
   5. Architect reserves the right to additional control joints to maintain aesthetic appearance ofwork.
   6. Install at doors and intersection of gypsum ceiling and wall planes to be covered bywoodwork, crown molding or paneling.

B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.

C. Edge Trim: Install at locations where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials and as indicated.

3.5 JOINT TREATMENT

A. Paper Faced Gypsum Board: Use paper joint tape, bedded with ready-mixed vinyl-based jointcompound and finished with ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound.

B. Finish all gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C 840 Level 4.

C. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready toreceive finishes.
   1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch.
   2. Taping, filling, and sanding is not required at surfaces behind adhesive applied ceramic tileand fixed cabinetry.

3.6 TEXTURE FINISH

A. Required texture: Light-sand.

B. Apply finish texture coating by means required to match Architects approved sample.

3.7 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feetin any direction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 3000

TILING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Tile for floor applications.

B. Tile for wall applications.

C. Cementitious backer board as tile substrate.

D. Transition strips.

E. Ceramic trim.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' data sheets on tile, mortar, grout, and accessories. Include instructions for using grouts and adhesives.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, control and expansion joints, and thresholds.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing tile installation, with minimum of 5 years of documented experience.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not install adhesives in an unventilated environment.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TILE

A. Tile materials are as designated on the Finish schedule on the Drawings.

2.2 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

B. Ceramic Trim: Matching bullnose, double bullnose, cove base, and cove ceramic shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.
   1. Applications: Use in the following locations:
      a. Open Edges: Bullnose.
      b. Inside Corners: Jointed.
      c. Floor to Wall Joints: Cove base.
   2. Manufacturer: Same as for tile.

C. Thresholds: Schluter – SCHIENE Same Height Transitions.

2.3 ADHESIVE MATERIALS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Bonsal American, Inc; StayFlex 590: www.prospec.com
   2. Bostik Inc: www.bostik-us.com.
   3. Mapei Corporation: www.mapei.com.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

B. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1, thinset bond type; use Type I in areas subject to prolonged moisture exposure.

2.4 GROUT MATERIALS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Bonsal American, Inc: www.prospec.com
   2. Bostik Inc: www.bostik-us.com.
   3. Custom Building Products: www.custombuildingproducts.com.

B. Standard Grout: Any type specified in ANSI A118.6 or A118.7.
   4. Colors: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

2.5 MORTAR BED MATERIALS

A. Pre-packaged mix of Portland cement, sand, latex additive, and water.
   1. Products:
      a. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE 3701 Fortified Mortar Bed:www.laticrete.com/#sle.
      b. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Underlay C: www.merkrete.com/sle.
      c. Proflex Products, Inc; MSI - Mud Set Installation: www.proflex.us.
      d. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

2.6 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Concrete Floor Slab Crack Isolation Membrane: Material complying with ANSI A118.12; not intended as waterproofing.
   1. Type: Fluid-applied.
   2. Thickness: 20 mils, maximum.
   3. Crack Resistance: No failure at 1/16 inch gap, minimum.
   4. Products:
      a. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE Blue 92 Anti-Fracture Membrane:www.laticrete.com/#sle.
      b. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Fracture Guard: www.merkrete.com/sle.
      c. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

B. Cementitious Backer Board: ANSI A118.9; High density, cementitious, glass fiber reinforced, 1/2 inch thick; 2 inch wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.

C. Cleavage Membrane Under Thick Mortar Bed:

D. Material: 4 mil thick polyethylene film.

E. Waterproofing Membrane at Floors: Specifically designed for bonding to cementitious substrate under thick mortar bed or thin-set tile; complying with ANSI A118.10.
   5. Fluid or Trowel Applied Type:
      a. Material: Synthetic rubber.
      b. Thickness: 25 mils, minimum, dry film thickness.
      c. Products:
         1) Custom Building Products; RedGard Crack Prevention and WaterproofingMembrane: www.custombuildingproducts.com.
         2) LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE HYDRO BAN:www.laticrete.com/#sle.
         3) Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Hydro Guard 2000:www.merkrete.com/sle.
         4) Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive tile.

B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.

C. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of setting materials to sub-floor surfaces.

D. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tile manufacturer and setting materials manufacturer.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect surrounding work from damage.

B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.

C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.

D. Install cementitious backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions. Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of dry-set mortar to a feather edge.

E. Install tile backer board in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using galvanized roofing nails or corrosion-resistant bugle head drywall screws. Bed fiberglass self-adhesive tape at all joints and corners with material used to set tiles.

F. Prepare substrate surfaces for adhesive installation in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

A. Install tile, thresholds, and stair treads and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1 through A108.13, manufacturer's instructions, and TCA Handbook recommendations.

B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.

C. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor joints.

D. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make joints watertight, without voids, cracks, excess mortar, or excess grout.

E. Form internal angles square and external angles bullnosed.

F. Install thresholds where indicated.

G. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.

H. Keep expansion joints free of adhesive or grout. Apply sealant to joints.

I. Allow tile to set for a minimum of 48 hours prior to grouting.

J. Grout tile joints. Use standard grout unless otherwise indicated.

K. Apply sealant to junction of tile and dissimilar materials and junction of dissimilar planes.

3.4 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - MORTAR BED METHODS (QUARRY TILE)

A. Over exterior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F101, bonded, with standard grout.

B. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F111, with cleavage membrane, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Where waterproofing membrane is indicated, with standard grout or no mention of grouttype, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F121.
   2. Where epoxy or furan grout is indicated, but not epoxy or furan bond coat, install inaccordance with TCNA (HB) Method F114, with cleavage membrane.

C. Cleavage Membrane: Lap edges and ends.

D. Waterproofing Membrane: Install as recommended by manufacturer and as specified in the section in which the product is specified.

E. Mortar Bed Thickness: 5/8 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - THIN-SET METHODS

A. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method F113, dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Use uncoupling membrane under all tile unless other underlayment is indicated.

3.6 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE

A. Over cementitious backer units on studs, install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method W244, using membrane at toilet rooms.

B. Over gypsum wallboard on wood or metal studs install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method W243, thin-set with dry-set or latex-portland cement bond coat, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Over interior concrete and masonry install in accordance with TCA Handbook Method W202, thin-set with dry-set or latex-portland cement bond coat.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 5100

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system.

B. Acoustical units.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C 635 - Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings; 2009b.

B. ASTM E 1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products; 2008.

C. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sequence work to ensure acoustical ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, sufficient heat is provided, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed, tested, and approved.

B. Do not install acoustical units until after interior wet work is dry.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide data on suspension system components.

B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Resistive Assemblies: Complete assembly listed and classified by UL for the fire resistance indicated.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F, and maximum humidity of 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.

1.7 MAINTENACE MATERIALS

A. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.

1. Ceiling tile: Quantity equal to 10 percent of total installed of each type installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

A. Drawings and specifications are based on manufacturer's literature from Armstrong World Industries, Inc. and Tectum, unless otherwise indicated. Other manufacturers to comply with the minimumlevels of material and detailing indicated on the drawings and in the specifications and in conformance with provisions of Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

B. Acoustical Units

1. Acoustical Tiles: As scheduled in Finish Schedule on Drawings.
2. Units for Installation in Fire-Rated Suspension System: Listed and classified for theresistive assembly the suspension system is a part of.

2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Provide suspension system from the same manufacturer as for acoustical units.
2. Substitutions: Not permitted.

B. Suspension Systems - General: ASTM C 635; die cut and interlocking components, withstabilizer bars, clips, splices, perimeter moldings, and hold down clips as required.
   1. Match existing systems for repair or replacement.
C. Trim: Axiom Edge, Straight Perimeter Trim, size as indicated on Drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
B. Verify that layout of hangers will not interfere with other work.

3.2 INSTALLATION - SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Install new suspension system or components where existing is damaged or otherwise unusable.
B. Install suspension system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.
C. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.
D. Locate system according to reflected plan shown on the drawings.
E. Install after major above-ceiling work is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
F. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
G. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
H. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability.
I. Support fixture loads using supplementary hangers located within 6 inches of each corner, or support components independently.
J. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.
K. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
   1. Use longest practical lengths.
   2. Miter corners.
L. Install light fixture boxes constructed of gypsum board above light fixtures in accordance withfire rated assembly requirements and light fixture ventilation requirements.

3.3 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental toappearance and function.
C. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
D. Install units after above-ceiling work is complete.
E. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
F. Cutting Acoustical Units:
   1. Cut to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim.
   2. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges.
   3. Double cut and field paint exposed reveal edges.
G. Where round obstructions occur, provide preformed closures to match perimeter molding.

H. Install hold-down clips on each panel to retain panels tight to grid system; comply with fire ratingrequirements.

I. Install hold-down clips on panels within 20 ft of an exterior door.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.

B. Maximum Variation from Plumb of Grid Members Caused by Eccentric Loads: 2 degrees.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 6500

RESILIENT FLOORING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Resilient tile flooring.

B. Resilient base.

C. Resilient stair accessories.

D. Installation accessories.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. ASTM F 1066 - Standard Specification for Vinyl Composition Floor Tile; current edition.

B. ASTM F 1861 - Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base; current edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.

B. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Maintain temperature in storage area between 55 degrees F and 90 degrees F.

B. Store materials for not less than 48 hours prior to installation in area of installation at a temperature of 70 degrees F to achieve temperature stability. Thereafter, maintain conditions above 55 degrees F.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures, for additional provisions.

B. Provide 50 sq ft of flooring, 100 lineal feet of base, of each type and color specified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS - TILE FLOORING

A. Drawings and specifications are based on literature from manufacturers called out in the Finish Schedule, unless otherwise indicated. Other manufacturers must comply with the minimum levels of material and detailing indicated on the drawings and in conformance with provisions of Section 01 6000 Product Requirements.

B. Vinyl Composition Tile and Rubber Stair Treads
   1. All resilient tile products are scheduled in the Finish Schedule in the Drawings.
   2. The above Basis of Design is intended to establish a standard of quality and configuration and is not intended to preclude the use of accepted substitutions: Submit substitutions in accordance with Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

C. Feature Strips: Of same material as tile.

2.2 STAIR COVERING

D. Stair Treads: Rubber; full width and depth of stair tread in one piece; tapered thickness.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Flexco Corporation; Distinct Designs Rubber Stair Treads: www.flexcofloors.com/#sle.

b. Johnsonite, a Tarkett Company: www.johnsonite.com.
c. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

2. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F2169, Type TS, rubber, vulcanized thermoset.
3. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F2169, Type TP, rubber, thermoset.
4. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F1700, of Class III, Type B.
5. Critical Radiant Flux (CRF): Minimum 0.45 watt per square centimeter, when tested in accordance with ASTM E648 or NFPA 253.
6. Nosing: Square.
7. Striping: 2 inch wide contrasting color abrasive strips.
8. Texture: Smooth.
9. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

E. Stair Risers: Full height and width of tread in one-piece, matching treads in material and color.
1. Manufacturers:
a. Johnsonite, a Tarkett Company: www.johnsonite.com.
b. Mannington Commercial: www.manningtoncommercial.com.
c. Roppe Corporation: www.roppe.com.
d. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.
2. Thickness: 0.080 inch.

2.3 MATERIALS - BASE

A. Drawings and specifications are based on literature from manufacturers called out in the Finish Schedule, unless otherwise indicated. Other manufacturers must comply with the minimum levels of material and detailing indicated on the drawings and in conformance with provisions of Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

B. Resilient Base
1. All Resilient base products are scheduled in the Finish Schedule in the Drawings.
2. The above Basis of Design is intended to establish a standard of quality and configurationand is not intended to preclude the use of accepted substitutions. Submit substitutions in accordance with Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

2.4 TILE ACCESSORIES

A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.

B. Primers and Adhesives: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.

C. Moldings and Edge Strips: Metal.

D. Filler for Coved Base: Plastic.

E. Sealer and Wax: Diversey Floor Finish, Vectra.

F. Thresholds: Provide low-profile metal transition strips, finish as selected by Architect. Provide at doorways where tile terminates, and at open edges of floor tile where adjacent finish is a different height.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive resilient flooring.

B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive resilient base.

C. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances which would impair bonding of adhesive materials to sub-floor surfaces.

D. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within the following limits:
   1. Moisture emission rate: Not greater than 3 lb per 1000 sq ft per 24 hours when testedusing calcium chloride moisture test kit for 72 hours.
   2. Alkalinity: pH range of 5-9.

E. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.

B. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.

C. Clean substrate.

D. Apply primer as required to prevent "bleed-through" or interference with adhesion by substances that cannot be removed.

3.3 INSTALLATION – RUBBER, AND TILE FLOORING

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed.

C. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.

D. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.

E. Install edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, where flooring terminates, and where indicated.

F. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.

G. Install feature strips and floor markings where indicated. Fit joints tightly.

3.4 INSTALLATION - BASE

A. Fit joints tightly and make vertical. Maintain minimum dimension of 18 inches between joints.

B. Miter internal corners. At external corners, use premolded units. At exposed ends, use premolded units.

C. Install base on solid backing. Bond tightly to wall and floor surfaces.

D. Scribe and fit to door frames and other interruptions.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.

B. Clean, seal, and provide 7 coats of wax in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.6 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

A. Prohibit traffic on resilient flooring for 48 hours after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 6623
RESINOUS MATRIX TERRAZZO FLOORING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Epoxy matrix terrazzo with ground and polished finish.

B. Divider strips.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 016116 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Restrictions.

B. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete subfloor with steel trowel finish.

C. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between terrazzo work and adjacent construction and fixtures.

D. Section 124813 - Entrance Floor Mats and Frames: Recessed floor mat frames.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM F1869 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride 2016a.

B. ASTM F2170 - Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes 2019a.

C. NTMA (GRAD) - Aggregate Gradation Standards Current Edition.

D. NTMA (EPOXY) - Epoxy Terrazzo Specifications Current Edition.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data for divider strips, control joint strips, expansion joints, and sealer; include printed copy of current NTMA recommendations for type of terrazzo specified.

C. Samples: Submit two samples, 12 inch by 12 inch in size illustrating color, chip size and variation, chip gradation, matrix color, and typical divider strip.

D. Concrete Subfloor Test Report: Submit a copy of the moisture and alkalinity (pH) test reports.

E. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.

F. Installer's Qualification Statement.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform work in accordance with NTMA recommendations as posted at their web site at www.ntma.com.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section.
   1. Associate member firm of the National Terrazzo and Mosaic Association, Inc.

C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section.
   1. Minimum five years of documented experience.
   2. Contractor member of the National Terrazzo and Mosaic Association, Inc.

1.06 MOCK-UP

A. Construct mock-up of terrazzo illustrating appearance of finished work in each configuration required. Size mock-up to be not less than 3 by 3 feet..

B. Locate where directed.

C. Mock-up may not remain as part of the work.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store terrazzo materials in a dry, secure area.

B. Maintain minimum temperature of 60 degrees F (16 degrees C).

C. Keep products away from fire or open flame.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not install terrazzo when temperature is below 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) or above 90 degrees F (32 degrees C).

B. Maintain temperature within specified range 24 hours before, during, and 72 hours after installation of flooring.

C. Provide ambient lighting level of 50 ft candles (540 lx), measured at floor surface.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of Design - Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring: Terrazzco; TERRAZCO Epoxy Terrazzo System, a brand of Concord Terrazzo Company, Inc: www.terrazzco.com.

B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers - Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring:
   1. Key Resin Company; Key Epoxy Terrazzo System: www.keyresin.com.
   2. Sherwin-Williams High Performance Flooring; www.sherwin-williams.com/resin-flooring.
   3. Sika Corporation; Sikafloor Terrazzo: www.sikafloorusa.com.

2.02 EPOXY MATRIX TERRAZZO APPLICATIONS

A. Floors:
   1. Thickness: 3/8 inch (9 mm), nominal.
   2. Color(s): To be selected by Architect.
   3. Aggregate Type: Marble chips.
   4. Aggregate Size: No. 2.

2.03 MATERIALS

A. Epoxy Matrix Terrazzo: Aggregate and matrix mix applied to substrate, troweled flat, and ground smooth.
   1. Mix Proportions: As required to achieve appearance specified.
   2. Mix Proportions: Three parts aggregate chip; one part aggregate dust; one part matrix.

B. Matrix: Two component resin and epoxy hardener with mineral filler and color pigment, non-volatile, thermo-setting.
   1. Products:
      a. Terrazzco; EZpour Epoxy #158 a brand of Concord Terrazzo Company, Inc: www.terrazzco.com/#sle.

C. Aggregate: Type as indicated; sized in accordance with NTMA aggregate gradation standards; color(s) as indicated, uniform in color.

D. Finishing Grout: Epoxy, color to match terrazzo matrix.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

A. Divider Strips: 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick zinc exposed top strip, zinc coated steel concealed bottom strip, with anchoring features.

B. Control Joint Strips: 1/8 inch (3 mm) nominal width zinc exposed top strips, zinc coated steel concealed bottom strips, 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide neoprene filler strip between vertical strips, with anchoring features.

C. Divider and Control Joint Strip Height: To suit thickness of terrazzo topping, with allowance for grinding.

D. Sealer: Colorless, non-yellowing, penetrating liquid type to completely seal matrix surface; not detrimental to terrazzo components.

E. Primer: As recommended by manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive terrazzo.

B. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of materials to subfloor surfaces.

C. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for terrazzo flooring installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
   1. Test in accordance with Section 090561.
   2. Test as Follows:
      a. Internal Relative Humidity: ASTM F2170.
      b. Moisture Vapor Emission: ASTM F1869.
   3. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by terrazzo flooring manufacturer.
   4. Follow moisture and alkalinity remediation procedures in Section 090561.

D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of foreign matter.

B. Prepare concrete subfloor by mechanically abrading surface in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Saw cut substrate to install divider and control joint strips.

B. Install control joint strips straight and flat to locations indicated.

C. Install divider strips according to pattern approved on shop drawings.

D. Install recessed floor mat frames.

E. Place terrazzo mix over substrate to thickness indicated.

3.04 FINISHING

A. Finish terrazzo to NTMA requirements.

B. Produce terrazzo finish surface to match approved mock-up, with 70 percent chip exposed.

C. Grind terrazzo surfaces with power disc machine; sequence with coarse to fine grit abrasive, using a wet method or using a dry grinder with vacuum to control dust.

D. Apply grout to fill voids exposed from grinding.

E. Remove grout coat by grinding, using a fine grit abrasive.

3.05 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Flat Surface: 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in one m).

B. Maximum Variation from Level (Except Surfaces Sloping to Drain): 1/8 inch (3 mm).

3.06 CLEANING

A. Scrub and clean terrazzo surfaces with neutral pH cleaner in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Let dry.

B. Immediately after terrazzo has dried, apply sealer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Polish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.07 PROTECTION

A. Protect finished terrazzo from damage due to subsequent construction until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 6813
TILE CARPETING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Carpet tile, fully adhered.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 09 6500 - Resilient Flooring: Wall base finish.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. CRI 104 - Standard for Installation of Commercial Textile Floorcovering Materials; Carpet and Rug Institute; current edition.

B. CRI (GLA) - Green Label Testing Program - Approved Adhesive Products; www.carpet-rug.org; current edition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout of joints, direction of carpet pile, and location of edge moldings.

C. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.

D. Samples: Submit two carpet tiles illustrating color and pattern design for each carpet color selected.

E. Submit two, 12 inch long samples of edge strip.

F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures.

G. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing specified carpet tile with minimum five years documented experience.

B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing carpet with minimum five years' experienc.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Store materials in area of installation for minimum period of 24 hours prior to installation.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures, for additional provisions.

B. Provide 25 each carpet tiles of each color and pattern selected.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Tarkett Commercial Flooring; www.commercial.tarkett.com

2.2 CARPET TILES

B. Carpet tiles are as scheduled on the Finish Schedule on the Drawings.:

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Sub-Floor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by flooring material manufacturer.

B. Transition Strips: Provide low-profile metal transition strips, finish as selected by Architect. Provide at doorways where carpet terminates, and at open edges of carpet where adjacent finish is a different height.

C. Adhesives: Acceptable to carpet manufacturers, compatible with materials being adhered; CRI Green Label certified; in lieu of labeled product, independent test report showing compliance is acceptable.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive carpet tile.

B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive carpet tile.

C. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances which would impair bonding of adhesive materials to sub-floor surfaces.

D. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for carpet tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by carpet tile manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

E. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler.

B. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.

C. Vacuum clean substrate.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and CRI 104.

B. Blend carpet from different cartons to ensure minimal variation in color match.

C. Cut carpet tile clean. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.

D. Lay carpet tile in square pattern, with pile direction parallel to next unit, set parallel to building lines.

E. Fully adhere carpet tile to substrate.

F. Trim carpet tile neatly at walls and around interruptions.

G. Complete installation of edge strips, concealing exposed edges.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.

B. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 9000
PAINTING AND COATING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Surface preparation.

B. Field application of paints, stains, varnishes, and other coatings.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Shop-primed items.

B. Mechanical Identification: Painted identification.

C. Electrical Identification: Painted identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 16 - Standard Terminology for Paint, Related Coatings, Materials, and Applications; current edition.

B. ASTM D 4442 - Standard Test Methods for Direct Moisture Content Measurement of Wood and Wood-Base Materials; current edition.

C. AWI/AWMAC (QSI) - Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated; Architectural Woodwork Institute and Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; current edition.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Conform to ASTM D 16 for interpretation of terms used in this section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data on all finishing products.

C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special surface preparation procedures and substrate conditions requiring special attention.

D. Samples: Provide approval samples 24 inch x 24 inch of required specialty or “faux” finishes for Architect approval.

1.6 MOCK-UPS

A. Provide mockups of all painted or stained surfaces. Mock-up may remain in place following approval of the Architect.

B. Provide adequate lighting for mock up review.

C. Notify Owner and Architect minimum 72 hours prior to mock-up review.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.

B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum five years’ experience.

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code for flame and smoke rating requirements for products and finishes.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.

B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.

C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

1.10 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperatureranges required by the paint product manufacturer.

B. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is outside thehumidity ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.

C. Minimum Application Temperatures for Latex Paints: 45 degrees F for interiors; 50 degrees Ffor exterior; unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.

D. Minimum Application Temperature for Varnish Finishes: 65 degrees F for interior or exterior,unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.

E. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures, for additional provisions.

B. Supply one gallon of each color; store where directed.

C. Label each container with color in addition to the manufacturer's label.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Paints:
   1. Base Manufacturer: Benjamin Moore & Co: www.benjaminmoore.com.
   2. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
      a. Duron, Inc: www.duron.com.
      b. ICI Paints North America: www.icidecorativepaints.com.
      c. Sherwin Williams: www.sherwin-williams.com.
      d. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc: www.ppgaf.com.
      e. Tnemec Paints; www.tnemec.com

B. Stains:
   1. Base Manufacturer: Benjamin Moore & Co: www.benjaminmoore.com.
   2. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
      a. Olympic Stains: www.olympic.com.

C. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

2.2 PAINTS AND COATINGS - GENERAL

A. Paints and Coatings: Ready mixed, except field-catalyzed coatings. Prepare pigments:
   1. To a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to ahomogeneous coating.
   2. For good flow and brushing properties.
   3. Capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.

2.3 PAINT SYSTEMS - EXTERIOR

A. Concrete/Masonry, Opaque, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of block filler.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

B. Gypsum Board and Plaster, Opaque, Latex, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of latex primer sealer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of latex.

C. Ferrous Metals, Unprimed, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of alkyd primer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of a high solids epoxy.

D. Ferrous Metals, Primed, Alkyd, 2 Coat:
   1. Touch-up with rust-inhibitive primer recommended by top coat manufacturer
   2. Semi-Gloss: Two coats of a high solids epoxy.

E. Galvanized Metals, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat galvanize primer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

F. Aluminum, Unprimed, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat etching primer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

G. Pavement Marking Paint:
   1. Specified in Civil sections.

2.4 PAINT SYSTEMS - INTERIOR

A. Wood, Opaque, Latex, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of latex primer sealer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of latex enamel.

B. Concrete/Masonry, Opaque, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of block filler.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

C. Ferrous Metals, Unprimed, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of alkyd primer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

D. Ferrous Metals, Primed, Alkyd, 2 Coat:
   1. Touch-up with alkyd primer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

E. Galvanized Metals, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat galvanize primer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

F. Aluminum, Unprimed, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat etching primer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

G. Gypsum Board/Plaster, Latex-Acrylic, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of alkyd primer sealer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of latex-acrylic enamel.

H. Fabrics/Insulation Jackets, Alkyd, 3 Coat:
   1. One coat of alkyd primer sealer.
   2. Eggshell: Two coats of alkyd enamel.

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Accessory Materials: Linseed oil, shellac, turpentine, paint thinners and other materials not specifically indicated but required to achieve the finishes specified; commercial quality.

B. Patching Material: Latex filler.

C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive Work as instructed by the product manufacturer.

B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report anycondition that may potentially affect proper application.

C. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.

D. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishesunless moisture content of surfaces are below the following maximums:
   1. Plaster and Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.
   2. Masonry, Concrete, and Concrete Unit Masonry: 12 percent.
   3. Interior Wood: 15 percent, measured in accordance with ASTM D 4442.
   4. Exterior Wood: 15 percent, measured in accordance with ASTM D 4442.

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Surface Appurtenances: Remove electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons,and fittings prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.

B. Surfaces: Correct defects and clean surfaces which affect work of this section.

C. Marks: Seal with shellac those which may bleed through surface finishes.

D. Impervious Surfaces: Remove mildew by scrubbing with solution of tetra-sodium phosphateand bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.

E. Concrete and Unit Masonry Surfaces to be Painted: Remove dirt, loose mortar, scale, salt or alkali powder, and other foreign matter. Remove oil and grease with a solution of tri-sodium phosphate; rinse well and allow to dry. Remove stains caused by weathering of corroding metals with a solution of sodium metasilicate after thoroughly wetting with water. Allow to dry.

F. Gypsum Board Surfaces to be Painted: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot primedefects after repair.

G. Insulated Coverings to be Painted: Remove dirt, grease, and oil from canvas and cotton.

H. Aluminum Surfaces to be Painted: Remove surface contamination by steam or high pressure water. Remove oxidation with acid etch and solvent washing. Apply etching primer immediatelyfollowing cleaning.

I. Galvanized Surfaces to be Painted: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash withsolvent. Apply coat of etching primer.

J. Uncoated Steel and Iron Surfaces to be Painted: Remove grease, mill scale, weld splatter, dirt,and rust. Where heavy coatings of scale are evident, remove by power tool wire brushing or sandblasting; clean by washing with solvent. Apply a treatment of phosphoric acid solution, ensuring weld joints, bolts, and nuts are similarly cleaned. Prime paint entire surface; spot prime after repairs.

K. Shop-Primed Steel Surfaces to be Finish Painted: Sand and scrape to remove loose primerand rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces.

L. Interior Wood Items to Receive Opaque Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to priming. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after primer hasdried; sand between coats. Back prime concealed surfaces before installation.

M. Interior Wood Items to Receive Transparent Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to sealing, sealknots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after

sealer hasdried; sand lightly between coats. Prime concealed surfaces with gloss varnish reduced 25 percent with thinner.

N. Exterior Wood to Receive Opaque Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter. Seal knots,pitch streaks, and sappy sections. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior calking compound after prime coat has been applied. Back prime concealed surfaces before installation.

O. Metal Doors to be factory painted.

3.2 APPLICATION

A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Where adjacent sealant is to be painted, do not apply finish coats until sealant is applied.

C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat isapplied.

D. Apply each coat to uniform appearance. Apply each coat of paint slightly darker than precedingcoat unless otherwise approved.

E. Sand wood surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.

F. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just priorto applying next coat.

G. Where clear finishes are required, tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain beforeset. Wipe excess from surface.

H. Touch-up painting to be conducted full height, from corner to corner. Spot touch-up is notallowed.

3.3 FINISHING MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

A. Refer to Division 23 and Division 26 for schedule of color coding of equipment, duct work,piping, and conduit.

B. Paint shop-primed equipment, where indicated.

C. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electricalcomponents and paint separately.

D. Finish equipment, piping, conduit, and exposed duct work in utility areas in colors according tothe color coding scheme indicated.

E. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removedprior to finishing.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Collect waste material which may constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, andremove daily from site.

3.6 SCHEDULE - SURFACES TO BE FINISHED

A. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
   1. Items fully factory-finished unless specifically noted.
   2. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels.
   3. Stainless steel items.

B. Mechanical and Electrical: Use paint systems defined for the substrates to be finished.

1. Paint all insulated and exposed pipes occurring in finished areas to match backgroundsurfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Paint shop-primed items occurring in finished areas.
3. Paint interior surfaces of air ducts and convector and baseboard heating cabinets that arevisible through grilles and louvers with one coat of Eggshell black paint to visible surfaces.
4. Paint dampers exposed behind louvers, grilles, and convector and baseboard cabinets tomatch face panels.

C. Paint both sides and edges of plywood backboards for electrical and telephone equipmentbefore installing equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 1101

VISUAL DISPLAY BOARDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Markerboards and Tackboards.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking and supports.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ANSI A208.1 - American National Standard for Particleboard; 1999.

B. ASTM A 424 - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, for Porcelain Enameling; 2009a.

C. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2010.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on markerboard, tackboard, tackboard surface covering, trim, and accessories.

C. Manufacturer's printed installation instructions.

D. Maintenance Data: Include data on regular cleaning, stain removal.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Provide five year warranty for markerboard to include warranty against discoloration due to cleaning, crazing or cracking, and staining.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Visual Display Boards:
   1. MooreCo, Inc\Best-Rite: www.moorecoinc.com.
   2. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc: www.claridgeproducts.com.
   3. Polyvision Corporation (Nelson Adams): www.polyvision.com.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.02 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARDS

A. Markerboards: Porcelain enamel on steel, laminated to core.
   1. Color: White.
   2. Metal Face Sheet Thickness: 0.024 inch (24 gage).
   3. Core: MDF, 7/16” thick, laminated to face sheet.
   4. Frame: T5 tempered factory 6303 alloy grade, 201-R satin anodized finish.

5. Include map rail, flag holder (1 per board), and continuous solid blade-type aluminum marker tray, with ribbed sections.
5. Size: As indicated on drawings.

B. Tackboards: Fine-grained, homogeneous natural cork.
1. Cork Thickness: 1/4 inch thick self-healing cork.
2. Backing: Hardboard, 1/4 inch thick, laminated to tack surface.
3. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum, and smoke developed index of 450, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.
4. Size: As indicated on drawings.
4. Frame: T5 tempered factory 6303 alloy grade, 201-R satin anodized finish.
6. No projections beyond the frame.

2.03 MATERIALS

A. Porcelain Enameled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 424, Type I, Commercial Steel, with fired-on vitreous finish.

B. Foil Backing: Aluminum foil sheet, 0.005 inch thick.

C. Adhesives: Type used by manufacturer.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

A. Chalk Tray: Aluminum, manufacturer's standard profile one piece full length of chalkboard, molded ends; concealed fasteners, same finish as frame.

B. Mounting Brackets: Concealed.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.

B. Verify that internal wall blocking is ready to receive work and positioning dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.

C. Verify flat wall surface for frameless adhesive-applied boards.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install boards in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install with top of chalk tray at 30 inches above finished floor.

C. Secure units level and plumb.

D. Butt Joints: Install with tight hairline joints.

3.03 CLEANING

A. Clean board surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 1400

SIGNAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Room and door signs.

B. Interior directional and informational signs.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ANSI/ICC A117.1 - American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; International Code Council; 2003.

B. ATBCB ADAAG - Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines; 2002.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3300 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed product literature for each type of sign, indicating sign styles, font, foreground and background colors, locations, overall dimensions of each sign.

C. Signage Schedule: Provide information sufficient to completely define each sign for fabrication, including room number, room name, other text to be applied, sign and letter sizes, fonts, and colors.

1. When room numbers to appear on signs differ from those on the drawings, include thedrawing room number on schedule.
2. When content of signs is indicated to be determined later, request such information from Owner through Architect at least 2 months prior to start of fabrication; upon request, submitpreliminary schedule.
3. Submit for approval by Owner through Architect prior to fabrication.

D. Samples: Submit two samples of each type of sign, of size similar to that required for project, illustrating sign style, font, and method of attachment.

E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include installation templates and attachment devices.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package signs as required to prevent damage before installation.

B. Package room and door signs in sequential order of installation, labeled by floor or building.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Flat Signs:

1. Apco Signs; Product: Fullview; www.apcosigns/fullview.html
2. ASI Signage: www.asisignage.com
3. Best Sign Systems, Inc: www.bestsigns.com.
4. Mohawk Sign Systems, Inc: www.mohawksign.com.
5. Seton Identification Products: www.seton.com/aec.

2.2 SIGNAGE APPLICATIONS

A. Accessibility Compliance: All signs are required to comply with ADAAG and ANSI/ICC A 117.1 and applicable building codes, unless otherwise indicated; in the event of conflicting requirements, comply with the most comprehensive and specific requirements.

B. Room and Door Signs: Provide a sign for every room, whether it has a door or not, not including corridors, lobbies, and similar open areas.

1. Sign Type: Flat signs with engraved panel media as specified.
2. Provide "tactile" signage, with letters raised minimum 1/32 inch and Grade II braille.
3. Character Height: 1 inch.
4. Sign Height: 2 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Office Doors: Identify with room numbers to be determined later, not the numbers shown on the drawings; in addition, provide "window" section for replaceable occupant name.
6. Conference and Meeting Rooms: Identify with room numbers to be determined later, not the numbers shown on the drawings; in addition, provide "window" section with sliding "InUse/Vacant" indicator.
7. Service Rooms: Identify with room names and numbers to be determined later, not thoseshown on the drawings.
8. Rest Rooms: Identify with pictograms, the names "MEN" and "WOMEN", room numbers tobe determined later, and braille.
9. Provide all code-required signage including, but not limited to: Egress plans, occupancy signs, storm shelter signage.

C. Interior Directional and Informational Signs:
1. Sign Type: Same as room and door signs.
2. Sizes: 11X17.
3. Allow for 20 signs.
4. Wording of signs is as directed.

2.3 SIGN TYPES

A. Signs: Signage media without frame.
1. Edges: Square.
2. Corners: Square.
3. Wall Mounting of One-Sided Signs: Tape adhesive.

B. Color and Font: Unless otherwise indicated:
1. Character Font: Helvetica, Arial, or other sans serif font.
2. Character Case: Upper case only.
3. Background Color: Clear.
4. Character Color: Contrasting color.

2.4 TACTILE SIGNAGE MEDIA

A. Engraved Panels: Laminated colored plastic; engraved through face to expose core as background color:
1. Total Thickness: 1/16 inch.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install neatly, with horizontal edges level.

C. Locate signs where indicated:
1. Room and Door Signs: Locate on wall at latch side of door with centerline of sign at 60inches above finished floor.
2. If no location is indicated obtain Owner's instructions.

D. Protect from damage until Substantial Completion; repair or replace damage items.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 2601

WALL AND CORNER GUARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Bumper Rails.

B. Corner guards.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2010.

B. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2009.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3300 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Indicate physical dimensions, features, anchorage details, and rough-in measurements.

C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPONENTS

A. Bumper Rails: Factory- or shop-fabricated, with preformed end caps and internal and external corners:
   1. Performance of Installed Assembly:
      a. Resist lateral force of 250 lbs at any point without damage or permanent set.
   2. Material: Type 304 stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
   3. Mounting: Surface.
   4. Projection From Wall to Outside of Rail: 3/4 inch.
   5. Return rail to wall.

B. Corner Guards, Stainless Steel (Where indicated on Drawings) - Flush Mounted:
   6. Material: Type 304 stainless steel, No. 4 finish, 16 gage.
   7. Performance: Resist lateral impact force of 100 lbs at any point without damage orpermanent set.
   8. Width of Wings: 2 inches.
   9. Corner: Square.
   10. Length: Floor to ceiling.
   11. Mounting: Provide corner guards with countersunk holes for attachment screws.

C. Mounting Brackets and Attachment Hardware: Appropriate to component and substrate.
   1. For corner guards, attach with adhesive backing and secure with countersunk screws.

2.2 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate components with tight joints, corners and seams.

B. Pre-drill holes for attachment.

C. Form end trim closure by capping and finishing smooth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that rough openings, concealed blocking, and anchors are correctly sized and located.

B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on Drawings.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, level and plumb, secured rigidly in position to wall framing members only.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation From Required Height: 1/4 inch.

B. Maximum Variation From Level or Plane For Visible Length: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 2800

TOILET ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes toilet accessories.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit in accordance with provisions of Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements.

B. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions and thicknesses, dimensions, profiles, fastening and mounting methods, specified options, and finishes for each type of accessory specified.

C. Setting Drawings: For cutouts required in other work; include templates, substrate preparation instructions, and directions for preparing cutouts and installing anchoring devices.

D. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required. Use designations indicated in the Toilet Accessories Schedule and room designations indicated on Drawings in product schedule.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed to view in same areas, unless otherwise approved by Architect.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 123/A 123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 1997a.

B. ASTM A 269 - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 1998.

C. ASTM A 653/A 653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 1999a.

D. ASTM A 666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 1999.

E. ASTM C 1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass; 1991 (Reapproved 1997).

F. GSA CID A-A-3002 - Mirrors, Glass; U.S. General Services Administration; 1996.

G. ANSI/ICC A117.1 - American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; International Code Council; 1998.

H. TEXAS ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS (TAS) of the Architectural Barriers Act Article 9102, Texas Civil Statutes.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by disabled persons, proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. The Warranties submitted under this Section shall not deprive the Owner of other rights or remedies that the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and the laws of governing jurisdictions and is in addition to and runs concurrently with other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Manufacturer's Mirror Warranty: Written warranty, executed by mirror manufacturer agreeing to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects within minimum warranty period indicated.
   1. Minimum Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide accessories by one of thefollowing:
   1. American Specialties, Inc.
   2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
   3. Gamco Specialty Accessories: www.gamcousa.com

B. Substitutions: Permitted under provisions of Section 01 6000.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. A Drawings and specifications are based on manufacturer's literature from the manufacturer listed on the drawings accessory schedule unless otherwise indicated. Other manufacturers to comply with the minimum levels of material and detailing indicated on the drawings and in conformance with provisions of Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements.

B. Accessories - General: Shop assembled, free of dents and scratches and packaged complete with anchors and fittings, steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
   1. Grind welded joints smooth.
   2. Fabricate units made of metal sheet of seamless sheets, with flat surfaces.

C. Keys: Provide 3 keys for each accessory to Owner; master key all lockable accessories.

D. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

E. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A 269, Type 304 or 316.

F. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90/Z275 coating.

G. Mirror Glass: Float glass, Type I, Class 1, Quality q2 (ASTM C 1036), with silvering, copper coating, and suitable protective organic coating to copper backing in accordance with GSA CID A-A-3002.

H. Adhesive: Two component epoxy type, waterproof.

I. Fasteners, Screws, and Bolts: Hot dip galvanized, tamper-proof, security type.

J. Expansion Shields: Fiber, lead, or rubber as recommended by accessory manufacturer for component and substrate.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Surface-Mounted Toilet Accessories: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with continuous stainless-steel hinge. Provide concealed anchorage where possible.

B. Recessed Toilet Accessories: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units of all-welded construction, without mitered corners. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, stainless- steel hinge. Provide anchorage that is fully concealed when unit is closed.

C. Framed Glass-Mirror Units: Fabricate frames for glass-mirror units to accommodate glass edge protection material. Provide mirror backing and support system that permits rigid, tamper- resistant glass installation and prevents moisture accumulation.
   1. Provide galvanized steel backing sheet, not less than 0.034 inch(0.85 mm) and full mirrorsize, with nonabsorptive filler material. Corrugated cardboard is not an acceptable filler material.

D. Mirror-Unit Hangers: Provide mirror-unit mounting system that permits rigid, tamper- and theft- resistant installation, as follows:
   1. One-piece, galvanized steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism tohold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
   2. Heavy-duty wall brackets of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devicesrequiring a special tool to remove.

E. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriateto substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.

B. Secure mirrors to walls in concealed, tamper-resistant manner with special hangers, togglebolts, or screws. Set units level, plumb, and square at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated.

C. Install grab bars to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf when tested according tomethod in ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation and verify that mechanisms function properly. Replace damaged or defective items.

B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.

C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 TOILET ACCESSORIESY SCHEDULE

A. Schedule is included in the drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 4000
SAFETY SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fire extinguishers.

B. Fire extinguisher cabinets.

C. Defibrillator Cabinets

1.2 REFERENCES

A. UL (FPED) - Fire Protection Equipment Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; currentedition.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code and NFPA 10.

B. Provide extinguishers classified and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. for the purpose specified and indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Indicate cabinet physical dimensions, rough-in measurements for recessed cabinets, wall bracket mounted measurements, and location.

B. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features, color and finish, and anchorage details.

C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

E. Maintenance Data: Include test, refill or recharge schedules and re-certification requirements.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Do not install extinguishers when ambient temperature may cause freezing of extinguisher ingredients.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Drawings and specifications are based on manufacturer's literature from Larsen's Manufacturing Company unless otherwise indicated. Other manufacturers to comply with the minimum levels of material and detailing indicated on the drawings and in conformance with provisions of Section 01 6000 – Product Requirements. www.larsensmfg.com

B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers: Fire Extinguishers and Cabinets.
   1. JL Industries, Inc: www.jlindustries.com.
   2. Larsen's Manufacturing Co: www.larsensmfg.com.
   3. Potter-Roemer: www.potterroemer.com.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

2.2 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

B. Multi-Purpose Dry Chemical Type (Unless noted otherwise): Stainless steel tank, with pressure gage.
   1. Size and classification: MP-10 as manufactured by Larsen’s Manufacturing Company.
   2. Finish: Baked enamel, red.

C. Kitchen Extinguisher: Larsen’s WC Series Wet Chemical unit, 2.5 gallon, rated for type K fires. Provide Larsen’s mounting bracket 1007 for kitchen extinguisher.

2.3 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

A. Fire Extinguisher Cabinet with Fire Blanket (Science Classrooms): Architectural Series Model No. AL FB3612-RL, semi-recessed, with fire blanket, as manufactured by Larsen's Manufacturing.
   1. All-aluminum construction.
   2. White baked enamel finish.
   3. Handle: FH Red, die cast, raised letters.
   4. Extinguisher: MP10 manufactured by Larsen's Manufacturing Company.

B. Fire Extinguisher Cabinet without Blanket (All other areas): Architectural Series Model No. AL2712-RA, semi-recessed, as manufactured by Larsen's Manufacturing.
   1. All-aluminum construction, with door glass.
   2. White baked enamel finish.
   3. Handle: FH Red, die cast, raised letters.
   4. Extinguisher: MP10 manufactured by Larsen's Manufacturing Company.

2.4 DEFIBRILLATOR CABINETS

A. Automated external defibrillator cabinet:
   1. Zoll AED Plus standard size cabinet with audible alarm, recess mount, or as designated on Drawings..
   2. Defibrillator will be supplied by Owner.
   3. In kiln room and kitchen cabinet to be bracket-mounted.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install cabinets plumb and level at heights indicated on drawing schedule.

C. Place extinguishers in cabinets.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 12 2113

HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Horizontal slat louver blinds.

B. Operating hardware.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3300 Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data indicating physical and dimensional characteristics.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate opening sizes, tolerances required, method of attachment, clearances, and operation.

D. Samples: Submit two samples, 12 inch long illustrating slat materials and finish, color, cord type and color.

E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Coordinate the work with window installation and placement of concealed blocking to support blinds.

B. Take field measurements to determine sizes required.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures, for additional provisions.

B. Provide two additional complete blind assemblies of each size.

C. Provide 10 extra lift cords.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Drawings and specifications are based on manufacturer's literature from Levelor Contract unless otherwise indicated. Other manufacturers to comply with the minimum levels of material and detailing indicated on the drawings and in conformance with provisions of Section 01600 – Product Requirements.

B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   1. Hunter Douglas Window Fashions: www.hunterdouglas.com.
   2. Levolor Contract, division of Newell Rubbermaid, Inc: www.levolorcontract.com.
   3. Graber, division of Springs Industries, Inc: www.graberblinds.com.
   4. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

2.2 BLINDS AND BLIND COMPONENTS

A. Width: 1 inch.

B. Color: White.

C. Blinds: Horizontal slat louvers hung from full-width headrail with full-width bottom rail; manual control of raising and lowering by cord with full range locking; blade angle adjustable by control wand.

D. Metal Slats: Spring tempered pre-finished aluminum; radiused slat corners, with manufacturing burrs removed.

E. Slat Support: Woven polypropylene cord, ladder configuration.

F. Head Rail: Pre-finished, formed aluminum box, with end caps; internally fitted with hardware, pulleys, and bearings for operation; same depth as width of slats
   1. Color: Same as slats.

G. Bottom Rail: Pre-finished, formed steel with top side shaped to match slat curvature; with end caps. Color: Same as slats.

H. Lift Cord: Braided polypropylene; continuous loop.
   1. Free end weighted.
   2. Color: As selected.

I. Control Wand: Extruded aluminum; hexagonal shape.
   1. Removable type.
   2. Length of window opening height less 3 inches.
   3. Color: Clear.

J. Headrail Attachment: Wall brackets.

K. Accessory Hardware: Type recommended by blind manufacturer.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate blinds to fit within openings with uniform edge clearance of 1/4 inch.

B. Fabricate blinds to cover window frames completely.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that openings are ready to receive the work.

B. Ensure structural blocking and supports are correctly placed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install blinds in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Secure in place with concealed fasteners.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation of Gap at Window Opening Perimeter: 1/8 inch.

B. Maximum Offset From Level: 1/8 inch.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust blinds for smooth operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 12 3600
COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Solid surface and plastic laminate countertops for architectural cabinetwork.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. ANSI A208.1 - American National Standard for Particleboard; current edition.

B. ANSI A208.2 - American National Standard for Medium Density Fiberboard for Interior Use; current edition.

C. ANSI Z124.3 - American National Standard for Plastic Lavatories; current edition.

D. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; current edition.

E. AWI/AWMAC (QSI) - Quality Standard Illustrated; Architectural Woodwork Institute and Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; 2006, 8th Ed., Version 2.0.

F. ISSFA-2 - Classification and Standards for Solid Surfacing Material; International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; current edition

G. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates; current edition.

H. PS 1 - Construction and Industrial Plywood; current edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 sections for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
   1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
   2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
   3. Specimen warranty.

C. Shop Drawings: Complete details of materials and installation; combine with shop drawings of cabinets and casework specified in other sections.

D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.

E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, minimum size 6 inches square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.

F. Test Reports: Chemical resistance testing, showing compliance with specified requirements.

G. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations.

H. Maintenance Data: Manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for maintenance and repair of countertop surfaces.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Installation by fabricator.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

B. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 COUNTERTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Solid Surfacing Countertops: Solid surfacing sheet or plastic resin casting over continuous substrate.
   1. Flat Sheet Thickness: ¾ inch, minimum.
   2. Solid Surfacing Sheet and Plastic Resin Castings: Complying with ISSFA-2 and NEMA LD 3; acrylic or polyester resin, mineral filler, and pigments; homogenous, non-porous and capable of being worked and repaired using standard woodworking tools; no surface coating; color and pattern consistent throughout thickness.
      a. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread 25, maximum; smoke developed 450, maximum; when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.
      b. NSF approved for food contact.
      c. Sinks and Bowls: Integral castings; minimum 3/4 inch wall thickness; comply with ANSI Z124.3.
      d. Finish on Exposed Surfaces: As designated in the “Finish Schedule” on the Drawings.
      e. Color and Pattern: As designated in the ‘Finish Schedule’ on Drawings.
      f. Manufacturers:
         1) Wilsonart: www.wilsonart.com.
         2) Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 Product Requirements for substitution procedures.
   3. Other Components Thickness: 2 cm, minimum.
   4. Exposed Edge Treatment: Built up to minimum 1-1/4 inch thick; radiused edge.
   5. Back and End Splashes: Same sheet material, radiused top; minimum 4 inches high.

B. Plastic Laminate Countertops: High-pressure decorative laminate (HPDL) sheet bonded to substrate.
   1. Laminate Sheet: NEMA LD 3, Grade HDS, 0.048 inch nominal thickness.
      a. Manufacturers: Formica; www.formica.com
      b. Color and pattern: As designated in the ‘Finish Schedule’ on the Drawings.

2.2 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Plywood for Supporting all Substrate: FSC Certified PS 1 Exterior Type, AC veneer grade, minimum 5-ply; minimum 3/4 inch thick; join lengths using metal splines.

B. Adhesives: Chemical resistant waterproof adhesive as recommended by manufacturer of materials being joined.

C. Cove Molding for Top of Splashes: Rubber with semi-gloss finish and T-spline to fit between splash and wall; 1/2 inch by 1/2 inch; color as selected. To be applied to all splashes with the exception of tile splashes.

D. Joint Sealant: Mildew-resistant silicone sealant, color approved by Architect. To be applied at all casework and millwork joints, corners and where at dissimilar materials.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate tops and splashes in the largest sections practicable, with top surface of joints flush.
   1. Join lengths of tops using best method recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Prepare all cutouts accurately to size; replace tops having improperly dimensioned or unnecessary cutouts or fixture holes.

B. Provide back/end splash wherever counter edge abuts vertical surface unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Secure to countertop with concealed fasteners and with contact surfaces set in waterproof glue.
   2. Height: 4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solid Surfacing: Fabricate tops up to 144 inches long in one piece; join pieces with adhesive sealant in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.

B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

C. Verify that wall surfaces have been finished and mechanical and electrical services and outlets are installed in proper locations.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.

B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Securely attach countertops to cabinets using concealed fasteners. Make flat surfaces level; shim where required.

B. Attach plastic laminate countertops using screws with minimum penetration into substrate board of 5/8 inch.

C. Seal joint between back/end splashes and vertical surfaces.
   1. Where indicated use rubber cove molding.
   2. Where applied cove molding is not indicated use specified sealant.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Variation from Horizontal: 1/8 inch in 10 feet, maximum.

B. Offset from Wall, Countertops: 1/8 inch maximum, 1/16 inch, minimum.

C. Field Joints: 1/16 inch, wide, maximum.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean countertops surfaces thoroughly.

B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 12 4813
ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Extruded aluminum entrance floor grilles. Surface mounted.

B. Carpet mat.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. See Division 1 Sections for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data indicating properties of walk-off surface, component dimensions and frame characteristics.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Entrance Floor Grilles:
   1. Basis of Design: Construction Specialties, Inc: www.pedisystems.com.
   2. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

B. Carpet Mats:
   1. J & J Industries: www.jjflooringgroup.com.
   2. Substitutions: Refer to applicable Division 1 sections.

2.02 ENTRANCE FLOOR GRILLES AND GRATINGS

A. Basis of Design; Refer to drawings Finish Schedule for product selections.
   1. Size as indicated on drawings.
   2. Surface mounted.

2.03 CARPET MATS

A. Carpet Mat: Carpet mat indicated on drawings Finish Schedule.
   1. Colors: As shown on drawings finish schedules.

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Construct recessed mat frames square, tight joints at corners, rigid.

B. Fabricate mats in single unit sizes; fabricate multiple mats where indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that floors for mats are ready to receive work.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Vacuum clean floors.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install walk-off surface after cleaning of finish flooring.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 0548

VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to Vibration Controls for Piping and Equipment, Section 23 0548 for fire-suppression vibration controls.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED.

PART 3 - EXECUTION – NOT USED.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 21 1000

WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This project requires the following fire-suppression system:
   1. The intent is to modify the existing fire suppression system as required to accommodate the new building addition.
   2. Provide NFPA 13 Compliant wet sprinkler system throughout entire building addition.
   3. Per DISD, the following scope and requirements shall also be met:
      a. Sprinkler head(s) and piping in elevator machine room shall be removed.
      b. Sprinkler head(s) and piping at top of elevator hoist way shall be removed. Sprinkler head(s) at bottom of elevator hoist way shall remain.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. High-Pressure Piping System: Fire-suppression piping system designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig.

B. Standard-Pressure Piping System: Fire-suppression piping system designed to operate at working pressure of 175 psig (1200 kPa) maximum.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Standard Piping System Component Working Pressure: Listed for at least 175 psig.

B. High-Pressure Piping System Component Working Pressure: Listed for 300 psig.

C. Delegated Design: Contractor shall design standpipe and sprinkler systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer or NICET Level III designer to insure system meets NFPA 13, 13R and 14 requirements. Provide sufficient flow to building based on available pressure.

D. Fire-suppression sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 20 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
   2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications shall be based on the current edition of NFPA-13 and 13R.

E. The total combined hose-stream demand requirement shall meet NFPA 14 unless noted otherwise.

F. System Inspection Maintenance Proposal: Contractor shall prepare and deliver a proposal to the building owner to provide inspection of the system, monitoring corrosion, and water treatment for the overall system.

a. Refer to NFPA 25 – Standard for Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems for requirements.
b. The plan shall include details about process and treatment during initial fill, periodic testing, maintenance/repair, or system additions/modifications that result in new domestic cold water entering the piping system.
c. Contractor is required to implement the action plan recommendations by treating the water or installing nitrogen insertion equipment as required.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Piping materials, including sprinkler specialty fittings.
2. Pipe hangers and supports.
3. Valves, including listed fire-protection valves, unlisted general-duty valves, and specialty valves and trim.
4. Excess-pressure pumps, including electrical data.
5. Sprinklers, escutcheons, and guards. Include sprinkler flow characteristics, mounting, finish, and other pertinent data.
6. Hose connections, including size, type, and finish.
7. Hose stations, including size, type, and finish of hose connections; type and length of fire hoses; finish of fire hose couplings; type, material, and finish of nozzles; and finish of rack.
8. Alarm devices, including electrical data.

B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Fire-hydrant flow test report. Contractor shall verify exact flow requirements prior to design of system.

D. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans prepared according to NFPA 13, 13R and 14 that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer or NICET Level III designer responsible for their preparation.
1. Include piping sizes, elevations, location of valves/accessories, etc.
2. Shop drawings shall show coordination with all other building trades.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:
1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing fire-suppression systems and providing professional engineering or certified designer services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer or NICET Level III designer.

B. NFPA Standards: Fire-suppression-system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the latest edition of the following:
1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
2. NFPA 14, "Installation of Standpipe, Private Hydrant, and Hose Systems."
3. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

B. Review plenum space and zones allowed for sprinkler system installation with other trades prior to submitting shop drawings.

C. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Owner's written permission.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials and wrenches as required by NFPA 13. At minimum, provide six (6) extra heads and twelve (12) escutcheons of each type and color. Locate in metal cabinet in sprinkler riser room, unless specifically shown on the plans in alternate location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Threaded-End, Standard-Weight Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, ASTM A 135, or ASTM A 795, with factory- or field-formed threaded ends. Provide hot-dipped galvanized where indicated. Piping shall be Schedule 40, U.S. domestic only. Foreign manufactured piping will not be accepted. Schedule 10 will not be accepted.
   1. Cast-Iron Threaded Flanges: ASME B16.1.
   2. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3.
   3. Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4.
   4. Steel Threaded Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe hot-dip galvanized where indicated. Include ends matching joining method.
   5. Steel Threaded Couplings: ASTM A 865 hot-dip galvanized-steel pipe where indicated.

B. Grooved-End, Standard-Weight Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, ASTM A 135, or ASTM A 795, with factory- or field-formed, roll-grooved ends. Provide hot-dipped galvanized where indicated. Piping shall be Schedule 40, U.S. domestic only. Foreign manufactured piping will not be accepted. Schedule 10 will not be accepted.
   1. Grooved-Joint Piping Systems:
      1) Victaulic Co. of America.
      2) Tyco Grinnell
      b. Grooved-End Fittings: UL-listed, ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting with OD matching steel-pipe OD.
      c. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings: UL 213 and AWWA C606, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting matching steel-pipe OD. Include ductile-iron housing with keys matching steel-pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated rubber gasket listed for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.

2.3 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Sprinkler specialty fittings shall be UL listed or FMG approved, with 175-psig minimum working-pressure rating, and made of materials compatible with piping. Sprinkler specialty fittings shall have 300-psig working-pressure rating if fittings are components of high-pressure piping system.

B. Sprinkler Drain and Alarm Test Fittings: Cast- or ductile-iron body; with threaded or locking-lug inlet and outlet, test valve, and orifice and sight glass.

C. Sprinkler Branch-Line Test Fittings: Brass body with threaded inlet, capped drain outlet, and threaded outlet for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fitting: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with threaded inlet and drain outlet and sight glass.

E. Drop-Nipple Fittings: UL 1474, adjustable with threaded inlet and outlet, and seals.

2.4 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

A. Valves shall be UL listed or FMG approved, with 175-psig minimum pressure rating. Valves shall have 300-psig pressure rating if valves are components of high-pressure piping system.

B. Gate Valves with Wall Indicator Posts:
1. Gate Valves: UL 262, cast-iron body, bronze mounted, with solid disc, nonrising stem, operating nut, and flanged ends.
2. Indicator Posts: UL 789, horizontal-wall type, cast-iron body, with hand wheel, extension rod, locking device, and cast-iron barrel.
3. Manufacturers:
    a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    b. Tyco Grinnell
    c. Viking Corp.

C. Ball Valves: Comply with UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc.
1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
2. NPS 2 and NPS 2-1/2: Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
3. NPS 3: Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
4. Manufacturers:
    a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    b. Tyco Grinnell
    c. Viking Corp.

D. Butterfly Valves: UL 1091.
1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
    a. Manufacturers:
        1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
        2) Tyco Grinnell
        3) Viking Corp.
2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Bronze, cast-iron, or ductile-iron body; wafer type or with flanged or grooved ends.
    a. Manufacturers:
        1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
        2) Tyco Grinnell
        3) Viking Corp.

E. Check Valves NPS 2 and Larger: UL 312, swing type, cast-iron body with flanged or grooved ends.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
      b. Tyco Grinnell
      c. Viking Corp.

F. Gate Valves: UL 262, OS&Y type.
   1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
      a. Manufacturers:
         1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
         2) Tyco Grinnell
         3) Viking Corp.
   2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Cast-iron body with flanged ends.
      a. Manufacturers:
         1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
         2) Tyco Grinnell
         3) Viking Corp.

G. Indicating Valves: UL 1091, with integral indicating device and ends matching connecting piping.
   1. Indicator: Electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, 2-circuit, supervisory switch.
   2. NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball or butterfly valve with bronze body and threaded ends.
      a. Manufacturers:
         1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
         2) Tyco Grinnell
         3) Viking Corp.
   3. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Butterfly valve with cast- or ductile-iron body; wafer type or with flanged or grooved ends.
      a. Manufacturers:
         1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
         2) Tyco Grinnell
         3) Viking Corp.

2.5 UNLISTED GENERAL-DUTY VALVES

A. Ball Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: MSS SP-110, 2-piece copper-alloy body with chrome-plated brass ball, 600-psig minimum CWP rating, blowout-proof stem, and threaded ends.

B. Check Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: MSS SP-80, Type 4, Class 125 minimum, swing type with bronze body, nonmetallic disc, and threaded ends.

C. Gate Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: MSS SP-80, Type 2, Class 125 minimum, with bronze body, solid wedge, and threaded ends.

D. Globe Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: MSS SP-80, Type 2, Class 125 minimum, with bronze body, nonmetallic disc, and threaded ends.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Sprinkler System Control Valves: UL listed or FMG approved, cast- or ductile-iron body with flanged or grooved ends, and 175-psig minimum pressure rating. Control valves shall have 300-psig pressure rating if valves are components of high-pressure piping system.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.

b. Tyco Grinnell
c. Viking Corp.

2. Alarm Check Valves: UL 193, designed for horizontal or vertical installation, with bronze grooved seat with O-ring seals, single-hinge pin, and latch design. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
   a. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
   b. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.

B. Pressure-Regulating Valves: UL 1468, brass or bronze, NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2-1/2, 400-psig minimum rating. Include female NPS inlet and outlet, adjustable setting feature, and straight or 90-degree-angle pattern design as indicated.
   1. Finish: Rough metal.
   2. Manufacturers:
      a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
      b. Tyco Grinnell
      c. Viking Corp.

C. Automatic Drain Valves: UL 1726, NPS 3/4, ball-check device with threaded ends.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
      b. Tyco Grinnell
      c. Viking Corp.

D. Automatic Air Vents: 175 psig brass construction with ball valve supervisory switch.

2.7 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

A. Manual Control Stations: UL listed or FMG approved, hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.8 CONTROL PANELS

A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned type control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves. Panels contain power supply; battery charger; standby batteries; field-wiring terminal strip; electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire alarm bell; lamp test facility; single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts; and rectifier.
   1. Panels: UL listed and FMG approved when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
   2. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and a cover held closed by breakable strut.

2.9 SPRINKLERS

A. Sprinklers shall be UL listed or FMG approved, with 175-psig minimum pressure rating. Sprinklers shall have 300-psig pressure rating if sprinklers are components of high-pressure piping system.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Tyco Grinnell
2. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
3. Viking Corp.

C. Sprinkler types, features, and options as follows:
1. Concealed ceiling sprinklers, including cover plate.
2. Extended-coverage sprinklers.
3. Pendent sprinklers.
4. Pendent, dry-type sprinklers.
5. Recessed sprinklers, including escutcheon.
6. Sidewall sprinklers.
7. Blue high temperature.

D. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, or factory painted – coordinate finishes with architect.

E. Special Coatings: Wax, lead, and corrosion-resistant paint.

F. Sprinkler Guards: Wire-cage type, including fastening device for attaching to sprinkler. Guards must be listed with the sprinklers they are attached.

2.10 HOSE CONNECTIONS

A. Manufacturers:
1. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
2. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
3. Guardian Fire Equipment Incorporated.
4. Potter-Roemer; Fire-Protection Div.

B. Description: UL 668, brass or bronze, 300-psig minimum pressure rating, hose valve for connecting fire hose. Include angle or gate pattern design; female NPS inlet and male hose outlet; and lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include NPS 1-1/2 or NPS 2-1/2 as indicated, and hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department threads.
1. Valve Operation: Pressure-regulating type.
2. Finish: Rough metal or chrome-plated.

2.11 MONITORS

A. Manufacturers:
1. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
2. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
3. Guardian Fire Equipment Incorporated.
4. Potter-Roemer; Fire-Protection Div.

B. Description: Stationary, single-waterway-type monitor for 750-gpm water stream. Include the following features:
1. Waterway: NPS 2-1/2 minimum, brass or stainless-steel tube.
2. Operation: Lever handle.
3. Horizontal Rotation: 360 degrees with locking device.
4. Vertical Rotation: 80-degree elevation and 60-degree depression with locking device.
5. Nozzle: UL 401, NPS 2-1/2, brass, adjustable from fog spray to straight stream to shutoff.

2.12 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Electrically Operated Alarm: UL 464, with 8-inch- minimum- diameter, vibrating-type, metal alarm bell with red-enamel factory finish and suitable for outdoor use.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
      b. System Sensor.

C. Water-Flow Indicator: UL 346, electrical-supervision, paddle-operated-type, water-flow detector with 250-psig pressure rating and designed for horizontal or vertical installation. Include two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
      b. System Sensor.

D. Pressure Switch: UL 753, electrical-supervision-type, water-flow switch with retard feature. Include single-pole, double-throw, normally closed contacts and design that operates on rising pressure and signals water flow.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
      b. System Sensor.

E. Valve Supervisory Switch: UL 753, electrical, single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts. Include design that signals controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
      b. System Sensor.

F. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switch: UL 753, electrical, single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts. Include design that signals controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
      b. System Sensor.

G. Tamper Switch: Supervised tamper switch, double pole, single throw, with cast aluminum housing and tamperproof cover.

2.13 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers:
   1. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
   2. Brecco Corporation.
   3. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

B. Description: UL 393, 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch- diameter, dial pressure gage with range of 0 to 300 psig.
   1. Water System Piping: Include caption "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" on dial face.
   2. Air System Piping: Include retard feature and caption "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" on dial face.

2.14 CORROSION MONITORING STATION

A. Fire riser mounted station with coupon rack, coupons, corrosion monitoring probe and pressure switch.

B. Potter PCMS-RM and PCMPK-1 or equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13, NFPA 14, and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for hose connections and stations to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.

B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable thicknesses, fire- and smoke-rated construction, framing for hose-station cabinets, and other conditions where hose connections and stations are to be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

A. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.

B. Flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings with finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating may be used in aboveground applications, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Hot-Dipped Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

3.4 SPRINKLER SYSTEM PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, 175-psig Maximum Working Pressure:
   1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; cast- or malleable-iron threaded fittings; threaded joints, or rolled grooved end pipe couplings.
   2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Grooved-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; grooved joints, or welded fittings and joints.
   3. NPS 5: Threaded-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; cast- or malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
   4. NPS 5: Plain-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
   5. NPS 5: Grooved-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

B. High-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, 175- to 250-psig Working Pressure:

1. All Sizes: Plain-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
2. All Sizes: Grooved-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

3.5 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
   1. Listed Fire-Protection Valves: UL listed and FMG approved for applications where required by NFPA 13 and NFPA 14.
      a. Shutoff Duty: Use ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
   2. Unlisted General-Duty Valves: For applications where UL-listed and FMG-approved valves are not required by NFPA 13 and NFPA 14.
      a. Shutoff Duty: Use ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
      b. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves.

B. Install automatic air vents at system highpoints and other locations where air may be trapped. Terminate air vents over nearby floor sinks.

C. All valves shall be color coded and painted to identify each zone controlled.

3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Threaded Joints: Comply with NFPA 13 for pipe thickness and threads. Do not thread pipe smaller than NPS 8 with wall thickness less than Schedule 40 unless approved by authorities having jurisdiction and threads are checked by a ring gage and comply with ASME B1.20.1.

B. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain-end piping into locking-lug fitting and rotate retainer lug one-quarter turn.

C. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use UL-listed tool and procedure. Include use of specific equipment, pressure-sealing tool, and accessories.

D. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with listed coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts.
   1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: Radius-cut-groove ends of piping. Use grooved-end fittings and grooved-end-pipe couplings.
   2. Steel Pipe: Square-cut or roll-groove piping as indicated. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Dry-Pipe Systems: Use galvanized fittings and gaskets listed for dry-pipe service.

E. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.

3.7 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
   1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.

2. Conceal piping above ceilings wherever possible. Exposed piping must be at least 9'-0" above finished floor. Paint exposed piping per Architect's color scheme for the space. Do not locate piping where it will inhibit access to serviceable equipment.

B. Use approved fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

C. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller. Unions are not required on flanged devices or in piping installations using grooved joints.

D. Install flanges or flange adapters on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger connections.

E. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, sized and located according to NFPA 13.

F. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

G. Install sprinkler zone control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

H. Install drain valves on standpipes.

I. Install ball drip valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or outside building.

J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

K. Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA 13 for hanger materials.
1. Install standpipe system piping according to NFPA 14.
2. Install sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13.
3. Independently support fire protection system from structure and locate at or near the bottom of structural framing.

L. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.

M. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping and air-pressure maintenance devices.

N. Fill wet-pipe sprinkler system piping with water.

O. Install flexible connectors on fire-pump and pressure-maintenance-pump supply and discharge connections.

P. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Division 22 "Heat Tracing for Piping" and for piping insulation in Division 22 "Piping Insulation."

3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, unlisted general-duty valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water supply sources.

D. Specialty Valves:
   1. Alarm Check Valves: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, including bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

3.9 SPRINKLER APPLICATIONS

A. Drawings may indicate specific sprinkler types in some areas. Where specific types are not indicated, use the following sprinkler types:
   1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
   2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers. (Reliable model G1 with chrome cover plate, or equal).
   3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
   4. Sprinkler Finishes:
      a. Upright Sprinklers: Rough bronze; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.
      b. Other sprinklers: Coordinate all finishes with architect.

3.10 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels and tiles.

B. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing. Use dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space.

C. Install blue high temperature sprinklers where applicable.

3.11 HOSE-CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install freestanding hose connections for access and minimum passage restriction.

C. Install NPS 2-1/2 hose connections with quick-disconnect NPS 2-1/2 by NPS 1-1/2reducer adapter and flow-restricting device, unless otherwise indicated.

3.12 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect water-supply piping to fire-suppression piping. Include backflow preventer between potable-water piping and fire-suppression piping.

D. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire department connection. Drain to floor drain or outside building.

E. Connect piping to specialty valves, hose valves, specialties, fire department connections, and accessories.

F. Electrical Connections: Power wiring is specified in Division 26.

G. Connect alarm devices to fire alarm.

H. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

I. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

J. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

K. Connect nitrogen generator to fire protection piping, power and fire alarm system.

3.13 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13 and NFPA 14.

B. Provide all signage required by NFPA 13 and NFPA 14.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
4. Start and run excess-pressure pumps.
5. Start and run air compressors.
6. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
7. Flush, test, and inspect standpipe systems according to NFPA 14, "System Acceptance" Chapter.
8. Coordinate with fire alarm tests. Operate as required.
9. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
10. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
11. Verify that materials containing corrosive plasticizers are not in contact with CPVC piping.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

3.15 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

C. Protect sprinklers from damage until Substantial Completion.

D. Follow the system filling action plan to treat domestic cold water and remove oxygen as required. Post the action plan at the fire protection service riser, detailing requirements for future maintenance, repair, or system additions.

E. Confirm nitrogen generator is working property and that the nitrogen level in the system is correct.

3.16 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 0500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Mechanical sleeve seals.
3. Sleeves.
4. Escutcheons.
5. Grout.
6. Fire-suppression equipment and piping demolition.
7. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
8. Painting and finishing.
9. Concrete bases.
10. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.

E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Mechanical sleeve seals.
2. Escutcheons.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for fire-suppression installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for fire-suppression items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

1.8 ELECTRICAL, PLUMBING, AND CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS OF EQUIPMENT

A. The electrical, plumbing, and control characteristics of each item of equipment scheduled, noted and/or indicated on the plans and specifications are based on a particular manufacturer and model. While other manufacturers or models may be acceptable, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to verify that the electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics for the equipment he proposes to provide match those indicated. In the instance where the equipment he proposes to provide has different electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics, the Contractor AT NO COST TO THE OWNER shall provide the required electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics required. All modifications to provide the electrical, plumbing, and control characteristics shall be coordinated by the Contractor with the Engineer.

B. When any equipment is operable, and it is to the advantage of the Contractor to operate the equipment, he may do so provided that he properly supervises the operation, and retains full responsibility for the equipment operated.

C. Regardless of whether or not the equipment has or has not been operated, the Contractor shall clean the equipment properly, make required adjustments, and complete punch list items before final acceptance by the Owner.

D. The date of acceptance by the Architect, for beneficial use by the Owner, shall be the beginning date of the warranty period. The warranty period for all materials, equipment, products, and contractor's work shall be one year from date of substantial completion. Refer to individual specification sections for extended warranty requirements.

1.9 SPACE AND EQUIPMENT ARRANGEMENT

A. The size of each item of mechanical equipment shown on Drawings is based on the dimensions of a particular manufacturer. While other manufacturers may be acceptable, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine whether or not the equipment he proposes to furnish will fit into the space. Shop drawings shall be prepared when required by the Architect to indicate a suitable arrangement.

B. Install equipment in a manner to permit access to all surfaces. Install valves, motors, drives, lubricating devices, filters, and other accessory items in a position to allow removal for service without requiring the disassembly of another part.

C. Large equipment or components which will be installed in the building, and which are too large to permit access through doorways, stairways or shafts, shall be brought to the site and placed in the appropriate spaces before the enclosing structure is completed. The equipment shall be protected until all hazards of damage to the equipment are eliminated.

1.10 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Manuals shall be submitted which contain the following:

B. Description of the system provided.
   1. Handling, storage, and installation instructions.
   2. Detailed description of the function of each principal component of the systems or equipment, including necessary piping diagrams and valve identification charts.
   3. Operating procedures:
      a. Pre startup activities required.
      b. Startup.
      c. Normal operation.
      d. Emergency shutdown.
      e. Normal shutdown.
      f. Trouble-shooting guide.
   4. Maintenance:
      a. Complete lubrication requirements; type and source of lubricant, internal between lubrication, etc.
      b. Preventative and repair maintenance procedures.
      c. Complete spare parts list with cross reference to original equipment manufacturer part number.
   5. Control and alarm features:
      a. A schematic of all control systems.
      b. Control loop electric ladder diagrams and interlock diagrams.
      c. A list of all controller operating set points.
      d. A listing of all setting for alarms and shutdown system.
      e. Provide pump curves for all pumps.
      f. Provide fan curves for all fans.
   6. Safety and environmental considerations.
   7. Other data required elsewhere in the specifications.

C. Three copies of the manuals shall be provided within sufficient time to allow for training of Owner's personnel. Submit one copy of the manuals to the Architect for review no later than 90 calendar days prior to substantial completion or building turn over, whichever comes first. Submit the remaining three corrected copies within 15 days after review set is returned to contractor. Progress payment may be withheld if this requirement is not met.

D. The requirements for manuals apply to each package and field-fabricated operating system.

E. The manuals shall be provided in three-ring side binders with durable plastic covers.

F. The manuals shall contain a detailed table of contents and have tab dividers for major sections and special equipment.

G. The Owner will not accept any training or equipment unless the maintenance manuals are received a minimum of 10 working days prior to request for Training/Turnover.

1.11 START-UP EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

A. Whenever the manufacturer of a particular item of equipment or a particular system makes available a start-up service after completion of the installation, such manufacturer's start-up service (rendered by the manufacturer or his authorized representative) shall be provided.

B. Witnessing and explanations of start-up services shall be included as part of the "Instruction of Owner's Personnel" as specified below.

1.12 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL

A. Provide the services of competent engineers or technicians acceptable to the Architect to instruct representatives of the Owner in complete and detailed operation and maintenance of each item of equipment, and each system. These instructions shall be provided for whatever periods may be necessary to accomplish the desired results. Upon completion of these instructions, the Contractor shall obtain a letter of release, acknowledged by the Owner or his authorizes representative, stating the dates on which the various kinds of instruction were given, and the personnel to whom the instructions were given.

B. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for proper maintenance of equipment and systems until the instructions have been given to the Owner's personnel and the letter of release acknowledged.

C. In providing the instructions to the Owner's personnel, the written operating and maintenance manuals shall be followed in all instances, and the Owner's personnel shall be familiarized with such manuals.

1.13 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

A. The Contractor shall, during the progress of the job, keep a set of record prints on which he shall mark all changes. After completion of a CADD release form by the Contractor and near the conclusion of the job, the Architect will provide the Contractor with one set of AutoCAD electronic files of the Mechanical, Plumbing, and Electrical Drawings. The Contractor shall draft on these electronic files all changes made during the progress of the work and return them and one set of paper plans with the changes to the Architect as "As-Built Drawings".

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
   2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.

B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.

B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
   2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
   1. Available Manufacturers:
      a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
      b. Calpico, Inc.
      c. Metraflex Co.
      d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.

3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.5 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.

F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.

G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.

H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.7 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.

2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.8 FLAME SPREAD PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS

A. Materials used for insulation, acoustical linings, adhesives, jackets and coatings, and combinations of these materials, shall each have a flame spread rating of 25 or less, and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less, as determined by an independent testing laboratory in accordance with NFPA-255.

2.9 FIRESTOPPING

A. Provide firestopping in sealing of penetrations in fire-rated construction, horizontal and vertical, including the following materials:
1. Foam: Dow Corning Firestop silicone RTV foam, liquid component Part A (black) and liquid component Part B (off-white).
2. Sealant: 3M 1000NS and 1003SL silicone adhesive sealant, single component, neutral cure, and non-slumping.
3. Damming Materials: Mineral fiberboard, mineral fiber matting, mineral fiber putty, plywood or particle board, as selected by the applicator.

B. Mixes shall conform to the manufacturer's directions.

2.10 ACCESS PANELS AND DOORS

A. Provide wall and ceiling access doors for unrestricted access to concealed valves, dampers, and other mechanical equipment items and devices.

B. Access doors mounted in surfaces to be painted shall be Milcor Style "K" for plastered surfaces, and Style "M" for non-plastered surfaces. Style "K" doors shall be set with door flush with adjacent surfaces. Access doors mounted on tile surfaces shall be stainless steel and of similar construction to that described above. Access doors shall be not less than 12" x 12" in size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FIRE-SUPPRESSION DEMOLITION

A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. Portions of the system which are temporarily removed must be reinstalled to be fully code compliant. Modify existing sprinkler systems, for project renovations, to be fully code compliant.

C. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.

D. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

E. Access: Access to and use of the existing facilities and site will be restricted, and shall be under the direction and control of the Owner.

F. Disruptions: Maintain existing plumbing, heating, ventilating, air conditioning, fire protection, and other existing systems, and maintain all existing functions in service except for scheduled disruption. Where existing functions to remain in use are disrupted, they shall be fully restored after disruption, in full compliance with this Division of the Specifications for new work.

G. Scheduling of Disruption: Seek and obtain approval two weeks in advance of event for date, starting, and duration of each required disruption.

H. Notice of Disruption: Date, time and duration of each disruption shall be subject to the Owner's prior approval, and shall include the following information in the form of a memorandum submitted by the Contractor to the Architect for approval by the Owner:

Facility/System	Date	Starting Time	Duration

I. Emergency Disruptions: When circumstances preclude obtaining advance approval as specified above; make request immediately on knowledge of the requirement, and perform the work so as to cause the minimum amount of disruption, for the minimum duration.

J. Notification: Notify the Architect and the owner immediately, by telephone and then in writing, as changes and additions to the scheduled disruption requirements become known.

K. Duration: Complete as large a portion of the work as possible before initiating disruption and perform only that work necessary so as to minimize duration of disruption. Maintain adequate personnel, supplies, materials, equipment, tools, and other resources at job site to avoid unnecessary delay in resumption of normal service.

L. General:
1. Modify remove, or relocate materials and items indicated on the Drawings or required by the installation of new facilities.
2. Remove demolition materials from the site and deliver salvage materials to destinations on the premises, as directed.

M. Relocations:
1. Repair and restore to good functional condition, equipment, materials and items scheduled for relocation, which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations.
2. Remove carefully, in reserve order to original assembly or placement, items which are to be relocated.
3. Protect items until relocation is complete.
4. Clean and repair items to be relocated, and provide new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore to good operating order.
5. Perform the relocation work in accordance with applicable Sections of the Specifications, utilizing skilled workers.

N. Relocating Devices: Remove and reinstall in locations designated by the Architect temperature control system devices, relays, piping, ductwork, equipment and other devices required for the operation of the various systems that are installed in existing-to-be-renovated construction.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

G. Install piping at indicated slopes.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
   1. New Piping:
      a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
      d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
      f. Bare Piping at Wall, Floor, or Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.

M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.

O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.

P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
   2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
   3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
      a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
      b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
      c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
         1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
   4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
   2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
   3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.

T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. The Drawings and Specifications are intended to accomplish certain objectives. They show pipe and duct sizes, general routing and location, and describe the various systems. These documents describe and size equipment, its general location, usage, support and auxiliary requirements. They describe most, but not all of the materials and their usage for this project.

B. Contract Documents do not, however, detail certain job requirements. They do not show exact layouts, locations or elevations of ducts, expansion joints, anchors, sleeves, hangers, slots, holes, outlets, inserts, elbows, fittings, thermometers, thermostats, gauges, wells, underfloor drains, sumps, or access doors. They do not show final precise locations of equipment by dimensions in most instances, or manufacturer’s requirements for proper installation, operation and maintenance.

C. The exact location of each item shall be determined by reference to the project Contract Drawings, and to details, equipment drawings, and roughing-in drawings, by measurements at the building, and in cooperation with the various trades. Minor relocations necessitated by the conditions at the site or directed by the Owner shall be made without additional cost to the Owner.

D. Coordinate proper locations and sizes of slots, holes or openings in the building structure pertaining to this work, and for the correct location of sleeves. Place inserts to accommodate the ultimate installation of hangers in the forms, and set sleeves in forms before concrete is poured, and in masonry walls while they are under construction. Concealed lines shall be installed as required by the pace of the job to precede the general construction.

E. Study construction documents and lay out piping work carefully in advance of fabrication and erection, in order to meet the requirements of the extremely limited spaces. Where conflicts occur, work with all involved trades and resolve the conflict prior to erection of any work in the area involved.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Painting of fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."

B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

C. Do not paint any fire-suppression equipment that would result in warranty being voided.

3.6 CONCRETE BASES

A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
   1. Construct minimum 3-1/2” concrete bases of dimensions in accordance with approved shop drawings, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
   2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   4. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
   5. Chamfer corners of all housekeeping pads.
   6. Refer to Structural for housekeeping pad construction and reinforcement requirements.

3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.

B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.

C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.9 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for fire-suppression equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.

B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.

E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 0500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
5. Sleeves.
6. Escutcheons.
7. Grout.
8. Plumbing demolition.
9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
10. Painting and finishing.
11. Concrete bases.
12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.

E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction to allow for plumbing installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

1.8 GENERAL

A. For Products specified by reference to an association or trade standard, comply with requirements and recommendations stated in that standard, except when requirements are modified by the Contract Documents, or applicable codes establish stricter standards.

B. The date of the standard is that in effect on the date of issue of Contract Documents, except when a specific publication date is specified. Obtain copies of referenced standards direct from

publication source, when needed for proper performance of Work, or when required for submittal by Contract Documents.

1.9 SCHEDULE OF ABBREVIATIONS

A. Reference standards are listed in various sections using abbreviations contained below:

AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
ABMA	American Boiler Manufacturer Association
ADC	Air Diffusion Council
AGA	American Gas Association
AIA	American Insurance Association
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ARI	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
ASA	Acoustical Society of America
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASPE	American Society of Plumbing Engineers
ASTM	American Society of Testing and Materials
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Work Association
CTI	Cooling Tower Institute
FM	Factory Mutual Engineering and Research
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
IRI	Industrial Risk Insurers
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry
MCAA	Mechanical Contractor's Association of America
NEBB	National Environmental Balancing Bureau
NBS	National Bureau of Standards
NRCA	National Roofing Contractor's Association
NEC	National Electrical Code
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
OSHA	Occupation Safety and Health Administration
PDI	Plumbing and Drainage Institute

1.10 ELECTRICAL, PLUMBING, AND CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS OF EQUIPMENT

A. The electrical, plumbing, and control characteristics of each item of equipment scheduled, noted and/or indicated on the plans and specifications are based on a particular manufacturer and model. While other manufacturers or models may be acceptable, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to verify that the electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics for the equipment he proposes to provide match those indicated. In the instance where the equipment he proposes to provide has different electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics, the Contractor AT NO COST TO THE OWNER shall provide the required electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics required. All modifications to provide the electrical, plumbing, and control characteristics shall be coordinated by the Contractor with the Engineer.

B. Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 22 0513 for details.

C. When any equipment is operable, and it is to the advantage of the Contractor to operate the equipment, he may do so provided that he properly supervises the operation, and retains full responsibility for the equipment operated.

D. Regardless of whether or not the equipment has or has not been operated, the Contractor shall clean the equipment properly, make required adjustments, and complete punch list items before final acceptance by the Owner.

E. The date of acceptance by the Architect, for beneficial use by the Owner, shall be the beginning date of the warranty period. The warranty period for all materials, equipment, products, and contractor's work shall be one year from date of substantial completion. Refer to individual specification sections for extended warranty requirements.

1.11 SPACE AND EQUIPMENT ARRANGEMENT

A. The size of each item of mechanical equipment shown on Drawings is based on the dimensions of a particular manufacturer. While other manufacturers may be acceptable, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine whether or not the equipment he proposes to furnish will fit into the space. Shop drawings shall be prepared when required by the Architect to indicate a suitable arrangement.

B. Install equipment in a manner to permit access to all surfaces. Install valves, motors, drives, lubricating devices, filters, and other accessory items in a position to allow removal for service without requiring the disassembly of another part.

C. Large equipment or components which will be installed in the building, and which are too large to permit access through doorways, stairways or shafts, shall be brought to the site and placed in the appropriate spaces before the enclosing structure is completed. The equipment shall be protected until all hazards of damage to the equipment are eliminated.

1.12 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Manuals shall be submitted which contain the following:

B. Description of the system provided.
   1. Handling, storage, and installation instructions.
   2. Detailed description of the function of each principal component of the systems or equipment, including necessary piping diagrams and valve identification charts.
   3. Operating procedures:
      a. Pre startup activities required.
      b. Startup.
      c. Normal operation.
      d. Emergency shutdown.
      e. Normal shutdown.
      f. Trouble-shooting guide.
   4. Maintenance:
      a. Complete lubrication requirements; type and source of lubricant, internal between lubrication, etc.
      b. Preventative and repair maintenance procedures.
      c. Complete spare parts list with cross reference to original equipment manufacturer part number.
   5. Control and alarm features:
      a. A schematic of all control systems.
      b. Control loop electric ladder diagrams and interlock diagrams.
      c. A list of all controller operating set points.
      d. A listing of all setting for alarms and shutdown system.
      e. Provide pump curves for all pumps.
      f. Provide fan curves for all fans.
   6. Safety and environmental considerations.
   7. Other data required elsewhere in the specifications.

C. Three copies of the manuals shall be provided within sufficient time to allow for training of Owner's personnel. Submit one copy of the manuals to the Architect for review no later than 90 calendar days prior to substantial completion or building turn over, whichever comes first. Submit the remaining three corrected copies within 15 days after review set is returned to contractor. Progress payment may be withheld if this requirement is not met.

D. The requirements for manuals apply to each package and field-fabricated operating system.

E. The manuals shall be provided in three-ring side binders with durable plastic covers.

F. The manuals shall contain a detailed table of contents and have tab dividers for major sections and special equipment.

G. The Owner will not accept any training or equipment unless the maintenance manuals are received a minimum of 10 working days prior to request for Training/Turnover.

1.13 START-UP EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

A. Whenever the manufacturer of a particular item of equipment or a particular system makes available a start-up service after completion of the installation, such manufacturer's start-up service (rendered by the manufacturer or his authorized representative) shall be provided.

B. Witnessing and explanations of start-up services shall be included as part of the "Instruction of Owner's Personnel" as specified below.

1.14 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL

A. Provide the services of competent engineers or technicians acceptable to the Architect to instruct representatives of the Owner in complete and detailed operation and maintenance of each item of equipment, and each system. These instructions shall be provided for whatever periods may be necessary to accomplish the desired results. Upon completion of these instructions, the Contractor shall obtain a letter of release, acknowledged by the Owner or his authorizes representative, stating the dates on which the various kinds of instruction were given, and the personnel to whom the instructions were given.

B. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for proper maintenance of equipment and systems until the instructions have been given to the Owner's personnel and the letter of release acknowledged.

C. In providing the instructions to the Owner's personnel, the written operating and maintenance manuals shall be followed in all instances, and the Owner's personnel shall be familiarized with such manuals.

1.15 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

A. The Contractor shall, during the progress of the job, keep a set of record prints on which he shall mark all changes. After completion of a CADD release form by the Contractor and near the conclusion of the job, the Architect will provide the Contractor with one set of AutoCAD electronic files of the Mechanical, Plumbing, and Electrical Drawings. The Contractor shall draft on these electronic files all changes made during the progress of the work and return them and one set of paper plans with the changes to the Architect as "As-Built Drawings".

B. As-Built Drawings shall note the location of all isolation valves and water hammer arrestors on the project.

1.16 COORDINATION WITH PLUMBING COMMISSIONING AGENT (CXP)

A. Contractor shall provide assistance and support to the project commissioning agent, hired by the Owner.

B. A general description of the Contractor's work includes the following items.
1. Provide all personnel, tools, materials, and equipment to support the commissioning process.
2. Facilitate the coordination of the commissioning work by the CxP.
3. Incorporate all commissioning related activities into the project schedule, ensuring that Cx activities do not delay project completion.
4. Notify Dallas ISD and the CxP in writing that equipment and systems are ready for functional testing.
5. Perform equipment startups using authorized manufacturers' representatives.
6. Provide written documentation to the CxP that equipment and systems are fully operational and ready to be functionally performance tested.
7. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxP.
8. Attend construction phase commissioning coordination meetings.
9. Provide qualified personnel for participation in commissioning tests.
10. Provide equipment, materials, and labor to correct deficiencies found during the commissioning process.
11. Participate in plumbing system, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientations and inspections as directed by the CxP.
12. Provide information requested by the CxP for commissioning documentation and testing.
13. Perform all quality control functions to ensure equipment and systems are installed properly. Ensure equipment and systems are brought to a state of readiness and full functionality prior to commencing the commissioning functional performance testing processes.
14. Provide a representative to attend end of warranty testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

B. Each item of equipment furnished on this project shall have local representation. Factory authorized service, and adequate stock of repair parts. "Local" shall be defined for this purpose as within 50 miles of the project site.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.

B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.

B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
   2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
   1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
   2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
   3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
   4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
   1. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
   2. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
   3. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.

E. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.

D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

F. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
   1. Available Manufacturers:
      a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
      b. Calpico, Inc.
      c. Metraflex Co.
      d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
   3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
   4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

C. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
   1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

D. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
   1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or rough brass.

D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
   1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or rough brass.

E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.

F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.

G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.

H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
   1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
   2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
   3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.10 FLAME SPREAD PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS

A. Materials used for insulation, acoustical linings, adhesives, jackets and coatings, and combinations of these materials, shall each have a flame spread rating of 25 or less, and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less, as determined by an independent testing laboratory in accordance with NFPA-255.

2.11 FIRESTOPPING

A. Provide firestopping in sealing of penetrations in fire-rated construction, horizontal and vertical, including the following materials:
   1. Foam: Dow Corning Firestop silicone RTV foam, liquid component Part A (black) and liquid component Part B (off-white).
   2. Sealant: 3M 1000NS and 1003SL silicone adhesive sealant, single component, neutral cure, and non-slumping.
   3. Damming Materials: Mineral fiberboard, mineral fiber matting, mineral fiber putty, plywood or particle board, as selected by the applicator.
   4. Pre-installed (firestop devices for use with noncombustible and/or combustible pipes (closed and open systems), conduit, and/or cable bundles penetrating concrete floors, the following products are acceptable:
      a. Hilti CP 680P or CP 680M Cast-In Place Firestop Devices:
         1) Add Aerator adapter when used in conjunction with an Aerator (Sovent system)
         2) Add metal deck adapter kit if utilizing CP 680P or M on corrugated metal deck.
         3) Add height extension if utilizing CP 680P or M in concrete slabs thicker than 8”.
         4) Add Hilti Water Module (2” up to 6”) to achieve UL W-Rating
         5) Add Hilti TOP SEAL (1/2” up to 2”) to achieve UL W-Rating

b. Hilti CP 681 Tub Box Kit for use with bath tub installations.
c. Hilti Toilet Flange for use with floor outlet water closets.
d. Hilti coupling sleeve for use with floor, shower or general purposes drains.

5. Post installed (firestop devices for use with noncombustible and/or combustible pipes (closed and open systems), conduit, and/or cable bundles penetrating concrete floors, the following products are acceptable
   a. Hilti Firestop Drop-In Device (CFS-DID) for use with noncombustible and combustible penetrants

B. Mixes shall conform to the manufacturer's directions.

2.12 ACCESS PANELS AND DOORS

A. Provide wall and ceiling access doors for unrestricted access to concealed valves, dampers, and other mechanical equipment items and devices.

B. Access doors mounted in surfaces to be painted shall be Milcor Style "K" for plastered surfaces, and Style "M" for non-plastered surfaces. Style "K" doors shall be set with door flush with adjacent surfaces. Access doors mounted on tile surfaces shall be stainless steel and of similar construction to that described above. Access doors shall be not less than 12" x 12" in size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.
1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
2. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.

C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

D. Access: Access to and use of the existing facilities and site will be restricted, and shall be under the direction and control of the Owner.

E. Disruptions: Maintain existing plumbing, heating, ventilating, air conditioning, fire protection, and other existing systems, and maintain all existing functions in service except for scheduled disruption. Where existing functions to remain in use are disrupted, they shall be fully restored after disruption, in full compliance with this Division of the Specifications for new work.

F. Scheduling of Disruption: Seek and obtain approval two weeks in advance of event for date, starting, and duration of each required disruption.

G. Notice of Disruption: Date, time and duration of each disruption shall be subject to the Owner's prior approval, and shall include the following information in the form of a memorandum submitted by the Contractor to the Architect for approval by the Owner:

Facility/System	Date	Starting Time	Duration

H. Emergency Disruptions: When circumstances preclude obtaining advance approval as specified above; make request immediately on knowledge of the requirement, and perform the work so as to cause the minimum amount of disruption, for the minimum duration.

I. Notification: Notify the Architect and the owner immediately, by telephone and then in writing, as changes and additions to the scheduled disruption requirements become known.

J. Duration: Complete as large a portion of the work as possible before initiating disruption and perform only that work necessary so as to minimize duration of disruption. Maintain adequate personnel, supplies, materials, equipment, tools, and other resources at job site to avoid unnecessary delay in resumption of normal service.

K. General:
1. Modify remove, or relocate materials and items indicated on the Drawings or required by the installation of new facilities.
2. Remove demolition materials from the site and deliver salvage materials to destinations on the premises, as directed.

L. Relocations:
1. Repair and restore to good functional condition, equipment, materials and items scheduled for relocation, which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations.
2. Remove carefully, in reserve order to original assembly or placement, items which are to be relocated.
3. Protect items until relocation is complete.
4. Clean and repair items to be relocated, and provide new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore to good operating order.
5. Perform the relocation work in accordance with applicable Sections of the Specifications, utilizing skilled workers.

M. Relocating Devices: Remove and reinstall in locations designated by the Architect temperature control system devices, relays, piping, ductwork, equipment and other devices required for the operation of the various systems that are installed in existing-to-be-renovated construction.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

G. Install piping at indicated slopes.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
   1. Piping:
      a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
      d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.

M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.

N. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces in walls.
   2. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
   3. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
   4. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
      a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
      b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
      c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
         1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
   5. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

O. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
   2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
   3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

P. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

Q. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.

R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

S. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
   3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.

J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.

K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.6 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. The Drawings and Specifications are intended to accomplish certain objectives. They show pipe and duct sizes, general routing and location, and describe the various systems. These documents describe and size equipment, its general location, usage, support and auxiliary requirements. They describe most, but not all of the materials and their usage for this project.

B. Contract Documents do not, however, detail certain job requirements. They do not show exact layouts, locations or elevations of ducts, expansion joints, anchors, sleeves, hangers, slots, holes, outlets, inserts, elbows, fittings, thermometers, thermostats, gauges, wells, underfloor drains, sumps, or access doors. They do not show final precise locations of equipment by

dimensions in most instances or manufacturer's requirements for proper installation, operation and maintenance.

C. The exact location of each item shall be determined by reference to the project Contract Drawings, and to details, equipment drawings, and roughing-in drawings, by measurements at the building, and in cooperation with the various trades. Minor relocations necessitated by the conditions at the site or directed by the Owner shall be made without additional cost to the Owner.

D. Coordinate proper locations and sizes of slots, holes or openings in the building structure pertaining to this work, and for the correct location of sleeves. Place inserts to accommodate the ultimate installation of hangers in the forms, and set sleeves in forms before concrete is poured, and in masonry walls while they are under construction. Concealed lines shall be installed as required by the pace of the job to precede the general construction.

E. Study construction documents and lay out piping work carefully in advance of fabrication and erection, in order to meet the requirements of the extremely limited spaces. Where conflicts occur, work with all involved trades and resolve the conflict prior to erection of any work in the area involved.

3.7 PAINTING

A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."

B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

C. This contractor shall be responsible to coordinate with the painting contractor to paint all exterior metallic gas piping and fittings. Refer to Division 09 Painting specification.

3.8 CONCRETE BASES

A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
1. Construct minimum 3-1/2" concrete bases of dimensions in accordance with approved shop drawings, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
4. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Chamfer corners of all housekeeping pads.
6. Provide necessary foundations for exterior equipment pads and confirm construction of required pads with structural engineer.
7. Refer to Structural for housekeeping pad construction and reinforcement requirements.

3.9 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.10 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.

B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.

E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

3.11 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR PLUMBING WORK

A. Excavation
1. General: Do not excavate for mechanical work until work is ready to proceed without delay, so that time lapse from excavation to completion of backfilling will be minimum.
2. Excavate with vertical sided excavations to greatest extent possible, except where otherwise indicated. Where necessary, provide sheeting and cross-bracing to sustain sides of excavations. Remove sheeting and cross-bracing during backfilling wherever such removal would not endanger work or other property. Where not removed, cut sheeting off at sufficient distance below finished grade to not interfere with other work.
3. Width: Excavate for piping with 6" to 9" clearance on both sides of pipe, except where otherwise shown or required for proper installation of pipe joists, fittings, valves and other work. Excavate for other mechanical work to provide minimum practical but adequate working clearances.
4. Depth for Direct Support: For work to be supported directly on undisturbed soil, do not excavate beyond indicated depths, and hand-excavate bottom cut to accurate elevations.
5. Depth for Subbase Support: For large piping (6" pipe size and larger), tanks, and where indicated for other mechanical work, excavate for installation of subbase material in depth indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, 6" below bottom of work to be supported.
6. Shoring and Bracing: Provide materials for shoring and bracing to comply with local codes and authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain shoring and bracing in excavations regardless of time period excavations will be open. Carry down shoring and bracing as excavation progresses.
7. Excavation for Trenches:
    a. Dig trenches to uniform width required for particular item to be installed, sufficiently wide to provide ample working room. Provide 6" to 9" clearance on both sides of piping.
    b. Excavate trenches to depth indicated or required. Carry depth of trenches for piping to establish indicated flow lines and invert elevations. Beyond building perimeter, keep bottoms of trenches sufficiently below finish grade to avoid freeze-ups.
    c. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation 6" below required elevation and backfill with 6" layer of crushed stone or gravel prior to installation of pipe.
    d. For piping 5" or less in nominal size, do not excavate beyond indicated depths. Hand excavate bottom cut to accurate elevations and support piping on undisturbed soil.

e. For piping 6" and larger in nominal size, tanks, and other mechanical work indicated to receive subbase, excavate to subbase depth indicated, or if not otherwise indicated, to below bottom of work to be supported.
f. Grade bottoms of trenches as indicated, notching under piping couplings to provide solid bearing for entire body of piping.
g. Depth for Exterior Piping: Except as otherwise indicated, excavate for exterior piping so that depth of cover shall be 18" minimum.
h. Excavate near large trees (within drip line) by hand, and protect root system from damage or dryout to greatest extent possible. Maintain moist condition for root system and cover exposed roots with burlap. Paint root cuts of 1" diameter and larger with asphaltic tree paint.
i. Store excavated material (temporarily) near excavation, in manner that will not interfere with or damage excavation or other work. Do not store under trees (within drip line). Retain excavated material that complies with requirements for backfill material. Dispose of excavated material that is either in excess of quantity needed for backfilling or does not comply with requirements for backfill material.

B. Backfill
1. Do not backfill until installed mechanical work has been tested and accepted, wherever testing is indicated.
2. Backfill with finely-graded subbase material to 6" above wrapped, coated, and plastic piping and tanks, and to centerline of other tanks.
3. Condition backfill material by either drying or adding water uniformly, to whatever extent may be necessary to facilitate compaction to required densities. Do not backfill with frozen soil materials.
4. Backfill simultaneously on opposite sides of mechanical work, and compact simultaneously; do not dislocate work from installed positions.
5. Backfill excavations in 8" high courses of backfill material, uniformly compacted to the following densities (% of maximum density, ASTM D 1557), using power-driven hand-operated compaction equipment.
6. Lawn and Landscaped Areas: 85% for cohesive soils; 90% for cohesionless soils.
7. Paved Areas Other Than Roadways: 90% for cohesive soils; 95% for cohesionless soils.
8. Roadways: 90% for cohesive soils; 95% for cohesionless soils.
9. Backfill to elevations matching adjacent grades, at a time of backfilling excavations for mechanical work.

C. Performance and Maintenance
1. Subsidence: Where subsidence is measurable or observable at mechanical work excavations during general project warranty period, remove surface (pavement, lawn or other finish), add backfill material, compact, and replace surface treatment. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of surface or finish to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 0513

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

B. Section includes controllers (starters and variable frequency controllers) to be furnished by M/C or P/C.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
   1. Motor controllers.
   2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
   3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
   4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of variable frequency controllers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified differently below.
   1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
      a. Variable frequency controllers: Parts and labor for 30 months.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in plumbing equipment schedules or Sections.

B. All motors shall be TEFC high efficiency type and suitable for use with variable frequency drives (VFD).

C. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

D. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

E. Comply with performance characteristics of ASHRAE 90.1.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
   2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class B.

J. Code Letter Designation:
   1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
   2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
   1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
   2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
   3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
   4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/16 hp and below 1 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
   1. Permanent-split capacitor.
   2. Split phase.
   3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
   4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
   5. Electronically commutated motors (ECM).

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

2.6 MOTORS AND DRIVES

A. Motors intended for operation on 208-volt feeders shall be selected for satisfactory operation at 200 volts (phase-to-phase), and the 200-volt rating shall appear on the motor nameplates.

B. Totally-enclosed fan-cooled (TEFC) motors shall be designed for a service factor of 1.00 and a 75 deg. C temperature rise above 40 deg. C ambient temperature at full load. Insulation shall be Class B.

C. Provide motors with adequately sized electrical connection boxes for attachment of liquid-tight flexible conduit, and line terminals and lugs for attachment of copper cables sized in accordance with NEC. Where required, provide motors connected so as to drive equipment by the use of V-belt drives with adjustable rails.

D. Provide motors 15-hp and larger with frame grounding lugs.

E. Except where motors are direct-connected to the driven equipment, provide flexible couplings, or a V-belt drives of sizes and numbers of belts, and sizes and types of driving and driven sheaves as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide belt-driven equipment supplied with motors 10-hp and smaller with adjustable motor sheaves selected for approximate midpoint of the range in each instance.

2.7 CONTROLLERS

A. Furnish a controller (starter or variable frequency drive) for each motor, except where the controller is for a motor in an integrated motor starter enclosure (such as a "Motor Control Center") specified in Division 26, and the controller within the enclosure is properly identified and is scheduled or otherwise described on the Drawings.
   1. Controllers shall be furnished by the M/C, P/C or mechanical equipment manufacturer. Deliver to the E/C for installation.
   2. Coordinate purchasing of motor starters so that, insofar as is practical, all motor starters on the project shall be products of the same manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer of Motor Starters: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ABB Power Distribution, Inc.; ABB Control, Inc. subsidiary.
   2. Danfoss Inc.; Danfoss Electronic Drives Division.
   3. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
   4. General Electric Company; GE Industrial Systems.
   5. Rockwell Automation; Allen-Bradley Co.; Industrial Control Group.
   6. Siemens/Furnas Controls.
   7. Square D.

C. Manufacturers of Variable Frequency Controllers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ABB Power Distribution, Inc.; ABB Control, Inc. Subsidiary.
   2. Danfoss Inc.; Danfoss Electronic Drives Div.

D. Manual Across-the-Line Controller: Manual Controller: NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A, with "quick-make, quick-break" toggle or pushbutton action, and marked to show whether unit is "OFF," "ON," or "TRIPPED."
   1. Overload Relay: Ambient-compensated type with inverse-time-current characteristics and NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics. Relays shall have heaters and sensors in each phase, matched to nameplate, full-load current of specific motor to which they connect and shall have appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.

E. Magnetic Across-the-Line Controller: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, full voltage, nonreversing, across the line, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Control Circuit: 120 V; obtained from integral control power transformer with a control power transformer of sufficient capacity to operate connected pilot, indicating and control devices, plus 100 percent spare capacity.
   2. Adjustable Overload Relay: Dip switch selectable for motor running overload protection with NEMA ICS 2, Class 20 tripping characteristic, and selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing. Provide relay with Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
   3. Accessories shall include HOA switch, pilot lights and two NO 2 NC auxiliary contacts. Additional accessories are required to perform the sequence of operation for each piece of equipment.

F. Combination Magnetic Across-the Line Controller: Factory-assembled combination controller and disconnect switch.
   1. Fusible Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 947-4-1, as certified by an NRTL.
   2. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.
   3. Circuit-Breaker Disconnecting Means: NEMA AB 1, motor-circuit protector with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.

G. Variable Frequency Controllers
   1. Description: NEMA ICS 2, IGBT, PWM, VFC; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed of an NEMA MG 1, Design B, 3-phase induction motor by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
      a. Provide unit suitable for operation of premium-efficiency motor as defined by NEMA MG 1.
      b. Indoor applications shall be housed in NEMA 1 enclosure.
      c. Outdoor applications shall be housed in NEMA 3R enclosure (unless otherwise noted).

2. Design and Rating: Match load type such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.
3. Output Rating: 3-phase; 6 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range.
4. Unit Operating Requirements:
    a. Input ac voltage tolerance of 208 V, plus or minus 5 or 380 to 500 V, plus or minus 10 percent.
    b. Input frequency tolerance of 50/60 Hz, plus or minus 6 percent.
    c. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
    d. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent.
    e. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; 2.0 times the base load current for 3 seconds.
    f. Starting Torque: 100 percent of rated torque or as indicated.
    g. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.
5. Isolated control interface to allow controller to follow control signal over an 11:1 speed range.
    a. Electrical Signal: 4 to 20 mA at 24 V.
    b. Pneumatic Signal: 3 to 15 psig (20 to 104 kPa).
6. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
    a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
    b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
    c. Acceleration: 22 seconds minimum to 1800 seconds maximum.
    d. Deceleration: 22 seconds minimum to 1800 seconds maximum.
    e. Current Limit: 50 to a minimum of 110 percent of maximum rating.
7. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
    a. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors.
    b. Under- and overvoltage trips; inverter overtemperature, overload, and overcurrent trips.
    c. Motor Overload Relay: Adjustable and capable of NEMA ICS 2, Class 20 performance.
    d. Notch filter to prevent operation of the controller-motor-load combination at a natural frequency of the combination.
    e. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
    f. Loss-of-phase protection.
    g. Reverse-phase protection.
    h. Short-circuit protection.
    i. Motor overtemperature fault.
    j. Integral electromagnetic interference (EMI) filter.
    k. Minimize audible motor noise using an adjustable carrier frequency.
8. Multiple-Motor Capability: Controller suitable for service to multiple motors and having a separate overload relay and protection for each controlled motor. Overload relay shall shut off controller and motors served by it when overload relay is tripped.
9. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempts three restarts after controller fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction. Bidirectional autospeed search shall be capable of starting into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without damage to controller, motor, or load.
10. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped.
11. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
12. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
13. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators shall indicate the following conditions:

a. Power on.
b. Run.
c. Overvoltage.
d. Line fault.
e. Overcurrent.
f. External fault.

14. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: LCD interface screen with start-stop and auto-manual selector switches with manual speed control potentiometer and elapsed time meter.
15. Indicating Devices: Meters or digital readout devices and selector switch, mounted flush in controller door and connected to indicate the following controller parameters:
    a. Output frequency (Hz).
    b. Motor speed (rpm).
    c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
    d. Motor current (amperes).
    e. Motor torque (percent).
    f. Fault or alarming status (code).
    g. PID feedback signal (percent).
    h. DC-link voltage (VDC).
    i. Set-point frequency (Hz).
    j. Motor output voltage (V).
16. Control Signal Interface:
    a. Electric Input Signal Interface: A minimum of 2 analog inputs (0 to 10 V or 0/4-20 mA) and 6 programmable digital inputs.
    b. Pneumatic Input Signal Interface: 3 to 15 psig.
    c. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BMS or other control systems:
        1) 0 to 10-V dc.
        2) 0-20 or 4-20 mA.
        3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
        4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
        5) RS485.
        6) LCD screen display for local hand operation.
    d. Output Signal Interface:
        1) A minimum of 1 analog output signal (0/4-20 mA), which can be programmed to any of the following:
            a) Output frequency (Hz).
            b) Output current (load).
            c) DC-link voltage (VDC).
            d) Motor torque (percent).
            e) Motor speed (rpm).
            f) Set-point frequency (Hz).
    e. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of 2 dry circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
        1) Motor running.
        2) Set-point speed reached.
        3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
        4) PID high- or low-speed limits reached.
17. Communications: Provide an RS485 interface allowing VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration. Interface shall allow all parameter settings of VFC to be programmed via FCMS control. Provide capability for VFC to retain these settings within the nonvolatile memory.
    a. Protocol shall be BACnet MS/TP, BACnet IP, or Lonworks, depending on the control system being installed. Interface card is used for monitoring purposes only.
18. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to safely transfer motor between controller output and bypass controller circuit when motor is at zero speed. Controller-off-bypass selector switch sets mode, and indicator lights give indication of mode selected. Unit

shall be capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running), with motor completely disconnected from controller (no load).

19. Bypass Controller: NEMA ICS 2, full-voltage, nonreversing enclosed controller with across-the-line starting capability in manual-bypass mode. Provide motor overload protection under both modes of operation with control logic that allows common start-stop capability in either mode. Provide VFD/OFF/BYPASS select switch.
20. Integral Disconnecting Means: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker with lockable handle.
21. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate VFC and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.
22. Remote Indicating Circuit Terminals: Mode selection, controller status, and controller fault.
23. Accessories: Provide accessories to perform the sequence of operation described for each piece of equipment.

H. Supply the chillers, boilers, air handling units, and fans with associated controls and pumps, with a Relay in a Box (RIB) with manual HOA switch. This is to allow DISD to turn on and run equipment locally. Activation of the switch shall notify the Building Automation System (BAS) that the unit is in manual override. The equipment on the BAS graphic changes color to red to alert that equipment has been manually override locally.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF CONTROLLERS

A. All controllers, except those specifically identified otherwise, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C and installed by the E/C.

3.2 START-UP OF VFC

A. Variable frequency controllers shall receive start-up from factory trained service technicians. Technicians shall verify correct installation, start-up of the controllers, and confirm proper operation.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 0516

EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Rubber expansion joints.
2. Flexible-hose expansion joints.
3. Pipe bends and loops.
4. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BR: Butyl rubber.

B. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

C. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.

D. CSM: Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber.

E. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

F. NR: Natural rubber.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping system fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

B. Capability: Products shall absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and bends.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   1. Steel Shapes and Plates: AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   2. Welding to Piping: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Rubber Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1123, fabric-reinforced rubber with external control rods and complying with FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
   1. Arch Type: Single or multiple arches.
   2. Spherical Type: Single or multiple spheres.
      a. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
      b. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
      c. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
   3. Material: BR.
   4. End Connections: Full-faced, integral, steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

B. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints: Manufactured assembly with two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose; with inlet and outlet elbow fittings, corrugated-metal inner hoses, and braided outer sheaths.
   1. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder- joint end connections.
      a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
      b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES

A. Description: Steel, factory fabricated, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for alignment of piping and two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

2.3 MATERIALS FOR ANCHORS

A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel, hex head.

C. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.

D. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
   1. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
   2. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
   3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

E. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud bonding system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

1. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881, Type IV, Grade 3, 2-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
2. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

F. Concrete: Portland cement mix, 3000 psi minimum. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for formwork, reinforcement, and concrete.

G. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install manufactured, nonmetallic expansion joints according to FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."

B. Install expansion joints of sizes matching size of piping in which they are installed.

C. Install alignment guides to allow expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

3.2 PIPE BEND AND LOOP INSTALLATION

A. Install pipe bends and loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.

B. Attach pipe bends and loops to anchors.
1. Steel Anchors: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
2. Concrete Anchors: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 SWING CONNECTIONS

A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.

B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.

C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.4 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE INSTALLATION

A. Install guides on piping adjoining pipe expansion fittings and loops.

B. Attach guides to pipe and secure to building structure.

3.5 ANCHOR INSTALLATION

A. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

B. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1.

C. Construct concrete anchors of poured-in-place concrete of dimensions indicated and include embedded fasteners.

D. Install pipe anchors according to expansion-joint manufacturer's written instructions if expansion joints are indicated.

E. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for expansion fittings, guides, and anchors installed on or in concrete.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0519

METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for domestic and fire-protection water service meters inside the building.

B. Refer to Section 23 0519, “Meters and Gages for Piping Systems,” for required products on plumbing systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 0523

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
4. High performance butterfly valves.
5. Bronze swing check valves.
6. Iron swing check valves.
7. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
8. Iron globe center-guided check valves.
9. Bronze gate valves.
10. Iron gate valves.
11. Bronze globe valves.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.

3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:
1. Copper Tubing:
   a. NPS 2 and smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded or flanged.
   c. NPS 5 and larger: Flanged according to ASME B16.1.
2. Steel Piping:
   a. NPS 2 and smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 and larger: Threaded or flanged according to ASME B16.1.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Crane Co.
   b. NIBCO INC.
   c. Powell Valves.
   d. Milwaukee.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
   b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
   d. Ends: Threaded or solder.
   e. Stem: Bronze.
   f. Disc: TFE.
   g. Packing: Asbestos free.
   h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
   b. NIBCO INC.
   c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   d. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
   e. Milwaukee
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
   b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
   c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
   d. Body Design: Two piece.
   e. Body Material: Bronze.
   f. Ends:
      1) Plumbing piping: Threaded or solder.
      2) Chilled-water piping: Threaded or Press-Fit
      3) Hot-water heating piping (max temperature of 160°F): Threaded or Press-Fit
      4) Hot-water heating piping (max temperature above 160°F): Threaded
   g. Seats: TFE.

h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. NIBCO INC.
b. Crane Co.
c. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
d. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze or EPDM rubber encapsulated disc with polymer-coated body.

2.5 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Class 150, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. Crane Co.
c. NIBCO INC.
d. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig at 100 deg F.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
g. Disc: Carbon steel.
h. Service: Bidirectional.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
d. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.

c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Buna N.

2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Powell Valves.
d. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
e. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Trim: Bronze. (Renewable and regrindable disc.)
g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. NIBCO INC.
b. Crane.
c. Powell.
d. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
e. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Trim: Bronze. (Renewable and regrindable disc.)
g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

2.9 IRON GLOBE CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. Powell
c. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco)
d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
e. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-125.

b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
e. Ends. Flanged.
f. Seat: Bronze.

2.10 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Powell Valves.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
e. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
f. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded or solder.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.11 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Powell Valves.
d. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
e. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
d. Ends: Flanged.
e. Trim: Bronze.
f. Disc: Solid wedge.
g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Powell Valves.
d. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
e. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.

b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
d. Ends: Flanged.
e. Trim: Bronze.
f. Disc: Solid wedge.
g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.12 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Crane Co.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Apollo (manufactured by Conbraco).
d. Powell Valves.
e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
f. Milwaukee
2. Description:
a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded or solder.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: TFE.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping facing upward with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install three (3) chainwheels on operators for butterfly and gate valves NPS 3 and larger and more than 72 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
   1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
   2. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
   3. Center-Guided Check Valves: Horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.

G. Provide isolation valves at each major branch take off.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
   1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
   2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
   3. Throttling Service except steam: Globe, angle, ball, or butterfly valves.
   4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
      a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc-horizontal mount.
      b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.
      c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
   1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
   4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
   5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
   7. For Grooved-End Steel Piping except steam and steam condensate: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
   1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
   2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
   3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with stainless-steel trim.
   4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
   5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
   1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
   2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
   3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
   4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
   5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
   6. Iron Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats

3.6 CHILLED-WATER , HOT WATER AND CONDENSER WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
   1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
   2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
   3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with stainless-steel trim.
   4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
   5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, RS, bronze.
   6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
   1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
   2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 150.
   3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
   4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: 150 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
   5. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
   6. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125, lever and spring.
   7. Iron Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
   8. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.

3.7 VALVES, GENERAL

A. Each valve shall be appropriately rated, as to pressure and temperature, for the fluid being handled by the system and for the operating pressure anticipated at the valve location.

B. Where ball valves, plug valves and butterfly valves are installed in piping to be insulated, provide extended type operators/stems to points beyond the exterior surface of the insulation.

C. Provide chain operators on gate valves and butterfly valves 3-inch and larger mounted higher than six (6) feet above the floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor elevation.

D. Valve Standardization: Valves from one or more manufacturers may be used, however valves supplied for each specific valve type shall be the product of one manufacturer.

E. Valves shall be first quality, free from all imperfections and defects, with body markings indicating manufacturer and rating.

F. Valve parts of same manufacturer, size and type shall be interchangeable.

G. Manually operated gate, globe and angle valves shall be of rising stem type, unless otherwise specified.

H. Manually operated valves shall open in a counterclockwise direction by means of round ventilated type handwheels.
   1. Exception: Cross handle type handwheels are acceptable for valves up to 2 inches in size.

I. In open position, wedge and stem of gate valves shall clear the waterway completely.

J. Valves that use packing shall be capable of being packed when wide open and under full working pressure.

K. All valves that use packing shall utilize non-asbestos materials.

L. Size valves the same size as the piping in which they are installed, unless otherwise specified.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment:
   1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
   2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
   3. Metal framing systems.
   4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
   5. Fastener systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
   2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.
   3. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
   4. Division 22 Section "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
   2. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
   3. Pipe positioning systems.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel." AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel," ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
   2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
   3. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
   4. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.

B. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.

C. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

D. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.

B. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

C. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Description: 100-psig- minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.

B. Insulation-Insert Material: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
   1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
   2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

2.7 ROOF PIPING SUPPORTS

A. Piping located on roofs shall be supported using devices with polypropylene or poly carbonate bases. The bases shall have integral cradles to support piping, or roller devices as called for on the drawings. The quantity and size of supports shall be such that the weight on the roofing membrane shall not exceed 2 psi.

B. Roof supports shall be manufactured by Miro Industries or PHP Systems/Design.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use copper-plated hangers and supports or nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
   2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
   3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.

4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
   2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
   3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
   4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
   5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
   6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
   7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
   8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
   9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
   10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
   11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
   12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
      a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
      b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
      c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
   13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
   14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
   15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
   2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
   3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
   2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
   3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
   4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
   5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
   6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
   7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.

8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
   a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
   b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
   c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

P. Select size of hangers and supports to exactly fit pipe size and insulation.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
   1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
   2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping. All hangers on domestic water and hydronic piping shall be installed on the exterior of the pipe insulation.

E. Fastener System Installation:
   1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
   2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:
   1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.

2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Pipe Positioning System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for plumbing fixtures.

H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

I. Provide pipe hangers at every elbow and any change in direction per MSS-SP-58.

J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.

P. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
   a. Hangers shall be installed on the exterior of pipe insulation. Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
   b. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
   b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
   e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

8. Hangers for cold piping shall be placed around the outside of the insulation/vapor barrier or insulation must completely cover the hanger and rod.

Q. Do not use wire or perforated metal to support piping, and do not support piping from other pipes.

R. Support fire protection piping independently from other piping.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF ROOF SUPPORTS

A. Install pre-manufactured pipe supports to elevate piping to a height indicated on the drawings. The maximum load across the base of supports shall not exceed 2 psi. Support piping so it is level along the full length.

3.7 PAINTING

A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 0548

VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment, Section 23 0548, for plumbing vibration controls.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 0553

IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Equipment labels.
   2. Pipe labels.
   3. Valve tags.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

D. All equipment furnished for the project shall have a nameplate that is readable and can be viewed easily after installation. If this is not the case, Contractor shall provide a nameplate with all applicable information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
   1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
   3. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; and 4-1/2 by 6 inches for equipment. Minimum data shall include name, plan number, and design capacity.
   4. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
   5. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, operational requirements, and safety/warning information.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
   1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
   2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.3 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: 0.032-inch-thick brass or aluminum mechanical stamping or engraving and having brass wire link beaded chain, or S-hook for attachment to valve. Engrave information with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
   1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.
   2. Schedule shall be 30-inch x 42-inch for each page, framed and mounted to masonry walls with screws. Provide a schedule in each mechanical room.

2.4 CEILING LABELS

A. Provide the same plastic labels specified for equipment. Labels shall be white, sized to fit on a suspended ceiling grid system. Labels shall describe the equipment mounted above the ceiling and the room number(s) served by the equipment.

2.5 ACCESS DOORS

A. Provide plastic labels, 1/16-inch-thick with abbreviated description and identification of equipment served.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. General: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags; of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
   1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
   2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.

3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as “DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.”
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.
5. Installation: Write required warning information on, and attach warnings tags to, equipment and other items where required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.2 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced a maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Pipe Label Color:
1. Provide labels of standard accepted color schemes for each plumbing and mechanical system on the project.

3.3 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; plumbing fixture supply stops; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; HVAC terminal devices; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Identify valve locations above ceilings with red 1/2" square or round press-tape markers at ceiling access panels.

3.4 CEILING LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Fasten labels to ceiling grid with rivets. Adhesive tape is not allowed.

3.5 APPLICABLE EQUIPMENT

A. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Include markers for the following general categories of equipment.
1. Material main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
2. Fire department hose valves and hose stations.

3. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
4. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
5. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-drive units.
6. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
7. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
8. Packaged HVAC, central-station air handlers, and zone-type units.
9. Tanks and pressure vessels.
10. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.

3.6 ACCESS DOORS

A. Install access door labels with screws to access doors. Labels shall be clearly visible.

3.7 WARNING TAGS

A. Install warning tags on equipment or valves that are of a sensitive nature or change in operation would have serious consequences on the operation of plumbing and HVAC systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 0700

PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Insulation Materials:
      a. Flexible elastomeric
      b. Mineral fiber.
   2. Factory-applied jackets.
   3. Field-applied jackets.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any). Include a table at the beginning of the submittal that specifically lists all the characteristics for each insulation type and application.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials (0.25Btu in/h ft2 at 75 degrees F).
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
      b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
      c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.

G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
      b. Knauf Insulation; 1000(Pipe Insulation.
      c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
   2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ (0.24 Btu in/h ft2 at 75 degrees F). Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
   1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
      b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
      c. Proto PVC Corporation; LoSmoke.
   2. Color: White.
   3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
      a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
   4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

C. Metal Jacket:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; Metal Jacketing Systems.
      b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Surefit.
      c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
   2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
      a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
      b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
      d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
      e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
         1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
         2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
         3) Tee covers.
         4) Flange and union covers.
         5) End caps.
         6) Beveled collars.
         7) Valve covers.
         8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
   1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
   2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
   3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
   1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
   3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
   4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
   2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
   3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
      a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
   4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
   5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
   1. Vibration-control devices.
   2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
   3. Nameplates and data plates.
   4. Manholes.
   5. Handholes.
   6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.

3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" and fire-resistive joint sealers.
2. Provide UL-approved assemblies.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.

3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are required, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
   2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
   5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

B. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Refer to the drawing schedule for insulation types and requirements.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
   1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
   2. Underground piping.
   3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Refer to the drawing schedule for jacketing types and requirements.

B. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

3.12 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1116

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Flexible connectors.
4. Water meters.
5. Escutcheons.
6. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
7. Wall penetration systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following products:
1. Specialty valves.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Flexible connectors.
4. Backflow preventers and vacuum breakers.
5. Escutcheons.
6. Sleeves and sleeve seals.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4" = 1’-0” scale, the major overhead piping layout, locations of valves and other pieces of equipment, elevation of piping, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints, attachments of the same to building structure, equipment supports and foundations, underground piping layout. Out-of-scale drawings showing actual dimensions will not be acceptable. Shop drawings shall show coordination with all other building trades.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without Architect's written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes. **All piping shall be U.S. domestic only. Foreign manufactured piping will not be accepted.**

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88 water tube, drawn temper.
   1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
   2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
   3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88 water tube, annealed temper.
   1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

2.3 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 40.

C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.

2.4 PVC PRESSURE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Polyvinyl Chloride Piping: AWWA, C900, DR-25 solid wall, pipe for use in potable water applications.
   1. Fittings: Integral bell, gasketed, with EPDM sealing ring.

2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, Grade Sb-5, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813. 95% tin/5% antimony solid, string or wire type (cored solder will not be allowed).

D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, (80% copper, 15% silver, 5% phosphorous), copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves, drain valves, backflow preventers, and vacuum breakers.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Description:
   a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
   b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Description:
   a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
   b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
   c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.

B. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.9 WATER METERS

A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
1. Description:
   a. Standard: AWWA C700.
   b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
   c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
   d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility.
   e. Case: Bronze.
   f. End Connections: Threaded.
   g. Control: Provide connection to BMS.

2.10 ESCUTCHEONS

A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.

B. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.

C. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with hinge, setscrew.

D. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

2.11 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

B. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.

C. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
   1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.12 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEMS

A. Description: Wall-sleeve assembly, consisting of housing and gland, gaskets, and pipe sleeve.
   1. Carrier-Pipe Deflection: Up to 5 percent without leakage.
   2. Housing: Ductile-iron casting with hub, waterstop, anchor ring, and locking devices. Include gland, bolts, and nuts.
   3. Housing-to-Sleeve Gasket: EPDM rubber.
   4. Housing-to-Carrier-Pipe Gasket: AWWA C111, EPDM rubber.
   5. Pipe Sleeve: AWWA C151, ductile-iron pipe.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section “Common Work Results for Plumbing” and Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook." Joints/fittings are not allowed beneath concrete slabs.

C. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Install drain valves on all risers, branches, and low points of systems. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.

D. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.

F. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.

G. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

H. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

I. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

J. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.

K. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

L. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

M. Install piping free of sags and bends.

N. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

O. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

P. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.

Q. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.

R. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

3.3 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.

B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
   1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
   2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.

D. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

E. Locate accessible isolation valves in the following locations:
   1. Restroom Gang: Above lay-in ceilings adjacent to gang restrooms. When hard ceilings are present, provide 18”x18” (minimum) ceiling access panel to access valves.
   2. Individual (private) Restrooms: Above lay-in ceilings adjacent to restroom. When hard ceilings are present, provide 18”x18” (minimum) ceiling access panel to access valve.
   3. Individual Fixtures: Above lay-in ceilings adjacent to restroom. When hard ceilings are present, provide 18”x18” (minimum) ceiling access panel to access valve.
   4. In corridors to allow isolation of building wings, sections, and areas.
   5. On main water entry upstream of strainer and backflow preventer (if backflow preventer is inside building).
   6. At each exterior wall hydrant and each roof hydrant.
   7. At all appliances and plumbing fixtures.
   8. All valves shall be accessible and access panels provided where necessary.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
   1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
   2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
      a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
      b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
      c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
   3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
   5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
   6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.

E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

F. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.

G. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet.

H. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
   1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
   2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
   3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
   4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.7 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.

D. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.

E. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.

F. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals specified in this Section.

G. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.

H. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.

I. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.

B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Piping Inspections:
   1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
      b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
   3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
   4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Piping Tests:
   1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
   2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
   3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
   5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
   6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

C. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
   1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
   2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
   3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
   4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
      a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
      b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
   5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
   6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
   7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.

8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
   1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
   2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
      a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets, or four (4) hours minimum.
      b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
         1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
         2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
      c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
      d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
   1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
   2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
      a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets, or four (4) hours minimum.
      b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

C. Compile and maintain cleaning reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 4 and smaller, shall be the following:
   1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
   2. PVC pressure pipe, AWWA C900 with integral bell fittings.

E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 4 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Stainless steel pipe and fittings.

3.13 SCHEDULE OF BRANCHES

A. The sizes of branches or runouts to each fixture shall be as indicated on the drawings. Where no size of connection is indicated, connections shall be no smaller than those indicated in the following schedule:

FIXTURE	COLD WATER	HOT WATER
Water Closets	1”	---
Lavatories	1/2"	1/2"
Urinals	3/4"	---
Sinks	1/2"	1/2"
Service Sinks	3/4"	3/4"
Hose Bibbs	3/4"	---
Box Hydrants	3/4"	---
Elec. Water Cooler	1/2"	---
Showers	1/2"	1/2"

3.14 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1119

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Hose bibbs.
8. Wall hydrants.
9. Water hammer arresters.
10. Trap-seal primer valves.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. NSF Compliance:
1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Vacuum Breakers:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div. – Model No. 288-AC.
      b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
      c. MIFAB, Inc.
      d. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
      e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group
   2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
   3. Finish: Chrome plated.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Ames Co.
      b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
      c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
      d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
      e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group
   2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
   3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
   4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
   5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   7. Accessories:
      a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
      b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Ames Co.
      b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
      c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
      d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
      e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
   2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
   3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
   5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   7. Accessories:

a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Cash Acme.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   c. Honeywell Water Controls.
   d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
   e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

2.4 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Armstrong International, Inc.
   b. Flo Fab Inc.
   c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
   d. NIBCO INC.
   e. TAC Americas.
   f. Taco, Inc.
   g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Type: Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
3. Body: Bronze
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

2.5 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Armstrong International, Inc.
   b. Cash Acme.
   c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   d. Leonard Valve Company.
   e. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
   f. Symmons Industries, Inc.
   g. Taco, Inc.
   h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
   i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1070.

3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Type: Thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Manifold, Thermostatic, Water-Mixing-Valve Assemblies:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Leonard Valve Company.
   b. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
   c. Symmons Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Factory-fabricated, cabinet-type, thermostatically controlled, water-mixing-valve assembly in two-valve parallel arrangement.
3. Large-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic water mixing valve and downstream pressure regulator with pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
4. Small-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic water mixing valve.
5. Thermostatic Mixing Valves: Comply with ASSE 1017. Include check stops on hot- and cold-water inlets and shutoff valve on outlet.
6. Water Regulator(s): Comply with ASSE 1003. Include pressure gage on inlet and outlet.
7. Component Pressure Ratings: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Cabinet: Factory-fabricated, stainless steel, for surface mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.
9. Thermostatic Mixing Valve and Water Regulator Finish: Rough bronze.
10. Piping Finish: Copper.

2.6 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
   a. Strainers NPS 3 and Smaller: 0.062 inch.
   b. Strainers NPS 4 and larger: 0.125 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.
7. Schedule: Mueller #352 for 150 psig and less.

2.7 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:
1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.

10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
12. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Woodford Manufacturing Company – Model B67.
   b. Josam Company.
   c. MIFAB, Inc.
   d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
   f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
   g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral backflow preventer and garden-hose thread complying with ASSE 1052.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

2.9 GROUND HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Ground Hydrants:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Woodford Manufacturing Company – Model Y-70.
   b. Josam Company.
   c. MIFAB, Inc.
   d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
   f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
   g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
3. Type: Nonfreeze, concealed-outlet ground hydrant with box.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
7. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
9. Box: Standard pattern with cover.
10. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Key(s): One with each ground hydrant.
12. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1011.

2.10 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water Hammer Arresters:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. AMTROL, Inc.
      b. Josam Company.
      c. MIFAB, Inc.
      d. PPP Inc.
      e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
      f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
      g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
      h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
      i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
   2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
   3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
   4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.11 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Josam – Model No.88250.
      b. MIFAB, Inc.
      c. PPP Inc.
      d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
      e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
      f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
   2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
   3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
   4. Body: Bronze.
   5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
   6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
   7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.

B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
   2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
   3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
   4. Install between 3’-0” and 5’-0” above finished floor.

C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

D. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

E. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

F. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
   1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
   2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.

G. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.

H. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with 12” x 12” x 6” concrete pad. Provide a backflow preventer in piping supplying each hydrant.

I. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201 and manufacturer recommendations. Locate within 3 feet of single flush valves.

J. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
   1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, and double-check backflow-prevention assembly according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1122

NATURAL GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.
6. Mechanical sleeve seals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
1. Piping specialties.
2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
4. Dielectric fittings.
5. Mechanical sleeve seals.

B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
2. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for pressure regulator assembly.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, “Structural Welding Code – Steel.”

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. For all existing natural gas equipment, appliances, etc. where gas service is being increased, reset and recalibrate all existing to remain regulators.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B. All piping shall be U.S. domestic only. Foreign manufactured piping will not be accepted.
   1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
   2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
   3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
   4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
      a. Material Group: 1.1.
      b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
      c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
      d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
      e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
   5. Protective Coating

a. Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
b. Above Ground Exterior Piping: This contractor shall be responsible to coordinate with the painting contractor to paint all exterior metallic gas piping and fittings. Refer to Division 09 Painting specification.

6. Mechanical Couplings:
   a. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
   b. Buna-nitrile seals.
   c. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
   d. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
   e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
7. Compression type fittings are not allowed for gas fittings.

B. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.
1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
   a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.
   b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
   c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
   d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
   e. Tracer wire connection.
   f. Ultraviolet shield.
   g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
4. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
   a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
   b. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
   c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
   d. Factory-connected anode.
   e. Tracer wire connection.
   f. Ultraviolet shield.
   g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
   a. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
   b. Buna-nitrile seals.
   c. Acetal collets.
   d. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
6. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
   a. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
   b. PE body tube.
   c. Buna-nitrile seals.
   d. Acetal collets.
   e. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
7. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.

a. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
b. Buna-nitrile seals.
c. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
d. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches.

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.
1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

D. Basket Strainers:
1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

E. T-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

F. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. See "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Article.
4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Crane.
   b. NIBCO.
   c. Milwaukee.
2. Body: Brass, complying with ASTM B 283.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
4. Stem: Brass; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced PTFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Article.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

E. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.

5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Article.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Kerotest Manufacturing Corp.
   b. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   c. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: PE.
3. Ball: PE.
4. Stem: Acetal.
5. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
6. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
7. CWP Rating: 80 psig
8. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
9. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
10. Include plastic valve extension.
11. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

G. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429
1. Electrically operated valves indicated on the drawings shall be compatible with natural gas at the pressures specified, for indoor application.
2. Refer to control and mandatory requirements specified for each application.
3. Direct acting
4. Body: Brass or aluminum.
5. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Springs and Valve Trip: Stainless steel.
7. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous -duty molded coil, and replaceable.
8. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
9. Normally closed.
10. Visual position indicator.
11. Two position proof-of-closure switch to provide electric signal indicted valve position, where noted on drawings or BMS sequences/drawings.

2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:
1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Itron
   b. American Meter Company.
   c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.

d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
e. Invensys.
f. Maxitrol Company.
g. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.

2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum or brass; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized; mineral-filled nylon, Buna-N, or Viton
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator, unless required for larger applications.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator when required by local code and application.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
b. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
c. Harper Wyman Co.
d. Maxitrol Company.
e. SCP, Inc.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized; mineral-filled nylon, Buna-N, or Viton
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Unions:
1. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
2. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
3. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
4. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
2. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
3. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
4. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

2.7 SLEEVES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
   1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
   2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
   3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

2.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid-and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of six (6) inches wide and four (4) mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.

B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.

C. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
   1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.

C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.

D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
3. Gas service shall enter the building above grade. Provide a self-tightening swing joint prior to penetrating exterior wall.

G. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

H. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Locate valves for easy access.

H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.

I. Install piping free of sags and bends.

J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

K. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.

L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

N. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.

O. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
   1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of three (3) pipe diameters, but not less than three (3) inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

P. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

Q. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

R. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
   1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
   2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
   3. In-Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
   4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
      a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
   5. Prohibited Locations:
      a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
      b. Do not install natural-gas piping in confined spaces, such as trenches unventilated shafts, solid walls or partitions.
   6. Piping in crawl spaces shall be sleeved and vented.
   7. Corrugated steel piping, sleeved with SCH 40 PVC shall be used in concealed locations such as walls and casework.

S. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

T. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

U. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.

V. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.

W. Install strainer on let of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.

X. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section “Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping.”

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing. Vent regulator diaphragms and other similar devices to the outside.

C. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:
1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:
1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.

F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
   1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
   2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
   5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

A. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.

B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.

C. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, twelve (12) inches below finished grade, except six (6) inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

C. Paint all above grade gas piping yellow.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
   1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings, service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.

B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
   1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints (2” and smaller).
   2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints (larger than 2”).

3.11 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for line pressure of 1 psig to 5 psig shall be two-piece, full port, brass ball valves. Provide valves rated for outdoor use as needed.

B. Valves for low pressure applications and equipment connections shall be lubricated plug valves.

C. Below grade PE distribution piping valves shall be PE ball valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1123

DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
   2. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
   1. When pumps are connected to VFD's, the submittal shall include an equipment selection with pump curves for both the optimized impeller trim, and the largest impeller trim available that does not allow an overload condition.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
   2. American-Marsh Pumps
   3. Bell & Gossett Pump; Xylem.
   4. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, U.S.A.
   5. Pentair Pump Group; Aurora Pump.
   6. TACO Incorporated.
   7. Thrush Company, Inc.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.

C. Pump Construction:
   1. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
   2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
   3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
   4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
   5. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
   6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.

D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.

E. See plans on Drawings for sizes and capacities.

2.2 VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
   2. American-Marsh Pumps
   3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
   4. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
   5. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, U.S.A.
   6. Peerless Pump, Inc.
   7. Pentair Pump Group; Aurora Pump.
   8. TACO Incorporated.
   9. Thrush Co. Inc.
   10. Weinman Division; Crane Pumps & Systems.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.

D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and rigidly mounted to pump casing.

E. See plans on Drawings for sizes and capacities.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 22 0513 for details.

2.4 CONTROLS

A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
2. Range: 50 to 125 deg F.
3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
5. Transformer: Provide if required.
6. Power Requirement: 120 V, ac.
7. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.

B. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1.suitable for wall mounting.
3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
4. Transformer: Provide if required.
5. Power Requirement: 120 V, ac.
6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.

D. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.

E. Pump Mounting: Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

F. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of size required to support pump weight.
   1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

G. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

H. Install timers on wall in engineer's office.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
   1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping:
   2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Check piping connections for tightness.
   3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
   4. Set thermostats and timers for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
   5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
      a. Verify bearing lubrication.
      b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
      c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
   6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.

7. Start motor.
8. Open discharge valve slowly.
9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
10. Adjust timer settings.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust initial temperature set points.

C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 1316

SANITARY WASTE, STORM DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
   1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
   2. Special pipe fittings.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 22 Section “Sump Pumps.”

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
   2. Storm drainage piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
   3. Storm drainage, force-main piping: 50 psig (345 kPa).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Detail, at 1/4" = 1’-0”, the major overhead piping layout, locations of drains and cleanouts, elevation of piping, equipment supports and foundations, underground piping layout. Out-of-scale drawings showing actual dimensions will not be acceptable. Shop drawings shall show coordination with all other building trades.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

C. All cast iron pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and be listed with NSF International.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
   2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials. **All piping shall be U.S. domestic only. Foreign manufactured piping will not be accepted.**

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy class(es).

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.

C. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
   1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
   2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: ASTM C 1540, with stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.

2.5 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
   1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.

B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M water tube, drawn temper.
   1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
   2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
   3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Solid-Wall Schedule 40 PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
   1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
   2. Pipe and fittings in paragraph and subparagraph below are available in NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300).

B. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:
   1. Use PVC solvent cement, ASTM D 2564, that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Use adhesive primer, ASTM F 656, that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. PVC piping shall not be installed in a return air plenum.

D. PVC sewer piping and fittings if allowed by the local plumbing code.

2.7 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
   1. Sleeve Materials:
      a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
      b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
      c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

2.8 FOUNDATION AND BELOW FLOOR PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:
   1. NPS 6 and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
   2. NPS 8 and Larger: ASTM F 667; AASHTO M 252, Type CP, or AASHTO M 294, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
   3. Couplings: Manufacturer’s standard, band type.
   4. Foundation Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent unless otherwise indicated.

B. Encase pipe with PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with tape.

C. Refer to Section 33 4600 for additional information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section “Common Work Results for Plumbing” and Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping (all sizes) shall be any of the following:
   1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.

C. Aboveground, vent piping, all sizes, shall be any of the following:
   1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard couplings and hubless-coupling joints.

D. Exposed piping in kitchen areas shall be DWV copper.

E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping, all sizes, shall be any of the following:
   1. Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
   2. Solid-wall SCH 40 PVC pipe and fittings.

F. Aboveground storm drainage piping (all sizes), shall be any of the following:
   1. Hubless cast iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded stainless steel couplings, and coupled joints.

G. Underground storm drainage piping (all sizes) shall be any of the following:
   1. Extra-Heavy class, cast iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets and gasketed joints.
   2. Solid-wall SCH 40 PVC pipe and fittings.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

B. DISD does not prefer double fixture (T-type) fittings on sanitary and grease waste drainage piping. Instead, use Y-type fittings only even where fixtures are mounted back-to-back.

C. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary and storm sewers as indicated, and:
   1. As required by the plumbing code.

D. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

E. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.

F. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
   1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 74 or AWWA C105.

G. Make changes in direction for soil, storm and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

H. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.

Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

I. Install storm soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Building Sanitary Drain and Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 1/4" per foot where possible, and not less than1/8” per foot.
   2. Vent Piping: 1/8” per foot down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
   3. Building Storm Drain and Horizontal Storm Drain Piping: 1/8” per foot in direction of flow.

J. Each fixture trap shall have a liquid seal of not less than 2 inches and not more than 4 inches per IPC section 10 02.4.

K. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.

L. Install PVC storm, soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.

M. Install underground PVC storm, soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.

N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

O. If PVC is allowed for underground piping, cast iron pipe shall be installed for the **first 25 ft** after any drain serving any water heating appliance (120 °F and higher) before transitioning back to PVC. This includes but is not limited to drains adjacent to and direct connections to domestic water heaters, heating water boilers, dishwashers, etc.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

C. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.

D. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.

E. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

F. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2855.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
   1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.

2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.

D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to sewage backflow.
1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves, unless drain has integral backwater valve.
3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
4. Backwater valve are specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
   a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
   b. Longer than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
   c. Longer than 100 Feet, if indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.

B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

I. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

J. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.

K. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main or sanitary manhole.
2. Sewage Pumps: To sewage pump discharge.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary and storm drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
7. All sanitary sewer systems shall be smoke tested by a third-party contractor hired by the General Contractor.
8. All sanitary sewer lines to be inspected by camera before and after work is completed. Contractor to hire a third-party to perform inspection and submit recordings to DISD designated representative on a flash drive.

E. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.11 SCHEDULE OF BRANCHES

FIXTURE	WASTE	VENT	COLD WATER	HOT WATER
Water Closets	4”	2”	1”	--
Lavatories	2”	1-1/2”	1/2”	1/2"
Urinals	2”	1-1/2”	3/4"	--
Sinks	2”	1-1/2”	1/2"	1/2"
Service Sinks	3”	2”	3/4"	3/4”
Hose Bibbs	---	---	3/4"	---

Box Hydrants	---	---	3/4"	---
Elec. Water Cooler	2”	1-1/2”	1/2"	---
Showers	2”	2”	1/2"	1/2"

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 22 1319

SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
   1. Adjust list below to suit Project.
   2. Backwater valves.
   3. Cleanouts.
   4. Floor drains.
   5. Channel drainage systems.
   6. Interceptors.
   7. Roof drains.
   8. Conductor nozzles.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Retain acronyms and abbreviations that remain after this Section has been edited.

B. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.

E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
   1. Floor drains and sanitary waste accessories.
   2. Interceptors.
   3. Storm drainage accessories.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body: Cast iron.
4. Cover: Cast iron with threaded access check valve.
5. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
6. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
7. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:
1. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
2. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
3. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
4. Inlet: Threaded.
5. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves:
1. Size: Same as connected piping.
2. Body: PVC.
3. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
4. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
5. End Connections: Socket type.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch, Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron, plastic plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
5. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket, Plastic plug.
6. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
7. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
8. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk, drilled-and-threaded brass plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
   b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
   d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
   e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Refer to the schedule on the Drawings for further requirements regarding strainers, finishes, backwater valves, sediment buckets, loading, funnels and trap primers. All drains shall have “heel proof” strainers, be fully adjustable and have deep seal traps.

B. Trap Guards:
1. Pre-manufactured devices inserted in the floor drain or opening to prevent sewer gases from entering the space or backwater.
2. Device is constructed of elastomeric material that bends and opens to allow water to flow through it and closes when there is no water flow.
3. ProVent Systems, Inc. “trapguard” or equal.

2.4 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. ABT, Inc.
   b. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
   c. Forte Composites, Inc.
   d. Josam Company; Mea-Josam Div.
   e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
2. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.

a. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
   1) Dimensions: 4-inch inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
   2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
   1) Material: Cast iron.
   2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
c. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
d. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

2.5 ROOF DRAINS

A. Metal Roof Drains:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
   b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
   d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
   e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
3. Pattern: Roof drain.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Dome Material: Cast iron.
8. Extension Collars: Required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
10. Sump Receiver: Required.
11. Overflow Drains: Provide exterior water dam – 2” high.

2.6 MOTORS

A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 26 Sections.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Downspout Boots:
1. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
2. Size: Inlet size to match downspout.
3. Description: ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
4. Size: Same as or larger than connected downspout.

B. Conductor Nozzles:
   1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
   2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONCRETE BASES

A. Anchor interceptors to concrete bases.
   1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 19-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
   2. For installed equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be imbedded.
   4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   5. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
   6. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.

B. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.

C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
   2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
   3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
   4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
   5. Confirm all locations with Architect prior to installation.
   6. Each gang restroom to have two (2) horizontal and one (1) vertical clean-out.
   7. Vertical clean-outs to be located in walls and have an access door.
   8. Standalone lavatories to have a horizontal and vertical clean-out.

D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

F. Where cleanouts occur flush with floor, they shall be designed for the type and finish of floor material. Confirm floor finish with Architect prior to installation.

G. Cleanout coverplates shall be attached with vandal-proof screws.

H. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
   2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
   a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
   b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
   c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
   3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
   4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.

J. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.

K. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

L. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

M. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.

N. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.

O. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

P. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
   1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
   2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

Q. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

R. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

S. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.

T. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.

U. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.

V. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.

W. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

X. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

Y. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

Z. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 07.
   1. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so that there will be no leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
   2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

AA. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

BB. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.

CC. Install manufactured, gray-iron downspout boots at grade with top 6 inches] above grade. Secure to building wall.

DD. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade. Provide concrete splash blocks, set on 3-foot square concrete pad. Secure pad to structure or independent device.

EE. Provide 2-foot-wide concrete apron around perimeter of exterior area drains in courtyards.

FF. Hub drains are not allowed in crawl spaces, suspended ceilings, or concealed walls.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.

D. Oil Interceptors: Connect inlet, outlet, vent, and gravity drawoff piping to unit; flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping; and gravity drawoff and suction piping to oil storage tank.

E. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 1429

SUMP PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Sump-pump basins and basin covers.
   2. Sump pumps.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUMP PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. American-Marsh Pumps
   2. Bell & Gossett
   3. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, U.S.A.
   4. Pentair Pump Group; Aurora Pump.
   5. Stancor Pumps, Inc.
   6. Weil Pump Company, Inc.
   7. Weinman Division; Crane Pumps & Systems.
   8. Zoeller Pump Company

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.

C. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet and threaded connections.

D. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron**,** semi-open design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.

E. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast-iron flanges and flanged fittings or ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings.

F. Motor: Single-speed; grease-lubricated ball bearings.

G. Controls: Local audible and visual alarms, plus connection to BAS. See floor plans and details on Drawings.

2.2 SUMP-PUMP QUICK REMOVAL SYSTEM

A. Sump pumps shall be provided with quick removal system that allows pump removal or re-installation into the basin without disturbing any valve or pipe connections.

B. Basis System Components:
1. Steel base plate with stationary discharge fitting and spool support.
2. Two (2) cast iron discharge elbows, one (1) stationary, one (1) moveable.
3. Two (2) galvanized guide poles with connecting bars.
4. Stainless steel wire rope and complete fittings.
5. Rectangular hinged steel cover plate with drop handles and hinges with lockable latch.

2.3 SUMP-PUMP BASINS AND BASIN COVERS

A. Basins: Factory-fabricated, watertight, cylindrical, basin sump with top flange and sidewall openings for pipe connections.
1. Material: Fiberglass.
2. Reinforcement: Mounting plates for pumps, fittings, and accessories.
3. Anchor Flange: Same material as or compatible with basin sump, cast in or attached to sump, in location and of size required to anchor basin in concrete slab.

B. Basin Covers: Fabricate metal cover with openings having gaskets, seals, and bushings; for access to pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, vent connections, and power cables.
1. Reinforcement: Steel or cast iron, capable of supporting foot traffic for basins installed in foot-traffic areas.
2. Covers shall be gas-tight and bolted to basins. Provide openings for pump shafts, piping, manholes and cables.

C. See floor plans on Drawings for sizes and capacities.

2.4 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.

B. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

2.5 SUMP PUMP CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

A. Refer to schedule on Drawings.

B. Refer to drawings for a description of required interceptor.

2.6 ELEVATOR SUMP PUMPS

A. Elevator pit applications of the sump pumps referenced above shall include an oil interceptor as described in Section 22 1319, or small packaged filter separators designed to remove oil before discharging water into the sanitary sewer system. Refer to the schedules on the drawings for basis of design and specifics for separators, controls, etc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and filling are specified in Division 22 Section “Common Work Results for Plumbing” and Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump pump installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of sump pumps.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

B. Pumped lines shall use copper pipe with brazed joints or galvanized steel with threaded fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
   2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust control set points.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 3300

ELECTRIC DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following electric water heaters:
   1. Commercial electric water heaters.
   2. Commercial electric booster heaters.
   3. Compression tanks.
   4. Water heater accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of electric water heaters through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of electric water heaters and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

E. ASME Compliance: Where indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

F. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with Architectural and Structural Drawings.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of electric water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty unless specified differently below.
   1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
      a. Commercial Electric Water Heaters: Parts and labor for five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 COMMERCIAL ELECTRIC WATER HEATERS

A. Description: Comply with UL 174 for household, storage electric water heaters.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Lochinvar Corporation.
      b. Smith, A. O. Water Products Company.
      c. RBI Water Heaters; a Mestek, Inc. Company.
   2. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.
      a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
      c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
   3. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      b. Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      c. Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
      d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
      e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      f. Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
      g. Heating Elements: Two; electric, screw-in immersion type; wired for simultaneous operation, unless otherwise indicated.
      h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
      i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
      j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   4. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with legs for off-floor installation.
   5. See floor plans on Drawings for sizes and capacities.

2.3 COMPRESSION TANKS

A. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
   1. Available Manufacturers:
      a. AMTROL Inc.
      b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
      c. Flexcon Industries.

d. Honeywell Sparco.
e. Smith, A. O.; Aqua-Air Div.
f. State Industries, Inc.
g. Taco, Inc.
h. Watts Regulator Co.

2. Construction:
   a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1, pipe thread.
   b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
3. See floor plans on Drawings for sizes and capacities.

2.4 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

B. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating.

C. Water Heater Stand and Drain-Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch- high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

D. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.

E. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.

F. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4.

G. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that are capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.

H. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

I. Water Regulators: ASSE 1003, water-pressure reducing valve. Set at 25-psig- maximum outlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.

J. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Hydrostatically test commercial water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
   1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or direct on floor is indicated.
   2. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

B. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

C. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

D. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.

F. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

G. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of household, collector-to-tank, solar-electric water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

H. Install pressure gage(s) on outlet of commercial electric water- heater piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.

I. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve, thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves and to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

J. Install water regulator, with integral bypass relief valve, in booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping.

K. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

L. Fill water heaters with water.

M. Charge compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial and instantaneous electric water heaters. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

3.5 COMMISSIONING

A. Perform the following before start-up final checks:
1. Fill water heaters with water.
2. Piping systems test complete.
3. Check for piping connections leaks.
4. Check for adequate clearance for electrical elements removal.
5. Check for clear vent.
6. Test operation of safety controls and devices.

B. Perform the following start-up procedures:
1. Energize circuits.
2. Adjust operating controls.
3. Adjust hot water outlet temperature setting.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 0500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
5. Sleeves.
6. Escutcheons.
7. Grout.
8. HVAC demolition.
9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
10. Painting and finishing.
11. Concrete bases.
12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.

E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
2. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Transition fittings.
   2. Dielectric fittings.
   3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
   4. Escutcheons.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
   1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
   2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

1.8 GENERAL

A. For Products specified by reference to an association or trade standard, comply with requirements and recommendations stated in that standard, except when requirements are modified by the Contract Documents, or applicable codes establish stricter standards.

B. The date of the standard is that in effect on the date of issue of Contract Documents, except when a specific publication date is specified. Obtain copies of referenced standards direct from publication source, when needed for proper performance of Work, or when required for submittal by Contract Documents.

1.9 SCHEDULE OF ABBREVIATIONS

A. Reference standards are listed in various sections using abbreviations contained below:

AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
ABMA	American Boiler Manufacturer Association
ADC	Air Diffusion Council
AGA	American Gas Association
AIA	American Insurance Association
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ARI	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
ASA	Acoustical Society of America
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASPE	American Society of Plumbing Engineers
ASTM	American Society of Testing and Materials
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Work Association
CTI	Cooling Tower Institute
FM	Factory Mutual Engineering and Research
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
IRI	Industrial Risk Insurers
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry
MCAA	Mechanical Contractor's Association of America
NEBB	National Environmental Balancing Bureau
NBS	National Bureau of Standards
NRCA	National Roofing Contractor's Association
NEC	National Electrical Code
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
OSHA	Occupation Safety and Health Administration
PDI	Plumbing and Drainage Institute

1.10 ELECTRICAL, PLUMBING, AND CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS OF EQUIPMENT

A. The electrical, plumbing, and control characteristics of each item of equipment scheduled, noted and/or indicated on the plans and specifications are based on a particular manufacturer and model. While other manufacturers or models may be acceptable, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to verify that the electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics for the equipment he proposes to provide match those indicated. In the instance where the equipment he proposes to provide has different electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics, the Contractor AT NO COST TO THE OWNER shall provide the required electrical, plumbing, and controls characteristics required. All modifications to provide the electrical, plumbing, and control characteristics shall be coordinated by the Contractor with the Engineer.

B. Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 22 0513 for details.

C. When any equipment is operable, and it is to the advantage of the Contractor to operate the equipment, he may do so provided that he properly supervises the operation, and retains full responsibility for the equipment operated.

D. Regardless of whether or not the equipment has or has not been operated, the Contractor shall clean the equipment properly, make required adjustments, and complete punch list items before final acceptance by the Owner.

E. The date of acceptance by the Architect, for beneficial use by the Owner, shall be the beginning date of the warranty period. The warranty period for all materials, equipment products, and contractor's work shall be one year from the date of substantial completion. Refer to individual specification sections for extended warranty requirements.

1.11 SPACE AND EQUIPMENT ARRANGEMENT

A. The size of each item of mechanical equipment shown on Drawings is based on the dimensions of a particular manufacturer. While other manufacturers may be acceptable, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine whether or not the equipment he proposes to furnish will fit into the space. Shop drawings shall be prepared when required by the Architect to indicate a suitable arrangement.

B. Install equipment in a manner to permit access to all surfaces. Install valves, motors, drives, lubricating devices, filters, and other accessory items in a position to allow removal for service without requiring the disassembly of another part.

C. Large equipment or components which will be installed in the building, and which are too large to permit access through doorways, stairways or shafts, shall be brought to the site and placed in the appropriate spaces before the enclosing structure is completed. The equipment shall be protected until all hazards of damage to the equipment are eliminated.

1.12 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Manuals shall be submitted which contain the following:
   1. Description of the system provided.
      a. Handling, storage, and installation instructions.
      b. Detailed description of the function of each principal component of the systems or equipment, including necessary piping diagrams and valve identification charts.
   2. Operating procedures:
      a. Pre startup activities required.
      b. Startup.
      c. Normal operation.
      d. Emergency shutdown.
      e. Normal shutdown.
      f. Trouble-shooting guide.
   3. Maintenance:
      a. Complete lubrication requirements; type and source of lubricant, internal between lubrication, etc.
      b. Preventative and repair maintenance procedures.
      c. Complete spare parts list with cross reference to original equipment manufacturer part number.
   4. Control and alarm features:
      a. A schematic of all control systems.
      b. Control loop electric ladder diagrams and interlock diagrams.
      c. A list of all controller operating set points.
      d. A listing of all setting for alarms and shutdown system.
      e. Provide pump curves for all pumps.
      f. Provide fan curves for all fans.
   5. Safety and environmental considerations.
   6. Other data required elsewhere in the specifications.

B. Three copies of the manuals shall be provided within sufficient time to allow for training of Owner's personnel. Submit one copy of the manuals to the Architect for review no later than 90 calendar days prior to substantial completion or building turn over, whichever comes first. Submit the remaining three corrected copies within 15 days after review set is returned to contractor. Progress payment may be withheld if this requirement is not met.

C. The requirements for manuals apply to each package and field-fabricated operating system.

D. The manuals shall be provided in three-ring side binders with durable plastic covers.

E. The manuals shall contain a detailed table of contents and have tab dividers for major sections and special equipment.

F. The Owner will not accept any training or equipment unless the maintenance manuals are received a minimum of 10 working days prior to request for Training/Turnover.

1.13 **START-UP EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS**

A. Whenever the manufacturer of a particular item of equipment or a particular system makes available a start-up service after completion of the installation, such manufacturer's start-up service (rendered by the manufacturer or his authorized representative) shall be provided.

B. Witnessing and explanations of start-up services shall be included as part of the "Instruction of Owner's Personnel" as specified below.

1.14 **INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL**

A. Provide the services of competent engineers or technicians acceptable to the Architect to instruct representatives of the Owner in complete and detailed operation and maintenance of each item of equipment, and each system. These instructions shall be provided for whatever periods may be necessary to accomplish the desired results. Upon completion of these instructions, the Contractor shall obtain a letter of release, acknowledged by the Owner or his authorizes representative, stating the dates on which the various kinds of instruction were given, and the personnel to whom the instructions were given.

B. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for proper maintenance of equipment and systems until the instructions have been given to the Owner's personnel and the letter of release acknowledged.

C. In providing the instructions to the Owner's personnel, the written operating and maintenance manuals shall be followed in all instances, and the Owner's personnel shall be familiarized with such manuals.

1.15 **AS-BUILT DRAWINGS**

A. The Contractor shall, during the progress of the job, keep a set of record prints on which he shall mark all changes. After completion of a CADD release form by the Contractor and near the conclusion of the job, the Architect will provide the Contractor with one set of AutoCAD electronic files of the Mechanical, Plumbing, and Electrical Drawings. The Contractor shall draft on these electronic files all changes made during the progress of the work and return them and one set of paper plans with the changes to the Architect as "As-Built Drawings".

1.16 **COORDINATION WITH HVAC COMMISSIONING AGENT (CXP)**

A. Contractor shall provide assistance and support to the project commissioning agent, hired by the owner.

B. A general description of the contractor's work includes the following items:
1. Provide all personnel, tools, materials, and equipment to support the commissioning process. Facilitate the coordination of the commissioning work by the CxP and incorporate commissioning activities into the master schedule.
2. Incorporate all commissioning related activities into the project schedule, ensuring that Cx activities do not delay project completion.
3. Notify Dallas ISD and the CxP in writing that equipment and systems are ready for functional testing.
4. Perform equipment startups using authorized manufacturing representatives.
5. Provide written documentation to the CxP that equipment and systems are fully operational and ready to be functionally performance tested.
6. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxP, including change of season testing.
7. Attend construction phase commissioning coordination meetings.
8. Provide qualified personnel for participation in commissioning tests.
9. Provide equipment, materials, and labor necessary to correct deficiencies found during the commissioning process.
10. Attend testing, adjusting and balancing (TAB) review and coordination meetings.
11. Participate in HVAC systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientations and inspections as directed by the CxP.
12. Provide information requested by the CxP for commissioning documentation and testing.
13. Perform all quality control functions to ensure equipment and systems are installed properly. Ensure equipment and systems are brought to a state of readiness and full functionality prior to commencing the commissioning functional performance testing processes.
14. Provide measuring instruments and HVAC control personnel who are to operate the HVAC controls during the functional performance Test phases
15. Provide qualified personnel for participation in Commissioning tests.
16. Provide a representative to attend end of warranty testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 **MANUFACTURERS**

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

B. Each item of equipment furnished on this project shall have local representation, factory-authorized service and an adequate stock of repair parts. "Local" shall be defined, for this purpose, as "within 50 miles of the project site."

2.2 **PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS**

A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.

B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.

B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
   2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

C. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

D. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.

1. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

F. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
1. Manufacturers:
   a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
   b. Calpico, Inc.
   c. Metraflex Co.
   d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.

F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.

G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.

H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 **GROUT**

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.10 **FLAME SPREAD PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS**

A. Materials used for insulation, acoustical linings, adhesives, jackets and coatings, and combinations of these materials, shall each have a flame spread rating of 25 or less, and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less, as determined by an independent testing laboratory in accordance with NFPA-255.

2.11 **FIRESTOPPING**

A. Provide firestopping in sealing of penetrations in fire-rated construction, horizontal and vertical, including the following materials:
1. Foam: Dow Corning Firestop silicone RTV foam, liquid component Part A (black) and liquid component Part B (off-white).
2. Sealant: 3M 1000NS and 1003SL silicone adhesive sealant, single component, neutral cure, and non-slumping.
3. Damming Materials: Mineral fiberboard, mineral fiber matting, mineral fiber putty, and plywood or particle board, as selected by the applicator.

B. Mixes shall conform to the manufacturer's directions.

2.12 **ACCESS PANELS AND DOORS**

A. Provide wall and ceiling access doors for unrestricted access to concealed valves, dampers, and other mechanical equipment items and devices.

B. Access doors mounted in surfaces to be painted shall be Milcor Style "K" for plastered surfaces, and Style "M" for non-plastered surfaces. Style "K" doors shall be set with door flush with adjacent surfaces. Access doors mounted on tile surfaces shall be stainless steel and of similar styles as the carbon steel access doors described above. Access doors shall be not less than 12" x 12" in size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 **HVAC DEMOLITION**

A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping in its entirety. If a portion of piping is to remain active, plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.

2. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of duct in its entirety. If a portion of duct is to remain active, cap and seal with same or compatible ductwork material.
3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment including housekeeping pad.

C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

D. Access: Access to and use of the existing facilities and site will be restricted, and shall be under the direction and control of the Owner.

E. Disruptions: Maintain existing plumbing, heating, ventilating, air conditioning, fire protection, and other existing systems, and maintain all existing functions in service except for scheduled disruption. Where existing functions to remain in use are disrupted, they shall be fully restored after disruption, in full compliance with this Division of the Specifications for new work.

F. Scheduling of Disruption: Seek and obtain approval two weeks in advance of event for date, starting, and duration of each required disruption.

G. Notice of Disruption: Date, time and duration of each disruption shall be subject to the Owner's prior approval, and shall include the following information in the form of a memorandum submitted by the Contractor to the Architect for approval by the Owner:

Facility/System	Date	Starting Time	Duration

H. Emergency Disruptions: When circumstances preclude obtaining advance approval as specified above; make request immediately on knowledge of the requirement, and perform the work so as to cause the minimum amount of disruption, for the minimum duration.

I. Notification: Notify the Architect and the owner immediately, by telephone and then in writing, as changes and additions to the scheduled disruption requirements become known.

J. Duration: Complete as large a portion of the work as possible before initiating disruption and perform only that work necessary so as to minimize duration of disruption. Maintain adequate personnel, supplies, materials, equipment, tools, and other resources at job site to avoid unnecessary delay in resumption of normal service.

K. General:
1. Modify remove, or relocate materials and items indicated on the Drawings or required by the installation of new facilities.
2. Remove demolition materials from the site and deliver salvage materials to destinations on the premises, as directed.

L. Relocations:
1. Repair and restore to good functional condition, equipment, materials and items scheduled for relocation, which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations.
2. Remove carefully, in reserve order to original assembly or placement, items which are to be relocated.
3. Protect items until relocation is complete.
4. Clean and repair items to be relocated, and provide new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore to good operating order.

5. Perform the relocation work in accordance with applicable Sections of the Specifications, utilizing skilled workers.

M. Relocating Devices: Remove and reinstall in locations designated by the Architect temperature control system devices, relays, piping, ductwork, equipment and other devices required for the operation of the various systems that are installed in existing-to-be-renovated construction.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

G. Install piping at indicated slopes.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, rated gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.

N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
   2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
   3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.

Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

R. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

I. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
   1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
   2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   3. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom.

B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.6 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. The Drawings and Specifications are intended to accomplish certain objectives. They show pipe and duct sizes, general routing and location, and describe the various systems. These documents describe and size equipment, its general location, usage, support and auxiliary requirements. They describe most, but not all of the materials and their usage for this project.

B. Contract Documents do not, however, detail certain job requirements. They do not show exact layouts, locations or elevations of ducts, expansion joints, anchors, sleeves, hangers, slots, holes, outlets, inserts, elbows, fittings, thermometers, thermostats, gauges, wells, underfloor drains, sumps, or access doors. They do not show final precise locations of equipment by dimensions in most instances, or manufacturer's requirements for proper installation, operation and maintenance.

C. The exact location of each item shall be determined by reference to the project Contract Drawings, and to details, equipment drawings, and roughing-in drawings, by measurements at the building, and in cooperation with the various trades. Minor relocations necessitated by the conditions at the site or directed by the Owner shall be made without additional cost to the Owner.

D. Coordinate proper locations and sizes of slots, holes or openings in the building structure pertaining to this work, and for the correct location of sleeves. Place inserts to accommodate the ultimate installation of hangers in the forms, and set sleeves in forms before concrete is poured, and in masonry walls while they are under construction. Concealed lines shall be installed as required by the pace of the job to precede the general construction.

E. Study construction documents and lay out piping work carefully in advance of fabrication and erection, in order to meet the requirements of the extremely limited spaces. Where conflicts occur, work with all involved trades and resolve the conflict prior to erection of any work in the area involved.

3.7 PAINTING

A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."

B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.8 CONCRETE BASES

A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
   1. Construct minimum 3-1/2” concrete bases of dimensions in accordance with approved shop drawings, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
   2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   4. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
   5. Chamfer corners of all housekeeping pads.
   6. Provide necessary foundations for exterior equipment pads and confirm construction of required pads with structural engineer.
   7. Refer to Structural for housekeeping pad construction and reinforcement requirements.

3.9 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.10 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.

B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.

C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.11 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.

B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.

E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

3.12 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR MECHANICAL WORK

A. Excavation
   1. General: Do not excavate for mechanical work until work is ready to proceed without delay, so that time lapse from excavation to completion of backfilling will be minimum.
   2. Excavate with vertical sided excavations to greatest extent possible, except where otherwise indicated. Where necessary, provide sheeting and cross-bracing to sustain sides of excavations. Remove sheeting and cross-bracing during backfilling wherever such removal would not endanger work or other property. Where not removed, cut sheeting off at sufficient distance below finished grade to not interfere with other work.
   3. Width: Excavate for piping with 6" to 9" clearance on both sides of pipe, except where otherwise shown or required for proper installation of pipe joists, fittings, valves and other work. Excavate for other mechanical work to provide minimum practical but adequate working clearances.
   4. Depth for Direct Support: For work to be supported directly on undisturbed soil, do not excavate beyond indicated depths, and hand-excavate bottom cut to accurate elevations.
   5. Depth for Subbase Support: For large piping (6" pipe size and larger), tanks, and where indicated for other mechanical work, excavate for installation of subbase material in depth indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, 6" below bottom of work to be supported.
   6. Shoring and Bracing: Provide materials for shoring and bracing to comply with local codes and authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain shoring and bracing in excavations regardless of time period excavations will be open. Carry down shoring and bracing as excavation progresses.
   7. Excavation for Trenches:
      a. Dig trenches to uniform width required for particular item to be installed, sufficiently wide to provide ample working room. Provide 6" to 9" clearance on both sides of piping.
      b. Excavate trenches to depth indicated or required. Carry depth of trenches for piping to establish indicated flow lines and invert elevations. Beyond building perimeter, keep bottoms of trenches sufficiently below finish grade to avoid freeze-ups.
      c. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation 6" below required elevation and backfill with 6" layer of crushed stone or gravel prior to installation of pipe.
      d. For piping 5" or less in nominal size, do not excavate beyond indicated depths. Hand excavate bottom cut to accurate elevations and support piping on undisturbed soil.
      e. For piping 6" and larger in nominal size, tanks, and other mechanical work indicated to receive subbase, excavate to subbase depth indicated, or if not otherwise indicated, to below bottom of work to be supported.
      f. Grade bottoms of trenches as indicated, notching under piping couplings to provide solid bearing for entire body of piping.
      g. Depth for Exterior Piping: Except as otherwise indicated, excavate for exterior piping so that depth of cover shall be 18" minimum.
      h. Excavate near large trees (within drip line) by hand, and protect root system from damage or dryout to greatest extent possible. Maintain moist condition for root system and cover exposed roots with burlap. Paint root cuts of 1" diameter and larger with asphaltic tree paint.

i. Store excavated material (temporarily) near excavation, in manner that will not interfere with or damage excavation or other work. Do not store under trees (within drip line). Retain excavated material that complies with requirements for backfill material. Dispose of excavated material that is either in excess of quantity needed for backfilling or does not comply with requirements for backfill material.

B. Backfill
1. Do not backfill until installed mechanical work has been tested and accepted, wherever testing is indicated.
2. Backfill with finely-graded subbase material to 6" above wrapped, coated, and plastic piping and tanks, and to centerline of other tanks.
3. Condition backfill material by either drying or adding water uniformly, to whatever extent may be necessary to facilitate compaction to required densities. Do not backfill with frozen soil materials.
4. Backfill simultaneously on opposite sides of mechanical work, and compact simultaneously; do not dislocate work from installed positions.
5. Backfill excavations in 8" high courses of backfill material, uniformly compacted to the following densities (% of maximum density, ASTM D 1557), using power-driven hand-operated compaction equipment.
6. Lawn and Landscaped Areas: 85% for cohesive soils; 90% for cohesionless soils.
7. Paved Areas Other Than Roadways: 90% for cohesive soils; 95% for cohesionless soils.
8. Roadways: 90% for cohesive soils; 95% for cohesionless soils.
9. Backfill to elevations matching adjacent grades, at a time of backfilling excavations for mechanical work.

C. Performance and Maintenance
1. Subsidence: Where subsidence is measurable or observable at mechanical work excavations during general project warranty period, remove surface (pavement, lawn or other finish), add backfill material, compact, and replace surface treatment. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of surface or finish to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0513

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to Common Motor Requirements for Equipment, Section 22 0513, for HVAC motors.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used.)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 0516

EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Flexible, ball-joint, packed expansion joints.
2. Slip-joint packed expansion joints.
3. Expansion-compensator packless expansion joints.
4. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
5. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
6. Rubber packless expansion joints.
7. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
8. Pipe loops and swing connections.
9. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKED EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Flexible, Ball-Joint, Packed Expansion Joints:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
      b. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
   2. Standards: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section II, "Materials"; and ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials and design of pressure-containing parts and bolting.
   3. Material: Carbon-steel assembly with asbestos-free composition packing.
   4. Design: For 360-degree rotation and angular deflection.
   5. Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig at 400 deg F.
   6. Angular Deflection for NPS 6 and Smaller: 30 degree minimum.
   7. Angular Deflection for NPS 8 and Larger: 15 degree minimum.
   8. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
   9. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

B. Slip-Joint Packed Expansion Joints:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
      b. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
   2. Standard: ASTM F 1007.
   3. Material: Carbon steel with asbestos-free PTFE packing.
   4. Design: With internal guide and injection device for repacking under pressure. Include drip connection if used for steam piping.
   5. Configuration: Single joint and/or double joint as indicated on the drawings.
   6. End Connections: Flanged or weld ends to match piping system.

2.2 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Metal, Expansion-Compensator Packless Expansion Joints:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Flexicraft Industries.
      b. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
      c. Metraflex, Inc.
   2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Configuration for Copper Tubing: Two-ply, phosphor-bronze bellows with copper pipe ends.
      a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint.
      b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded.
   4. Configuration for Steel Piping: Two-ply, stainless-steel bellows; steel-pipe end connections; and carbon-steel shroud.
      a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
      b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged.

B. Rubber, Expansion-Compensator Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.; a div. of Vibration Isolation Products of Texas, Inc.
   b. Flexicraft Industries.
   c. Mason Industries, Inc.; Mercer Rubber Co.
2. Material: Twin reinforced-rubber spheres with external restraining cables.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 170 deg F unless otherwise indicated.
4. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

C. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Flexicraft Industries.
      b. Metraflex, Inc.
   2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
   3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
   4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
      a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
      b. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
   5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
      a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
      b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
   6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
      a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
      b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
   7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
      a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
      b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
   8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
      a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
      b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
   9. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 14 and Larger: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
      a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

D. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Flexicraft Industries.
      b. Flo Fab inc.
      c. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
      d. Metraflex, Inc.
      e. Universal Metal Hose; a subsidiary of Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
   2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
   3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
   4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Configuration: Single joint and/or double joint as indicated on the drawings.
   6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single- or multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
      a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint.
      b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: threaded.
      c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
   7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single- or multi-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe ends, and carbon-steel shroud.
      a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
      b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

E. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.; a div. of Vibration Isolation Products of Texas, Inc.
      b. Flexicraft Industries.
      c. Mason Industries, Inc.; Mercer Rubber Co.
      d. Metraflex, Inc.
   2. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
   3. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-NMEJ-703.
   4. Arch Type: Multiple arches.
   5. Spherical Type: Multiple spheres.
   6. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
   7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
   8. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
   9. Material for Water: EPDM.
   10. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

2.3 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Anvil International, Inc.
   2. Victaulic Company.

B. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.

C. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.

D. Nipples: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.

E. Couplings: Flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM gasket suitable for cold and hot water, and bolts and nuts.

2.4 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:
   1. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:
   1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
   2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
   3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
   4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
      a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
      b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
      c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
   5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
      a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
      b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
      c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

B. Install packed-type expansion joints with packing suitable for fluid service.

C. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

D. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.

E. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.

B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.

C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.

D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.

C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.

D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

E. Anchor Attachments:
   1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
   2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.

F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
   1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
   2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0519

METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
   2. Thermowells.
   3. Dial-type pressure gages.
   4. Test plugs.
   5. Sight flow indicators.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 23 Section "Natural Gas Piping" for gas meters.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   2. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
   5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
   6. Window: Plastic.
   7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads. Adjustable type, 180 degrees vertical and 360 degrees horizontal with locking device.
   9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
   10. Acceptable Manufacturers: Trerice, Weiss & Weksler Instruments.

2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CSA.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Liquid-filled, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Plastic.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.
11. Acceptable Manufacturers: Trerice, Weiss & Weksler Instruments.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

E. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

F. Acceptable Manufacturers: Flow Design, Inc., MG Piping Products Co., National Meter, Inc., Peterson Equipment Co., Inc., Sisco Manufacturing Co., Trerice, H.O. Co., Watts Industries, Inc. Water Products Div.

2.6 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

A. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.

C. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

D. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.

E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions, so they are visible from the floor.

F. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.

G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position. All gages must be visible from the floor.

H. Install test plugs in piping tees.

I. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.

J. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

K. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.

L. Install thermometers in the following locations:
1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts at AHUs.
8. Outlet of each domestic water heater or storage tank.

M. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
1. Inlet and discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
3. Suction and discharge of each pump.
4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air handling units.

N. Install pressure and temperature tests plugs at inlet and outlet of all cooling and heating coils, pumps, and all other HVAC equipment.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F, with 2-degree divisions.

B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 160 deg F, with 2-degree divisions.

C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F, with 2-degree divisions.

D. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F, with 2-degree divisions.

E. Scale Range for Domestic Hot Water: 30 to 180 deg. F with 2-degree divisions.

F. Scale Range for Domestic Cold Water: 30 to 100 deg. F with 2-degree divisions.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0523

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to General Duty Valves for piping systems, Section 22 0523, for HVAC valves.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 0529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to Hangers and Supports for Piping and Equipment, Section 22 0529, for HVAC supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 0533

HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes heat tracing with the following electric heating cables:
   1. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated.
   1. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.

B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable. Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
   2. Applications: Lengths, loads, locations, controls, and calculations.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified differently below.
   1. Warranty Period from date of Substantial Completion:
      a. Electrical Heating Cables: Parts and labor for 2 years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Chromalox, Inc.; Wiegard Industrial Division; Emerson Electric Company.
   2. Easy Heat Inc.
   3. Raychem; a division of Tyco Thermal Controls.

B. Trace Heating Cable
   1. Shall be a self-regulating heater cable with a parallel circuit electric heater strip.

2. Shall feature an irradiation cross-linked conductive polymer core material that is extruded over the multi-stranded, tin-plated, 18-gauge copper bus wires.
3. The conductive core material shall increase or decrease its heat output in response to temperature changes.
4. Max. rated service voltage shall be 277 VAC. Refer to drawings for capacities.
5. Shall feature a thermoplastic elastomer inner jacket extruded over the conductive core material that provides dielectric strength, moisture resistance, and protection from impact and abrasion damage.
6. A stranded copper braid shall be installed over the inner jacket, providing a continuous ground path.
7. A modified polyolefin over jacket shall cover the braid for added dielectric strength, moisture resistance, and protection from impact and abrasion damage.
8. UL listed and installation according to IEEE 515.1.

C. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. Refer to Drawings for description of required cables.
2. Provide cable output rating and wrap arrangement to effectively protect each application from freezing at 0ºF.

2.2 CONTROLS

A. Thermostats
1. Shall be used for ambient temperature control.
2. Enclosure: Die Cast Aluminum.
3. Classifications: NEMA Type 4X IP66
4. Temperature Range: -9ºC to +60ºC (+15ºF to +140ºF)
5. Exposure: -40ºC to +71ºC (-40ºF to +160ºF)
6. Capillary:
   a. Material: Stainless Steel
   b. Maximum Bulb Temperature: +71ºC (+160ºF)
7. Electrical Data:
   a. CSA Rating: 22 amp resistance 480 Vac
   b. UIL Rating: 22 amp resistance 480 Vac
8. Calibration Accuracy: +1.1ºC (+2ºF)
   Switch Type: Pole Double Throw

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Warning Labels: Refer to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.
1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
   1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
   2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install electric heating cable across expansion joints according to manufacturer's written recommendations using slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.

B. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.

C. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.

D. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

E. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.

F. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

G. Protect installed heating cables, including non-heating leads, from damage.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
   1. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
   2. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.

B. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounting cables.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Compile and maintain field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 0548

VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Isolation pads.
   2. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
   3. Elastomeric hangers.
   4. Spring hangers.
   5. Restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails.
   6. Steel and inertia, vibration isolation equipment bases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation to select vibration isolators, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
   2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
   3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
   4. Select the required minimum isolator deflection to satisfy the requirements of each piece of equipment at each unique installation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product listed in the specification.
   1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
   2. Kinetics Noise Control.
   3. Mason Industries.
   4. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.

B. Pads (Type 1): Arranged in two 3/8” layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
   1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
   2. Peabody Type NGDD, Mason Type WSW or approved equal.

C. Elastomeric Hangers (Type 2a): A rubber suspension type isolator with an elastomeric hanger, consisting of a rectangular steel box and elastomeric isolation element, which shall be of Neoprene or high quality synthetic rubber with ozone and anti-oxidant additives. The elements shall be designed for approximately 1/4-inch deflection and loaded so that deflection does not exceed 15% of the free height of the element. The design shall prevent metal-to-metal contact between the hanger rod and the steel box. Shall be Peabody Type RH, Mason Type HD, or approved equal.

D. Spring Isolators (Type 3): Provide a base mount type isolator with adjustable, free standing open-spring mounting with combination leveling bolt and equipment fastening bolt. The spring (or springs) shall be rigidly attached to the mounting baseplate and to the spring compression plate. To assure stability, the outside diameter shall be a minimum of 0.8 times the vertical operating height. The isolator shall be designed for a minimum Kx/Ky (horizontal to vertical spring rate) of 1.0. A Neoprene pad having a minimum thickness of 1/4-inch shall be bonded to the bottom of the baseplate. Baseplates shall be sized to limit pad loading to 100psi. Shall be Peabody type FDS, Mason Type SLF, or approved equal.

E. Spring Hangers (Type 3a): A suspension type isolator with spring hanger consisting of a rectangular steel box, coil springs, spring cups, Neoprene impregnated fabric washer, steel washer and Neoprene insert designed to prevent metal-to-metal contact between the rod and the bottom of the hanger box. The hanger box shall be capable of supporting 40% of rated load without noticeable deformation of failure. Shall be Peabody Type SH, Mason Type HS, or approved equal.

F. Spring Hangers (Type 3b): A suspension type isolator with spring hanger as described in Type 3a, with the addition of an elastomeric element at the top of the box for acoustic isolation. The design shall prevent metal-to-metal contact between the hanger rod and the top of the hanger box. The elastomeric element shall meet the design requirements for Type 2 mounting. Shall be Peabody Type SRH, Mason Type DNHS, or approved equal.

G. Restrained Spring Isolators (Type 4): A base mount type isolator with an adjustable, open-spring isolator having one or more coil springs rigidly attached to a top compression plate and a baseplate. A ribbed or waffled neoprene pad having a minimum thickness of 1/4-inch shall be bonded to the bottom of the baseplate. The isolator shall fit within a welded steel enclosure consisting of a top plate and a rigid lower housing, serving as a blocking device during installation. Restraining bolts shall connect the top-plate and lower housing to prevent the isolated equipment from rising when drained of water. Neoprene grommets shall be provided to prevent metal-to-metal contact between the restraining bolts and isolator housing. Baseplates shall be sized to limit pad loading to 100 psi, and springs shall be designed for a minimum Kx/Ky (horizontal to vertical spring rate) of 1.0. Shall be Peabody type FLS, Mason Type SLR, or approved equal.

H. Riser Isolators: Provide manufacturer's standard pad-type isolator bonded to steel plate, formed for welding to pipe sleeve extension.

I. Riser Support Isolators: Provide manufacturer's standard pad-type isolator laminated between two formed steel plate members, one for welding to pipe sleeve extension and the other for welding to pipe riser.

2.2 RESTRAINED VIBRATION ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS (Type D)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
   2. Mason Industries.
   3. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
   4. Kinetics Noise Control.

B. General Requirements for Restrained Vibration Isolation Roof-Curb Rails: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment.

C. Lower Support Assembly: Formed sheet-metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. Upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.

D. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch- thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
   1. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators.
      a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
      b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
      c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
      d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
      e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, a minimum of 2" deflection without deformation or failure.
   2. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
      a. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant standard neoprene.

E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.

F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

2.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. No Base (Type A): Isolators directly attached to equipment.

B. Structural Steel Rails or Base (Type B): Where rails or beams are indicated for use with isolator units to support equipment, provide structural steel support members with isolator support brackets and anchor bolt holes, designed by the vibration isolation materials manufacturer. Structural steel bases shall comply with ANSI/ASTM A36, and shall have a minimum depth equal to 10% of the longest span between isolators, but not less than (4) inches, or as indicated in the Drawings. Sizes and shapes shall be as requires for equipment to be supported. Isolator support brackets shall be welded to the structural beam base as required to provide the lowest possible mounting height of supported equipment. Steel beams shall provide a rigid, distortion -free mounting base for supported equipment without excessive differential motion between driving and driven equipment components.

C. Inertia Base (Type C): Provide reinforced concrete inertia blocks, including perimeter steel pouring form, reinforcing bars welded in place, bolting templates, and height saving brackets for mounting of the isolators. Each inertia block shall have a thickness of at least six (6) inches, or greater, as required to provide a rigid mounting for equipment. The weight of each inertia block shall not be less than 150% of the weight of equipment supported. Inertia blocks shall be sized to extend not less than four (4) inches beyond the base of the supported equipment in each direction and shall be T-shaped where necessary to conserve space. Inertia blocks for pumps shall support the suction elbows on end suction pumps, and both the suction and discharge elbows on horizontal split case pumps. Perimeter steel members shall be structural channels having a minimum depth of 10% of the longest span, but not less than six (6) inches. Shall be Peabody Type C1B-H, Mason Type KSL or BMK, or approved equal.

2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. This work in general shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, the following:
   1. Isolate all mechanical and electrical equipment from the building structure by means of appropriately selected noise and vibration isolator.
   2. Piping over 1-inch o.d. located in mechanical equipment rooms, for minimum of 50 feet or 100 pipe diameters (whichever is greater) from the connection to the vibration isolated equipment, shall be isolated from the building structure by means of noise and vibration isolation hangers. Provide the first three (3) hangers or support points in each direction from each piece of isolated equipment, with vibration isolation hangers or supports having the same static deflection as the equipment isolators.
   3. Ductwork which is rigidly attached to isolated air moving equipment in mechanical equipment rooms shall be isolated from the building structure by means of noise and vibration isolation hangers or mounts for a minimum of 50 feet.
   4. Isolate piping and duct vertical risers from the building structure by means of noise and vibration isolation guides and supports. Locate isolators as piping enters a mechanical shaft and seal the opening.

C. Piping and ductwork isolated in accordance with these Specifications shall freely pass through walls and floors without rigid connections. After installation of piping and ductwork, caulk penetrations airtight.

D. General: Comply with the minimum static deflections recommended by the ASHRAE, including definitions of critical and non-critical locations, for selection and application of vibration isolation materials and units as indicated.

E. Manufacturer's Recommendations: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's recommendations for selection and application of vibration isolation materials and units.

3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

B. Piping Restraints:
   1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.

C. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

F. Install and attach anchors and guides to control pipe movement.

G. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

3.5 HVAC VIBRATION-CONTROL DEVICE SCHEDULE

A. Below is a schedule of isolated equipment for this project. Any equipment, system, construction or condition that may be altered, added or changed, or that is not specifically considered herein or on the drawings, shall be treated in the same manner as specified for similar equipment, systems, or construction shall comply with the noise and vibration isolation requirements of these specifications.

EQUIPMENT TYPE	BASE TYPE	ISOLATOR TYPE	ISOLATOR DEFLECTION
FANS			
Cabinet, floor-mounted	A	3	
Cabinet, suspended	-	3b[b]	
Centrifugal, DWDI, floor-mounted	C	3	
Axial flow, floor-mounted	C	3	
Centrifugal, in-line floor-mounted	C	3	
Centrifugal, in-line, suspended	-	3b[b]	
Utility vent sets	A or B	3	
Roof exhausters, curb-mounted	A[a]	1	
Cooling Towers, roof mounted	B	3 or 4[c]	
PIPING	A	2a, 3a or 3b	
DUCTS	A	2a, 3a or 3b	

AIR HANDLING UNITS			
Factory-fabricated, floor-mounted	A	3[e]	
Factory-fabricated, suspended	-	3b[b]	
Factory-fabricated, roof-mounted	D[d]	3	
Factory-fabricated, roof-mounted	A or B	3	
CHILLERS			
Grade Supported Centrifugal	A	4	
Grade Supported Air Cooled	A	1	
Roof Mounted Air Cooled	A	4	
PUMPS			
Floor Mounted	C	3	
Suspended	-	3b[b]	
Packaged Systems	A	4	
AIR COMPRESSORS			
Reciprocating	C	4	
Rotary or centrifugal	C	4	

---

a. Mount isolation between curb and fan.
b. Mount units on steel channel frame and suspend frame from structure.
c. Cooling tower supports shall be selected and employed in a manner that results in supporting the cooling tower in conformance with the recommendations of the tower manufacturer.
d. Custom fabricated curb fit to the dimensions and weights of the RTU.
e. Delete isolators beneath unit if internally isolated. In lieu of spring isolators, provide isolation type 1.

3.6 TESTING AND CERTIFICATION

A. Upon completion of the installation and after the system is put into operation, inspect the systems of vibration control and correct any discrepancies or make adjustments. If necessary, instrumentation tests and measurements shall be made to determine the source, cause, and path of any objectionable vibration. After such tests are completed, take proper steps to correct the objectionable condition.
B. The noise and vibration control equipment manufacturer or his designated representative shall certify the correctness of the installation and compliance with requirements of this Section.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 0553

IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to Identification for Piping and Equipment, Section 22 0553, for HVAC identification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 0593

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Balancing Air Systems:
      a. Constant-volume air systems.
      b. Variable-air-volume systems.
   2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
      a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
      b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

B. Related Sections
   1. Division 23 Section “Metal Ducts” for duct sealing and testing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Certified TAB reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage an impartial TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB.
   1. The firm will be one that is organized to provide independent professional testing, adjusting and balancing services. The firm shall have one (1) Professional Engineer licensed in the state where the project is located, with current registration.
   2. The firm will have operated a minimum of five (5) years under its current firm name.
   3. All personnel used on the jobsite shall be either TAB engineers or TAB technicians who shall have been permanent, full-time employees of the firm for a minimum of six (6) months prior to working on this specific project.
   4. TAB firm shall submit the following to the Architect/Engineer and/or owner for approval prior to commencing services:
      a. Name and biographical data of the Professional Engineer and all personnel to be assigned to this project.

b. Proof of company operation for a minimum of five (5) years.

B. TAB Conference: Meet with Architect-Engineer and Commissioning Authority for approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
1. Agenda Items:
   a. The Contract Documents examination report.
   b. The TAB plan.
   c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
   d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Notice: Provide seven (7) days advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests after air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

C. The contractor shall make any changes in the sheaves, belts, motors, dampers and valves or the addition of dampers and/or valves as required, to correctly balance the HVAC systems, at no additional cost.

D. The automatic temperature control contractor and/or energy management system contractor shall thoroughly check all controls, sensors, operators, sequences, etc. before notifying the TAB agency that the automatic temperature controls and energy management system are operational. The automatic temperature control contractor and/or energy management system contractor shall provide technical support (technicians and necessary computers) to the TAB agency for a complete check of these systems. The scope of the TAB work as defined herein is indicated in order that the contractor will be apprised of his responsibility regarding the coordination and assistance required to complete the project requirements for final TAB. The TAB firm will be responsible to the architect/engineer and/or owner for the satisfactory execution of the TAB services.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

F. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

H. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

I. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

J. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.

K. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

L. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

M. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

N. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in this Section; and in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB’s Procedural Standards.

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2, "Air Balancing."

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
   1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts or install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
   2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."

M. During the balancing process, all abnormalities or malfunctions of equipment or components discovered by the TAB personnel will be reported promptly to the architect/engineer, owner and contractor so that the condition can be corrected expediently.

N. The temperature controls will be verified for calibration and proper relationship between control devices. The contractor will be advised of any instruments out of calibration so that the automatic temperature controls (ATC) contractor can recalibrate, using data supplied by the TAB firm. The ATC contractor shall assist the TAB firm as required.

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
   1. Measure total airflow.
      a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
   2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
      a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
      b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
      c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
      d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
   3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
      a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
   4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
   5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
   1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
      a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
   2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
   3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
   1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
   1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
   2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum-airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.

B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
   1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
   2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
   3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
   4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
   5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
      a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
   6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
      a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
   7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
   8. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
   1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
   2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
   3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
   4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
   5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
   6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
   7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
   8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:
   1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for

differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
   a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Commissioning Authority and comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps."
2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
   a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.
3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.

B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.

C. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.

D. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.

E. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.

F. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.

G. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.

H. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.

I. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.

J. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.

2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

A. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:
1. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
2. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
3. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
4. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
5. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
6. Measure cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.
7. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup water system.
8. Measure flow through bypass.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record compressor data.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

B. Steam Boilers: Measure and record entering-water temperature and flow and leaving-steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each coil:
   1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
   2. Water flow rate.
   3. Water pressure drop.
   4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
   5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
   6. Airflow.
   7. Air pressure drop.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
   1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
   2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
   3. Check the refrigerant charge.
   4. Check the condition of filters.
   5. Check the condition of coils.
   6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
   7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
   8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
   1. New filters are installed.
   2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
   3. Drain pans are clean.
   4. Fans are clean.
   5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
   6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
   1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
   2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
   3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
   4. Balance each air outlet.

3.17 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
   1. Supply, Return, Outside Air, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 10 or minus 5 percent.
   2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus 10 or minus 5 percent.
   3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus 10 or minus 5 percent.
   4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus 10 or minus 5 percent.

3.18 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
   1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
   2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
   1. Pump curves.
   2. Fan curves.
   3. Manufacturers' test data.
   4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
   5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
   1. Title page.
   2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
   3. Project name.
   4. Project location.
   5. Architect's name and address.
   6. Engineer's name and address.
   7. Contractor's name and address.
   8. Report date.
   9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
   10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
   11. Summary of contents including the following:
      a. Indicated versus final performance.
      b. Notable characteristics of systems.
      c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
   12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
   13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
   14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
   15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
      a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
      b. Conditions of filters.
      c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
      d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
      e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
      f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
      g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
      h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and unit size.
    e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    f. Unit arrangement and class.
    g. Discharge arrangement.
    h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
    a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    b. Horsepower and rpm.
    c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
    b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    c. Fan rpm.
    d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    j. Return airflow in cfm.
    k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    l. Return-air damper position.
    m. Vortex damper position.

E. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
1. Coil Data:
    a. System identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Coil type.
    d. Number of rows.
    e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    f. Make and model number.
    g. Face area in sq. ft..
    h. Tube size in NPS.
    i. Tube and fin materials.
    j. Circuiting arrangement.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    a. Air flow rate in cfm.
    b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    h. Water flow rate in gpm.
    i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.

j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

F. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Fuel type in input data.
g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
h. Ignition type.
i. Burner-control types.
j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
j. Manifold pressure in psig.
k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
m. Motor voltage at each connection.
n. Motor amperage for each phase.
o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btu/h.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
g. Rated amperage.
h. Air flow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft..
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Heat output in Btu/h.

b. Air flow rate in cfm.
c. Air velocity in fpm.
d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
f. Voltage at each connection.
g. Amperage for each phase.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Motor Data:
a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
a. System and air-handling-unit number.
b. Location and zone.
c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
e. Duct size in inches.
f. Duct area in sq. ft..
g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
1. Unit Data:
a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Apparatus used for test.
d. Area served.
e. Make.
f. Number from system diagram.
g. Type and model number.

h. Size.
i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Air flow rate in cfm.
b. Air velocity in fpm.
c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.
d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
e. Final air flow rate in cfm.
f. Final velocity in fpm.
g. Space temperature in deg F.

K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Room or riser served.
d. Coil make and size.
e. Flowmeter type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Air flow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and size.
e. Model number and serial number.
f. Water flow rate in gpm.
g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
i. Pump rpm.
j. Impeller diameter in inches.
k. Motor make and frame size.
l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
m. Voltage at each connection.
n. Amperage for each phase.
o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
c. Actual impeller size in inches.
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
j. Voltage at each connection.

k. Amperage for each phase.

M. Instrument Calibration Reports:
1. Report Data:
a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.19 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:
1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
2. Check the following for each system:
a. Measure airflow of at least 5 percent of air outlets.
b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:
1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect.
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect.
3. Architect shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to 5 percent of the total measurements recorded.
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:
1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.20 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Thoroughly test the Energy Management System (EMS). The testing of the Energy Management System shall include all HVAC controls, sensors, operators, sequences, etc. The tests shall include verification that commands introduced at the EMS console actually occur and temperatures, pressures, etc. indicated at the EMS console correlate with the actual reading at EMS contractor shall

provide technical support to the TAB Firm for a complete check of the HVAC temperature controls and/or the Energy Management System.

B. After testing, adjusting and balancing to design conditions, if comfort conditions are not being maintained, the air conditioning system shall be rebalanced within the limitations of the equipment installed to obtain comfort conditions. If comfort conditions cannot be obtained, a report will be submitted giving specific data regarding the trouble area.

C. Make a total of three (3) inspections within ninety (90) days after occupancy of the building, and make adjustments if required, to insure that satisfactory conditions are being maintained throughout. Inspections to be coordinated with Architect/Engineer and Owner and shall be documented with a supplemental report containing data and information as required.

D. Make an inspection during the opposite season from that in which the initial adjustments were made and at that time make any necessary modifications to the initial adjustment required to produce optimum operation of the systemic components to produce the proper conditions in each conditioned space. The opposite season inspection shall be coordinated with the Architect/Engineer and Owner. This inspection shall be documented with a supplemental report containing any pertinent data and information regarding readings and adjustments made.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0700

HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Refer to Insulation Schedule Shown on Plans

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Insulation Materials
2. Fire-rated insulation systems.
3. Factory-applied jackets.
4. Field-applied jackets.
5. Securements.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 22 0700 - Plumbing Insulation.
2. Section 23 3113 - Metal Ducts for duct liners.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall be tested/classified per UL/ULC 723 or have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. All insulation shall be kept dry and clean during storage and installation. Insulation that becomes wet shall be discarded.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation

application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Insulation materials applied to carbon steel shall be Mass Load Corrosion Rate (MLCR) tested per ASTM 1617.

D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

E. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

F. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

G. Calcium Silicate:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Johns Manville; Thermo-12 Gold.
      b. Or, approved equal.
   2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

H. Elastomeric Closed Cell Foam: Comply with ASTM C 534, (0.28 Btu in/hr ft^2 at 75 degrees F), and containing anti-microbial product protection. Temperature range of -220 deg F to +220 deg F.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
      b. Or, approved equal.

I. Glass Fiber Duct Wrap: Rigid, resin bonded fibrous glass blanket with a damage resistant, flame retardant, reinforced aluminum foil facing (FRK). Comply with ASTM C1136, Type II and ASTM C1290 Type III requirements. Type 75 (0.75 lb/cu.ft density). Thermal Conductivity shall be 0.30 Btu*in/h*ft2 at 75 degrees F.) R value for 1.5” = 4.2, 2.0”=5.6, 2.2”=6.0 installed.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following:
      a. CertainTeed Corp.;
      b. Johns Manville;.

c. Knauf Insulation;.
d. Owens Corning;.

J. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB (0.24 Btu in/h ft2 at 75 degrees F). For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. CertainTeed Corp.
b. Johns Manville;.
c. Knauf Insulation;.
d. Owens Corning;.

K. Glass Fiber Pipe and Tank Insulation: Molded fibrous glass pipe insulation with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393 and ASTM E96. Nominal density is 3.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Operating range of 0 deg F to 1,000 deg F.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. CertainTeed Corp.
b. Johns Manville.
c. Knauf Insulation.
d. Owens Corning.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction and listed and labeled to be in compliance with ASTM E2336.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
c. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
d. FyreWrap.

2.3 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136.

2.4 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.

c. Proto PVC Corporation; LoSmoke.
2. Color: White
3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
   a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
5. 25 Flame Spread, 50 Smoke Developed.

C. Metal Jacket:
1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
   a. 0.016" up through 24" pipe size, 0.024" for pipe sizes larger than 24" and all ductwork.
2. Stainless Steel Jacket: Type T-304.
   a. 0.010" smooth finish
   b. 0.010" corrugated finish for diameters larger than 6 feet.

D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Polyguard; Alumaguard 60.

2.5 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide.
2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
   a. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
   1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
   2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
   a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
   4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
   1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
   2. Provide UL-approved assemblies.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
   2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
   3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
   1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
   2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
   3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
   4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
      a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
      b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
      c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
      d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
      e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
      f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.

g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch- diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel, at least 0.040 inch thick.
3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.6 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.

4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.7 CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Boiler Breechings and Ducts:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.8 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

E. Insulation Installation on Ductwork:
1. Install sheet insulation as duct liner where indicated on the drawings or elsewhere in the specifications.
2. Adhesive should have 100% coverage applied to both surfaces.
3. Install according to ASTM C1710 and manufacturer’s recommendations.

3.9 GLASS-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

E. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

F. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.

3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are required, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
    1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
    2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
    3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
    1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
    2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
    3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
    4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
    5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.11 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.12 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

B. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.13 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Refer to the drawing schedule for insulation types & requirements.

B. Items Not Insulated:
1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible duct connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Refer to the drawing schedule for insulation type and requirements.

3.15 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. All underground piping requiring insulation shall be factory insulated. Field insulated underground piping is NOT allowed.

3.16 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Refer to the drawing schedule for jacketing types and requirements.

B. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 0900

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to 220513 for motor controllers furnished by the mechanical and plumbing equipment providers.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

B. Factory Controls & Integration: When factory installed controls are provided, the FMCS system shall integrate with the factory controls to read, write, and control at a minimum:
   1. Building Schedules: Occupied, Unoccupied, Morning Warm-up, Manual Override, etc.
   2. Building Optimization: Temperature resets, static pressure resets, etc.
   3. Alarms: Basic alarms from factory installed controls shall be alerted through FMCS system.
   4. Resets: Any manual resets available through the factory controls, shall be able to be reset through the FMCS system.

C. Scope
   1. Provide controls for new and replacement equipment as noted on Drawings and integrate into existing FCMS system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct digital control.

B. I/O: Input/output.

C. BACnet, Modbus: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.

D. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.

E. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.

F. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Comply with the following performance requirements:
   1. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:
      a. Water Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
      b. Water Flow: Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.

c. Water Pressure: Plus or minus 2 percent of full scale.
d. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
e. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
f. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
g. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F.
h. Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F.
i. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
j. Airflow (Pressurized Spaces): Plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.
k. Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
l. Airflow (Terminal): Plus or minus 10 percent of full scale.
m. Air Pressure (Space): Plus or minus 0.01-inch wg.
n. Air Pressure (Ducts): Plus or minus 0.1-inch wg.
o. Carbon Monoxide: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.
p. Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
q. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.
1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
5. Floor plans indicating control panel locations.
6. Written description of sequence of operation.
a. Consistency with Dallas ISD's current Energy Conservation Plan
b. All interactions and interlocks with other related systems.
c. Detailed delineation of control between any packaged controls and the building automation system, listing what points the FMCS monitors only vs points the FMCS controls.
d. Sequences for start-up, warm-up, occupied, and unoccupied periods.
e. Capacity control and equipment staging sequences.
f. Temperature and pressure control.
g. Detailed description of all control strategies such as economizer, demand limiting, hot water reset, etc.
h. Sequences for alarms and emergency procedures.
i. Recommended values for all adjustable settings, set-points, and parameters that are to be set or adjusted by operating staff.
j. All other control values or settings used for testing and/or operating equipment.
7. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.

8. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
9. Panel and circuit number of any additional 120V power required.
10. Matrix with VAV box count and list of major equipment.
11. DDC System Hardware:
    a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
    b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
    c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.
12. Control System Software:
    a. Software license for network management tool.
    b. Graphics outline and “Print Page” examples of final product indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
13. Controlled Systems:
    a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring. Include symbols legend.
    b. Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
    c. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
    d. Full points list detailing and defining all required points.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed-air station.
2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
5. Calibration records and list of set points.
6. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:
    a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
    b. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
    c. Device address list.
    d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
    e. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.
7. Software Upgrade Kit: For Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.

B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. The FMCS system labor and materials shall be warranted free from defects for a period of 1 year after final commissioning and owner acceptance.

1.9 WORK BY OTHERS

A. Automatic control valves shall be furnished by the EMS contractor and installed by the Mechanical Contractor. All reducers and fittings necessary to install smaller than pipe size valves shall be furnished and installed by the Mechanical Contractor.

B. Automatic dampers and actuators shall be furnished by the EMS contractor and installed by the Mechanical Contractor.

C. Piping: Water pressure and differential sensors, valve manifolds, flow switches, thermal sensors shall be furnished and installed by the EMS contractor. All piping taps and wells shall be provided by the mechanical contractor in locations shown on plans and/or locations directed by the EMS contractor for optimal performance.

D. Duct air flow monitors shall be furnished by the EMS contractor and installed by the Mechanical Contractor.

E. Smoke Detectors: All smoke detectors, including duct mounted smoke detectors, will be provided and wired to the Fire Alarm Panel by the Fire Alarm Contractor. Duct smoke detectors will be installed by the Mechanical Contractor. Shutdown interlock wiring between starters/variable frequency drives and the Fire Alarm system shutdown contacts shall be installed by the EMS Contractor.

F. Terminal Box DDC controllers will be furnished by the EMS Contractor to the Terminal Box Manufacturer for installation.

G. 24V power for fan powered box and VAV with electric heat DDC controllers will be derived from factory provided 24V transformer in the boxes. Transformer shall be oversized to serve three (3) adjacent VAV cooling only and/or heating water reheat box controllers. All 24V wiring shall be extended from fan powered box and VAV with electric heat to the VAV box by the EMS contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Allowable FMCS Vendors/Manufacturers:
   1. Distech, supplied through JMS Integrated Solutions or TD Industries. **System shall remain LONworks and new controls to be LONworks since just replacing some not all equipment per George Vanderheyden (DISD).**

B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

C. Power for control panels have been shown on the electrical drawings. The electrical contractor will provide the power to the junction box as indicated. The controls contractor shall furnish and install from the junction box to control panel or device as needed. If additional power is needed for any controls device then the controls contractor shall provide power (wire, conduit, etc.) from an available spare breaker to the controls device requiring 120V. Refer to division 26 for product and installation requirements. The circuit number used shall be submitted along with the required shop drawings to the engineer.

D. Data for control panels have been shown on the electrical drawings. If additional data drops are needed for any control device than the controls contractor shall provide the remaining devices and cabling to complete the required FMCS Ethernet network. Refer to Division 28 for product and installation requirements.

2.3 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Controls System Design/Scope of Work Selection Requirements:
   1. Minor Classroom Additions and Minor Mechanical Equipment Replacements/Renovations:
      a. If the existing system has a Java application control engine (JACE), integrate the new controls into the existing system.
         1) Match the existing control protocol with the new controls.
         2) Do not mix LON and BACnet IP systems.
      b. If the existing system is either pneumatic and/or not Distech branded, ensure the entire building receives all new controls.
         1) Control system infrastructure to be Distech BacNET IP or Dallas ISD approved equal. IP controllers include but not limited to central plant, AHU's, RTU's, VAV boxes and miscellaneous equipment.

B. General
   1. New Construction/Renovations: No JACE shall be overloaded past 80% memory, CPU and/or space. Contractor to provide an additional JACE and rework communication trunks as needed to unload JACE.
   2. Consider more sophisticated control strategies, shown to save energy or reduce life cycle costs, only apply where it is not detrimental to overall system reliability and maintainability.
   3. For each project, before demo work, Controls Contractor to take screenshots of existing controls system.
   4. Contractor is responsible for communication trunks that have been cut during construction.

5. Controls Contractor is responsible for coordinating with Dallas ISD and setting up the correct graphic templates for each building. If Contractor fails to do so, Contractor to make all changes needed to meet graphic template at no extra cost to Dallas ISD.
    a. Controls vendor to screenshot controls system graphics for entire facility prior to work commencing and submit this audit information to Dallas ISD designated representative.
    b. Contractor to upload the pre-approved graphics to the BAS no later than 30 days before staff occupancy

C. Control Architecture:
1. The building automation system (BAS) consists of a Distech system that integrates with the Dallas ISD supervisory system. A Tridium Java application control engine (JACE) controller(s) for integration of field controllers and web-based interface with Dallas ISD intranet, or through the internet with a VPN connection.
2. The Java application control engine (JACE) controller to provide programming, scheduling, graphics, and monitoring of the HVAC systems. Provide access to the JACE from any computer on the Dallas ISD intranet or through the internet with a VPN connection.
3. Identify the various control systems at each campus to determine to install a new FMCS/CMCS or to expand the existing system to expand. The goal is limiting the number of different control systems at a campus.
4. Where a JACE building controller is present, expand the existing controller, or if necessary, provide an additional JACE controller to incorporate and integrate the new field controllers.
5. The JACE controller to accept BACnet MS/TP, BACnet IP or Lonworks data from the field controller and other proprietary FMCS components at the campus depending on the scope of work.
6. All field controllers (Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) and programmable controllers) to be
7. Distech and to be provided by the same Contractor that provides the JACE building controller.
8. All controllers to be BACnet or LonMark certified devices.
9. Include controllers, sensors, actuators, etc. as required for a complete operational system.
10. Only critical alarms to populate. Critical alarms are based on critical equipment such as chillers, boilers, pumps and VAV/multizone AHU's.
11. Supply the chillers, boilers, and air handling units, with associated controls and pumps, and a RIB relay with manual HOA switch. This is to allow Dallas ISD to turn on and run equipment locally. The activation of the switch notifies the Building Automation System (BAS) that the unit is in manual override. The BAS graphic to change color to red to alert that that equipment has been locally overridden.

D. Design the facility management control system (FMCS) in accordance with the following:
1. Design simple basic control strategies to allow for ease of maintenance and long-term reliability. All strategies that differ from the master points list and sequences to be approved in writing by Dallas ISD.
2. Open NIC license.
3. Embedded workbench.
4. Use Niagara Framework software for all programming and network management.

E. The FMCS to include at a minimum, the following programs:
1. Time of Day Scheduling: Operate all equipment based on a time schedule programmed through the FMCS central clock system.
2. Holiday Scheduling: Program systems to operate on the night schedule during holidays and weekends. Temporary scheduling to be available on the JACE scheduler.

3. Optimum Start/Stop: Based on indoor and outdoor temperatures and historical data logged by the energy management control system, the optimum start/stop program to calculate the lead time to turn equipment on/off to optimize run times while maintaining the proper temperature during occupancy.
4. Night Setback/Setup: Maintain a minimum unoccupied building temperature during the heating season and a maximum temperature during the cooling season by enabling the required systems. Outdoor air dampers to remain closed during unoccupied operation of equipment.

F. All monitored points provided in the control system to comply with Dallas ISD's points list and be labeled according to the specified naming convention.

G. MDF/IDF rooms to have standalone thermostats.

H. All motorized two-way control valves to be pressure independent for independent room control.

I. In the chilled and hot water plants, all motorized valves to have position sensing feedback provided to FMCS for true position monitoring.

J. Control Actuators: Acceptable Manufacturers: Belimo or Bray.

K. Provide temperature sensors in each classroom for all equipment (VAV boxes, unitary DX equipment, etc.).

L. Temperature sensors for hydronic single zone AHU's and VAV boxes to have a blank face.

M. Temperature sensors for DX single zone RTU serving a classroom to have a blank face with occupancy override button.

N. Temperature sensors for DX RTU serving areas such as Administration, Gyms, Auditoriums, Cafeterias, Kitchens, Choir, Dance and Band to have LCD screen with occupancy override and setpoint adjustment. These sensors to have tamper proof protective covers.

O. All database files and files necessary for system access and troubleshooting, including JACE station backup files, to be loaded on a USB flash drive, and stored within the building controller enclosure. Backup to be done at supervisory server as well.

P. All controller nodes within LNS database files or JACE station files to contain the corresponding room number for which they serve. Keep this information visible in the navigation tree.

Q. Where advanced analytical software is required by code, the system to utilize the Niagara based analytics software. Dallas ISD to have the capability to deactivate system if needed.

2.4 DDC EQUIPMENT

A. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
    a. Global communications.
    b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.

c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.

3. Standard Application Programs:
   a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
   b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
   c. Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.
   d. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
   e. Remote communications.
   f. Maintenance management.
   g. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).
4. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation.
5. Protocol Compliance: Control units shall use BACmet or Modbus protocol.

B. Provide a dedicated UPS for each DDC controller.

C. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.
1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
   a. Global communications.
   b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
   c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation.

D. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA).
6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.

E. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.

3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.

F. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.5 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.
1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
4. Protocol Compliance: Communicate using BACNet or Modbus..
5. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.
6. Enclosure: If outdoors or in wet ambient conditions, waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.

2.6 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.

B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:
1. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F at calibration point.
2. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
3. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft..
4. Averaging Elements in Ducts: Use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft..
5. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
   b. Set-Point Indication: Exposed.
   c. Temperature: LED.
7. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
8. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

C. RTDs and Transmitters:
1. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point.
2. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.

3. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft..
4. Averaging Elements in Ducts: Use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 9 sq. ft.; length as required.
5. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.

D. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.
1. Accuracy: 2 percent full range with linear output.
2. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
3. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
4. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
5. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of 32 to 120 deg F.
6. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.

E. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:
1. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
   a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
   b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
   c. Building Static-Pressure Range: plus/minus 0- to 0.25-inch wg. Building static sensor shall be bi-directional.
   d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.
2. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
3. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
4. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
5. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

2.7 STATUS SENSORS

A. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg.

B. Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig, piped across pump.

C. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.

D. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.

E. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.

F. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.

G. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

H. Water-Flow Switches: Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless-steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

2.8 FLOW MEASURING STATIONS

A. Duct Airflow Station: Combination of air straightener and multiport, self-averaging pitot tube station.
   1. Casing: Galvanized-steel frame.
   2. Flow Straightener: Aluminum honeycomb, 3/4-inch parallel cell, 3 inches deep.
   3. Sensing Manifold: Copper manifold with bullet-nosed static pressure sensors positioned on equal area basis.

2.9 ACTUATORS

A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
   1. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
   3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
   4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
   5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
   6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.

B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
   1. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
   2. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
      a. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
      b. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
      c. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
      d. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
   3. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
   4. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
   5. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
   6. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24-Vac.
   7. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.

8. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
9. Temperature Rating: Minus 0 degrees to plus 122 deg F.
10. Actuator Housing: Molded or die-cast zinc or aluminum.

2.10 CONTROL VALVES

A. Control Valves: Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated. Two-way control valves shall be pressure independent for all DISD projects.

B. Hydronic system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:
1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 125 iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
3. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and stainless-steel or brass seats.
   a. Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom.
   b. Double-Seated Valves: Balanced plug; cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plugs on top and bottom.
4. Sizing: 5-psig Insert value maximum pressure drop at design flow rate or the following:
   a. Two Position: Line size.
   b. Two-Way Modulating: Either the value specified above or twice the load pressure drop, whichever is more.
   c. Three-Way Modulating: Twice the load pressure drop, but not more than value specified above.
5. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.
6. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator and trim shall provide minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of total system (pump) head for two-way valves and 100 percent of pressure differential across valve or 100 percent of total system (pump) head.

C. Butterfly Valves: 200-psig, 150-psig maximum pressure differential, ASTM A 126 cast-iron or ASTM A 536 ductile-iron body and bonnet, extended neck, stainless-steel stem, field-replaceable EPDM or Buna N sleeve and stem seals.
1. Body Style: Lug.
2. Disc Type: Aluminum bronze or elastomer-coated ductile iron.
3. Sizing: 1-psig maximum pressure drop at design flow rate.

D. Terminal Unit Control Valves: Bronze body, bronze trim, two or three ports as indicated, replaceable plugs and seats, and union and threaded ends.
1. Rating: Class 125 for service at 125 psig and 250 deg F operating conditions.
2. Sizing: 3-psig maximum pressure drop at design flow rate, to close against pump shutoff head.
3. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.

2.11 DAMPERS

A. Dampers: AMCA-rated, opposed-blade design; 0.108-inch- minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch-minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches and length of 48 inches.

1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
3. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf; when tested according to AMCA 500D.
4. Dampers shall be Ruskin CD-50 or approved equal.

2.12 CONTROL CABLE

A. Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.

B. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

C. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches above the floor.
   1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.

D. Install automatic dampers according to Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

E. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.

F. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

G. Install hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

H. Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping."

I. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 23 Sections specifying air ducts.

J. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.3 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Install building wire and cable according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Install signal and communication cable according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."
   1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
   2. Install exposed cable in raceway.
   3. Install concealed cable in raceway.
   4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
   5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
   6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
   7. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.

D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.

E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
   2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
   3. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
   4. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
   5. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
   6. Test software and hardware interlocks.

C. DDC Verification:
   1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop checks.
   2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
   3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
   4. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
   5. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
   6. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.

7. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
8. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
9. Check DDC system as follows:
    a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
    b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
    c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
    d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

E. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:
1. Calibrate instruments.
2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
    a. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
    b. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
    c. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
5. Flow:
    a. Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.
    b. Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.
6. Pressure:
    a. Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
    b. Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.
7. Temperature:
    a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
    b. Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.
8. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
9. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.
10. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.
11. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

3.6 System Graphics

A. FMCS Contractor to submit the graphics for the system for engineer and owner approval. Upload screen graphics to the FMCS no later than 30 days before staff occupancy.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

B. Provide a minimum of 40 hours instruction to owner's personnel in the operation and maintenance of the control system. Training sessions shall be video taped by the EMS contractor and tapes/digital files turned over to owner at completion of training.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 2113

HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
   1. Hot-water heating piping.
   2. Chilled-water piping.
   3. Makeup-water piping.
   4. Condensate-drain piping.
   5. Blowdown-drain piping.
   6. Air-vent piping.
   7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.
   8. Chemical treatment.
   9. Hydronic specialties.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
   1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
   2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
   3. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
   4. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
   5. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
   6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
   1. Pressure-seal fittings.
   2. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
   3. Air control devices.
   4. Chemical treatment.
   5. Hydronic specialties.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of

the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

C. Flushing plan for all hydronic piping.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

H. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:
   1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by the pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
   1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
   2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Water-Treatment Chemicals: Furnish enough chemicals for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

D. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

E. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article. Piping shall be Schedule 40, U.S. domestic only. Foreign manufactured piping will not be accepted.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Ductile iron fittings shall meet ASTM A536-84.

F. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

G. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, Class 300 wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

H. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
   1. Material Group: 1.1.
   2. End Connections: Butt welding.
   3. Facings: Raised face.

I. DISD does not allow grooved type fittings and couplings.

2.3 PRE-INSULATED PIPING

A. General
   1. Pre-insulated Piping – furnish a complete HDPE jacketed system of factory pre-insulated steel piping for the specified service. The jacket throughout the entire system shall incorporate electric fusion, butt fusion, or extrusion welding at all fittings, joint closures, or other points of connection. This shall create a jacket that is seamless throughout the entire system with the exception of anchors, whose water shed rings are sealed with a Raychem Dirax or Canusa GTS-65 wrap prohibiting the ingression of water. If leak detection is required the system shall incorporate a copper wire, as specified below, to make the system leak detection ready. All pre-insulated pipe, fittings, insulating materials, and technical support shall be provided by the pre-insulated piping system manufacturer.
   2. A complete layout of the system, showing anchors, expansion provisions, and building entrance details, shall be provided by the pre-insulated pipe manufacturer. Means for expansion must be made in pipe offsets or loops. The system shall be pre-fabricated and pre-engineered to minimize the number of field welds.
   3. The system shall be FERO-THERM as manufactured by Thermacor Process, L.P., of Ft. Worth, Texas.

B. Carrier pipe shall be steel ASTM A-53, Grade B., ERW (Type E) or seamless (Type S), standard weight, Schedule 40 U.S. domestic only. Foreign manufactured piping will not be accepted. When practical, piping shall be provided in 40-foot double random lengths. All carbon steel pipe shall have ends cut square and beveled for butt-welding. Straight sections of factory-insulated pipe shall have 6” of exposed pipe at each end for field joint fabrication.

C. Insulation shall be polyurethane foam either spray applied or high pressure injected with one shot into the annular space between carrier pipe and jacket. Insulation shall be rigid, 90%-95% closed cell polyurethane with a 2.0 to 3.0 lbs. per cubic foot density and coefficient of thermal conductivity (K-factor) of 0.15 @ 75 degrees F. and shall conform to ASTM C-591. Maximum operating temperature shall not exceed 250 degrees F. Insulation thickness shall be specified by calling out appropriate carrier pipe and jacket size combinations as listed on Drawing FTSG 7.103.

D. Jacketing material shall be extruded, black, high density polyethylene (HDPE), having a minimum wall thickness of 125 mils. The jacket throughout the entire system shall incorporate electric fusion, butt fusion, or extrusion welding at all fittings, joint closures, or other points of connection. This shall create a jacket that is seamless throughout the entire system with the exception of anchors, whose water shed rings are sealed with a Raychem Dirax or Canusa GTS-65 wrap prohibiting the ingression of water. The inner surface of the HDPE jacket shall be oxidized by means of corona treatment, flame treatment (patent pending), or other approved methods. This will ensure a secure bond between the jacket and foam insulation, preventing any ingression of water at the jacket/foam interface.

E. Straight run joints are insulated using polyurethane foam to the thickness specified, jacketed with a full length HDPE sleeve that incorporates electro-fusion welding at all seams to create a pressure testable joint closure, a Canusa pressure testable Supercase closure, or Raychem Rayjoint pressure testable closure. The joint will be pressure tested at 5 psi for 5 minutes while simultaneously soap tested at the joint closure’s seams for possible leaks. After passing the pressure test, the field joint is insulated and a closure plug is frictionally welded (as per specified joint closure instructions) over the foam holes. All joint closures and insulation shall occur at straight sections of pipe.

F. Fittings are factory pre-fabricated and pre-insulated with polyurethane foam to the thickness specified and jacketed with a one-piece seamless molded HDPE fitting cover, a butt fusion welded, or an extrusion welded and mitered HDPE jacket. NO TAPING OR HOT AIR WELDING SHALL BE ALLOWED. All fitting jackets/covers shall be connected to the straight lengths of pipe by electrofusion, butt fusion, or extrusion welding. Carrier pipe fittings shall be butt-welded. Fittings include expansion loops, elbows, tees, reducers, and anchors. Elbows, loops, offsets, or any other direction changes shall conform to the standards set by ASME B31.1, Code for Power Piping.

G. Expansion/contraction compensation will be accomplished utilizing factory pre-fabricated and pre-insulated expansion elbows, Z-bends, expansion loops, and anchors specifically designed for the intended application. External expansion compensation utilizing flexible expansion pads (minimum one-inch thickness), extending on either side, both inside and outside the radius of the fittings used, with all fittings having expansion in excess of 1/2".

H. The system shall be leak detection ready by means of installing a bare copper wire between the carrier pipe and the HDPE jacket. The piping system manufacturer shall install the wire in a manner that has the wire embedded in the foam insulation and incorporated into each piece of pre-insulated pipe and fittings. Contractor shall check continuity and electrical isolation of each piece of insulated pipe and fittings with a standard ohmmeter as it arrives at the jobsite. Contractor shall connect the copper wires together at each field joint with the supplied insulated jumper cable and recommended crimping tool as per manufacturer’s instructions. Contractor shall then check for continuity and electrical isolation using a standard ohmmeter over the

length of the installed piping system before insulating straight run joint kits. After the piping system is installed, the owner at any time may check the system for a leak by using a standard volt ohmmeter. If a leak is detected, the owner should contact the system manufacturer for a Time Domain Reflectometer (TDR) to determine the location of the leak. Provide an alarm panel to provide continuous leak detection monitoring and connect to building BMS.

I. Pre-engineered systems shall be provided with all straight pipe and fittings factory pre-insulated and pre-fabricated to job dimensions.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

F. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

C. Dielectric Unions, Flanges, Couplings and Nipples:
   1. Refer to Division 22, “Domestic Water Piping Specialties” for products.

2.6 VALVES

A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
      b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.

c. Flow Design Inc.
d. Gerand Engineering Co.
e. Griswold Controls.
f. Taco.

2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Plug: Resin.
5. Seat: PTFE.
6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
c. Flow Design Inc.
d. Gerand Engineering Co.
e. Griswold Controls.
f. Taco.
g. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company of America.
h. Grinnell
2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Pressure Independent Control Valve/Flow Limiter:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Bell & Gossett
2. Body: Brass or ductile iron.
3. Ball & Stem: Stainless steel.
4. Valve Assembly: Field adjustable, lockable dial with 100% authority at all times. Provide full stroke control regardless of the GPM dial setting.
5. Actuator: 0 – 10V modulation.
6. Accessories: Extended temperature/pressure ports.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5% of GPM setting, within the valve's operating range.
8. Minimum CWP rating: 360 psig.
9. Maximum operating temperature: 248 degrees F.

2.7 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Amtrol, Inc.
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
4. Taco.

B. Manual Air Vents:
1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

C. Automatic Air Vents:
1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

D. Diaphragm-Type Expansion Tanks:
1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 240 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Diaphragm: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

E. Coalescing-Type Air and Dirt Separators:
1. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig minimum working pressure and 240 deg F maximum operating temperature.
2. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
3. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
5. Size: Match system flow capacity.

F. In-Line Air Separators:
1. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig.
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 240 deg F.

G. Air Purgers:
1. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig.
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Closed-Loop System

1. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 175-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves. Provide Garrett-Callahan Co. or equal.
2. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment. Perform a water analysis and provide adequate treatment for the systems indicated on the drawings.

B. Open-Loop Systems for Cooling Towers: Chemical feed pump or controlled-release consider feed complete system to feed cooling tower inhibitor and biocides.

C. Open-Loop, Condenser Water Piping: Pump sequestering agent and corrosion inhibitor from chemical feed pump or controlled-release canister feed complete system into condenser water supply to tower.

D. Ethylene and Propylene Glycol: Industrial grade with corrosion inhibitors and environmental-stabilizer additives for mixing with water in systems indicated to contain antifreeze or glycol solutions.

2.9 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:
1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

C. T-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Flanged ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:
1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

F. Expansion fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.

B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Schedule 40 thru 10” and 30 above 10” black steel pipe; fittings; wrought steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded flange joints.

C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40 black steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
1. Schedule 40 through 10-inch and 30 above 10-inch steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

E. Chilled-water piping installed below grade, within the building perimeter, within sleeves shall be the following:
1. Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints. Use tubing without joints.

F. Hot or chilled water piping belowground shall be:
1. Pre-insulated piping with steel carrier pipe, polyurethane insulation and HDPE jacketing, designed for direct-buried installation.

G. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

H. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.

I. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

J. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.

K. Air-Vent Piping:
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

L. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. To facilitate repair and replacement, install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply and return mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment such as boilers, chillers, pumps, coils, terminal units, and heat exchangers.

B. Install calibrated orifice, automatic flow-control, or pressure independent control valve/flow limiter where detailed on the drawings. Refer to drawings/details for specific installation of each type of valve. At a minimum, install flow control valves:
1. At each branch connection to return main.
2. In the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
3. Refer to drawings/details for specific installation of each type of valve.

C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

D. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01, for installation requirements.

E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure. **Provide Dwyer WNT-A-C, or equal, water meter and integrate meter to FMCS.**

F. Install all valves with stems in the up position.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

Q. Install unions in piping**,** NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2. Install shut-off valve upstream of strainers.

T. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

U. Isolate piping as it enters a shaft to prevent propagation of vibration to the building structure.

V. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

W. B.A.S. temperature control devices requiring installation in piping such as motorized valves, sensors, etc., shall be installed by mechanical contractor.

X. Pre-insulated below grade piping:
   1. Underground systems shall be buried in a trench not less than two feet deeper than the top of the pipe and not less than eighteen inches wider than the combined O.D. of all piping systems. A minimum thickness of 24 inches of compacted backfill placed over the top of the pipe will meet H-20 highway loading. The minimum cover on top of piping shall be 36”.
   2. Backfilling shall be done with sand 6” below the casing and 1’ above. Engineer-approved backfill may be used to fill the rest of the trench. This material should be free of rocks, roots, large clods, or anything that could cause damage to the jacket.
   3. A hydrostatic pressure test of the carrier pipe shall be performed per the engineer’s specification with a factory recommendation of one and one-half times the normal system operating pressure for not less than two hours. Prior to testing, field verify central plant working pressure. Care shall be taken to insure all trapped air is removed from the system prior to the test. Appropriate safety precautions shall be taken to guard against possible injury to personnel in the event of a failure.

4. Field service is required and will be provided by a certified manufacturer's representative or company field service technician. The technician will be available at the job a minimum of one day (or more if required by job size) to check unloading, storing, and handling of pipe, pipe installation, pressure testing, field joint insulation, and backfilling techniques.

Y. Install all piping parallel to building lines, arranged to allow service or removal of equipment, accessories, access to doors, windows, manholes, etc.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Install the following pipe attachments:
1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
7. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
8. NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 13 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.
10. NPS 5: Maximum span, 16 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.
11. NPS 6: Maximum span, 17 feet; minimum rod size, 3/4 inch.
12. NPS 8: Maximum span, 19 feet; minimum rod size, 3/4 inch.
13. NPS 10: Maximum span, 22 feet; minimum rod size, 7/8 inch.
14. NPS 12: Maximum span, 23 feet; minimum rod size, 7/8 inch.
15. NPS 14: Maximum span, 25 feet; minimum rod size, 1 inch.
16. NPS 16: Maximum span, 27 feet; minimum rod size, 1 inch.
17. NPS 18: Maximum span, 28 feet; minimum rod size, 1 inch.
18. NPS 20: Maximum span, 30 feet; minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches.

D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

E. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

I. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.

J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

C. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.

D. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.

E. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.

F. Install chemical feed pumps and required controlled release equipment, piping, and controls for open systems.

G. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
   1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
   2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.

H. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

I. Strainer Schedule:

	Cast Iron		Steel		Bronze	
	Y	Basket	Y	Basket	Y	Basket
Steel/Iron Piping Systems	Mueller Manufacturer's Number					
150 psig & less						
2-1/2" & smaller	11	145	--	--	--	--
3" thru 12"	751	165	--	--	--	--
14" thru 24"	752	166	--	--	--	--
151 thru 400 psig:						
2-1/2" & smaller	11	--	--	--	--	--
3" thru 12"	752	--	--	--	--	--
14" thru 24"	--	--	762	186	--	--
401 thru 700 psig:						
2-1/2" & smaller	--	--	861	--	--	--
3" thru 20"	--	--	764	186	--	--
	Cast Iron		Steel		Bronze	
	Y	Basket	Y	Basket	Y	Basket
Copper Piping Systems	Mueller Manufacturer's Number					
3" & smaller:						
150 psig & less	--	--	--	--	352	165B
151 thru 400 psig	--	--	--	--	352	166B

3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the water within acceptable limits.

B. Prepare a formal report detailing the results of the water analysis and proposed water treatment. Maintain a reasonable pH, alkalinity, corrosion inhibitor and microbiological growth.

C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

D. Provide and add initial chemical treatment materials required for the treatment plan proposed to treatment materials after project substantial completion. Maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation. The owner will provide required chemicals from that point forward.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
   1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
   2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
   3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens. Piping systems must be flushed before making connections to any piece of HVAC equipment.
   4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
   5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
   1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
   2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
   3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
   4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
   5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
   6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:
   1. Open manual valves fully.
   2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
   3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.

4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 2123

HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Close coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
   2. Split coupled, vertical in-line, centrifugal pumps.
   3. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
   4. Separately coupled, base-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
   5. Automatic condensate pump units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
   1. When pumps are connected to VFD’s, the submittal shall include an equipment selection with pump curves for both the optimized impeller trim, and the largest impeller trim available that does not allow an overload condition.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of hydronic pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.

B. Store pumps in dry location.

C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.

D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.

E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 SPARE PARTS

A. Provide one (1) extra mechanical seal for each pump installed on the project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or an approved alternate manufacturer as shown on the drawings.

2.2 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and –tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 degrees F.

B. Pump Construction:
   1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange connections.
   2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw.
   3. Pump Shaft: Stainless Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Provide bronze shaft sleeve for DISD projects.
   4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
   5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
   6. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

C. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and rigidly mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section “Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.”

D. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to schedule on Drawings.

2.3 SPLIT COUPLED, VERTICAL IN-LINE, CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and –tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, split-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 degrees F.

B. Pump Construction:
   1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain tap and plug and flange connections.
   2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw.
   3. Pump Shaft: Stainless Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Provide bronze shaft sleeve for DISD projects.
   4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Viton shaft seal.
   5. Coupling: Rigid spacer type of high tensile aluminum, coupling guard, lower seal chamber throttle bushing.
   6. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

C. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and rigidly mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section “Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.”

D. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to schedule on Drawings.

2.4 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:
   1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and flanged connections. Provide integral mount on volute to support the casing, and attached piping to allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping or requiring the realignment of pump and motor shaft.
   2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw.
   3. Pump Shaft: Stainless Steel, with stainless steel shaft sleeve. Provide bronze shaft sleeve for DISD projects.
   4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket.
   5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
   6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

C. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor.

D. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

E. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.

F. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

G. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to schedule on Drawings.

2.5 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, DOUBLE-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and –tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 degrees F.

B. Pump Construction:
1. Casing: Horizontally split cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and ASME B16.1, Class 125 flanges. Casing supports shall allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft.
3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel, with stainless steel shaft sleeve. Provide bronze shaft sleeve for DISD projects.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

C. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor.

D. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

E. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated, from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.

F. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.”

G. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to schedule on Drawings.

2.6 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

A. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch- minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

2.7 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser: Angle pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory-fabricated support.

B. Triple Duty Valves will not be accepted.

2.8 MOTOR CONTROLLERS

A. Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 22 0513 for details.

B. All pumps shall have variable frequency controllers. Pumps with integral controllers are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

A. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for pumps and controllers. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."
   1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
   2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

B. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

C. Mount base mounted pumps on a cast iron drip rim baseplate. Install baseplate on an inertia base and inertia base on minimum 4 inch concrete housekeeping pad.

3.3 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

D. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 23 Section “Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment.” Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 23 Section “Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment.”

E. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment procedure is complete.
   1. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches between pump base and foundation for grouting.
   2. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.

F. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

3.4 ALIGNMENT

A. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.

B. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check valve, throttling butterfly valve and shutoff valve on discharge side of pumps.

F. Install Y-type strainer, suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge, at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple input selector valve.

I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

J. Install temperature and pressure gauge connector plugs in suction and discharge piping around pump.

K. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.

L. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

M. Remotely wall mount pump controllers per DISD TDGs.

N. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Check piping connections for tightness.
   3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
   4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
      a. Verify bearing lubrication.
      b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
      c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
   5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
   6. Start motor.
   7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 2300

REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-22:
   1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 185 psig.
   2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 325 psig.
   3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 325 psig.

B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
   1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
   2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
   3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.

C. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
   1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
   2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
   3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.

D. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
   1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
   2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
   3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
   1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
   2. Filter dryers.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
   1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.
   2. Refrigerant piping indicated or described on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.6 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.

F. Flexible Connectors:
   1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
   2. End Connections: Socket ends.
   3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
   4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
   5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 PIPE ACCESSORIES

A. Provide valves and accessories shown/described on the drawings or as required to support and control the refrigeration system for each application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Suction Lines, Liquid and Hot Gas NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
   1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
   2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.

B. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

C. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve.

D. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

J. Refer to Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operation" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.

K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
   1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
   2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
   3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
   4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

Q. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.

R. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

S. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

T. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.

U. Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and methods.

V. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
   1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
   2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Install the following pipe attachments:
   1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
   2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
   3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
   4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
   5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
   2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
   3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
   4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
   9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
   2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
   3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
      a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
      b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
      c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
      d. Remake leaking joints using new materials and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:
   1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
   2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
   3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
   4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
   1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
   2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
   3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
   4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
   5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 3113

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
3. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
4. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
5. Sheet metal materials.
6. Duct liner.
7. Sealants and gaskets.
8. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and shall withstand the effects of gravity and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Detail, 1/4" – 1’-0” scale, the ductwork layout with sizes, configuration, liner material and static pressure classes, elevation of ductwork, reinforcement/spacing, seam and joint construction, penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions, locations of duct accessories including dampers, turning vanes, access doors and access panels, equipment supports and foundations. Out of scale drawings showing actual dimensions will not be acceptable. Shop drawings shall show coordination with all other building trades.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

C. The ductwork shall be guaranteed for a period of one (1) year from and after the date of final acceptance of the job, against noise, chatter, whistling and vibration, and shall be guaranteed to be free from pulsation under all conditions of operation. After each system is in operation, should any of these defects occur, the components in which they occur shall either be removed and replaced or reinforced as directed by the Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.

B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-

support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
   1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
   2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
   3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.

F. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch solid sheet steel.

G. Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Traverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

H. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated. Ducts less than or equal to 1" SMACNA pressure class may be spiral or snap-lock type. Ducts greater than 1" SMACNA pressure class shall all be spiral only.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch solid sheet steel.

C. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
   1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
   2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
   3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
   4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Unless noted otherwise in these specifications or on the drawings, all ductwork shall be G90 galvanized steel.

2.6 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
   1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
      a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
      b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
   2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
      a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

B. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

2.7 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

D. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

E. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

F. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures and directly over any electrical panel or transformer.

G. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

H. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

I. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines", intermediate level of cleanliness.
   1. Prevent damage and accumulation of dirt/debris during transportation.
   2. Store ducts on the jobsite in an area that is clean, dry and exposure to dust is minimized.
   3. Wipe internal surfaces of ductwork immediately prior to installation.
   4. Open ends on completed ductwork and overnight work-in-progress shall be sealed, regardless of the position.
   5. During installation, protect ductwork waiting to be installed with surface wrapping, etc.
   6. All open ends of ductwork shall be sealed during dust producing activities (e.g. drywall installation, sanding, etc.).

J. During construction, comply with SMACNA’s “IAQ Guideline for Occupied Buildings Under Construction”, 2007, Chapter 3. Include erosion and sedimentation control measures to minimize site dust during occupied renovations.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Refer to “Duct Schedule” for required sealing. Supply, return, and exhaust systems up to 3 inches are limited to leakage of 3% total airflow. Systems 3 inches to 10 inches are limited to 5% total airflow.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
   1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
   2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
   3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
   4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
   5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
   1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
   2. Clean any portion of the duct system that contains dust, dirt or debris.

3.6 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Supply Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to the Discharge Side of Air Terminal Units:
      a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
      c. Minimum SMACNA Leakage Class: 6.
   2. Ducts Connected to Low Pressure Constant-Volume AHU, Furnaces and Other Similar Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. Minimum SMACNA Leakage Class: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Medium Pressure Variable-Air-Volume AHU or Fans:
a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg minimum. If the drawings or schedules indicate a duct system operating in excess of 4-inch wg provide SMACNA pressure class 6-inch or as applicable. Refer to drawing notes for any other specific requirements for a particular project.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. Minimum SMACNA Leakage Class: 6.

B. Return Ducts:
1. All Return Ducts:
a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. Minimum SMACNA Leakage Class: 6.

C. Exhaust Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg minimum. If drawing notes or other specific requirements call for system static pressures above 2.0-inches, then provide corresponding pressure class ductwork.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
2. Ducts Connected to Dishwasher Hoods; Locker rooms, shower areas and associated restrooms; other wet area exhaust systems:
a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg minimum. If drawing notes or other specific requirements call for system static pressures above 2.0-inches, then provide corresponding pressure class ductwork.
f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
g. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.

D. Exterior Ducts:
1. All exterior ducts shall be double-wall type. Refer to 230700 and insulation schedule for details of insulation and weatherproofing.

E. Elbow Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
a. Low Pressure (2” and Below)
1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
b. Medium Pressure (3” and Higher):
1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.

F. Branch Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
   a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
   b. Velocity 1000 or higher: Conical tap.

G. COORDINATION
1. Fire Alarm and B.A.S. Temperature Control devices requiring installation in ductwork such as smoke detectors, air monitors, motorized dampers and sensors shall be installed by the mechanical subcontractor.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 3300

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
6. Duct silencers.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Remote damper operators.
9. Duct-mounted access doors.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Flexible ducts.
12. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 28 Section "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.

D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

E. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Ruskin Company.
5. Pottorff

B. Description: Gravity balanced.

C. Maximum System Pressure: As defined by the duct construction requirements.

D. Frame: 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum 0.052-inch- with welded corners and mounting flange.

E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.

F. Blade Action: Parallel.

G. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.

H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

I. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

J. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
   a. Sleeve Thickness: 20-gage minimum.
   b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
7. Screen Material: Aluminum.

8. Screen Type: Insect.
9. 90-degree stops.

2.3 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Ruskin Company.
5. Pottorff

B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.

C. Maximum System Pressure: As defined by the duct construction requirements.

D. Frame: 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners and mounting flange.

E. Blades:
1. Multiple, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum.
2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.
3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Eccentrically pivoted.

F. Blade Seals: Neoprene.

G. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

H. Accessories:
1. Flange on intake.
2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
2. Frames:
   a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 0.064-inch minimum thickness.
   b. Mitered and welded corners.
   c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
3. Blades:
   a. Multiple or single blade.
   b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
   c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
   d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
4. Bearings:
   a. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

B. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.

b. Nailor Industries Inc.
c. Ruskin Company.
d. Pottorff

2. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
   a. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
   b. Mitered and welded corners.
   c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
   a. Multiple or single blade.
   b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
   c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
   d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Bearings:
   a. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
7. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
8. Accessories:
   a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Nailor Industries Inc.
3. Prefco.
4. Ruskin Company.
5. Pottorff

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 or 3 hours, depending upon fire rating equipment of wall or floor assembly.

D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners. Blades in the airstream are acceptable only in areas where the fire damper is directly preceded by a grille.

Commented [CB1]: Added per Logistics RFI. This allows Type A in applications such as elec rooms where we have a fire damper and then a grille.

E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.6 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Nailor Industries Inc.
3. Ruskin Company.
4. Pottorff

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4 inch w.g. static pressure class and maximum 4000 fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 or 3 hours, depending upon fire rating requirement of wall or floor assembly.

E. Frame: Multiple blade type fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric, resettable link and switch package, factory installed and tested.

G. Leakage Class 1 (8cfm/sf @ 4.0" wg**.)**

H. Damper Motors: Two-position action.

I. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." and Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

J. Accessories:
1. Auxiliary switches for signaling and/or position indication.
2. Test and reset switches, damper mounted.

2.7 DUCT SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Price Industries.
   2. IAC.
   3. Vibro-Acoustics.
   4. Kinetics.

B. General Requirements:
   1. Factory fabricated.
   2. Acoustical Performance: Tested in accordance with ASTM E477-99.
   3. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

C. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, , galvanized sheet steel,22 gauge thick.

D. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A 653/A 653M, galvanized sheet metal, 26 gauge thick, and with 1/8-inch- diameter perforations.

E. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork.

F. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:
   1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
   2. Film-lined type with fill material.
      a. Fill Material: Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material, packed under not less than 5 percent compression.
      b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, and heat sealed before assembly.
   3. Lining: Mylar.

G. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.
   1. Continuously weld joints.
   2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
   3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.

H. Source Quality Control: Tested in accordance with ASTM E 477.
   1. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least 2000-fpm face velocity.
   2. Leak Test: Test units for airtightness at 200 percent of associated fan static pressure or 6-inch wg static pressure, whichever is greater.

2.8 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Provide remote damper operators for controlling dampers located above gyp board or other inaccessible ceilings.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Pottorff.
   2. Ventfabrics, Inc.

3. Young Regulator Company.

C. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.

D. Tubing: Brass.

E. Cable: Stainless steel.

F. Ceiling Mounting: Coverplate shall be white.

2.9 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."
1. Door:
   a. Double wall, rectangular.
   b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
   c. Vision panel.
   d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
   e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
   a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
   b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
   c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches with outside handles.
   d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.10 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Flame Gard, Inc.
3. 3M.

B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.

D. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.

F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

2.11 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.

2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. SEMCO Incorporated.
4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
5. AeroDyne Sound Control Co.

B. Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards – Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D. Vane Construction: Double wall, airfoil shaped.

2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Ventfabrics, Inc.

B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Minimum Tensile Strength: 500 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

2.13 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Atco Rubber Products, Inc.
2. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
3. Thermaflex

B. Insulated Flexible Duct, Type 1: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene or aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 degrees F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. Insulated Flexible Duct, Type 2: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum flexible duct; fibrous-glass insulation, polyethylene or aluminized vapor-barrier film.
   1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive thru16" diameter and 12-inch wg (3000 Pa) negative thru 16" diameter.
   2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5500 fpm (27.5 m/s).
   3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 degrees F (minus 29 to plus 121 deg C).
   4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

D. Flexible Duct Connectors:
   1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.14 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install backdraft or control dampers as indicated on the Drawings at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
   1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire and fire smoke dampers according to UL listing.

H. Connect ducts to duct silencers rigidly.

I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
   1. On both sides of duct coils.
   2. Upstream from duct filters.
   3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.

4. At drain pans and seals.
5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or fire/smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
8. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
10. Control devices requiring inspection.
11. Elsewhere as indicated.

J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

K. Access Door Sizes (minimum sizes)
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

L. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

N. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

O. Connect terminal units and other high pressure systems to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct, Type 2. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

P. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct, Type 1, clamped or strapped in place. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

Q. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands adhesive and sheet metal screws.

R. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

S. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

B. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 3423

HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Utility set fans.
2. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
3. Centrifugal wall ventilators.
4. In-line centrifugal fans.
5. Propeller fans.
6. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.

B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Roof curbs.
7. Fan speed controllers.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.

D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled unit, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.

B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 UTILITY SET FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Description: Belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and accessories.

C. Housing: Fabricated of steel with side sheets fastened with a deep lock seam or welded to scroll sheets.
   1. Housing Discharge Arrangement: Adjustable to eight standard positions.

D. Fan Wheels: Single-width, single inlet; welded to cast-iron or cast-steel hub and spun-steel inlet cone, with hub keyed to shaft.

E. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.

F. Accessories:
   1. Inlet and Outlet: Flanged.
   2. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
   3. Backdraft Dampers: Gravity actuated with counterweight and interlocking aluminum blades with felt edges in steel frame installed on fan discharge.
   4. Access Door: Gasketed door in scroll with latch-type handles.
   5. Drain Connections: NPS 3/4 threaded coupling drain connection installed at lowest point of housing.
   6. Weather Hoods: Weather resistant with stamped vents over motor and drive compartment.
   7. Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Description: Direct-drive centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.

C. Housing: Removable, minimum 18 gauge, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
   1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
   2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

D. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

E. Accessories:
   1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
   2. Lifting lugs.
   3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
   4. Other accessories as listed on the drawing schedule.

F. Roof Curbs: Refer to Schedules on Drawings for roof curb height. Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base. Electrical and controls circuiting shall run thru the curb.
   1. Vented extension roof curbs (minimum 8” from finished roof) for grease exhaust.

2.3 CENTRIFUGAL WALL VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Description: Direct-drive centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and accessories.

C. Housing: Heavy-gage, removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; venturi inlet cone.

D. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

E. Accessories:
   1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through internal aluminum conduit.
   2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
   3. Other accessories as listed on the drawing schedule.

2.4 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Description: In-line centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, mounting brackets, and accessories.

C. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

D. Direct-Driven Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.

E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, backward inclined blades welded to aluminum hub.

2.5 PROPELLER FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Description: Direct-drive propeller fans consisting of fan blades, hub, housing, orifice ring, motor, drive assembly, and accessories.

C. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.

D. Steel Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gage steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.

E. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

F. Accessories:
1. Gravity Shutters: Aluminum blades in aluminum frame; interlocked blades with nylon bearings.
2. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
3. Wall Sleeve: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
4. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
5. Other accessories as listed on the drawings.

2.6 CEILING-MOUNTING VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.

C. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

D. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.

E. Grille: Painted aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

F. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

G. Accessories:
1. Accessories as listed in the drawing schedule.

2.7 MOTORS

A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

B. Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 22 0513 for details.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Support units using elastomeric mounts, restrained elastomeric mounts, spring isolators or restrained spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration- and seismic-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
   1. Secure vibration controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.

C. Install floor-mounting units on concrete bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Secure roof-mounting fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

E. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

G. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Route power and control circuiting thru curb. Conduit and wiring is not allowed on the roof.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
   2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
   3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
   4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
   5. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
   6. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
   7. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
   8. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
   9. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
   10. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 3600

AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Single-duct air terminal units.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products, including rated capacities, furnished specialties, sound-power ratings, and accessories.
   1. Air terminal units.
   2. Liners and adhesives.
   3. Sealants and gaskets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filter for each filter installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown in the drawings.

B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

C. Casing: 0.034-inch steel.
   1. Casing Lining (either Option a or b is acceptable):
      a. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1-inch- thick fibrous-glass duct liner having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50,

ASTM E 84. Cover lining with solid sheetmetal so that no fibers are exposed to air stream.

b. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1-inch- thick, closed cell foam insulation complying with UL 181 erosion requirements, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.

2. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
1. Maximum Damper Leakage: ARI 880 rated, 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. Damper Position: Normally closed.

E. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain valve.

F. Controls:
1. Electric actuators, DDC controllers, and transducers shall be furnished by EMS contractor (See division 230900). All controls shall be delivered to air terminal manufacturer.
2. Air terminal manufacturer shall factory mount all devices and ship complete units to job sites.
3. Terminal unit manufacturer shall provide a flow cross in inlet and extend tubing from flow cross to controls provided by Section 23 0900.

2.2 DIFFUSER-TYPE AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers listed on the drawings.

B. Configuration: Volume-damper, diffuser, controller assembly and wall-mounted thermostat with master-slave capability.

C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

D. Diffuser: Galvanized steel with white baked-enamel finish.

E. Integral thermally powered actuators control diffusion dampers based on duct and room temperature.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to ARI 880.
1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and ARI certification seal.

2.4 CONTROLS INTERFACE

A. Electric actuators, DDC controllers, and transducers shall be furnished under Section 23 0900 and sent to the terminal unit manufacturer. The terminal unit manufacturer shall factory mount the devices and connect all wiring and tubing in accordance with Drawings furnished under this

CAV/fan heat boxes and VAV/Fan heat boxes only. The terminal unit manufacturer shall furnish and install a flow cross in the inlets of the unit to measure the differential between the total and static pressures. Manufacturer shall extend the tubing from the flow cross and connect to the differential pressure transducer furnished under Section 23 0900. Manufacturer shall provide separate external total and static pressure connections (capped barbed tees) in the tubing for connection to a differential pressure gauge for field measurement of air flow quantity. The control sequences shall be as described below, and the terminal unit shall be shipped from the manufacturer with all necessary control devices to accomplish each sequence. The 24V power wiring for 24V DDC controllers on VAV boxes shall be extended from the 24V transformer on the box by Section 23 0900. Room space temperature sensors and associated cabling shall be furnished and installed by Section 23 0900.

B. Sequence of Operation
   1. VAV and VAV heat boxes shall be DDC. Controllers shall be furnished by this section and factory installed by the terminal unit manufacturer. This section shall be responsible for the operational performance of the boxes. The terminal unit manufacturer shall remain responsible for the mechanical components of the boxes.
   2. VAV Boxes: The DDC controller shall monitor the space temperature from a room space temperature sensor and modulate the normally open damper to maintain the setpoint (adjustable).
   3. VAV heat boxes: The DDC controller shall monitor the space temperature from a room space temperature sensor and modulate the normally open damper and staged heat in sequence. CAV/Fan heat boxes Fan shall run continually. Units shall have minimum primary air flow stops set at 20% of the design airflow rate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance (minimum 36”) and any additional clearances required by NEC.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install piping adjacent to air terminal unit to allow service and maintenance.

B. Hot-Water Piping: Piping systems must be flushed before making connections to heating coils. In addition to requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping," connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.

C. Make connections to air terminal unit inlets with flexible ductwork complying with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
   3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
   4. Verify that control connections are complete.
   5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
   6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 3713

DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Related Sections:
   1. Division 08 Section "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
   2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
   1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
   2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AIR INLETS AND OUTLETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Grilles, registers, ceiling outlets, and ceiling inlets shall be as indicated in the schedule on the Drawings.

C. Verify the type of ceiling system and material into which each of the air inlets and outlets are to be installed, and provide equipment that properly "fits" whether specifically so indicated or not on the Drawings.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

D. Locations of outlets shown on the drawings are approximate; they shall be coordinated with other trades to make symmetrical patterns, and shall be governed by the established pattern of the lighting fixtures or architectural reflected ceiling plan. Where a reflected ceiling plan is included in the architectural drawings, locations of all devices as shown thereon shall govern.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 6500

COOLING TOWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Open-circuit, induced-draft, crossflow cooling towers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BMS: Building management system.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design cooling tower support structure, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Cooling tower support structure shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7 and wind velocity of 30 lb/sqft.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, pressure drop, fan performance data, rating curves with selected points indicated, furnished specialties, and accessories.
   1. Drift loss as percent of design flow rate.
   2. Sound power levels in eight octave bands for operation with fans off, fans at minimum, and design speed.
   3. Performance curves for the following:
      a. Varying water temperature differences from design to minimum. (12 deg. F, 10 deg. F., 8 deg. F, and 6 deg. F.)
      b. Varying ambient wet-bulb temperatures from design to minimum. (80 deg. F to 50 deg. F.)
      c. {For variable flow only} Varying water flow rates from design to minimum. (90%, 100%, 110%.)
      d. Varying fan operation (off, minimum, and design speed).
   4. Fan airflow, brake horsepower, and drive losses.
   5. Motor amperage, efficiency, and power factor at 100, 75, 50, and 25 percent of nameplate horsepower.
   6. Electrical power requirements for each cooling tower component requiring power.

B. Shop Drawings: Complete set of manufacturer's prints of cooling tower assemblies, control panels, sections and elevations, and unit isolation. Include the following:
   1. Assembled unit dimensions.

2. Weight and load distribution.
3. Required clearances for maintenance and operation.
4. Sizes and locations of piping and wiring connections.
5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
1. Structural supports.
2. Piping roughing-in requirements.
3. Wiring roughing-in requirements, including spaces reserved for electrical equipment.
4. Access requirements, including working clearances for mechanical controls and electrical equipment, and tube pull and service clearances.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by CTI.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label heat-exchanger coils to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

E. CTI Certification: Cooling tower thermal performance according to CTI STD 201, "Certification Standard for Commercial Water-Cooling Towers Thermal Performance."

F. FMG Approval and listing in the latest edition of FM Global's "Approval Guide".

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures.

C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of induced draft cooling towers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified below.
1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
   a. Galvanized Towers: Parts on all components for 18 months.
   b. Stainless Steel Towers: Parts on all components for five years. (For DISD projects, require "Parts and Labor" for all components for five years. Parts and labor for drive shafts, fans, bearings, sleeves, gear boxes, couplings and supports for seven years. Parts and labor for variable frequency controllers for five years.)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPEN-CIRCUIT, INDUCED-DRAFT, CROSSFLOW COOLING TOWERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or an acceptable alternate manufacturer shown on drawings.

B. Fabricate cooling tower mounting base with reinforcement strong enough to resist cooling tower movement during a seismic event when cooling tower is anchored to field support structure.

C. Cooling tower designed to resist wind load of 30 lbf/sq. ft.

D. Casing and Frame:
1. Casing Material: Stainless steel.
2. Frame Material: Stainless steel.
3. Fasteners: Stainless steel.
4. Joints and Seams: Sealed watertight.
5. Welded Connections: Continuous and watertight.

E. Collection Basin:
1. Material: 304 Stainless steel.
2. Removable stainless-steel strainer with openings smaller than nozzle orifices.
3. Overflow and drain connections.
4. Makeup water connection.
5. Outlet Connection: ASME B16.5, Class 150 flange.
6. Equalization flume plate with removable weird gate between adjacent cells of two-cell towers.
7. Equalizer connection for field-installed equalizer piping for towers of 3-cells or larger. **(PICK EITHER 6 or 7 – SHOW ON DRAWINGS.)**
8. Basin Sweeper Distribution Piping and Nozzles: **(SHOW ON DRAWINGS OR REMOVE FROM SPECS, SCHEDULE SEPARATOR.)**
   a. Pipe Material: PVC.
   b. Nozzle Material: Plastic.
   c. Configure piping and nozzles to minimize sediment from collecting in the collection basin.

F. Mechanically Operated, Collection Basin Water-Level Control: Manufacturer's standard adjustable, mechanical float assembly and valve.

G. Electric Basin Heater:
1. Stainless-Steel Electric Immersion Heaters: Installed in a threaded coupling on the side of the collection basin.
2. Heater Control Panel: Mounted on the side of each cooling tower cell.
3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
4. Magnetic contactors controlled by a temperature sensor/controller to maintain collection basin water-temperature set point. Water-level probe shall monitor cooling tower water level and de-energize the heater when the water reaches low-level set point.
5. Control-circuit transformer with primary and secondary side fuses.
6. Terminal blocks with numbered and color-coded wiring to match wiring diagram.
7. Single-point, field-power connection to a fused disconnect switch or circuit breaker and heater branch circuiting complying with NFPA 70.
8. Factory Wiring Method: Metal raceway for factory-installed wiring outside of enclosures, except make connections to each electric basin heater with liquidtight conduit.

H. Gravity Water Distribution Basin: Nonpressurized design with head of water level in basin adequate to overcome spray nozzle losses and designed to evenly distribute water over fill throughout the flow range indicated.
1. Material: Stainless steel.
2. Location: Over each bank of fill with easily replaceable plastic spray nozzles mounted in bottom of basin.
3. Inlet Connection: ASME B16.5, Class 150 flange.
4. Joints and Seams: Sealed watertight.
5. {For variable flow ONLY} Partitioning Dams: Same material as basin to distribute water over the fill to minimize icing while operating throughout the flow range indicated.
6. Removable Panels: Same material as basin to completely cover top of basin. Secure panels to basin with removable corrosion-resistant hardware.
7. Valves: Manufacturer's standard butterfly valve installed at each inlet connection and arranged to balance or shut off flow to each gravity distribution basin.

I. Fill:
1. Materials: PVC, with maximum flame-spread index of 5 according to ASTM E 84.
2. Minimum Thickness: 15 mils, before forming.
3. Fabrication: Fill-type sheets, fabricated, formed, and bonded together after forming into removable assemblies that are factory installed by manufacturer.
4. Fill Material Operating Temperature: Suitable for entering-water temperatures up through 120 deg F.

J. Drift Eliminator:
1. Material: PVC; with maximum flame-spread index of 5 according to ASTM E 84.
2. UV Treatment: Inhibitors to protect against damage caused by UV radiation.
3. Configuration: Triple-pass, designed and tested to reduce water carryover to achieve performance indicated.
4. Location: Integral to fill.

K. Air-Intake Louvers:
1. Material: PVC.
2. UV Treatment: Inhibitors to protect against damage caused by UV radiation.
3. Louver Blades: Arranged to uniformly direct air into cooling tower, to minimize air resistance, and to prevent water from splashing out of tower during all modes of operation including operation with fans off.
4. Location: Integral to fill.

L. Axial Fan: Balanced at the factory after assembly.
1. Blade Material: Aluminum.
2. Hub Material: Aluminum.
3. Blade Pitch: Field adjustable.
4. Protective Enclosure: Removable, galvanized-steel, wire-mesh screens complying with OSHA regulations.
5. Fan Shaft Bearings: Self-aligning ball or roller bearings with moisture-proof seals and premium, moisture-resistant grease suitable for temperatures between minus 20 and plus 300 deg F. Bearings designed for an L-10 life of 100,000 hours.
6. Bearings Grease Fittings: Extended lubrication lines to an easily accessible location.

M. Gear Drive:
1. Right angle, reduced speed, industrial duty and designed for cooling tower applications according to CT1 STD 111.
2. Gearbox bearings rated for an L10 life or 100,000 hours or longer.
3. Gear sets shall have AGMA Quality Class of 9 or greater.
4. Gearbox shall enable operation down to 10% of full speed.

5. Motor-to-gearbox close coupling shall be tire-type, single-piece, flexible element design to accommodate frequent speeds changes inherent with VFD applications.
6. Motor and gear drive shall be aligned before shipment (unless motor is mounted outside of wet airstream).
7. For MOA applications, utilize stainless steel tube and flange driveshaft.

N. Fan Motor:
1. General Requirements for Fan Motors: Comply with NEMA designation and temperature-rating requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment" and not indicated below.
2. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed fan cooled (TEFC).
3. Energy Efficiency: NEMA Premium Efficient.
4. Service Factor: 1.15.
5. Variable-Speed Motors: Inverter-duty rated per NEMA MG-1, Section IV, "Performance Standard Applying to All Machines," Part 31, "Definite-Purpose, Inverter-Fed, Polyphase Motors."
6. Motor Location: Mounted outside of cooling tower casing and cooling tower discharge airstream. {ONLY APPLICABLE WITH GEAR DRIVE AND 2-cell or Split Cell Towers}
7. Severe-duty rating with the following features:
   a. Rotor and stator protected with corrosion-inhibiting epoxy resin.
   b. Double-shielded, vacuum-degassed bearings lubricated with premium, moisture-resistant grease suitable for temperatures between minus 20 and 300 deg F.
   c. Internal heater automatically energized when motor is de-energized.
8. Motor Base: Adjustable or other suitable provision for adjusting belt tension.
9. Motor Davit: Provide motor davit and bracket for motor removal.

O. Fan Discharge Stack: Material shall match casing, manufacturer's standard design.
1. Stack Extension: Fabricated to extend above fan deck as scheduled on the drawings.
2. Stack Termination: Wire-mesh, galvanized-steel screens; complying with OSHA regulations.

P. Vibration Switch: For each fan drive.
1. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
2. Vibration Detection: Sensor with a field-adjustable, acceleration-sensitivity set point in a range of 0 to 1 g and frequency range of 0 to 3000 cycles per minute. Cooling tower manufacturer shall recommend switch set point for proper operation and protection.
3. Provide solid state switch with manual-reset button for field connection to a BMS and hardwired connection to fan motor electrical circuit.
4. Switch shall, on sensing excessive vibration, signal an alarm through the BMS and shut down the fan.

Q. Gear-Drive, Oil-Level Switch: Low-oil-level warning switch.
1. Switch shall, on reaching a low-oil-level set point recommended by cooling tower manufacturer, signal an alarm through the BMS.

R. Controls: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

NOTE TO SPEC WRITER: In most cases the controls hardware is furnished as part of 230900. If for some reason it is not, then you may need to include the following paragraph. Otherwise you need to delete it.

S. Control Package: Factory installed and wired, and functionally tested at factory before shipment.
1. NEMA 250, [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4X**] enclosure with removable internally mount backplate.
2. Control-circuit transformer with primary and secondary side fuses.

3. Terminal blocks with numbered and color-coded wiring to match wiring diagram. Spare wiring terminal block for connection to external controls or equipment.
4. Microprocessor-based controller for automatic control of fan based on cooling tower leaving-water temperature with control features to improve operating efficiency based on outdoor ambient wet-bulb temperature by using adaptive logic.
5. Fan motor sequencer for multiple-cell and two-speed applications with automatic lead stage rotation.
6. Electric basin heaters with temperature control and low-water-level safety switch for each cell, complying with requirements in "Electric Basin Heater" Paragraph.
7. Vibration switch for each fan, complying with requirements in "Vibration Switch" Paragraph.
8. Oil-level switch for each fan with a gear drive, complying with requirement in "Gear-Drive, Oil-Level Switch" Paragraph.
9. Single-point, field-power connection to a nonfused disconnect switch for each cooling tower cell.
    a. Branch power circuit to each motor and electric basin heater and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
    b. NEMA-rated motor controller, hand-off-auto switch, and overcurrent protection for each motor. Provide variable frequency controller with manual bypass and line reactors for each variable-speed motor indicated. Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 22 0513 for details.
10. Factory-installed wiring outside of enclosures shall be in metal raceway, except make connections to each motor and electric basin heater with liquidtight conduit.
11. Visual indication of status and alarm for each motor.
12. Audible alarm and silence switch.
13. Visual indication of elapsed run time, graduated in hours for each motor.
14. Cooling tower shall have hardware to enable BMS to remotely monitor and display the following:
    a. Operational status of each motor.
    b. Cooling tower leaving-fluid temperature.
    c. Fan vibration alarm.
    d. Oil-level alarm.
    e. Collection basin high- and low-water-level alarms.

T. Personnel Access Components:
1. Doors: Large enough for personnel to access cooling tower internal components from both cooling tower end walls. Doors shall be operable from both sides of the door.
2. External Ladders with Safety Cages: Aluminum, galvanized- or stainless-steel, fixed ladders with ladder extensions to access external platforms and top of cooling tower from adjacent grade without the need for portable ladders. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.27.
3. External Platforms with Handrails: Aluminum, FRP, galvanized-steel, or stainless steel bar grating at cooling tower access doors when cooling towers are elevated and not accessible from grade. {NEED TO SPECIFY ON SCHEDULE IF APPLICABLE}
4. Handrail: Aluminum, galvanized steel, or stainless steel complete with kneerail and toeboard, around top of cooling tower. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.23.
5. Internal Platforms: Aluminum, FRP, or Stainless Steel bar grating.
    a. Spanning the collection basin from one end of cooling tower to the other and positioned to form a path between the access doors. Platform shall be elevated so that all parts are above the high water level of the collection basin.
    b. Elevated internal platforms with handrails accessible from fixed vertical ladders to access the fan drive assembly when out of reach from collection basin platform where applicable. {NEED TO SPECIFY ON SCHEDULE IF APPLICABLE}

U. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Refer to schedule on drawings for capacities.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Test and certify cooling tower performance according to CTI STD 201, "Certification Standard for Commercial Water-Cooling Towers Thermal Performance."

B. Factory pressure test heat exchangers after fabrication and prove to be free of leaks.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Before cooling tower installation, examine roughing-in for tower support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting tower performance, maintenance, and operation.
   1. Cooling tower locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install cooling towers on support structure indicated.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install cooling tower using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
   1. Minimum Deflection: 1/2 inch.
   2. Provide galvanized-steel plate to equally distribute weight over elastomeric pad.

C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Loose Components: Install electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to cooling towers to allow service and maintenance. A clear distance equal to the height of the tower on air intake sides must be maintained.

C. Provide drain piping with valve at cooling tower drain connections and at low points in piping.

D. Connect cooling tower overflows and drains, and piping drains to sanitary sewage system.

E. Domestic Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Connect to water-level control with shutoff valve and union, flange, or mechanical coupling at each connection.

F. Supply and Return Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." Connect to entering cooling tower connections with shutoff valve, balancing

valve, thermometer, plugged tee with pressure gage, and drain connection with valve. Connect to leaving cooling tower connection with shutoff valve. Make connections to cooling tower with a union, flange, or mechanical coupling.

G. Equalizer Piping: Piping requirements to match supply and return piping. Connect an equalizer pipe, full size of cooling tower connection, between tower cells. Connect to cooling tower with shutoff valve.

H. Provide cleanouts for sediment removal and flushing from basin and piping, in accessible locations.

I. Install flexible pipe connectors at final connections of towers mounted on vibration isolators.

J. Provide and connect sub-meter on make-up water piping at each cooling tower system. Dwyer model WNT-A-C or greater. Integrate meter into FMCS.

K. Connect to water-level control with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection. Provide heat tracing for make-up/domestic water piping.

L. Connect to supply and return cooling-tower connections with shutoff valve, flow-control valve, and union or flange on supply connection to the tower and shutoff valve and union or flange to return connection from the tower to the chiller. Include bypass piping to tower basin and bypass control valve. Insulate and jacket all outdoor piping. Provide heat tracing on condenser water piping.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections: Comply with ASME PTC 23, "ASME Performance Test Codes - Code on Atmospheric Water Cooling Equipment."

B. Cooling towers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for proper assemblies, installations, and connections.

C. Obtain performance data from manufacturer.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
      a. Clean entire unit including basins.
      b. Verify that accessories are properly installed.
      c. Verify clearances for airflow and for cooling tower servicing.
      d. Check for vibration isolation and structural support.
      e. Lubricate bearings.
      f. Verify fan rotation for correct direction and for vibration or binding and correct problems.
      g. Adjust belts to proper alignment and tension.
      h. Verify proper oil level in gear-drive housing. Fill with oil to proper level.

i. Operate variable-speed fans through entire operating range and check for harmonic vibration imbalance. Set motor controller to skip speeds resulting in abnormal vibration.
j. Check vibration switch setting. Verify operation.
k. Verify water level in tower basin. Fill to proper startup level. Check makeup water-level control and valve.
l. Verify operation of basin heater and control.
m. Verify that cooling tower air discharge is not recirculating air into tower or HVAC air intakes. Recommend corrective action.
n. Replace defective and malfunctioning units.

D. Start cooling tower and associated water pumps. Follow manufacturer's written starting procedures.

E. Prepare a written startup report that records the results of tests and inspections.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Set and balance water flow to each tower inlet.

B. Adjust water-level control for proper operating level.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cooling towers.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 7314

CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Variable-air-volume, single-zone air-handling units.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding 10 inches of internal static pressures indicated, without panel joints exceeding a deflection of L/240 where "L" is the unsupported span length within completed casings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit indicated.
   1. Unit dimensions and weight.
   2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
   3. Fans:
      a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
      b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
      c. Fan construction and accessories.
      d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
   4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
   5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
   6. Filters with performance characteristics.
   7. Other scheduled accessories.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.

C. ARI Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to ARI 430, "Central-Station Air-Handling Units," and shall be listed and labeled by ARI.

D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

E. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members, if any, with actual equipment provided.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by approved manufacturer as indicated on drawings.

B. Refer to drawing details and air handling unit schedule for description of air handling unit customization.

2.2 UNIT CASINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Double-Wall Casings:
   1. Units shall be supplied with double wall panels for walls, roof, and floor.
   2. The exterior casing shall be constructed of 16 gauge galvanized steel.
   3. The interior casing for walls and roof panels shall be constructed of solid 20 gauge galvanized steel.
   4. The interior casing for floor panels shall be constructed of solid 16 gauge galvanized steel. Subfloor shall be constructed of 20 gauge galvanized steel.
   5. The supply air plenum shall utilize perforated 22 gauge galvanized steel.
   6. Floors shall be constructed of solid 14 gauge galvanized steel (minimum).
   7. Insulation for interior walls, exterior walls, and the roof shall be 3” thick, R-19 (minimum.)
   8. Insulation for floors shall be 4” thick, R-19 (minimum) with subfloor.
   9. The completed unit shall have a maximum leakage of 1% at 10” w.g. static pressure.
   10. Forming: Form walls, roofs, and floors with at least two breaks at each joint.
   11. Casing Joints: Sheet metal screws or pop rivets.
   12. Sealing: Seal all joints with water-resistant sealant.
   13. Casing Coating: Epoxy based enamel or powder coating.
   14. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
   15. Units scheduled to be installed outdoors shall be designed and constructed to be weather-tight with sloping roofs for drainage. Provide piping enclosures and roof curbs as scheduled.

B. Casing Insulation and Adhesive:
   1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type II.

C. Access Doors:
1. Door Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing. Removable panels are not acceptable.
2. Access Doors:
a. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
Indoor unit windows: Fabricate windows in fan section doors, and any other section scheduled on the drawings, of double-glazed, wire-reinforced safety glass with an air space between panes and sealed with interior and exterior rubber seals.
c. Size: At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches.
3. Service Light: 42-W vaporproof LED fixture with switched junction box located outside adjacent to door.
a. Locations: Each section accessed with door.
4. Outdoor Units: Provide internal thermal breaks to minimize thermal conduction from the interior of AHU to exterior. Roof shall be sloped a minimum of 0.125" per foot, designed to prevent water infiltration into the unit. Provide galvanized steel roof curb with 2" insulation, minimum 14" high, or as noted on the drawings. Louvers, dampers and hoods shall prevent moisture from entering unit. Outdoor units shall be pre-wired to a single point, containing all disconnecting means and controllers required. Provide coil connection insulated housing and curb where applicable.

D. Condensate Drain Pans:
1. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
2. Formed sections.
3. Double-wall, 304 stainless steel sheet with space between walls filled with 2" foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
4. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
a. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
5. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.
6. Units in excess of 159 inches in width shall have drain connections on both sides of unit.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Mounting Frame: Formed galvanized-steel channel or structural channel supports, designed for low deflection, with integral lifting lugs.

2.3 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
1. Shafts: Designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, and with field-adjustable alignment.
a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
b. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

B. Direct Drives: Factory mounted, with alignment and belt adjustment made after installation and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor. Shafts and bearing shall be compliant with performance described above. Direct drive fans shall include integral shaft grounding.

C. Fan Arrays: Multiple Fans will be Model MPQS centrifugal plenum type, as manufactured by Twin City Fan & Blower. Fans will have a sharply rising pressure characteristic extending through the operating range and continuing to rise beyond the peak efficiency to ensure quiet and stable operation. Fans will have a non-overloading design with self-limiting horsepower characteristics and will reach a peak in the normal selection area.

1. Performance — Fans will be tested in accordance with AMCA 210 and AMCA 300 test standards for air moving devices and will be guaranteed by the manufacturer to deliver rated published performance levels.
2. Construction — Fans will be designed without a scroll type housing and will incorporate a non-overloading type backward inclined airfoil blade wheel, heavy-gauge reinforced steel inlet plate and structural steel frame.
3. Frame and Inlet Panel — Inlet panels will be of heavy-gauge reinforced steel construction. The inlet panel incorporates a removable spun inlet cone designed for smooth airflow into the accompanying inlet retaining ring of the fan wheel. A square, formed lip suitable for attachment of a boot connector will surround the unit.
4. Wheel — Wheels will have a spun non-tapered style blade retaining ring on the inlet side to allow higher efficiencies over the performance range of the fan. Wheels will have airfoil-shaped extruded aluminum blades. All hollow blade wheels will be continuously welded around all edges. Wheels will have twelve blades for better sound quality. All wheels will be statically and dynamically balanced per ANSI/AMCA 204.
5. Finish and Coating — The entire fan assembly will be thoroughly degreased and deburred before application of a rust-preventative coating. Aluminum components will be unpainted.
6. Motors — Provide TEFC Premium Eff. with Aegis Shaft Grounding factory installed. Motor frames will be cast iron – rolled steel frames are not acceptable
7. Fan Balancing — All fans prior to shipment will be individually balanced. Maximum vibration will be within the limits of ANSI/AMCA 204 Fan Application Category BV-4 BV-5. Balance readings will be taken by electronic type equipment in the axial, vertical, and horizontal directions on each of the bearings.
8. Vibration Isolation — Fans will not require spring isolators in order to meet the ANSI/AMCA 204 Fan Application Category BV-4 BV-5 rating.
9. Factory Run Test — All fans prior to shipment will be completely assembled and test run as a unit at the specified operating speed or maximum RPM allowed for the particular construction type. Maximum vibration will be within the limits of ANSI/AMCA 204 Fan Application Category BV-4 (optionally BV-5). Balance readings will be taken by electronic type equipment in the axial, vertical, and horizontal directions on each of the bearings.
10. Blank off Panels — Each Multiple Fan section to be provided with one fan blankoff panel to enable manual isolation of fan for servicing.
11. Piezometer Ring: Fan airflow measurement systems shall be provided as indicated on the Air Handling Unit Schedule and M701 to measure fan airflow directly or to measure differential pressure that can be used to calculate airflow. The accuracy of the devices shall be no worse than +/- 5 percent when operating within stable fan operating conditions. Devices shall not affect the submitted fan performance and acoustical levels. Devices that obstruct the fan inlet or outlet shall not be acceptable. Devices shall be connected to transducers with 2-10 VDC output. Signal shall be proportional to air velocity. Airflow station will be factory installed in each fan inlet. Tubing will be manifolded so that the measurement is representative of all fans in the array.
12. Reference AHU Schedule for the quantity of fans in the array for the Basis of Design AHU. Alternative quantities of fans are permitted to be submitted for review pending the airflow, static pressure, sound criteria, redundancy are still achieved.

D. Fan Shaft Bearings:

1. Grease-Lubricated Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing with grease lines extended to outside unit. Minimum average life shall be L-10 at 200,000 hours.

E. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
2. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
5. Permanently sealed bearings with L-10 400,000 hour life.

F. Controllers:
1. Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 220513 for details.

G. Fan Efficiency
1. Each fan and fan array larger than 5 HP shall have a fan energy index (FEI) of not less than 1.0 at the design operation, as determined in accordance with AMCA 208 by an approved independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. Each fan and fan array used for a variable-air-volume system shall have an FEI of not less than 0.95 at the design point of operation, as determined in accordance with AMCA 208 by an approved independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. The FEI for fan arrays shall be calculated in accordance with AMCA 208 Annex C.

2.4 COIL SECTION

A. General Requirements for Coil Section:
1. Water and steam coils shall comply with ARI 410.
2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
3. For multizone units, provide air deflectors and air baffles to balance airflow across coils.
4. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
5. Cooling and heating coils shall have 304 stainless steel casings.
6. Water coils shall be minimum 5/8 inch diameter copper tubes with 0.020 inch wall thickness and 0.008 inch aluminum fins.
7. Copper headers with red brass connections.
8. Refer to schedules on drawings for number of rows and fins/inch.

B. Electrical Heating Coils, Controls, and Accessories: Comply with UL 1995.
1. Casing Assembly: Slip-in type with galvanized-steel frame.
2. Sheathed Heating Elements: Coiled resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium surrounded by compacted magnesium-oxide powder in tubular-steel sheath; with spiral-wound, copper-plated, steel fins continuously brazed to sheath.
3. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame.
4. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically resetting, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box without removing heater from coil section.
5. Secondary Protection: Load-carrying, manually resetting or manually replaceable, thermal cutouts; factory wired in series with each heater stage.
6. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection.

a. SSR-Full Modulating Control.

2.5 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

A. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Provide minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
3. Provide filter holding frames arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

B. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:
1. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
2. Thickness: 2 inches.
3. Arrestance (ASHRAE 52.1): 90.
4. MERV (ASHRAE 52.2): 8.
5. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats with antimicrobial agent and held by self-supporting wire grid.
6. Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

C. Extended-Surface, Nonsupported-Media Filters:
1. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface, self-supporting type.
2. Arrestance (ASHRAE 52.1): 95.
3. Merv (ASHRAE 52.2): 13.
4. Media: Fibrous material with antimicrobial agent constructed so individual pleats are maintained in tapered form by flexible internal supports under rated-airflow conditions.
5. Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks with space for prefilter.

D. Filter Gage:
1. 3-1/2-inch- diameter, diaphragm-actuated dial in metal case.
2. Vent valves.
3. Black figures on white background.
4. Front recalibration adjustment.
5. 2 percent of full-scale accuracy.
6. Range: 0 to 150% of filter final resistance.
7. Accessories: Static-pressure tips with integral compression fittings, 1/4-inch plastic tubing, and 2- or 3-way vent valves.

2.6 DAMPERS

A. General Requirements for Dampers: Leakage rate, according to AMCA 500, "Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating," shall not exceed 2 percent of air quantity at 2000-fpm face velocity through damper and 4-inch wg pressure differential.

B. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

C. Electronic Damper Operators:
1. Refer to Section “Instrumentation and Control for HVAC” for operators.

D. Face-and-Bypass Dampers: Opposed-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame

and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Provide blade gaskets and edge seals, and mechanically fasten blades to operating rod.

E. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 5 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 9 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.

F. Mixing Section: Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly located immediately downstream of mixing section.

2.7 CONTROLS

A. General Requirements for Controls:
1. Factory mounted piezometer ring on supply and outside air fans. Transducers by controls manufacturer.

2.8 ELECTRICAL

A. General Requirements for Electrical:
1. Provide unit with single point power connection including main unit disconnect.
2. Provide electrical distribution system to factory mounted and wired variable speed drives. Refer to Section 220513 for details.
3. Provide electrical distribution system to factory mounted 115 volt transformer to power unit mounted lights and GFI outlets.
4. All wiring shall be fully tested prior to shipment and all components shall be UL Listed. All electrical systems shall be ETL Listed and labeled in accordance with UP 1995.

2.9 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

A. Refer to floor plans, details and schedule on drawings for performance information and the required sections/modules for required air handling units.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.

B. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."

C. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

D. Steam Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig and to 200 psig underwater according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

E. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to 450 psig according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

E. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where outdoor units are to be installed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting: Install air-handling units on concrete bases using restrained spring isolators. Secure units to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
   1. Minimum Deflection: 2 inches.
   2. Install galvanized-steel plate to equally distribute weight over elastomeric pad.
   3. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
   4. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   5. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   6. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

B. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCAs “Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual,” Illustration “Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts.”: Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Division 07 Section “”Roof Accessories.” Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.
   1. Contractor to send pictures of the in curb acoustical treatment installation to Purdy-McGuire, Inc. prior to setting the RTU.

C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

D. Do not operate fan system until 2” throwaway filters with glass fiber media are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction, cleaning and testing, with new, clean filters.

E. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gages on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to air-handling unit to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

D. Connect condensate drain pans using ASTM B 88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest roof drain, fixture or floor drain as note on the drawings. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.

F. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
   2. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
   3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
   4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
   5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
   6. Verify that zone dampers fully open and close for each zone.
   7. Verify that face-and-bypass dampers provide full face flow.
   8. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
   9. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
   10. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
   11. Install new, clean filters.

12. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:
1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 7413

PACKAGED DX ROOFTOP UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:
   1. Direct-expansion cooling.
   2. Hot-gas reheat.
   3. Gas furnace.
   4. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
   5. Integral, space temperature controls.
   6. Roof curbs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct-digital controls.

B. ECM: Electrically commutated motor.

C. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged outdoor, central-station air-handling units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

D. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

E. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

F. VVT: Variable-air volume and temperature.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and scheduled accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ARI Compliance:
   1. Comply with ARI 210/240 and ARI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
   2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:
   1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
   2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
   3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of packaged DX rooftop units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified below.
   1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
      a. Complete Unit and all Components: Parts and labor for ten years.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or an acceptable alternate manufacturer shown on drawings.

2.2 CASING

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced insulated panels with joints between sections sealed.

B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.

C. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
   1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.

2. Thickness: 1/2", 1 pound density, foil faced, fiberglass, on all walls and top; ½", 1 pound density, foil faced closed-cell on the base.
3. Liner materials shall have air-stream surface coated with an erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

D. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of stainless-steel sheet, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.
3. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Corrosion-resistant compound.

E. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

F. Access Doors: Single wall, insulated, hinged and gasketed. Removable panels are not acceptable.

2.3 FANS

A. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, single-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted and isolated using 2" spring isolators in the casing. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

B. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.

C. Relief-Air Fan: Powered fan, shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor for 100% capacity. Monitor building static pressure to operate fan. Provide 2" spring isolators.

D. Fan Motor: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

E. Frequency Drives: Unit mounted VFD for supply fan and relief fan operation.

2.4 COILS

A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Coil Split: Interlaced.

B. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.

C. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coil:
1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.

2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically reset, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box.
4. Overcurrent Protection: Manual-reset thermal cutouts, factory wired in each heater stage.
5. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection. Include the following controls:
   a. Magnetic contactors.
   b. Step Controller: Pilot lights and override toggle switch for each step.
   c. SCR Controller: Pilot lights operate on load ratio, a minimum of five steps.
   d. Time-delay relay.
   e. Airflow proving switch.

2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

A. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: Refer to schedule on drawings.

B. Compressor: Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief.

C. Refrigeration Specialties:
1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
6. Minimum off-time relay.
7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
9. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.
10. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
11. Hot-gas bypass solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
12. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.

2.6 AIR FILTRATION

A. Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
1. Pleated: 2” Minimum 90 percent arrestance, and MERV 13.

2.7 GAS FURNACE

A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.
1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.

B. Burners: Stainless steel.
1. Fuel: Natural gas, modulated control.
2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
3. High-Altitude Kit: For Project elevations more than 2000 feet above sea level.

C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Gravity vented with vertical extension.

E. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve having vertical extension.

F. Safety Controls:
1. Gas Control Valve: As scheduled on the drawings.
2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.8 DAMPERS

A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel ultra-low leak AMCA Class 1A dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.
1. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, with bird screen and hood.
3. 100% economizer cycle with dry bulb or comparative enthalpy control with minimum position, as scheduled.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION

A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.10 CONTROLS

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

B. DDC Controller:
1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
2. Safety Control Operation:
   a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
   b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
   c. Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm."
   d. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply air temperature is less than 40 deg F.
   e. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on 365-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.
4. Provide a complete control system to operate the rooftop unit including but not limited to reheat economizer, CO_2 sensing, compressor staging, relief air and VAV control. Refer to drawing schedule for required control.

C. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.

3. Provide BACnet or LonWorks (as applicable for the project) compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
    a. Adjusting set points.
    b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
    c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.
    d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
    e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
    f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
    g. Monitoring cooling load.
    h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
    i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

2.11 ACCESSORIES

A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.

B. Low-ambient kit using staged condenser fans for operation down to 35 deg F.

C. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.

D. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.

E. Hinged double wall access doors.

2.12 ROOF CURBS

A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
    b. Thickness: 2 inches.
2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
    a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
    b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
    c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
    d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

B. Curb Height: 18 inches minimum or as shown/scheduled on the drawings.

2.13 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

A. Refer to schedule on drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.

B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.
   1. Contractor to send pictures of the in curb acoustical treatment installation to Purdy-McGuire, Inc. prior to setting the RTU.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to sanitary sewer system unless noted otherwise on the drawings.

B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
   1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 22 Section Natural-Gas Piping. Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
   1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
   2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
   3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
   4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
   2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
   3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:
1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
4. Inspect internal insulation.
5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
11. Connect and purge gas line.
12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. Start refrigeration system.
    b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
    a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
    b. Inspect operation of power vents.
    c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
    d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
    e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
    f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
21. Calibrate thermostats.
22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
    a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
    d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

a. Supply-air volume.
b. Return-air volume.
c. Relief-air volume.
d. Outdoor-air intake volume.

27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
    a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
    b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
    a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
    b. Low-temperature safety operation.
    c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
    d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
    e. Relief-air fan operation.
    f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 23 8126

SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes split-system air-conditioning units, heat pump units, and ductless split-system units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components. Units are designed for exposed or concealed mounting, and may be connected to ducts.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of split-system units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for units. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate size, location, and connection details with roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of split-system air-conditioners that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified below.
   1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:

a. All components: Parts and labor for five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SPLIT-SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the approved manufacturers shown on the drawings.

B. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:
1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
5. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
6. Fan Motors:
   a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
   c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
8. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
9. Condensate Drain Pans:
   a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
      1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
      2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
   b. Double-wall, galvanized-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
   c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
   d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
   e. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

C. Wall-Mounted Evaporator-Fan Components
1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
   a. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
   b. Drain Pan and Drain Connection: Comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with thermal-expansion valve.
3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements with refractory ceramic support bushings; automatic-reset thermal cutout; built-in magnetic contactors;

manual-reset thermal cutout; airflow proving device; and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.

4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal fan.
5. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   a. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
6. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.

2.2 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 Tons or Less)

A. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.

B. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
   1. Compressor Type: Scroll.
   2. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
   3. Refrigerant: R-407C or R-410A.

C. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with liquid subcooler.

D. Heat Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature air cut-off thermostat.

E. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.

F. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.

G. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 0 deg F.

H. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

I. Minimum Energy Efficiency: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."

B. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
   1. Compressor time delay.
   2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
   3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
   4. Fan-speed selection, including auto setting.

C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
   1. Minimum Insulation Thickness: 1 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

C. Install ground-mounting, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.

D. Install roof-mounting compressor-condenser components on equipment support rails specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports on all four corners and per the manufacturer’s recommendations with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.

E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 8239

UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Propeller unit heaters with electric-resistance or hot water heating coils.
   2. Wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.
   3. Cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and hot water coils.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

B. CWP: Cold working pressure.

C. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.

D. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Carrier.
   2. Dunham-Bush, Inc.
   3. McQuay International.
   4. Trane.

B. Description: An assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor in vertical and horizontal discharge configuration with adjustable discharge louvers.

C. Comply with UL 2021.

D. Comply with UL 823.

E. Cabinet: Removable panels for maintenance access to controls.

F. Cabinet Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heater before shipping.

G. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

H. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units and conical diffuser for vertical units.

I. General Coil Requirements: Test and rate hot-water propeller unit heater coils according to ASHRAE 33.

J. Electric-Resistance Heating Elements: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in steel or corrosion-resistant metallic sheath with fins no closer than 0.16 inch. Element ends shall be enclosed in terminal box. Fin surface temperature shall not exceed 550 deg F at any point during normal operation.
   1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection of heaters.
   2. Wiring Terminations: Stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant material.

K. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, minimum 0.025 inch wall thickness, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaces no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 125 deg. F. (163 deg. C.) with manual air vent. Test for leaks to 350 psig underwater.

L. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.

M. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   1. Motor Type: Permanently lubricated.

N. Control Devices:
   1. Wall-mounting thermostat, or controls scheduled on the drawings.

O. Capacities and Characteristics
   1. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.2 WALL AND CEILING HEATERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Berko Electric Heating; a division of Marley Engineered Products.
   2. Chromalox, Inc.; a division of Emerson Electric Company.
   3. Indeeco.
   4. Markel Products; a division of TPI Corporation.
   5. QMark Electric Heating; a division of Marley Engineered Products.
   6. Trane.

B. Description: An assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.

C. Cabinet:
   1. Front Panel: Extruded-aluminum bar grille, with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.
   2. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.

D. Surface-Mounting Cabinet Enclosure: Steel with finish to match cabinet.

E. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware, and limit controls for high temperature protection.

F. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.
   1. Motor: Permanently lubricated. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

G. Controls: Low-voltage relay with transformer kit.

H. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection with disconnect switch.

I. Capacities and Characteristics:
   1. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.3 CABINET UNIT HEATERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Carrier Corporation.
   2. Dunham-Bush, Inc.
   3. McQuay International.
   4. Trane.

B. Description: A factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with ARI 440.

   1. Comply with UL 2021.

C. Coil Section Insulation: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Unicellular polyethylene thermal plastic, preformed sheet insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, except for density.

   1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
   2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
   3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM C 411.
   4. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
   5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Cabinet: Steel with baked-enamel or powdercoat finish with manufacturer's standard paint, in color selected by Architect.

1. Vertical Unit, Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 16 ga. thick, galvanized, sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.
2. Horizontal Unit, Exposed Bottom Panels: Minimum 18 ga. thick, galvanized, sheet steel, removable panels secured with tamperproof cam fasteners and safety chain.
3. Recessing Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
4. Control Access Door: Key operated.
5. Base: Minimum 18 ga. thick steel, finished to match cabinet, 4 inches high with leveling bolts.
6. Extended Piping Compartment: 8-inch- wide piping end pocket.
7. False Back: Minimum 18 ga. thick steel, finished to match cabinet.
8. Outdoor-Air Wall Box: Minimum 0.1265-inch- thick, aluminum, rain-resistant louver and box with integral eliminators and bird screen. Aluminum louver with anodized finish in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

    a. Outdoor-Air Damper: Galvanized-steel blades with edge and end seals and nylon bearings; with electronic, two-position actuators.

E. Filters: Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1 and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.

1. Washable Foam: 70 percent arrestance and 3 MERV.
2. Glass Fiber Treated with Adhesive: 80 percent arrestance and 5 MERV.
3. Pleated: 90 percent arrestance and 7 MERV.

F. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.

G. Steam Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 75 psig.

H. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.

1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal; directly connected to motor. Thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels, and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

I. Factory, Hot-Water Piping Package: ASTM B 88, Type L copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet and outlet.

1. Control valves as scheduled on the drawings.
2. Hose Kits: Minimum 400-psig working pressure, and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F. Tag hose kits to equipment designations.

    a. Length: 24 inches.
    b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to cabinet unit heater connection size.

3. Two-Piece, Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
4. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type, 125-psig working pressure, 250 deg F maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venture, connection

for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and equipped with a memory stop to retain set position.

5. Automatic Flow-Control Valve: Brass or ferrous-metal body, 300-psig working pressure at 250 deg F, with removable, corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning, piston-spring; factory set to maintain constant indicated flow with plus or minus 10 percent over differential pressure range of 2 to 80 psig.
6. Y-Pattern, Hot-Water Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig minimum working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 threaded pipe and full-port ball valve in strainer drain connection.
7. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

J. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."

K. DDC Terminal Controller: As scheduled and described on the drawings or in Section 23 0900.

L. BAS Interface Requirements:

1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.

M. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection.

N. Capacities and Characteristics: As scheduled on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

C. Install propeller unit heaters level and plumb.

D. Suspend propeller unit heaters from structure with all-thread hanger rods and spring hangers. Hanger rods and attachments to structure are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Vibration hangers are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

E. Install wall-mounting thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to cabinet unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.

D. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.

E. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

F. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
   3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature set points.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cabinet unit heaters. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
3. Sleeve seals.
4. Grout.
5. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

B. Shop Drawings: Where not specifically mentioned in subsequent sections, provide drawings for equipment arrangements, terminal boards, large cabinets and enclosures, local communications systems and modular wiring systems.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

E. Coordinate chases, inserts, sleeves, and openings with general construction work and arrange in building structure during progress of construction to facilitate the electrical installations that follows.
   1. Set inserts and sleeves in poured-in place concrete, masonry work, and other structural components as they are constructed.

F. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment requiring positioning before closing in the building.

G. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.
   1. Coordinate installation and connection of exterior underground and overhead utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.
   2. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and of utility company providing electrical power and other services.

H. Where electrical identification devices are applied to field-finished surfaces, coordinate installation of identification devices with completion of finished surface.

I. Where electrical identification markings and devices will be concealed by acoustical ceilings and similar finishes, coordinate installation of these items before ceiling installation.

1.6 GENERAL

A. For Products specified by reference to an association or trade standard, comply with requirements and recommendations stated in that standard, except when requirements are modified by the Contract Documents, or applicable codes establish stricter standards.

B. The date of the standard is that in effect on the date of issue of Contract Documents, except when a specific publication date is specified. Obtain copies of referenced standards direct from publication source, when needed for proper performance of Work, or when required for submittal by Contract Documents

1.7 SCHEDULE OF ABBREVIATIONS

A. Reference standards are listed in various sections using abbreviations contained below:

ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
EGSMA	Engine Generator Sales Manufacturers Association
ETL	Electrical Testing Laboratories
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
IES	Illuminating Engineering Society
NBS	National Bureau of Standards
NEC	National Electrical Code
NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
NETA	International Electrical Testing Association
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
OSHA	Occupation Safety Health Administration
UL	Underwriters Laboratories

1.8 OPERATION AND CONTROL CHARACTERISTICS OF EQUIPMENT

A. The operation and control characteristics of each item of equipment scheduled, noted and/or indicated on the plans and specifications are based on a particular manufacturer and model. While other manufacturers or models may be acceptable, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to verify that the operation and controls characteristics for the equipment he proposes to provide match those indicated. In the instance where the equipment he proposes to provide has different operation and controls characteristics, the Contractor AT NO COST TO THE OWNER shall provide the required operation and controls characteristics required. All modifications to provide the operation and control characteristics shall be coordinated by the Contractor with the Engineer.

B. Motor controllers, except where they are to be mounted inside a motor control center or specifically identified and scheduled in Division 26 or on the drawings, shall be furnished by the M/C or P/C for installation by the E/C. Refer to Section 22 0513 for details.

C. When any equipment is operable, and it is to the advantage of the Contractor to operate the equipment, he may do so provided that he properly supervises the operation, and retains full responsibility for the equipment operated.

D. Regardless of whether or not the equipment has or has not been operated, the Contractor shall clean the equipment properly, make required adjustments, and complete punch list items before final acceptance by the Owner.

E. The date of acceptance by the Architect, for beneficial use by the Owner, shall be the beginning date of the warranty period. The warranty period for all materials, equipment, products, and contractor's work shall be one year from the date of substantial completion. Refer to individual specification sections for extended warranty requirements.

1.9 SPACE AND EQUIPMENT ARRANGEMENT

A. The size of each item of equipment shown on the Drawings is based on the dimensions of a particular manufacturer, or approximate dimensions for "generic" equipment. While other manufacturers may be acceptable, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine whether or not the equipment he proposes to furnish will fit into the available space. Shop drawings shall be prepared to indicate a suitable arrangement.

B. Install equipment in a manner to permit access to all surfaces. Install switches, circuit breakers, relays, ballasts, and other accessory items, and all auxiliary devices in a position to allow removal for service without requiring the disassembly of another part. Alternative arrangements deemed "suitable" must conform to Codes and provide at least as much access and working space clearance as indicated on Bid Drawings.

C. Large equipment assemblies and components which will be installed in the building, and which are too large to permit access through doorways, stairways or shafts, shall be brought to the site and placed in the appropriate spaces before the enclosing structure is completed. Such equipment shall be ordered early on, sufficient to allow arrival for timely installation. Contact the Architect should problems be expected in this regard. The equipment shall be protected until hazards of damage to the equipment, including dust and moisture, are eliminated.

1.10 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Manuals shall be submitted which contain the following:
   1. Description of the system provided.
      a. Handling, storage, and installation instructions.

b. Detailed description of the function of each principal component of the systems or equipment, including necessary wiring diagrams.

2. Operating procedures:
   a. Pre startup activities required.
   b. Startup.
   c. Normal operation.
   d. Emergency shutdown.
   e. Normal shutdown.
   f. Trouble-shooting guide.
3. Maintenance:
   a. Preventative and repair maintenance procedures.
   b. Complete spare parts list with cross reference to original equipment manufacturer part number.
4. Safety and environmental considerations.
5. Other data required elsewhere in the specifications.

B. Three copies of the manuals shall be provided within sufficient time to allow for training of Owner's personnel. Submit one copy of the manuals to the Architect for review no later than 90 calendar days prior to substantial completion or building turn over, whichever comes first. Submit the remaining three corrected copies within 15 days after review set is returned to contractor. Progress payment may be withheld if this requirement is not met.

C. The manuals shall be provided in three-ring side binders with durable plastic covers.

D. The manuals shall contain a detailed table of contents and have tab dividers for major sections and special equipment.

E. The Owner will not accept any training or equipment unless the maintenance manuals are received a minimum of 10 working days prior to request for Training/Turnover.

1.11 START-UP EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

A. Whenever the manufacturer of a particular item of equipment or a particular system makes available a start-up service after completion of the installation, such manufacturer's start-up service (rendered by the manufacturer or his authorized representative) shall be provided.

B. Witnessing and explanations of start-up services shall be included as part of the "Instruction of Owner's Personnel" as specified below.

1.12 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL

A. Provide the services of competent engineers or technicians acceptable to the Architect to instruct representatives of the Owner in complete and detailed operation and maintenance of each item of equipment, and each system. These instructions shall be provided for whatever periods may be necessary to accomplish the desired results. Upon completion of these instructions, the Contractor shall obtain a letter of release, acknowledged by the Owner or his authorizes representative, stating the dates on which the various kinds of instruction were given, and the personnel to whom the instructions were given.

B. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for proper maintenance of equipment and systems until the instructions have been given to the Owner's personnel and the letter of release acknowledged.

C. In providing the instructions to the Owner's personnel, the written operating and maintenance manuals shall be followed in all instances, and the Owner's personnel shall be familiarized with such manuals.

1.13 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

A. The Contractor shall, during the progress of the job, keep a set of record prints on which he shall mark all changes. After completion of a CADD release form by the Contractor and near the conclusion of the job, the Architect will provide the Contractor with one set of AutoCAD electronic files of the Mechanical, Plumbing, and Electrical Drawings. The Contractor shall draft on these electronic files all changes made during the progress of the work and return them and one set of paper plans with the changes to the Architect as "As-Built Drawings".

1.14 COORDINATION WITH ELECTRICAL COMMISSIONING AGENT (CXP)

A. Contractor shall provide assistance and support to the project commissioning agent, hired by the Owner.

B. A general description of the Contractor's work includes the following items.
1. Provide all personnel, tools, materials, and equipment to support the commissioning process. Facilitate the coordination of the commissioning work by the CxP and incorporate commissioning activities into the master construction schedule.
2. Incorporate all commissioning related activities into the project schedule, ensuring that Cx activities do not delay construction/project completion.
3. Notify the Owner's Representative and the CxP in writing that equipment and systems are ready for functional testing.
4. Perform equipment startups using authorized manufacturers' representatives.
5. Provide written documentation to the CxP that equipment and systems are fully operational and ready to be functionally performance tested.
6. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxP.
7. Attend construction phase commissioning coordination meetings.
8. Provide qualified personnel for participation in commissioning tests.
9. Provide equipment, materials, and labor to correct deficiencies found during the commissioning process.
10. Participate in plumbing system, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientations and inspections as directed by the CxP.
11. Provide information requested by the CxP for commissioning documentation and testing.
12. Perform all quality control functions to ensure equipment and systems are installed properly. Ensure equipment and systems are brought to a state of readiness and full functionality prior to commencing the commissioning functional performance testing processes.
13. Provide a representative to attend end of warranty testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

B. Provide a singular manufacturer for distribution equipment, such as switchboards, panelboards, transformers, disconnecting means, etc.

C. Each item of equipment furnished on this project shall have local representation, factory-authorized service and an adequate stock of repair parts. “Local” shall be defined, for this purpose, as “within 50 miles of the project site.”

2.2 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
   1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
      a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
      b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.3 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
      a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
      b. Calpico, Inc.
      c. Metraflex Co.
      d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
   3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
   4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Provide firestopping in sealing of penetrations in fire-rated construction, horizontal and vertical, including the following materials:
   1. Foam: Dow Corning Firestop silicone RTV foam, liquid component Part A (black) and liquid component Part B (off-white).
   2. Sealant: 3M 1000NS and 1003SL silicone adhesive sealant, single component, neutral cure, and non-slumping.
   3. Damming Materials: Mineral fiberboard, mineral fiber matting, mineral fiber putty, plywood or particle board, as selected by the applicator.

B. Mixes shall conform to the manufacturer's directions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION

A. Access: Access to and use of the existing facilities and site will be restricted, and shall be under the direction and control of the Owner.

B. Disruptions: Maintain existing electrical, communications, alarm, and other existing systems, and maintain existing functions in service except for scheduled disruptions. Where existing functions to remain in use are disrupted, they shall be fully restored after disruption, in full compliance with this Division of the Specifications for new work.

C. Scheduling of Disruptions: Seek and obtain approval two weeks in advance of event for date, starting time, and duration of each required disruption.

D. Notice of Disruption: Date, time and duration of each disruption shall be subject to the Owner's prior approval, and shall include the following information in the form of a memorandum submitted by the Contractor to the Architect for approval by the Owner.

Facility/System Date Starting Time Duration

E. Emergency disruptions: When circumstances preclude obtaining advance approval as specified above; make request immediately on knowledge of the requirement, and perform work so as to cause the minimum amount of disruption, for the minimum duration.

F. Notification: Notify the Architect and the Owner immediately by telephone and then in writing, as changes and additions to the scheduled disruption requirements become known.

G. Duration: Complete as large a portion of the work as possible before initiating disruption and perform only that work necessary so as to minimize duration of disruption. Maintain adequate personnel, supplies, materials, equipment, tools, and other resources at job site to avoid unnecessary delay in resumption of normal service.

3.2 GENERAL

A. The Drawings and specifications are intended to accomplish certain objectives. These documents do not purport to indicate methods the Contractor is to use in accomplishing the objectives. They show conduit and wire sizes and they describe the various systems. These documents describe and size equipment, its general location, usage, support and auxiliary requirements. They also describe most, but not all, of the materials and their usage for this project.

B. Contract Documents do not, however, detail certain job requirements. In most instances they do not show exact layouts, locations or elevations of any fixtures, conduits, anchors, sleeves, hangers, slots, holes, outlets, inserts, elbows, or fittings. They do not show final precise location of equipment by dimension in most instances, or manufacturer’s requirements for proper installation, operation and maintenance or manufacturer’s requirements for proper installation, operation, and maintenance.

C. In general, conduit in finished areas of the building shall be run concealed in chases, walls, floor slabs, furrings, and above suspended ceilings, unless noted or indicated otherwise. Should any condition arise which would cause any conduit to be exposed in finished area, it shall be immediately called to the Architect's attention and correction of the condition shall be made in accordance with the Architect's instruction. Runs of conduit shall be grouped wherever it is

feasible to do so. Conduits shall be cut accurately to measurements established at the building and shall be worked into place without springing or forcing.

1. In unfinished spaces such as equipment rooms, conduit shall be installed parallel to the building plates, shall be run as high as possible, and shall be square to the building and securely supported. A high quality of workmanship is expected.
2. Conduits shall not be run above grade, outside, exposed on any external walls, or across the roof exposed, without the express written permission of the Architect.
3. Conduit openings shall be capped during construction until the systems are closed with final connections.

D. The exact location of each item shall be determined by reference to the project Contract Drawings, and to details, equipment drawings, roughing-in drawings, by measurement at the building, and in cooperation with the various trades. In congested spaces (such as below raised floors), Contractor shall develop a special hierarchy to coordinate electrical with other trades. Contact Architect for additional guidance. Minor relocations necessitated by the conditions at the site or directed by the Owner shall be made without additional cost to the Owner.

E. Coordinate proper locations and sizes of slots, holes or openings in the building structure pertaining to this work, and for the correct location of sleeves. Place inserts to accommodate the ultimate installation of hangers in the forms, and set sleeves in forms before concrete is poured, and in masonry walls while they are under construction. Concealed lines shall be installed as required by the pace of the job to precede the general construction.

F. Except for items that are furnished with factory installed integral motors, an electric motor of required size and electrical characteristics will be provided under Division 22 and 23 for each item of motor-driven equipment as specified in Sections 22500 and 230500. Complete the electrical installation of these motors in accordance with approved wiring diagrams and instructions. Motor feeders and branch circuits conductors shall be copper throughout.

G. Provide the setting and electrical connections for each item of control equipment. Connections shall be made in accordance with approved wiring diagrams and instructions.

H. Provide the correct size heater elements or solid-state overload device settings to protect each motor and allow it to operate based on motor load (full load current) of the actual motor installed in each instance, and ambient temperature experienced on each individual motor.

I. Provide electrical connections to each item of equipment requiring such connections.

J. Final connection shall be made with at least two feet (no more than six feet) of liquid-tight flexible conduit.

K. Where possible, terminate conduits in conduit boxes on motors. Where motors are not provided with conduit boxes, terminate the conduits in condulet fittings at motors.

L. Where disconnect switches are not provided integral with the control equipment for motors, provide disconnect switches required by these Specifications (Refer to Division 22 and 23) and the NEC. Generally, disconnect switches shall be heavy-duty, enclosed, externally operable, horsepower rated switches with voidable cover interlocks of adequate capacity for the duty intended. Each disconnect switch shall be installed as close as possible to the motor or controller it serves (and in no case farther than 50 feet from the motor or controller served), and shall be within sight of the motor or controller served. Use horsepower rated toggle switches for small fractional horsepower motors. Use weatherproof enclosures outdoors and at cooling towers.

M. Service distribution equipment for the building shall be installed a minimum of 2 feet, plus housekeeping curb height, above the established flood level in that area.
   1. Exterior equipment shall have 6-inch concrete curb minimum.
   2. Interior equipment shall have 4-inch concrete curb minimum.

3.3 SALVAGE, DEMOLITION AND RELOCATION

A. General:
   1. Modify, remove, or relocate materials and items indicated on the Drawings or required by the installation of new facilities.
   2. Remove demolition material from the site and deliver salvage materials to destinations on the premises, as directed.

B. Relocations:
   1. Repair and restore to good functional condition, equipment, materials and items scheduled for relocation, which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations.
   2. Remove carefully, in reverse order to original assembly or placement, items which are to be relocated.
   3. Protect items until relocation is complete.
   4. Clean and repair items to be relocated, and provide new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore to good operating order.
   5. Perform the relocation work in accordance with applicable Sections of these Specifications, utilizing skilled workers.

C. Relocating Devices: Remove and reinstall in locations designated by the Architect temperature control system devices, relays, wire, conduit, fixtures, equipment and other devices required for the operation of the various systems that are installed in existing-to-be-removed construction.

3.4 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.

H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
   1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.

I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants.".

J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 TOUCH UP PAINT

A. Equipment: Equipment manufacturer’s paint selected to match installed equipment finish.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Zinc-rich paint recommended by item manufacturer.

C. Non-equipment Surfaces: Match type and color undamaged, existing adjacent finish.

3.9 EDGE GUARD

A. Provide protective trim for exposed and unfinished edges of metal where conductors are subject to damage, to include, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Panelboards
   2. Junction boxes
   3. Switchgear
   4. Disconnect switches
   5. Control cabinets
   6. Mechanical unit
   7. Starters

B. Protective trim shall be:
   1. Vinyl covered.
   2. Bonded to extruded PVC.
   3. Flexible, segmented metal core surrounded by 0.018” thick cold rolled steel.
   4. Smooth finish.
   5. Heat resistance of 150 degrees F for continuous use.
   6. Self-extinguishing.
   7. Equal to Protective Trim products available fro McMaster-Carr under “Protective Bumpers and Trim” section.

3.10 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. The Drawings and Specifications are intended to accomplish certain objectives. These documents do not purport to indicate methods the Contractor is to use in accomplishing the objectives. They show conduit and wire sizes and they describe the various systems. These documents describe and size equipment, its general location, usage, support and auxiliary requirements. They also describe most, but not all, of the materials and their usage for this project.

B. Contract Documents do not, however, detail certain job requirements. In most instances, they do not show exact layouts, locations or elevations of any fixtures, conduits, anchors, sleeves, hangers, slots, holes, outlets, inserts, elbows, or fittings. They do not show final precise location of equipment by dimension in most instances.

C. In general, conduit in finished areas of the building shall be run concealed in chases, walls, floor slabs, furrings, and above suspended ceilings, unless noted or indicated otherwise. Should any condition arise which would cause any conduit to be exposed in finished area, it shall be immediately called to the Architect's attention and correction of the condition shall be made in accordance with the Architect's instruction. Runs of conduit shall be grouped wherever it is feasible to do so. Conduits shall be cut accurately to measurements established at the building and shall be worked into place without springing or forcing.
   1. In unfinished spaces such as equipment rooms, conduit shall be installed parallel to the building plates, shall be run as high as possible, and shall be square to the building and securely supported. A high quality of workmanship is expected.
   2. Conduits shall not be run above grade, outside, exposed on any external walls, or across the roof exposed, without the express written permission of the Architect.
   3. Conduit openings shall be capped during construction until the systems are closed with final connections.

D. The exact location of each item shall be determined by reference to the project Contract Drawings, and to details, equipment drawings, roughing-in drawings, by measurement at the building, and in cooperation with the various trades. In congested spaces (such as below raised floors), Contractor shall develop a special hierarchy to coordinate electrical with other trades. Contact Architect for additional guidance. Minor relocations necessitated by the conditions at the site or directed by the Owner shall be made without additional cost to the Owner.

E. Coordinate proper locations and sizes of slots, holes or openings in the building structure pertaining to this work, and for the correct location of sleeves. Place inserts to accommodate the ultimate installation of hangers in the forms, and set sleeves in forms before concrete is poured, and in masonry walls while they are under construction. Concealed lines shall be installed as required by the pace of the job to precede the general construction.

3.11 EQUIPMENT FOUNDATIONS, HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. For floor-mounted electrical equipment, provide concrete house-keeping pads not less than 3-1/2 inches thick. Construct foundations in accordance with approved shop drawings and not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit. Set equipment in place on concrete pads; level and align prior to making service line connections. Refer to Structural for housekeeping pad construction and reinforcement requirements.

B. Suspended equipment shall have supports consisting of manufactured metal framing or hangers conforming to Section 26 0529. Also provide engineered vibration isolators for suspended transformers.

C. Structural steel stands for support of equipment that is not floor mounted or suspended from overhead structure shall be constructed the same as specified in heavy duty pipe racks in Section 26 0529.

D. Where applicable, concrete foundation pads for outdoor switchgear and transformers shall conform to electrical utility specifications.

3.12 ELECTRICAL WIRING OF MOTORS, ALTERNATORS, AND EQUIPMENT

A. Except as otherwise specified in Division 21, 22, and 23, field wiring of motors and equipment shall be provided under Division 26.

B. See Divisions 21, 22 and 23 Sections for detailed requirements.

C. Conductor terminations to leads shall be properly insulated. Pre-engineered kits shall be used for large apparatus.

3.13 EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Provide equipment furnished under Divisions 21, 22 and 23 and Divisions 26, 27, and 28, and Civil Engineering documents with necessary power, control, and communication wiring utility connections completed to allow safe and proper operation of the equipment.

B. Provide similar complete utility connections for equipment furnished under Divisions 1 through 20, inclusive, by the Owner, or under other contracts, using materials of similar quality to those used in making connections to similar Divisions 21, 22, 23, 26, 27 and 28 equipment with similar finishes.

C. Apply in writing to the Architect for any information needed to complete this work.

3.14 TESTING

A. All pieces of major equipment (electrical panels, switchgear, UPS, inverter, generators, etc.) are to be tested by the installer to verify that they function according to its design objectives and specifications. DISD-M&O representative of the specific trade or discipline shall be present during testing to verify function.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 0519

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
   2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
   3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.

B. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN-THWN or XHHW.

C. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

B. Connectors: Make splices and connections in conductors using UL listed solderless pressure connectors. For all connections up to a maximum of one (1) No. 6 with two (2) No. 8 conductors, use Ideal “Wingnuts” of required sizes. Connections in conductors or combination of conductors larger than described above shall be made using Burndy cable fittings of the type and size required for the specific duty. After splice is securely “made-up”, entire assembly shall be insulated with UL listed insulating tape to a value equivalent to the adjacent insulation. Ground connections shall be made using Burndy ground clamps or connectors of a type suitable and UL listed for duty involved.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

E. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
   1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Feeder and branch circuit conductors rated at 600 volt and below shall be sized to prevent voltage drop values exceeding the limits set forth in the NEC.

B. Care shall be exercised in handling and installing cables to avoid damage. Cables shall be carefully formed in equipment pull boxes and manholes. Bends in cables shall be larger than the minimum radii shown in the cable manufacturer's published data for minimum bends that will not reduce the cable life.

C. MC cable is only allowed for light fixture whips and within millwork where approved by owner in writing. Where used, MC cable must be properly supported per NEC requirements.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
   2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
      a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
      b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
      c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken and observations after remedial action.

B. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
   1. Test procedures used.
   2. Test results that comply with requirements.
   3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 0526

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
   1. Underground distribution grounding.
   2. Common ground bonding with lightning protection system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:
   1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
   2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
   3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
   4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
   5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
   6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
   7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

C. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 inch by 4 inches in cross section, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings; with insulators.

2.2 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
   1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel (or stainless steel in highly corrosive soil); 5/8 inch by 10 feet in length.

B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
   1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
   2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install barecopper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
   1. Bury at least 30 inches below grade.
   2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
   1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch, minimum, from wall 6 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
   1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
   2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
   3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
   4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING OVERHEAD LINES

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Install 3 parallel ground rods if resistance to ground by a single, ground-rod electrode exceeds 25 ohms.

C. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches below finished grade in undisturbed earth.

D. Ground-Rod Connections: Install bolted connectors for underground connections and connections to rods.

E. Lightning Arrester Grounding Conductors: Separate from other grounding conductors.

F. Secondary Neutral and Transformer Enclosure: Interconnect and connect to grounding conductor.

G. Protect grounding conductors running on surface of wood poles with molding extended from grade level up to and through communication service and transformer spaces.

3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields as recommended by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: For all Owner furnished equipment or where required by the utility company. Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
   1. Feeders and branch circuits.
   2. Lighting circuits.
   3. Receptacle circuits.
   4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
   5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
   6. Flexible raceway runs.
   7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.

8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
10. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus.
2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

H. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.

C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
   2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
   1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.

E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
   1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
   2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
   3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
   1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
   2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
   3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.

I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each indicated item, extending around the perimeter of area or item indicated.
   1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
   2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building foundation.

J. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to NFPA 70, using a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
   1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.

2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.

K. Communications Grounding:
1. Telephone: Provide one No. 2 "THW" to ground bus at each telephone equipment room; one No. 2 "THW" to telephone service conduits; and, one No.12 "THW" to conduits terminating at telephone backboards.
2. Communications and Special Systems: Provide one No. 6 "THW" in 1/2-inch conduit from each system ground to nearest ground bus.
3. Fire Alarm Systems: Provide one No.6 "THW" in 1/2-inch conduit from each system ground to nearest ground bus.
4. Television Distribution Systems: Provide one No. 6 "THW" in 1/2-inch conduit from each system ground to nearest ground bus.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
   a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
   b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.

C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

D. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
   2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 26 Section "Vibration Controls For Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Steel slotted support systems.
   2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
   1. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
   2. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
   3. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
   4. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c., in at least 1 surface.
   1. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
   2. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
   3. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.

C. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
   1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for

supported loads and building materials where used. Not approved for light weight concrete or slabs less than six (6) inches thick.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings less than stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps or single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: Conduits or raceways may not be supported by openings through structure members.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.

2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

Thia page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 0533

RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.

C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

D. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.

E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

F. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.

G. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.

H. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

I. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

J. RMC: Rigid metal conduit, galvanized.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Rigid Steel Conduit (RMC): ANSI C80.1, galvanized.

B. IMC: ANSI C80.6.

C. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
   1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
   2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.

D. EMT: ANSI C80.3.

E. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.

F. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.

G. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
   1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
   2. Fittings for EMT: Steel, compression type.
   3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
   4. Fittings for RMC and IMC: Steel, threaded.

H. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. ENT: NEMA TC 13.

B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.

C. LFNC: UL 1660.

D. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material. Provide watertight joints on all underground installations.

E. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS

A. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1 or 3R as applicable, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

C. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless noted otherwise on the drawings.

D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with covers attached with tamper resistant screws. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.

2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Junction and pull boxes 100 cubic inches in volume and smaller shall be standard outlet boxes. Those larger than 100 cubic inches shall be constructed as specified for cabinet construction and shall be furnished with covers. Boxes shall be factory-fabricated from galvanized steel to prevent corrosion.

B. Size boxes in accordance with the requirements of the NEC. Boxes not used for service entrance duty shall be no smaller than 4 inches square and 1-1/2 inches deep with covers accessible at all times. Set boxes on concealed conduits with covers flush with the finished wall or ceiling line. Provide junction and pull boxes of appropriate dimensions for conduits and conductors noted, where shown and where necessary for the installation and pulling of cables and wires. Install covers on junction boxes and condulets after wiring and connections are completed.

C. At each outlet shown provide a box of suitable size and construction. Provide plaster rings, where required, in connection with adjacent plaster finishes. In unfinished masonry walls provide handy boxes of such size as to permit their being completely covered by the device plates. All boxes shall be galvanized steel. Unused knockouts in boxes shall be filled or capped before plates or devices are installed.

D. Ceiling outlets shall be 4-inch square boxes of the appropriate depth, furnished with 3/8-inch fixture studs fastened through from backs of the boxes. For plaster surfaces provide plaster rings and ears.

E. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

F. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

G. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast or sheet metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.

H. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.

I. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

J. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

K. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.

L. Cabinets:
   1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
   2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
   3. Key latch to match panelboards.
   4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
   5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

2.6 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.
   1. Color of Frame and Cover: Gray.
   2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
   4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
   5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
   6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two. Not approved for areas subject to vehicle traffic.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester-resin enclosure joined to polymer-concrete top ring or frame. Not approved for areas subject to vehicle traffic.

D. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers of polymer concrete or fiberglass.

2.7 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.

C. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

2.8 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
   1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
   2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
   3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.9 FLOOR, CEILING AND WALL PLATES

A. In finished areas having ceilings, provide chrome plated, sectional escutcheons on exposed conduits and hanger rods penetrating walls, floors and ceilings.

B. Size escutcheons to fit snugly around conduits and rods and cover completely the openings through which the conduits and rods pass. Hold escutcheons firmly in place with set screws or clamps.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit (RMC).
   2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: Rigid steel conduit (RMC).
   3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried.
   4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
   5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
   6. Application of Handholes and Boxes for Underground Wiring:
      a. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete or fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
      b. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer-concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
      c. Handholes and Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf vertical loading.

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
   2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
   3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit. Includes raceways in the following locations:
      a. Loading dock.
      b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
      c. Mechanical rooms.
   4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
   5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
   6. Damp or Wet Locations: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
   7. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
   8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, nonmetallic in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
   1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
   1. The only conduits that are allowed below the building slab are service conduits from transformer or generator to service distribution equipment. Exceptions may be made for conduits to floor boxes.
   2. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
   3. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.

I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

K. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 36 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

L. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install metallic raceways as follows:
   1. 3/4-Inch Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet.
   2. 1-Inch Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
   3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

M. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
   1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
   2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

N. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
   1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
   2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

O. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.

P. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

Q. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

For systems 600 volts and below:

1. Underground conduits and conduits buried under concrete slabs on the ground shall be PVC conduit, or shall be rigid steel conduit having a protective wrapping. All stubups of PVC conduit runs shall be made with rigid galvanized steel conduit. (Provide corrosion protection where the conduit emerges from the concrete, from 3-inches below top of concrete to 3-inches above.)
2. Metal conduits encased in concrete shall be galvanized rigid steel.
3. Conduits exposed to the weather, and conduits above the roof of the building shall be galvanized rigid steel, having a corrosion-protective coating as specified above.
4. Conduits shall be exposed in mechanical equipment rooms. Where exposed conduits are located at or within five feet (5') of the floor, they shall be galvanized rigid steel conduit or IMC. Other conduits on this project may be rigid, IMC, or EMT as permitted by code.
5. Conduits shall be of such size and so installed that the conductors may be drawn through without injury or excessive strain, shall be secured at cabinets and boxes of all types, with galvanized locknuts, both inside and outside, and shall have appropriate bushings inside. Bushings may be of the insulating type or may be galvanized, unless bushings are used for grounding, in which case they shall be galvanized.
6. Threaded conduits shall be reamed after threading, and shall be kept tightly closed at each end and in dry locations during construction. Conduits shall be swabbed out before the wires are pulled through.
7. **DISD does not allow conduits below the slab.**
8. Conduits piercing roofs shall be placed in position in time to be flashed.
9. Final connections to motors shall be made with 12-inch or longer sections of flexible metal conduit. Flexible metal conduits shall also be employed to effect final connections to recessed lighting fixtures. Flexible metal conduits in damp locations and in mechanical equipment rooms shall be neoprene-jacketed, UL listed watertight, complete with WP connections.
10. Metallic conduits shall be grounded in accordance with the requirements of the NEC.
11. Conduits shall not be installed within 3 inches of hot pipes except where crossings are unavoidable, in which case a clearance of 1 inch is permissible.
12. Provide junction, pull and splice boxes in conduit runs as required by the NEC and elsewhere as required to accommodate installation.
13. All conduits shall have a separate grounding conductor installed in accordance with NEC requirements.
14. Where overhead junction boxes are provided for future extension of wiring or to accommodate tenant needs, identify such boxes as "120-volt workstation clean", "277-volt normal", or "277-volt emergency", etc. with circuit numbers, to facilitate identification and future extensions from the boxes.
15. Provide expansion couplings for all runs crossing building expansion joints. Provide expansion couplings for PVC conduit exposed and subject to temperature variations per Code.
16. Provide flexible liquidtight metallic conduit between all underground conduits stubbed up through slabs and terminations interior to building.

R. PVC telecommunications raceways underground shall be planned and installed with extreme care, especially under the building pad area. Contractor shall prepare large scale plan and profile drawings and pre-determine all bend lengths/radii prior to performing work.

S. Direct-Buried Conduit:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. Backfill shall consist of kiln dried grout sand from three inches below bottom surface of lowest conduit in duct bank to three inches above top surface of highest conduit in duct bank. Sand shall be agitated with vibrator to insure void spaces around conduit are filled. Cement stabilized sand in a flowable fill mixture may be used as an alternative to kiln dried sand. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
   a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
   b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
5. Concrete Cap and Warning Tape: Provide a red concrete cap and warning tape for all service entrance conduits routed underground to warn about electrical lines during drilling or excavation work. Red die shall be throughout the concrete cap, not just painted on top. The concrete cap shall be approximately 3” to 6" high/thick, the width of the conduits, and in the ground approximately 1ft above the conduits. This requirement applies to all underground service conduits, including both the service conduits under the building footprint and the service conduits routed underground on site.
6. Direct-bury conduits that are routed parallel to one another shall be supported with saddles and spacers to insure a minimum of 7.5 inches between conduit centerlines in any direction. For conduits larger than 4 inches in diameter, there shall be a minimum of 3 inches separation from outside wall to outside wall in any direction.
7. Parallel direct-bury conduits shall be evenly spaced and shall maintain spacing through the entire length of the conduits.
8. Minimum cover for conduits shall be as delineated on the drawings, or 2 feet, whichever is greater.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.4 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
   1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
   2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed.

I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.5 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
   1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0553

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Underground-line warning tape.
5. Warning labels and signs.
6. Instruction signs.
7. Equipment identification labels.
8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and IEEE C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER RACEWAY AND CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.

B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
   1. Color scheme to comply with ANSI A13.1 and IECC C2.
   2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

C. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
   1. Black letters on an orange field.
   2. Legend: "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- high letters on 20-inch centers.

D. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

E. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

F. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

G. Tape and Stencil for Raceways Carrying Circuits More Than 600 V: 4-inch- wide black stripes on 10-inch centers diagonally over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.

H. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

2.2 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.

B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

E. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

2.3 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

A. 2-inch- wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

2.4 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

A. Tape:
1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

B. Color and Printing:
1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE,.
3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE,.

C. Type:
1. Pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Thickness: 4 mils.
3. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft..
4. 3-Inch Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf, and 2500 psi.

2.5 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.

C. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

2.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Self-Adhesive or punched for screw mounting, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.
1. Label all service disconnects.
2. Labels shall include voltage, circuit fed by, and name of device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

G. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- high black letters on 20-inch centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply to the following finished surfaces:
   1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
   2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
   3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.

B. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Self-adhesive vinyl or Snap-around labels. Install labels at 10-foot maximum intervals.

C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, and Feeder: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label. Install labels at 30-foot maximum intervals.

D. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
   1. Emergency Power.
   2. Power.
   3. UPS.

E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
   1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
      a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
      b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
         1) Phase A: Black.
         2) Phase B: Red.
         3) Phase C: Blue.
      c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
         1) Phase A: Brown.
         2) Phase B: Orange.
         3) Phase C: Yellow.
      d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

F. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic plastic tag holder with adhesive-backed phase tags, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.

G. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.

H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source.

I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
   1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
   2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
   3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

J. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
   1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
   2. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.

K. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

L. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.
   1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
   2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
   3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
   4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
      a. Power transfer switches.

b. Controls with external control power connections.

M. Arc-Flash & Shock-Hazard Warning Labels
1. Install arc-flash and shock hazard-warning labels that comply with ANSI Z535.4 on switchgear, switchboards, transformers, motor control centers, panelboards, motor controllers, safety switches, industrial control panels, and other electrical equipment that is likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized.
2. Locate the marking to be clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.
3. On renovation projects, install arc-flash warning labels on existing equipment where lock-out/tag-out will be required for the renovation work.
4. Provide the information listed below on each label. Specify that arc-flash warning label information be produced by the electrical equipment manufacturer or supplier as a part of the final power system studies to be submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the electrical acceptance testing.
   a. Arc-Flash Protection Boundary
   b. Arc-flash incident energy calculated in accordance with IEEE Std 1584a™
   c. Working distance calculated in accordance with IEEE Std 1584a™
   d. NFPA 70E Hazard / Risk Category Number or the appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) for operations with doors closed and covers on.
   e. System phase-to-phase voltage
   f. Condition(s) when a shock hazard exists (e.g. “With cover off”)
   g. Limited Approach Boundary as determined from NFPA 70E, Table 130.2(C)
   h. Restricted Approach Boundary as determined from NFPA 70E, Table130.2(C)
   i. Prohibited Approach Boundary as determined from NFPA 70E, Table 130.2(C)
   j. Unique equipment designation or code (described under “Component Identification” below)
   k. Class for insulating gloves based on system voltage (e.g., Class 00 up to 500V)
   l. Voltage rating for insulated or insulating tools based on system voltage (e.g., 1000V)
   m. Date that the hazard analysis was performed.
   n. “Served from” circuit directory information including the serving equipment designation, location (e.g., room number), circuit number, and circuit voltage / number of phases / number of wires.
   o. If applicable, the “serves” circuit directory information including the served equipment designation, location (e.g., room number), circuit number, and circuit voltage / number of phases / number of wires.
5. An abbreviated warning label may be used where it has been determined that no dangerous arc-flash hazard exists in accordance with IEEE 1584a™, paragraph 9.3.2.
6. Use a “DANGER” label where the calculated arc-flash incident energy exceeds 40 cal/cm.

N. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

O. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.

P. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:
   a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive or drilled for screw mounting, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
   b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
   c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
   d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
   a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
   b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
   c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
   d. Switchgear.
   e. Switchboards.
   f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
   g. Substations.
   h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
   i. Motor-control centers.
   j. Enclosed switches.
   k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
   l. Enclosed controllers.
   m. Variable-speed controllers.
   n. Push-button stations.
   o. Power transfer equipment.
   p. Contactors.
   q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
   r. Battery-inverter units.
   s. Battery racks.
   t. Power-generating units.
   u. Monitoring and control equipment.

3.3 DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide a typewritten chart, framed under glass, to correlate identification, abbreviations, equipment numbers, color schemes, and similar information.

B. Provide an overall 1-line power distribution drawing, multi-colored, of the entire electrical distribution system, framed under glass and mounted in each building's main electrical room where directed. Contact architect for color scheme.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 0573

OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes computer-based, fault-current and overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Protective devices shall be set based on results of the protective device coordination study.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Other Action Submittals: Submittals shall be in digital form.
   1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
   2. Study and Equipment Evaluation Reports.
   3. Coordination-Study Report, stamped and signed by the professional engineer performing the study.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are not acceptable.

B. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An entity experienced in the application of computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
   1. Professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, shall be responsible for the study. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of engineer.

C. Comply with IEEE 242 for short-circuit currents and coordination time intervals.

D. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with IEEE 399.

B. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall include "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
   1. Optional Features:
      a. Arcing faults.
      b. Simultaneous faults.
      c. Explicit negative sequence.
      d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. The fault current and overcurrent protection device coordination studies shall be performed and submitted together with shop drawings and other equipment submittals for electrical distribution equipment provided as part of this contract.

B. Shop drawings and submittals for electrical distribution equipment will not be reviewed unless the fault current and overcurrent protection device coordination studies are also included.

C. Provide thermal-magnetic circuit breakers for most applications. Solid state, electronic trip circuit breakers are only to be used where required by the NEC.

3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study:
   1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Division 26 Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
   2. Impedance of utility service entrance.
   3. Electrical Distribution System Diagram: In hard-copy and electronic-copy formats, showing the following:
      a. Circuit-breaker and fuse-current ratings and types.
      b. Relays and associated power and current transformer ratings and ratios.
      c. Transformer kilovolt amperes, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, and X/R ratios.
      d. Generator kilovolt amperes, size, voltage, and source impedance.
      e. Cables: Indicate conduit material, sizes of conductors, conductor material, insulation, and length.
      f. Busway ampacity and impedance.
      g. Motor horsepower and code letter designation according to NEMA MG 1.
   4. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
      a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
      b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
      c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
      d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
      e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
      f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.

g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical.

3.3 FAULT-CURRENT STUDY

A. Calculate the maximum available short-circuit current in amperes rms symmetrical at circuit-breaker positions of the electrical power distribution system. The calculation shall be for a current immediately after initiation and for a three-phase bolted short circuit at each of the following:
1. Switchgear and switchboard bus.
2. Medium-voltage controller.
3. Motor-control center.
4. Distribution panelboard.
5. Branch circuit panelboard.

B. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Include studies of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

C. Calculate momentary and interrupting duties on the basis of maximum available fault current.

D. Calculations to verify interrupting ratings of overcurrent protective devices shall comply with IEEE 141, IEEE 241 and IEEE 242.
1. Transformers:
a. ANSI C57.12.10.
b. ANSI C57.12.22.
c. ANSI C57.12.40.
d. IEEE C57.12.00.
e. IEEE C57.96.
2. Medium-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE C37.010.
3. Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE 1015 and IEEE C37.20.1.
4. Low-Voltage Fuses: IEEE C37.46.

E. Study Report:
1. Show calculated X/R ratios and equipment interrupting rating (1/2-cycle) fault currents on electrical distribution system diagram.
2. Show interrupting (5-cycle) and time-delayed currents (6 cycles and above) on medium-voltage breakers as needed to set relays and assess the sensitivity of overcurrent relays.

F. Equipment Evaluation Report:
1. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
2. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
3. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
4. Show AIC rating conclusions for all equipment and devices.

3.4 COORDINATION STUDY

A. Perform coordination study using approved computer software program. Prepare a written report using results of fault-current study. Comply with IEEE 399.
   1. Calculate the maximum and minimum 1/2-cycle short-circuit currents.
   2. Calculate the maximum and minimum interrupting duty (5 cycles to 2 seconds) short-circuit currents.
   3. Calculate the maximum and minimum ground-fault currents.

B. Comply with IEEE 141, IEEE 241, and IEEE 242 recommendations for fault currents and time intervals.

C. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
   1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
      a. Inrush current when first energized.
      b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
      c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
   2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

D. Motors served by voltages more than 600 V shall be protected according to IEEE 620.

E. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and conductor melting curves in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

F. Coordination-Study Report: Prepare a written report indicating the following results of coordination study:
   1. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:
      a. Device tag.
      b. Relay-current transformer ratios; and tap, time-dial, and instantaneous-pickup values.
      c. Circuit-breaker sensor rating; and long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings.
      d. Fuse-current rating and type.
      e. Ground-fault relay-pickup and time-delay settings.
   2. Coordination Curves: Prepared to determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
      a. Device tag.
      b. Voltage and current ratio for curves.
      c. Three-phase and single-phase damage points for each transformer.
      d. No damage, melting, and clearing curves for fuses.
      e. Cable damage curves.
      f. Transformer inrush points.
      g. Maximum fault-current cutoff point.

G. Completed data sheets for setting of overcurrent protective devices.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0923

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:
   1. Time switches.
   2. Outdoor photoelectric switches.
   3. Indoor occupancy sensors.
   4. Lighting contactors.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 26 Sections “Modular Dimming Controls" for architectural dimming system equipment.
   2. Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls" for low-voltage, manual and programmable lighting control systems.
   3. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. LED: Light-emitting diode.

B. PIR: Passive infrared.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device.

C. Shop Drawing Requirements:
   1. Submit shop drawings of each reflected ceiling plan in the project showing the specific locations of all parts of the lighting control system including motion sensors, photocells, smart switches, room controllers, enhanced building controls (only if required), etc. Motion sensors are to include sensor type, sensor mounting, and other pertinent data to allow evaluation of the proposed system.
   2. Submit wiring diagram of all motion sensors, photocells, smart switches, room controllers, etc.
   3. Submit a sequence of operations for each unique space type describing the function of each button on each switch and the effects on the lighting in the space. This sequence of operations is to follow the Owner’s standard sequences (if any) with the added information describing how the lighting control system pieces/parts work together.
   4. Submit a list of switch types with a list of proposed button labels. This list is to be similar to the button information on lighting control drawings with added information showing switch button layouts and actual labels for this project.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

B. Third Party Commissioning Contractor Requirements:
   1. Attend commissioning meetings as requested by DISD's commissioning provider.
   2. Complete and return any commissioning checklists prior to functional testing.
   3. Provide a service technician or programmer that is knowledgeable of the project requirements to assist the commissioning provider during functional testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

A. Electronic Time Switches: Electronic, solid-state programmable units with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
   1. Contact Configuration: DPST.
   2. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac, 20-A ballast load, 120/240-V ac.
   3. Program: 2 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
   4. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
   5. Astronomic Time: All channels.
   6. Battery Backup: For schedules and time clock.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Description: Solid state, with DPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA to operate connected load, relay, or contactor coils; complying with UL 773.
   1. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
   2. Time Delay: 30-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
   3. Lightning Arrester: Air-gap type.
   4. Mounting: Twist lock complying with IEEE C136.10, with base.

2.3 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Acuity Brands
   2. Douglas Lighting Controls

B. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, solid-state units with a separate relay unit.
   1. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when covered area is occupied and off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum

range of 1 to 20 minutes. Set time to 20 minutes or local code, whichever is more stringent. Set sensors between 1 and 5 minutes for testing.

2. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
3. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
4. Mounting:
   a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
   b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
   c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
5. Coverage: Sensors shall have masking or internal shielding to control coverage pattern in the field. Stickers or other adhesive masking are not allowed.
6. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.

C. Dual-Technology Type: Only dual-technology sensors are allowed for DISD projects. Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on-off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.

D. Refer to Section 26 2726 for integral wall-mounted sensor/switches.

2.4 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Douglas Lighting Controls.
2. Acuity Brands.

B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination type with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
4. Provide with control and pilot devices as scheduled, but at a minimum provide auxiliary contacts, HOA switch, and pilot lights. Control devices shall match the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

C. BAS Interface: Provide hardware interface to enable the BAS to monitor and control lighting contactors.

1. Monitoring: On-off status.
2. Control: On-off operation.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors properly sized to meet NEC requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors properly sized to meet NEC requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. The locations and quantities of sensors shown on the drawings are diagrammatic and indicate only rooms that are to be provided with sensors. Provide additional sensors if required to cover the respective room properly and completely. Ensure the best possible installation in the available space and to overcome local difficulties due to space limitations or interference of structural components.

B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

C. In the event of a hardware or software or component failure, the lighting in the space is to default to the “on” position.

D. Locate the room controller above the lay-in ceiling above the switches near the exit door. Provide a permanent label on the lay-in ceiling grid to identify its location. The label shall say “lighting controller”.

3.2 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads, to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
   1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
   2. Identify circuits or luminaries controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

C. All programmable switches are to be engraved or permanently labeled during manufacturing so that the function of each switch is clearly identified. All labeling or engraving shall be of high quality and provided by the lighting control manufacturer.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
   2. Operational Test: Verify operation of each lighting control device, and adjust time delays.

B. Lighting control devices that fail tests and inspections are defective work.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls."

B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 0936

MODULAR DIMMING CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Manual modular dimming controls.
   2. Integrated, multipreset modular dimming controls.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Fade Rate: The time it takes each zone to arrive at the next scene, dependent on the degree of change in lighting level.

B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.

C. Scene: The lighting effect created by adjusting several zones of lighting to the desired intensity.

D. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

E. Zone: A fixture or group of fixtures controlled simultaneously as a single entity. Also known as a "channel."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   1. For modular dimming controls; include elevation, dimensions, features, characteristics, ratings, and labels.
   2. Device plates and plate color and material.
   3. Ballasts and lamp combinations compatible with dimmers.
   4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

B. Shop Drawing Requirements:
   1. Submit shop drawings of each reflected ceiling plan in the project showing the specific locations of all parts of the lighting control system including motion sensors, photocells, smart switches, room controllers, enhanced building controls (only if required), etc. Motion sensors are to include sensor type, sensor mounting, and other pertinent data to allow evaluation of the proposed system.
   2. Submit wiring diagram of all motion sensors, photocells, smart switches, room controllers, etc.
   3. Submit a sequence of operations for each unique space type describing the function of each button on each switch and the effects on the lighting in the space. This sequence of operations is to follow the Owner’s standard sequences (if any) with the added information describing how the lighting control system pieces/parts work together.

4. Submit a list of switch types with a list of proposed button labels. This list is to be similar to the button information on lighting control drawings with added information showing switch button layouts and actual labels for this project.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of devices specified in this Section with systems and components specified in other Sections to form an integrated system of compatible components. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions. Include coordination with the following:
   1. Division 26 Section "Lighting Control Devices."

B. Third Party Commissioning Contractor Requirements:
   1. Attend commissioning meetings as requested by DISD's commissioning provider.
   2. Complete and return any commissioning checklists prior to functional testing.
   3. Provide a service technician or programmer that is knowledgeable of the project requirements to assist the commissioning provider during functional testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL DIMMING DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Dimming control components shall be compatible with other elements of lighting fixtures, ballasts, transformers, and lighting controls.

B. Dimmers and Dimmer Modules: Comply with UL 508.
   1. Audible Noise and Radio-Frequency Interference Suppression: Solid-state dimmers shall operate smoothly over their operating ranges without audible lamp or dimmer noise or radio-frequency interference. Modules shall include integral or external filters to suppress audible noise and radio-frequency interference.
   2. Dimmer or Dimmer-Module Rating: Not less than 125 percent of connected load unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MANUAL MODULAR MULTISCENE DIMMING CONTROLS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Acuity Brands.
   2. Douglas Lighting Controls.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated equipment providing manual modular dimming control consisting of a wall-box-mounted, master-scene controller and indicated number of wall-box zone stations. Controls and dimmers shall be integrated for mounting in one-, two-, or three-gang wall box under a single wall plate. Each zone station shall be adjustable to indicated number of scenes, which shall be recorded on the zone controller.

C. Operation: Automatically change variable dimmer settings of indicated number of zones simultaneously from one preset scene to another when a push button is operated.

D. Each manual modular multiscene dimming controller shall include a master control and remote controls.

E. Each zone shall be configurable to control the following:
   1. LED sources and electronic drivers.

F. Memory: Retain preset scenes through power failures for at least seven days.

G. Device Plates: Style, material, and color shall comply with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."

H. Master-Scene Controller: Suitable for mounting in a single flush wall box.
   1. Switches: Master off, group dim, group bright, and selectors for each scene.
   2. LED indicator lights, one associated with each scene switch, and one for the master off switch.

I. LED Zone Dimmer: Suitable for operating lighting fixtures and ballasts/drivers specified in Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting," and arranged to dim number of scenes indicated for the master-scene controller. Scene selection is at the master-scene controller for setting light levels of each zone associated with scene.
   1. Switch: Rocker style for setting the light level for each scene.
   2. LED indicator lights, one associated with each scene.
   3. Electrical Rating: 2000 VA, 120 V.

2.3 INTEGRATED, MULTIPRESET MODULAR DIMMING CONTROLS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Acuity Brands.
   2. Douglas Lighting Controls.

B. Indicate number of wall-box, remote-control stations.

C. Description: Factory-fabricated, microprocessor-based, solid-state controls providing manual dimming control consisting of a master station and multiple wall-box, remote-control stations.

D. Operation: Automatically changes variable dimmer settings of indicated number of zones simultaneously from one preset scene to another when a push button is operated.

E. Each zone shall be configurable to control the following:
   1. LED sources and electronic drivers.

F. Memory: Retain preset scenes and fade settings through power failures by retaining physical settings of controls.

G. Master Station:
   1. Contains control panel and multiple control and dimmer modules.
   2. Controls and commands adjustment of each dimmer-zone setting for each scene change from one preset scene to another.
      a. Master zone raises and lowers lighting level.
      b. Adjustable fade rate for each scene from 1 to 60 seconds.
   3. Rear-illuminated, scene-select buttons.

4. Lighting-level setting and fade-rate setting shall be graphically shown using LEDs or backlighted bar-graph indicator.
5. Mounting: Flush wall box with manufacturer's standard faceplate.

H. Remote-Control Stations:
1. Numbered push buttons to select scenes.
2. Off switch to turn master station off.
3. On switch turns all scenes of master station to full bright.
4. Control Wiring: NFPA 70, Class 2.
5. Mounting: Single flush wall box with manufacturer's standard faceplate.

I. Infrared Remote-Control Station: Same functions as for standard remote-control station, except that functions are input by a hand-held infrared transmitter.

J. Dimmers: Modular, plug-in type, with circuit breaker to protect the dimmer and branch circuit.
1. Dimming Circuit: Two SCR dimmers, in inverse parallel configuration.
2. Dimming Curve: Modified "square law" as specified in IESNA's "IESNA Lighting Handbook"; control voltage is 0- to 10-V dc.
3. Dimming Range: 0 to 100 percent, full output voltage not less than 98 percent of line voltage.
4. Voltage Regulation: Dimmer shall maintain a constant light level, with no visible flicker, when the source voltage varies plus or minus 2 percent in RMS voltage.
5. Short-Circuit Rating: 10 kA for 120 V or 14 kA for 277 V.

2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Class 2 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors properly sized to meet NEC requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identifying components and power and control wiring.

B. Label each dimmer module with a unique designation.

C. Label each scene control button with approved scene description.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Continuity tests of circuits.
   2. Operational Test: Set and operate controls to demonstrate their functions and capabilities in a methodical sequence that cues and reproduces actual operating functions.
      a. Include testing of modular dimming control equipment under conditions that simulate actual operational conditions. Record control settings, operations, cues, and functional observations.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning modular dimming control components and retest as specified above.

D. Test Labeling: After satisfactory completion of tests and inspections, apply a label to tested components indicating test results, date, and responsible agency and representative.

E. Reports: Written reports of tests and observations. Record defective materials and workmanship and unsatisfactory test results. Record repairs and adjustments.

F. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain modular dimming controls.

B. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 0943

NETWORK LIGHTING CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes manually operated, PC-based, digital lighting controls with relays and control module.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 26 Section "Lighting Control Devices" for time switches, photoelectric switches, occupancy sensors, and multipole contactors.
   2. Division 26 Section "Modular Dimming Controls" for dimming control components.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BACnet: A networking communication protocol that complies with ASHRAE 135.

B. BAS: Building automation system.

C. LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.

D. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.

E. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.

F. PC: Personal computer; sometimes plural as "PCs."

G. Power Line Carrier: Use of radio-frequency energy to transmit information over transmission lines whose primary purpose is the transmission of power.

H. RS-485: A serial network protocol, similar to RS-232, complying with TIA/EIA-485-A.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For control modules, power distribution components, manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail assemblies of standard components, custom assembled for specific application on this Project.
   1. Narrative Description: Written description outlining the sequence of operations for each space type.

2. Outline Drawings: Indicate dimensions, weights, arrangement of components, and clearance and access requirements.
3. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with a block diagram.

C. Shop Drawing Requirements:
1. Submit shop drawings of each reflected ceiling plan in the project showing the specific locations of all parts of the lighting control system including motion sensors, photocells, smart switches, room controllers, enhanced building controls (only if required), etc. Motion sensors are to include sensor type, sensor mounting, and other pertinent data to allow evaluation of the proposed system.
2. Submit wiring diagram of all motion sensors, photocells, smart switches, room controllers, etc.
3. Submit a sequence of operations for each unique space type describing the function of each button on each switch and the effects on the lighting in the space. This sequence of operations is to follow the Owner's standard sequences (if any) with the added information describing how the lighting control system pieces/parts work together.
4. Submit a list of switch types with a list of proposed button labels. This list is to be similar to the button information on lighting control drawings with added information showing switch button layouts and actual labels for this project.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain lighting control module and power distribution components through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with 47 CFR, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.

D. Comply with protocol described in IEC 60929, Annex E, for DALI lighting control devices, wiring, and computer hardware and software.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate lighting control components to form an integrated interconnection of compatible components.
1. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of lighting control functions.
2. Coordinate lighting controls with BAS. Design display graphics showing building areas controlled; include the status of lighting controls in each area.
3. Coordinate lighting controls with that in Sections specifying distribution components that are monitored or controlled by power monitoring and control equipment.

B. Coordinate lighting control components specified in this Section with components specified in Division 26 Section "Panelboards."

C. Third Party Commissioning Contractor Requirements:
   1. Attend commissioning meetings as requested by DISD's commissioning provider.
   2. Complete and return any commissioning checklists prior to functional testing.
   3. Provide a service technician or programmer that is knowledgeable of the project requirements to assist the commissioning provider during functional testing.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of network lighting controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified below.
   1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
      a. All components: Parts and labor for two years.
      b. Damage from transient voltage surges: Parts and labor for eight years.
      c. Electrically held relays: Parts and labor for ten years.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Electrically Held Relays: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size indicated, but no fewer than 10 relays.

1.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revise licenses for use of the software.
   1. Provide 30-day notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment, if necessary.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Douglas Lighting Controls
   2. Acuity nLight.

2.2 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. System shall be a complete modular low-voltage switching platform for use as a stand alone with an internal microprocessor based network clock capable but not limited to ON/OFF manual control, ON/OFF scheduled control, astronomic and photocontrol interface that can be assigned to individual/multiple channels.

B. Expandability: System shall be capable of increasing the number of control functions in the future by 25 percent of current capacity; to include equipment ratings, housing capacities, spare relays, terminals, number of conductors in control cables, and control software.

C. Performance Requirements: Manual switches, an internal timing and control unit, and external sensors or other control signal sources send a signal to a PC-based programmable-system control module that processes the signal according to its programming and routes an open or close command to one or more relays in the power-supply circuits, or routes variable commands to one or more dimmers, for groups of lighting fixtures or other loads.

2.3 CONTROL MODULE

A. Control Module Description: Comply with UL 508 (CSA C22.2, No. 14); microprocessor-based, programmable, control unit; mounted in preassembled, modular relay panel. Low-voltage-controlled, latching-type, single-pole lighting circuit relays shall be prime output circuit devices. Where indicated, a limited number of digital or analog, low-voltage control-circuit outputs shall be supported by control unit and circuit boards associated with relays. Control units shall be capable of receiving inputs from sensors and other sources. Line-voltage components and wiring shall be separated from low-voltage components and wiring by barriers. Control module shall be locally programmable.

B. Automation - Network Clock:
   1. Network Clock can be used to schedule any of the 8 global channel groups in the relay panel network.
   2. Network shall include user-selectable intelligent scenarios to handle standard lighting control functions for each channel independently, including:
      a. Schedule ON / Schedule OFF
      b. Manual ON / Schedule OFF
      c. Astronomical ON / Astronomical OFF (with user selectable offsets)
      d. Astronomical ON / Schedule OFF (with user selectable offsets)
      e. Manual ON / Multiple OFF Sweeps using Automatic Control Switch
   3. Network Clock shall automatically detect the presence of a dataline Photocontrol Module and alter the Astronomic scenarios to Dark, accepting actual light level readings for the following scenarios:
      a. Dark ON / Dark OFF
      b. Dark ON / Schedule OFF
   4. Each channel can be assigned a standard time delay from 1-240 minutes (4 hours). During Occupied hours, the time delays do not take effect. During Unoccupied hours, the time delays will ensure that overridden lights are automatically turned off.
   5. Each channel can be assigned an automatic blinking of the lights before they are turned off to allow occupants the opportunity to enter an override without being put in the dark.
   6. Network Clock shall include system diagnostic functions to identify devices anywhere on the network dataline.
   7. Clear 8-line, 22-character per line display and a simple user interface.
   8. Takes into account leap year, daylight savings time, and holidays.
   9. Provides system diagnostics for all components connected to the system.
   10. Allows the user to plug into each dataline switch, run diagnostics, and reprogram the switch to any relay or channel.
   11. Retains memory and time for a minimum of 10 years.
   12. Provide network controller capable of being programmed/re-programmed via PC software. Controller to be capable of receiving input via contact closure, user PC software, fire alarm control panel, etc. and issuing building-wide commands to enable/disable a scene at all luminaires inside and outside of the building.
   13. Include astronomical time clock capable of seven (7) different day types per week, automatic holiday “shutoff” feature for 24-hours, 12-hour minimum program backup capabilities or to meet code, whichever is greater.
   14. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) BACnet/IP listed capable of future communication with EMCS.

2.4 POWER DISTRIBUTION COMPONENTS

A. Modular Relay Panel: Comply with UL 508 (CSA C22.2, No. 14) and UL 916 (CSA C22.2, No. 205); factory assembled with modular single-pole relays, power supplies, and accessory components required for specified performance.
   1. Cabinet: Steel with hinged, locking door.
      a. Barriers separate low-voltage and line-voltage components.
      b. Directory: Mounted on back of door. Identifies each relay as to load groups controlled and each programmed pilot device if any.
      c. Control Power Supply: Transformer and full-wave rectifier with filtered dc output.
   2. Single-Pole Relays: Mechanically held unless otherwise indicated; split-coil, momentary-pulsed type.
      a. Low-Voltage Leads: Plug connector to the connector strip in cabinet and pilot light power where indicated.
      b. Rated Capacity (Mounted in Relay Panel): 20 A, 125-V ac for tungsten filaments; 20 A, 277-V ac for ballasts.
      c. Endurance: 50,000 cycles at rated capacity.
   3. Mounting: Provision for easy removal and installation in relay cabinet. Channels: Eight channels for grouping relays shall be provided in each interior regardless of size, each with a terminal block for a separate dry contact input. Any number of relays in the panel can be assigned to each channel, with overlapping allowed. Channels shall be set up without hand held programmer or keypads. Systems that require programmers or keypads, or that change relay states during set up, are not acceptable.
   4. Power Supply: Two separate 40 VA transformers in one power supply assembly shall be provided. Systems requiring a separate pilot light transformer circuit will not be acceptable. Transformers include internal overcurrent protection with automatic reset and metal oxide varistor protection against power line spikes.
   5. Network Dataline
      a. The intelligence in multiple panels shall be linked over a single dataline that uses the open Echelon/LonTalk® protocol for communications. The dataline shall not require any ancillary equipment to function properly. Capable of future communication with EMCS using BACnet/IP.
      b. The dataline, in addition to linking together multiple relay panels, shall be capable of providing a single communications bus to allow dataline switches to communicate with the panels.
      c. Dataline shall be 18 AWG, 4 unshielded copper conductors (two independent twisted pairs) meeting Class 2P NEC code requirements. The dataline can be run in a loop, serial, or star configuration.
      d. Maximum length for all dataline wire in the system is 1,500 feet without repeaters.
      e. Maximum number of dataline devices is 64 without a repeater.

2.5 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary-contact, low-voltage type.
   1. Match color specified in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."
   2. Integral green LED pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
   3. Internal white LED locator light to illuminate when circuit is off.

B. Manual, Maintained Contact, Full- or Low-Voltage Switch: Comply with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."

C. Wall-Box Dimmers: Comply with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."

D. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."

E. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG, complying with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors of an AWG recommended by the manufacturer, complying with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors of an AWG recommended by the manufacturer, complying with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Digital and Multiplexed Signal Cables: Unshielded, twisted-pair cable with copper conductors, complying with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e or 6, as recommended by the manufacturer, for horizontal copper cable and with Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceways. Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Install field-mounting transient voltage suppressors for lighting control devices in Category A locations that do not have integral line-voltage surge protection.

E. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in terminal cabinets, equipment enclosures, and in junction, pull, and outlet boxes.

G. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.2 COORDINATION WITH DRAWINGS

A. Refer to the project drawings for additional requirements related to network lighting controls.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. Test for circuit continuity.
   2. Verify that the control module features are operational.
   3. Check operation of local override controls.
   4. Test system diagnostics by simulating improper operation of several components selected by Architect.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect or engineer as needed.

3.4 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION

A. Install and program software with initial settings of adjustable values. Make backup copies of software and user-supplied values. Provide current licenses for software.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting controls and software training for PC-based control systems. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 2416

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Distribution panelboards.
   2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment
   1. Detail short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
   2. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:
   1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
   2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
      a. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 23 deg F or more than plus 104 deg F.
      b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
   1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
   2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Architect no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's written permission.
   3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

A. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets.
   1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
      a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
      b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
      c. Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
      d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
      e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.

2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
6. Finishes:
   a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
   b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
7. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

B. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
3. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.

C. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type.
4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
6. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
7. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

D. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

E. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

F. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

G. Refer to drawings and Sections 263533 and 264313 for related power factor correction and surge protection devices, externally mounted from distribution equipment.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric (GE) products by ABB.
3. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
   1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

D. Mains: Circuit breaker or main lugs only, as scheduled on the Drawings.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for all Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

G. Main Power Panel Meters
   1. Refer to specification section 26 2713 “Electrical Metering.”

H. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
   1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   2. General Electric (GE) products by ABB.
   3. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Mains: As scheduled on the Drawings.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
   1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.

F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   2. General Electric (GE) products by ABB.
   3. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
   1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Solid state Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing are only to be used where required by the NEC; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
   a. Instantaneous trip.
   b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
   c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
   d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
3. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
4. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
5. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
   a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
   b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
   c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
   d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
   e. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
   f. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at percent of rated voltage.
   g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
   h. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
   i. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
   j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
   k. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
   l. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
   m. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
   n. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
   1. Fuses, and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."
   2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories: Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
   3. Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
2. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

D. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

G. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from flush mounted panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

H. After all equipment has been connected, measure loads of each bus. Then adjust branch circuit connections to balance load on each panel to maintain less than 15% difference between phases.

I. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

J. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems." Label service disconnecting devices.

E. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment with one or more disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

C. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

E. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 2713

ELECTRICAL METERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes electricity metering for compliance with building performance assessment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. KY or KYZ Pulse: Term used by the metering industry to describe a method of measuring consumption of electricity (kWh) that is based on a relay opening and closing in response to the rotation of the disk in the meter. Electronic meters generate pulses electronically.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. For each type of meter.
   2. For metering infrastructure components.

B. Shop Drawings: For electricity-metering equipment.
   1. Include elevation views of front panels of control and indicating devices and control stations.
   2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
   3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
   4. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Submit evidence that meters are compatible with connected Building Management System (BMS).

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Contractor and Owner shall be notified and issued written permission no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, or electrical metering that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified below.
   1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
      a. All components: Parts and labor for two years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 916.

2.2 ELECTRICITY METERS

A. System Description: Able to meter designated activity loads, with or without external alarm, control, and communication capabilities, or other optional features.

B. Basis-of-Design-Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on drawings, or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Eaton Electrical Inc.
   2. E-Mon.
   3. General Electric Company.
   4. Square D.

(Note to Spec Writer: The following products are used in specific applications. You should choose one of the two options here.)

(Note to Spec Writer – These meters do not have data logging capability, which is required to meet LEED points. You must coordinate this with the BMS specification to ensure the BMS has that data logging.)

[NOTE TO SPEC WRITER: Update meter model numbers to Square D for DISD projects]

C. Main Power Panel Meters
   1. Metering device applied to a Switchboard or Distribution Panelboard for continuous energy measurement of main incoming power. Square D, or equal.
      a. Meets ANSI C12.20 and IEC 687 Class 0.2 accuracy classification for KWh measurement.
      b. KW, KWh, PF, KVaR, KVaRh, %THD, V, and A measurement. Alarm notification for loss of power.
      c. Refer to drawings for voltage and ampacity.
      d. Modbus or Ethernet communications. Must have full communications capability with the building management system installed on the project. Refer to HVAC drawings for additional information.
      e. Full digital, LED display.
      f. Mounting within distribution equipment enclosure or mounted in separate, enclosure next to distribution equipment.
   2. Metering device applied to a lighting panelboard for continuous energy measurement of main incoming power. Square D, or equal.
      a. Meets ANSI C12.20 and IEC 687 Class 0.5 accuracy classification for KWh measurement.
      b. KW, KWh, PF, KVaR, KVaRh, V, and A measurement. Alarm notification for loss of power.
      c. Refer to drawings for voltage and ampacity.
      d. Modbus communications. Must have full communications capability with the building management system installed on the project. Refer to HVAC drawings for additional information.
      e. Full digital, LCD display.
      f. Mounting within distribution equipment enclosure or mounted in separate, enclosure next to distribution equipment.

D. Branch Circuit Meters
   1. Metering device applied to a Switchboard or Distribution Panel board for continuous energy measurement of individual branch circuit loads. Square D, or equal.
      a. Meets ANSI C12.20 and IEC 687 Class 0.5 accuracy classification for KWh measurement.
      b. KW, KWh, KVaR, PF, V, and A measurement.
      c. Refer to drawings for voltage and ampacity.
      d. Modbus communications. Must have full communications capability with the building management system installed on the project. Refer to HVAC drawings for additional information.
      e. Full digital, LCD display.
      f. Mounting within Switchboard enclosure or mounted in separate, enclosure next to Switchboard.
      g. Separate, external enclosure for Distribution Panelboard.
   2. Metering device mounted within lighting panelboard enclosure for continuous energy measurement of individual branch circuit loads. Square D, or equal.
      a. Meets ANSI C12.20 and IEC 687 Class 1.0 accuracy classification for KWh measurement.
      b. KW, KWh, PF, V, and A measurement.
      c. Refer to drawings for voltage and ampacity.

d. Modbus communications. Must have full communications capability with the building management system installed on the project. Refer to HVAC drawings for additional information.
e. Mounting within lighting panelboard enclosure.

E. Data Transmission Cable: Comply with requirements of the product selected and the BMS system that will receive the meter data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method:
1. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
2. Install cable for control and signal transmission conductors, complying with manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Series Combination Warning Label: Self-adhesive labels, with text as required by NFPA 70.
2. Equipment Identification Labels: Self-adhesive labels with clear protective overlay.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's personnel to use, adjust, operate, and maintain the electronic metering set-up.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 2726

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Twist-locking receptacles.
3. Wall-box motion sensors.
4. Snap switches.
5. Wall-switch.
6. Floor boxes, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

E. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
   1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
   2. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
   3. Legrand/Pass & Seymour; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).
   4. Arrow-Hart: Cooper Industries

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A, unless noted otherwise on Drawings: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, WC596 and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
      b. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
      c. Pass & Seymour; 5361 (single), CRB5362 (duplex).
      d. Arrow-Hart; 5351 (single), 5362 (duplex)

B. Plug load half-controlled receptacles, 125 V, 20A, unless noted otherwise on Drawings: Receptacle should be permanently marked with the universally recognized power symbol shown in NEC. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, WC596 and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Leviton; 5352-1PW
      b. Pass & Seymour; 5362CH
      c. Hubbell BR20C1

C. Plug load full-controlled receptacles, 125 V, 20A, unless noted otherwise on Drawings: Receptacle should be permanently marked with the universally recognized power symbol shown in NEC. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, WC596 and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Leviton; 5352-2PW
      b. Pass & Seymour; 5362CD
      c. Hubbell BR20C2

D. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A, unless noted otherwise on Drawings: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, WC596 and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; HBL8300SG.
      b. Leviton; MT5632
      c. Pass & Seymour; TR5362.
      d. Arrow-Hart; TR5362
   2. Description: Labeled to comply with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, WC596, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that designates when device is tripped. Must have self-test feature (conducts and automatic test every three seconds) ensuring ground fault protection. If ground fault protection is compromised power to the receptacle must be discontinued.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A, WC596, unless noted otherwise on Drawings:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell GFRST20
      b. Leviton GFNT2-W
      c. Pass & Seymour; 2097.
      d. Arrow-Hart; SGF20

C. Blank Face GFCI devices, 125V, 20A: Faceless GFCI device intended to protect downstream receptacles; Leviton 7590, or equal.

2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; HBL2310.
      b. Leviton; 2310.
      c. Pass & Seymour; L520-R.
      d. Arrow-Hart; CWL520R

2.5 SNAP SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, WC-896 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; HBL1221 (single pole), HBL1222 (two pole), HBL1223 (three way), HBL1224 (four way).
      b. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
      c. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1 (single pole), PS20AC2 (two pole), PS20AC3 (three way), PS20AC4 (four way).
      d. Arrow-Hart; AH1221 (single pole), AH1222 (two pole), AH1223 (three way), AH1224 (four way)

C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; HBL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
      b. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
      c. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-RPL for 120 V, PS20AC1-RPL7 for 277V.
      d. Arrow-Hart; AH1221PL for 120 V and 277 V
   2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

D. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; HBL1221L.
      b. Leviton; 1221-2L.
      c. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-L.
      d. Arrow-Hart; AH1221L
   2. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

E. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; HBL1557.
      b. Leviton; 1257.
      c. Pass & Seymour; 1251.
      d. Arrow-Hart; 1995B

F. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Cooper; 1995L.
      b. Hubbell; HBL1557L.
      c. Leviton; 1257L.
      d. Pass & Seymour; 1251L.

2.6 FAN SPEED CONTROLS

A. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.
   1. Continuously adjustable rotary knob, 5A.
   2. Three-speed adjustable rotary knob, 1.5 A.

2.7 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall-Switch Sensors:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; WS1277.
      b. Leviton; ODS 10-ID.
      c. Pass & Seymour; WSP250.
      d. Watt Stopper (The); WS301.
      e. Arrow-Hart; 6119V
   2. Description: Dual technology type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft.
   3. Provide single or dual level control as indicated on the drawings.

B. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
   1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; ATP1600WRP.
      b. Leviton; ODWWV-IRW.
      c. Pass & Seymour; HS1001.
      d. Watt Stopper (The); CX-100.
   3. Description: Dual technology type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft..

C. Wide-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
   1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Hubbell; ATP120HBRP.
      b. Leviton; ODWHB-IRW.
      c. Pass & Seymour; WA1001.
      d. Watt Stopper (The); CX-100-3.

3. Description: Dual technology type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 150-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft..

2.8 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
   1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
   2. Material: Smooth, 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished stainless steel.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant , die-cast aluminum with metal in use lockable cover.

2.9 FLOOR BOXES

A. Standard Floor Box: Floor box shall be two-gang with removable dividers. Each single-gang shall accommodate a duplex receptacle or two communication services. Unit shall be adjustable before and after pour. For on-grade application, floor box shall be cast iron. For above grade application, unit shall be stamped steel. Box shall have standard conduit tapping of ¾" and a maximum conduit tapping of 1-1/4". Coverplates shall be per Architect - Steel City 640/740 series or equal.

B. Four (4) Device Combination Box: Floor Box shall have four independent wiring compartments. Each compartment shall be able to accommodate a duplex receptacle or four communication services. Unit shall be fully adjustable before and after pour. For above grade application, floor box shall be stamped steel. Activation compartment shall be flushed, recessed with carpet flange, hinged access plate, and retractable exit. Provide mounting brackets, plates, wiring, and devices as indicated on the Drawings. Walker RFB4 or approved equal.

C. High Capacity Combination Floor Box: Floor box shall have minimum six (6) wiring compartments. Each compartment shall be able to accommodate a duplex receptacle or two communication services. Unit shall be fully adjustable before and after pour. For on-grade application, floor box shall be cast iron (stamped steel with vapor barrier is not acceptable). For above grade application, floor box shall be stamped steel. Activation compartment shall be flushed, recessed with carpet flange, hinged access plate and retractable exit. Provide mounting brackets, plates and wiring devices as indicated on the Drawings. Hubbell LCFB or equal.

D. Refer to drawings for detailed description of floor boxes and architectural/structural conditions. Contractor shall ensure specified floor boxes can support the proposed tele/data outlets provided by the technology design.

2.10 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
   2. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories.
   3. Wiremold Company (The).

B. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service outlet assembly.
   1. Service Outlet Assembly: Flush type with two simplex receptacles and space for two RJ-45 jacks. Contractor shall ensure specified floor boxes can support the proposed tele/data outlets provided by the technology design.

2. Size: Selected to fit nominal 3-inch cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
3. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
4. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 3-inch cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
5. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 5e voice and data communication cables.
6. Standard poke-through device shall be Wiremold/Walker RC4 or equal.
7. Standard poke-through furniture feed shall be Wiremold/Walker RC900-AM or equal.

2.11 MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Legrand.

B. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

C. Raceway Material: Legrand 2400D, or equal.

D. Wire: No. 12 AWG.

2.12 FINISHES

A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color. Provide wiring devices and wall plates in colors selected by the architect.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:
1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:
1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
   a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
   b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.

c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:
1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Modular devices are permitted for use. Modular connectors shall be UL listed and contain crimped and welded brass connections. Modular receptacles shall be listed to UL498 and WC-596G. Modular switches shall be listed to UL20 and WC-896.
7. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
8. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
9. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
10. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

J. Wall switches, unless noted otherwise, shall be mounted 48" above finished floor.

K. Receptacles shall be mounted per A.D.A. height, above finished floor, except where heights are specifically called out on the Drawings. Receptacles above countertops in toilet rooms, dressing rooms, reception areas, and food service areas shall be mounted 6 inches (to center) above countertops or backsplashes, if not indicated otherwise on architectural details.

L. Where signal, communications, data and control outlets are indicated adjacent to 115 volt or 230 volt convenience outlets, mount these outlets in a symmetrical pattern.

M. If the outlets are normally mounted adjacent to each other throughout this project, they shall be mounted on 10 inch centers with the tops of the boxes at the same elevation. If one outlet is

mounted adjacent to the floor, and the second outlet mounted adjacent to the ceiling, these outlets shall be lined up vertically whether so shown or not, in order to form a symmetrical pattern on the wall.

N. Use blank face GFCI devices where the required location of receptacle will not allow proper access for testing and operation. Install blank face GFCI device to meet accessibility standards.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
   1. Receptacles: Identify voltage, panelboard, and circuit number from which served. Use hot stamped or engraved machine writing with black lettering attached to inside of outlet box.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
   2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
   3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
   1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
   2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
   3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
   4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
   5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
   6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 2813
FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches, panelboards, switchboards, enclosed controllers and motor-control centers.
   2. Plug fuses rated 125-V ac and less for use in plug-fuse-type enclosed switches.
   3. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
   1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
      a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
      b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
   2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
   3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
   4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
   5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
   6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Comply with UL 248-11 or UL 248-12 for plug fuses.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
   2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
   3. Mersen.
   4. Littelfuse, Inc.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

2.3 PLUG FUSES

A. Characteristics:
   1. UL 248-11, nonrenewable plug fuses; 30A or less; 125-V ac.
   2. UL 248-12, nonrenewable plug fuses; 600A or less; 250-V ac or 600-V ac.

2.4 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
   1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
   2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
   3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- high letters on exterior of door.
   4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

1. Refer to schedules on drawings for descriptions of fuses in each application.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 2816

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Fusible switches.
   2. Nonfusible switches.
   3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
   4. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
   1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
   2. Current and voltage ratings.
   3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
   4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
   5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
   6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
   2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE AND NON-FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   2. General Electric (GE) products by ABB.
   3. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Double Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Accessories:
   1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
   2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
   3. If a local disconnecting means is installed on the secondary side of the VFD, then an auxiliary contact inside the disconnecting means shall be wired back to the VFD safety shutdown circuit that shall shut down the VFD. This control wiring shall be in a separate conduit from the motor power feed.

2.2 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   2. General Electric (GE) products by ABB.
   3. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

D. Solid state Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Only to be used where required by the NEC; Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
1. Instantaneous trip.
2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

E. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).

F. Features and Accessories:
1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
5. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
8. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
9. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
11. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
12. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
13. Accessory Control Power Voltage: 120-V ac.

G. Circuit breakers serving fire alarm devices or equipment shall be clearly identified as fire alarm power supply in a permanent, conspicuous, and legible manner. Circuit breaker shall also be colored red and lockable in the ON position.

2.3 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
3. Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X,.
4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

D. Install fuses in fusible devices.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
   1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
   2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
   1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
   2. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
   3. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken and observations after remedial action.

E. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study".

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 4113

LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes lightning protection for buildings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. LPI: Lightning Protection Institute.

B. NRTL: National recognized testing laboratory.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For air terminals and mounting accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail lightning protection system, including air-terminal locations, conductor routing and connections, and bonding and grounding provisions. Include indications for use of raceway, data on how concealment requirements will be met, and calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of grounded and isolated metal bodies.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor Qualifications: Contractor shall have personnel on staff that are certified by LPI as a Master Installer/Designer.

B. Installers: Journeyman or higher personnel shall provide on-site supervision of the installation.

C. Listing and Labeling: As defined in NFPA 780, "Definitions" Article.

1.6 PERFORMANCE

A. Contractor shall design a complete lightning protection system including all components described in Part 2 below.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of lightning protection with installation of other building systems and components, including electrical wiring, supporting structures and building materials, metal bodies requiring bonding to lightning protection components, and building finishes.

B. Coordinate installation of air terminals attached to roof systems with roofing manufacturer and Installer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Approved Lightning Protection Co., Inc.
   2. Independent Protection Co.
   3. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.
   4. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
   5. allG Fabrication, Ltd.
   6. VFC Inc.
   7. Erico Products Inc.
   8. Harger, Inc.
   9. Lyncole.
   10. East Coast Lightning Protection, Inc.
   11. Hicks Lightning Protection.

2.2 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. All materials shall comply in weight, size, and composition with the requirements of the UL 96 Materials Standards. All equipment shall be UL listed and properly labeled. The system furnished under this specification shall be the standard product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the production of lightning protection equipment and a member of LPI. Equipment shall be the manufacturer's latest approved design of construction to suit the application where it is to be used in accordance with accepted industry standards and with NFPA, LPI, & UL requirements. Comply with UL 96.

B. Lightning Protection
   1. Class I materials shall be used for systems on structures not exceeding 75 feet in height and Class II materials shall be used for systems on structures exceeding 75 feet above grade.
   2. Copper shall be of the grade ordinarily required for commercial electrical work, generally designated as being 95 percent conductive when annealed.
   3. Lightning protection materials shall be coordinated with building construction materials to assure compatibility. Aluminum lightning protection materials shall not be embedded in concrete or masonry, installed on or below copper surfaces, or used for the in-ground system. Copper lightning protection materials shall not be installed on aluminum surfaces or on exterior sheet metal surfaces. Copper system components within 2 feet of chimney exhausts shall be tin coated to protect against deterioration.
   4. Strike termination devices shall be provided to place the entire structure under a zone of protection as defined by the Standards. Air terminals shall project a minimum of 10 inches above protected areas or objects. Air terminals shall be located within 2 feet of exposed corners and roof edges.
   5. Metallic bodies having a thickness 3/16" or greater may serve as strike termination devices without the addition of air terminals. These bodies shall be made a part of the lightning protection system by connection(s) according to the Standards using main size conductors and bonding fittings with 3 square inches of surface contact area.
   6. Cable conductors shall provide a two-way path from strike termination devices horizontally and downward to connections with the ground system. Cable conductors shall be free of excessive splices and sharp bends. No bend of a conductor shall form a final included angle of less than 90 degrees or have a radius of bend less than 8 inches. Structural elements and design features shall be used whenever possible to minimize the visual impact of exposed conductors.
   7. Cable down conductors may be concealed within the building construction or enclosed within PVC conduit from roof to grade level. Down conductors shall be spaced at intervals

averaging not more than 100 feet around the protected perimeter of the structure. In no case shall any structure have fewer than two down conductors. Where down conductors are exposed to environmental hazards at grade level, guards shall be used to protect the conductor to a point 6 feet above grade.

8. In the case of structural steel frame construction, cable down conductors may be omitted and roof conductors shall be connected to the structural steel frame at intervals averaging not more than 100 feet around the protected perimeter of the structure.
9. Exposed cable conductors shall be secured to the structure at intervals not exceeding 3 feet – 0 inches.
10. No support penetrations shall be made in any sheet metal flashing or roof top equipment. Sheet metal screws shall not be used. Appropriate adhesive supports and construction mastic may be used on Membrane roof surfaces only. Adhesive supports and construction mastic shall not be used on any sheet metal surfaces.
11. Connectors and splicers shall be of suitable configuration and type for the intended application and of the same material as the conductors or of electrolytically compatible materials.
12. Ground terminations suitable for the soil conditions shall be provided for each downlead conductor. Where the structural steel framework is utilized as main conductors for the system, perimeter columns shall be connected to the grounding system at intervals averaging 60 feet or less on the protected perimeter. For any structure in excess of 60 ft. in vertical elevation above grade, a ground loop interconnecting all ground terminals and other building grounded systems shall be provided.
13. Common interconnection of all grounded systems within the building shall be accomplished using main size conductors and fittings. Grounded metal bodies located within the calculated bonding distance as determined by the formulas of the Standards shall be bonded to the system using properly sized bonding conductors.

C. Roof-Mounting Air Terminals: NFPA Class I or 2, as applicable, copper (or aluminum where required), solid tubular, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Single-Membrane, Roof-Mounting Air Terminals: Designed for single-membrane roof materials.

D. Stack-Mounting Air Terminals: Solid copper

E. Provide bronze (or aluminum where required) cable connections and splices..

F. Ground Rods, Ground Loop Conductors, and Concrete-Encased Electrodes: Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" and with standards referenced in this Section.

G. The current lightning protection standards, NFPA 780, UL96A, and LPI 175, are centered on the conventional lightning rod system, referred to as the Franklin rod. Other technologies such as a streamer delaying terminal or an early streamer emitting (ESE) air terminal or other alternative terminals are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to LPI 175, UL 96A and NFPA 780. Comply with manufacturer’s installation instructions.

B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid sharp bends and narrow loops.

C. Conceal the following conductors:
   1. System conductors.
   2. Down conductors.
   3. Interior conductors.
   4. Conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet of building.
   5. Notify Architect at least 48 hours in advance of inspection before concealing lightning protection components.

D. Cable Connections: Use approved exothermic-welded connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components, except those above single-ply membrane roofing.

E. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Bond extremities of vertical metal bodies exceeding 60 feet in length to lightning protection components.

G. A counterpoise installation based on requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" may be used as a ground loop required by NFPA 780, provided counterpoise conductor meets or exceeds minimum requirements in NFPA 780.
   1. Bond ground terminals to counterpoise conductor.
   2. Bond grounded metal bodies on building within 12 feet of ground to counterpoise conductor.
   3. Bond grounded metal bodies on building within 12 feet of roof to interconnecting loop at eave level or above.

H. Bond lightning protection components with intermediate-level interconnection loop conductors to grounded metal bodies of building at 60-foot intervals.

3.2 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.

B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection: Provide inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label or by an inspector certified by LPI to obtain an LPI Master Installation Certificate.

3.4 TESTING

A. Upon completion of installation of lightning protection system, test resistance-to-ground (earthing connection) with resistance tester. Where tests indicate resistance-to-ground is over 5 ohms, take appropriate action to reduce resistance to 5 ohms or less, by driving additional, properly spaced rods, and treating soil in proximity to ground rods with common salt, copper sulfate or magnesium sulfate. Then retest to demonstrate compliance.

3.5 FINAL REPORT

A. Submit a final report, based on industry standards, that includes the following:

1. As-Built drawings stamped by an LPI or NRTL certified master designer.
2. Final systems to ground resistance level.
3. Testing of the internal bonding and grounding systems.
4. Testing of the equipment grounding.
5. Copy of the UL or LPI-IP certification.

3.6 PERSONNEL TRAINING

A. Building Maintenance Personnel Training: Train Owner's building maintenance personnel in procedures for testing and determining resistance-to-ground values of lightning protection system. Also instruct maintenance personnel in preparation and application of chemical solution for earth surrounding grounding rods for reducing ohmic resistance to required levels.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 5100

INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, lumen packages and drivers.
   2. Emergency lighting units.
   3. Exit signs.
   4. Lighting fixture supports.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 26 Section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
   2. Division 26 Section “Modular Dimming Controls "for architectural dimming systems.
   3. Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.
   4. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for manual wall-box dimmers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BF: Ballast factor.

B. CRI: Color-rendering index.

C. CU: Coefficient of utilization.

D. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.

E. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

F. RCR: Room cavity ratio.

G. LED: Solid-state light emitting diode.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
   1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
   2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
   3. Driver.
   4. Energy-efficiency data.

5. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
6. Color, life, output, and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
7. Photometric data, in IESNA format, based on laboratory tests of each lighting fixture type, outfitted with lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
    a. For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by the manufacturer.
    b. Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    c. All tests and data shall include LED modules and drivers proposed, together as a complete system.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency or accredited manufacturers' laboratories, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

D. FMG Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FMG.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of interior lighting products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified below.
    1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
        a. All components of light fixtures and exit signs including body, hardware, drivers, and emergency battery power units: Parts and labor for five years.
        b. LED lumen packages: Parts and labor for five years. Defective products are those where 15% or more of individual diodes fail to illuminate.
    2. Lumen Modules: It is intended that the owner shall receive maximum benefit of the rated life of all modules. Do not install lamps sooner than two (2) weeks prior to the date established for final acceptance and do not utilize the permanent lighting system for contract construction purposes. At his option and upon written notification, the owner may occupy specific areas for erection of production machinery or other purposes prior to final acceptance of the entire project. In that circumstance, install the necessary modules and place in operation for use by the owner. Additional modules installed by contractor will not be required in the occupied area prior to the project acceptance unless module

failures or burnouts occur. Modules on the project shall be new, delivered to the job site in original packing cases and sleeves, and shall be of the same manufacturer.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Lumen modules: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least two of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Light Fixtures
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each lighting fixture is based on the product named in the "Light Fixture Schedule" on the drawings. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product.

2.2 LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.

B. LED Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.

C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

D. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
   2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
   3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
   4. Laminated Silver Metallized Film: 90 percent.

G. Plastic Diffusers, Covers, and Globes:
   1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
      a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless different thickness is indicated.
      b. UV stabilized.
   2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic-interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.

2.3 DRIVERS FOR LED LUMEN PACKAGES/MODULES

A. Electronic, constant current, Class 1 driver with the following characteristics and requirements:
   1. NEMA SSL 1, UL 8750.
   2. Class A sound rating.
   3. 85% minimum efficiency at full load.
   4. Output rated current to match LED lumen package/module.
   5. ≥ 0.95 power factor at maximum load, or ≥ 0.90 power factor over full dimming range.
   6. Integral short circuit, open circuit, and overload protection.
   7. ≤ 20% total harmonic distortion.
   8. Comply with FCC47 CFR Part15.
   9. 0-10V dimmable control, as applicable.

2.4 EMERGENCY POWER UNIT

A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with driver. Comply with UL 924.
   1. Emergency Connection: Operate 1 LED lumen package/module continuously at a minimum output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to driver.
   2. Night-Light Connection: Operate one LED lumen package/module continuously.
   3. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
      a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
   4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
   5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
   6. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

B. Contractor may provide integral emergency driver in lieu of self-contained battery unit.

2.5 EXIT SIGNS

A. Description: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:
   1. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 70,000 hours, or 10 years minimum rated lamp life.
   2. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
      a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
      b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
      c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
      d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

f. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.
g. UL tested and approved for 100 feet visibility.
h. Vandal resistant housing in all locations.

3. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
   a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply for power connection to remote unit.
   b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

2.6 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

A. Description: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.
1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
3. Operation: Relay automatically turns LED lamp on when power supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
4. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
5. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
6. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures in spaces such as gymnasiums.
7. Vandal resistant housing in all locations.

2.7 LED LUMEN PACKAGES/MODULES

A. LED Lumen packages/modules shall have the following characteristics and requirements:
1. 50,000 hours minimum life, using an L70 lumen maintenance value, calculated by IES TM-21. IES LM-80 specified data shall be used, for the module/driver combined system.
2. The modules shall be installed as part of a luminaire that is tested to IES LM-79 and LM-80 standards.
3. Minimum CRI of 80 and approved R9 reference sample.
4. Correlated color temperature and lumen output as listed in the drawings' light fixture schedule.
5. High power, white light output utilizing phosphor conversion process or mixed system of colored LEDs, typically red, green and blue.
6. Color consistency utilizing a binning tolerance within a 3-step McAdam ellipse.

2.8 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.

C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.

D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.

E. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage.

F. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

G. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Lighting fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls. Install lamps in each fixture. Mount fixtures in center of ceiling tiles, or as shown on the drawings.

B. Support for Lighting Fixtures in or on Grid-Type Suspended Ceilings: Use grid as a support element.
   1. Install a minimum of four ceiling support system rods or wires for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches from lighting fixture corners.
   2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
   3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
   4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.

C. Support for surface mounted fixtures. Provide a minimum of two 1/4-inch threaded rods per fixture, supported from building structure. Use 1-1/2-inch x 1-1/2-inch steel channels where required to span joists or otherwise facilitate fixture/structural support.

D. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
   1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
   2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
   3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.

E. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.

F. Adjust aimable lighting fixtures to provide required light intensities.

G. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

H. Clean fixtures prior to Substantial Completion. Replace all lamps and lumen packages/modules that have failed, are not uniform in color, or used for temporary construction lighting.

I. Install lighting fixtures at locations and heights as indicated, in accordance with fixture manufacturer's written instructions, applicable requirements of NEC, NECA "Standard of Installation," NEMA standards, and with recognized industry practices to ensure that lighting fixtures fulfill requirements.

J. The approximate fixture locations are shown on plans. The Contractor shall coordinate these locations with other work in the same areas to prevent interference between lighting fixtures and piping or other equipment.

K. The Fixture Schedule designates basic type of fixtures. Provide fixtures adapted to the ceiling construction; verify types of ceiling construction prior to releasing fixtures for fabrication and delivery.

L. Fixtures not constructed for attaching the circuit conductors to the socket terminal shall be wired from outlet box to fixture terminal connection with No. 14 AWG where ampacity does not exceed 17 amperes. The outlet box for the fixture tap conductors is to be placed at least 1 foot from the fixture. The tap conductors shall be of at least 4 feet, but not more than 6 feet, in length.

M. Flexible metallic conduit 3/8" trade size shall be permitted, above accessible ceilings, in lengths not in excess of 6' as part of a factory or field-installed metal raceway to enclose tap conductors from the outlet box to the fixture terminal housing of recessed or surface-mounted fixtures. Maximum number of insulated conductors not to exceed Table 350-3 of National Electrical Code.
   1. Run fixture whips (flex conduit/metal clad cable) from a junction box to each fixture (not to exceed four fixtures per junction box) access plate. Fixture whips between light fixtures are not to be accepted. Whips not to exceed 6’-0” in total length.
   2. Move any luminaire up to 6 feet in any direction as directed by Architect at no additional cost.

N. All continuous row fixtures shall be nippled together.

O. Locate all remote drivers above the ceiling near each luminaire or in an adjacent room with a low ceiling for easy access. Mount drivers on rubber isolators.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply for 1.5 hours to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.

B. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 26 5600

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Exterior luminaires with lamps, LED lumen package/modules and drivers.
   2. Poles and accessories.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting" for exterior luminaires normally mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CRI: Color-rendering index.

B. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

C. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.

D. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

E. LED: Solid-state light emitting diode.

1.4 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4.

B. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf, distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4.

C. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft., applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4.

D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4, for this project.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
   1. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
   2. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
   3. Details of installation and construction.
   4. Luminaire materials.

5. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.
    a. For indicated luminaires, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
    b. Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
6. Drivers, including energy-efficiency data.
7. Lamps, including life, output, and energy-efficiency data.
8. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
9. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
10. Anchor bolts for poles.
11. Manufactured pole foundations.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency or accredited manufactures' laboratories with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.

B. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.

C. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
    1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components, or complete product, of exterior lighting products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. This is considered a full warranty, unless specified below.
    1. Warranty Period: From date of substantial completion:
        a. All components of light fixtures, including body, hardware, drivers, and poles: Parts and labor for five years.

b. LED lumen packages: Parts and labor for five years. Defective products are those where 15% or more of individual diodes fail to illuminate.

2. Modules: It is intended that the owner shall receive maximum benefit of the rated life of all modules. Do not install lamps sooner than two (2) weeks prior to the date established for final acceptance and do not utilize the permanent lighting system for contract construction purposes. At his option and upon written notification, the owner may occupy specific areas for erection of production machinery or other purposes prior to final acceptance of the entire project. In that circumstance, install the necessary modules and place in operation for use by the owner. Additional modules installed by contractor will not be required in the occupied area prior to the project acceptance unless module failures or burnouts occur. Modules on the project shall be new, delivered to the job site in original packing cases and sleeves, and shall be of the same manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Light Fixtures
1. Basis of Design Product: The design of each item of exterior luminaire and its support is based on the product named in the “Light Fixtures Schedule” on the drawings. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product.

2.2 LUMINAIRES, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.

C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

D. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.

G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.

H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

I. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.

J. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.

2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

K. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

L. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

M. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
   a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors, unless otherwise noted on the drawings.

N. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
   a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 LED DRIVERS AND LUMEN PACKAGES/MODULES

A. Electronic, constant current, Class 1 driver with the following characteristics and requirements:
1. NEMA SSL 1, UL 8750.
2. Class A sound rating.
3. 85% minimum efficiency at full load.
4. Output rated current to match LED lumen package/module.
5. ≥ 0.95 power factor at maximum load, or ≥ 0.90 power factor over full dimming range.
6. Integral short circuit, open circuit, and overload protection.
7. ≤ 20% total harmonic distortion.
8. Comply with FCC47 CFR Part15.
9. 0-10V dimmable control, as applicable.

B. LED Lumen packages/modules shall have the following characteristics and requirements:
1. 50,000 hours minimum life, using an L70 lumen maintenance value, calculated by IES TM-21. IES LM-80 specified data shall be used, for the module/driver combined system.
2. The modules shall be installed as part of a luminaire that is tested to IES LM-79 and LM-80 standards.

3. Minimum CRI of 80 and approved R9 reference sample.
4. Correlated color temperature and lumen output as listed in the drawings' light fixture schedule.
5. High power, white light output utilizing phosphor conversion process or mixed system of colored LEDs, typically red, green and blue.
6. Color consistency utilizing a binning tolerance within a 3-step McAdam ellipse.

2.4 POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4.
   1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in Part 1 "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article, with a gust factor of 1.3.
   2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
   1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
   2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, unless stainless-steel items are indicated.
   3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
   4. Handhole: Watertight handhole at base, large enough to accommodate wiring connectors and fuses.

D. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2.5 STEEL POLES

A. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig; 1-piece construction up to 40 feet in height with access handhole in pole wall.
   1. Shape: As scheduled on the drawings..
   2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

B. Steel Arms: Material and finish same as pole.

C. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

D. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

E. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
   1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind

welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and finish coats of powder coating.
   a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

A. Install lamps in each luminaire.

B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
   1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Aiming must occur at night with architect present.

D. Clean fixtures prior to Substantial Completion. Replace all lamps and LED lumen packages/modules that have failed, not uniform in color, or have been used for temporary construction lighting.

3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

A. Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.

B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
   1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: 60 inches.
   2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet.
   3. Trees: 15 feet.

C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Install outdoor lighting units as indicated in accordance with manufacturer’s written instructions, applicable requirements of NEC, NESC and NEMA standards, and with recognized industry practices to ensure that lighting units fulfill requirements.

E. Use belt slings or rope (not chain or cable) to raise and set finished poles and standards so as to protect pole and luminare finishes.

F. Set poles and standards plumb. Support adequately during anchoring to foundations.

G. Provide sufficient space encompassing hand access and cable entrance holes for installation of underground cabling where indicated.

3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.

B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTING LUMINAIRES

A. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
   1. Install grounding electrode for each pole, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

B. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
   1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
   2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
   3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.

B. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.

C. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaire lowering devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 27 15 01

PREMISE WIRING GUIDE SPECIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

A. Coordinate incorporation of the Work specified herein with other project work so as to facilitate a cohesive final product.

1.2 INSTALLATION

A. The installation recommendations contained within ANSI/TIA-568-B, ANSI/TIA-569 and the BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM), including the Manufacturer's recommended installation methods or practices for a Standards-based Structured Cabling System, are mandatory minimum standards and requirements.

B. Mount equipment and enclosures plumb and level. Permanently installed equipment to be firmly and safely held in place. Equipment supports must support loads imposed with a safety factor of at least five.

C. Assemble free standing racks according to manufacturer's instructions. Verify that equipment mounting rails are sized properly for rack-mount equipment before attaching the rack to the floor.

D. All racks must be attached to the floor in four places using appropriate floor mounting anchors.

E. Racks shall be grounded to the telecommunications busbar using #6 AWG green insulated solid copper wire and any necessary attachment hardware provided by the Communications Contractor.

F. The equipment load should be evenly distributed and uniform on the rack. Place large and heavy equipment towards the bottom of the rack. Secure all equipment to the rack with equipment mounting screws.

1.3 AC POWER AND GROUNDING:

A. Coordinate and verify final connection of related electrical power, TMGB and TMB Grounding Bus bar and ground conductors.

B. Provide ground system compliant with the reference ANSI-J-607-A Standard, ANSI/NFPA-70 and authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Ground equipment chassis not having a three-wire power cord, other metal enclosures, and equipment rack frames in the ER and IDF room(s) to the ground bus bar in that room using # 6 AWG insulated conductor and bonding with 10/32 nuts, bolts and lock-washers.

D. Remove any finish and make-bare any metallic surface at the point where grounding wire is connected to and or terminated on equipment frames, racks or devices.

1.4 GROUNDING SYSTEM TESTS:

A. Measure and record the DC resistance between the technical ground and the main building ground. Resistance should be at least 0.5 ohms or less.

B. Temporarily lift the technical ground from the main electrical ground, measure and record the DC resistance between them. Resistance should be at least 1000 ohms.

1.5 INTRODUCTION

A. The Dallas Independent School District has developed the following Premises Wiring System Specification for the District wide global design. This document insures the compliant implementation of DISD Ed Specifications which precedence over the TDG. This specification is to be used by all contractors doing business directly or indirectly with DISD and all A/E firms designing infrastructure for the Voice, Data, Video and Auxiliary Systems. All efforts have been made insure accurate part numbers and procedures. Any discrepancies, inaccurate part numbers or non-standard procedures shall be reported to the authority issuing this document. Immediate attention will be given to resolving discrepancies. Any deviations from this document

this document must have written approval for the DISD Technology Services prior to any work being completed. Any questions related to this specification should be forwarded to:

Dallas Independent School District
Information and Technology Services (ITS)
3701 S. Lamar Street
Box 63
Dallas Texas 75215
(972) 925-5670

1.6 RESPONSIBITY MATRIX

A. General Contractor to install the infrastructure to house cabling system. Dallas ISD-IT-Infrastructure to contract with a Cabling Contractor to install cabling and equipment. Reference the following matrix for responsibilities.

`Dallas ISD Organization	Dallas ISD Dept/Div/Group	Building System	Description: Equipment & Devices	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Power
				Designed & Documented for Construction by	Designed & Documented for Construction by	Provided and Installed by	Provided and Installed by	Provided and Installed by
M&O	Grounds	Marquee Sign	Marquee Sign	A/E	A/E	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor
M&O	EMS/Controls	BAS	JACE: Equipment, Cabling, Devices	A/E	A/E	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor
M&O	Elevators	Elevators	Wireless Emergency Call-Out	A/E	A/E	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor
M&O	Elevators	Elevators	Sump High Float Local Call	A/E	A/E	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor
M&O	Alarms	Fire (Sprinkler) Suppression	Flow Detection	A/E	A/E	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor
M&O	Alarms	Fire Alarm	Fire Alarm Wireless Radio (AES) Call-Out, Panels, Cabling, Devices	A/E	A/E	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	E-rate	Technology Infrastructure	A/E IT-Consultant	A/E	IT-Infrastructure PM	CS-General Contractor	CS-General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	Fiber Optic	Fiber Optic Cable from street to MDF UPN	IT-Fiber Contractor	A\E (including civil pads, vaults)	IT-Fiber Contractor	CS-General Contractor (including civil pads, vaults)	N/A
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Fiber Optic Cabling – Dark Fiber	IT-Fiber Contractor	A\E (including civil pads,	IT-Fiber Contractor	CS-General Contractor (including	N/A

`Dallas ISD Organization	Dallas ISD Dept/Div/Group	Building System	Description: Equipment & Devices	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Power
				Designed & Documented for Construction by	**Designed & Documented for Construction by**	**Provided and Installed by**	**Provided and Installed by**	**Provided and Installed by**
					vaults)		civil pads, vaults)	
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Fiber Optic Backbone Cabling: MDF to IDFs	IT-Fiber Contractor	A/E	IT-Cabling Contractor	CS-General Contractor	N/A
IT	Infrastructure	Infrastructure	Fiber Optic Patch Panels, Jumpers, et ai	IT-Cabling Contractor	N/A	IT Cabling Contractor	N/A	N/A
IT/Police	CSS EM	Access Control	MDF & IDF Room Security	CSS Security Contractor	A/E	CSS Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT	Infrastructure	Network	MDF/IDF: High Heat Alarm Signal	Provided and Installed by CS-GC	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/M&O	Infrastructure Electrical	Network	MDF/IDF: Lighting Protection System and Event Alert	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Portables	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT	Instructure	Network	UPS	A/E	A/E	IT-Network Equipment Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Wireless Access Points (WAPs)	A/E-IT-Consultant	A/E	IT-Network Equipment Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Cabling	A/E-IT Consultant	A/E	IT-Cabling Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Patch Panels	A/E-IT Consultant		IT=Cabling Contractor	N/A	N/A
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Racks (Floor Mounted)	A/E	N/A	CS General Contractor	N/A	CS General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Racks (Wall Mounted)	A/E	N/A	CS General Contractor	N/A	CS General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Patch Cables	A/E IT-Consultant	N/A	IT-Technology Contractor	N/A	N/A
IT	Infrastructure	Network	Biometric Clocks	A/E	A/E	Cabling by IT-Cabling Contractor. Device	CS General Contractor	POE by IT-Cabling Contractor. Does not

`Dallas ISD Organization	Dallas ISD Dept/Div/Group	Building System	Description: Equipment & Devices	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Power
				Designed & Documented for Construction by	**Designed & Documented for Construction by**	**Provided and Installed by**	**Provided and Installed by**	**Provided and Installed by**
						provided by CS-GC purchased from IT-Biometric Clock Vendor		require line voltage power.
IT	Infrastructure	Network	POE Switch Network	IT-Network Equipment Contractor	N/A	IT-Network Equipment Contractor	N/A	N/A
M&O	Sound Stage	Voice Communications	PA IP Integrated Electronic Communications Network	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
M&O	Sound Stage	Network	Master Clock	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
M&O	Sound Stage	Voice Communications	VoIP	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
M&O	Sound Stage	Voice Communications	Sound System	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
M&O	Sound Stage	Voice Communications	POE Switches PA/Sound	A/E	N/A	CS General Contractor	N/A	CS General Contractor
M&O	Sound Stage	Voice Communications	Patch Cables P/A Sound	A/E	N/A	CS General Contractor	N/A	N/A
M&O	Sound Stage	Voice Communications	Patch Panels Sound System	A/E	N/A	CS General Contractor	N/A	N/A
IT	Audio-Visual	Distributed Audio-Video Communications Systems	Interactive Displays	IT/AV Vendor	A/E	IT AV Vendor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/AES	Audio-Visual Performing Arts	Distributed Audio-Video Communications Systems	Auditoriums: Sound System	A/E Theater Consultant	A/E	CS General Contractor purchased from IT AV Vendor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/AES	Audio-Visual Performing Arts	Distributed Audio-Video Communications	Auditorium: Video Projector and Screen	A/E Theatre Consultant	A/E	CS General Contractor purchased from IT AV	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor

`Dallas ISD Organization	Dallas ISD Dept/Div/Group	Building System	Description: Equipment & Devices	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Power
				Designed & Documented for Construction by	Designed & Documented for Construction by	Provided and Installed by	Provided and Installed by	Provided and Installed by
		Systems				Vendor		
IT	Audio-Visual	Distributed Audio-Video Communications Systems	Multi-Purpose Rooms: Sound System	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT	Audio-Visual	Audio-Visual	Cafetoriums: Sound System	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT	Audio-Visual	Audio-Visual	Cafetoriums: Video Projector and Screen	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
M&O	Sound Stage	Distributed Audio-Video Communications Systems	Gymnasium: Sound System	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	Food and Child Nutrition Services	Cafeteria Point of Sale (POS)	FCNS Contractor	A/E	FCNS Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT	Infrastructure	Food and Child Nutrition Services	Cafeteria Digital Display	A/E IT-Consultant & A/E	A/E	Display: CS-GC Cabling Contractor: IT-Technology Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Network	Patch Panels Security	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	N/A
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Network	POE Switches Security Devices	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CS General Contractor
M&O	Alarms	Intrusion Detection System	Intrusion Wireless Call-Out, Panels, Keypads, Cabling Devices	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Strom Shelter Operations	Control Room: Panels, monitoring and operational	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor

`Dallas ISD Organization	Dallas ISD Dept/Div/Group	Building System	Description: Equipment & Devices	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Power
				Designed & Documented for Construction by	Designed & Documented for Construction by	Provided and Installed by	Provided and Installed by	Provided and Installed by
			controls, devices and signage					
IT/Police M&F	CSS/EM Electrical	UPS (Non-Network)	Storm Shelter Power and Monitoring: Generator or Battery	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Secure Vestibule	See “Access Control”, Div 28	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Access Control	Card Assess/CCTV Headend Licensing	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	N/A
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Access Control	Control Panels	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CS General Contractor
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Access Control	Card Readers	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Access Control	Door Contacts	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Access Control	Electrified Door Hardware	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Access Control	Electrified Door Hardware Power Supply	A/E	A/E	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Access Control	IP Intercoms: Masters	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Security: Electronic Surveillance	Cameras: Exterior	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Security: Electronic Surveillance	Cameras: Interior	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	N/A
IT/SPED	CSS	Safety & Security	SPED Monitoring System Cameras and	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor

`Dallas ISD Organization	Dallas ISD Dept/Div/Group	Building System	Description: Equipment & Devices	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Equipment Devices	Pathways, Cable Trays, Conduit, Backboxes, et al	Power
				Designed & Documented for Construction by	**Designed & Documented for Construction by**	**Provided and Installed by**	**Provided and Installed by**	**Provided and Installed by**
			Recording					
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Security: Electronic Surveillance	Cabling: Switch to Device	CSS-Security Contractor	A/E	CSS-Security Contractor	CS General Contractor	CS General Contractor
IT/Police	CSS/EM	Security: Electronic Surveillance	Storage Servers	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CSS-Security Contractor	N/A	CS General Contractor

1.7 OVERVIEW

A. Included into this section are all materials, labor, and services to provide a complete and functioning infrastructure for the data, telephone, and broadband video distribution systems. This includes, but is not necessarily limited to:
   1. Raceway, boxes and cable tray.
   2. Data, Voice, Video and Distributed Television Coaxial cabling.
   3. Optical fiber cable and terminations.
   4. Telecommunications outlets.
   5. Multimedia Systems in:
      a. Classrooms – to be equipped with interactive touch screens.
      b. Conference Rooms, Libraries, Multimedia Rooms to be equipped with ceiling mounted LED Projectors and Projection Screens.
      c. Large Teaching/Assembly Spaces such as Auditoria, Cafeteria and Gymnasia – to be equipped with rear projection systems.
   6. Terminal blocks/cross-connect systems.
   7. Equipment racks and cabinets.
   8. Central UPS Systems.
   9. System testing.
   10. Documentation and submissions.

B. Provide all equipment, miscellaneous materials, labor and services, not specifically mentioned or shown which may be necessary to complete or perfect all parts of the installation which are in compliance with requirements stated or reasonably inferred to be required by the contract documents.

C. Related Work
   1. Refer to Division 0 & 1 for Any work in hazardous locations, “Hot Area”, such as where asbestos might be and determining its location.
   2. Refer Division 26 - 120 Volt or above electrical wiring & outlets, conduit and wall boxes.
   3. Servers, computers, IWB and other end user devices are typically supplied and installed by District. Verify with responsibility chart.

D. Definitions and Acronyms
   1. Data port - Single Category 6 jack connected to a single cable segment.

2. Duplex-Data port - (2) Single Category 6 data ports.
3. Electrical Outlet - Single 120-Volt Power Outlet.
4. Duplex Electrical outlet - (2) Electrical Outlets.
5. Quad-Electrical Outlet - (4) Electrical Outlets.
6. Portable - Permanent classroom space (not swing space).
7. Swing Space - Temporary portable building in support of construction.
8. DISD - Dallas Independent School District.
9. ITS - Information and Technology Services.
10. AFF - Above Finished Floor.
11. EF – Entrance Facility.
12. ER - Equipment Rooms (i.e. MDF, IDF).
13. MDF - Main Distribution Frame.
14. IDF - Intermediate Distribution Frame.
15. TMGB - Telecommunication Main Grounding Busbar.
16. HVAC - Heating, Ventilation, & Air Conditioning.
17. UPS - Uninterruptible Power Supply.
18. ANSI - American National Standards Institute.
19. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance.
20. TIA - Telecommunication Industry Association.
21. SCS - Structured Cabling System.
22. BICSI - Building Industry Consulting Services International, Inc.
23. UTP - Unshielded Twisted Pair.
24. FDC - Fiber Distribution Center (Rack or Wall Mounted).
25. RMU – Rack Mount Unit (1.75”)
26. EMT - Electrical Metallic Conduit.
27. IMC - Intermediate Metallic Conduit.
28. GRC - Galvanized Rigid Conduit.
29. UL- Underwriters Laboratory.
30. AWG - American Wire Gauge.
31. CMR - Communications Riser Cable.
32. CMP - Communications Plenum Cable.
33. MPR - Multipurpose Riser Cable.
34. MPP - Multipurpose Plenum Cable.
35. OFNP - Optical Fiber Non-Metallic Plenum Rated.
36. OFNR - Optical Fiber Non-Metallic Riser Rated.
37. OTDR - Optical Time Domain Reflectometer.
38. WAP - Wireless Access Point.
39. FOC - Fiber Optic Cable.
40. RCDD – Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.8 REFERENCES

A. Design, manufacture, test, and install telecommunications cabling networks per manufacturer’s requirements and in accordance with latest revision of the NFPA-70 (National Electrical Code®), state codes, local codes, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following ANSI/TIA Standards for Installing Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling standards including the most current revisions, addendums and any technical service bulletins (TSB’s) that may have been released:
   1. ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, Part 1: General Requirements.
   2. ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, Part 2: Balanced Twisted Pair Cabling Components.
   3. ANSI/TIA-568-C.3 - Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard.
   4. ANSI/TIA-568-C.4 - Standard for Coaxial Cabling.
   5. ANSI/TIA-569-A - Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces.

6. ANSI/TIA-606(A) - The Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
7. ANSI/TIA-607(B) - Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.
8. ANSI/TIA-526-7 - Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable.
9. Plant ANSI/TIA-526-14A - Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant.
10. ANSI/TIA-758(A) - Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Cabling Standard.

B. Install cabling in accordance with the most recent edition of BICSI® publications:
1. BICSI – Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual.
2. BICSI – Cabling Installation Manual.
3. BICSI – LAN Design Manual.
4. BICSI – Customer-Owned Outside Plant Design Manual.

C. Federal, state, and local codes, rules, regulations and ordinances governing the work, are as fully part of the specifications as if herein repeated or hereto attached. If the contractor should note items in the drawings or the specifications, construction of which would be code violations, promptly call them to the attention of the owner's representative in writing. Where the requirements of other sections of the specifications are more stringent than applicable codes, rules, regulations and ordinances, the specifications shall apply.

D. In all cases, the latest version of The National Electrical Code (NEC NFPA 70) shall be used as the standard to protect people and property from electrical hazards. The Code covers the installation of electrical conductors, equipment, and raceways; signaling and communications conductors, equipment, and raceways; and optical fiber cables and raceways for the following:
1. Public and private premises, including buildings, structures, mobile homes, recreational vehicles, and floating buildings.
2. Yards, lots, parking lots, carnivals, and industrial substations.
3. Installations of conductors and equipment that connect to the supply of electricity.

E. Install all cabling and termination devices as per the following Manufacturers' recommended installation practices. These practices are required to obtain the Superior Essex/Ortronics GT2 copper and MM10 optical fiber 25-year Application Assurance warranties:
1. Superior Essex and Legrand/Ortronics component and system specifications shall be followed.
2. Superior Essex Oasis and Legrand/Ortronics installation certification guidelines shall be followed.

1.9 PERMITS, FEES, AND CERTIFICATES OF APPROVAL

A. Refer to Division 0 & 1 for all requirements

1.10 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit to the engineer/designer shop drawings, product data (including cut sheets and catalog information), and samples required by the contract documents. Submit shop drawings, product data, and samples with such promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the work or in the activities of separate contractors. Engineer/designer shall review submittals with District ITS staff or designee. District ITS staff or designee shall have final determination of all technology system-related design elements. The engineer/designer will indicate approval of shop drawings, product data, and samples submitted to the engineer by stamping such submittals "APPROVED" with a stamp. Submitted shop drawings shall be signed and RCDD-stamped by the contractor's RCDD certified engineer, showing the date and the contractor's firm name.
1. All submitted drawings shall include in the title block:
    a. Site identification (TEA #)
    b. Campus name
    c. Descriptive Sheet Title
    d. Floor (when applicable)
    e. Area location (when applicable)
    f. Building or Portable(s) number (when applicable)

g. Room numbers
h. Dimensions
i. Revision identifier or Drawing Submittal Phase
j. Author or Certified Engineers name
k. Firm's name and contact information with phone number
l. Date
m. File Name (for reference to electronic file submittal)

2. The Technology drawings set shall be submitted following the format described below:

3. By submitting shop drawings, product data, and samples, the contractor represents that he or she has carefully reviewed and verified materials, quantities, field measurements, and field construction criteria related thereto. It also represents that the contractor has checked, coordinated, and verified that information contained within shop drawings, product data, and samples conform to the requirements of the work and of the contract documents. The engineer/designer remains responsible for the design concept expressed in the contract documents as defined herein.
4. The engineer's/designer's approval of shop drawings, product data, and samples submitted by the contractor shall not relieve the contractor of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents, unless the contractor has specifically informed the engineer/designer in writing of such deviation at time of submittal, and the engineer/designer has given written approval of the specific deviation. The contractor shall continue to be responsible for deviations from requirements of the contract documents not specifically noted by the contractor in writing, and specifically approved by the engineer in writing
5. The engineer's/designer's approval of shop drawings, product data, and samples shall not relieve the contractor of responsibility for errors or omissions in such shop drawings, product data, and samples.
6. The engineer's/designer's review and approval, or other appropriate action upon shop drawings, product data and samples, is for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and design concept expressed in the contract documents. The engineer's/designer's review of such submittals is not conducted for the
7. purpose of determining accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the contractor as required by the contract documents. The review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The engineer's/designer's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

B. Perform no portion of the work requiring submittal or review of shop drawings, product data, or samples, until the engineer/designer has approved the respective submittal. Such work shall be in accordance with approved submittals.

C. Submit shop drawings, product data, and samples as a complete set within thirty (30) days of award of contract.
1. For initial submission and for resubmission required for approval, submit four (4) copies of each item. The designer will only return two copies.
2. Illegible submittals will not be checked and returned, un-approved, to the Contractor.

D. General: Submit the following:
1. Bill of materials for each system in MS Excel table format that includes the following minimum column headers:
a. Quantity
b. Unit of Measurement
c. Brand
d. Part Number
e. Basic Description

2. Length and type of proposed copper and fiber optic cables in MS Excel table format for each set of cables to each IDF.
3. Project schedule including all major work components that materially affect any other work on the project in MS Project Gantt chart format.

E. Shop drawings: Submit the following:
1. Room construction diagrams including floor plans, sections and rack elevations of all rooms showing all components (e.g. fiber termination bulkheads, UTP patch panels, vertical and horizontal cable managers, data switches, UPSs, overhead ladder racking, entry conduits and sleeves, power outlets, fire and security panels, backboards, door position and swing, etc.) for review and approval by Dallas ISD IT Staff prior to procuring and installing any room-mounted equipment. Submittals to be provided in electronic drawing format. (PDFs, AutoCAD, Visio, etc. to be approved by owner).
2. Backbone (riser) diagrams include location identity in electronic drawing format. (PDFs, AutoCAD, Visio, etc. to be approved by owner).
3. System block diagram, indicating interconnection between system components and subsystems in drawing format with floor separation in electronic drawing format. (PDFs, AutoCAD, Visio, etc. to be approved by owner).
4. Fabrication drawings for custom-built equipment in drawing format.

F. Product Data– Provide via hardcopy and scanned or OEM PDFs catalog cut sheets highlighting or circle the actual part number and information for the following:
1. Wire, cable, and optical fiber.
2. Outlets, jacks, faceplates, and connectors.
3. All metallic and nonmetallic raceways, including surface raceways, outlet boxes, and fittings.
4. Terminal blocks and patch panels.

G. Project record and drawings:
1. All electronic drawings shall be submitted in either MS Visio or AutoCAD version 2007 format on CD/DVD.
2. All T series (Technology) drawing sheets/files shall be formatted for legible printing on 11”x17” paper or smaller including technology installation notes.
3. AutoCAD files shall be complete and fully functional at all layers with complete binding and editable functionality.
4. Final drawings and submittal package documents shall become the property and responsibility of Dallas ISD at project closure.
5. Each sheet of the submittal package shall be stamped or labeled with “As Built” and the associated date.
6. Each sheet shall include a directional indictor to North.
7. Each sheet shall include a drawing scale. Filenames shall use the following format:

Example of file naming standard:

Site	Drawing #	Description	Revision #	Date
245	T01	MDF Rack1	R02	123011

Example of filename:
245-T01-MDF-Rack1-R02-123011.dwg

8. An index of all drawings and files shall be included in the submittal package.
   a. Index shall be submitted in MS Excel format with the following fields a minimum:
   b. Site identification
   c. Campus name
   d. Descriptive Sheet Title
   e. Floor (when applicable)
   f. Area location (when applicable)
   g. Room numbers
   h. Sheet Number
   i. Revision
   j. File Name
   k. Submittal and approval date record

9. 9. Record Drawing Set shall include Plan Drawings indicating locations and identification of work area outlets, nodes, all telecommunications rooms (MDFs and IDFs), and backbone (riser) cable runs. For existing locations where additional cabling and data ports are being added, all existing data ports shall be included with a unique symbol thereby providing complete documentation of the network infrastructure.
    a. Equipment Room (MDF) and Telecommunications Rooms (IDFs) termination detail sheets.
    b. Cross-connect schedules including entrance point, main cross-connects, intermediate cross-connects, and horizontal cross-connects.
    c. MDF and IDF zone area coverage drawings include building site area map highlighting sheet coverage.
    d. Site drawing with any underground cabling showing actual route, depth and end points. Include GPS coordinates and dimensions.
    e. Labeling and administration documentation. (Location Spreadsheets).
    f. Warranty documents (Warranty registration form will not be accepted as the required Warranty Certificate).
    g. Copper certification test result printouts and electronic files on CD.
    h. Optical fiber test result printout and electronic files on CD.
    i. Grounding test result printout and electronic files on CD.
    j. Original WAP Site Survey documentation.
    k. Final as built WAP design with campus coverage mapping.
    l. Digital Pictures of each MDF and IDF after completion of the project. Pictures shall be labeled with campus, location and date. Label shall be a part of the picture within the image. The filename of these files shall use the following format:

        Example of file naming standard:

Site	Location	Description	Date
245	MDF Rack1	Patch Panel A	123009

        Example of filename:
        245-MDF-Rack1-PatchPanelA-123009.gif

    m. Directory of all technology contractor companies that participated on the project with project managers' names, email addresses and phone numbers.
    n. Equipment Deliverables Lists verified and signed by District staff member.
    o. Include in the technology submittal package for information only all related and supporting electrical power drawings from the campus design set.
10. Submit hardcopy project records and drawings bound in a three-ring binder with a cover and spine label indicating the name of the school and year. Install printed dividers into this binder. This binder shall be submitted at conclusion of the project. The as-built information in the submittal package shall include:
11. Submitted electronic files shall be provided on CD. Three (3) copies of all CDs shall be provided with the submittal. All submitted CDs shall be labeled on the back surface of the CD with the following:
    a. Site Identification (TEA #)
    b. Bid Package #
    c. Campus Name
    d. Title of CD
    e. Firm Name and Contact Information
    f. Version
    g. Disk number x of y
    h. Date

1.11 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Technology cable system contractors must be approved by DISD ITS Department at time of negotiations. Acceptance will be based exclusively on the following criteria. Documented proof of compliance and qualification is required from the contractor prior to negotiation approval.

1. All contractors must be Ortronics CIP (Certified Installer Plus) or CIP/ESP (Enterprise Solutions Partners) in good standing.
2. The contractor shall have been in business for a minimum of five (5) years and have completed at least five (5) systems of this type and size or they must be a DISD approved contractor.
3. Upon request, applying contractor is to furnish a list of references with specific information regarding type of project and involvement in providing of equipment and systems. A list of current, trained personnel (trained within the last 5 years) also may be requested.
4. The contractor shall employ a BICSI certified RCDD for a project manager and quality control inspectors that are BICSI (ITS Technician or ITS Installer 2, Copper and Fiber) or Legrand/Ortronics certified technicians.

B. The following manufacturer's cabling systems are approved for installation under this specification.
   1. Ortronics System (Required to maintain compatibility with current installations and to maintain warranty)

C. Equipment and materials of the type for which there are independent standard testing requirements, listings, and labels, shall be listed and labeled by the independent testing laboratory.

D. Where equipment and materials have industry certification, labels, or standards (i.e., NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association), this equipment shall be labeled as certified or complying with standards.

E. Material and equipment shall be new, and conform to grade, quality, and standards specified. Equipment and materials of the same type shall be a product of the same manufacturer throughout.

F. Subcontractors shall assume all rights and obligations toward the Main Contractor that the Main Contractor assumes toward the owner and engineer/designer.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. A 25-year system warranty will apply to all premises wiring projects within DISD. The warranty registration documents must be submitted within 10 working days of project acceptance. All warranty certificates will be submitted directly from manufacturer to the Dallas ISD. Warranty registration form will not be accepted as the required warranty certificate. Final payment will not be made until system warranty is approved by manufacturer.

B. Transfer any other manufacturer's warranties to the owner in addition to the General System Guarantee and the above-mentioned system warranty. Submit these warranties on each item in list form with shop drawings. Detail specific parts within equipment that are subject to separate conditional warranty. Warranty proprietary equipment and systems involved in this contract during the guarantee period.

C. Effect replacement or substitutions of warranted equipment shall occur within 24 hours of first notification. Complete warranty repairs to equipment shall be performed within 72 hours. If repairs cannot be completed during this time period, or if ordering of parts is required, forward to the owner every 72 hours, documentation of progress of repairs. This repair capability is mandatory. Include costs anticipated to comply with this requirement in the bid.

D. Refer to Division 0&1 for additional details and requirements.

1.13 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect equipment during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, theft, soiling, and misalignment.

B. Coordinate for secure storage of equipment and materials onsite.

C. Do not store equipment where conditions fall outside manufacturer's recommendations for environment.

D. Do not install damaged equipment. Remove from site and replace damaged equipment with new equipment.

E. Refer to Division 0&1 for additional details and requirements.

1.14 COORDINATION

A. Coordination with all other trades is required. Cabling Contractor will submit a schedule for the installation to the GC as requested. Indicate delivery, installation, and testing for conformance to specific job completion dates. As a minimum, dates are to be provided for installation start date, completion of station cabling, completion of riser cabling, completion of testing and labeling, cutover, completion of the final punch list, start of demolition, demolition completion, final inspection, and acceptance. For middle school and high school projects, this schedule shall be broken down in to building, areas and wings of each building. Provide schedule documentation in hardcopy and electronic format.

B. Cabling Contractor must attend all General Contractor project related meetings (as requested by GC) and adhere to schedule

C. Timing of the cable system completion and documentation is critical to the final commissioning of the network systems and campus occupancy. Therefore, acceptance of the final inspection of these systems and the submittal of final documentation shall be a requirement of Substantial Completion. Notification for final inspections will be require at least 72 hours before a proposed appointment for Final Inspection.

D. Final project documentation and warranty information shall include, but may not be limited to the following:
   1. Record Documents / Drawings with legible outlet address and cable paths in an AutoCAD format.
   2. Outlet location spreadsheets (MS Excel Spreadsheet).
   3. Warranty Paperwork (Original documents and/or documents scanned into PDFs).
   4. Copy of all test results (MS Excel Spreadsheet).
   5. Copy of the Final Inspection and Acceptance Signoff Sheet (Original documents and/or documents scanned into PDFs).
   6. Photos of each MDF and IDF.

E. Refer to Division 0&1 for additional details and requirements.

1.15 USE OF THE SITE

A. Refer Division 0 & 1

1.16 CONTINUITY OF SERVICES

A. Refer Division 0 & 1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Products included in this section are meant to establish a level of quality, performance and consistency within the Dallas ISD. To establish this consistent level of quality and performance, the district has selected certain products by manufacturer and part number. To change would defeat the effort of consistency and would cost the Dallas ISD. The Dallas ISD stocks a level of replacement parts and to change would increase the cost of stocking additional parts. Where specific parts are mentioned contractor is to supply that part. If the words “or equal” are mentioned, then contractor is to submit a product specification that substantiates that the product is of equal performance. If the words “or approved equal” are stated, contractor is not to substitute without prior approval. If there are no manufacturers or part numbers mentioned, then that part is generic in nature and a contractor-submitted product must be approved as part of the product-selection process.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide products of manufacturers named in this document. No exceptions may be made without written approval from the District ITS Department. Any requested substitutions should be

documented at time of project bid/proposal. Request made after that time are subject to negotiation of cost to the District.

B. Substitution products that are procured and/or installed without prior written approval from the District ITS Department may be rejected out-of-hand. Removal and disposal of rejected items will be at the expense of the contractor.

C. Where no manufacturer is specified, provide products of manufacturers in compliance with specified requirements.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate custom-made equipment with careful consideration given to aesthetic, technical, and functional aspects of equipment and its installation.

2.4 SUITABILITY

A. Provide products that are suitable for the intended use, including, but not limited to considerations regarding environmental, regulatory, and electrical suitability.

2.5 INDOOR VOICE/DATA BACKBONE CABLE

A. Voice: Solid copper, 24 AWG, 100 Ω balanced twisted-pair (UTP), Category 3 backbone cable, in sizes as indicated on the drawings, with mechanical and transmission performance specifications that meet or exceed ANSI/TIA-568-C.2. Note: Listed Type CMP, and/or MPP (as required in latest NEC code) for inside cable.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Superior Essex Product Line
      a. Part Number: 10032111 25-pair Plenum-rated or Dallas ISD approved equal.

B. Data: Multimode 50/125 µm diameter premise distribution loose tube plenum-rated armored OM3 optical fiber, with mechanical and transmission performance specifications that meet or exceed ANSI/TIA-568-C.3 Standards. All fiber optic cables installed within buildings are to be plenum rated cables with plenum armored jacket. For installations exceeding 300 meters, other cable options such as using OM4 Multimode or OS1 Single-mode cable may be considered. Consult with DISD IT Staff before ordering, procuring or installing cables.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Superior Essex ArmorTek Series GIGAlite-10
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) PDPK006-EB3010/25 6-strand OM3 or Dallas ISD approved equal.
         2) PDPKO24-EB3010/25 24-strand OM3 of Dallas ISD approved equal.

2.6 DATA STATION CABLE

A. Solid copper, 24 AWG, 100 Ω balanced twisted-pair (UTP) Category 5e/6 cable with four individually twisted-pairs, which meet or exceed the mechanical and transmission performance specifications in ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 up to 100 MHz for Category 5e and up to 250MHz for Category 6 cable. See cable color scheme chart below for the used to signify Category 5e/6 cable. Note: Listed Type CMP, and/or MPP (as required in latest NEC code) for inside cable.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Superior Essex Cat6 Cable:
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) 66-240-6B DataGain Category 6+ UTP, Plenum, Cable --Yellow
         2) 66-240-2B DataGain Category 6+ UTP, Plenum, Cable – Blue
         3) 66-240-5B DataGain Category 6+ UTP, Plenum, Cable - Green
   2. Approved Manufacturer: : Marathon LAN Category 5e Cable

B. Cat5e Cable: Marathon LAN Category 5e Cable
   1. Product Description: Marathon LAN, Category 5e UTP, Plenum, Cable-White
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) 51-241-48 Marathon LAN, Category 5e UTP, Plenum, Cable - White
         2) 51-241-28 Marathon LAN, Category 5e UTP, Plenum, Cable - Blue
         3) 51-241-58 Marathon LAN, Category 5e UTP, Plenum, Cable – Green.

CABLE COLOR SCHEME CHART

Jack to Patch Panel	Color	Category Rating

Computers or other	Yellow	6
Computers or other	White	5e
Security Cameras	Yellow	6
Security Cameras	White	5e
Wireless AP's – Non-Erate	Blue	5e / 6
Wireless AP's - Erate	Green	5e/ 6

2.7 OUTDOOR VOICE/DATA BACKBONE FIBER OPTIC CABLE

A. Data: Multimode 50/125 µm diameter indoor/outdoor loose tube plenum-rated OM4 optical fiber, with mechanical and transmission performance specifications that meet or exceed ANSI/TIA-568-C.3 Standards. All fiber optic cables installed within buildings are to be plenum rated cables with plenum armored jacket. Use armored indoor/outdoor plenum-rated cabling for installation within an underground duct. For installations exceeding 300 meters, other cable options such as using OM4 Multimode or OS1 Single-mode cable may be considered. Consult with DISD IT Staff before ordering, procuring or installing cables.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Superior Essex ArmorTek Series GIGAlite-10, GIGAlite-10XB
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) LTPK006-EB3010/25 6-strand OM3 or Dallas ISD approved equal.
         2) LTPKOXO24-EB3010/25 24-strand OM3 or Dallas ISD approved equal.

B. Multimode 50/125 µm diameter outdoor OM3 optical fiber, with number of usable fibers as shown on drawings, which meet or exceed the mechanical and transmission performance specifications listed in ANSI/TIA-568-C.3 and ANSI/TIA-758(A) Standards. In some cases, non-armored fiber optic cabling may be used. Check with DISD IT Staff for specific information. For installations exceeding 300 meters, other cable options such as using OM4 Multimode or OS1 Single-mode cable may be considered. Consult with DISD IT Staff before ordering, procuring or installing cables.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Superior Essex Adventum Series Gigalite-10, GIGAlite-10XB
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) LTP006-EB3010/25 6-strand OM4 or Dallas ISD approved equal.
         2) LTP0X024-EB3010/25 24-strand OM4 or Dallas ISD approved equal.

2.8 TEACHING WALL MULTI MEDIA WORKSTATION

A. A typical teaching wall multimedia outlet locations will consist of a multimedia outlet box, located beneath the touch screen on the teaching wall. Each cable type used in multimedia installations shall be plenum-rated.

B. Multimedia outlet – Single HDMI 1.3 Modular Connector.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) (1) HDMI 1.3 Modular Connector OR-60900372 or Dallas ISD approved equal.
         2) (1) Double Gang Series II Face Plate OR-40300159 or Dallas ISD approved equal.
         3) (1) Clarity Category 6 Module OR-S22600 or Dallas ISD approved equal.
         4) (4) Blank Module OR-40300164 or Dallas ISD approved equal.

C. Cable bundle (non-GC scope) at ceiling location near ceiling mounted projector (non-classroom areas only) – one (1) Duplex-Electrical Outlet and one (1) HDMI 1.3 Modular Connector.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Legrand|Ortronics Product Line
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-EP-048-01 Media Outlet Kit or Dallas ISD approved equal.

2.9 VOICE/DATA OUTLETS

A. Single-gang mounting plate containing the following devices:

B. Data ports – two (2) or four (4) data port outlets 8-pin modular, Category 5e/6, un-keyed jacks,

C. pinned to the T568B standards. Install blank inserts for any unused opening. Run discrete Category 5e/6 cables from the outlets to the nearest IDF.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Series II Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal.
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) (1) OR-40300158 Series II Faceplate
         2) (1) OR-S22600 Series II, 2 Cat6 modules
         3) (2) OR-40300164 Series II, Blanking Module

2.10 TERMINATION BLOCKS

A. Provide termination punch blocks for termination of voice station cables and for backbone termination only. Supply 110 style punch block frames (100 Pair, 300 Pair, or 900 pair).
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics 110 Cross Connect System or Dallas ISD approved equal.
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-30203519 300Pr block kit with C4 clips
         2) OR-30200095 300Pr block kit with C5 clips
         3) OR-30200026 900Pr block kit with C4 clips
         4) OR-30200024 900Pr block kit with C5 clips
         5) OR-806003194 300Pr Single channel vertical mgt. for 300Pr
         6) OR-806003196 900Pr Single channel vertical mgt. for 900Pr

B. Provide horizontal and vertical wiring troughs between MDF frame sections.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics 110 Cross Connect System or Dallas ISD approved equal.

2.11 VOICE AND DATA PATCH PANELS

A. Use 19” rack mountable, Angled-face 24-or 48port patch panels with 8-pin modular inserts with insulation displacement connectors (IDC) meeting Category 5e/6 performance standards, and pinned to the TIA568B pin arrangement standard. Use only 48-port panels in new racks. Only use 24-port panels to balance with 48 port switches in existing MDF/IDFs.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal.
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-PHA66U48
         2) OR-PHA66U24

2.12 COPPER PATCH CORDS

A. Dallas ISD-IT-Infrastructure contracted vendor to provide and install copper patch cords (including UTP patch cords connected at patch panels and workstations) and to test and certify end-to-end channel integrity. Refer to Responsibility Matrix in Division 01.

B. Patch cords will be manufactured by the device manufacturer to ensure warranty coverage. Match the patch cords to the Category rating of the cabling being installed. Provide cables of an adequate length with no more slack that is necessary to provide a neat and orderly installation. At the workstation end supply 40% of the patching cables as 7’ and 60% as 15’cables. At the cross-connect end, supply varied lengths from 3’ to 9’. In the small cabinets in the portable buildings and computer labs supply 12” to 24” patch cords.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Legrand|Ortronics Cat6 Patch Cords or Dallas ISD approved equal:

C. Product Description Cat6 cords:
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-MC6xx – 04. Yellow Clarity Cat6 cords xx= length.
         2) OR-MC6xx – 00. Pink Clarity Cat6 cords xx= length.
         3) OR-MC6xx – 06. Blue Clarity Cat6 cords xx= length.
         4) OR-MC6xx – 05. Green Clarity Cat6 cords xx= length.

D. Product Description CAT5e cords: White Clarity Cat5e cords xx= length
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-MC5exx – 09. White Clarity Cat5e cords xx= length.
         2) OR-MC5exx – 00. Pink. Clarity Cat5e cords xx= length.

3) OR-MC5exx – 06. Blue Clarity Cat5e cords xx= length.
4) OR-MC5exx – 05. Green Clarity Cat5e cords xx= length.

PATCH CORDS COLOR SCHEME CHART

Patch Panel to Switch	Color	Category Rating
Computers or other	Yellow	6
Computers or other	White	5e
Security Cameras	Pink	5e/6
Wireless AP's – Non-Erate	Blue	5e / 6
Wireless AP's - Erate	Green	5e/ 6

2.13 WALL MOUNTED OPTICAL FIBER PATCH PANELS

A. Use wall-mounted optical fiber termination panels with 24-strand capacity, hinged door, cable strain relief, slack storage, and LC duplex adapter panels with and provisions for two (2) splice trays. Include adequate amount of duplex LC adapter panels for termination of all installed fiber strands plus 10% for growth.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-615SMFC-24P/S Fiber box
         2) OR-OFP-LCD12MB- 6 port MM Adapter Panel
         3) OR-OFP-LCD12AC - 6 port SM Adapter Panel
         4) OR-62600003 Fusion splice tray, 12 fibers

2.14 RACK MOUNTED OPTICAL FIBER TERMINATION PANEL

A. At the MDF use one (1) or more 72-port rack-mounted optical fiber termination panels with cable strain relief, grounding lugs, slack storage and the appropriate number of LC duplex connector panels. Multiple distribution boxes may be needed, depending on the number of fiber backbones needed to serve the site. Populate with the appropriate number of adapter panels for Duplex LC, multimode or single-mode. Use only duplex LC adapter panels in new installations. (Installations in existing facilities may require SC adapter panels.)
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Number:
         1) OR-FC04U-P

B. At the IDF use a 19" rack mountable cabinet with the appropriate number of fiber termination panels, cable strain relief, grounding lugs, slack storage and duplex LC adapter panels. Populate with the appropriate adapter panels for Duplex LC multimode or single-mode backbone cabling. Use only duplex LC adapter panels for new backbones.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Number:
         1) OR-FC01U-P
         2) OR-FC02U-P

C. Install the appropriate number and type of adapter panels at each patch panel. Use only duplex LC adapter panels.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Number:
         1) OR-OFP-LCD12MB
         2) OR-OFP-LCD12AC
      b. Legacy Part Numbers: Type "SC" Products (for use matching already-installed FOC)
         1) OR-OFP-SCD06MB
         2) OR-OFP-SCD06AC
         3) OR-OFP-SCDO8MB
         4) OR-OFP-SCD08AC
         5) OR-OFP-SCD12MB
         6) OR-OFP-SCD12AC

2.15 FIBER OPTIC TERMINATION CASE

A. If needed, use termination case sized for single-mode and multimode fibers, nonmetallic with clear plastic cover, 12-fiber capacity and compatible with termination case and termination methods. Install in the appropriate termination case. Use only above ground and within a weather-tight enclosure.
   1. Approved Manufacturer:
      a. Coyote Preformed Line Products or Dallas ISD approved equal.
      b. Coyote Series Wall- or Structure-Mount LCC, PUP, RUNT or Single Terminal Closure with shelves as required (depending on strand counts. branches and conditions).

2.16 OPTICAL FIBER CONNECTORS

A. Use field installable LC connectors, which meet or exceed the performance specifications in ANSI/TIA-568-C.3.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Number:
         1) OR-205KAN9GB-SM – Single-mode LC – 25-pack
         2) OR-205KAN9GB-MM – Multimode LC – 25-pack

2.17 OPTICAL FIBER JUMPERS

A. In some scenarios, Optical Fiber Jumpers are to be provided and installed by Equipment Racking (Rack & Stack) Contractor and not the cabling contractor. In most situations (especially in new construction), the Cabling Contractor, working under the GC will be responsible for procuring and installing Optical Fiber Jumpers. Contractor is also responsible for testing and certifying end-to-end channel integrity – including FOC patch cords connected at patch panels in the various IT rooms. A Duplex 50/125-µm OM3/4 (and/or single-mode) optical fiber jumper cable, 1 - 3 m long with 3.0 mm Duplex LC optical fiber connectors on each end. Type A-A and A-B, as required.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-P1RF6LPAZAZxxxM LC/LC A-A Multimode x=length
         2) OR-P1DF6LPAZA00xxxM LC/LC A-B Multimode x=length
         3) OR-P1RC6IPUZUZ00xxxM LC/LC A-A Single-mode x=length
         4) OR-P1DC6IPUZUZ00xxxM LC/LC A-B Single-mode x=length

B. Duplex 50/125-µm OM3/4 (and/or single-mode) optical fiber jumper cable, 1 - 3 m long with SC optical fiber connectors on one end and GBIC-compatible connector on the other end. (For GBIC with LC connectors). NOTE: These jumper types may be required for installation with already-existing cable plants.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-61150D50xxxM79C LC to SC Multimode x=length
         2) OR-626DC3IL-RSxxxM SC to LC Single-mode x = length

2.18 OPEN FRAME EQUIPMENT RACK

A. Use open frame, 19” equipment rack, 7’ overall height with flange base, mounting rails drilled front and back and tapped to EIA-310-D Standards. Provide dual channel front and back vertical wire managers between each rack and at both ends of the rack array. The outer wire managers no to be less that 6” wide and 6” deep and the mid areas vertical wire managers to be not less than 10” wide and 6” deep front and back. Rear vertical wire managers can be flip retainers. Front wire managers must have single door.

   Color: Black for new construction or match existing.
   1. Approved Manufacturer:
      a. Hoffman EDR19FM45UCM2 or equal by:
      b. CPI
      c. Damac
      d. Middle Atlantic
      e. Legrand|Ortronics:

1) Part Numbers:
   a) OR-19-84-T2SDB Black
   b) OR-19-84-T2SD Aluminum

B. For all 4-post racks, where UPS equipment is to be supported, General Contractor to use the 4-post open frame equipment racks. UPS to be installed Eaton 9RK 4-post rack kit with slide rails to provide additional support and stability.

C. General Contractor shall not mix different approved manufacturers' for 2-post and 4-post frame racks. These are to be 19 inches wide, 7 feet overall height with flange base and mounting rails drilled front and back and tapped to EIA-310-D standards.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Legrand|Ortronics or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-MM6706 – 7' H, 45U, 6" Rail Depth
         2) OR-MM6710 – 7' H, 45U, 10.5" Rail Depth

D. In newly constructed Data Centers or WAN Hub/Network Switching Facilities, where significant numbers of Networking, Routing and Switching Chassis are used that have side-discharge cooling fans and where temperature control may be an issue; consideration should be given to using an open racking, air-vectoring system with appropriate vertical cable-management designed for this purpose. System should be deployed only as needed and in consultation with Dallas ISD IT Staff.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Legrand|Ortronics od Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-MM10716 – 7' H, 45U, 16.25" honeycomb rail depth
         2) OR-MM10AB716xx – Airflow Baffles, 7'H, xx = vertical mgr. cage width
         3) OR-MM10VMD712 – 7'Hx12.13"Wx13"D Front vertical mgr. cage w/cover
         4) OR-MM10VMD716 – 7'Hx16.36xWx13"D Front vertical mgr. cage w/cover

2.19 FREE STANDING EQUIPMENT CABINETS

A. Equipment Cabinet –19" 4 post Equipment Cabinet shall have the following minimum requirements:
   1. Approved Manufacturer:
      a. Hoffman
      b. CPI
      c. Damac
      d. Middle Atlantic
      e. Legrand|Ortronics

B. Description: 4 Post 77" (42 rack spaces) of panel space Welded frame construction Locking front and rear doors. Adjustable front and back equipment mounting rails. Rails drilled and tapped to EIA-310-D Standards 10 position electrical outlet strip. Removable side panels. Top mounted, thermostatically controlled exhaust fan. Steel vented Rear split doors. Integral vertical and horizontal wire management. Color: Black for new construction or match existing.

C. In some facilities – especially those involving remodeled spaces – where the IT room location is not as secure as desired (i.e. housed in a storage room or janitor's closet), network equipment should be housed in secure cabinets that also provide room for internal cable management. In these cases, a Network Equipment Cabinet that provides adequate width for cable intensive applications should be provided. These allow large cable bundles to be managed at the sides and do not impede airflow. The cabinet shall include the following minimum requirements:
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Legrand|Ortronics
      a. Part Number:
         1) GXC453136-00005

D. Description: 31.5" W X 45U X 36" D Frame
   1. Adjustable mounting rails - 45U, Tapped #12-24-hole pattern – with RU Labels Black
   2. Full Mesh locking, 16AWG, Front of Rack door
   3. Split, Solid, 14 AWG Rear of Rack Doors
   4. Left and Right Locking Side Panels, 2-Piece

5. Top Panel, Vented (2 Fan Cut-out), w/ 2 cable ports
6. Vertical Manager Fingers for Front Vertical Rails
7. Fan, 6” DIA., 12-Volt, 235 CFM, 24” Cord, NEMA 1-15P Plug, Black

2.20 WALL MOUNTED CABINETS

A. Provide wall mounted cabinets in every portable building or otherwise specified locations approved by District ITS Department. When wall mounted cabinets are installed in an area where students may be present, they shall be installed high enough to be out of reach of students, and of the totally enclosed and lockable type. Cabinets are to be sized for the application.

B. Wall Mount Cabinet shall have Smoked Plexiglas Front Door with 18awg steel frame with 24” cabinet depth. Two (2) adjustable mounting rails with #12-24 tapped holes adjust every 1.0” front to rear. Front rail factory mounted 3.5” from frame face.
   1. Approved Manufacturers: Ortronics or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-DCW122424P-B 12RU
         2) OR-DCW192424P-B 19RU
         3) OR-DCW262424P-B 26RU

2.21 POWER STRIPS

A. Provide Power Strips in every full-size cabinet. Power Strips should have two (2) convenience outlets on the front and eight (8) on the back. There shall be an integral circuit interrupter, surge suppression, and a shielded on/off switch. The switch shall be manufactured with a guard so as to prevent accidental powering off. Provide a 15’ connecting cord.
   1. Approved Manufacturer Hoffman od Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Number:
         1) DPIN1910155

2.22 WIRE MANAGEMENT

A. When not included with the rack, provide Horizontal and Vertical wire management in every open rack and cabinet for management of patch cables and horizontal cabling. Horizontal units shall be provided in a quantity of two (2) per cabinet.
   1. Approved Manufacturer:
      a. Hoffman
      b. Legrand|Ortronics
         1) Part Numbers: Hoffman:
            a) DCHS2 Horizontal
            b) DV6D7 Vertical
            c) DV10D7 Vertical
         2) Part Numbers: Legrand|Ortronics:
            a) OR-MM6HM62RU Horizontal manager
            b) OR-DVMS706 Dual Vertical manager for 2 post EIA rack

B. When using angle-faced patching panels for the Cat6 horizontal UTP cable system, horizontal cable managers are required only for support of FOC patching cables in the fiber field portion of the rack. Horizontal support of UTP patching cables is not required in that these are relatively stiff and can be run from their respective modular outlets on patch panels directly to the vertical wire managers along the sides of the rack where slack loops are draped/stored and the other ends of the cables are run directly to switch ports located in the same rack. Under this scenario, extra wide, full-depth vertical cable managers with combing fingers on both sides should be used to route, comb and store patch cables. Vertical managers between racks should be wider than those mounted on the ends of the rack rows so as to manage patching cables from both sides.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Legrand|Ortronics or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Numbers:
         1) OR-MM6VMD706 – Full-Depth 6.5” Wide x 8” Deep
         2) OR-MM6VMD710 – Full Depth 10.5” Wide x 13” Deep

3) OR-MM10VMD712 – Full Depth 12.13” Wide x 13” Deep
4) OR-MM10VMD716 – Full Depth 16.13” Wide x 13” Deep

2.23 INFRASTRUCTURE SUPPORT SYSTEM

A. All Cable shall be properly supported. The infrastructure support system shall be comprised of three (3) types of support.

B. Cable Runway Systems (Ladder Racking) to be used within the MDF and IDF.
   1. Approved Manufacturer:
      a. Hoffman or equal by:
      b. CPI
      c. DMAC
      d. Hoffman
      e. Wiremold
      f. Legrand|Ortronics

C. Supply the appropriate accessories, support brackets, and connecting kits for the specific application. Use appropriate bonding parts or couplers that are listed for the purpose. Cable Basket Tray Systems to be used for the main cable paths in the hallways. Only to be used in new spaces.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Cablofil or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Number:
         1) CF54/300
         2) CF54/150

D. Design the cable tray system to the specific school/location and size so as not to exceed a 50% fill ratio. Use all manufacturer-recommended parts for assembly and for electrical bonding. Use center hung hanger brackets, trapeze hangers, and/or wall mounted brackets. Support every 5’ along the length of the tray. Use appropriate firestopping transitions through fire rated walls.

E. Cable hangers are to be spaced no more than 60” apart. These are to be used on new schools when the cables leave the cable tray and on existing schools where cable tray does not exist. Use only hangers sized and approved for data cable installation. They must have rounded edges and do not exceed the recommend fill. Bridle Rings are not acceptable. Use J-hanger or Bridle Strap assembles. Cables installed between hangers are to have no more than a 9” drape at the midpoint.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturer:
      a. Hilti
      b. Erico
      c. Caddy
      d. B-Line

2.24 RACEWAYS/CONDUITS

A. There are basically six (6) types of raceway that may be installed. Install the raceways in accordance with the National Electrical Code and the ANSI/TIA 569 Standards. Pay particular attention to fill, bend radius, and number of 90 degree elbows between access points and junction boxes. Use the following where applicable:
   1. Schedule 40/80 PVC (Underground)
   2. IMC steel conduit (Outside above ground)
   3. EMT (Inside)
   4. Dual Channel Metal Raceway (Classrooms):
      a. Acceptable Manufacturer:
         1) Wiremold/Legrand|Ortronics
   5. Tele-Power Poles:
      a. Acceptable Manufacturer:
         1) Wiremold/Legrand|Ortronics
            a) Part Number:
            b) 30TP-412V352

6. In Computer labs, when required, use Wiremold pre-wired, two channel model and all appropriate fittings.

2.25 FIRESTOPPING

A. Approved firestopping systems are to be installed in all locations where cabling system penetrate rated walls. These firestopping systems should be permanently installed, but should be able to be easily reentered in the event new or additional cables need to be added at a future date. All systems should be approved in advance by the Project Engineer.
   1. Acceptable manufacturers for firestopping are provided below.
      a. Hilti CP 653 2”/4” Speed Sleeve
      b. Hilti CP 658T 2”/4” Firestop Plug
      c. Hilti 675T Firestop Board
      d. Hilti CP 620 Fire Foam
      e. Hilti CP 618 Firestop Putty Stick
   2. Wiremold Flamestopper Thru-Wall/Floor Fitting Systems for New & Retrofit Applications
   3. STI EZ-Path System

2.26 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Wall surface-applied enclosed metal raceways (i.e. Wiremold/Legrand|Ortronics) are to be considered for electrical and low-voltage cabling but its application will be limited due to cost. These systems should only be provided within existing building installations, where wall penetration is not possible. Electrical/cable raceways cast into the concrete floor system and raised flooring systems will not be used due to the cost. All raceways shall be installed so as to be as discrete as possible with little or no disturbance to classroom functionality or aesthetics.

B. Classrooms Wiremold/Legrand|OrtronicsV2400D raceway shall be installed in classrooms where access to wall cavity is not possible to each outlet location. The V2400D dual channel raceway will accommodate the installation of quad isolated ground electrical outlets utilizing the V2444D-2A “over the raceway” 2-gang device box, and a V2444D “over the raceway” 2 gang device box for the installation of two (2) Category 5e/6 outlets with an Ortronics Series II Faceplate and Category 5e/6 inserts. Installer is responsible for all fittings to install required number of outlets in each classroom when installing this raceway.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Wiremold/Legrand|Ortronics or Dallas ISD approved equal.
      a. Part Number:
         1) V2400BD-FW Base
         2) V2400C-FW Cover
         3) V2444D-FW Service Box

C. Computer Labs When required, computer lab raceway shall be Wiremold Series AL4300 pre-wired metal dual channel raceway with the LPB3S2 bezels supporting the proper attachment of jacks. Raceway shall accommodate twenty (20) technology work area outlets and ten (10) quad isolated ground electrical outlets. Raceway system is to be installed so that an outlet can be accessed from any wall in the computer lab. Installer is responsible for all fittings to install required number of outlets in each classroom when installing this raceway.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Wiremold/Legrand|Ortronics or Dallas ISD approved equal:
      a. Part Number:
         1) AL4320 (raceway)
         2) LPB3S2 (low profile bezels)

2.27 LISTED BUILDING ENTRANCE PROTECTORS

A. Protect all copper cables run between buildings with approved over-current protection. Use the protector module with IDC type input and output terminals, 100-pair capacity and female mounting base, equipped with 230 volt gas protector modules. Provide sufficient protector modules to completely populate all building entrance terminals. (Note: Both ends of cables should be equipped with entrance protection systems)
   1. Approved Manufacturer:
      a. Circa or Dallas ISD approved equal.

2.28 SPLICE HOUSING

A. Encapsulated or re-enterable splice housing, sized as required with bonding straps, accessories, end caps and encapsulate as required.

B. Splice modules (such as 710 series or MS2) for use within splice housing.

C. The splice closures for the portable buildings shall be of the cabinet type that will house enough splice bays for the particular installation. Splice tray shall accommodate at least twelve (12) mechanical or fusion splices.

2.29 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SYSTEMS

A. For new schools a single Central UPS system (minimum 10KVA or sized to service MDF and all IDFs) shall be installed in the MDF. All associated IDFs will be supported via electrical tie services from the MDF. Electrical cable sized appropriately shall be installed from the MDF to each associated IDF room and terminated as the main electrical feed for the IDF. (Refer to Technical Design Guidelines Division 27 - Figure 27 05 00 – 07).

B. No UPS systems are desired at Portable Building, due to maintenance issues.

C. In existing schools, various UPS systems will be installed at new IDF, wall mounted cabinets, and computer labs.

D. The UPS system(s) have to be sized large enough to the handle the load for each application. Due to the weight of the batteries, UPS system(s) provided shall be adequate for the anticipated load in all rooms with a “keepalive” time of 1 hour. UPS and Battery stacks shall be sized to accommodate approximately 75 percent of the full load in amperes. Supply SMART UPS Software.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: American Power Conversion

2.30 PROJECTOR TO MULTIMEDIA OUTLET CABLES

NOTE: Non-GC Scope. For each ceiling-mounted projector location install the following plenum-rated cables:

A. One (1) Hi-Res Component Video Mini-Coax between the SVGA connectors
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Belden

B. One (1) Category 6 installed between RCA connectors
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Superior Essex

C. One (1) HDMI 1.3 compliant cable between the HDMI modular connectors. A pre-manufactured cable is preferred in this application.
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Belden

2.31 WIRELESS ACCESS POINTS

A. Surface Mounted Device Box for single Category 5e/6 insert installed adjacent to Wireless Access point
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Wiremold or Dallas ISD approved equal.

B. Category 5e/6 Insert and faceplate to be installed in surface-mounted box
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Ortronics Product Line

C. Protective Cover for high potential for damage areas
   1. Approved Manufacturer: Hoffman DU606030P or Dallas ISD approved equa.

2.32 PORTABLE BUILDING CONNECTIVITY

NOTE: Excludes Construction Swing Space

A. Outdoor Enclosure and Cable
   1. Approved Manufacturer and Part Number:
      a. Coyote
         1) Century ESTC-144S Outdoor Cabinet Century OST-103F 12-Strand Fusion Splice Tray
      b. Cable:
         1) 24-strand Triple Jacket Double Armor OSP MM 50µm Fiber

B. Indoor Cabinet and Cable within Portable Buildings
   1. Approved Manufacturer and Part Number:
      a. Ortronics OR-401045284 – Series II patch panels for copper multimedia
      b. Ortronics OR-S22600 – Jacks
      c. OR-625MMC-12PD1RB – Fiber cabinet, 6-SC multimode duplex (for 12 fibers)
      d. OR-625MMC-24PD1RB – Fiber cabinet, 12-SC multimode duplex (for 24 fibers)
      e. Ortronics OR-60900343 – SC adapter panel
      f. Ortronics OR-62100040 – 6 strand housing
      g. Ortronics OR-62100048 – 6 strand MM adapter
      h. Ortronics OR-626PF9FR-FZ001M – simplex pigtail MM 50u 1m (2 required)
      i. OR-P1DF2LRFZFZxxxM – SC Duplex, x=length
      j. Century C10100 – Fusion Splice Holder
      k. Superior Essex 1C006AG01 – 6 strand triple jacket double armor OSP MM 50u fiber
      l. Legrand|Ortronics Product Line – LTP006EB3010/25 6 strands OM3

2.33 BIOSCREEN CLOCK

A. Approved Manufacturer and Part Numbers:
   1. Timeware Primetime Bio clock BS-1040 JLB-Series LCD Panel/Touchscreen
   2. Timeware Bio clock Mounting Bracket
   3. Category 6 Data Cable provided with IEEE 803.3af Power Over Ethernet (PoE)
   4. Conduit and single-gang backbox
   5. Flush-mount with conduit/backbox/cabling inside wall, where practical. Surface mount on solid and CMU walls using 2”x6” or 2”x8” stand-off block.
   6. BIO clock to be mounted in compliance with ADA requirements
   7. Contact
      Network Service ITS Bond Project Manager: (972) 925-5670

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION

A. Installation Contractors are to provide industry best practices and follow all references and guidelines mentioned in this specification package. Any deviation from this section must be approved by DISD ITS Department prior to installation of products. Installation shall not progress without a complete and approved design package either provided by the assigned project Architect or an Independent Cable System design consultant.

3.2 PRE-INSTALLATION SITE SURVEY

A. A mandatory site survey shall be performed prior to any work being done. A representative of the District and a representative of the Installation Contractor shall meet at the designated school to perform an in-depth Site Survey based on provided design documentation. This Site Survey will be used to:
   1. Determine exact locations of all work area outlets, backbones, portable buildings, MDF and IDF requirements.
   2. Determine if any electrical and HVAC changes will be required for a fully operational system.
   3. Examine areas and conditions under which the system is to be installed.
   4. Review areas of potential interference and resolve conflicts before proceeding with the work.
   5. Coordinate with the General Contractor and/or the School’s Principal to plan the crucial scheduled completion dates of the cable plant, equipment room and telecommunications rooms.

B. Contractor is not to proceed with any work until the District or General Contractor issues a purchase order or contract for the project.

3.3 HANDLING AND PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. Contractor is responsible for safekeeping of their own and the School's property, such as equipment and materials to be used on the job site. The owner assumes no responsibility for protection of above-named property against fire, theft, and environmental conditions.

B. Store Materials Refer Division 0 & 1

3.4 PROTECTION OF OWNER'S FACILITIES

A. Effectively protect the owner's facilities, equipment, and materials from dust, dirt, and damage during construction.

B. Work only in designated areas. Keep installation personnel out of undesignated work areas.

C. Absolutely No Smoking or Use of Tobacco Products is allowed on School property.

D. Take breaks only in designated areas. Pick up all trash and dispose of it after each break.

E. Pick up all trash, replace ceiling tiles and return furniture and office equipment to original locations before leaving a room. All equipment in all areas should be tested and left in working order.

F. If necessary, furniture and floors shall be cleaned and/or dusted prior to exiting any work area.

G. Contractor's workers are not to use furniture in lieu of ladders or appropriate scaffolding to reach overhead workspaces. Ladders and scaffolds are to be manned in accordance with District policy and OSHA regulations.

H. Do not work in areas where hazardous materials are known to exist without proper preparation and permission. Check with the school district for locations of asbestos and other hazardous materials before starting work at any existing school site.

I. The Installation Contractor's job foreman shall do daily inspections of the areas where work is going on to assure safe working conditions and that every work area is left clean and as it was before start of work.

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. Receive, check, unload, handle, store, and adequately protect equipment and materials to be installed as part of the standard operating procedures. Store tools and materials in areas as directed by the owner's representative. Include delivery, unloading, setting in place, fastening to walls, floors, ceilings, or other structures where required, interconnecting wiring of system components, equipment alignment and adjustment, and other related work whether or not expressly defined herein.

B. Install materials and equipment in accordance with applicable standards, codes, requirements, and recommendations of national, state, and local authorities having jurisdiction, and National Electrical Code® (NEC) and with manufacturer's printed instructions.

C. Adhere to manufacturer's published specifications for pulling tension, minimum bend radius, and sidewall pressure when installing cables. Where manufacturer does not provide bending radii information, minimum-bending radius shall be 15 times cable diameter. Arrange and mount equipment and materials in a manner acceptable to the engineer and the owner.

D. Penetrations through floors shall utilize intermediate metallic conduit (IMC) or galvanized rigid conduit (GRC) sleeves and shall be fire-stopped after installation and testing, utilizing a firestopping assembly approved for that application. Installations through fire-rated walls shall utilize properly sized Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT) sleeves with bushings installed on both sides and shall be properly fire-stopped after installation and testing, utilizing a firestopping assembly approved for that application. A minimum of two (2) 4" sleeves shall be installed for access to IDFs and three (3) for MDF. Use a minimum of 1" sleeves for access to classrooms. Properly fire seal after the installation of horizontal cables.

E. Install station cabling to the nearest telecommunications room (IDF) per design documents, unless otherwise noted. Workstation cables shall not exceed 285' from the outlet to the patch panel in the IDF.

F. Installation shall conform to the following basic guidelines:

1. Use only approved wire, cable, and wiring devices.
2. Provide neat and uncluttered wire terminations.
3. All Cable shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. Comb and neatly bundle all cables entering the MDF and IDFs. Properly support the cables within these rooms and store the service loops in a neat and orderly manner. Use Velcro ties for re-entry of the bundle and do not over tighten. Above ceilings in plenum spaces us ties that are plenum rated.
4. All cables will be permanently labeled 1" from the termination of each end of each cable. Labeling shall be done with field printers. Other than for field installation organization, handwriting on cables and/or labels is not permitted.
5. All Cables, Patch Panels and Wall Plates will be permanently labeled with an alpha numerical scheme approved by the District ITS Department per Section 3.6 below.

G. Cables shall be properly supported at a maximum of 5' intervals with no more than 9" of drape between support points. The cable suspension system shall be independently supported from the structure and not attached to the ceiling support wires or other conduit systems. Limit the number of cables supported by a single j-hook or other device to 50. In existing schools when possible install the cable and independent cable support system above A/C ducts and HVAC mixing boxes.

H. Install adequate support structures for a 10' service slack loop on each cable in each MDF and IDF. Service loops shall not be stored in round coils.

I. Support riser cables every three (3) floors and at the top of the run with cable grips. Limit number of four-pair data riser cables per grip to 50.

J. Install cables in one continuous run per ANSI/TIA-568-C.0. Splices in the horizontal cable system and of any workstation cables shall not be allowed. Splices of backbone cable shall only be allowed as permitted at predetermined locations with proper means and methods.

K. Provide over-voltage protection on both ends of cabling exposed to lightning or accidental contact with power conductors. Properly ground protectors according to the National Electrical Code (NFPA 70) and the ANSI/TIA 568 and 569 Standards.

L. Properly bond all equipment racks to a grounding buss that is connected to the building grounding system with a minimum of #6 AWG copper wire. Grounding cables are to be uninsulated and marked with green adhesive tape or insulated with green insulation. Grounding/Bonding system shall meet ANSI/TIA 607 Standards.

M. All cables shall be concealed in ceilings and hollow walls where possible. Where ceiling and walls are not accessible, use properly sized surface-mounted conduit or metallic raceways with boxes that permit proper bending radiuses. (Consider using term radii)

N. Portable Buildings: Each existing school portable building will require a data connection to the campus network. Typically, there will be clusters of eight (8) portable buildings with two classrooms per building. Connect them to the campus in the following manner.
   1. Near the cluster of portable buildings install a centrally-located outdoor cabinet mounted in the walkway cover. Cables from the MDF and the portable buildings shall come up into this enclosure.
   2. Install a wall mounted cabinet in each portable building. Within this cabinet will be a 12-port patch panel for the two classrooms, a fiber termination box, wire management devices and a small electronic LAN switch. Install this cabinet near existing power if possible.
   3. This "small" switch should be "manageable" via the existing SNMP-based network management/monitoring system.
   4. From a point nearest the internal wall mounted cabinet in each portable building, run a 1" conduit to the external fiber cabinet in the walkway cover. At the portable building stub the conduit up and into the wall mounted cabinet within each portable building. Weatherproof these penetrations as needed.
   5. Install electrical grade schedule 40 PVC conduit underground. Install IMC conduit where the conduit come out of the ground and outside of the building above grade. Use sweep IMC 90 degree elbows and bends where the conduits are turned up or where turns are needed.

6. Trench and backfill or horizontally bore to a minimum depth of 2’ below grade. Make all attempts to locate any existing utilities, water sprinkler piping, telephone, and electrical lines before trenching and boring. Only as a last resort will saw cutting and patching of driveways and walkways be permitted.
7. Run specified fiber cable from the MDF to the external fiber cabinet in the walkway cover. Leave a 10’ service loop on each end.
8. Run a minimum of a 6-fiber cable from the external fiber cabinet in the walkway cover to the wall mounted cabinet in each portable building.
9. If a proper grounding point is not supplied at the portable building, install an 8’ grounding rod and run a number 6 AWG Solid armored ground cable from the ground rod to the wall mounted cabinet. Use UL listed termination devices for the ground rod and the cabinet. 10. All copper-based cables running to/from portable buildings shall be equipped with lightning protection blocks on both ends.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. Grounding shall conform to ANSI/TIA 607(A) - Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications, National Electrical Code®, ANSI/NECA/BICSI-568 and manufacturer's grounding requirements as minimum.

B. Bond and ground equipment racks, housings, messenger cables, and raceways.

C. Connect all MDF and IDF cabinets, racks, and frames to single-point ground which is connected to building ground system via #6 AWG green insulated copper grounding conductor.

D. For each MDF and IDF, insure grounding system and building ground is tested to be in compliance with ANSI/TIA-607(A).

3.7 LABELING

Labeling shall conform to ANSI/TIA-606(A) standards. In addition, provide the following:

A. Label each outlet with machine-printed, permanent, self-adhesive label with minimum 3/16” high characters.

B. Label each cable with machine-printed, permanent self-adhesive label with minimum, 1/8” high characters, in the following locations.
   1. Inside receptacle box at the work area.
   2. Behind the communication room patch panel or punch block.

C. Use machine-printed labels on face of data patch panels. Provide facility assignment records in a protective cover at each telecommunications room location that is specific to the facilities terminated therein.

D. Use color-coded labels for each termination field that conforms to ANSI/TIA-606(A).

E. Mount termination blocks on color-coded backboards.

F. Permanent labels shall be machine-printed. Hand-lettered permanent labels shall not be acceptable. Hand lettering may be used on cable jackets or temporary labels during the construction process.

G. Label cables, outlets, patch panels, and punch blocks as follows:

H. Each end of the cable shall be labeled with a To/From identifier. One or both ends will identify the MDF/IDF end of the cable while the other end will typically identify the room and port location.
   1. To/From as IDFxxyzz/Rxxxxyy where
   2. MDF/IDF # - Patch Sequence letter – Port #
   3. Format: IDFxxyzz (xx = MDF/IDF #, y = Patch Panel Sequence letter A-Z, zz = Port #)
   4. Examples: IDF03A35 for IDF # 03, patch panel A, port 35
   5. MDF01D13 for MDF # 01. patch panel D, port 13
   6. Room # - Port letter
   7. Format: Rxxxxyy (xxxx = Room #, yy = Port letter within room)

Examples R115D for Room # 115, port D (the 4th port)
R1035AB for Room # 1035, port AB (the 28th port (A=26 + B=2))

Each outlet, patch panel port and punch block shall be labeled at the end points as defined above.

3.8 3.7 TESTING

A. Testing shall conform to the latest version of the ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 Standards/ANSI/TIA-1152 Testing Standards for Balanced Twisted Pair Copper Cabling and/or the warranty requirements of Ortronics and Superior Essex. Testing shall be accomplished using level III or higher field testers loaded with the most up to date firmware. Fluke 4300 series testers are the preferred tester. If using any other approved tester, provide end user run time software to store, read, and print test results. Within the submittal package specified above, provide three (3) CD's and hardcopies with all of the Copper test results for each school. Identify each cable by label address.

B. Test each pair and shield of each cable for opens, shorts, grounds, attenuation and pair reversal. Correct grounded and reversed pairs. Examine open and shorted pairs to determine if problem is caused by improper termination. If termination is proper, tag bad pairs at both ends and note on termination sheets.
   1. Perform testing of copper cables with tester meeting ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 requirements.
   2. If copper backbone cable contains more than one (1) percent bad pairs, remove and replace entire cable.

C. Initially test optical cable with a light source and power meter utilizing procedures as stated in ANSI/TIA-526-14A: OFSTP-14A Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant and ANSI/TIA-526-7 Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-mode Fiber Cable Plant. Measured results shall be plus/minus 1 dB of submitted loss budget calculations. If loss figures are outside of this range, test cable with optical time domain reflectometer to determine cause of variation. Correct improper splices and replace damaged cables at no charge to the Owner.
   1. Cables shall be tested at 850 and 1300 nm for multimode optical fiber cables. Cables shall be tested at 1310 and 1550 nm for single-mode optical fibers.
   2. Testing procedures shall utilize "Method B" – One jumper reference.
   3. Bi-directional testing of optical fibers is required.

D. Attenuation test shall result in acceptable level as defined by manufacturer.

E. Insure grounding system and building ground is installed and tested to be in compliance with ANSI/TIA-607(B).

F. Where any portion of the system does not meet the specifications or applicable standards, correct deviation and repeat applicable testing at no additional cost to the owner.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Cabling Contractor will employ a project manager and inspectors to control the quality of each project. The Project Manager shall be a RCDD® (Registered Communications Distribution Designer) with current registration. He/she shall be responsible for quality control during installation, equipment set-up, and testing for all projects. The Project Manager shall employ Quality Control Inspectors in enough quantity to adequately inspect each project on a regular basis. These personnel shall also perform all final inspections of the projects. The Project Manager's responsibility is to assure concurrence and enforcement of the specifications and standards. The Inspectors shall be BICSI and/or Ortronics certified Technicians.

B. Each Installation Contractor shall employ a superintendent or project manager as the single point of contact for their projects. During the course of the installations he/she is to provide coordination of work for each project, insure enforcement of this specification and standards, and provide technical information when requested. It is preferred that this person be an RCDD® (Registered Communications Distribution Designer) with current registration. He/she shall be responsible for quality control of the assigned projects during installation, equipment set-up, and testing.

C. All installation personnel shall be Ortronics Certified Technicians or Equivalent.

D. Installation personnel shall meet manufacturers' training and education requirements for implementation of the extended warranty program. Subcontracting by the Installation Contractor

shall not be permitted without express written permission from DISD ITS Department. If permission is granted for any subcontractors, then that subcontractor shall be bound by this document and shall furnish proof of bonding and insurance requirements.

End of Section

SECTION 27 45 00

ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The drawings and general provisions of the Contract Documents apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Provide a complete turnkey Electronic Communications Interface integrated with the existing Dallas ISD District-Wide Emergency Communication System.

B. All bids shall be based on the equipment as specified herein. Catalog numbers and model designations are that of the Rauland-Borg Emergency Communications, Public Address and Master Clock System which constitutes the standard of quality, functions and features set forth in these specifications.

C. This section includes a fully operational IP platform for district-wide internal and school communications system incorporating school safety notifications and general communications including but not limited to the following:

1. The platform shall provide complete internal communications and employing state of the art IP Technology including the minimum functions listed:
    a. Two-way internal intercommunications between staff locations and classrooms.
    b. Scheduled bell events
    c. Emergency announcement that will override any pre-programmed zones assuring that all Emergency/Lockdown etc., are heard at each and every speaker location.
    d. Capability of prerecording emergency announcements that can simply be activated by a simple Soft Key or via a dedicated push button.
    e. Atomic Time Synchronization with Class Change Tones utilizing multiple, programmable schedules for each zone.
    f. District wide, Emergency, group, all school and zone live voice paging
    g. District wide, emergency, group, all school and zone paging for pre-recorded audio – tones, music and voice.
    h. Web-based user interface.
2. The system shall support a minimum of 1000 level priorities which shall be user definable, allowing each end point to place a minimum of 5 different priority calls at the same time.
3. Any authorized administrator shall be able to call from outside the school into any classroom, zone or entire school directly via the School District supplied SIP enabled Telephone Network. This shall allow remote monitoring, call-in annunciation and two-way conversation from outside the facility as well as paging into the system. (Compliance with NEMA Standard SB-40 for emergency communications in K-12 Schools)
4. Authorized system users shall be able to create a minimum of twenty (20) automated sequences with emergency instructions, tones, and emails and relay activations and replay them.
5. Automated message strings shall be manually initiated from a single-button access on the console, on a SIP connected telephone, a panic button, from the web interface or via interface with third party systems.
6. Paging and two-way intercom features shall be accessible from any system console or SIP connected telephone for each campus.
7. The platform shall synchronize its system time to the network timeserver or a web-based time server.
8. Each single campus installation shall be locally survivable for intercom, paging, bells, and emergencies such as lockdown, even when the district connection is unavailable.
9. This specification establishes a minimum level of quality, features, and performance for individual components as well as the integrated system.

1.3 DEFINITION OF TERMS

A. Installer(s): Shall refer to the person, persons, or company who or which contracts to perform the work specified herein.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product data for each component.

B. Shop Drawings: Prior to proceeding with the work provide detailed equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location of each field connection, and a complete schedule of all equipment and materials with associated manufacturers cuts sheets which are to be used.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Include a single-line diagram showing cabling interconnection of components and levels throughout system and impedances.
   2. Artwork drawings and lists indicating proposed nameplate nomenclature and arrangements for control panels and plug panels prior to fabrication reflecting equipment used.
   3. Each drawing shall have a descriptive title and all sub-parts of each drawing shall be labeled. All drawings shall have the name and locations of the project, Systems Contractor's name in the title block.
   4. Details and descriptions of any other aspect of the system, which must differ from the contract documents due to field conditions or equipment, furnished.

C. FCC Approval: The system shall be approved for direct interconnection to the telephone utility under Part 68 of FCC rules and regulations. Systems, which are not FCC approved or utilize an intermediary device for connection, will not be considered. Provide the FCC registration number of the system being proposed as part of the submittal process.

D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of equipment certifying that products furnished comply with specified requirements.

E. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements.

F. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that they comply with requirements.

G. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements. Include record of final matching transformer-tap settings, and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.

H. Maintenance Data: For equipment to be included in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.
   1. Record of Owners equipment-programming option decisions.
   2. All instructions necessary for proper operation and manufacturer's instructions.
   3. "Proof of Performance" information.
   4. Manufacturer's maintenance information.
   5. Copies of non-proprietary computer programs and system set up disks documenting all programmable features of the installed system.

I. Record Drawings: Prior to final acceptance, provide three (3) complete sets of drawings indicating all cable numbers and construction details in accordance with the actual system installation. Revise all shop drawings to represent actual installation conditions. These Record Drawings will be used during "Final Acceptance Testing".

J. System Training: Submit the following information describing the training programs and system trainers as outlined in paragraph 1.6 of this specification and in accordance with Division 1 specifications.
   1. Include with the submittal a preliminary staff development training program in outline form for review and approval by the owner's representative.

2. Include with the submittal a current copy of the trainer's certification from the manufacturer that certifies and identifies the trainer(s) who are eligible to provide training and support for the project.
3. Include with the submittal a current copy of trainer's need's assessment form which will be reviewed with the owner's designated representative for the system's preliminary system programming and configuration.
4. Include with the submittal copies of all documentation used to identify for the owner those participants attending and completing the training programs.

K. A copy of the manufacturer's standard statement of warranty proving all equipment provided for the school communications network is covered with the required five-year warranty shall be included with the project submittal. This statement of warranty shall be provided on the manufacturer's stationary.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is an authorized representative of equipment manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of equipment required for this Section. Provide the following with in thirty (30) days after notification to proceed:
   1. Provide a list of installations that the Installer has specifically installed for verification by the Owner. Random installations from other vendors and/or Installers shall not be accepted. The Installer, not its employees, must meet these qualifications.
   2. The Installer shall be bondable.
   3. The Installer shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Owner or his representative that he has:
      a. Adequate plant and equipment to pursue the work properly and expeditiously.
      b. Adequate staff and technical experience to implement the work.
      c. Suitable financial status to meet the obligations of the work.
      d. Technically capable and factory trained service personnel at a local service facility to provide routine and emergency service for all products used in this project.

B. Any Contractor, who intends to bid on this work and does not meet the requirements of the "Quality Assurance" paragraph(s), shall employ the services of a "Installer" who does meet the requirements and who shall provide the equipment, make all connections and continuously supervise the installation. A subcontractor so employed as the "Installer" must be acceptable to the Architect/ Engineer. The "Installer" shall be identified within thirty (30) days of notification to proceed for acceptance by the Architect/Engineer

C. Because the life expectancy of this type of communications structure normally exceeds 10 years, the owner expects continuity from the service provider. If the installing/servicing company has not been an authorized provider of the manufacturers product for at least 20 years, the following is required:
   1. A list of (2) systems manufacturers of which they currently are authorized service providers where the relationship exceeds 10 years
   2. A letter from the manufacturer outlining the details of changes in service providers over the last 20 years and what actions they will take to ensure continuity of service to the customer.

D. Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturers name, address and model number on a plate securely affixed in a conspicuous place. NEMA code ratings, UL Label, or other data that is die-stamped into the surface of the equipment shall be easily visible.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Comply with NFPA 70

G. Comply with NEMA Standard SB-40 for Emergency Communications in K-12 schools.

H. Comply with UL 60950.

1.6 IN-SERVICE TRAINING

A. The contractor shall provide and implement a complete and comprehensive staff training program for all administrators, facility staff members, and teachers. This mandatory training program will provide school staff a complete understanding of how to utilize and properly operate all functions

B. The training program shall be implemented by a staff member/trainer employed by the contractor. The trainer must be factory certified to provide training on their product.

C. All staff development training is to be coordinated through the owner's designated representative. As training sessions are completed, the trainer will provide the school's administrative staff and school district's staff a document listing all of the staff and faculty members who attended, received, and completed the training program.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Provide a manufacturer's five-year warranty of the school communications network equipment against defects in material and workmanship. This warranty will cover all electronic equipment, as well as analog clocks, speakers, and call-in switches. If any defects are found within the warranty period, the defective equipment shall be replaced at no cost (equipment only); a one year warranty shall be provided for labor.

B. A copy of the manufacturer's standard statement of warranty proving all equipment provided for the school communications network is covered with the required five-year warranty shall be included with the project submittal. This statement of warranty shall be provided on the manufacturer's stationary. The standard five-year warranty is an important element in establishing a standard in quality. Manufacturers who circumvent the five-year warranty by offering special "extended warranties" that are not part of their normal published warranty will not be accepted.

C. Contractor shall respond, excluding weekends and holidays, within 24 hours to any warranty service calls. If equipment cannot be repaired within 24 hours of service visit, the contractor shall provide "loaner" equipment to the facility at no charge.

D. Make available a service contract offering continuing factory authorized service of the system after the initial warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers
   1. The equipment model numbers specified herein are that of the "Valcom Safety Communications". The system shall be a "Valcom IP6000 Emergency Communications System".
   2. Due to district wide implementation and complete integration with the District Wide Controller, as well as Administrative Assistant Emergency Features and V-Alert/eLaunch Emergency Features, no other manufacturers will be considered.

B. Industry Standards Compliance
   1. Complete installation shall meet or exceed the latest edition of following standards.
      a. EIA/TIA-568: Commercial building telecommunications wiring standard.
      b. EIA/TIA-569: Commercial building standard for telecommunications pathways and spaces.
      c. EIA/TIA-606: Administration standard for telecommunications infrastructure of commercial buildings.
      d. EIA/TIA-607: Commercial building grounding and bonding requirements for telecommunications.
      e. ANSI, ASTM, UL, NEMA, IEEE and FCC standards as applicable.
      f. BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, current edition.

C. Product Specifications and Requirements
   1. Work includes the following systems:

a. IP6000 Communication Controller (one per campus, scaled to support all IP end-points.
b. Administrative Telephone (located as directed by DISD Technology)
c. Emergency Touch Screen Administrative Console (Preferred) (located as directed by DISD Technology)
d. Cisco IP-Telephone System Interface for Call Manager/Router FXO Port(s)
e. Wireless Clock Transmitter for Secondary Clock System
f. Wireless Secondary Clocks
g. Enclosed Surface Mount Vandal-Resistant Outdoor Horns
h. Surface Mount Gymnasium Paging Horns
i. Classroom, Library, Kitchen, Cafetorium, Commons and Hallway Ceiling Speakers
j. Classroom Call Buttons
k. Programmed Music Distribution
l. Manual and Automatic WAV File Distribution
m. Wiring
n. Installation
o. Training
p. Warranty Service

2. The Communications Integrator shall provide the following pieces of software to the Technical Staff of DISD at no additional charge, along with any software updates by the manufacturer for the life of the system at no additional charge to DISD:
   a. Valcom Administrative Console (include one per site).
   b. Valcom V-Alert / eLaunch

D. The Valcom IP6000 Emergency Communications and Master Clock System shall consist of the following qualifications and provide the following features and functions as set forth in the specifications. Any system that does not meet all design requirements listed below shall not be considered.

1. Designed primarily as an Emergency Communications and Master Clock System with priority-based access to voice functions, district-wide emergency notification, emergency call-in, DISD custom pre-recorded emergency WAV announcements, external and internal telephone access, integrated video surveillance, and optional district wide communication functions using eLaunch. Paging systems, traditional school intercom systems, or any system that does not include the above minimum features shall not be considered.
2. The Emergency Communications and Master Clock System shall be of a core design vintage dating from the year 2015 or later. Systems that use designs dating from before the year 2015 shall not be considered. Currently installed clock systems may be utilized as directed by DISD Technology.
3. The Emergency Communications and Master Clock System shall be an event driven design. Systems using a polling method design shall not be considered.
4. The Emergency Communications and Master Clock System shall be designed, manufactured and supported in the United States of America.
5. Direct dialed, hands-free, two-way communication from all designated telephones to locations equipped with a talkback speaker.
6. Call button initiated hands-free, two-way communication from all locations equipped with a talkback speaker to a designated authorized telephone.
7. Microprocessor based PoE system capable of handling unlimited end-points. An end-point is defined as a device with an IP address. The system IP speakers must be SIP compliant.
8. System shall be a VoIP system compatible with 45-ohm 2-way speakers, 25v 2-way speakers, self- amplified one-way speakers and VoIP speakers. The system should also have 1, 2 and 4 zone one- way gateways for common area announcements.
9. System shall interface with any SIP capable VoIP telephone system, analog telephone system, or single line telephone, thus allowing the facility(s) to upgrade or replace their telephone system without suffering a requirement to replace, or lose any feature of, their internal communications (intercom) system. Any system that limits system features based

upon any selected telephone system, and/or is proprietary to one or only a few telephone systems shall not be acceptable.

10. System shall be capable of converting, recording and loading WAV files used for bells, announcements or music.
11. System shall be capable of initiating emergency notifications by internet browser from any designated location on the network.
12. System shall be capable of increasing volume by event. An event is defined as any WAV file or tone with a destination.
13. System shall be capable of downloading a graphic (site, building, etc.) and arranging icons on it to play emergency announcements, facility announcements and messages from any authorized person.
14. System shall automatically sound a tone over any loudspeaker connected for two-way communication to alert individuals at the speaker location a two-way call has been established. This is intended to prevent unauthorized monitoring. The privacy tone must repeat every 15 (fifteen) seconds.
15. System shall be capable of distribution of emergency or general announcement(s) from any authorized telephone/cell phone to all areas furnished with a loudspeaker. Emergency announcements shall have the highest system priority.
16. Individual zones shall be software assignable to an unlimited number of audio groups.
17. Provide the ability to define and archive unlimited time tone schedules with unlimited events per schedule. Each scheduled event shall be capable of controlling any internal tone, user selected custom WAV files, audio from any auxiliary source or up to 40 relays for building control. Each scheduled audio event shall be distributable to any of the audio groups. The system shall feature the ability to automatically initiate unlimited schedules per day, based upon the day of the week or calendar dates up to one year in advance. The system shall feature the ability to operate 25 or more schedules simultaneously. Schedule administration, modification and creation functions must be available through an Internet browser. Systems that do not allow the facility to manage their own schedules with an Internet browser do not offer calendar-based scheduling up to one year in advance or require separate page and time groups shall not be acceptable.
18. Provide 1 to 11 digits numbering plan.
19. Programmable features shall be stored in non-volatile memory and shall not be lost due to power failures.
20. Call button-initiated intercom calls must be able to be assigned to ring at specific telephones. These telephone calls shall have the flexibility to be forwarded to other telephones should a call go unanswered or should the assigned telephone be busy.
21. System functionality must include the capability to manually activate an unlimited number of chained events via browser-based device, pushbuttons, contact closure, or dial code from any authorized telephone. These events shall be customizable with respect to volume levels, cadence, priority, type and duration. Browser access must password controlled.
22. The system must be capable of providing an unlimited number of connections to the telephone system via SIP or FXS Port integration from the intercom system. These ports shall provide built-in enhanced caller identification, which will visually announce the name of the caller or location, the architectural number. Systems that require integration to a specific telephone system or systems in order to offer this feature, or any system feature, shall not be acceptable.
23. The system shall have the ability to control all system relays. Relays shall be controlled through the browser, DTMF controlled, automatically cycle at a programmed time of day, or follow time schedule events. All relays must be software programmable with the flexibility to change as required.
24. The system shall provide at least three simultaneously operating, non-restrictive program distribution channels. The system administration shall be browser based allowing simple and easy changes.
25. The system shall have the ability to store up to 25000 seconds of WAV files directly onto the Application Server and shall not be lost due to power outage.

26. The WAV files shall be capable of being activated via any computer on the LAN/Wan, Telephone and/or Telephone system, and push buttons.
27. The WAV files shall be programmable as to what level of priority they can be broadcast. They shall be programmable as to override any scheduled tones, normal all call, music, and intercom in the event of an emergency.
28. The WAV files shall have the ability to be broadcast into any and all of the audio groups.
29. The WAV files shall have the ability to be broadcast via a schedule for any day of the week or time of the day. They shall have the ability to be broadcast for any duration of time and repeat number of plays with the ability to select how long the duration is between each repeated broadcast.
30. The WAV files shall be able to be broadcast via a pushbutton. When this pushbutton is activated it shall be programmable to select which WAV file is broadcast, the priority level, where it is broadcast, and how many times it shall play.
31. The WAV files shall have the ability to be a part of the class change tones within the system. These files shall be able to replace any tone within the class change schedules as to offer the flexibility of customizable tones and or phrases in this class change mode.
32. The Emergency Communications and Master Clock System equipment shall be either wall or rack mounted at the discretion of DISD Technology.
33. The Emergency Communications and Master Clock System shall contain no moving parts that suffer from wear or that require maintenance.
34. The Emergency Communications and Master Clock System shall filter all voice signals through a Digital Signal Processor (DSP) to maximize voice intelligibility.
35. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall provide all controls necessary for two-way intercom communication with any classroom, communication with any classroom, distribution of general announcements or program material to any or all classrooms, and transmission of emergency announcement to all classrooms. Provisions shall be included to permit emergency paging from a remote telephone, or microphone, which shall capture system priority and override all functions except for the emergency page feature.
36. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall provide at least 25 factory provided WAV file tones available for bells, reminders, and other events.
37. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall support 25 additional USER recorded WAV type audio files. The user shall be able to add 25 additional custom WAV files for use as emergency announcements, class bells, reminders, pre-announce tones, or any other system tone.
38. It shall be possible to network The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems with additional systems using copper wire, single mode or multimode fiber optic cables.
39. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall support up to eight FXS/FXO Caller-ID enabled telephone ports. FXS/FXO ports shall be added as needed in single port configurations. FXS/FXO ports shall be used to interface with system Administrative phones, standard telephones, and PBX/KSU/iPBX/VoIP telephone systems.
40. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall contain an integral computer-based master clock.
41. The Valcom I.P. based P.A. and Master Clock System shall correct Sapling secondary clocks, analog or digital or both, using contact closure correction.
42. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall be capable of being synchronized by a Network Time Sever (NTP). Systems.
43. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall provide for automatic daylight-saving time adjustment with leap year programming.
44. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall support unlimited schedules with unlimited events on said schedules.
45. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall be calendar based capable of future event programming at least 10 years in the future.
46. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow for scheduling WAV files, tone events, output events, program source events, and video camera events.

47. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall not require an Administrative console to operate. All system functions shall be accessible via telephone codes from any internal or external telephone.
48. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems Administrative Telephone shall have the following features.
    a. Desk & wall mountable
    b. Minimum 8 line by 20 character back lit display
    c. Wizard driven menu system for ease of use
    d. 200 speed dials
    e. Head set compatible
    f. Integrated speaker phone for hands free use
49. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow for the integration of motion sensors, glass break sensors, and door contacts in parallel with call buttons. Events from these sensors shall be capable of being programmed to activate pre-recorded WAV files, outputs, and cameras.
50. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow for user-programmable room number assignment in the form of 3, 4, 5 or 6-digit alphanumeric format for architectural room numbering and a 60-character alphanumeric caller ID description associated with each audio port.
51. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow for unlimited page/time/program zones that can be assigned and configured as desired.
52. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems Administrative Telephone shall allow for the user to view the alphanumeric room address and the caller-ID information of the calling station and the call priority (e.g., emergency, normal) on the display.
53. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall receive call-ins simultaneously without data collisions or loss of any call-ins. Call-ins shall remain in the system call queue until answered. Emergency Call-ins shall automatically move to the top of the call-in queue and annunciated in the in-use telephone earpiece to notify the user of an emergency call.
54. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall communicate with each classroom loudspeaker hands-free. The staff member or occupant in the classroom need not operate any buttons to reply to a call. The Administrative telephone operator shall be able to use the hands-free speaker phone or handset on an Administrative telephone.
55. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall operate under the following audio priority scheme.
    a. An emergency page suspends all other audio
    b. An emergency tone suspends all other audio except the above
    c. A normal page suspends all other audio except the above
    d. A tone suspends all other audio except the above
    e. A program source audio event suspends nothing
    f. Interrupted lower priority functions shall be restored after conclusion of the higher priority function.
56. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow a call-in to be escalated from a normal call- in, to an emergency call-in at any time by pressing the Emergency Call button.
57. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow for any connected telephone to place an emergency voice paging announcement.
58. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow the activation of connected IP cameras based on an emergency call-in, security sensor activation, or telephone code.
59. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow for operation via a WEB based GUI. The WEB based GUI shall allow for emergency paging, normal paging, intercom, activation of any system/user tone, schedule changes, program distribution, call-in management, and on the fly room exclusion.
60. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall use a WEB based GUI scheduling tool for schedules and WAV file management. This tool shall not allow access to any system configuration controls. This tool shall not prevent the Emergency Communications and Master Clock System from operating when being used. This tool shall allow the user to

schedule events and manage WAV files over the local LAN/WAN and the Internet. It shall not be required to be directly connected to the central system to use this tool.

61. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall have a built-in 30-day log of every system function and access.
62. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall have a built-in real-time system diagnostics application.
63. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems shall allow for system diagnostics, system log access firmware updates, and programming over the local LAN/WAN or over the Internet.

E. Minimum Design Requirements. In addition to all other requirements of this specification, and as noted on the construction drawings, as a minimum, the system shall provide the following equipment:

1. The Valcom IP6000 and Master Clock Systems located in the MDF as directed by DISD Technology Network Infrastructure Department containing:
   a. IP6000 Controller
      1) Valcom Server VE-IP6K
   b. Telephone Interface Modules for Administrative Telephones and Cisco Call Manager/Router Interfaces
   c. IP Speaker Modules
   d. IP Gateways
   e. Power Supply(s)
      1) Switching Power Supply Valcom VC-6124P
         a) Power Supply Shelf Valcom CP-9202
   f. Network Page Zone Expander
      1) Valcom VE8004BR
   g. Network Station Port
      1) Valcom VE8014B
   h. Sapling Wall Mount Wireless Clock Transmitter
2. Materials required in the Main Office (as directed by DISD Technology Department)
   a. Administrative LCD Speakerphone, Locate at the front receptionist desk principal's office.
      1) Valcom VE-8092
   b. Desktop Push to Talk Microphone
   c. Touchscreen/Interactive Console with:
      1) Manual Bell
      2) Emergency
      3) Tornado
      4) All-Clear
      5) Hold in place
      6) Shelter
      7) Evacuate
      8) Secure lock out
3. Classrooms, Labs, Music
   a. Speaker: Valcom VL-520BK-F (Type S1 Speaker/Clock)
   b. Call Button: Valcom V-2972 (CB)
   c. Emergency Button: Valcom VE-2976 (SB)
4. Band, Orchestra, Choir
   a. Speaker: Valcom VL-520BK-F (Type S1 Speaker/Clock)
   b. Call Button: Valcom V-2972 (CB)
   c. Emergency Button: Valcom VE-2976
5. Break rooms, Conference rooms, Reception and Workrooms
   a. Speaker: Valcom VL-550BK-F (Type S3 Speaker/Clock)
   b. Volume Control: Valcom VE-2973 (VC)
6. Auditorium, Cafeteria, Library and Theater
   a. Speaker: Valcom VL-550BK-F (Type S4 Speaker/Clock)
   b. Call Button: Valcom V-2972 (CB)

c. Volume Control: Valcom VE-2973 (VC)

7. Collaboration areas, Corridors, Hallways, Locker rooms, and Support areas
   a. Speakers: Valcom VL-522 (Type S2 Speaker/Clock)
8. Principal's Office
   a. Speaker: Valcom VL-520BK-F (Type S1 Speaker/Clock)
   b. Volume Control: Valcom VE-2973 (VC)
9. Offices and Administration
   a. Speaker: Valcom VL-520BK-F (Type S1 Speaker/Clock)
   b. Volume Control: Valcom VE-2971 (VC)
10. Ceiling speakers
   a. Speaker: Valcom VE9022A Lay-In Ceiling (Type S1 Speaker)
   b. Speaker: Valcom V-1020C Sheetrock Ceiling (Type S3 Speaker)
   c. Backbox: Valcom V-9915M
11. Restrooms and Janitor closets
   a. Speaker: Valcom V-1020C (Type S2 Speaker)
   b. Backbox: V-9916M
12. Wall-mounted locations
   a. Speaker: Valcom V1016W
   b. Recessed mount: Valcom VB-R12 (Type S5[1] Speaker)
   c. Surface mount: Valcom VB-S11 (Type S5[2] Speaker)
   d. Angled mount: Valcom VB-A13 (Type S5[3] Speaker)
13. Vandal Resistant
   a. Speaker: Valcom V98552C
      1) Valcom VE160A IP Ceiling Speaker
14. Gymnasiums
   a. Speaker: Valcom V1080 Vandal Resistant Flex Horn. Qty: Horns – (4) per gym (Type S4 Speaker).
   b. Wire Guard for Flex Horn.
15. Outdoor Horns
   a. Speaker: Valcom A-1030M (PH).
   b. Enclosure: Valcom V9805
   c. Located on exterior walls in/around outdoor assembly areas, playgrounds, bus stops, or areas requiring emergency notifications.
16. Large Displays
   a. Display: Valcom VL-580-IP (Exterior) (Type S6 Speaker/Clock)
17. Wired Digital Secondary Clocks (as specified on the drawings) (C1)
   a. Sapling SBL-3200S-404-4R, 4-inch, 4-digit LED single face clock face w/ surface mount housing
      1) Sapling SAB-1B-00S-0 double mount housing assembly for two-SBL clocks
      2) Sapling SDG-2017 Wire guard for single face clock
      3) Sapling SCB-000-000-1 Power Supply for SBL-3200S-404-4R Digital Clocks (24Vdc, 5.5A)
18. Wireless Analog Secondary Clocks (as specified on the drawings) (C2)
   a. SMA-1SW-0000-1 Wireless Network Repeater (as required)
   b. Single Face Surface Wall Mount
      1) Hallways, Corridors and Library as shown on drawings
         a) SAL-2BS-12R-0, Wireless, 12" Round Analog Surface Mount, Battery Operated
      2) Cafeteria, Gymnasiums, Auditoriums and Theaters as shown on drawings
         a) SAL-2BS-16R-0, Wireless, 16" Round Analog Surface Mount, Battery Operated (for Gymnasiums, Auditoriums and Theaters)
         b) SAG-1500, Wire guard, 16" per clock (for Gymnasiums)
   c. Double Face Surface Wall Mount
      1) Two (2) SAL-2BS-12R-0, Wireless, 12" Round Analog Surface Mount, Battery Operated with SAB-4BD-12R-0, Double Mount 12" Black Housing

19. In addition to all other requirements of this specification, and as noted on the construction drawings, as a minimum, the system shall provide the following minimum base configuration:
    a. All components and quantities as specified above and shown on the construction drawings
    b. Middle/Junior High Schools -
        1) Qty-2, Telephone Interface Ports
        2) QTY- IP Speakers, TBD determined by FWISD Technology
        3) Outdoor IP Paging Horns as required
    c. Circuits as a minimum:
        1) Office Areas Circuits
        2) Nurse Office Circuit with Call Button
        3) Custodian Room(s) – connect to hallway circuits
        4) Conference Room(s) – connect to hallway circuits
        5) Library Circuit with Call Button
        6) Cafeteria Circuit
        7) Theater/Auditorium Circuit
        8) Gymnasium Circuits
        9) Hallway Circuits
        10) Classroom Circuits with Call Button (1-circuit per classroom)
        11) Athletics Circuits
        12) Outside Speaker Circuits
        13) Spare Circuits (20% of overall system capacity to allow for future expansion)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

A. Reference 27 15 01 Premise Wire for more detail information as needed to complete turnkey project.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install system in accordance with NFPA 70 and other applicable codes. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Furnish and install all material, devices, components and equipment for a complete operational system.

C. Impedance and Level Matching: Carefully match input and output impedance’s and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.

D. Control Circuit Wiring: Install control circuits in accordance with NFPA 70 and as indicated. Provide number of conductors as recommended by system manufacturer to provide control functions indicated or specified.

E. All housings are to be located as indicated.

F. The contractor shall provide necessary transient protection on the AC power feed, all copper station lines leaving or entering the building, and all central office trunks. All protection shall be as recommended by the equipment supplier and referenced to earth ground.

G. Wiring within Enclosures: Provide adequate length of conductors. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Provide and use lacing bars.

H. Provide physical isolation from speaker-microphone, telephone, line-level wiring, and power wiring. Run in separate raceways, or where exposed or in same enclosure, provide 12 inch minimum separation between conductors to speaker-microphones, telephone wiring and adjacent parallel power. Provide physical separation as recommended by equipment manufacturer for other system conductors.

I. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Use color coding of conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so all media are identified in coordination with system wiring diagrams.

J. Weatherproofing: Provide weatherproof enclosures for items to be mounted outdoors or exposed to weather.

3.3 GROUNDING

A. Provide equipment grounding connections for Integrated Electronic Communications Network systems as indicated. Tighten connections to comply with tightening torques specified in UL Standard 486A to assure permanent and effective grounds.

B. Ground equipment, conductor, and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments. Provide 5-ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.

C. Provide all necessary transient protection on the AC power feed and on all copper station lines leaving or entering the building. Note in system drawings, the type and location of these protection devices as well as all wiring information.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Provide services of a duly factory authorized service representative for this project location to supervise the field assembly and connection of components and the pre-testing, testing, and adjustment of the system.

B. Inspection: Make observations to verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Provide a list of final tap settings of paging speaker line matching transformers.

C. Testing: Rectify deficiencies indicated by tests and completely re-test work affected by such deficiencies at

D. Contractor's expense. Verify by the system test that the total system meets the Specifications and complies with applicable standards.

3.5 FINAL ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. The Final Acceptance Testing shall be provided to the Owner or the Owners designated representative only. Final acceptance testing to any other trade or service provider for the project will not comply with the requirements of this section.

B. The contractor will provide a Final Acceptance Test record document signed by both the contractor and the Owner or designated Owner’s Representative establishing the “In Warranty” date. The warranty period will not commence until the Final Acceptance Test is completed.

C. Be prepared to verify the performance of any portion of the installation by demonstration, listening and viewing test, and instrumented measurements. Make additional adjustments within the scope of work and which are deemed necessary by the Owner because of the acceptance test.

3.6 COMMISSIONING

A. The contractor shall train the Owner's maintenance personnel in the procedures and schedules involved in operating, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventative maintenance of the system. This training will be in accordance with the training as outlined in Section 1.6, paragraphs 3, 5 & 6 of these specifications. In addition to the Training Materials provided, the contractor will also furnish Operators Manuals and Users Guides at the time of this training.

B. Schedule training with Owner through the owners representative, with at least seven days advance notice.

3.7 OCCUPANCY ADJUSTMENTS

A. The contractor shall provide Occupancy Adjustments in accordance with Section 1.6, paragraph 9 of these specifications. A response scenario amenable to both the owner and the contractor will be established and followed for the first year of service.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Prior to final acceptance, the contractor shall vacuum and clean all system components and protect them from damage and deterioration. All blank spaces in equipment cabinets will be

covered with blank panels. Top and side panels, and all cabinet doors will be installed. All general areas within and around all equipment rack/cabinets in the facility will be swept, vacuumed, and cleaned up. No cabinets will be left unlocked and all cabinet keys will be turned over to the owner or designated owner's representative.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 0500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Refer to Common Work Results for Electrical, Section 26 0500.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT APPLICABLE.

PART 3 - EXECUTION – NOT APPLICABLE.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally blank

SECTION 28 13 00

VIDEO INTERCOM AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Hands-free color video system with pan, tilt, and zoom.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Division 1

B. Division 26

C. Division 27

1.3 REFERENCES

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION – HANDS-FREE COLOR VIDEO INTERCOM MASTER MONITOR STATION

A. Answering Door Call in Hands-Free Mode:
   1. Press CALL button.
   2. Chime tone sounds, caller is seen on video monitor, and outside sound is heard.
   3. Audio and video turn off after approximately 45 seconds if not answered.
   4. Press TALK button momentarily, and after beep, communicate hands free. Red transmit LED lights when you talk, and goes off as you listen to caller or hear outside sounds.
   5. After finishing communication, press OFF button and communication will end after beep.

B. Answering Door Call in Press-to-Talk (PTT) Mode:
   1. Press CALL button.
   2. Chime tone sounds, caller is seen on video monitor, and outside sound is heard.
   3. Audio and video turn off after approximately 45 seconds if not answered.
   4. Press and hold TALK button for minimum of 1 second. Beep sounds, and after approximately 1 second another beep sounds, which indicates PTT mode is engaged. If TALK button is pressed less than 0.5 seconds, PTT mode is not engaged.
   5. When communicating, keep TALK button pressed. To hear caller's voice, release TALK button.
   6. After finishing communication, press OFF button and communication will end after beep.

C. Instant-Voice-Call Function:
   1. Press CALL button.
   2. Even without answering, door area can be seen and heard with video and audio for approximately 45 seconds. Inside sound is not heard outside.

D. Activating Door Release:
   1. Press DOOR RELEASE button.
   2. Open door while release mechanism is activated. During release, red DOOR RELEASE LED flashes.

E. Entrance Monitoring:
   1. Press MONITOR button in standby mode.
   2. Video monitor displays image from door station and incoming audio is heard. If you do not press TALK button, caller will not hear sounds from inside station.
   3. Press OFF button to end communication.

F. Room-to-Room Communication:
   1. Press CALL button to talk with other person.
   2. Call-in is sent to sub master station.
   3. Reply of other person is not heard.
   4. If other person presses TALK button, hands-free communication is possible.
   5. Press and release OFF button to end communication.

G. Wide/Zoom Switching:
   1. Press ZOOM/WIDE button when picture is displayed.
   2. Switching between wide and zoom occurs each time button is pressed.

H. Pan/Tilt Operation:
   1. When zoom picture is displayed, press UP, DOWN, LEFT, and RIGHT buttons.
   2. Moving diagonally is also possible.

I. Zoom Picture Preset:
   1. Picture can be set to display using set zoom picture position for when call is received from door station.
   2. When switching from wide picture to zoom picture, zoom picture displays at preset position.
   3. When zoom picture is displayed, press UP, DOWN, LEFT, and RIGHT buttons.
   4. While viewing picture, set desired picture position.
   5. Press ZOOM/WIDE button for minimum of 2 seconds.
   6. Beep will sound and position setting will be completed.

J. Night Illumination:
   1. At night, door station illuminator LED lights up during calling or communication.
   2. When Call is Made from Door Station:
      a. If CALL button of door station is pressed, illuminator LED lights up.
      b. When communication ends, illuminator LED will go out.
   3. Light Up Illuminator LED During Entrance Monitoring:
      a. When TALK button is pressed during entrance monitoring, communications starts and illuminator LED will light up.
      b. Inside sound can be heard at entrance.
      c. When communication ends, illuminator LED will go out.

K. Backlight Adjustment, Night Sensitivity Adjustment:
   1. To perform adjustment, press ADJUST button when image is difficult to see. Automatic adjustment to more visible screen is performed.
   2. To cancel adjustment, press ADJUST button during adjustment.

L. If Optional Units Installed:
   1. When separately installed sensor detects malfunction or CALL button is pressed, alarm sound occurs and red transmit LED flashes.
   2. Press OFF button to stop alarm sound.

M. Automatic Recording:
   1. If a call is received from video door station, unit starts recording automatically.
   2. Red record LED flashes during recording.
   3. Recording starts approximately 2 seconds after CALL button of video door station is pressed.
   4. Maximum length of approximately 6 seconds (6 shots) can be recorded, with 1 picture and 1 shot for each second.
   5. Maximum of 40 images can be recorded (combined total of automatic recording and manual recording images).
   6. If 40 images are exceeded, images are overwritten starting from image with oldest recording date.
   7. Initial setting is for recording to be done with first 3 pictures as zoom pictures at a preset position, and next 3 pictures as wide pictures.

N. Manual Recording:
   1. Display video image with operation such as entrance monitoring.
   2. Press REC button. Red record LED flashes 6 times and recording starts.
   3. Maximum length of approximately 6 seconds (6 shots) can be recorded, with 1 image and 1 shot for each second.
   4. Maximum of 40 images can be recorded (combined total of automatic recording and manual recording images).
   5. When 40 images are exceeded, new images overwrite old images starting from oldest recorded date.

O. Play Recorded Picture:
   1. Press PLAY button in standby mode to display picture with most recent date.
   2. Press PLAY button on play-waiting screen. Recorded image is played. When play of 1 image ends, next image is displayed.
   3. To advance play screen frame-by-frame, press PLAY button during playback to pause. Play moves forward frame-by-frame each time DOOR RELEASE button is pressed. When frames of 1 image end, next picture is displayed.
   4. Press OFF button to end.

P. Save Recorded Picture:
   1. Display picture that you want to save in play-waiting screen. Press MENU button to display save/erase selection screen.
   2. Press PLAY button. If image is saved, key symbol is displayed. If image has already been saved, save is cancelled. Each time PLAY button is pressed, operation switches between save and cancel.

Q. Erase Recorded Picture:
   1. Display picture that you want to erase in play screen. Press MENU/MEMO button to display save/erase selection screen.
   2. Press MENU button to erase.
   3. Press REC button to stop erasing.
   4. Once picture is erased, it cannot be restored.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with Section 01330 (01 33 00) – Submittal Procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, including installation instructions.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit the following:
   1. Wiring Diagrams: Indicate wiring for each item of equipment and interconnections between items of equipment.
   2. Include manufacturer's names, model numbers, ratings, power requirements, equipment layout, device arrangement, complete wiring point-to-point diagrams, and conduit layouts.

D. Installation and Operation Manuals:
   1. Submit manufacturer's installation and operation manual, including operation instructions and component wiring diagrams.
   2. Provide detailed information required for Owner to properly operate equipment.

E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: ISO 9001:2008 certified company.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.

B. Storage: Store materials in clean, dry area indoors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Handling: Protect materials during handling and installation to prevent damage.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Aiphone Corporation, 1700 130th Avenue NE, Bellevue, Washington 98005. Toll Free (800) 692-0200. Phone (425) 455-0510. Fax (425) 455-0071. Website www.aiphone.com. E-mail info@aiphone.com.

2.2 VIDEO INTERCOM AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Hands-Free Color Video System with Pan, Tilt, and Zoom: Aiphone JK Series.

B. Hands-Free Color Video Intercom Master Monitor Station:
   1. Power: 18 V DC.
   2. Current Consumption: 400 mA maximum.
   3. Calling: Chime and image, approximately 45 seconds.
   4. Communication:
      a. Hands-Free Mode: Hands free 60 seconds.
      b. PTT Mode: Press-to-talk, release-to-listen 60 seconds.
   5. Acceptable product:
      a. Aiphone JK-1MED

C. Vandal-Resistant Video Door Station
   1. Faceplate: Stainless steel.
   2. Flush mount.
   3. Microphone.
   4. Speaker.
   5. Camera:
      a. Complementary metal oxide semiconductor (CMOS).
      b. Scanning Lines: 525.
      c. Minimum Subject Illumination: 18 inches.
   6. CALL button.
   7. Vandal resistant.
   8. Weather resistant.
   9. Acceptable product:
      a. Aiphone Model IS-IPDVF.

D. Electric Door Strike:
   1. Acceptable product:
      a. Aiphone EL-12S \

E. Card Reader
   1. Acceptable product:
      a. Allegion aptiQ™ MT15

F. Wireless Electronic Lock
   1. Acceptable product:
      a. Allegion Schlage AD-400

G. Door Contact
   1. Acceptable product:
      a. Interlogix 1078-G

H. Request-to-exit Detector
   1. Acceptable product:
      a. Bosch DS160

I. Door Controller
   1. Acceptable product:
      a. Open Options SSP-D2

J. Reader Sub- controller
   1. Acceptable product:
      a. Open Options RSC-1 Single Reader
      b. Open Options RSC-2 Dual Reader

K. Power Supply

1. Acceptable product:
    a. Altronix AL1012ULXB
    b. Altronix AL1024ULXB

L. Access Power Controller
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Altronix ACM8

M. Power Distribution Module
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Altronix PD8

N. Enclosure
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Unity CON-8RDR

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive hands-free color video system with pan, tilt, and zoom.

B. Notify Architect of conditions that would adversely affect installation or subsequent use.

C. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions are corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install hands-free color video system with pan, tilt, and zoom in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at locations indicated on the Drawings.

B. Mount equipment plumb, level, square, and secure.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust hands-free color video system with pan, tilt, and zoom for proper operation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Demonstration:
1. Demonstrate that hands-free color video system with pan, tilt, and zoom functions properly.
2. Perform demonstration at final system inspection by qualified representative of manufacturer.

B. Instruction and Training:
1. Provide instruction and training of Owner's personnel as required for operation of hands-free color video system with pan, tilt, and zoom.
2. Provide hands-on demonstration of operation of system components and complete system, including user-level program changes and functions.
3. Provide instruction and training by qualified representative of manufacturer.
4. Provide a minimum of eight hours.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed hands-free color video system with pan, tilt, and zoom from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 20 00

ELECTRONIC SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Coordination, provision, installation, inspection, testing, instruction and warranties of a Electronic Surveillance System. Plant, materials, equipment, transport and labor necessary to accomplish this and have a complete and properly functioning System.

B. Also includes:
   1. Required licenses and permits including payment of charges and fees.
   2. Verification of dimensions and conditions at the job site.
   3. Provision of submittals.
   4. Installation in accordance with the contract document, manufacturer's recommendation, and in conformity with applicable codes and authority having jurisdiction.
   5. Extension of electrical service, including ground, to equipment locations.

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 26: Electrical

B. Division 27 - Communications

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Published specification standards, tests or recommended methods of trade, industry or governmental organizations apply to Work in this section where cited below:
   1. American National Safety Institute (ANSI).
   2. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM).
   3. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI).
   4. Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA).
   5. National Electrical Code (NEC).
   6. National Electrical Manufacturer’s Association (NEMA).
   7. Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (BICSI TDMM) Rev 11.
   8. Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA).
   9. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor’s Qualifications: Firm experienced in the provision of systems similar in complexity to those required for this project; and meet the following:
   1. No less than three years experience with equipment and systems of the specified types.
   2. Experience with at least three comparable scale projects within the last two years.
   3. Be a franchised dealer and service facility for the manufacturer’s products furnished.
   4. Maintain a fully staffed and equipped service facility.
   5. At the request of the Architect, demonstrate that:
      a. Adequate plant and equipment is available to complete the work.
      b. Adequate staff with commensurate technical experience is available.

B. Work: Perform Work in compliance with the applicable standards listed herein and governing codes and regulations of the authorities having jurisdiction and the Contract Documents.
   1. Drawings and specification requirements govern where they exceed Code and Regulation requirements.
   2. Where requirements between governing Codes and Regulations vary, the more restrictive provision applies.
   3. Nothing in the Contract Documents grants authority or permission to disregard or violate any legal requirements.

C. Coordinate exact location and installation of equipment, power, grounding, and raceway requirements with the Architect.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide simultaneously the following for approval thirty (30) days after issuance of Notice to Proceed and prior to commencement of Work:
   1. Complete schedule of submittals.
   2. Chronological schedule of Work in bar chart form.
   3. Provide a list of and manufacturer's data sheet on product to be incorporated within the Work. Submit bound originals of:
      a. Manufacturer's product technical data for each product in sufficient detail to facilitate proper evaluation to the products suitability for incorporation within the Work.
      b. Manufacturer's wiring diagram for electrically actuated units in sufficient detail to facilitate proper evaluation to the products suitability for incorporation within the Work.

B. Samples as required within these specifications.

C. Shop drawings:
   1. Installation: Special details depicting methods and means specific to each product, assembly and each product manufacturer's recommended installation methods and means.
   2. Schematic: Electronic Surveillance System detailed intercomponent and intracomponent, on contractor assembled components or fabricated products, wiring and cabling diagram depicting cable types, designator and color codes.
      a. Complete Access Control System detailed intercomponent and intracomponent, on contractor assembled components or fabricated products, wiring and cabling diagram depicting cable types, designator and color codes.
   3. Equipment: Location of equipment in racks, consoles, or on tables, with dimensions; wire routing and cabling within housings; AC power outlet and terminal strip locations.
   4. Fabricated Plates and Panels: Provide complete drawings on custom fabricated plates or panels. Drawings to include dimensioned locations of components, component types, engraving information, plate material and color, and bill of material.
   5. Labeling: Representative equipment and cabling labeling scheme. Include font sizes and styles, explanation of scheme, and descriptor and designator schedule.
   6. Any other pertinent data generated which is necessary to provide the Work.

D. Submit six bound originals of the following Project Record Manual information after substantial completion and prior to final inspection:
   1. Product Data: Product actually incorporated within the Work:
      a. Manufacturer's data for each type of product conforming to the scheme specified herein. Include manufacturer's serial numbers within the list of product.
      b. For custom circuits or modifications, a description of the purpose, capabilities, and operation of each item.
      c. Manufacturer's wiring diagram for each type of product actually incorporated.
      d. Manufacturer's maintenance and care instructions.
      e. Separately bound list by manufacturer and model or part number of product incorporated within the Work, arranged in alpha numeric order. when applicable Manufacturer's warranty statements bound separately
   2. Record drawings: Final rendition of submission depicting what is actually incorporated within the Work.
   3. Test Reports: Recorded findings of Contractor's Commissioning.
   4. System Operation and Instructions: Prepare a complete and typical procedure for the operation of the equipment as a system, organized by subsystem or activity.
      a. This procedure should describe the operation of system capabilities.
      b. Assume the intended reader of the manual to be technically inexperienced and unfamiliar with this facility.
   5. Maintenance Instructions, including maintenance phone number(s) and hours; maintenance schedule; description of products recommended or provided for maintenance purposes, and instructions for the proper use of these products.

6. Any other pertinent data generated during the Project or required for future service.
7. Segregate documents into three separate bindings containing data relevant to operational, maintenance and warranty issues. Appropriately duplicate data within the separate bindings when it will reasonably clarify procedures, e.g., operational data in maintenance binding.

E. Submittal format: Project Submittal.. The Contractor must make one single, complete pre-construction Submittal package as defined and described in the aforementioned Sections, with the following additional technology specific details.
1. Provide a unique control number in consecutive order.
2. Provide a complete table of contents with the following information:
   a. Project title and number
   b. Submittal number. In the case of a resubmittal, use the original submittal number immediately followed by the suffix “R” immediately followed by a unique number and be numbered in consecutive order.
3. Date of submission.
4. Referenced addendum or change order number as applicable.
5. Referenced specification Section, Part, Article, Paragraph and page number or drawing reference as applicable.
6. Index by manufacturer and model or part number unless specified otherwise herein.
7. Each submission page stamped with Contractor’s certification stamp, initialed or signed certifying:
   a. Review, approval and acceptance of submission.
   b. Certification of product compliance to specification.
   c. Verification product may be incorporated within the work.
8. Arrange product data list in specification order when applicable followed by unspecified product arrange by manufacturer and model or part number. Follow list by manufacturer’s data sheets, arranged in the same order. Where a data sheet shows more than one product, indicate the model being proposed with an arrow or other appropriate symbol.
9. Drawings executed at an appropriate scale, but not smaller than 1/8 inch = 1’–0”. Provide one reproducible transparency and two bound blueline prints of which the processed transparency will be returned to Contractor, additional prints will not be reviewed or returned.
10. Bind Project Record Manual in titled three ring D style binders sized for 150 per cent of the material in paragraph 1.6.D. Maximum size: three inch spine. Use multiple volumes if necessary.

F. Resubmission Requirements:
1. Make any requested corrections or change in submittals required. Resubmit for review until no exceptions are taken.
2. Indicate any changes that have been made other than those requested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ship product in its original container, to prevent damaging or entrance of foreign matter.

B. Handling and shipping in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendation.

C. Provide protective covering during construction, to prevent damaging or entrance of foreign matter.

D. Replace at no expense to Owner, product damaged during storage, handling or the course of construction.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Verify conditions on the job site applicable to this work. Notify Architect in writing of discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions promptly upon discovery.

B. The Drawings diagrammatically show cabling and arrangements of equipment fitting the space available without interference. If conditions exist which make it impossible to install work as

shown, recommend solutions and/or submit drawings to the Architect for approval, showing how the work may be installed.

1.8 FINAL INSPECTION AND TEST

A. Upon completion of installation, initial adjustments, tests and measurements specified in Part 3, and submission and review of the results, a final inspection and test will be observed by the Architect no earlier than two weeks after receipt of the written results.

B. Provide a minimum of one person for inspection and two persons for testing familiar with aspects of the System to assist the Architect.

C. The process of testing the System may necessitate moving and adjusting certain components such as cameras, lenses, or access control devices.

D. Testing includes operation of each major system and any other components deemed necessary. Perform tests and provide required test equipment, tools and material required to make any necessary repairs, corrections, or adjustments.

E. The following procedures will be performed on each System:
   1. Inspection of the methods and means employed to incorporate the System within the facility.
   2. Verification of proper operation, from controlling devices to controlled devices.
   3. Verification of proper adjustment, balance, and alignment of equipment for optimum quality and to meet the manufacturer's published specifications. Establish and mark normal settings for each control, and appropriately record these settings within the Record Documents.
   4. Other tests on equipment or systems deemed appropriate.

F. In the event the need for further work becomes evident during testing to bring these systems into compliance with these specifications, the Contractor is to continue his work until the System is acceptable at no addition to the contract price. If approval is delayed because of defective equipment, or failure of equipment or installation to meet the requirements of these specifications and any extension of the inspection and testing period is required, the contract price will be reduced for the additional time and expenses of the Owner, at the standard rate in effect at that time.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warrant labor and product for one year following the date of substantial completion to be free of defects and deficiencies, and to conform to the drawings and specifications as to kind, quality, function, and characteristics. Repair or replace defects occurring in labor or product within the Warranty period without charge.

B. This warranty is in addition to any specific warranties issued by manufacturers for greater periods of time.

C. Within the warranty period, answer service calls within eight hours, and correct the deficiency within twenty four hours.

1.10 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER PERSONNEL

A. After final completion provide instruction to Owner designated personnel on the use, operation, maintenance and care of the System.

B. Develop instructional course based on the use of the System and manufacturers' recommendation. Develop course so no period will last longer than one and a half hour without a fifteen minute break. Partition course so that operational and maintenance training are independent and subsequent.

C. Submit an outline of the course with sample instructional aids for approval thirty days prior to scheduled instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Product: New, free from defects and listed by UL when an applicable UL Category exists. Provide product of a given type from one manufacturer.

B. Regardless of the length or completeness of the descriptive paragraph herein, provide product complying with published manufacturer's specifications.

C. Equipment supply voltage: 120 VAC, 60 Hz.

D. Product not specifically specified to be commensurate with the quality and standards established by the specified product.

E. Provide a two gang back box at each camera location.

2.2 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Model numbers and manufacturers included in this specification have either been identified by the Owner as “preferred products” or are listed to establish a standard of product quality.

B. Other qualified manufacturers will be considered subject to prior approval of complete technical data, samples, and, if requested, results of independent testing laboratory tests of proposed equipment.
   1. If proposed System includes equipment other than specified model numbers, submit a list of major items and their quantities, with a one-line schematic diagram for review.
   2. Include a list of previously installed projects using proposed equipment that are similar in nature to specified System.

2.3 INTERIOR FIXED CAMERAS

A. Hall Cameras
   1. Verify with District.
   2. Acceptable product:
      a. Axis M3044-V
      b. Wall mount: Anixter 5504-821
      c. Pendant kit: Anixter 5502-321
         1) Axis M3044-V

B. 180° Camera
   1. Verify with District
   2. Acceptable product:
      a. Avigilon 9C-H4A-3MH-180
      b. Pendant wall mount: IRPTZ-MNT-WALL1
      c. Pendant pole mount: H4AMH-AD-PEND1
      d. In ceiling mount: H4AMAD-CEIL1

C. 360° Camera
   1. Verify with District
   2. Acceptable product:
      a. Avigilon 12C-H4A-4HM-360
      b. Pendant wall mount: IRPTZ-MNT-WALL1
      c. Pendant pole mount: H4AMH-AD-PEND1
      d. In ceiling mount: H4AMAD-CEIL1

2.4 EXTERIOR FIXED CAMERAS

A. Outdoor Dom Fixed Dome Camera
   1. Verify with District
   2. Acceptable product:
      a. Axis P3375-VE
      b. Pendant mount kit: Axis P33-VE
      c. Wall mount: Axis T91D61

B. 270° Camera

1. Verify with District
2. Acceptable product:
    a. Avigilon 9C-H4A-3MH-270
    b. Pendant wall mount: IRPTZ-MNT-WALL1 or IRPTZ-MNT-NPTA1
    c. Cover: H4MH-DO-COVR1 or H4MH-DO-Covr1-smoke
        1) In ceiling mount: H4AMAD-CEIL1

2.5 VIDEO SURVIELLANCE SYSTEM EQUIPMENT

A. LCD Video Monitor
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Acer S191HQL
    b. Quantity: 2

B. Digital Video Recorder (DVR)
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Avigilon HD NVR3
    b. Quantity: 1

C. 8 Port POE Midspan
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Altronix NetWay8

D. POE Mid-span
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Axis T8133 30W MID

E. CAT6 Cable
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Windy City Wire 556609 or approved equal

F. CAT 5E Cable
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Belden GigaFlex 1213

G. Power Strip
1. Acceptable product:
    a. Ditek DTK-8FF

H. Power Supply
1. Acceptable product:
    a. American Power SMT1500RM2UC

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Coordinate incorporation of the Work with other project work so as to facilitate a cohesive final product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. The installation recommendations contained within ASDI and TDMM are mandatory minimum standards and requirements.

B. Install mounted equipment with black number 10 button head machine screws with Allen drive.

C. Provide shaft locks or security covers on non user operated equipment having front panel controls. Install at the conclusion of testing.

D. Mount equipment and enclosures plumb and level.

E. Permanently installed equipment to be firmly and safely held in place. Design equipment supports to support loads imposed with a safety factor of at least five.

3.3 LABELING

A. Provide engraved label in front and rear of each piece of equipment. Labels on the PTZ control units should reflect the camera location and/or number that the unit is controlling. Adjust label size to fit available space.

B. Provide each terminal strip with a unique descriptor and a numerical designator for each terminal. Show terminal strip descriptor and designator on System schematic drawing.

C. Provide logical and legible cable and wiring label permanently affixed for easy identification. It is recommended that the EIA/TIA-606 Standard be used as a guide for system administration.
   1. Labels on cables to be thermal transfer printed on self-laminating polyolefin. Factory stamped heat shrink tubing may be used in lieu of the adhesive strip style
   2. Wiring designator to be an alpha-numeric code unique for each cable.
   3. Locate the cable designator at the origination and destination of each circuit within 3 inches of the point of termination or connection. Provide cable designator on circuits with intermediate connection points with an additional suffix to indicate each segment.

3.4 ENGRAVING

A. Text font: 1/8 inch block sans serif characters unless noted otherwise.

B. On dark materials, provide white characters; on stainless steel or brushed natural aluminum plates, or light-colored materials, provide black characters.

C. Provide at least two lines of text with first line listing the general device name, e.g., CAMERA. Second line to include schematic reference of the device, e.g., Cam -1.

D. Equipment labels shall be black with white characters except where indicated.

3.5 EQUIPMENT HOUSING

A. Install equipment in housings, fully wire and test before delivery to job site.

B. Provide blank or vent panels in all unused panel space s, painted to match housing.

C. Provide rear support for housing mounted equipment greater than 15 inches deep.

D. Key door locks for each housing type alike.

E. Looking at the housing from the rear, install AC power and ground on the left; and low voltage signal wiring on the right.

F. Do not block access to any front mounted components when mounting product on rear housing rails.

3.6 SYSTEM CABLING AND WIRING

A. General:
   1. Take precaution to prevent and guard against electromagnetic and electrostatic interference.
   2. Isolate cables and wires of different signal classes or different levels; and separate, organize, and route to restrict channel crosstalk or interference among differing signal classes.
   3. Make soldered connections with rosin-core solder or with mechanical connectors approved by the Architect; where spade lugs are used, crimp properly with ratchet type tool.
   4. Cover edges of cable and wire pass-through holes in chassis, housings, boxes, etc., with rubber grommets or an approved grommet edging such as Brady GRNY or Panduit GEE or GES - Series.
   5. Install cable so that a radius bend of no less than ten times the cables OD is maintained.
   6. Provide splice free wiring and cabling from origination to destination.

B. Housing:
   1. Cabling and wiring entering equipment housings should connect via connector termination or terminal block equal to Cinch 140 -142 series.

2. Install cable and wire neatly tied in manageable bundles with cable lengths cut to minimize excess cable slack but still allow for service and testing. Provide horizontal support bars if cable bundles sag.
3. Neatly bundle excess AC power cable from housing mounted equipment with plastic cable ties.
4. Provide plastic cable ties or lacing twine to bundle cabling and wiring. Install cable ties only with a tension-controlled installation tool to prevent deformation of cables. Electrical tape and adhesive backed cable tie anchors are not acceptable.
5. Install all terminations with connections completely visible and labeled.
6. Provide any termination resistors required at the specified value +/- 5 per cent tolerance; fully visible and not concealed.

C. AC Power and Grounding:
1. Coordinate final connection of power and ground wiring to housings.
2. Hardwire power wiring directly to internal AC receptacles to ensure uninterrupted operation.
3. Provide 3-conductor, isolated ground, 120 VAC outlets as required within each housing plus two spare outlets.
4. Provide a copper ground bus top to bottom in each housing, insulated from the housing. Ground the chassis of any equipment that does not have a three wire power cord to the bus using minimum #8 hardware; nuts, bolts and lock-washers with No. 12 wire. Connect green ground wire from each isolated AC outlet in housing to this bus bar.

3.7 CONTRACTOR COMMISSIONING

A. Prior to testing the System ensure the following:
1. Products are installed in proper and safe manner according to manufacturer's instructions.
2. Insulation and shrink tubing are present.
3. Dust, debris, solder splatter, etc. is removed inside and outside of housings.
4. Cable is dressed, routed, and labeled; connections are consistent with regard to polarity.
5. Labeling has been provided.
6. Temporary facilities and utilities have been properly disconnected, removed and disposed of off-site.
7. Products are neat, clean and unmarred and parts securely attached.
8. Broken work, including glass, raised flooring and supports, ceiling tiles and supports, walls, doors, etc. have been replaced or properly repaired, and debris cleaned up and discarded.

B. Prior to energizing the System verify and perform the following tests and adjustments in compliance with applicable referenced standards, methods or recommended practice:
1. Electronic devices are properly grounded.
2. Powered devices have AC power from the proper circuit and hot, neutral, and ground conductors are connected correctly.
3. Grounding System Tests:
4. Measure and record the DC resistance between the technical ground in any equipment rack and the main electrical ground. Verify resistance is equal to or less than 0.15 ohms.
5. Lift the technical ground from the main electrical ground, measure and record the DC resistance between them. Verify resistance is equal to or greater than 1000 ohms.
6. Systems, equipment and devices are in full and proper adjustment and operation, and properly labeled and identified.
7. Store extra materials, portable equipment, and "attic" spares at the premises as directed by the Architect.

C. Perform the following headend tests and adjustments in compliance with Recommended Practices for Measurements on Closed Circuit Television Systems. Correct any technical deficiencies until the preferred performance objectives are accomplished.
1. Adjust pan, tilt and lens per manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Adjust the gain of each active device to provide optimum signal to noise ratio per the manufacturer's instruction.
3. Measure and record each video Automatic Gain Control.

4. Measure, record and correct, if the disturbance is the result of a deficiency in the Work, any undesired low frequency disturbances utilizing a spectrum analyzer. Include a written explanation within the report as to the nature of any uncorrected disturbance.
5. Measure and record any spurious signals.
6. Measure and record the amplitude response across the visual portion of each channel.
7. Perform a subjective evaluation of each cameras picture quality with a standard monitor connected to video switcher. Provide a System with no visible components of cross modulation, ghosting, or beat interference or loss of sync during switching.

3.8 TEST EQUIPMENT

A. Equipment listed by manufacturer and model number establishes a standard of quality, other approved equal equipment will be acceptable.

B. Thirty days prior to start of testing, provide a list to the Architect of test equipment make, model numbers and calibration dates that will be used.

C. Furnish the following equipment. Equipment to be available for the entire test period through final System testing.
   1. Dual-trace oscilloscope - 100 MHz bandwidth, 1 mV/cm sensitivity.
   2. NTSC Signal Generator: Tektronix TSG 100.
   3. NTSC Waveform Monitor: Tektronix 1710B.
   4. RMS Multimeter - Range, DC to 20,000 Hz, 100 mV to 300 V, 10 ma to 10A.
   5. Ladders and scaffolding necessary to inspect multi-taps in cable trays and ceiling mounted junction boxes.

D. Provide two portable VHF or UHF business band radios for use during acceptance testing with transmission range sufficient to cover entire project.
   1. Include rechargeable batteries and charger along with "holster" for wearing on belt.
   2. Radios to be available for duration of testing process, including any follow-up visits required prior to final acceptance.

End of Section

SECTION 28 3100

INTRUSION DETECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Coordination, provision, installation, inspection, testing, instruction, and warranties of a Intrusion Detection System.

B. All plant, materials, equipment, transport and labor necessary to accomplish this and have a complete and working system.

C. Each of the following:
1. Required licenses and permits including payment of charges and fees.
2. Verification of dimensions and conditions at the job site.
3. Provision of submittal information.
4. Installation in accordance with the contract documents, manufacturer's recommendations, applicable codes and authority having jurisdiction.
5. Documented sound system tests and adjustments.
6. Instruction of operating personnel.
7. Provision of manuals.

D. Related Sections:
1. Section 26 0500 - Common Work Results for Electrical
2. Section 26 0553 - Identification for Electrical Systems
3. Section 26 3533 - Power Factor Correction Equipment
4. Section 27 0500 - Common Work Results for Communications
5. Section 28 2300 - Video Surveillance
6. Section 28 3100 - Fire Alarm and Detection Systems

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Hard-Wired System: Alarm, supervisory, and detection devices that are directly connected, through individual dedicated conductors to central control unit.

B. Zone: A space or area for which an intrusion must be detected and uniquely identified, the sensor or group of sensors assigned to perform the detection, and any interface equipment between the sensors and the communication link to central control unit.

C. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.

D. LED: Light-emitting diode.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Confirm condition of the existing system with existing CAD floor plans, before commencing work to expand the alarm systems. Verify functionality of all existing system components.

B. The system will be configured of a microprocessor-based central controls, remote intrusion sensors and detection devices, and a communication link to perform monitoring, alarm, and control functions. The system is physically and electronically modular with provision that will allow for future expansion. The system will be self-monitoring and self-diagnostic.

C. The system is configured as a communication link that is hard wired using separate individual circuits for each zone that includes alarm initiation, alarm device operation, and control.

1.4 SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE

A. A Central Control Unit will provide continuous electronically supervision of system components for normal, alarm and trouble conditions. The central control unit indicates deviations from normal conditions at any location in the system. Indication includes identification of a device or circuit in which a deviation has occurred and whether the deviation is an alarm or malfunction.

B. The central control unit directly monitors intrusion detection devices and circuits.

C. An audible signal sounds and a plain-language identification of the zone producing the alarm appears on an LED or LCD at the central control unit. An annunciator panel displays a common alarm light and an audible tone.

D. The system will produce a print record of an alarm, supervisory and trouble events on a system printer. This report can be sorted by zone, device and function. The central control system receives a signal then prints a report of the alarm, supervisory, or trouble condition. The system will report the type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble), the zone description, date, and time of the occurrence. When the system is reset a report reset event with the same information concerning the device, location, date, and time of the event is recorded. Commands initiate the reporting of a list of current alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in a system or a log of past events.

E. The maximum permissible signal time elapse is two seconds between actuation of any alarm or detection and its indication at central control unit.

F. The central control unit indicates circuit faults with both zone and trouble signals and makes a distinctive audible tone and illuminates an LED indicating light. The maximum permissible elapsed time between occurrence of a trouble condition and indication at central control unit is 20 seconds.

G. The system can be programmed to change status of various combinations of zones automatically between "secure" and "access" at scheduled times. Changeable schedules for status changes preset, repetitive, daily and weekly operation and special scheduled operations up to a year in advance. Manual secure-access control stations override programmed settings.

H. Manual Secure-Access Control: Coded entries at manual stations change status of associated zone between "secure" and "access."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide simultaneously the following for approval thirty (30) days after issuance of Notice to Proceed and prior to commencement of Work:
   1. A complete list and quantity of product incorporated within the Work. Sequence of sheets shall be in specification order.
   2. Shop Drawings as defined in this section.

B. Submit bound sets of the following Project Record Manual information after substantial completion and prior to final inspection. Quantity of submissions is determined by the project General Contractor. Documents shall be segregated into two separate binders containing data relevant to operational, service & maintenance and warranty issues. Duplicate data within the separate bindings when it will reasonably clarify procedures, e.g., operational data in maintenance binding.
   1. Operations Manual
      a. Product Data:
         1) Product actually incorporated within the Work.
         2) All product documentation shall be originals, copies are not acceptable.
         3) Manufacturer's documentation for each type of product conforming to the scheme above.
         4) Each product’s Owner’s/Instruction Manual.
         5) For custom circuits or modifications, a description of the purpose, capabilities, and operation of each item.
         6) Manufacturer's wiring diagram for each type of product actually incorporated.
         7) Separately bound list of all product incorporated within the Work arranged in alphanumeric order. The list shall include manufacturer’s serial numbers.
         8) Record drawings: Final rendition Shop Drawings depicting system as installed
         9) Test Reports: Recorded findings of Contractor Commissioning Test located in Part 3.
         10) System Operation and Instructions: Prepare a complete and typical procedure for the operation of the equipment as a system, organized by subsystem or activity. This procedure should describe the operation of all system capabilities.
         11) Assume the intended reader of the manual to be technically experienced but unfamiliar with the components and the facility
   2. Service, Maintenance & Warranty Manual:
      a. Provide an original copy of the service manual on every piece of equipment for which the manufacturer offers a service manual. Arrange manuals in the same order as the operations manual.
      b. Provide manufacturer’s maintenance and care instructions.

c. Provide maintenance instructions, including maintenance phone numbers and hours; maintenance schedule; description of products recommended or provided for maintenance purposes, and instructions for the proper use of these products.
d. Provide manufacturer's warranty statements on each product.
e. Provide date of substantial completion and ending dates for warranties for each group of products.

C. Shop Drawings. Provide the following documentation:
1. Schematic: Detailed wiring diagrams showing interconnection of contractor provided components and fabricated products, wiring and cabling diagrams depicting cable types and designators, and device designators. Give each component a unique designator and use this designator consistently throughout the project.
2. Equipment: Location of equipment in racks, consoles, or on tables, with dimensions; wire routing and cabling within housings; AC power outlet and terminal strip locations.
3. Full fabrication details of custom enclosure and millwork indicating size, material, finish and openings for equipment.
4. Fabricated Plates and Panels: Provide complete drawings on custom fabricated plates or panels. Drawings shall include dimensioned locations of components, component types, engraving information, plate material and color, and bill of material.
5. Labeling: Equipment and cable labeling scheme. Include font sizes and styles, explanation of scheme, and designator schedule.
6. Schedules: Wiring schedule showing source and destination of wiring and indicating which wiring is in conduit. Junction box schedule showing type of box, size, mounting and location.

D. Submittal format:
1. Each submittal shall include a unique number and be numbered in consecutive order.
2. Each submittal shall include a complete table of contents with the following information:
a. Project title and number.
b. Submittal number. In the case of a re-submittal, use the original submittal number immediately followed by the suffix “R” immediately followed by a unique number and be numbered in consecutive order.
3. Date of submission.
4. Referenced addendum or change order number as applicable.
5. Referenced specification Section, Part, Article, Paragraph and page number or drawing reference as applicable.
6. Index Product Data sheets by manufacturer and model or part number.
7. Each submission shall be stamped with Contractor’s certification stamp, initialed or signed certifying:
a. Review, approval and acceptance of submission.
b. Certification of product compliance to specification.
c. Verification product may be incorporated within the work.
8. Arrange product data list in alphanumeric order. Follow list with manufacturer’s data sheets, arranged in the same order. If a data sheet shows more than one product, indicate the model being proposed with an arrow or other appropriate symbol.
9. Drawings executed at an appropriate scale, not smaller than 1/8” = 1’-0”’.
10. Separate major grouping with labeled binder tabs.
11. Bind Project Record Manual in titled locking three ring style binders sized for 150 per cent of the material. Maximum size: three-inch spine. Use multiple volumes if necessary.

E. Resubmission Requirements:
1. Make any requested corrections or change in submittals required. Resubmit for review until no exceptions are taken.
2. Indicate any changes that have been made other than those requested.

F. Submit “Letter of Conformance” in accordance with Section 01 33 00 indicating specified items selected for use in project.

G. Shop Drawings: Include data on custom -fabricated components. Show plans, elevations, and sections detailing installed features and devices.
1. System Wiring Diagrams: One reproducible and four prints include system diagram unique to Project. Show connections for all devices, components, and auxiliary equipment. Differentiate

between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include diagrams for equipment and for system with all terminals and interconnections identified.

H. System Operation Description: Include method of operation and supervision of each component and each type of circuit, and sequence of operations for manually and automatically initiated system inputs. Description must cover this specific Project; manufacturer's standard descriptions for generic systems are not acceptable.

I. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of components certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

J. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

K. Record of field tests of system.

L. Maintenance Data: For products and system to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 01. Include data for each type of product, including all features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual. Include user's software data and recommendations for spare parts and components to be stocked at Project site.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A certified technician accredited by the National Burglar and Fire Alarm Association, and who is an authorized service representative of central -control unit manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Central -control unit manufacturer or factory-authorized agency maintains a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance and repairs for overall system at Project site with 24 hours' maximum response time.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 45 00 "Quality Control." A current member firm of the National Burglar and Fire Alarm Association. Experienced in performing tests of intrusion detection systems.
   1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified as an advanced alarm technician by the National Burglar and Fire Alarm Association.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain system components from central -control unit manufacturer who shall assume responsibility for system components and for their compatibility.

E. FM Compliance: FM-approved and -labeled intrusion detection devices and equipment.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Comply with NFPA 70.

H. Comply with UL 1076.

1.7 SYSTEM SERVICE CONDITIONS

A. The system will be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
   1. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet.
   2. Ambient Temperature for Indoor Components: 0 to 40 deg C.
   3. Relative Humidity for Indoor Components: 5 to 95 percent, non-condensing.
   4. Ambient Temperature for Outdoor Components: Minus 25 to plus 50 deg C.
   5. Relative Humidity for Outdoor Components: 0 to 100 percent.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Installer shall warrant equipment to be free of defects in materials and workmanship for one year after date of Substantial Completion. Defects occurring in labor or materials within one-year warranty shall be rectified by replacement or repair. Within the warranty period, provide answers to service calls and requests for information within a 24-hour period and repair or replace any faulty item within a 24-hour period without charge, including parts and labor.

B. This warranty shall not void specific warranties issued by manufacturers for greater periods of time, nor shall it void any rights guarantied to the Owner by law.

C. Contractor to provide Owner with the name and telephone number of the person to call for service. This information shall be part of Project Record Drawings.

D. Thirty days prior to the end of the warranty period provide a complete checkout of all system components. Repair or replace any defective equipment or transducers discovered during the testing. Correct any defects in wiring or other functional problems reported by Owner. Warranty replacement and service of equipment shall not apply to Owner furnished equipment. Coordinate inspection visit with the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Approved Manufacturer:
   1. Napco Security Technologies, Inc. (800-645-9445).

2.2 EQUIPMENT

A. Connect new devices to existing system. In the event that there is not adequate capacity, the existing panel is to be increased in capacity or replaced.

B. If replacement of the existing system is required, existing intrusion detection devices and cabling are also to be replaced.

C. Protection from Power Line Surges: Use integral surge suppressors listed in UL 1449 and complying with IEEE C62.41, Category B. Include the following features:
   1. Suppression Level: 300 V.
   2. Maximum Response Time: 5 nanoseconds.
   3. Circuit: Multistage, using inductors and silicon-avalanche zener diodes or equivalent.
   4. Indicator Lamp: Labeled neon or LED located on control unit and arranged to extinguish on failure of protection.
   5. Fuses: Externally accessible.

D. System and Equipment-Interference Resistance: Not affected by radiated-radio-frequency interference and electrical induction of 15 V/m over a frequency range of 10 to 10,000 MHZ and conducted interference signals up to 0.25-V RMS injected into power supply lines at 10 to 10,000 MHZ.

E. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on detection devices, control units, annunciators, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components indicated to provide an alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Central -control unit identifies tamper alarms and indicates location in alarm display.

F. Products: Provide the following products subject to conformance with the requirements specified. Note: Connections shall be made to the relays (NO/NC) to provided fire alarm control panel for fire alarm and fire alarm trouble.
   1. Controller
      a. Gemini 9600
   2. Expansion Module
      a. Gemini GEMEZM8
   3. Keypad
      a. Gemini GEMK1CA
   4. Motion Detectors Type 1:
      a. Bosch DS938ZA
   5. Motion Detector Type 2:
      a. Bosch ISC-PDL1-W30G
   6. Motion Detector Type 3:
      a. Napco PIR-1510
   7. Beam Detector
      a. Optex Photoelectic Detector SL-200QN
   8. Alert Siren:
      a. Revere Industries RVL-36C/SRN\
   9. Power Supply/Charger
      a. Altronix AL400ULXPD16
   10. Rechargeable Battery
      a. Altronix BT126
   11. Enclosure
      a. Mier Products, Inc BW-99B

12. Cables
    a. 22 AWG: Anixter AL-2204C-2-2N-01-BX or approved equal
    b. 16 AWG: Anixter AL-1804C-2-2N-01-BX or approved equal
13. J-Hooks
    a. Cooper B-line BCH12-W2
14. Alarm Monitor
    a. Coordinate with Dallas ISD on monitoring component of AES system.
    b. General Contractor will take control to Dallas ISD maintenance to program if necessary.
        1) AES – 7007 Intellinet 2.0

2.3 ELECTRICAL POWER

A. Normal System Power Supply: 120 V, 60 Hz, through a locked disconnect device. System control unit supplies power to components.

B. Power Continuity: Batteries in power supplies of control units and individual system components maintain continuous system operation during outages of both normal and backup ac system supply.
   1. Batteries: Rechargeable, valve-regulated, recombinant, sealed lead-acid type with nominal 10-year life expectancy. Capacity adequate to operate portion of system served, including audible trouble signal devices for up to four hours and audible and visual alarm devices under alarm conditions for an additional 10 minutes.
   2. Battery Charger: Solid-state, fully automatic, variable-charging-rate type. Charger recharges fully discharged battery within 24 hours.

C. Annunciation: Central -control unit indicates, as a change in system condition, switching of system or component to backup power.

2.4 INTRUSION DETECTION DEVICES

A. Comply with UL 639.

B. Configuration: Single or multiple components to perform indicated functions. Single component devices may not be used where multiple-component devices are indicated.

C. Power Source: One or more dedicated power supply circuits from control unit.

D. Detection Indicator: LED in unit housing, latch type where indicated.
   1. Sensitivity: Detect presence of an intruder within their zone patterns, but not outside their zone patterns.

E. Acoustical Devices: Detect intrusion by monitoring pattern of a steady-state sonic field produced by an ultrasonic transmitter. Changes in pattern are analyzed and those matching the profile of an intrusion initiate an alarm.

F. Glass-Break Devices, Acoustic Type: Detect unique airborne acoustic energy spectrum caused by breaking glass.

G. Dual -Technology, Glass-Break and Vibration Devices: Require both methods to result in an alarm signal.

2.5 CONTROL UNITS

A. Comply with UL 1076.

B. Cabinet: Lockable steel enclosure, arranged so operations required for testing, normal operation, and maintenance are performed from front of enclosure. If more than a single cabinet is required to form a complete control unit, provide exactly matching modular enclosures. Accommodate all components and allow ample gutter space for interconnecting cabinets and field wiring. Identify each enclosure by an engraved, laminated, phenolic-resin nameplate. Lettering on enclosure nameplate shall not be less than 1 inch (25 mm) high. Identify individual components and modules within cabinets with permanent labels.

C. Systems: Separate and independent alarm and supervisory systems in control units. Alarm initiating zone boards consist of plug-in cards. Arrangements requiring removal of field wiring for module replacement are not acceptable.

D. Timing Unit: Solid state, programmable, 365 day. Features include the following:
   1. Astronomic Control: For automatic adjustment of light switching at dawn and dusk.

2. Confirmation: Relays, contactors, and other control devices have auxiliary contacts connected to provide confirmation signals to the system of on or off status of the equipment controlled. Software interprets such signals, displays equipment status, and initiates failure signals.
3. Override Capability: Programmed shutdown of lighting and other items can be overridden by using override push buttons or by entering a command over a telephone data link.

E. Control Modules: Types and capacities as required to perform unit functions. Visible and audible signals in central -control unit indicate alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions for each zone. Each type of audible alarm has a distinct sound.

F. Zones: Quantity of alarm and supervisory zones as indicated with capacity for expanding number of zones by a minimum of 25 percent.

G. Power Supply Circuits: Units provide power for remote power-consuming detection devices. Circuit capacity is adequate for at least a 25 percent increase in load.

H. Indicating Lights: Individual LED devices designate each zone. An LED test switch for each control unit section illuminates all LED devices on that section of the unit. Manual toggle test switches or push test-buttons do not require a key to operate. Alarm and supervisory signals light a red LED for the associated zone. Trouble signals light an amber LED for the associated zone.

I. Resetting: Controls permit silencing audible signals for individual zones but prevent resetting of alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals while the condition still exists.

J. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arrange for basic interface between human operator at central -control unit and system components, including annunciation, supervision, and control. A display with a minimum of 80 characters displays alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and indicates control commands to be entered into system. Arrange keypad to enter and execute control commands.

2.6 SECURE-ACCESS CONTROL STATIONS

A. Keypad: Arranged for entering and executing commands for system status changes.

B. Key-Operated Switch: Changes zone between "secure" and "access" modes.

2.7 SYSTEM PRINTER

A. Description: Listed in UL 1610 and labeled as an integral part of intrusion detection system.

2.8 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Cable for fire panel connection shall be power limited fire alarm plenum cable 2 conductor 16AWG Red (FPLP).

B. Cable for hold-up button connections shall be power limited fire alarm plenum cable 4 conductor 22 AWG (FPLP).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install system according to NFPA 70, NFPA 72, applicable codes, and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Comply with UL 681 and/or 1641.

C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceways. Conceal raceways, except in unfinished indoor spaces.

D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

E. Number of Conductors: As recommended by system manufacturer for functions indicated.

F. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

G. Connections: Comply with torque-tightening values specified in UL 486A.

H. Identify components, conductors, and cables according to Section 26 05 53 - "Identification for Electrical Systems". Color-code conductors, and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so media are identified and in coordination with system wiring diagrams.

I. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components for detection devices at control units, unless otherwise indicated. Do not install such items near the devices they serve. Provide tamper switches where mounted separately from control units.

J. Interface with other products: complete connection to telephone system for central station monitoring.

K. Equipment shall be firmly secured in place with supports and fastenings providing a minimum safety factor of three. Provide adequate ventilation for all equipment.

L. Security system requires two (2) loop start telephone lines in place, with RJ31X jacks and 24hour emergency power supply.

3.2 GROUNDING

A. Ground system components and conductor and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.

B. Pre-testing: Align and adjust system and perform pre-testing of all components, wiring, and functions to verify compliance with specified requirements. Correct deficiencies by replacing malfunctioning or dam aged items with new items.

C. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:

D. Manufacturer's Field Services: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and perform system pre-testing, testing, adjustment, and programming.
   1. Operational Tests: Schedule tests after pre-testing has been successfully completed. Perform operational system tests to verify compliance with Specifications. Test all modes of system operation and intrusion detection. Methodically test for detection of intrusion and for false alarms in each zone of intrusion detection. Test for false alarms by simulating activities outside indicated detection patterns.
   2. Report: Prepare a written report of observations, inspection, and tests.

E. Retesting: Correct deficiencies and retest until total system meets requirements of the Specifications and com plies with applicable standards.

F. Schedule testing with at least seven days' advance notice.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustment: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting and reprogramming to sui t actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project for this purpose without additional cost.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to explain programming and operation of system and to train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for maintaining, programming, operating, adjusting, troubleshooting, and servicing system.

B. Refer to Section 01 79 00 “Demonstration and Training” for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 4600

FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related sections include the following:
   1. Division 28, “Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety.”

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This project requires the following fire alarm system:
   1. Replace existing fire alarm system with new. Provide complete fire alarm system throughout entire building, including but not limited to replacement of main control unit, all fire alarm initiation and notification devices, and (if required) fire alarm wiring.
   2. Expand fire alarm system, including capacity, devices, etc., as required to include new addition.
   3. Per DISD, the following scope and requirements shall also be met:
      a. Provide smoke detector in elevator machine room.
      b. Provide heat detector at bottom of elevator hoist way within 18 inches of sprinkler head.
      c. An elevator contractor shall be present when the fire alarm contractor connects and terminates the new fire alarm wiring with the elevator controller.
      d. During the city fire alarm inspection, an elevator contractor must be present as well.
      e. Fire alarm shall include relays for audio shunt to public announcement (PA) and sound systems. This is meant to ensure the fire alarm is heard when activated. Fire alarm contractor shall provide connection from fire alarm system to a relay model number MR-101-C/R-24/120VAC and connect to DISD audio system for control.

B. Section Includes:
   1. Fire-alarm control unit.
   2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
   3. System smoke detectors.
   4. Nonsystem smoke detectors.
   5. Heat detectors.
   6. Notification appliances.
   7. Firefighters' two-way telephone communication service.
   8. Magnetic door holders.
   9. Remote annunciator.
   10. Addressable interface device.
   11. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. LED: Light-emitting diode.

B. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with automatic sensitivity control, multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

B. Design and installation shall meet the latest Dallas Technical Design Guidelines (TDG).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. General Submittal Requirements:
   1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
   2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
      a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
      b. NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level III minimum.
      c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
   2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
   3. Include battery-size calculations.
   4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
   5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
   6. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
   7. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For detection, notification, interface, communication and area of rescue assistance devices indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified NICET Level III technician or professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   1. Drawings showing the location of each smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the detector.
   2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72.
   3. Drawings showing the location of all other code required devices and installation details.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II technician. At least one (1) NICET Level III certified technician must be on site to guide programming and final checkout.

C. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer. **Components shall be compatible with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.**

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by an NRTL.

F. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Architect's written permission.

1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.

B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring. Contractor shall also be responsible for any patching required after removal of old devices.

C. Contractor is responsible for coordinating with Dallas ISD-IT-CSS and IT-infrastructure to provide any dedicated phone lines that are required. Typically, only required in remote locations that cannot use the AES system.

D. Licensed fire alarm installer to coordinate any proposed system expansion with Dallas ISD-M&O prior to submittal and installation.

E. Licensed fire alarm control to provide system submittal with all zone information. Contractor to coordinate system monitoring program requirements with Dallas ISD-IT-CSS and Central Dispatch.

F. Install locking document box at the fire alarm control panel (FACP). Place completed as-built drawings, upon completion, in locked document box.

G. Installation identifying sticker to be placed inside the fire alarm control panel (FACP).

H. Saved items: All existing fire alarm control panels and remote power supplies to be removed with care and returned to Dallas ISD designated representative, who will provide to Dallas ISD-M&O.

1.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
   1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

D. Provide a copy of the control panel program in the documents cabinets located at the fire alarm control panel.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Deliver to DISD designated representative who will provide to M&O.
   1. Keys and Tools: Three (3) sets for access to locked and tamperproofed components.
   2. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system.
   3. 10% of field devices.
   4. One SLC loop card.
   5. One CPU.
   6. One ACM-24AT control module (if used).
   7. One remote power supply.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. All work performed and all material and equipment furnished under this contract shall be free from initial defects. The full cost of labor and materials required to correct any malfunction for a period of one (1) year from the date of final acceptance, shall be included.

B. The System Supplier shall maintain a service organization with adequate spare parts stock within 75 miles of the installation. Any defects that render the system inoperative shall be repaired within 24 hours of the owner notifying the contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
   1. NOTIFIER; a Honeywell company. (NESCO affiliated only.)

B. Furnish Notifier NFS2-3030 fire alarm control panel.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Smoke detectors.
4. Duct smoke detectors.
5. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors.
6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
7. Heat detectors in elevator shaft and pit.
8. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
9. Fire standpipe system.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
2. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
    a. A general evacuation message shall be sounded on fire floors (zones) immediately above and below (adjacent to) the fire floor (zone). It is the intent of this message to advise occupants hearing this message that they are near danger and should leave the building via the stairs (nearest exit) immediately. Activate visual strobes on these floors.
    b. An alert message shall be sounded on the remainder of building. It is the intent of this message to advise occupants to prepare for evacuation if necessary.
    c. An instructional message shall be sounded in the stairwells instructing occupants to move carefully and quickly down the stairs to exit the building and to exit to a safe floor if you encounter smoke in the stairwell.
    d. An instructional message shall be sounded in the elevator cabs. It is the intent of this message to advise elevator occupants that an emergency exists, the elevator has been directed to the ground floor, and that occupants should quickly exit the building.
    e. An instructional message shall be sounded in the lobby. It is the intent of this message to advise lobby occupants to leave the lobby and clear the area for arriving firefighters.
    f. An instructional message shall be sounded in the concourses connected to the building's lobby. It is the intent of this message to prevent new entries into the lobby by advising occupants not to attempt to enter the lobby of the affected building.
7. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
8. Activate smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.
9. Activate stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
10. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
11. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
12. Record events in the system memory.
13. Record events by the system printer.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. Low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe sprinkler system.
3. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
7. Failure of battery charging.
8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
9. Fire-pump power failure, including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
10. Low-air-pressure switch operation on a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.
11. Activation of area of rescue assistance system.

E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.

F. Provide required remote power supplies.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   a. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
   b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
2. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status.
   a. Smoke sensors shall additionally communicate sensitivity setting and allow for adjustment of sensitivity at fire-alarm control unit.
   b. Temperature sensors shall additionally test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
3. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.

B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 3 line(s) of 80 characters, minimum. (160 characters total,)
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.

C. Circuits:
1. Alarm, trouble and supervisory signals from all intelligent reporting devices shall be encoded on NFPA Style 4 (Class B) Signaling Line Circuits (SLC).
2. Initiation Device Circuits (IDC) shall be wired Class A (NFPA Style D) as part of an addressable device connected by the SLC Circuit.
3. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC) shall be wired Class A (NFPA Style Z) as part of an addressable device connected by the SLC Circuit.
4. On Style 6 or 7 (Class A) configurations, a single ground fault or open circuit on the system Signaling Line Circuit shall not cause system malfunction, loss of operating power, or the ability to report an alarm.

5. Alarm signals arriving at the FACP shall not be lost following a primary power failure (or outage) until the alarm signal is processed and recorded.
6. Serial Interfaces: Two RS-232 ports for printers.

D. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an NRTL-listed and -approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
4. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

E. Notification Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a temporal pattern.

F. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.

G. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

H. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

I. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit.
1. Indicated number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711 and be listed by an NRTL.
   a. Allow the application of and evacuation signal to indicated number of zones and, at same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
   b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
   c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
   d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.

J. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals, and supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

K. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
1. Batteries: Sealed jell-cell type.

L. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

M. Provide surge protection at each location the signaling line circuit leaves the main building or returns from portable building or additional structure.

N. Provide lockable document box at the fire alarm control panel. Place completed as-built drawings, upon completion, in this box.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
   1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
   2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
   3. Provide manual station with integral horn in gymnasiums.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
   1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
   2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
   3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
   4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
   5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
   6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
   7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
      a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
      b. Fixed-temperature sensing shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
      c. Provide multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
   1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
   2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
      a. Primary status.
      b. Device type.
      c. Present average value.
      d. Present sensitivity selected.
      e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

3. Note that DISD does not allow CO detectors unless specifically required by the Authority having Jurisdiction.

C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
   a. Primary status.
   b. Device type.
   c. Present average value.
   d. Present sensitivity selected.
   e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.
7. Duct detectors shall be powered by the fire alarm system. Duct detectors shall not be powered by 120V power. Duct detectors must be provided by Notifier.

2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.
1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

C. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- high letters on the lens.
1. Rated Light Output:
   a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

D. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
   1. Appliances shall comply with UL 1480 and shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   2. Rated 0.5 W, 1 W, 2 W and 4 W. At the 4 W setting, the speaker shall provide a 94 dBA sound output at a frequency of 1000 Hz when measured in an anechoic chamber at 10 ft.
   3. Mounting: Flush or surface mounted and bidirectional.
   4. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.8 FIREFIGHTERS' TWO-WAY TELEPHONE COMMUNICATION SERVICE

A. Dedicated, two-way, supervised, telephone voice communication links between fire-alarm control unit and remote firefighters' telephone stations. Supervised telephone lines shall be connected to talk circuits by controls in a control module. Provide the following:
   1. Common-talk type for firefighter use only.
   2. Selective-talk type for use by firefighters and fire wardens.
   3. Controls to disconnect phones from talk circuits if too many phones are in use simultaneously.
   4. Audible Pulse and Tone Generator, and High-Intensity Lamp: When a remote telephone is activated, it causes audible signal to sound and high-intensity lamp to flash.
   5. Selector panel controls shall provide for simultaneous operation of up to six telephones in selected zones. Indicate ground faults and open or shorted telephone lines on the panel front by individual LEDs.
   6. Display: Liquid-crystal digital to indicate location of caller.
   7. Remote Telephone Cabinet: Flush- or surface-mounted cabinet as indicated, factory-standard red finish, with handset.
      a. Install one-piece handset to cabinet with vandal-resistant armored cord. Silk-screened or engraved label on cabinet door, designating "Fire Emergency Phone."
      b. With "break-glass" type door access lock.
   8. Remote Telephone Jack Stations: Single-gang, stainless-steel-plate mounted plug, engraved "Fire Emergency Phone."
   9. Handsets: Five (5) push-to-talk-type sets with noise-canceling microphone stored in a cabinet adjacent to fire-alarm control unit.
   10. Two-way communication system (or area of rescue assistance) at the elevator landing (or area of refuge as required by local jurisdiction) on each accessible floor. Two-way communication system type to be approved by local jurisdiction and meet ADA. Include control panel, remote call stations, A/V annunciation/communications and required data power wiring.

2.9 WIRELESS DIALING

A. Provide King AES device for wireless dialing out.

2.10 FIREFIGHTERS SMOKE CONTROL STATION

A. Provide a semi-flush mounted graphic Firefighter’s Smoke Control Station (FSCS) at the location(s) shown on the drawings. The FSCS shall provide a graphic representation of the facility HVAC system and stairwell pressurization system. Fan override and control switches and fan/damper status LEDs shall be provided as indicated on the shop drawings. The following system controls and indicators shall be provided on the FSCS: Power ON, Trouble, and Signal Silenced LEDs; System Reset, Silence, Trouble Silence, and Drill push buttons.

2.11 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.

1. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Rating: 24-V dc.

B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.12 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.13 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module, NRTL listed for use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.

B. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall and to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.

2.14 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.

B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
2. Programming device.
3. LED display.
4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.

D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
2. Address of the supervisory signal.
3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
4. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
5. Low battery.
6. Abnormal test signal.
7. Communication bus failure.

E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.

F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.15 DEVICE GUARDS

A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
   1. Factory fabricated and furnished by manufacturer of device.
   2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.
   3. Provide impact-resistant device guards in spacing requiring protection, such as gymnasiums and warehouses.

2.16 CIRCUITING

A. Wire and cable:
   1. All wiring shall be completely supervised, meeting the requirements of NFPA and the equipment of manufacturers system.
   2. Power-limited cable in accordance with NEC 70, where used, not installed in UL listed metal conduit or raceway shall be mechanically protected by building construction features:
      a. Installation shall be in areas not subjected to mechanical injury.
      b. All circuits shall be supported by the building structure. Cable shall be attached by straps to the building structure at intervals not greater than 10 feet.
      c. Wiring installed above drop ceilings, cable shall not be laid on ceiling tiles.
      d. Cable shall not be fastened in a manner that puts tension on the cable.
      e. Cable type shall be FPLP, FPLR, or FPL, or permitted substitutions, selected for the installation application as required by NEC 70, Section 760-61.
      f. All cable that is not enclosed by conduit shall be supported and anchored with nylon straps or clamps. The use of staples is prohibited.
   3. Provide surge suppression at each location the signaling line circuit leaves the main building or returns from portable building or additional structures.

B. Conduit shall be 3/4" minimum. The conduit shall be provided and installed by the electrical contractor. The fire alarm contractor shall provide a detailed shop drawing indicating conduit locations, wiring requirements and routing. This drawing shall be delivered as part of the shop drawings prior to beginning installation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on wall with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

C. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.
   1. Connect new equipment to existing control panel in existing part of the building.
   2. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at the supervising station.
   3. Expand, modify, and supplement existing control equipment as necessary to extend existing control functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.

D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
   1. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
   2. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
   3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
   4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A or Appendix B in NFPA 72.
   5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 5 feet from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
   6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture.

E. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.

F. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.

G. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

H. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.

I. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling.

J. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

K. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

L. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

M. Area of Rescue Assistance System: Install in locations and heights to meet IFC, ADA, and local AHJ.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
   1. Verify that hardware and devices are NRTL listed for use with fire-alarm system in this Section before making connections.

B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
   1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.
   2. Alarm-initiating connection to stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.

3. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
4. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
5. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
6. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
7. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt trip breaker.
8. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
9. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.

B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." for installation of conduits and wireways.

D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

E. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
1. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
2. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
3. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.4 FIRE ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.

B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Fire alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated raceway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.

C. Wiring Method:
1. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of 2-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is not permitted.
3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.

D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.

H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction, when applicable.

B. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
      a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
      b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
   2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
   3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
   4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.

5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
7. During the final inspection, a factory-trained representative of the manufacturer shall demonstrate that the networked system functions properly in every respect.

D. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

E. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Compile and maintain all field quality control reports and make available to the AHJ, owner, architect and engineer as needed.

G. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

H. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

B. The System Supplier shall schedule and present a minimum of 8 hours of documented formalized instruction for the building owner, detailing the proper operation of the installed System.

C. The contractor and/or the systems manufacturer's representative shall provide a detailed typewritten "Sequence of Operation."

D. Two (2) copies of the following documents shall be delivered to the building owner's representative at the time of system acceptance. The close out submittals shall include:
1. Project specific operating manuals covering the installed integrated life safety system.
2. As-Built drawings consisting of: a scaled plan of each building showing the placement of each individual item of the Integrated Life Safety System equipment as well as raceway size and routing, junction boxes, and conductor size, quantity, and color in each raceway. All drawings shall be provided in standard AutoCAD 2013 format. A vellum plot of each sheet shall also be provided.
3. The application program listing for the system as installed at the time of acceptance by the building owner and/or local AHJ (disk, hard copy printout, and all required passwords).
4. Provide the name, address and telephone of the authorized factory representative.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 311000 SITE PREPARATION AND DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. This Section includes furnishing all equipment, materials, and labor for the preparation of this site and removal of existing pavement, trees and underground utilities as shown by the construction documents.

B. Location and protection of utilities.

C. Site Clearing.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. SECTION 312200 – EARTHWORK

B. SECTION 312500 – EROSION CONTROL

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. As required by DIVISION 1 requirements.

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING

A. As required by DIVISION 1 requirements.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to obtain a temporary water meter and temporary sanitary sewer facilities for use during construction.

B. Provide erosion and sedimentation controls as shown on the drawings and maintain for the duration of the project. Provide routine maintenance as required to maintain the integrity of controls and protection measures and remove any accumulations of mud, silt and debris, which would jeopardize the integrity of the control measures. Refer to drawings for details.

C. Contractor shall exercise care during operations to confine dust to the immediate work area and shall employ dust control measures to ensure adequate dust control throughout demolition and construction operations.

D. The use of explosives is prohibited.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

3.1 PROTECTION OF EXISTING ACTIVE UTILITIES

A. The Contractor shall field verify and coordinate with Owner the location and depths of existing active utilities service lines within the construction limits and shall protect all such utilities from damage during construction operations. Damage to existing utilities to remain shall be repaired at the Contractor's expense for re-establishing the utilities to their pre-damaged condition.

3.2 PROTECTION OF EXISTING ON AND OFF-SITE PAVING

A. The Contractor shall protect all adjacent on and off-site paving and appurtenances from damage. Any damage shall be repaired at the Contractor's expense.

3.3 SITE CLEARING

A. Contractor shall remove all trees as shown on the plans. Trees less than six (6) inches in calipers and shrubs located within the construction area shall also be removed. Trees located within and/or adjacent to the area of construction shall be protected per the plans. Contractor shall remove all grasses and topsoil to a minimum depth of four (4) inches.

B. Contractor shall remove all pavements, concrete and brick pavers, and curb and gutter as shown on the plans.

C. Contractor shall remove light standards, bases and foundations to full depth, as shown on the plans. Existing water and gas lines shall be cut and plugged. Existing public meters and public fire hydrants shall be returned to the local governing authority or disposed of at no additional cost to Owner.

D. Exposed subgrade shall be proof rolled with at least a 15-ton pneumatic roller to detect weak soil support areas. All weak soil areas, utility trenches and excavated areas shall be filled and compacted per SECTION 312200.

3.4 FINAL CLEANUP

A. Remove all traces of demolished items from the site work area and rough grade all areas that have been disturbed.

B. All removed items shall be legally disposed of off-site at no additional cost to Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 312200 EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. This Section includes operations required for the excavation of materials on site, compaction of natural or improved subgrades, finish grading, disposal of excess or unsuitable materials, and other required operations. Earthwork shall conform with dimensions and typical sections shown, and within lines and grades established on Drawings.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. SECTION 311000 – SITE PREPARATION AND DEMOLITION

B. SECTION 321313 – CONCRETE PAVING

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International (ASTM)
   1. ASTM D1557 – Test for Moisture-Density Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort
   2. ASTM D2487 – Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification)
   3. ASTM D2922 – Test for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Method
   4. ASTM D3017 – Test for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Method
   5. ASTM D4318 – Test for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils
   6. ASTM G51 – Test for Measuring pH of Soil for Use in Corrosion Testing
   7. ASTM G57 – Test for Field Measurement of Soil Resistivity

1.4 EXISTING UTILITIES

A. Where pipes, ducts and structures are encountered in the excavation but are not shown on the drawings, immediately notify the Architect.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

A. Classification: Earthwork materials are classified in accordance with definitions in this Article.

B. General Site Fill: If additional soil is required to achieve the elevations shown on the drawings, it shall be the Contractor’s responsibility to obtain the needed soil from an approved source. Excess soil may be utilized on-site in areas designated by Owner; otherwise, the Contractor shall legally dispose excess soil off-site at no additional cost to Owner.

C. Select Fill: Additional soil beneath sidewalk, pavements, foundations and other structures required to achieve the elevations shown on the drawing. Select fill material shall be as required by the Geotechnical report.

D. Subgrade: Consists of that portion of the surface on which a compacted fill, backfill, pavement or topsoil is placed.

E. Borrow: Material taken from approved off-site sources to make up any deficit of excavated material. Obtain from area that is normally dry and well drained. Borrow does not include topsoil.

F. Finish Grading: Operations required for smoothing disturbed areas that are not overlaid with pavement.

G. Excavation: Excavation of every description and of whatever substances encountered within the limits of the project to the lines and grades indicated on the Drawings.

H. Compaction: Compaction of soil materials shall be measured as a percent of Standard Proctor density as determined in the laboratory by the ASTM D689 and measured in the field by ASTM D2922 and ASTM D3017.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. As required by DIVISION 1 requirements.

B. Submit laboratory testing reports for each soil borrow source used to supply general fill and select fill materials.

1.7 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING

A. As required by DIVISION 1 requirements.

B. The Owner may engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field inspections and tests, and to prepare test reports. When such testing indicates that Contractor's work does not comply with the specified requirements, additional testing shall be performed by the Owner's testing agency at no additional cost to the Owner to determine compliance of corrected Work with the specified requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELECT FILL

A. Select fill material shall be non-expansive clayey sand or sandy clay having a liquid limit (LL) of 35 percent or less and a plasticity index (PI) not less than 4 or greater than 15 and contain no more than 0.5 percent fibrous organic materials, by weight. The select fill shall contain no deleterious material and shall be compacted to a dry density of at least 95 percent of Standard

Proctor by ASTM D 689 and a moisture content within minus one (-1) and to plus three (+3) percent of optimum moisture.

B. Obtain select fill material from a source that meets the requirements of the Geotechnical Report.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

A. Objective: As shown on the Drawings, excavate to lines, grades and elevations required for subsequent construction. All excavation shall be made in such manner as to permit all surfaces to be brought to final line and grade within plus or minus 0.1 foot. Over excavation shall be restored at no additional cost to the Owner. Finished grades consistently high or low will not be acceptable and shall be corrected at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Drainage: During excavation, maintain grades as required to maintain drainage; or, as directed by the Architect, install temporary drains or drainage ditches to intercept or divert surface water and prevent interference or delay of the work.

C. Stockpiling: If at time of excavation it is not possible to place material in the proper section of permanent construction, stockpile the material in Architect approved areas for later use.

D. Stone or Rock: Stone or rock fragments greater than 6" will not be allowed in fills or embankments. Stones or rock fragments larger than 2 inches in their greatest dimension will not be permitted in top 6 inches of subgrade.

3.2 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

A. Surface vegetation, existing pavements, and other deleterious materials shall be stripped in accordance with SECTION 31 10 00.

B. In-situ Soil Subgrades for Pavements: The upper 6 inches of the subgrade soil shall be scarified and compacted to a minimum 95% Standard Proctor maximum laboratory dry density as determined by ASTM D 698 within zero (0) and to plus four (+4) percent of optimum moisture.

C. Fill Soil Subgrades: The exposed in-situ soil shall be proof-rolled using heavy rubber-tired construction equipment; e.g., 25-ton loaded tandem-axle dump truck. Approved on-site clays can be used for pavement and subgrade fill. Soil shall be free of organic materials and other debris, and rock fragments greater than 2-1/2 inches. Fill shall be placed in maximum 8-inch loose lifts and compacted to at least 95% Standard Proctor maximum laboratory dry density as determined by ASTM D 698 at a moisture content within minus one (-1) and to plus three (+3) percent of optimum moisture

D. Only on-site soils shall be used to fine grade the subgrade – sand shall not be permitted. After fine grading the subgrade, the subgrade moisture content and density shall be maintained until paving is completed. Water and/or re-compact the subgrade as necessary to restore the required moisture and density levels, and to provide a tight, non-yielding subgrade.

3.3 PLACING FILL AND BACKFILL

A. Examination of Subgrade: Do not place fill on any part of the subgrade until Owner has accepted the subgrade preparation.

B. Removing Debris: During the dumping and spreading process, remove all roots, stones and debris that are uncovered in the fill material.

C. Spreading Fill and Backfill: After dumping, spread the material in horizontal layers over the entire fill area. The thickness of each layer before compaction shall not exceed 8 inches. Maintain positive drainage throughout construction. The combined excavation and fill placing operation shall be such that the material when compacted in the fill will be blended sufficiently to secure the best practicable degree of compaction. The suitability of the materials shall be subject to approval of the Owner. After each layer of fill has been spread to the proper depth, it shall be thoroughly manipulated with a disc plow or other suitable and approved equipment until the material is uniformly mixed, pulverized and brought to uniform approved moisture content.

D. Attaining Proper Bond: If, in the opinion of the Owner, the compacted surface of a layer is too smooth to bond with succeeding layers, loosen the surface by harrowing or other approved method before continuing the work.

3.4 MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Intent: The required density is desired on the wet side of the natural moisture content in order to limit post construction swelling of the clay soils.

B. Adjustment: If the moisture content is too high, adjust to within the specified limits by spreading the material and permitting it to dry. Assist the drying process by disking or harrowing if necessary. When the material is too dry, sprinkle each layer with water. Work the moisture into the soil by harrowing or other approved method.

3.5 COMPACTION

A. Rough Grade: Compact each layer of fill material with suitable equipment as necessary to achieve an in-place soil density of at least 95% Standard Proctor maximum laboratory dry density as determined by ASTM D698 and a moisture content within minus one (-1) and to plus three (+3) percent of optimum moisture.
   1. Field moisture-density of compacted soil layers will be determined by the Owner's quality control testing laboratory. Additional laboratory testing may be performed to monitor any changes in the soil moisture-density relationship and adjust field testing accordingly.

B. Finish Grade: Place and lightly compact topsoil to achieve finish grades.

3.6 MATERIAL DISPOSAL

A. Excess Excavation Material (soil material free of trees, stumps, logs, brush, roots, rubbish and other objectionable matter which has been accepted by Owner): Remove excess excavated material from the construction site before Pre-final Inspection.

B. Waste Material (material including trees, stumps, logs, brush, roots, rubbish and other objectionable matter which has not been accepted by Owner): Remove waste material from the project site before final Inspection. Legally dispose of material at a licensed site or with written and notarized permission from the property owner for a private disposal site. Pay for all costs associated with waste material removal and disposal.

3.7 TESTING

A. Laboratory Testing and Inspection Services: As specified in DIVISION 1.

B. The Owner may employ a geotechnical laboratory testing agency to monitor soil quality and compaction of fill during construction. The laboratory testing agency will adhere to the following testing procedures:
   1. Inspect and test each lift of select fill material. Do not proceed until test results for previously completed work verify compliance with requirements.
   2. Field density and moisture tests will be performed by the nuclear method in accordance with ASTM D2922 and ASTM D3017.
   3. When field in-place density and moisture tests are performed using nuclear methods, the moisture/density gages will be checked and calibrated to correlate to laboratory density and moisture values as determined by ASTM D689 at the beginning of each work period.
   4. Perform at least one field in-place moisture and density test for every 2,500 square feet of compacted fill per lift, but in no case fewer than five tests for any given lift.

C. Fill material that does not pass field moisture/density testing shall be scarified, watered if necessary, reworked and re-compacted at no additional cost to the Owner. Soil sampling and laboratory testing associated with re-testing of soil materials that are reworked to correct non-compliance with the specified requirements shall not be an additional cost to the Owner.

D. Soil sampling and laboratory testing associated with identification of acceptable borrow sources shall not be an additional cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 312500 EROSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all the necessary materials, labor, tools, equipment, and other incidentals required to design, install, maintain, and remove after construction all temporary erosion control devices shown in accordance with the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan. The purpose of erosion control is to prevent sediment-laden runoff from leaving the construction area at any time.

B. Establish permanent or temporary grass, as necessary to prevent erosion during construction.

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. SECTION 311000 – SITE DEMOLITION AND DEMOLITION

B. SECTION 312200 – EARTHWORK

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. As required by DIVISION 1

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM.

B. North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) – Standard Specification for Public Works Construction

C. United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Document No. EPA 832/R-92-008 (September 1992).

1.5 TYPES OF EROSION CONTROL

A. Organic Filter Tube: The purpose of a filter tube is to slow the flow of sediment-laden runoff from disturbed areas. Sediment and other pollutants are filtered out as the water flows through the tube and organic media. Unless otherwise noted, the filter tube shall have a minimum diameter of twelve (12) inches.

B. Stabilized Construction Entrance: The purpose of constructing a temporary stabilized construction entrance is to prevent sediment from leaving the project site and becoming a nuisance on a paved street. Install a temporary stabilized construction entrance at any point

where traffic will be entering or leaving a construction site to a paved surface, thus greatly reducing or eliminating the tracking or flow of sediment onto the paved surface.

C. Silt Fence: A silt fence serves the purpose to intercept and detain water borne sediment from unprotected areas to a limited extent. Silt Fences are the most common means of erosion control used.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ORGANIC FILTER TUBE

A. Chipped site vegetation, composted mulch or wood-based mulch with particle size of fine (1/4” to 1/2") and coarse grades with no particulate sizes exceeding 3” in length. The mixture ratio should be or may include greater fraction of coarser blend materials (1:2) (fine: coarse).

2.2 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE

A. Use clean, open graded, 3” to 6” diameter crushed concrete or concrete modular unit (CMU).

2.3 SILT FENCE:

A. Use silt fence fabric of nylon reinforced polypropylene fabric conforming to NTCOG Item 2.24.4. Provide galvanized steel fence posts according to NTCOG Item 2.8.2(b)(2). Use woven wire support of W1.4 x W1.4, 4 inches x 4 inches, zinc-coated steel woven wire fence conforming to ASTM A116. Standard 2 inch x 2 inch chain link fence is acceptable as well as other welded steel fabrics consisting of equal or greater gauge wire and equal or smaller spacing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Silt Fence:
   1. Installation on Soil: Set posts a minimum of 1 foot deep and space not more than 6 feet on center. Cut a 6-inch wide trench 6 inches deep at the toe of the fence and backfill with earth or gravel. Overlap fabric a minimum of 3 feet and join such that no leakage or bypass occurs.
   2. Installation on Pavement: Weigh fabric with rock on the upstream side to prevent flow from seeping under the fence.
   3. Make inspection weekly and after each major storm event. Repair or replace promptly as needed.
   4. Remove and dispose of silt when it reaches a depth of half the height of the fence. (Replace fence if damaged due to silt build-up).

B. Organic Filter Tube:

1. Place tubes on slopes less than 5% or at the bottom of steeper slopes, less than or equal to 3:1 up to 25 ft. long. Areas with greater flows or where maximum sediment control is desired, a larger diameter of tube should be used. If a slope exceeds 4:1, it may be necessary to stake tube at 6 ft. to 8 ft. intervals.
2. Tube diameter shall be a minimum of 10 inches to 12 inches, or as specified on plans.

C. Stabilized Construction Entrance:
1. The minimum length of the stabilized entrance is 30 feet for work that is less than 150 feet from the paved surface and at least 50 feet for all other cases. Thickness is 6 inches. The width cannot be less than the full width of all points of ingress and egress.
2. When necessary clean all vehicles to remove sediment before they enter onto a paved area. Remove all sediment spilled, dropped, washed or tracked onto the paved surface immediately.
3. Properly grade the entrance or incorporate a drainage swale to prevent runoff from leaving the construction site.

3.2 MAINTENANCE AND REMOVAL

A. The Contractor is responsible for maintaining all erosion control devices and activities during the course of construction. The Owner or Owner's Designated Agent has the discretion to inspect the site periodically and if any deficiencies are found, the Contractor must correct to his/her satisfaction.

B. Watering for establishing vegetation of all disturbed areas shall be continued during construction until the project is accepted.

C. Prior to final acceptance of the project, the Contractor is to vegetate all disturbed areas within the project's construction limits.

D. Once vegetated areas are established and agreed to by the Engineer, the Contractor shall remove all erosion control measures and dispose of all accumulated trapped silt from the site. Additionally, the Contractor shall restore the site to its original condition, or the condition shown on the Contract Drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 3116

TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Chemical soil treatment.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Vapor barrier placement under concrete slab-on-grade.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. Title 7, United States Code, 136 through 136y - Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act 2019.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturers' data on manufactured products showing compliance with specified requirements.

C. Test Reports: Indicate regulatory agency approval reports when required.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that toxicants meet or exceed specified requirements.

E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate caution requirement.

F. Record and document moisture content of soil before application.

G. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with minimum three (3) years of documented experience.

H. Warranty: Submit warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing this type of work and:
   1. Having minimum of three (3) years documented experience.
   2. Approved by manufacturer of treatment materials.
   3. Licensed in the State in which the Project is located.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Provide five year installer's warranty against damage to building caused by termites.
   1. Include coverage for repairs to building and to contents damaged due to building damage. Repair damage and, if required, re-treat.
   2. Inspect annually and report in writing to Owner. Provide inspection service for 3 years from Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CHEMICAL SOIL TREATMENT

A. Toxicant Chemical: EPA Title 7, United States Code, 136 through 136y approved; synthetically color dyed to permit visual identification of treated soil.

B. Diluent: Recommended by toxicant manufacturer.

C. Manufacturers:
   1. Bayer Environmental Science Corp; www.backedbybayer.com/pest-management.
   2. FMC Professional Solutions; www.fmcprosolutions.com.

3. Syngenta Professional Products; www.syngentaprofessionalproducts.com.
4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

D. Mixes: Mix toxicant to manufacturer's instructions.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that soil surfaces are unfrozen, sufficiently dry to absorb toxicant, and ready to receive treatment.

B. Verify final grading is complete.

3.2 APPLICATION - CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A Comply with requirements of U.S. EPA and applicable state and local codes.

B. Spray apply toxicant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Apply toxicant at following locations:
1. Under Slabs-on-Grade.
2. In Crawl Spaces.
3. At Both Sides of Foundation Surface.
4. Soil Within 10 feet (3 m) of Building Perimeter For a Depth of 4 feet (0 m).

D. Under slabs, apply toxicant immediately prior to installation of vapor barrier.

E. At foundation walls, apply toxicant immediately prior to finish grading work outside foundations.

F. Apply extra treatment to structure penetration surfaces such as pipe or ducts, and soil penetrations such as grounding rods or posts.

G. Re-treat disturbed treated soil with same toxicant as original treatment.

H. If inspection or testing identifies the presence of termites, re-treat soil and re-test.

3.2 PROTECTION

A. Do not permit soil grading over treated work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 63 29

DRILLED PIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Dry-installed drilled piers.

B. Work Included
   1. Furnish all labor and materials required to construct drilled concrete piers complete including layout, excavation of shafts, temporary steel casings, fabrication and installation of reinforcing steel, furnishing and placing concrete, setting anchor bolts and removal of spoil.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
   2. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete materials and steel reinforcement.
   3. Division 5 Section “Structural Steel” for anchor rods installed in drilled piers.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

A. Basis of Bids: Base bids on indicated number of drilled piers; design length from top elevation to bottom of shaft, and diameter of shaft.

B. Basis for Payment: Payment for drilled piers will be made on actual net volume of drilled piers in place and approved. Actual length and shaft diameter may vary to coincide with elevations where satisfactory bearing strata are encountered, and with actual bearing value of bearing strata determined by an independent testing and inspecting agency. Adjustments will be made on net variation of total quantities, based on design dimensions for shafts.
   1. Unit prices include labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals required for excavation, trimming, shoring, casings, dewatering, reinforcement, concrete fill, and other items for complete drilled-pier installation.
   2. See Division 1 Section "Unit Prices" for list of unit prices.

C. Contract price shall be based on base lengths of piers shown on the Drawings. Unit prices shall be as follows:
   1. Unit prices per linear foot for piers longer or shorter than base lengths.
   2. Unit prices per linear foot for casing. Measurement for payment shall be from top of pier to top of bearing stratum.

D. The cost of casings shall be included in the base price for piers. If casings are not used, the Contract shall be adjusted based on the unit price.

E. Unit prices shall include all labor and materials including overhead and fees for drilled concrete piers. Adjustments to the Contract shall be based on total linear feet greater than or less than the sum of the base lengths of each pier size. Additional penetration in the bearing stratum greater than the specified penetration shall not be included in determination of increases or decreases of pier lengths related to adjustments in the Contract.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals for Review:
   1. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensioned plan layout, dowel and anchor bolt setting plans including templates, drilled pier shaft sizes, casing sizes, and top elevation, and details of reinforcing steel.

B. Submittals for Information:
   1. Pier Drilling Log: Report of drilled concrete pier construction including actual elevations of top and bottom of each pier, elevation of bearing stratum, penetration into bearing stratum, deviations of pier centerline and plumbness, shaft size, presence of water, use of temporary casing, placement of concrete, and time of start and finish of excavation

C. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

D. Design Mixes: For each class of concrete. Include revised mix proportions when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
1. Laboratory Test Reports: For evaluation of concrete materials and mix design.

E. Welding certificates.

F. Record drawings at Project closeout according to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum three projects in similar soil and rock conditions, and with similar shaft sizes, depths, and quantities.

B. Drilled-Pier Standard: Comply with provisions in ACI 336.1, "Reference Specifications for the Construction of Drilled Piers," unless modified in this Section.

C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to perform surveys, layouts, and measurements for drilled piers. Before excavating, lay out each drilled pier to lines and levels required. Record actual measurements of each drilled pier's location, shaft diameter, bottom and top elevations, deviations from specified tolerances, and other specified data.
1. Record and maintain information pertinent to each drilled pier and cooperate with Owner's testing and inspecting agency to provide data for required reports.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

E. Welding Standards: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities before excavating drilled piers. If utilities are to remain in place, provide protection from damage during drilled-pier operations.
1. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, adapt drilling procedure if necessary to prevent damage to utilities. Cooperate with Owner and utility companies in keeping services and facilities in operation without interruption. Repair damaged utilities to satisfaction of utility owner.

B. Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is included elsewhere in the Project Manual for information only.
1. Information regarding site conditions is provided for the convenience of the Contractor and is not a warranty that the information represents site conditions that may be encountered. The Owner shall not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the information provided by the Contractor.
2. Additional borings or other exploratory work may be conducted by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Source of Steel Producers: In accordance with Section 2252.202 of the Texas Government Code steel shall be produced in the United States.

B. Refer to Division 03 Section “Cast In Place Concrete.”

C. Bar Supports: Furnish spacers to maintain required concrete cover to sides and bottom of excavation.
a. Shaftspacer Systems and “BARBOOT Rebar Supports”, Foundation Technologies, Inc., Tucker, Georgia.
b. "HEAVY DUTY PIER WHEEL (QUICK-LOCK HD®)", “PIER WHEEL (QUICK-LOCK®)”, PIER WHEEL (QUICK-LOCK®) and “PIER WHEEL (QUICK-LOCK®), Pieresearch, Arlington, Texas.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Provide concrete materials in accordance with Division 3 “Cast-in-Place Concrete.”

2.3 STEEL CASINGS

A. Steel Pipe Casings: ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C; or ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plate, with joints full-penetration welded according to AWS D1.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, vibration, and other hazards created by drilled-pier operations.

3.2 EXCAVATION

A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavation is unclassified and includes excavation to bearing elevations regardless of character of materials or obstructions encountered.
   1. Obstructions: Unclassified excavation includes removal of unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other subsurface obstructions.

B. Prevent surface water from entering excavated shafts. Conduct water to site drainage facilities.

C. Excavate shafts for drilled piers to indicated diameters and elevations. Remove loose material from bottom of excavation.
   1. Excavate bottom of drilled piers to level plane within 1:12 tolerance.
   2. Remove water from excavated shafts before concreting.
   3. Excavate rock sockets of dimensions indicated.

D. Notify and allow Owner's testing and inspecting agency to test and inspect bottom of excavation prior to placing reinforcement and concrete. If unsuitable bearing stratum is encountered, make adjustments to drilled piers as determined by Architect.
   1. Do not excavate shafts deeper than elevations indicated, unless approved by Architect.
   2. Additional authorized excavation will be paid according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

E. Excavate shafts for closely spaced drilled piers and those occurring in fragile or sand strata, only after adjacent drilled piers are filled with concrete and allowed to set.

F. Temporary Casings: Install watertight steel casings of sufficient length and thickness to prevent water seepage into shaft; to withstand compressive, displacement, and withdrawal stresses; and to maintain stability of shaft walls.
   1. Remove temporary casings, maintained in plumb position, during concrete placement and before initial set of concrete.

G. Tolerances: Construct drilled piers to remain within ACI 336.1 tolerances.
   1. Maximum Variation From Vertical: One percent of length.
   2. Maximum Variation From Design Top Elevation: Plus 1 inch to minus 3 inches.
   3. Maximum Out-of-Position: One twenty-fourth of the shaft diameter or 3 inches, whichever is less.
   1. If location or out-of-plumb tolerances are exceeded, provide corrective construction. Submit design and construction proposals to Architect for review before proceeding.

H. Inspection: Each drilled pier must be inspected and tested by Owner's testing and inspecting agency before placing concrete.
   1. Provide and maintain facilities with equipment required for testing and inspecting excavations. Cooperate with testing and inspecting personnel to expedite the Work.
   2. Notify Architect and testing agency at least six hours before excavations are ready for tests and inspections.

3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Comply with recommendations in CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.

C. Fabricate and install reinforcing cages symmetrically about axis of shafts in a single unit.

D. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concreting. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.

E. Use templates to set anchor bolts, leveling plates, and other accessories furnished in work of other Sections. Provide blocking and holding devices to maintain required position during final concrete placement.

F. Protect exposed ends of extended reinforcement, dowels, or anchor bolts from mechanical damage and exposure to weather.

3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place concrete in continuous operation and without segregation immediately after inspection and approval of shaft by Owner's independent testing and inspecting agency.
1. Concrete shall be placed within the time limit stated on the Drawings.
2. Construct a construction joint if concrete placement is delayed more than one hour. Level top surface of concrete and insert joint dowel bars. Before placing remainder of concrete, clean surface laitance, roughen, and slush concrete with commercial bonding agent or with sand-cement grout mixed at ratio of 1:1.

B. Dry Method: Place concrete to fall vertically down the center of drilled pier without striking sides of shaft or steel reinforcement.
1. Where concrete cannot be directed down shaft without striking reinforcing, place concrete with chutes, tremies, or pumps. Use tremies where a drop of more than 25’-0” is required.
2. Vibrate top 60 inches of concrete.

C. Coordinate withdrawal of temporary casings with concrete placement to maintain at least a 60-inch head of concrete above bottom of casing.
1. Vibrate top 60 inches of concrete after withdrawal of temporary casing.

D. Screed concrete at cutoff elevation level and apply scoured, rough finish. Where cutoff elevation is above the ground elevation, form top section above grade and extend shaft to required elevation.

E. Protect concrete work, according to ACI 301, from frost, freezing, or low temperatures that could cause physical damage or reduced strength.
1. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
2. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other mineral-containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators.

F. When hot-weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete according to ACI 301 to maintain delivered temperature of concrete at no greater than 95 deg F.
1. Place concrete immediately on delivery. Keep exposed concrete surfaces and formed shaft extensions moist by fog sprays, wet burlap, or other effective means for a minimum of seven days.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit reports during excavation and concrete placement for drilled piers.

B. A drilled-pier report will be prepared by Owner's testing and inspecting agency for each drilled pier as follows:
1. Actual top and bottom elevations.
2. Top of rock elevation.
3. Description of soil materials.
4. Description, location, and dimensions of obstructions.
5. Final top centerline location and deviations from requirements.
6. Variation of shaft from plumb.
7. Shaft excavating method.
8. Design and tested bearing capacity of bottom.
9. Depth of rock socket.
10. Levelness of bottom and adequacy of cleanout.
11. Ground-water conditions and water-infiltration rate, depth, and pumping.
12. Description, diameter, and top and bottom elevations of temporary or permanent casings.
13. Description of soil or water movement, sidewall stability, loss of ground, and means of control.
14. Date and time of starting and completing excavation.
15. Inspection report.
16. Position of reinforcing steel.
17. Concrete placing method, including elevation of consolidation and delays.
18. Elevation of concrete during removal of casings.

19. Locations of construction joints.
20. Remarks, unusual conditions encountered, and deviations from requirements.
21. Concrete testing results.

C. Concrete: Refer to Section 03 30 00 for sampling and testing of concrete for quality control.
1. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of 3 consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength and no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
2. Test results will be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests will contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in drilled pier, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete-mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
3. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted but shall not be used as sole basis for acceptance or rejection.
4. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency will make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate concrete strengths or other requirements have not been met.
   a. Continuous coring of drilled piers may be required, at Contractor's expense, when temporary casings have not been withdrawn within specified time limits or where observations of placement operations indicate deficient concrete quality, presence of voids, segregation, or other possible defects.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus excavated material and slurry and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 321313 CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish all labor and materials necessary for forming and placing reinforced concrete pavement to the lines and grades shown on the drawings associated with this project.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. SECTION 312200 – EARTHWORK

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International (ASTM):
   1. A525 – Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized)
   2. A615 – Standard Specification for Deformed Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
   3. C31 – Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
   4. C39 – Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
   5. C94 – Ready-Mixed Concrete
   6. C309 – Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
   7. C1549 – Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer.
   8. D1751 – Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete and Structural Construction

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedures for Submittals: DIVISION 1.

B. Submit concrete mix designs for each class of concrete, including historical data for the concrete mix used in the same geographical area where the project is located.

1.5 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING

A. Comply with the provisions of DIVISION 1.

B. The Owner may engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field inspections and tests, and to prepare test reports. When such testing indicates that Contractor's work does not comply with the specified requirements, additional testing shall be performed by the Owner's testing agency at no additional cost to the Owner to determine compliance of corrected Work with the specified requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE

A. Classification and mix design shall be as follows:
   1. Concrete strength shall be designed to produce a 3500 psi at drives and 3000 psi at light duty parking areas, minimum compressive strength at 28 days, unless otherwise shown on the Drawings. Refer to City Specific concrete, subgrade and reinforcement specifications for pavement located in the City ROW.
   2. Maximum size of aggregates 1-1/2 inches.
   3. Slump shall range from 1-1/2 to 4 inches.
   4. Air entrainment concrete mixture shall have an air content by volume of 5 percent plus or minus 1 percent.
   5. Concrete shall be mixed conforming with ASTM C94.
   6. The concrete mix shall be designed by a commercial testing laboratory, and submitted for approval.
   7. The use of Type III cement shall not be permitted without written permission from the Engineer when Type III cement is not shown on the Drawings.

2.2 REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing steel shall meet the specifications of ASTM A615, Grade 60. Bars shall be deformed billet steel free of defects.

2.3 BOARD FILLER

A. Materials shall be as shown on the Drawings.

B. Board filler shall be free of defects, which will impair their usefulness as expansion joint fillers.

2.4 PREFORMED BITUMINOUS EXPANSION BOARD

A. Preformed bituminous boards shall meet the specifications for ASTM D1751.

2.5 PAVEMENT JOINT SEALING MATERIAL

A. Cold applied joint sealants, two part urethane (self leveling) sealant equal to “Sonolastic Paving Joint Sealant” by Sonneborn, “Urexpan NR-200” by Pecora, or “THC-900” by Tremco, or equal.

2.6 DEFORMED CONTRACTION JOINT METAL STRIPS

A. Deformed contraction joint metal strips shall be 28 ga. steel, galvanized 1.25 oz. per square foot or heavier and meet the specifications of ASTM A525.

2.7 CURING COMPOUND

A. Curing compound shall conform to the specifications if ASTM C309, Type 2, white pigmented.

2.8 LOAD TRANSMISSION DEVICES FOR EXPANSION AND CONTRACTION JOINTS

A. Load Transmission devices shall be as detailed on plans and conform to the properties specified in ASTM A615, Grade 60 steel.

2.9 STEEL DOWEL BARS

A. Steel dowel bars and steel reinforcement shall be deformed or smooth bars conform on properties to ASTM A615 Grade 60. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, all reinforcing steel shall be deformed bars, all dowel bars at joints shall be smooth bars, and all curb dowels shall be deformed bars.

PART 3 - CONSTRUCTION

3.1 PAVEMENT

A. Placing and removing forms.
   1. Forms shall be of wood or metal, properly treated to insure concrete does not adhere to the forms, straight, clean, free from warp or defect, and of sufficient depth. The forms shall be so placed that when each form section will be firmly in contact for its whole length and base width and exactly at the established grade. Any subgrade under the forms below established grade shall be corrected using suitable material, placed, sprinkled, and rolled. Forms shall be securely staked and tightly joined and keyed to prevent displacement. Sufficient stability of forms to support equipment operated thereon and to withstand its vibration without springing shall be required. Forms shall remain in place not less than 24 hours after concrete is placed.

B. If the slip form method of paving is used, the equipment shall meet the following requirements:
   1. Side Forms. Side forms shall be of metal except as otherwise provided herein and shall be of approved cross section. The length of form sections shall not be less than 10 feet, and each section shall provide for staking in position with not less than three (3) pins. Forms shall be of ample strength and shall be provided with adequate devices to secure them in place so the forms will withstand, without visible springing or settlement, the impact and vibration of the spreading and finishing machinery. In no case shall the base of the form be less than eight (8) inches wide for a form depth of eight (8) inches or more in height. The forms shall be free from warps, bends or kinks, and shall be sufficiently true to provide a reasonably straight edge on the concrete. The top of each form section, when tested with a straight edge, shall conform to the requirements specified for the surface of the completed pavement. A sufficient number of forms shall be provided for satisfactory prosecution of the work.
   2. Flexible or curved forms of wood or metal of proper radius shall be used for curves of 100 foot radius or less.

3. The preferred depth of the form shall be equal to the required edge thickness of the pavement. Forms with depth greater or less than the required edge thickness of the pavement will be permitted provided the difference between the form depth and the edge thickness is not greater than two (2) inches, and further provided that:
    a. Forms of a depth greater than the pavement edge may be used if the supporting material is planed to construct a form trench.
    b. Forms of a depth less than the pavement edge shall be brought to the required edge thickness by securely attaching metal strips or wood shims of approved section to the full width and length of the base of the form.
4. Curb Forms. Outside curb forms shall be of wood or metal of a section satisfactory to the Engineer, straight, free of warp, and shall be of a depth at least equal to the depth of the curb. They shall be securely mounted on the paving forms and maintained in true position during the placing of the concrete. Inside curb forms, if required, shall be of approved material and of such design as to provide the curb required and shall be rigidly attached to the outside curbs forms.

C. Joints in Concrete Pavement.
1. Joints shall be constructed in the pavement slab at locations and according to details as shown on the Drawings. Sealants shall be installed per manufactures recommendations. Stakes, braces, brackets or other devices shall be used as necessary to keep the entire joint assembly in true vertical and horizontal position.
2. All construction joints shall be saw cut as soon as the concrete will support the combined weights of the cutting equipment and the operator but no more than four (4) hours after the concrete is poured.
3. When prefabricated plastic strips are used to form joints, they shall be placed after the concrete surface has been leveled and before the finishing is completed. The strips shall be of a type specifically manufactured for the purpose of forming joints in concrete pavement and to the dimensions as required to form the specified joints. The strips shall be removed after the concrete has set per the manufacturer's recommendations. Any blemishes caused by the removal of the strips shall be repaired immediately using approved methods.

D. Tie Bars and Load Transmission Devices.
1. Shall be accurately placed as shown on Drawings and held securely (parallel to pavement surface and perpendicular to joint) during placing and finishing of pavement.

E. Expansion Joints.
1. Shall be constructed with board filler and sealed at top. Board filler must be perpendicular to plane of concrete slab. Alignment of joint shall not vary more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet.

F. Concrete Placing and Finishing.
1. Concrete not placed as herein prescribed within 90 minutes after mixing shall be rejected.
2. Concrete shall not be placed when temperature is below 40°F and falling, but may be placed when the temperature is above 35°F and rising, the temperature being taken in the shade and away from artificial heat.
3. Concrete shall be consolidated by a mechanical vibrator to remove all voids. Special care shall be exercised in placing and spading concrete against forms and at all joints to prevent the forming of honeycombs and voids and to prevent displacement of steel reinforcements and load transmission devices.
4. The concrete shall be struck off with an approved strike-off screed to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of pavement shall conform to the required

section and grade. In no case shall the maximum ordinate from a 10-foot straight edge to the pavement be greater than 1/8 inch.

5. The strike template shall be moved forward with a combined transverse and longitudinal motion in the direction the work is progressing, maintaining the template in contact with the forms, and maintaining a slight excess of material on front of the cutting edge.
6. After completion of a strike-off, consolidation and transverse screeding, a hand-operated longitudinal float shall be operated to test and level the surface to the required grade.
7. Workmen shall operate the float from approved bridges riding in the forms and spanning the pavement. The longitudinal float shall be held in contact with the surface and parallel to the centerline, and operated with short longitudinal strokes while being passed from one side of the pavement to the other. If contact with the pavement is not made at all points, additional concrete shall be placed if required, and screeded, and the float shall be used to produce a satisfactory surface. After a section has been smoothed so that the float maintains contact with the surface at all points being passed from one side to the other, the bridges may be moved forward half the length of the float, and the operations repeated.
8. After completion of the straightedge testing, a pass with a burlap drag shall be made as soon as construction operations permit and before the water sheen has disappeared from the surface. As many passes of the drag as required to produce the desired surface texture shall follow this.
9. After completion of dragging and about the time the concrete becomes hard, the edge of the slab and joints shall be left smooth and true to line.

G. Curing.

1. Concrete pavement shall be cured by protecting it against excessive loss of moisture for a period of not less than 72 hours from the beginning of curing operation. Immediately after finishing operations have been completed, the entire surface of the newly laid concrete shall be covered and cured. Special care should be exercised to keep spraying curing compound out of pavement joints.

3.2 APPLICATION OF JOINT SEALING COMPOUND

A. Joints shall be thoroughly cleaned of loose scale, dirt, dust and curing compound. When necessary, existing joint material shall be removed to the depth as shown on the plans.

B. Joints shall be filled to the full depth of the joint opening. Pouring shall be done in a neat and workman like manner to give satisfactory results. The sealer shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendation. The joint sealant shall be below the top of the pavement surface.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL TESTING

A. Concrete Test Specimens

1. A laboratory testing agency for the tests will be selected and paid for by the Owner. A laboratory technician will prepare the necessary concrete test cylinders.
2. Test cylinders for compressive strength tests will be taken and cured in accordance with ASTM C31 and tested in accordance with ASTM C39. At least 3 cylinders shall be made for each day for each 100 cy of concrete, or fraction thereof, placed.
3. Concrete pavement that does not meet the specified requirements based on the laboratory compressive strength tests shall be removed, replaced, and re-tested at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Testing of Concrete Surface

1. After finishing is complete and while the concrete is still workable, the surface shall be tested for trueness with an approved 10-foot steel straightedge. The straightedge shall be operated from one side of the pavement placed parallel to the pavement center line and passed across the slab to reveal any high spots or depressions. The straightedge shall be advanced along the pavement in successive stages of not more than ½ its length. A tolerance of 1/8" in 10 feet shall be met. Any correction of the surface required shall be accomplished by adding concrete if required and by operating the longitudinal float over the area. The surface test with straightedge shall then be repeated.

3.4 PENING PAVEMENT TO TRAFFIC

A. The pavement shall be closed to all traffic, including vehicles of the Contractor, until the concrete is at least 7 days old or has attained a minimum average of 2,000 psi compressive strength. Repair any damage to the pavement prior to acceptance by Owner at no additional cost to the Owner. This does not relieve the Contractor from the normal liabilities and maintenance responsibilities, implied or otherwise, for the pavement or other items.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 8400

LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Divisions 00 and 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish all work and materials, appliances, tools, equipment, facilities, transportation, and services necessary for and incidental to performing all operations in connection with the installation of underground sprinkler irrigation system complete, as shown on drawings and/or specified herein. When the term "Contractor" is used in this section, it shall refer to the irrigation Subcontractor.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) – current requirements and guidelines for landscape irrigation design and specifications.

B. Dallas Independent School District (DISD) - Technical Design Guidelines (TDG) – current edition.

C. City of Dallas Article X Landscape Ordinance or any applicable Planned Development (PD).

1. Exception for relocation of existing DISD parking lot required to comply with landscape ordinance: variance to ten (10) foot buffer strip. Notify DISD designated representative immediately. Policy is to request a variance to allow existing irrigation to remain without modification.

1.4 CODES/PERMITS

A. All work under this section shall comply with the provisions of these Specifications, as illustrated on the accompanying drawings, or as directed by the Owner and shall satisfy all applicable local codes, ordinances, or regulations of the governing bodies and all authorities having jurisdiction over this Project.

B. Installation of equipment and materials shall be done in accordance with requirements of the National Electrical Code, City Plumbing Code, and standard plumbing procedures. The drawings and these Specifications are intended to comply with all the necessary rules and regulations; however, some discrepancies may occur, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner’s Authorized Representative in writing of the discrepancies and apply for an interpretation. Should the discovery and notification occur after the execution of a contract, any additional work required for compliance with the regulations shall be paid for as covered by these Contract documents.

C. The Contractor shall give all necessary notices, obtain all permits, and pay all costs in connection with his work; file with all governmental departments having jurisdiction; obtain all required certificates of inspection for his work and deliver to the Owner.

D. The Contractor shall include in the work any labor, materials, services, apparatus, or drawings in order to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations whether or not shown on the drawings and/or specified.

E. The installation of the irrigation system shall be made by an individual or firm duly licensed under Article No. 8751 VTCS, titled "Licensed Irrigators Act", S.B. No. 259 as passed by the 66th Texas Legislature.

1.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. New Schools: Irrigation to be considered for the “front” yard(s), or street frontages, and athletic fields for the campus. Unless local code requires entire site to be irrigated.

B. Renovation Projects: To be discussed directly with the Dallas ISD-M&O during Schematic Design / STB phase. Preliminary approach to include front yards, street frontages and athletic fields.

C. Coordination and final review of irrigation plans and specifications to occur with the Dallas ISD-M&O at the Design Development and 95% CD stage.

D. Architect to provide the Dallas ISD-M&O with estimated water usage for landscaped areas with recreational fields calculated separately.

1.6 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Irrigation System:

1. Connectivity: Controller to have Ethernet connection for inclusion in the building management and control system (BMCS).
2. Components: System to include the following components at a minimum:
    a. Master valve and two (2) inch flow sensor.
    b. Lightening protection for system.
    c. Sufficient flow for two (2) zones to operate simultaneously.
    d. Controller zone chart.
    e. Bubblers at trees and large shrubs.
3. Construction Documents: Comply with and reference all applicable codes including but not limited to ball valve and backflow preventers, meter monitoring requirements, and water conservation codes.

B. Hose Bibs Connectors:

1. Location: Building perimeter, no more than one hundred (100) feet apart.
2. Type: Keyed type, freeze resistant, flush mounted in a lockable box.
3. Provide underground water line with quick-couplers in boxes with lockable covers at grade.

C. Quick-Couplers:

1. To include a ball shut off valve three (3) feet to four (4) feet from each quick-coupler location and within eighteen (18) inches of mainline supply.
2. Must accept one (1) inch hose.
3. Located constant flow quick couplers:
    a. Ball Fields: Behind home plate and behind pitcher’s mound.
    b. Along football field sidelines near the fifty (50) yard line.
    c. All sidewalk and pavement areas to have at least one (1), four (4) inch sleeve with two (2) pull strings at each irrigation crossing.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The Contractor shall warranty material and workmanship for one (1) year after final acceptance including repair and replacement of defective materials, workmanship, and repair of backfill settlement.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit shop drawings or manufacturer's "cut sheet" for each type of sprinkler head, pipe, controller, valves, check valve assemblies, valve boxes, wire, conduit, fittings, and all

other types of fixtures and equipment proposed to install on the job. The submittal shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, equipment capacity, and manufacturer's installation recommendation, if applicable, for each proposed item.

B. No partial submittal will be accepted, and submittals shall be neatly bound into a brochure and logically organized. After the submittal has been approved, substitutions will not be allowed except by written consent of the Owner's Authorized Representative.

C. Shop drawings shall be provided, upon request, for any special custom fabrication or coordination with other trades.

1.9 "APPROVED EQUAL" SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Where items on the plans are specified by a manufacturer's brand name and catalog number, followed by the phrase "or approved equal". This is not intended to unduly restrict competitive procurements or bidding but is done to assure a minimum standard of quality which is believed to be best for the item specified and to match existing equipment.

1.10 EXISTING UTILITIES

A. Locations and elevations of various utilities included with the scope of this work have been obtained from the most reliable sources available and should serve as a general guide without guarantee to accuracy. The Contractor shall examine the Site and verify to his own satisfaction the locations and elevation of all utilities and availability of utilities and services required. The Contractor shall inform himself as to their relation to the work and the submission of bids shall be deemed as evidence thereof. The Contractor shall repair at his own expense, and to the satisfaction of the Owner, for damage to any utility shown or not shown on the plans.

B. Should utilities not shown on the plans be found during excavations, Contractor shall promptly notify the Owner for instructions as to further action.

C. Contractor shall make necessary adjustments in the layout as may be required to connect to existing stub-outs, should such stub- outs not be located exactly as shown and as may be required to work around existing work, at no increase in cost to the Owner. All such work will be recorded on record drawings and turned over to the Owner prior to final acceptance.

1.11 ELECTRICAL POWER

A. Electric power shall be provided within five (5) feet of each controller location by the G.C. The irrigation contractor shall provide final hardwire connection.

1.12 WATER FOR TESTING

A. Unless noted otherwise on the plans or elsewhere, furnish all water necessary for testing, flushing, and jetting.

1.13 BORINGS, SLEEVES AND ELECTRICAL CONDUITS

A. Sleeves and electrical conduits are the responsibility of the Irrigation Contractor to install prior to paving or related construction and should be installed as noted on the drawings and specifications. Contractors shall be responsible for locating all sleeves and conduits at no additional cost to the Authority.

B. Borings under existing paving will be required where noted on the drawings and shall be provided at no additional cost to the Owner. Borings shall be a minimum of eighteen (18) inch depth and new pipes shall be incased in PVC sleeves as noted on the plans.

1.14 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record dimensioned locations and depths for each of the following:

1. Point of connection.

2. Sprinkler pressure line routing (provide dimensions for each 100 lineal feet (maximum) along each routing, and for each change in directions).
3. Gate valves.
4. Sprinkler control valves (buried only).
5. Control wire routing.
6. Other related items as may be directed by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

B. Locate all dimensions from two (2) permanent points (buildings, monuments, sidewalks, curbs, or pavements).

C. Record all changes which are made from the Contract drawings, including changes in the pressure and non-pressure lines.

D. Record all required information on a set of reproducible drawing files.

E. Maintain information daily. Keep Contract drawings at the Worksite at all times and available for review by the Owner's representative.

1.15 CONTROLLER CHARTS

A. Do not prepare charts until record drawings have been approved by the Owner's representative.

B. Provide one (1) controller chart for each automatic controller installed.

1. Chart may be a reproduction of the record drawing, if the scale permits fitting within the controller door. If photo reduction prints are required, keep reduction to maximum size possible to retain full legibility.
2. Chart shall be blackline print of the actual system, showing the area covered by that controller.

C. Identify the area of coverage of each remote-control valve, using a distinctly different pastel color, drawn over the entire area of coverage.

D. Following approval of charts by the Owner's representative, they shall be hermetically sealed between two (2) layers of 20 mil. thick plastic sheet (laminated).

E. Charts must be completed and approved prior to final acceptance of the irrigation system.

1.16 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Prepare and deliver to the Owner within ten (10) calendar days prior to completion of construction, three (3) hard cover binders with three (3) rings containing the following information:

1. Index sheet, stating Irrigation Contractor's name, address, telephone number, and name of person to contact.
2. Equipment list providing the following for each item of equipment installed under this contract:
   a. Manufacturer's name.
   b. Make and model number.
   c. Name and address of local manufacturer's representative.
   d. Spare parts list in detail.
3. Guarantee statement - Duration of guarantee period.
4. Copy of the Irrigation Installation Certification Letter.
5. Water Schedule: Recommended programs for watering by season shall state watering times and frequencies of each irrigation zone. Water schedule shall be based on the local ET (evapotranspiration) rate.

B. Provide descriptions of all installed materials and systems in sufficient detail to permit maintenance personnel to understand, operate, and maintain the equipment.

C. It is the responsibility of the Licensed Irrigation Contractor to demonstrate that final installed sprinkler system will operate according to intent of originally designed and specified system. If Licensed Irrigation Contractor notes any problems in head spacing or potential coverage, it is his responsibility to notify the Owner in writing, before proceeding with work. Licensed Irrigation Contractor guarantees 100% coverage of all areas to be irrigated.

1.17 EQUIPMENT TO BE FURNISHED – SPARE PARTS

A. Supply as part of this contract the following tools:
   1. Two (2) sets of sprinkler wrenches for adjusting, cleaning, or disassembling each type of sprinkler and two (2) each of any special tools required for any other equipment.
   2. Four (4) pop-up spray heads of each type and four (4) nozzles of each type installed.
   3. Four (4) rotary heads of each type installed.
   4. Two (2) quick coupling keys with hose swivels, hose bibs/garden valves to match size installed.
   5. Two (2) valve keys each for operating cast iron and brass gate valves.
   6. Two (2) keys for automatic controller lock.

B. The above-mentioned equipment shall be turned over to the Owner via a signed transmittal at the conclusion of the project. Before final inspection, verification that materials have been provided will occur.

1.18 GUARANTEE

A. The guarantee for the sprinkler irrigation system shall be included in the operations and maintenance manual.

GUARANTEE FOR SPRINKLER IRRIGATION SYSTEM

We hereby guarantee that the sprinkler irrigation system we have furnished and installed is free from defects in materials and workmanship, and that work has been completed in accordance with the contract documents, ordinary wear and tear and unusual abuse, or neglect excepted. We agree to repair or replace any defects in material or workmanship which may develop during the period of one (1) year from date of acceptance (substantial completion) and also to repair or replacing of such defects at no additional cost to the Owner. We shall make such repairs or replacements within a reasonable time, as determined by the Owner, after receipt of written notice. In the event of our failure to make such repairs or replacements within a reasonable time after receipt of written notice from the Owner, we authorize the Owner to proceed to have said repairs or replacements made at our expense and we will pay the costs and charges therefore upon demand.

Project:

Location:

Signed:

Address:

Phone:

Date of Acceptance:

1.19 CHECKLIST

A. Provide a signed and dated checklist and deliver to the Owner’s representative prior to final acceptance of the work.

B. Use the following format:
   1. Plumbing permits: if none required, so note.
   2. Material approvals: approved by and date.
   3. Pressure line tests: by whom and date.
   4. Record Drawings: received by and date.
   5. Controller charts: received by and date.
   6. Materials furnished: received by and date.
   7. Operation and maintenance manuals: received by and date.
   8. System and equipment operation instructions: received by and date.
   9. Manufacturer's warranties if required: received by and date.
   10. Written guarantee: See 1.15 above; received by and date.
   11. Lowering of heads in lawn areas: if incomplete, so state.

1.20 WARRANTY AND MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance during warranty shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, the following:
   1. Adjustment of sprinkler height and plumb to compensate for settlement and/or plant growth.
   2. Backfilling of all trenches.
   3. Adjustment of head coverage (arc of spray) as necessary.
   4. Unstopping heads plugged by foreign material.
   5. Adjustment of controller as necessary to insure proper sequence and watering time.
   6. All maintenance necessary to keep the system in good operating order. Repair of damage caused by vandals, other contractors or weather conditions shall be considered extra to these specifications.

B. Warranty and maintenance after final acceptance does not include alterations as necessitated by re-landscaping, re-grading, addition of trees or the addition and/or changes in sidewalks, walls, driveways, etc.

C. Maintenance shall continue for one (1) month after final acceptance to allow for adjustments, repair, and scheduling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Unless otherwise noted on the plans, all materials shall be new and unused. The irrigation equipment catalog numbers used for reference in these Specifications are to establish minimum quality standards. Substitution will require Dallas ISD approval.

2.2 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE (PVC PIPE)

PVC pipe manufactured in accordance with ASTM Standards noted herein.

A. Marking and Identification: PVC pipe shall be continuously and permanently marked with following information: Manufacturer's name, size, type of pipe, and material, SDR number, Product Standard number, and the NSF (National Sanitation Foundation) Seal.

B. Pressure main line piping for sizes one (1) inch and larger, shall be PVC Schedule 40.

C. PVC pipe shall be made from an NSF approved Type I, Grade II, PVC compound conforming to ASTM resin specification D1785-68. All pipe must meet requirements as set forth in Federal Specification PS-21-70, with an appropriate standard dimension (S.D.R.) (Solvent-weld pipe).

D. PVC solvent-weld fittings shall be of the same material as the PVC pipe specified and compatible with PVC pipe furnished. Solvent weld type fittings shall be Schedule 40, 1-2, II-I NSF approved conforming to ASTM test procedure D2466.

E. Solvent cement and primer for PVC solvent-weld pipe and fittings shall be of type and installation methods prescribed by the manufacturer.

F. Pipe sleeves: Shall be as noted on the plans.

2.3 FLEXIBLE PVC TUBING

A. All flexible PVC tugging shall be I.P.S. heavy wall hose made from rigid PVC material.

B. Hose shall meet or exceed schedule 80 wall thickness and shall comply with ASTM D2287 and tested in accordance with ASTM D1598.

C. Hose shall be tested at 200 PSI static pressure for two (2) hours and a quick burst rating of a minimum of 400 PSI.

2.4 SWING JOINTS AND NIPPLES

A. Install threaded and gasketed schedule 80 PVC 3-way swing joints and nipples.

B. The unit shall contain O-ring seals at all elbow connections.

2.5 MANUAL VALVES

A. Gate valves three (3) inches and smaller shall be USA made, 200-pound W.O.G., highest grade cast bronze gate valve with screw-in bonnet, non-rising stem and solid wedge disc, threaded ends, and a cast iron handwheel, manufactured by Nibco or Dallas ISD approved equal.

B. Isolation valves shall be Nibco schedule 80 PVC ball valves with union connection at both ends of valve sized same main line or Dallas ISD approved equal.

C. All valves shall have wheel handles unless cross handles are called for on the plan.

2.6 QUICK COUPLING VALVES

A. Quick coupling valves shall have a brass one-piece (cast) body designed for working pressure of 150 PSI operable with quick coupler key, and with a purple, (NP) cover.

B. The valve shall accept a single lug three-quarter (3/4) inch bronze valve key for operation unless noted otherwise.

2.7 CONTROL WIRING

A. Connections between the automatic controllers and the electric control valves shall be made with UF-B UL PVC double insulated, two (2) conductor solid core wire, (Maxi-Wire) #14, under 30 VAC RMS using a National Electric Code Class II circuit. Install in accordance with valve manufacturer’s specifications and system design.

B. Conductor shall be soft drawn, annealed solid copper conforming to ASTM 33.

C. Conductor insulation shall be 4/64-inch-thick polyvinyl chloride (PVC), conforming to UL Standard #493 for thermoplastic-insulated style UF, rated at 60 degrees C.

D. The two (2) insulated conductors are laid in a parallel and encased in a single outer jacket of 3/64-inch thick, high density, sunlight resistant polyethylene conforming to ICEA S-61-402 and NEMA WC5, having a minimum wall thickness of 0.045-inch.

E. Conductor shall be one (1) red, one (1) black.

F. All wire insulation shall be intact and free of nicks and cuts.

G. For runs greater than 4,000 feet, larger wire may be used provided it conforms to controller manufacturer’s specifications for both material specification and installation.

H. Underground splice kit shall be 3M DBR-6 or approved equal, water-tight, dry splice connector or approved equal. All wire splices shall be protected by a valve box. No splices shall be installed on runs less than 500 feet.

I. Where control wire leaves mainline, install in Schedule 40 PVC conduit.

2.8 AUTOMATIC CONTROLLER(S)

A. BaseLine BaseStation 3200R or Dallas ISD approved equal controller with ethernet connection to be completed with BaseLine BaseManager system. Ethernet connection to initiate at the MDF cabinet and terminate inside the irrigation controller cabinet with a RJ 45 connector. Cable to be CAT5 or newer. Provide lockable, weatherproof metal cabinet. Verify intent with Dallas ISD prior to final install of this portion of the system.

B. Automatic controllers shall be of size and type to accommodate system design. Final location of automatic controllers shall be approved by Dallas ISD-M&O.

C. Unless otherwise indicated, the 120-volt electrical power for the controller is available at the site. The final electrical hook-up shall be the responsibility of the Irrigation Contractor. Controller to be hard wired. Plug-in connection is not allowed.

D. Flow sensor(s), bicoder(s), surge protector(s) and biosensor(s) to be compatible with BaseLine system.

2.9 VALVE BOXES

A. Manual Valves: ten (10) inch box, Carson Industries or Ametek, with green bolt down cover. Use extensions where required.

B. Electrical Control Valves: Standard rectangular box, Carson Industries or Ametek, with green bolt down cover or Dallas ISD approved equal. Install extension sleeves as required.

C. Backflow Preventer: Pump Guard Box. Box shall be sized to fit required backflow preventer by minimum of six (6) inches on each end.

2.10 SPRINKLER HEADS

A. Sprinkler heads are specified on the drawings.

B. Sprinkler heads in lawn area as specified on plan.

1. Pop-up heads twelve (12) and six (6) inches
2. Spray adjustable nozzles.
3. Adjustable rotor heads 3/4-inch female inlet NPT.
4. Spray heads 1/2-inch female inlet NPT.
5. Approved Manufacturer: Hunter or Dallas ISD approved equal.

C. All sprinkler heads shall be of the same size, type, and deliver the same rate of precipitation with the diameter (or radius) of throw and discharge as to accommodate designed system and/or specified in these special provisions.

D. All sprinkler heads of the same type shall be of the same manufacturer.

E. The sprinkler body and all related parts shall be plastic cycolac or polycarbonate. They shall have a spring retraction for positive return action of the pop-up nozzle.

F. The spring for retraction and the adjustable nozzle screw shall be made of corrosion resistant materials.

G. Ensure that Sprinkler head at the building perimeter are pointed away from the building so not to stain materials.

2.11 ROTARY HEADS

A. Rotary pop-up sprinklers shall be in-line combination type with positive drive by means of a water-driven gear motor.

B. Nozzles shall be readily accessible without removing the upper head assembly.

2.12 SLEEVES

A. Definition: a pipe within another pipe for carrying water will be installed.

B. Wire sleeve: a pipe used to carry low voltage irrigation wires for operation of electric control valves.

C. All sleeves shall be Schedule 40. Size shall be equal to twice (2 times) the diameter of the pipe or combination of pipes enclosed within the sleeve.

2.13 ACCESSORIES

A. Connections for PVC and Metal Pipe: for all threaded connections between PVC and metal pipe use Heavy Duty Rectorseal thread sealing paste with virgin Teflon No. 100 as manufactured by Rectorseal Corporation or Dallas ISD approved equal. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Drainage Fill: 1/2-inch washed pea gravel.

C. Sand Layer: Washed sand.

2.14 DRIP TUBE WITH PRESSURE COMPENSATING EMITTERS (Only if required by TCEQ and with approval from Dallas ISD-M&O)

Drip tube shall be of the manufacturer and model as noted on the plans. Pressure compensating emitters with internal check valves are required unless noted otherwise.

A. Barbed Insert Fittings:

1. All barbed insert fittings shall be constructed of molded, ultra-violet-resistant plastic having nominal inside dimension (I.D.) of 0.24 inch.
2. Each fitting shall have a minimum of two (2) ridges or barbs per outlet with a raised barb nearest the fitting outlet. All fittings shall be of one (1) manufacturer and shall be available in one (1) of the following end configurations:
   a. Barbed insert fittings, or
   b. Male pipe threads (MPT) with barbed insert fittings, or
   c. Female pipe threads (FPT) with barbed insert fittings.

2.15 ELECTRIC REMOTE-CONTROL VALVES

A. Electric remote-control valves shall have plastic bodies and covers and shall be globe-type diaphragm valves of normally closed design. The valves are specified on the drawings.

B. Operation shall be accomplished by means of integrally mounted heavy-duty 24-V solenoid complying with National Electrical Code, Class II Circuit. Solenoid coil shall be potted in epoxy resin within a plastic-coated stainless steel housing. Solenoids shall be completely waterproof, suitable for direct underground burial.

C. A flow stem adjustment shall be included in each valve.

2.16 BACKFLOW PREVENTER

A. An approved backflow prevention device is required, as noted on the plans. The device shall include all materials as required by the local municipality and shall be inspected accordingly.

2.17 TEMPERATURE SENSORS/ RAIN SENSORS (as part of BaseLine BaseStation) – ref. plans.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Sleeves and Conduits: Installed by Contractor as indicated on Drawings. Do not use as main or lateral lines.

B. Contractor shall verify on-site pressure is adequate for a proper installation. Contractor shall submit letter certifying that on-site pressure exceeds design pressure by 10%.

1. If on-site pressure does not exceed design pressure by 10%, contact Owner's Representative for resolution. If construction work is started prior to receiving certification letter, Contractor assumes all costs for changes required to meet on-site pressure requirements.

2. If on-site pressure exceeds design pressure by greater than 10%, Contractor shall install a pressure regulator.

C. Site Utilities: Determine locations of underground utilities, including but not limited to, site lighting, cable, telephone, and irrigation lines prior to commencement of work. Perform all work in a manner which will avoid possible damage. Do not permit heavy equipment or trucks to damage utilities. Hand excavate or use air-spade technology, as required to minimize possibility of damage to underground utilities.

D. Contractor Responsibility: The Contractor shall not willfully install the irrigation system as shown on the drawings when it is obvious in the field that obstructions, grade differences or discrepancies in equipment usage, area dimensions or water pressure exist that might not have been considered in the engineering. Such obstructions or differences shall be brought to the attention of the Owner's Representative in writing. In the event this notification is not performed, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for any revision necessary.

E. Staking: Before installation is started, place a stake or flag where each sprinkler and valve box is to be located, in accordance with drawing. Staking shall be approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative before proceeding.

F. Piping Layout: Piping layout is diagrammatic. Route piping around existing trees and root zones in such a manner as to avoid damage to plantings. Do not dig within the ball of newly planted trees or shrubs.

G. In areas where trees are present, trenches will be adjusted on site to provide a minimum clearance of four (4) times the trunk diameter of the tree (at its base) between any tree and any trench.

H. Contractor is responsible for protecting all existing trees, plants, lawns, and other features designated to remain.

I. Provide and install a dedicated irrigation meter and backflow preventer for the irrigation system water supply.

J. Design Pressure: (Unless System Designer proposes differently)

1. Design Static Pressure: 52.6 PSI.

2. Spray Zone: 30 PSI.

3. Rotary Zone: 40 PSI.

4. Tree Bubbler Zone: 30 PSI.

K. All material and equipment shall be delivered to the Worksite in unbroken reels, cartons or other packaging to demonstrate that such material is new and of a quality and grade in keeping with the intent of these Specifications.

L. Acceptance of Substrate: Contractor shall automatically assume the responsibility for any unacceptable finished work caused by substrate conditions.

M. Damages: Contractor shall be responsible for any and/or all damages that might occur during the project to utilities and related items. In addition, Contractor agrees to promptly make any repairs or pay damages whichever Dallas ISD prefers, should damages occur. Contractor shall locate all utilities.

3.2 EXCAVATION AND TRENCHING

A. The Contractor shall perform all excavation to the depth indicated in these Specifications and Contract drawings. The banks of trenches shall be kept as nearly vertical as practicable. Trenches shall be wide enough to allow a minimum of four (4) inches between parallel pipelines or electrical wiring.

B. Where rock excavation is required, or where stones are encountered in the bottom of the trench that would create a concentrated pressure on the pipe, the rock or stones shall be removed to a depth of six (6) inches minimum below the trench depth indicated. The over depth rock excavation and all excess trench excavation shall be backfilled with loose, moist earth or sand, thoroughly tamped.

C. Whenever wet or otherwise unstable soil that is incapable of properly supporting the pipe is encountered in the trench bottom, such shall be removed to a depth and length required, and the trench backfilled to trench bottom grade as hereinafter specified, with coarse sand, fine gravel or other suitable material.

D. Bottom of trench grade shall be continued past ground surface deviations to avoid air pockets and low collection points in the line. The minimum cover specifications shall govern regardless of variations in ground surface profile and the occasional deeper excavation required at banks and other field conditions. Excavation shall be such that a uniform trench grade variation will occur in all cases where variations are necessary.

E. Trench excavation shall comprise the satisfactory removal and disposition of all materials and shall include all shoring and sheeting required to protect the excavation and to safeguard employees.

F. During excavation, material suitable for backfilling shall be stockpiled in an orderly manner a sufficient distance back from edge of trenches to avoid overloading and prevent slides or cave-ins. Material unsuitable for backfilling shall be wasted as directed by the Owner’s Authorized Representative. When excavated material is of a rocky nature and the topsoil or any other layer of excavated material is suitable for pipe bedding and backfill in the vicinity of the pipe, such material shall be separately stockpiled for use in such bedding and pipe backfill operations, unless satisfactory imported material is used.

G. All excavations and backfill shall be unclassified and covered in the basic bid. No additional compensation will be allowed for rock encountered.

H. Restore all surfaces, existing underground installations, etc., damaged or cut as a result of the excavations to their original conditions in a manner acceptable to the Owner’s Authorized Representative.

3.3 PIPE INSTALLATION

A. Sprinkler Mains: Sprinkler mains are that portion of piping from water source to electric valves. This portion of piping is subject to surges since it is a closed portion of the sprinkler system. Sprinkler mains shall be installed in a trench with a minimum of eighteen (18) inches of cover.

B. Lateral Piping: Lateral piping is that portion of piping from electrical valve to sprinkler heads. This portion of piping is not subject to surges since it is an "open end" portion of the sprinkler system. Lateral piping shall be installed in a trench with a minimum of twelve (12) inches of cover.

3.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTING ASSEMBLY

A. Solvent: Use only solvent recommended by manufacturer to make solvent-welded joints following standards noted herein. Thoroughly clean pipe and fittings of dirt, dust, and moisture with an approved PVC primer before applying solvent.

B. PVC to Metal Connection: Work metal connections first. Use a non-hardening pipe dope such as Permatex No. 2 or "Teflon" tape on threaded PVC to metal joints. Use only light wrench pressure.

C. Threaded PVC Connections: Where required, use threaded PVC adapters into which pipe may be welded.

D. Remove lumber, rubbish, and rocks from trenches. Provide firm, uniform bearing for entire length of each pipeline to prevent uneven settlement. Wedging or blocking of pipe will not be permitted. Remove foreign matter or dirt from inside of pipe before welding and keep piping clean during and after laying pipe.

E. PVC pipe shall not be installed where there is water in the trench, nor shall PVC pipe be laid when temperature is 40 deg. F or below or when rain is imminent. PVC pipe will expand and contract as the temperature changes. Therefore, pipe shall be snaked from side to side of trench bottom to allow for expansion and contraction.

3.5 HYDROSTATIC TESTS

A. Pressure Test: After the pipe is laid, the joints completed, and the trench partially backfilled, leaving the joints exposed for examination, the newly laid mainline pipe or any valved section of main pressure line piping shall, unless otherwise specified, be subjected for four (4) hours to a hydrostatic pressure test of normal city water pressure. Each valve shall be opened and closed during the test. Enclosed pipe, joints, fittings, and valves shall be carefully examined during the partially open trench test. Joints showing visible leakage shall be replaced or remade, as necessary. Cracked or defective pipe, joints, fittings, or valves discovered in consequence of this pressure test shall be repeated until the test results are satisfactory. All replacement and repair shall be at contractor's cost. Notify the Owner’s Authorized Representative at least three (3) days before tests are scheduled to be conducted.

3.6 CONTROL WIRE INSTALLATION

A. Refer to 2.7 for related information.

B. All control wires shall be installed at least eighteen (18) inches deep. Contractor shall obtain Dallas ISD-M&O approval for wire routing when installed in a separate ditch. Control wires may be installed in a common ditch with piping. However, wires must be installed a minimum of four (4) inches below or to one (1) side of piping.

C. All wire passing under existing or future paving, sidewalk, construction, etc., shall be encased in PVC conduit extending at least two (2) feet beyond edges of paving, sidewalks, or construction.

3.7 POP-UP SPRAY BUBBLER HEADS

A. Provide heads and nozzles as specified and install in locations as shown on the Contract Drawings.

B. Pop-up spray heads shall be installed with connections to rigid PVC pipe as detailed on the Contract drawings. Rotary heads shall be installed on a double swing joint connected to the lateral pipe as detailed on the drawings.

C. Heads shall be installed with underside of flange flush with the finished grade.

D. Contractor will be required to adjust heads as necessary after establishment of grass or other plant material.

3.8 DRIP EQUIPMENT (Only if required and with approval from DISD Representative)

A. Drip tube can be installed in one (1) of the following methods:

1. Over-excavation: Over-excavate the entire area to a depth of two (2) inches to four (4) inches below finish grade. Plant all specimen trees and shrubs fifteen (15) gallon size and larger, then place drip tube at the row spacing interval indicated on the plans.

2. Pipe Pulling: Where ground disruption is to be minimized, pneumatic tire, pipe-pulling machinery shall be used. Potholes shall be used at the ends of each run for making connection to supply and exhaust headers of rigid PVC pipe or polyethylene pipe.
3. Trenching: Hand or mechanically trench to the pipe depth indicated on the plans or in these specifications and backfill flush with finish grade. Avoid mechanically trenching within the dripline of existing trees. Hand-trench around existing tree roots when roots of two (2) inches and larger are encountered. Remove all rock one and one-half (1½) inch and larger when excavating and remove from site. Do not backfill trenches with rock that will come in direct contact with tubing or rigid PVC piping.

B. Placement of Rigid PVC Piping: Install pipe in a serpentine (snaked) manner to allow for expansion and contraction in trench before backfilling. Install pipes at temperatures over 40°F. Pipe markings shall face upward out of the trench whenever possible.

C. Drip tube: Drip tube can be installed with the water outlets facing up, down, or sideways. In irregular areas, some water outlets could end up too close to fixed improvements and may have to be capped off with a dripper plug ring.

D. Cover: Install underground piping horizontally and as evenly as possible to a maximum depth of 4 inches, unless otherwise specified. (Typical pipe depth is two (2) inches in shrub beds, four (4) inches in turf unless periodic aeration is anticipated, and then pipe depth should be lowered to six (6) inches.)

E. Barbed Insert Fittings: Connect drip tube to barbed insert fittings by pushing the tubing on and over both barbs of the fitting until the tubing has seated against another piece of tubing or has butted against another portion of the barbed fitting. For water pressures in excess of the 30 psi, or the maximum stated system pressure for the drip tube, whichever is less, use stainless steel clamps.

F. Clamping: When design-operating pressure exceeds 30 psi, or maximum stated system pressure for the drip tube, whichever is less, stainless steel pipe clamps shall be used. Slip clamps over tubing before slipping tubing over barbed insert fitting. Place clamp between the first and second ridge of the barbed fittings and crimp the “ear” of the clamp tightly. Crimp the “ear” twice to ensure proper seating.

3.9 QUICK COUPLING VALVES

A. Quick coupling valves shall be installed with the underside of flange flush with the finished grade.

B. Quick coupling valves shall be installed on a swing joint assembly as detailed on the drawings.

C. Under the warranty, the Contractor shall return after grass is established and adjust valves and valve boxes to proper grade.

3.10 MANUAL VALVES

A. Manual valves shall be sized and located where shown on the Contract drawings.

B. Valve boxes shall be adjusted to be flush with finished grade. The Contractor will be required to adjust after establishment of grass.

C. Valve boxes shall be properly supported and of sufficient construction that tractors and mowers crossing over the boxes will not push boxes down and crush the pipe, valve, or box.

3.11 VALVE AND VALVE BOX PLACEMENT

A. All manual, electric, and quick coupling valves shall be in boxes as specified in Paragraph 2.7 of this section and shall be set with a minimum of six (6) inches of space between their top surface and the bottom of the valve box. The base of the box shall be filled with pea gravel as shown on plan.

B. Valves shall be fully opened and fully closed to ensure that all parts are in operating condition.

C. Valve boxes shall be set plumb, vertical, and concentric with the valve stem.

D. Any valve box which has moved from this required position so as to prevent the use of the operating wheel of the valve shall be reset by the Contractor at his own expense.

3.12 AUTOMATIC CONTROLLER: Final location of automatic controllers shall be approved by Dallas ISD-M&O.

3.13 ELECTRIC REMOTE-CONTROL VALVES

A. Remote control valves shall be located and sized as shown on the plans. All electrical connections shall be made when the weather is dry with connection kits as specified in Paragraph 2.15 of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedures.

B. All remote-control valves shall be installed in a horizontal position, in accordance with the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

C. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to furnish and install the proper size wire on each of the low voltage circuits from the master control center to the various electric remote-control valves.

D. Consideration shall be given to each circuit for allowance of voltage drop and economy consistent with accepted practices of electrical installation. Under no circumstances shall the voltage of any branch circuit be reduced more than proper due to length of run exceeding the maximum allowable for the wire size used.

3.14 BACKFILL AND COMPACTION

A. After system is operating and required tests and inspections have been made, the trenches shall be carefully backfilled with the excavated materials approved for backfilling, consisting of earth, loam, sandy clay, sand, gravel, soft shale, or other approved materials, free from large clods of earth or stone. Rock, broken concrete, or pavement, and large boulders shall not be used as backfill material. The backfill shall be thoroughly compacted and evened with the adjacent soil level.

B. Compact trenches in areas to be planted by thoroughly flooding the backfill. Compact all other areas by flooding or hand tamping. The jetting process may be used in areas when flooding.

C. Backfill for all trenches, regardless of the type of pipe covered, shall be compacted to a minimum of 90% density.

D. Any trenches improperly backfilled, or where settlement occurs, shall be reopened to the depth required for compaction, then refilled and compacted with the surface restored to the required grade and left in a completed surface condition as described above.

E. Specifically tamp backfill under heads and around the flange of heads for one (1) foot by a suitable means after trench backfill has dried from flooding to prevent heads loosening in the ground.

3.15 FINAL ADJUSTMENT

A. After installation has been completed, make final adjustment of sprinkler system prior to Owner’s Authorized Representative's final inspection.

B. Completely flush system to remove debris from lines by removing nozzle from heads on ends of lines and turning on system.

C. Check sprinklers for proper operation and proper alignment for direction of throw.

D. Check each section for operating pressure and balance to other sections by use of flow adjustment on top of each valve.

E. Check nozzles for proper coverage. Prevailing wind conditions may indicate that arc or angle of spray should be other than as shown on drawings. In this case, change nozzles to provide correct coverage and furnish record data to Owner’s Authorized Representative with each change.

F. After system is thoroughly flushed and ready for operation, each section of sprinklers shall be adjusted to control pressure at heads. Use the following method, one (1) section at a time:

1. Remove last head on section and install a temporary riser above grade. Install tee with pressure gauge attached on top of riser and re-install head with nipple onto tee.
2. Correct operating pressure at last head of each section as follows: Spray and rotor heads - 30-35 psi.
3. After replacing head, at grade, tamp thoroughly around head.
4. Drip zone valve pressure regulating devices shall be set at not to exceed 40 psi.

3.16 CLEAN-UP

A. The Worksite shall be thoroughly cleaned of all waste materials and all unused or salvaged materials, equipment, tools, etc.

B. After completion of the work, areas disturbed shall be leveled and the Worksite shall be raked clean and left in an orderly condition.

END OF SECTION 32 8400

SECTION 32 9200

TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Divisions 00 and 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish all work and materials, appliances, tools, equipment, facilities, transportation, and services necessary for and incidental to performing all operations in connection with the installation of the sod.

1.3 SUMMARY

A. Work Includes:
   1. Soils Test/Analysis Report of existing site soils.
   2. Providing and installing manufactured topsoil.
   3. Providing and installing organic compost.
   4. Initial removal of weeds on site.
   5. Tilling/spike harrowing/ripping/breaking up/shattering of compacted site soils.
   6. Soil preparation and tilling topsoil and compost into existing rough graded subbase soils.
   7. Hand or deep tine aerifier mixing organic compost into existing soil at root zone of existing trees to remain.
   8. Fine grading and removal of debris.
   9. Germinating weeds for second eradication prior to sodding.
   10. Hand removal or raking away of dead weeds.
   11. Sodding of grass as designated on landscape plans.
   12. Providing temporary irrigation (if necessary to establish).
   13. Establishment of grass.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. Codes and regulations of the jurisdictional authorities.

B. Reference Codes and Standards (current standards):
   1. AASHTO: M140.
   2. ASTM: C33/C33M, C51.
   3. ASTM: D6459, D6566, D6567, D7322, D7367.
   4. U.S. Department of Agriculture and Texas Department of Agriculture
   5. Federal Seed Act.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:
   1. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified with minimum seven (7) years documented experience.
   2. Installer: Company specializing in performing the Work of this Section with minimum seven (7) years documented experience.

B. Inspections:

1. Make written request for inspection after sodding operations have been completed. Such inspection is for the purpose of establishing the Maintenance Period.
2. Submit written requests for inspections to the Owner's Authorized Representative at least seven (7) days prior to anticipated inspection date.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following for approval in accordance with contract related submittals in a single package to the Owner's Authorized Representative no less than sixty (60) days prior to installation.

B. All delivery receipts and copies of invoices for materials used for this work shall be subject to checking by the Owner's Authorized Representative. The Contractor shall offer proof of materials' compliance to the specifications to the Owner's Authorized Representative prior to installation. Various samples, certificates, and specifications of seed, and other materials shall be submitted for approval as required by subsequent sections of this specification and Section 32 9300. The Contractor should submit the following certification to the Owner's Authorized Representative prior to installation.

1. Sod: Certified, each delivery bearing a certification tag and label as required by law.
2. Sources: No less than sixty (60) days prior to installation, notify Owner and Owner's Authorized Representative in writing of source of seed required for the project.
3. Soil as used for Manufactured Topsoil: Submit a one (1) gallon sample along with documentation for Soil Test/ Analysis Report.
4. Manufactured Topsoil: Submit a one (1) gallon sample for spreading along with manufacturer's product data and laboratory analysis report with Solvita® Compost Maturity Test results for compost components of this manufacturer's mix.
5. Mature Organic Compost: Submit a one (1) gallon sample for spreading as specified in Section 2.6 along with Solvita® Compost Maturity Test results.
6. Organic Fertilizer: Copy of product information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and chemical analysis.
7. Organic Herbicide: Copy of product information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and chemical analysis. Submit manufacturer's information or cut sheets on products.
8. Organic Fungicide: Copy of product information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and chemical analysis. Submit manufacturer's information or cut sheets on products.
9. Organic Insecticide(s): Copy of product information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and chemical analysis. Submit manufacturer's information or cut sheets on products.

C. Work Schedule: The sodding of grass must occur at stipulated times. Also, time periods are specified to achieve an acceptable stand. Therefore, the Contractor must submit a schedule for the work of this section so that the grass can achieve full coverage as specified by the contract completion date. The schedule must be submitted no less than sixty (60) days prior to installation for review and approval of the Owner's Authorized Representative, Architect and Owner's Authorized Representative. Refer to Subsection 1.12.

D. Submit Maintenance Instructions upon final acceptance. Refer to Subsection 3.6, Paragraph K.

E. Special Warranty: Submit written special warranty registered with manufacturer as specified in this Section.

F. Provide documentation and testing of existing site soils and screened soils as used in the manufactured topsoil by means of a Chemical Soil Test/Analysis Report with recommendations for organic amendments (not chemical based) to soils for landscape turf grasses, aesthetic

planting with ornamentals and native plants (not agricultural crops) for determination or adjustment of required amendments.

G. Provide existing site soils testing, as noted above, at two (2) predetermined/approved locations on site per approval by Owner's Authorized Representative and Landscape Architect. Provide testing at least sixty (60) days prior to soil preparation.

1. Approved Chemical Testing Laboratories:

a. Perry Agricultural Laboratory, mailing address: P.O. Box 418, or shipping address: 15241 Pike 138, Bowling Green, MO 63334, phone: (573-324-2931), www.perryaglab.com. (Equivalent tests as noted above – minimum – Standard Albrecht Test.)

b. Approved equivalent laboratory to match parameters and report recommendations as approved by Owner's Authorized Representative.

H. Provide documentation and testing of compost materials as specified in Parts 2 and 3 of this section.

1.7 SELECTION AND ORDERING OF PLANTING MATERIALS

A. Documentation: Submit documentation no less than sixty (60) days prior to installation that all materials have been ordered.

B. Unavailable Materials: If proof is submitted that any of the materials specified is not obtainable, a proposal will be considered for use of the nearest equivalent variety with corresponding adjustment of Contract price. Substantiate such proof in writing no less than sixty (60) days prior to installation.

C. Special Conditions: The above provisions shall not relieve Contractor of the responsibility for obtaining specified materials in advance if special growing conditions or other arrangements must be made in order to supply specified materials.

1.8 JOB CONDITIONS AND PROVISIONS

A. Carefully maintain all site benchmarks, layout points and other points established by other contractors. If destroyed, replacement will be by this Contractor.

B. Coordinate all work of this Section with other on-site contractors and the Owner. Give advance notice on sequencing of this work so not to affect the operations of other contractors.

C. All turf grass work shall be performed under the direct supervision of a superintendent and laborers thoroughly experienced with the work of this Section and who shall be at the project site for the duration of the work.

D. No turf grass work shall take place during inclement weather or when the ground conditions are, in the opinion of the Owner's Authorized Representative, not in a condition to be properly worked.

E. No turf grass operations shall occur earlier than April 15th nor later than August 30th. If sod is to be installed from October 15th to March 15th, then provide temporary installation of cereal rye grass for winter establishment. Remove cereal rye grass prior to April 15th and install sod.

F. Erect barricades, snow fencing, hire temporary watchmen or whatever is deemed necessary by the Contractor to totally protect all turf grasses until one hundred (100%) percent established.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Materials and supplies are subject to inspection and sampling for testing. Allow no seed, fertilizer, straw, or other agronomic materials or supplies on Work site other than those for the Project.

1. Sod:

a. Deliver sod to job within twelve (12) hours after being cut; place sod within twenty (20) hours after being cut. Allow sod only eight (8) hours maximum on site.

b. Prior to and after delivery during wet weather, allow sod to dry to the extent that will prevent tearing during handling and laying. During dry weather, water sod to ensure its vitality and prevent dropping of the soil in handling.

c. Analysis of purity and germination tag.

d. Certification tag.

B. Organic Biological Fertilizer: Labeled with manufacturer's name and address, guaranteed analysis, including nutrient and its derived source, listing of potential acidity, and any toxic materials.

C. Organic Biological Fungicide: Labeled with manufacturer's name and address and analysis, warnings, safety instructions, and application requirements.

D. Organic Herbicide: Labeled with manufacturer's name and address and analysis, warnings, safety instructions, and application requirements.

E. Organic Insecticide: Labeled with manufacturer's name and address and analysis, warnings, safety instructions, and application requirements.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS OR SITE CONDITIONS

A. Verify and examine site conditions with the Owner’s Authorized Representative. Proceed when official notice is given to the Contractor that the work site is ready.

B. Proceed with tree protection prior to any mobilization, staging, site work, demolition, or grading.

1.11 SEQUENCING

A. Coordinate grading, soil preparation and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that grass sod can be supported and installed as indicated.

B. Coordinate with General Contractor for construction sequencing.

1.12 SCHEDULING

A. Submit a proposed work schedule to the Owner for approval no less than sixty (60) days prior to start of installation. After approval, no modification shall be made to this schedule without written authorization by the Owner or Owner’s Authorized Representative. List anticipated start and stop dates for each segment of work up to and including final acceptance.

B. In general, the work shall proceed as rapidly as the site becomes available, consistent with normal seasonal limitations for turf grass work.

C. Establishment Period: The grass must be fully, one hundred (100%) percent established by the contract completion date. The Contractor shall allow for a minimum of one hundred (100) days to establish the grasses.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 SOD FOR TURF

A. Well-rooted certified sod, at least eighteen (18) months old.

1. Front Yard Areas and areas disturbed by proposed construction.

   ‘Tiffway 419’ Bermudagrass (Cynodon dactylon var.)

   Cultivar to be approved by Landscape Architect based on availability per submittal by Contractor.

2. Grassed football, soccer, baseball, and softball fields (existing or proposed)

   Latitude 36® Bermudagrass (Cynodon dactylon var.)

Cultivar to be approved by Landscape Architect based on availability per submittal by Contractor.

B. Sod and attached soil free from any noxious weeds such as quack grass, garlic, Johnson grass, dallisgrass, nutsedge, Canada thistle, and other turf weeds.

C. Mowed in production field to height of not more than two and one-half (2-1/2) inches within five (5) days prior to lifting.

D. DO NOT use any sod grown with mesh netting due to tripper issues with children. Sod with netting will be rejected.

E. Machine cut in sections not less than two and one-half (2-1/2) feet in length nor less than twelve (12) inches in width and to a depth equal to growth of fibrous roots, uniform soil thickness of three-quarter (3/4) inch, plus or minus one-quarter (1/4) inch. Measurement for thickness to exclude top growth and thatch.

F. Cut in sections or strips for pallets strong enough to support its' own weight and retain size and shape when suspended vertically from firm grasp on upper ten (10) percent of section. Small, irregular or broken pieces of sod are prohibited.

2.2 MANUFACTURED TOPSOIL

A. Containing approximately twenty-five (25) percent organic matter as determined by the topsoil composition tests.

B. Compost will meet requirements of 2.3 D. for Solvita® Compost Maturity value of 7 or higher.

C. Soil shall be very fine native silt screened to be free of sticks, stones, roots, and other debris and objectionable materials. Soil may be as from screened lake dredging. Screened soil shall be subject to the approval of the Owner's Authorized Representative based on visual and tactile inspection.

D. Sand shall be a deep sand excavated from below fifteen (15) feet to ensure it is free of nutsedge, and screened or screened cushion (sharp) sand from sands available in this region.

E. Manufactured topsoil as blended from soil, deep sand (screened cushion sand) and organic compost. Manufactured topsoil handled too wet or soggy is not acceptable. Soils supporting growth of noxious weeds, as defined by the Kansas Seed Law, or undesirable weeds, are not acceptable. Manufactured topsoil containing dallisgrass and nutgrass (nutsedge) will be rejected.

F. Physical properties as follows:

1. Clay: between 0 and 10 percent
2. Screened Soil: between 13 to 17 percent
3. Sand: between 55 to 65 percent
4. Mature Compost (Organic matter): approximately 25 percent of total dry weight
5. pH: 7.2 to 8.7

G. Acceptable Manufactured Topsoil Mix: Enriched Top Soil™ – a precisely measured mixture of Professional Compost, screened native soil and screened sharp sand, pH from 7.5 to 8.7, as supplied by Soil Building Systems, 2101 Walnut Hill Lane, Dallas, Texas 75229, (972-831-8181), attention: Baron Ablon, or equivalent meeting all composition and compost maturity as determined by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

2.3 COMPOST - Professional Compost or Mature Organic Compost – 100% plant based

A. Compost: shall be compost for mix above that is fully finished compost that has been produced by aerobic (biological) decomposition of organic matter and meets or exceeds the requirements set forth by the United States Department of Agriculture, the United States Composting Council (USCC), and State composting requirements.

B. Compost feedstock shall include fully composted cotton burrs, local grass trimmings, leaves, brush and processed wood fiber and shall add an average of 1.1 lbs. N^1, 0.13 lbs. P^1, and 0.8

lbs. K^1 of pure consumable organic nutrients per one (100) square feet for each inch depth added plus minerals and trace elements. Compost shall not include food waste, stable waste, treated lumber, pallets, pine bark, raw manure or mushroom compost waste. Compost shall not include any man-made materials or chemicals. Do not use mixed municipal solid waste compost since it varies from season to season. Ensure compost does not contain any visible inorganic refuse, other physical contaminants, or any substance considered to be harmful to plant growth.

C. The compost must be turned a minimum of five (5) times and not achieve a temperature greater than 160 degrees Fahrenheit. Each turning cycle should not be shorter than fourteen (14) days minimum. Compost shall be completely composted for a minimum of six to twelve (6 - 12) months. Particle Sizes 97% will pass through a one-half (1/2) inch screen, 99%+ will pass through a three-quarter (3/4) inch screen.

D. Compost material shall have no pungent smell, but rather an earthy smell. Supporting documentation should be made available upon request. The contractor is obligated to provide testing of the compost at the supplier's yard and at the job site for quality assurance.

Acceptable Professional compost is as supplied by: Soil Building Systems, 2101 Walnut Hill Lane, Dallas, Texas 75229, (972-831-8181), attention: Baron Ablon, or equivalent as determined by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

Table 1

Physical Requirements for Compost

pH: 7.9 – 8.9
Maturity: germination and vigor greater than 90% in accordance with TMECC 05.05-A, "Germination and Vigor"
Solvita® Compost Maturity Index: value of 7 or higher in accordance with TMECC 05.08-E

E. The contractor is obligated to provide testing of the compost at the supplier's yard and at the job site for quality assurance.

F. TESTING OF THE COMPOST AT THE JOB SITE

NOTE: Contractor is advised to test the designated compost stockpile at the supplier's yard prior to loading to ensure the designated pile passes the compost maturity test. If the compost does not pass the test at the jobsite, it will be rejected.

1. Use Solvita® Compost Maturity Test Kit or approved equal. Solvita® test kit shall be recently purchased and shall be stored in a refrigerator protected from heat until use at the site. (The two parameters which Solvita® measures (CO_2 / NH_3) are the mostly frequently cited factors that correlate closely with maturity and potential phytotoxicity. Ammonia is also an odorous aerosol toxicant and is a potential worker hazard at agricultural and compost facilities.) Provide Compost maturity test results to measure both carbon-dioxide (CO_2) and ammonia (NH_3) evolution and provide a Maturity Index value, useful or compost quality evaluation. Compost maturity test is TMECC Test #05-08A.
2. Provide results to Owner's Authorized Representative at the job site.
3. Physical inspection of the material shall be performed at the same time by the Owner's Authorized Representative.
4. Owner's Authorized Representative has the right to reject the material if it does not meet the above parameters.

2.4 PRE-EMERGENCE - ORGANIC HERBICIDE – for initial weed eradication on site prior to sod installation.

A. Chemical Herbicides will not be used due to detrimental effects on the soils and due to runoff effects to the site detention basin and into the storm system.

B. Organic herbicide will be used to remove weeds prior to turf grass installation.

C. Use of any herbicide is to be of limited nature because of the potential to damage the viability of the soil and therefore the retardation of future plant growth.

D. Non-selective post emergence herbicide: Ammonium Nonanoate – 40%, AXXE® Broad Spectrum Herbicide, OMRI listed, as manufactured by BioSafe Systems, LLC, 22 Meadow Street, East Hartford, CT 06108, (888-273-3088).

E. Supplier: San Jacinto Environmental Supplies, Houston, TX (713-957-0909), local representative: Lanse Fullinwider, cell: (214-534-2317), or other suppliers.

F. Nonselective organic herbicide, such as Agricultural grade (20%) vinegar or 20% vinegar based product mixed with citrus oil.

2.5 ORGANIC BIOLOGICAL FERTILIZER: to build soil structure within urban environment. Synthetic fertilizers will not be used due to runoff issues and per iSWM (Integrated Storm Water Management) best practices.

A. Homogenous, granulated all organic biological fertilizer containing soil microbes, endo & ecto mycorrhizal fungi, vitamins, minerals, plant hormones, stimulators, essential carbon and protein: MicroLife Multi-Purpose 6-2-4 All Organic Biological Fertilizer.

B. Manufacturer/Supplier: San Jacinto Environmental Supplies, (713) 957-0909, local representative: Lanse Fullinwider, cell: (214-534-2317), or equivalent product as approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative or Landscape Architect.

C. See 3.4 for application rates of product to amended soils.

2.6 ORGANIC FUNGICIDES

A. As needed for specific conditions.

B. No chemical fungicides shall be used.

C. MicroGro Granular Root Protector - Biological Fungicide as supplied by San Jacinto Environmental Supplies, Houston, TX (713) 957-0909, local representative: Lanse Fullinwider, cell: (214-534-2317), or available locally at Southwest Wholesale Nursery, Lewisville, TX, or equivalent product as approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative or Landscape Architect.

D. Contractor shall recommend products for submittal and approval by the Owner's Authorized Representative or Landscape Architect depending on final plant selections and their susceptibility to certain fungi.

2.7 ORGANIC INSECTICIDE - FIRE ANTS

A. Fire Ant Bait:

1. PayBack® Fire Ant Bait with Conserve® Insecticide (spinosad 0.015%) granular form as manufactured by Southern Agricultural Insecticides, Inc., Palmetto, FL 34220, (941-722-3285).

2. Ferti-lome Come and Get It! Fire Ant Killer with Conserve® Insecticide (spinosad 0.015%) granular form as manufactured by Ferti-lome – Voluntary Purchasing Groups, Inc., 230 FM 87, Bonham, TX 75418.

B. Dusting Powder: Perma-Guard® Commercial Insecticide D-20 (pyrethrins 0.02%, technical piperonyl butoxide 1.0%, silicon dioxide from diatomaceous earth 88.0%) as manufactured by Perma-Guard, Inc., Albuquerque, NM 87102, (505-243-1460), or equivalent product as approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative or Landscape Architect.

2.8 WATER

A. Potable. Available on site. Applied and monitored by Contractor to establish seed and sod areas.

B. Keep seed and sod moist with watering schedules to promote deep roots and to prevent runoff. Part of the site will be watered by permanent underground irrigation systems. Overwatering of planting areas should not occur. Refer to irrigation plans.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates, and conditions are as required, and ready to receive Work.

1. Verify that all areas to receive turf grasses are clear of stones larger than one (1) inch diameter, weeds, debris, and other extraneous materials.
2. Verify that rough grades are left below finish grades in order to accommodate the following work, the addition of stockpiled/manufactured topsoil, soil amendments and sod (if sod is shown on the plans). The top of sod with amended soil after settlement shall meet the finished grade as shown in the grading plans. Report all variations in writing.

B. Soil Moisture:

Inadequate Moisture: Do not commence work of this section when soil moisture content is so great that excessive compaction will occur, nor when it is so dry that dust will form in air or that clods will not break readily. Apply water, as necessary, to bring soil to an optimum moisture content for planting.

C. By beginning Work, Contractor accepts conditions and assumes responsibility for correcting unsuitable conditions encountered at no additional cost to the owner.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Examine rough grade, verify elevations noted on the Drawings, observe the conditions under which work is to be performed, and notify Owner's Authorized Representative of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Owner's Authorized Representative. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing site conditions.

B. Thoroughly rip/disrupt/break-up/shatter the soil to a minimum depth of eight (8) inches, preferably deeper due to typical construction site compaction areas of site and areas outside of existing tree drip line/critical root zone (CRZ). Only lightly scarify the soils (about two (2) inches) where tree roots are present. Re-compact to industry standards using a standard gill or comparable piece of equipment.

C. Remove non-soil materials and construction debris such as wood, rock, brick, cement, pipe, sheetrock, metal, paint, plastic, glass, etc. and unacceptable clays, then re-grade subsoil to established grades for proper drainage.

D. Tilling/spike-harrowing/ripping/disrupting/breaking-up/shattering of the soils should occur prior to irrigation line installation. If the turf grass sprinkler system has already been installed, then it will be necessary to stake heads and to take necessary measures to prevent damage to the system.

E. Remove foreign materials and undesirable plants and their roots. Do not bury foreign material beneath areas to be sodded. Remove contaminated subsoil.

F. Insure positive drainage away from building and all planting areas adjacent to the building. Insure positive drainage at all turf grass areas. Maintain lines, levels, profiles, and contours. Make changes in grade gradual. Blend slopes into level areas.

G. Unless it has rained at least one (1) inch within twenty-four (24) hours prior to planting, water turf grass areas thoroughly to provide a moist, not wet, bed before planting.

3.3 AREAS OF APPROVAL

A. Delineate the area scheduled for sodding on the site using the drawing to scale the shape and size of the planting area.

B. The Owner's Authorized Representative shall approve the area delineated to receive sod prior to planting.

3.4 PREPARING SOIL & FINE GRADING

A. Note: During hauling operations, keep walkway and roadway surfaces clean. Promptly remove compost or other material.

B. Per the soil analysis report, determine if additional organic amendments are to be integrated into the soil preparation for plant health and horticultural suitability. Coordinate addition of amendments with the soil preparation as noted below. If no further soil amendments are required, then soil preparation shall be as noted below.

C. Weed removal:

1. If site has been freshly graded, compacted, or disturbed due to construction efforts and placement of manufactured topsoil, water site for minimum two (2) weeks to encourage weed germination and growth. (If site was graded more than two (2) weeks prior, watering is not needed to encourage weed growth.)

2. Area scheduled for grass: Totally remove all grasses and weeds, unless directed otherwise by Owner's Authorized Representative. Apply organic herbicide to thoroughly exterminate existing grasses, weeds, or other vegetation (unless noted on the drawing or in the field by the Owner's Authorized Representative for protection) in area scheduled to receive turf grass for grasses.

3. Clear and remove these existing weeds upon organic herbicide's completed action by grubbing off all plant parts and roots to at least one and one-half (1.5) inch below the surface of the soil.

4. In area adjacent to existing trees to remain lightly scarify the soil to remove seedlings and other ground vegetation to a depth not to exceed one and one-half (1.5) inches. Keep all scarification a minimum of eight (8) feet from the base of all existing trees. If exposed roots are on the surface of the soil DO NOT SCARIFY.

D. Remove branches, roots, weeds, rocks, trash, and other material foreign in nature from the existing stockpiled topsoil prior to placing stockpiled topsoil or use manufactured topsoil if no suitable stockpiled topsoil material is available. If pulling from a stockpile, push weed growth off top and pull from the lower inside portion of the pile where weed seeds have been heated and are less likely to germinate. Amend stockpiled topsoil to provide organic matter as per 2.3.

E. Once subsoil is lightly but firmly re-compacted, spread topsoil over areas to be sodded to a depth which will produce a two (2) inch depth minimum after natural settlement and will conform to finish lines, grades, and elevations. Add this soil from the outside of the site in, so the subsoil and topsoil create an interface (mingled) layer instead of two (2) distinct layers with the possibility of a pan layer being generated.

F. Do not drive over re-graded/scarified subsoil clays - dump topsoil on the outside of the site and with a tractor/dozer push topsoil onto scarified clays. Make equipment ride on top of topsoil as this will allow topsoil to partially mix with subsoil clays creating an interface layer instead of a compacted pan layer.

G. Fine grade, level and scarify with a weighted spike harrow, spike float, drag, or by hand raking. Leave no depressions, ruts, soft spots, or humps. Finish to lines or elevations shown and parallel to proposed finished grade, as approved. Maintain positive drainage on site. Remove rocks, clods, weeds, trash, or debris from area to be sodded. Remove rocks and other foreign materials one (1) inch or greater in any dimension. Legally dispose debris off site.

H. Place and spread compost over topsoil to depth which will produce a one-half (1/2) inch depth after natural settlement and will conform to finish lines, grades, and elevations.

I. Spread organic biological fertilizer at rate of twenty (20) pounds per one thousand (1,000) square feet over top of spread compost.

J. Till or disk topsoil and compost with organic biological fertilizer to five (5) inch minimum depth into existing subsoil to eliminate slip-plane between the three (3) materials and to prepare an acceptable bed for sod. Make a minimum of one (1) pass to break up clods and integrate compost evenly into the existing soil. Penetration of soil to a depth of five (5) inches is desired to encourage dormant seed grass and weed growth. Do not till if soil is wet.

K. Under adjacent existing trees, place and spread compost over area to depth which will produce a one (1) inch depth after natural settlement and will conform to finish lines, grades and elevations. Hand rake mix compost into native soil to two (2) inch depth to eliminate slip-plane between the materials and to prepare an acceptable bed for sod. Make a minimum of one (1) pass to break up clods and integrate compost evenly into the existing soil.

L. If soil or weather conditions are unsuitable, cease compost operations. Resume compost operations when proper conditions prevail.

M. Compact amended soil with lawn roller to final compacted thickness as approved.

N. Second (2^{nd}) weed and grass removal in areas scheduled for - sodded grass: Water the tilled and fine graded areas to receive grass three (3) weeks prior to sodding to encourage additional disturbed weed and native grass germination and growth. Apply an organic herbicide to thoroughly exterminate existing grasses, weeds, or other vegetation (unless noted on the drawing or in the field by the Owner's Authorized Representative for protection) in areas scheduled to receive sodded grasses. Totally remove all grasses and weeds, unless directed otherwise by Owner's Authorized Representative.

O. If weeds should germinate prior to sodding, hand pull or re-apply organic herbicide by wick method to eradicate weeds, but do not injure grass.

3.5 SODDING

A. After soil preparation (Section 3.4) is approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative, commence with sodding.

B. Scope of work:

1. Refer to the plans for the location of areas to receive sod.
2. Prepare soils per 3.4 and install sod in areas disturbed by renovation construction.
3. Prepare soils per 3.4 and install sod on entire grounds of project with new construction.
4. Install a minimum of two (2) feet of new sod along each side of new or renovated walkways in sodded areas. Refer to plans for extents of sod if greater than two (2) feet.
5. Sod will also be required in areas designated for turf grass that exceed 4:1 slope, unless noted otherwise on the drawings.
6. Delineate areas to receive sod and receive approval for area by Owner's Authorized Representative prior to planting.

C. Laying Sod:

1. Time frame for laying sod is from April 15 to October 15.
2. Extend or reduce specified period for laying sod as approved and as necessitated by weather and soil conditions.
3. Final selection of sod: As approved.
4. Do not lay sod when sodding area is muddy or frozen nor when sod is frozen. When soil surface is hot or dry, wet soil to a depth of two (2) inches, six (6) to eight (8) hours prior to sodding.
5. Lift sod from trucks or storage piles and place by hand with close joints and no overlapping. When Beck Roll of sod is used, lay as specified and in accordance with the supplier's instructions.

6. Lay first row of sod in straight line. Place subsequent rows parallel to and tightly against each other. Stagger lateral joints to promote more uniform growth and strength. Do not stretch sod. On slopes, lay sod parallel to contours of slope.
7. Peg sod placed on slopes 2:1 or greater. Peg each strip or section of sod with at least two stakes not more than two (2) feet apart. Use stakes one-half (½) inch by one (1) inch by twelve (12) inches driven flush with top of sod so that roots are in contact with topsoil.
8. Water sod immediately to prevent excessive drying during progress of work. Sod which dries out will be rejected.
9. Roll entire area as sodding is completed in one section so that sod is without surface irregularities, such as depressions and high spots.
10. Irrigate immediately after rolling to wet underside of sod and one (1) inch of soil immediately below.
11. For athletic fields (if applicable), the sod must be laid to be without bumps, dips or unlevel areas. Continue to level and proof roll field to meet Owner's or Owner's Authorized Representative's approval.

3.6 ESTABLISHMENT PERIOD AND REPLACEMENT

A. The establishment period for sodding of grasses shall commence at installation and continue throughout the construction period until final acceptance by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

B. Maintain sodding and incidental work by performing the following and other operations of care necessary for promotion of growth so that work is in an approved condition throughout establishment period; uniform in color, quality, and coverage; and free of weeds, insects, diseases, surface damage, and other imperfections.

1. Watering: Provide labor and materials for establishment watering.
   a. First two (2) weeks: Perform watering daily to keep sod beds continuously moist and to maintain moist topsoil to a depth of at least four (4) inches. Water during heat of day to help prevent wilting. Water with frequent, light watering and avoid runoff or puddling. Water may be needed more than once a day depending on weather conditions. Water to insure germination and root growth for resodding work.
   b. Remaining weeks: Perform watering weekly, decreasing frequency and increasing amount per application to encourage deep root growth.

      Recommended schedule:

      1) Next four (4) weeks: Perform watering to provide two (2) soil-wetting events to a depth of four (4) inches per each week.
      2) Remainder of growing season: March to November, water to provide two (2) soil-wetting events to a depth of six (6) inches per each month.
      3) In prolonged drought, over six (6) weeks in summer with no rain, irrigate once every five (5) to six (6) weeks to keep the dormant turf alive, but not trigger "green-up", unless more regular watering is desired to keep the turf green.

C. Eliminate weeds that emerge as soon as they appear, in a timely fashion mechanically and/or with an herbicide to prevent establishment and resodding. Use an herbicide that will not injure the newly sodded grass and apply according to manufacturer's recommendations. The Contractor should allow for a minimum of two (2) herbicide applications of areas scheduled for grasses during the establishment period.

D. Mowing: Turf solid sod grass areas.

1. Mow grass when it reaches a height of four (4) inches. Do not mow until sod is firmly rooted and securely in place. Mow to height of two (2) inches at first cutting. Thereafter, do not remove more than one third (1/3) of grass leaf at any cutting and mow only to enhance root growth.

E. Rolling and reshaping: Roll to maintain uniform surface. Roll to eliminate uneven places in sod. Reshape soil surface to maintain positive drainage. Resod to provide one hundred (100%) percent coverage.

F. Applying organic biological fertilizer:
   1. MicroLife Multi-Purpose 6-2-4 All Organic Biological Fertilizer, as supplied by San Jacinto Environmental Supplies, (713) 957-0909.
   2. Rate: Twenty (20) pounds per one thousand (1,000) square feet of turf area.
   3. Application:
      a. March
      b. June
      c. October

G. For high-use turf grass areas with heavy foot traffic, additionally top dress with one-half (1/2) inch organic compost in the fall plus aeration to open the compacted soils.

H. Applying organic herbicides, organic fungicides and/or organic insecticides:
   1. Apply as needed to insure one hundred (100%) percent coverage of turf grass that is weed, disease and pest free.
   2. Apply in spray form by certified applicator.
      a. Do not apply when temperature exceeds 80 deg. F. or during periods of drought.
   3. Treat fire ant mounds as they appear with approved organic materials.

I. Replacing sodding:
   1. Replace sodded areas that are dead or are in an unhealthy, unsightly, or badly impaired condition as soon as possible during specified planting seasons.
   2. Replace sod with same variety as noted for application per 2.1.
   3. Make such replacements in the same manner as specified for original sodding.

J. Coordinate watering schedules with other plantings during installation and until final acceptance. DO NOT overwater as this will promote weeds.

K. Maintenance Instructions: Submit one (1) electronic copy and two (2) copies of typewritten instructions recommending procedures to be established by the Owner for the maintenance of grasses for one (1) full year. Submit one (1) set of instructions to Owner’s Authorized Representative for approval. Submit two (2) copies of revised instructions prior to expiration of Contractor's maintenance period(s) required under the contract.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field inspections and tests and to prepare test reports.
   1. Testing agency will conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether tested Work complies with or deviates from requirements.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove and replace that inspections and test reports indicate do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Additional testing, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

3.8 CLEANING

A. Daily removal of rubbish and debris caused by this work from the site.

B. Keep site clean during maintenance period.

3.9 PROTECTION

A. Turf grass areas shall be protected against damage from the time work is started until the date of acceptance by the Owner's Authorized Representative. The moving of heavy equipment or materials over turf grass areas shall be done on planks if necessary.

3.10 INSPECTIONS

A. Make written request for inspection after areas have been sodded.

B. Submit request for inspection to Owner's Authorized Representative at least two (2) days prior to anticipated inspection date.

3.11 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

A. Due to seasonal requirements, final acceptance of this section may not coincide with that of the remaining contract work.

B. Request inspection for final acceptance at least ten (10) calendar days before the end of the establishment period.

C. Final acceptance shall be considered the time at which warm season turf grass areas are 100% established, and weed, pest and disease free with complete lush cover and no exposed soil areas showing. Weeds shall not occupy more than 2% of any 40'x40' test area.

D. Replace rejected sodded areas as specified so that repair or replacement is rooted and established prior to approval.

3.12 WARRANTY

A. In accordance with the General Provisions warranty for grasses shall be valid for one (1) year after final acceptance. Replace dead materials and materials not in vigorous, thriving condition as soon as weather permits. Re-sod areas where grasses have not established. The opinion of the Owner's Authorized Representative as to what constitutes a dead stand of grass shall be final.

B. Replace grasses with same kind as originally planted at no cost to the Owner. Provide one (1) year warranty on replacement plants. Plants should be replaced at start of next season. Protect irrigation system, other piping conduit, or other work during replacement. Repair any damage immediately.

C. Warranty excludes replacement of plants after final acceptance because of injury by storm, drought, drowning, hail, freeze, insects, or diseases. Warranty excludes replacement of plants due to negligence, over watering, or improper maintenance by the Owner or Owner's maintenance contractor.

D. Plants will be guaranteed to be true to species, variety or cultivar as specified.

TABLE 32 92 00-1

This chart indicates minimum length of time by which material samples must be submitted for approval before intended use and minimum quantity of each. Usable samples will be returned.

ITEM	TIME	QUANTITY	COMMENT
SOD	7 days	3 square feet	Each variety specified
ORGANIC COMPOST	7 days	1 gallon bag	Organic finished compost
ORGANIC HERBICIDE	7 days	1/2 pint	Unopened container
ORGANIC FERTILIZER	14 days	1 quart	Provide sample
ORGANIC FUNGICIDE	14 days	1 quart	Provide sample

SCREENED SOIL	14 days	1 gallon bag
MANUFACTURED TOPSOIL	14 days	1 gallon bag
OTHER MATERIAL	7 days	As directed or as approved.

END OF SECTION 32 9200

SECTION 32 9300

LANDSCAPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Divisions 00 and 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish all work and materials, appliances, tools, equipment, facilities, transportation, and services necessary for and incidental to performing all operations in connection with the installation of the landscape.

1.3 SUMMARY

A. Work includes:

1. Providing complete landscaping as shown.
2. Excavation of plant pits.
3. Percolation test and drainage of tree pits in lawn and planter beds.
4. Eliminating weeds – minimal two treatments.
5. Provide spike harrowing/ripping of compacted soils for beds.
6. Providing plant materials and related items.
7. Providing manufactured or stockpiled topsoil.
8. Providing expanded shale.
9. Providing organic professional compost.
10. Providing organic biological fertilizer.
11. Providing planting mix for specific site planters (if applicable).
12. Bed preparation and planting.
13. Providing weed barrier for planting beds.
14. Providing mulches for planting beds areas.
15. Providing tree anchoring frame.
16. Providing edging.
17. Providing organic herbicide and organic fungicide.
18. Providing organic insecticides.
19. Finished grading of planting areas.
20. Watering with water-wise practices to establish and not over-water plants.
21. Warranty and replacements.

B. Alternates: Refer to Division 1 Section "Alternates" for description of Work in this Section affected by alternates.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. The following Codes, Regulations, Reference Standards, and Specifications apply to work included in this Section and Section 329300.

1. Codes and regulations of the jurisdictional authorities.

2. "REFERENCE CODES AND STANDARDS":
    a. AASHTO: M288.
    b. ASTM: A6, C33/C33M-18.
    a. American Standard for Nursery Stock, Edition approved April 14, 2014, by American Nursery and Landscape Association (ANSI Z60.1-2014) - plant materials.
    b. Hortus Third, 1976 - Cornell University - plant nomenclature.

B. Observation at growing site does not preclude right of rejection at the Worksite. Plants damaged in transit or at the Worksite shall be rejected.

C. Personnel: Perform work only with qualified personnel familiar with required landscaping methods and materials.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

A. Weeds: Any plant not specified on the drawings or accepted as a substitute.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source quality control: Furnish certificates of inspection of landscape materials, to accompany shipments, as required by governmental authorities or as requested for inspection by Owner. Comply with applicable federal, state, county and local regulations governing landscape materials.

B. Growing location: Furnish certificates showing where materials have been grown or balled and burlapped.

C. Qualifications:
    1. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified with minimum seven (7) years documented experience.
    2. Installer: Company specializing in performing the Work of this Section with minimum seven (7) years documented experience installing projects of similar size and scope. The Landscape Contractor shall furnish a list of references or previous work experience as requested by the Owner. The Landscape Contractor shall employ only skilled personnel and provide adequate supervision.

D. Mockups: Contractor shall provide three (3) foot x three (3) foot representative mockups of each type of bed preparation for approval by the Owner’s Authorized Representative and the Landscape Architect to show compliance with Section 3 – Execution. Mock-ups that do not conform to the drawings, specs, and manufacturer’s recommendations will be rejected. An in-place mock-up sample may be acceptable. By installing an in-place mock-up, the Contractor accepts the risk and bears the cost of removing and replacing rejected samples. Contractor shall receive final approval from the Owner’s Authorized Representative prior to commencing balance of work.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide representative quantities (1 gallon plastic bag or container) of manufactured topsoil, expanded shale, organic compost, planter mix, and rustic cut mulch. Samples shall be approved by Owner’s Authorized Representative prior to installation. Attach product name, address of manufacturer and/or supplier and appropriate literature and composition of material or gradation for each sample. Literature or Product Data shall consist of manufacturer's current specifications, with catalog cuts, data sheets and installation instructions. Samples shall be submitted no less than sixty (60) days prior to installation.
    1. Organic Biological Fertilizers: Copy of each products information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and analysis. Submit manufacturer’s information or cut sheets on products.

2. Organic Herbicide: Copy of product information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and analysis. Submit manufacturer’s information or cut sheets on products.
3. Organic Fungicide: Copy of product information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and analysis. Submit manufacturer’s information or cut sheets on products.
4. Organic Insecticide(s): Copy of each products information labeled with manufacturer's name and address and analysis. Submit manufacturer’s information or cut sheets on products.
5. Edging: Manufacturer’s literature and 12” long sample.
6. Tree Anchoring Frame: Copy of product information labeled with manufacturer's name and address. Submit manufacturer’s information or cut sheets on products.
7. Weed Barrier - Recycled Newsprint Roll Stock Paper: Manufacturer's literature and 12" square sample.

B. Plant Material Samples: Submit documentation no less than sixty (60) days prior to installation that all plant materials have been located and are ready to be secured. Arrange specific review procedure of plant materials at time of submission. Submittals and review shall be organized as follows:

1. Preliminary Review: Submit representative photographs for review of all plant materials in the required sizes and in available quantity at no less than sixty (60) working days prior to shipment to the site.
2. Submittal shall include each of these items per plant: 1) a minimum of one (1) high quality color bond image or 2) one (1) color digital image. Include one (1) set for each plant type and size required for the project. The 8-1/2” x 11” sheet/image is to include the name and address of the supplier, size of the plant in the picture and Botanical and English name of the plant and variety/cultivar name. Digital submittals are preferred due to expediting time and for reduction in the carbon footprint.
3. Tree photographs shall include a person or device to determine scale and shall include two (2) photographs of each tree type or group. The two (2) photographs shall be taken at approximately 90 degrees from each other. One (1) additional photograph shall be taken at the base of each tree to show root flare and root conditions at the soil surrounding the roof flare.
4. Provide any additional tree groups and specimen photographs as required to illustrate the quality and/or quantity of material.
5. Poor quality photographs, photographs that are not in color, not labeled, or photographs which do not adequately represent the plant material will be rejected.
6. Photograph Acceptance and Nursery Review: Acceptance of material through photographs/digital images does not preclude rejection of unsatisfactory material upon delivery. The Owner’s Authorized Representative reserves the right to refuse review from photographs or at the grower if, in his judgment suitable material or sufficient quantities are not available. Contractor shall insure a sufficient quantity of plants will be available whenever trips are arranged to a nursery for the purposes of tagging material for the project.
7. Specific sources of materials may be listed in the plant schedule for availability, size, quality control of plant character and for matching of specific plant growing conditions.
8. Unavailable Material: If proof is submitted that any plant specified is not obtainable, a proposal will be considered for use of the nearest equivalent size or variety with corresponding adjustment of Contract price. Substantiate such proof in writing no less than sixty (60) days prior to installation.

C. Sources: Within at least sixty (60) days prior to delivery to site, notify Owner and Owner’s Authorized Representative in writing of source of plant material and bed preparation materials required for the project. This data is to be furnished in addition to representative samples.

D. Special Warranty: Submit written special warranty registered with manufacturer as specified in this Section.

E. Provide documentation and testing of compost materials as specified in Parts 2 and 3 of this Section.

F. Maintenance Instructions: Submit two (2) copies of typewritten and one (1) electronic copy of instructions for one (1) full year. Submit to Owner's Authorized Representative for approval. Submit two (2) copies and one (1) electronic copy of revised instructions prior to expiration of Contractor's maintenance period(s) required under the contract.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS OR SITE CONDITIONS

A. Verify and examine site conditions with the Owner's Authorized Representative. Proceed when official notice is given to the Contractor that the Work site is ready. Proceed with and complete the landscape work as rapidly as portions of the site become available.

B. Planting Restrictions: Perform actual planting only when weather and soil conditions are suitable in accordance with locally accepted practice. Do not install plant life when ambient temperatures may drop below 35 degrees F or above 100 degrees F. Commence landscaping work when the Site is free of rocks and debris. All planting areas to be left at depth per drawing details/sections from finished grade by others for landscape contractor to add soil amendments.

C. Protection:

1. Do not move equipment over existing or newly placed paving without approval of Owner's Authorized Representative.
2. Provide road-boarding to protect paving.
3. Protect paving, structures, and any other site improvement from damage, with protection boards, ramps, and protective sheeting.

D. Utilities:

1. Determine locations of underground utilities and perform work in a manner which is intended to avoid possible damage. Hand-excavate, where required, to minimize possibility of damage to underground utilities.
2. Coordinate work with Owner's Authorized Representative to prevent damage to existing underground sprinkler (irrigation) system at trees.
3. Water is available on site. Refer to irrigation system drawings for proposed underground irrigation system.

1.9 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver packaged materials in sealed containers showing weight, analysis and name of manufacturer, supplier, or grower. Protect materials from deterioration during delivery and while stored at the site.

B. Storage: Store products with protection from weather or other conditions which would damage or impair the effectiveness of the product. Protect metal containers from sun during summer months with temperatures above 80 degrees F.

C. Preparation of Plant Materials:

1. Balled and Burlapped (B&B) Plants: Dig and prepare shipment in a manner intended to protect roots. foliage and branches from damage and protect the shape, and future development.
2. Container Grown Plants: Prepare shipment in a manner intended to protect roots, foliage and branches from damage, and protect the shape for future development.
3. Plants should bear label from the grower certifying genus and species. Labels should be securely attached and waterproof bearing legible designation of botanical and common name. Plants not labeled may be rejected.

D. Deliver trees, shrubs, and other plants after preparation for planting have been completed and plant immediately.

E. Damage: Protect plant material in transit and at the site. Material not properly protected, and which is damaged will be rejected.

F. Unloading, Handling and Staging of Trees:

1. Staging systems shall be prepared in advance to adequately hold trees above ground for optimum tree health prior to planting. Many times, even with the best planning and coordination, trees cannot be planted when they are delivered.
2. Use extreme caution when handling trees. Use a strap cradle, adequate for weight and size of tree and root ball, attached to the root ball to unload and move trees. Strapping and wire baskets can break or loosen. Never move, lift, or handle by attaching to or by putting pressure on the trunk. Be very careful not to damage or scar trunks and branches.
3. Prior to unloading, proper moisture shall be maintained in root balls. Trucks shall be staged in the shade prior to unloading. Unloading time shall be no more than two (2) hours per trunk.
4. Immediately after unloading, no more than one hour after unloading, stand the trees up to reduce risk of sun scald. Properly staged trees shall be standing, untied, and spaced.
5. Remove cardboard trunk protector within forty-eight (48) hours of trees being stood upright to reduce the risk of damage.
6. Monitor moisture in the root ball by probing the soil with a soil probe and manage supplemental irrigation accordingly. Be careful not to over or under irrigate.
7. During cold weather periods, root balls must be protected from freezing temperatures.
8. Storage is at Contractor’s own risk.

G. Handling of Plant Materials:

1. Do not deliver plants until the site conditions are ready for planting. If planting is delayed, heel-in bare rooted or freshly dug plants in a bed containing adequate mulch to keep roots moist. Separate bundles and trim roots, if long or damaged, using sharp pruning shears. Place plants in flats, pots, or other containers in a sheltered spot protected from sun, wind and mechanical damage and keep roots moist. Storage is at Contractor's own risk.
2. Do not lift or handle any plants by tops, stems or trunks at any time. Do not bind or handle plants with wire or rope at any time.

1.10 MOCK-UPS

A. Mockups of bed preparation shall be provided on site in two (2) locations with Owner and Owner’s Authorized Representatives to show compliance with Section 3 – Execution.

B. Coordinate with General Contractor for sequencing of mock-ups to demonstrate soil preparation for planting beds. Mockup may be part of installed area if it shows compliance with Section 3 – Execution.

C. Contractor shall demonstrate installation of the weed barrier with mulch topdressing prior to planting.

D. Refer to Section 3.2 Site Preparation.

1.11 SEQUENCING

A. Coordinate rough and landscape grading, soil preparation, irrigation, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that plant material can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.12 SCHEDULING

A. Submit a proposed work schedule to the Owner's Authorized Representative for approval at least sixty (60) days prior to start of work under this Section. After approval, no modification shall be made to this schedule without written authorization by the Owner.

B. In general, the work shall proceed as rapidly as the site becomes available, consistent with normal seasonal limitations for planting work.

1.13 WARRANTY

A. General: Warranties specified in this Section shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. In accordance with the General Provisions, warranty for plants and trees shall be valid for one (1) year after final acceptance. Replace dead materials and materials not in vigorous, thriving condition as soon as weather permits. The opinion of the Owner's Authorized Representative as to what constitutes a dead plant shall be final.

C. Replace dead trees or trees not in vigorous, thriving condition as soon as weather permits. Replace trees, which have partially died thereby damaging shape, size, or symmetry. The opinion of the Owner's Authorized Representative as to what constitutes a dead plant shall be final.

D. Replace plants and trees with same kind and size as originally planted at no cost to the Owner. Provide one (1) year warranty on replacement plants. Trees should be replaced at start of next planting or digging season. In such cases, remove dead trees immediately. Protect irrigation system, other piping conduit, or other work during replacement. Repair any damage immediately.

E. Warranty excludes replacement of plants after final acceptance because of injury by storm, drought, drowning, hail, freeze, insects, or diseases.

F. Plants will be guaranteed to be true to species, variety or cultivar as specified.

G. Warranty: Warrant that all shrubs and groundcover planted under this Contract will be healthy and in flourishing condition of active growth one (1) year from date of Substantial Completion.

H. Replacements: As soon as weather conditions permit, replace, without cost to Owner all dead plants and all plants not in a vigorous, thriving condition, as determined by Owner's Authorized Representative during and at the end of Warranty Period.

1.14 REPLACEMENTS

A. General:

1. Plant materials exhibiting conditions which are determined as being unacceptable due to workmanship by the Contractor shall be repaired and/or replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.

2. Closely match replacements to adjacent specimens of the same species. Apply all requirements of this Specification to all replacements.

B. Replacement Quantities: Contractor shall be held responsible for a maximum of two (2) replacements for each failed tree and shrub, and same area of groundcover and perennial planting after final acceptance during the Warranty Period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANTS

A. General: Provide healthy, field-grown ball and burlapped plants or nursery-grown container and boxed plants, well-formed No. 1 grade from a recognized, local nursery, and of the species and

variety shown on the drawings, well-developed branches conforming to and complying with the last edition of American Standard for Nursery Stock, Edition approved May 12, 2004, by American Nursery and Landscape Association (ANSI Z60.1-2004). Listed plant heights are from tops of root balls to nominal tops of plants.

B. Provide only healthy, vigorous stock, grown under climatic conditions similar to conditions in the locality of the project and free of disease, insects, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sunscald, injuries, abrasions, or disfigurement. Plants will have been grown within a two hundred and fifty (250) mile radius of the site.

C. Vigor: Plants shall be sound, healthy, and vigorous, well branched, and densely foliated when in leaf. They shall be free of disease, insect pests, eggs, or larvae. They shall have healthy, well-developed, vigorous, and fibrous root systems. Plants shall be free from physical damage or adverse conditions which would prevent thriving growth.

D. Container and Boxed Stock material:

1. Verify that all container stock has been grown in the containers in which delivered for at least six (6) months, but not over two (2) years.
2. Plants shall have a root ball size of minimum of ten (10) inches in diameter for each one (1) inch caliper, measured six (6) inches above root ball.
3. Root system development:
    a. Samples must prove to be free of kinked, circling, or girdling roots and with no evidence of a pot-bound condition.
    b. Trees shall have been grown in heavy or heavy clay soil and irrigated with drip irrigation. Loose potting soils are not acceptable since root mass will flex with trunk sway and allow potential overturn of tree.
    c. Field grown plants recently planted into containers will be accepted if roots have developed into new soils.
4. Root flare of plant material shall be visible at nursery prior to delivery, and after transplanting into the landscape.
5. Root balls shall not be cracked or broken prior to shipment.
6. Do not remove self-locking tags prior to delivery to site.
7. Remove all weeds and other invasive plants from the base of the nursery plant's root container prior to delivery to site.

E. Nursery grown B&B material:

1. Plants shall have a root ball size of minimum of ten (10) inches in diameter for each one (1) inch caliper, measured six (6) inches above root ball.
2. Root system development:
    a. All named cultivars shall be own root clones; no grafted or bud-grafted trees will be accepted.
    b. 100% mechanically root-pruned at least once and transplanted a minimum of three (3) times during the first three (3) years of the tree's life.
    c. Trees shall have been grown in heavy clay soil and irrigated with drip irrigation.
    d. Plants shall be well healed in for a minimum of thirty (30) days with a flush of new roots at the edge of the burlap prior to shipping. Recently dug plants will not be accepted.
    e. Trees shall have no girdling roots, have no "J" shaped roots, and the trunk flare shall be visible.
3. Ensure balls are firm, neat, slightly tapered, and well burlapped.
4. Root balls shall not be cracked or broken prior to shipment.
5. Root flare of plant material must be above ground and visible at nursery before harvest, prior to delivery, before planting, and after transplanting into the landscape.

6. Root liner grown trees shall have been planted such that their root flare is visible above the finished grade of the liner. No buried tree flares will be submitted or accepted.
7. Do not remove self-locking tags prior to delivery to site.
8. Remove all weeds and other invasive plants from the base of the nursery plant's root ball prior to delivery to site.

F. Shade and Ornamental Trees - Canopy development:
1. No. 1 grade nursery stock healthy, vigorous, full-branched, well-shaped, trunk diameter, and height requirements as specified
2. There shall be a strong central leader to the top of the canopy. The tip of the leader on the main trunk must be intact and its terminal bud must be the highest part of the tree.
3. No branch can have a diameter greater than 2/3 the trunk diameter measured directly above the branch crotch. The tree will have no inclusions or co-dominant branches.
4. The tree crown shall be structurally uniform. Branches shall be evenly distributed around the trunk. The crown shall be full of foliage which is evenly distributed around the tree.
5. Trees that have had branches tipped or cropped will not be accepted.
6. Provide trees with full rounded crowns, meeting height and spread standards after pruning. No flat sided trees or trees with open areas on any side will be acceptable. Trees shall be consistently superior in form and branching, and typical of the growth habit of their species unless otherwise specified.

G. Tree Caliper Measurement Requirements: for a single stem tree, the diameter (caliper) of the trunk shall be measured twelve (12) inches above the top of the root ball for a tree having a diameter up to and including eight (8) inches and measured at four and one-half (4.5) feet (Diameter at Breast Height - DBH) above the top of the root ball for a tree having a diameter of more than eight (8) inches. For multi-stem trees, the diameter of the trunk measured at the narrowest point below branching when branching occurs higher than twelve (12) inches above the top of the root ball. When branching occurs at or lower than twelve (12) inches above the top of the root ball, caliper means the diameter of the largest stem plus the average diameter of the remaining stems, measured at four and one-half (4.5) feet (DBH) above the top of the root ball.

H. Shrubs, ornamental grasses, yuccas, hesperaloe, opuntia, groundcovers and perennials: Nursery grown, healthy, vigorous, of normal habit of growth for species, free from disease, insect eggs, and larvae. Specified sizes are before pruning and measured with branches in normal position. Plants to be well rooted and established in the container.

I. Plants shall conform to the sizes and quality notes in the plant list and/or as indicated, with the exception of that larger plants than those specified may be used if approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative. Use of larger plants shall not increase the contract price. Specified sizes shall be after pruning, and plants shall be measured with their branches in normal position.

J. Pruning: Do not prune plants before delivery. If pruning is necessary, prune with direction from Owner's Authorized Representative (Landscape Architect).

K. Plant protection during shipping: Wrap canopy of plants prior to loading to ensure that branch structures are protected, and that wind damage is minimized. Shrubs and smaller plant material will be handled and loaded to protect character and form of each plant. Removal of protection strapping and wrapping shall be handled with care to prevent damage to the plant material once it is delivered to the site. Damaged materials will be subject to rejection.

L. Upon delivery to site:
1. Reject trees with cracked, lose or broken balls when frame or burlap is removed at time of planting.
2. Trees will be individually approved or rejected by the Owner's Authorized Representative on site.
3. Trees: Free of physical damage such as scrapes, bark abrasions, or split branches.

4. Trees for planting adjacent to sidewalk shall be pruned and branched up to seven (7) foot height above the finished grade of the sidewalk or accessible surface for pedestrian clearances as directed by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

2.2 MANUFACTURED TOPSOIL – Refer to Section 32 92 00 – 2.2.

2.3 EXPANDED SHALE

A. Expanded Shale: shall be rotary kiln expanded shale and clay lightweight aggregate as manufactured and supplied by Arcosa Lightweight Arlington, TX (817-635-8541), local representative: Eric Nelson, cell (817-635-8541) or equivalent as determined by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

2.4 COMPOST - Professional Compost - 100% plant based - Refer to Section 32 92 00 – 2.3.

2.5 PLANTER MIX – for raised planters (if applicable)

A. Moderately Pervious Container Soil Mix (modified):

1. pH in the neutral range, moderately draining, perpetually loose in texture, holds sufficient moisture to adequately supply the vegetation without excessive leeching of transient nutrients.
2. Composition: mix of pH Balanced Compost, expanded shale, soil and sand blend. Mix will be modified slightly as follows*: reduce pH Balanced Compost by 10%, increase fine aggregates by 10%.*

B. As processed and supplied by Soil Building Systems, Dallas, Texas, (972-831-8181), attention: Baron Ablon, or equivalent as approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

2.6 PRE-EMERGENCE AND POST-EMERGENCE FOR WEED REMOVAL - ORGANIC HERBICIDE AND HAND PULLING - Refer to Section 32 92 00 – 2.4.

2.7 ORGANIC BIOLOGICAL FERTILIZER – Refer to Section 32 92 00 – 2.5.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS PLANTING MATERIALS

A. Wrapping Material: Do not use!

B. Tree Paint: Do not use!

2.9 WEED BARRIER AND TOPDRESSING

A. Weed Barrier for Planting Areas: Recycled roll stock newsprint paper as manufactured in the U.S. Available: Global Industrial at (1-888-978-7759), www.globalindustrial.com; or Uline (1-800-958-5463) / (1-800-295-5510), www.uline.com; or Pack Secure at (1-888-511-7225), www.packsecure.com, or equivalent product as determined by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

B. Mulch for Planting Beds and Tree Watering Wells at Turf – material screened to not exceed eight (8) inches:

1. Rustic Cut Hardwood – native hardwoods; free of man-made foreign material, lumber, treated materials, wood mill sawdust or pine bark; hammer mill processed, decomposed - heat sterilized two (2) times to remove latent weed seeds, aged for minimum two (2) to four (4) months, screened to remove fines. No soft green or unprocessed materials allowed. 96% of material will pass through a one (1) inch screen with additional screening down to three-eighths (3/8) inch, 98% of material will not exceed eight (8) inches in length. Material shall have no pungent odors but will have an earthy smell. As processed and supplied by Soil Building Systems, 2101 Walnut Hill Lane, Dallas, TX 75229 (972-831-8181), attention: Baron Ablon.

2. Tree Mulch (once ground native hardwood mulch) custom screened material to match properties of mulch noted above and to not exceed eight (8) inches in length. Product must have been heat sterilized (2) times to remove latent weed seeds and aged for minimum two (2) months. No soft green or unprocessed materials allowed. As processed and supplied by Living Earth (LETCO), Dallas, TX, if determined to be an equivalent by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

2.10 ANCHORING FRAME FOR ORNAMENTAL AND SHADE TREES

A. For anchoring of tree root balls in planting bed areas and native grass areas.

B. Re-bar anchoring ring with three (3) six (6) inch U brackets, color: natural metal or painted, and three (3) separate anchors with S-hook and tightening strap.

C. Anchoring rings to have two (2) cuts per ring, four (4) total, for fail-points.

D. Below Grade Safety Stakes (ground anchors) as manufactured by Tree Stake Solutions, local representative: Jeff Tuley, (903-676-6143), www.treestakesolutions.com, or equivalent as approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

Item #	Description
15-BG	10-15 gal. or 17" root ball with 3 – V68 Anchors
30-BG	20-30 gal. or 22" root ball with 3 – V68 Anchors
45/65BG	45-65 gal. or 27-30" root ball with 3 – V68 Anchors
100-BG	95-100 gal. or 36" root ball with 3 – V68 Anchors
150-BG	150 gal. or 42" root ball with 3 – V68 Anchors
200-BG	200 gal. or 48" root ball with 3 – V88 Anchors

2.11 EDGING

A. Steel Edging: 1/8" x 4", color: black, interlocking sections, installed with 12" steel stakes.

B. Option for Safety:

Aluminum Edging: Permaloc CleanLine, 3/16" x 4", mill finish, with rolled top edge for safety, with twelve (12) inch stakes, as manufactured by Permaloc Corporation, 13505 Barry Street, Holland Michigan 49424, (800-356-9660), www.permaloc.com.

2.12 ORGANIC FUNGICIDES – Refer to Section 32 92 00 – 2.6.

2.13 ORGANIC INSECTICIDES

A. Soft Bodied Insects (aphids, mites, thrips, white flies, lace bugs, etc.):

1. EcoSMART® Organic Insecticides as manufactured by a division of the Kittrich® Corporation, Atlanta, GA 30336, (714-736-1011).
2. Neem Oil.

B. Scale: Use 2 ounces of Orange Oil mixed with 1 ounce of Neem Oil to a gallon of water. Spray weekly for 3 weeks.

C. Caterpillars, Army Worms, Sod Webworms: Use Bacillus Thuringiensis (BT) biological agent.

D. Chinch Bugs:

1. EcoSMART® Granular, as manufactured by a division of the Kittrich® Corporation, Atlanta, GA 30336, (714-736-1011).

2.14 ORGANIC INSECTICIDE - FIRE ANTS – Refer to Section 32 92 00 – 2.7.

2.15 WATER

A. Potable. Available on site. Refer to the irrigation specifications and plans. Truck or other means of watering shall be required to establish native grass areas behind the sidewalks where no existing or temporary irrigation system exists.

2.16 MACHINERY AND EQUIPMENT

A. Machinery requirements listed under this Section are NOT intended to be restrictive of specific manufacturers or models, unless so stated. Specific mention of the manufacturers is intended as a guide to illustrate the final product of the maintenance operations desired. All equipment used shall be and maintained in top working condition at all times.

B. Pruning and grinding tools shall be maintained in safe, working condition, cutting edges shall be sharp at all times.

C. Fertilizer and insecticide spreaders (for organic products) shall be of the hand-held or cyclone type. Vehicle-mounted or push cyclone spreaders shall be allowed. Spreaders shall be in a safe working condition at all times.

D. Insecticide and fungicide sprayers (for organic products) shall be of the hand-held, backpack, or vehicle-mounted type. Sprayers shall be in a safe working condition at all times.

E. The Contractor shall be responsible for any grade, plant material (native grass, trees, shrubs, etc.), or hardscape amenity (fence, pavement, arbor, steel edging, stone wall, etc.) damage caused by the spreader or sprayer and the application process.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates and conditions are as required, and ready to receive Work.

1. Verify that all planting areas are clear of stones larger than one (1) inch diameter, weeds, debris and other extraneous materials.
2. Verify that grades are within one (1) inch plus or minus of the required finished grades. Report all variations in writing.

B. Soil Moisture:

Inadequate Moisture: Do not commence work of this section when soil moisture content is so great that excessive compaction will occur, nor when it is so dry that dust will form in air or that clods will not break readily. Apply water, as necessary, to bring soil to an optimum moisture content for planting.

C. By beginning Work, Contractor accepts conditions and assumes responsibility for correcting unsuitable conditions encountered at no additional cost to the owner.

3.2 SITE PREPARATION

A. Coordinate with General Contractor for scheduling and sequencing of installation of planting bed areas to ensure that the areas are protected from construction sediment runoff.

B. Examine rough excavated grade/subgrade for planting areas and verify conditions under which work is to be performed. Do not proceed with work until all grading and related work is completed in a satisfactory manner so that the landscape installation can proceed. All lumps, clods, and debris over two (2) inches in diameter shall be removed from the Worksite. Delineate bed areas and receive approval from Owner's Authorized Representative prior to starting work. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing site conditions.

3.3 BED PREPARATION AT PLANTING BED AREAS

A. Ensure rough grading of planting beds is provided to grade elevation to allow for amendment installation and drainage for positive surface flow for runoff.

B. Coordinate for irrigation installation to allow for plant placement and for height of heads relative to finished top dressed beds.

C. Weed and invasive vegetation removal:

1. Organic Herbicide: Treat weeds and invasive vegetation with organic herbicide to eradicate any material growing after rough grading for beds.

D. Thoroughly clear and remove the existing weeds and grass roots upon organic herbicide's completed action by grubbing off all plant parts and root systems to depth to allow for proposed planting bed soil amendments and topdressing, and to prevent re-growth of removed plant.

E. Thoroughly till/rip/disrupt/break-up/shatter the soil to a minimum depth of ten (10) inches due to typical construction site compaction. Re-compact to industry standards using a standard gill or comparable piece of equipment. Remove non-soil materials and construction debris such as wood, rock, brick, cement, pipe, sheetrock, metal, paint, plastic, glass, etc. and unacceptable clays, then re-grade subsoil to established grades for proper drainage of planting beds.

F. Tilling/spike harrowing/ripping/disrupting/breaking up/shattering of the soils should occur prior to irrigation line installation. If the turf grass sprinkler system has already been installed, then it will be necessary to stake heads and to take necessary measures to prevent damage to the system.

G. Upon delivery of topsoil and planting amendments, ensure that the material is protected and is not contaminated with any materials or soils on the site prior to installation.

H. Delineate bed areas and receive approval from Owner's Authorized Representative prior to starting work.

I. Open bed areas to receive shrubs, groundcover, ornamental grass, and perennials to be prepared as follows to provide a stratified bed mix:

1. Install two (2) inches (settled depth) of manufactured topsoil.
2. Till to depth of eight (8) inches to mix topsoil thoroughly with native disrupted soil.
3. Install three (3) inches (settled depth) of expanded shale.
4. Till to a depth of eight (8) inches to mix additives thoroughly with topsoil/native soil.
5. Install three (3) inches (settled depth) of organic compost.
6. Apply organic biological fertilizer at rate per manufacturer's recommendations for bed preparation at forty (40) lbs. per one thousand (1,000) square feet.
7. Till compost and organic biological fertilizer to a depth of eight (8) inches to stratify into shale/soil mix.

J. Set beds to finished grade of media to allow for topdressing installation depth.

K. Coordinate installation and placement of irrigation mainline at edge of bed to ensure that they are clear of tree root ball installation and do not impede planting. Lateral irrigation lines for bubblers, drip irrigation (if allowed/required) and spray heads shall be provided per irrigation plans.

L. Water beds to promote germination of dormant weeds and grasses, if media has been contaminated or mixed with soils containing native weed seeds prior to installation in planter beds.

M. Treat weeds in bed with application of organic herbicide.

N. Remove weeds after organic herbicide treatment period by hand digging.

3.4 BED PREPARATION AT RAISED PLANTERS (if applicable)

A. Protect finish and integrity of inside of waterproofed architectural planter walls. Do not use any sharp tools when working in this planter area.

B. Protect subdrainage system (piping and other drainage media) as designed per Civil or Architectural.

C. Install Planter Mix (modified) per 2.5 in six (6) inch water compacted and hand tamped layers to remove air pockets and to ensure that there is no settlement.

D. Apply organic biological fertilizer (MicroLife 6-2-4) at rate per manufacturer's recommendations for bed preparation at forty (40) lbs. per one thousand (1,000) square feet. Rake into surface of soil mix.

E. Coordinate and install irrigation system in bed at depth allowing for mulch topdressing or other materials and plants to be installed.

3.5 PLANT PREPARATION AT HOLDING AREA PRIOR TO INSTALLATION AT BED AREAS

A. Contractor shall remove excess soils from the top of tree root balls or containerized trees to ensure that the natural tapered root flare is fully visible and exposed. Trim and remove all circling, girdling and spider roots away from the root flare and dispose. Taper top of root ball from flare.

B. Contractor shall completely remove all weeds, vines or plant seedlings, including their root system, growing at top of container or on top of the root ball to ensure that these invasive non-specified plants do not gain foothold to establish in the planting beds and cause additional maintenance to remove.

C. Removal and disposal of all weeds, vines or plant seedlings shall occur prior to any plant moving for installation or placement in the planting beds.

3.6 TOP DRESSING PLANTING BEDS

A. After finished grade has been approved, top dress parking lot shrub screening bed areas first with eight (8) rolled layers of recycled roll-stock newsprint paper, as specified in 2.9 A., to provide a weed barrier.

B. Then top dress bed areas with rustic cut hardwood mulch to a depth of three (3) inches compacted depth.

C. In planting beds, this top dressing occurs prior to plant installation. Delay this operation until near final acceptance.

D. Top dressing must achieve specified depth to attain final acceptance.

E. Hold mulches back to expose the flare of the plant, once the plant is installed, or tree trunk at the root ball if in planting bed.

3.7 PLANTING OF PLANTING BEDS

A. After topdressing has been installed Contractor shall mark proposed locations for plants with contractor spray paint or lay out plants over top of topdressing at required spacing. Obtain approval from Owner's Authorized Representative.

B. The Owner's Authorized Representative reserves right to interchange or shift locations of plants prior to planting.

C. Once sprayed locations have been approved by Owner's Authorized Representative, pull back topdressing layer of mulch to expose the area of newsprint where the plant will be located.

D. Carefully cut cross-shaped slits to provide an opening for the plant. Roll/pull back the cut paper for plant installation.

E. Plant in pits two (2) times greater in diameter than root balls or container diameter. Remove all burlap, ropes, wires, and strings from the rootball prior to planting.

F. Remove the container from the prepared plant.

G. Score the root ball vertically at four (4) equal points around the edge prior to planting.

H. Plant shrub/large ornamental grass/groundcover such that top of the root ball at the flare of the plant is one and one half (1 1/2) inch above finished grade of the recycled roll stock newsprint paper (weed barrier) for plants in 2 gallon and up sized containers, and one (1) inch above the top of the weed barrier for plants in containers 1 gallon and smaller.

I. Backfill to depths of root balls with planting media. Carefully settle by watering to prevent air pockets. Water in thoroughly.

J. Fold the cut back sections up to the root flare of the plant and pull compost/mulch topdressing back to cover the newsprint.

K. Hold mulch back to keep the root flare exposed and to keep moisture away from foliage base and prevent yellowing.

L. Carefully prune plants to remove dead or broken branches and hand-rake bed areas to smooth even surfaces.

3.8 TREE PLACEMENT AND PROXIMITY TO BUILDING WALLS & PERMANENT STRUCTURES

A. Criteria for tree distance based on trees full height and canopy spread at full maturity:

1. Large trees: Minimum of twenty-five (25) feet.
2. Small trees: Minimum of fifteen (15) feet.

3.9 TREE PIT PERCOLATION TESTING

A. For all Canopy Shade and Ornamental Trees locations:

1. Stake locations for approval by Owner's Authorized Representative prior to excavation.

2. Percolation test for trees in planting beds and turf beds: After approval of tree locations, excavate pit and perform percolation test. The pit shall be the same depth as the height of the root ball or slightly less so that the root ball sits approximately two (2) inches above surrounding grade. The pit shall be dug square so that the pits are twelve (12) inches or greater in diameter than root balls for trees in planter beds and two (2) times the diameter of the root ball for trees in turf areas.
3. Fill excavated pits with water and wait until next day. If the water level has not dropped at least six (6) inches within twelve (12) to twenty-four (24) hours, then notify the Owner's Authorized Representative. An Owner's Authorized Representative must be present to monitor and record the results of the percolation test.
4. If tree pit does not drain in the required time, then provide one of these below two (2) options for final direction based on approval by the Owner's Authorize Representative:
    a. Provide an augured drain pit at one of the tree pits to determine if a permeable layer can be achieved to allow the required drain down time.
    b. If the above cannot be achieved, then raise the tree planter pits such that the top of tree's root flare and root ball is six (6) inches above finished grade.

3.10 CANOPY AND ORNAMENTAL TREE PLANTING

A. General Planting Requirements for all Canopy Shade and Ornamental Trees:

1. Handling trees: Use extreme caution. Use a strap cradle (adequate for weight and size of root ball) attached to root ball to unload and move trees. Strapping and wire basket can break or loosen. Never move, lift, or handle by attaching to or by putting pressure on the trunk. Be certain that equipment, including straps, chains, and cradles, are rated for the weights of the trees being lifted.
2. Face tree to give best appearance and to allow for required branching height clearance above walks and streets. Provide branching orientation turned to provide for best growth pattern to prevent conflict with vehicles or adjacent structures. Receive approval from the Owner's Authorized Representative or Landscape Architect prior to final installation to prevent further handling or damage to the root system.
3. Remove any plastic wrap and any circling roots from the root ball. Handle tree only by root ball.

4. Maintain tree in a straight and plumb position.
5. Position tree anchoring frame over top of root ball and install ground anchors to align to frame above. Connect anchoring hooks and adjust tree to ensure it is plumb and anchored securely to the subgrade per manufacturer's directions prior to starting backfill. Refer to tree anchoring details for further information.
6. Backfill the lower portion against the root ball as noted per specific requirements of B. and C. below.
7. Saturate the planting hole with water after backfilling is one half (½) complete to aid removal of air from the backfill.
8. After initial backfill, watering, and the tree is plumb, then add backfill to just below the top horizontal wire ring, saturate planting hole and adjust root ball, if necessary, to make tree straight and plum.
9. After above items have been completed, remove synthetic wrap, cardboard packaging, and cut/remove the top portion of the wire basket down to and including the first horizontal ring. Remove the burlap from the top portions of the root ball.
10. Backfill remaining balance of fill at top of root ball as noted per B. and C. below.
11. Remove all remaining shipping straps, tags, tapes, ties, stakes and other items from the trunk and canopy of the tree.
12. Provide watering dam at the edge of the tree's drip line/canopy edge to keep the tree's root flare fully exposed.
13. If rock is encountered:
    a. Owner's Representative may select alternative location. Location shall not impede visibility triangles.
    b. Rock shall be removed to a minimum of six (6) inches below the plant if an alternative location cannot be selected and tree drainage pits shall be installed.

B. Canopy Shade and Ornamental Trees in Planting Beds:
1. Excavate square tree pits twelve (12) inches greater in diameter than root balls or container diameter.
2. Rip bottom and sides of pit to break up construction compaction, and then recompact bottom only by hand.
3. Place tree directly into excavated pit such that the trunk flare will be two (2) inches above surrounding finished grade in planter bed. Refer to planting details for cross-section of tree planters.
4. Backfill the lower portion of tree pit to not more than one half (½) the depth of the root ball with excavated native soils.
5. Backfill the top nine (9) inches with adjacent amended planting media blended with two (2) ounces of organic biological fertilizer per each five (5) gallon increment in tree root ball size and thoroughly saturate top backfill layer with water to aid removal of air pockets.
6. Provide top dressing per 3.8 for planting beds.

C. Canopy Shade and Ornamental Trees in Turf Areas:
1. Till soil to ten (10) inch depth within ten (10) foot radius of tree for trees in existing turf areas.
2. Excavate and plant tree in square pits two (2) times greater in diameter than root balls or container diameter.
3. Rip bottom and sides of pit to break up construction compaction, and then recompact bottom only by hand.

4. Place tree directly into excavated pit such that the trunk root flare will be two (2) inches above surrounding finished grade in turf area. Refer to planting details for cross-section of tree planters.
5. Backfill the lower portion of tree pit to not more than one half (½) the depth of the root ball with excavated native soils.
6. Backfill the top nine (9) inches with mix of one (1) part compost to one (1) part native stockpiled/imported topsoil blended with two (2) ounces of organic biological fertilizer per each five (5) gallon increment in tree root ball size and thoroughly saturate top backfill layer with water to aid removal of air pockets.
7. Topdressing – See 3.12 below.

3.11 TREE SAUCERS

A. Form a watering saucer around each new tree per construction drawings. Keep root flare exposed and keep watering saucer at edges of tree root ball. Saucer shall be no higher than three (3) inches.
B. Contractor is responsible for deep watering trees a minimum of once (1) per week until final acceptance and as needed to promote growth.

3.12 TREE ROOT BALL ANCHORING

A. Anchor trees prior to backfilling to ensure ground anchors are firmly into existing subbase.
B. Anchor all trees as detailed and per manufacturer's requirements.
C. Take precautions during staking operation to prevent damage or injury to roots and irrigation or other underground utility lines.

3.13 TOPDRESSING TREES IN TURF AREAS

A. After watering dam has been approved, top dress root zone area first with eight (8) rolled layers of recycled roll-stock newsprint paper, as specified in 2.9 A., to provide a weed barrier.
B. Then top dress tree root balls with rustic cut mulch to a compacted depth of three (3) inches.
C. Top dressing must achieve specified depth to attain final acceptance.
D. Hold mulches back minimum of six (6) inches to expose the flare of the tree trunk at the root ball.

3.14 PRUNING OF NEW TREES

A. Prune trees to preserve natural character of plant. Remove sucker growth, broken or badly bruised branches, and crossed branches.
B. Thin native trees heavier than nursery grown plants.
C. When directed by the Owner’s Authorized Representative, remove approximately one-third of wood by thinning. Do not cut back terminal branches.

3.15 EDGING

A. Provide edging where noted on Drawings on-grade at interface of turf bed to planting bed.
B. On-grade: Set edging as indicated in true lines as designed with top of edging two (2) to three (3) inches above finish grade prior to installation of sod or mulch. Receive approval from Owner’s Authorized Representative for layout of edging prior to installation. Refer to details for additional requirements.

3.16 NEW TREES

A. Trees shall be continuously and routinely inspected for distress caused by construction activities. Notify Owner’s Authorized Representative at first sign of distress.

B. Any Fire Ant mounds around or on top of a new or protected tree root zone shall be treated immediately and the mound removed physically. Do not allow the mound to build on the tree trunk as this will cover the tree root flare and possibly cause injury or death. Ensure that any chemical application to the Fire Ant mound is safe for application atop tree root zones.

C. Trees: Pruning will be carried out by experienced pruning personnel.

1. Receive approval in the field for extent of pruning from Owner's Authorized Representative.
2. Sterilize pruning tools between individual plants, especially in the genus Quercus.
3. Raise limbs to an acceptable height as approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative. Raise limbs to seven (7) foot height for trees within ten (10) feet of sidewalk.
4. No weed-eaters or edgers are to be used within fifteen (15) inches of any tree. Should the need for trimming be necessary within fifteen (15) inches of any tree, it shall be done so by hand trimming only.

D. Remove dead wood, broken branches, mistletoe, and suckers from trees as needed. Thin prune by removing no more than twenty (20) percent of growth. Sterilize pruning tools between individual plants to keep down spread of disease.

E. Spray paint all wounds of plants of the genus Quercus as soon as possible. Spray paint deliberate wounds on genus Quercus within one (1) hour and accidental wounds due to storms, etc. as soon as possible. Wounds on other species shall be allowed to compartmentalize naturally, unless determined otherwise by Owner's Authorized Representative or Arborist. Refer to Section 31 1300 – 2.1 for acceptable wound paint.

F. Remove all remaining tags, straps, flags, ties, etc. from trees.

G. Dispose of all waste and removed material off site per requirements of local codes.

3.17 WEED REMOVAL

A. Contractor shall hand-remove foreign grass, weeds, and immature weeds prior to formation of seed heads.

B. Contractor shall monitor and remove weeds, with root systems, from top of nursery grown plants to prevent competition for plant growth.

C. Remove all poison ivy or other native vines, with root systems, from bases of tree's root balls.

D. Contractor shall obtain prior approval from the Owner's Authorized Representative before applying the approved organic herbicides. Read and follow all label directions.

E. The Contractor shall be held solely responsible for plant loss due to the application of organic herbicides. Any loss of plant material shall be replaced at Contractor's sole expense and all plant replacements shall be of the same species and size of the existing plant materials.

F. Hand weeding or plant specific application of organic herbicide shall be used during plant establishment.

3.18 DEEP ROOT WATERING

A. Deep root water all existing trees to remain within the construction limits of the project once every two (2) weeks during the summer and once (1) a month during the winter, during the duration of the project and until final acceptance. This should be adjusted to the amount of rain. However, unless it has rained at least one-half (1/2) inch since the last watering, continue to deep root water. Complete deep root watering by filling each tree saucer three (3) times and letting it percolate dry.

B. Water new plantings to provide optimum soil moisture level for plant germination and root development and not to exceed watering requirements.

3.19 PLANT CARE UNTIL FINAL ACCEPTANCE

A. Water: When irrigation system is not operational, provide necessary hoses and other watering equipment required to complete landscaping.

B. Maintain plantings and trees by watering, cultivating, weeding, raking, fertilizing, controlling diseases and pests, cleaning, and replacing plants as necessary to keep landscape in a vigorous, healthy condition as needed until final acceptance. Maintenance until final acceptance includes but is not limited to the following:

1. Watering Trees: Tree balls to be kept moistened to the depth of the tree ball.
2. Weeding: Remove weeds and foreign grass over plant areas at least once (1) a week.
3. Cultivating: Gently cultivate bed areas to a depth of approximately three (3) inches once (1) a month. Care should be taken not to damage plant roots.
4. Mowing and Edging; Refer to Section 32 9200.
5. Application of approved organic insecticides, organic herbicides and organic fungicides shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions per Owner and Owner's Authorized Representative approval. Remedy damage from use of insecticides.
6. Trimming and pruning includes only removal of dead or broken branches, and treatment of pruned areas and other wounds. Do not shear any plants.
7. Disease control.
8. Maintenance of temporary BMP's to prevent washout, siltation, or damage to planting beds (if applicable).
9. Tree straightening: Best for the health of the trees to wait until dormancy to straighten or reset the trees that have started to root into the backfill. Straighten by carefully digging out around the root ball, attaching seat belt strap to the part of the wire basket that is still intact around the root ball, and lifting with appropriate equipment, or adjusting the anchoring straps for the tree anchoring frame. Never pull, push, or put pressure on the trunk. Then repeat applicable planting instructions 3.9.

C. Coordinate watering schedules during installation and until final acceptance. Provide deep root watering to keep root balls moist on newly installed trees at a minimum of once (1) every two (2) weeks during summer months or as weather conditions indicate.

D. Maintenance Instructions: Submit two (2) hard copies and one (1) electronic copy of typewritten instructions recommending procedures to be established by the Owner for the maintenance of landscape prior to expiration of Contractor's maintenance period(s) required under the contract. Submit to Owner's Authorized Representative for approval.

3.20 CLEAN-UP

A. Keep premises neat and orderly including organization of storage areas.

B. Remove trash and debris from excavated planting areas, preparing beds, or planting plants from Work site daily as work progresses.

C. Clean faces of building, walls, and other architectural features to remove sediments.

D. Keep paved areas clean by sweeping or hosing.

3.21 SITE ENVIRONMENTAL PROCEDURES

A. Waste Management: Comply with requirements of local codes for recycling and reusing waste.

B. Waste Disposal: Disposal of waste, including accessories and used items, by recycling or reusing waste to the extent practical. When washing containers for recycling, do not permit runoff to enter storm drains or sewer systems or penetrate soils.

3.22 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

A. Due to seasonal requirements, final acceptance of this section may not coincide with that of the remaining contract work.

B. Request inspection for final acceptance at least ten (10) calendar days before the end of the plant care and maintenance as described in 3.18.

C. Final acceptance shall be considered the time at which planting, related work and clean-up are one hundred (100%) percent completed.

END OF SECTION 32 9300